

MOBY-DICK *OR, THE WHALE*

By

HERMAN MELVILLE

*Edited by Luther S. Mansfield
and Howard P. Vincent*



HENDRICKS HOUSE
NEW YORK, 1952

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	ix
Dedication	xxxv
Etymology	xxxvii
Extracts	xxxix

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. Loomings	1
II. The Carpet Bag	6
III. The Spouter-Inn	10
IV. The Counterpane	25
V. Breakfast	29
VI. The Street	31
VII. The Chapel	33
VIII. The Pulpit	37
IX. The Sermon	39
X. A Bosom Friend	48
XI. Nightgown	52
XII. Biographical	54
XIII. Wheelbarrow	57
XIV. Nantucket	61
XV. Chowder	63
XVI. The Ship	67
XVII. The Ramadan	81
XVIII. His Mark	87
XIX. The Prophet	91
XX. All Astir	94
XXI. Going Aboard	97
XXII. Merry Christmas	100
XXIII. The Lee Shore	104
XXIV. The Advocate	106
XXV. Postscript	110
XXVI. Knights and Squires	111
XXVII. Knights and Squires	115
XXVIII. Ahab	119
XXIX. Enter Ahab; to him, Stubb	123

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXX. The Pipe	126
XXXI. Queen Mab	127
XXXII. Cetology	129
XXXIII. The Specksynder	142
XXXIV. The Cabin Table	145
XXXV. The Mast-Head	151
XXXVI. The Quarter-Deck. Ahab and all	157
XXXVII. Sunset	165
XXXVIII. Dusk	166
XXXIX. First Night-Watch	168
XL. Forecastle. — Midnight	169
XLI. Moby Dick	175
XLII. The Whiteness of the Whale	185
XLIII. Hark!	194
XLIV. The Chart	195
XLV. The Affidavit	200
XLVI. Surmises	209
XLVII. The Mat-Maker	212
XLVIII. The First Lowering	215
XLIX. The Hyena	225
L. Ahab's Boat and Crew—Fedallah	227
LI. ~~The Spirit-Spout~~	230
LII. The Pequod meets the Albatross	234
LIII. ~~The Gam~~	236
LIV. ~~The Town Ho's Story~~	240
LV. Monstrous Pictures of Whales	261
LVI. Less Erroneous Pictures of Whales	266
LVII. Of Whales in Paint, in Teeth, &c.	269
LVIII. Brit	272
LIX. Squid	275
LX. The Line	277
LXI. Stubb Kills a Whale	281
LXII. The Dart	286
LXIII. The Crotch	288
LXIV. Stubb's Supper	289
LXV. The Whale as a Dish	297
LXVI. The Shark Massacre	300

CHAPTER	PAGE
LXVII. Cutting In	301
LXVIII. The Blanket	303
LXIX. The Funeral	307
LXX. The Sphynx	308
LXXI. The Pequod meets the Jeroboam. Her Story	311
LXXII. The Monkey-rope	317
LXXIII. Stubb & Flask kill a Right Whale	321
LXXIV. The Sperm Whale's Head	327
LXXV. The Right Whale's Head	331
LXXVI. The Battering Ram	334
LXXVII. The Great Heidelburgh Tun	337
LXXVIII. Cistern and Buckets	339
LXXIX. The Praire	343
LXXX. The Nut	346
LXXXI. The Pequod meets the Virgin	348
LXXXII. The Honor and Glory of Whaling	359
LXXXIII. Jonah Historically Regarded	362
LXXXIV. Pitchpoling	365
LXXXV. The Fountain	367
LXXXVI. The Tail	372
LXXXVII. The Grand Armada	377
LXXXVIII. Schools & Schoolmasters	389
LXXXIX. Fast Fish and Loose Fish	393
XC. Heads or Tails	397
XCI. <u>The Pequod meets the Rose Bud</u>	400
XCII. Ambergris	406
XCIII. The Castaway	409
XCIV. A Squeeze of the Hand	413
XCV. The Cassock	417
XCVI. The Try-Works	418
XCVII. The Lamp	423
XCVIII. Stowing Down & Clearing Up	424
XCIX. The Doubloon	426
C. <u>The Pequod meets the Samuel Enderby of</u> London	433
CI. <u>The Decanter</u>	440
CII. A Bower in the Arsacides	445

CHAPTER	PAGE
CIII. Measurement of the Whale's Skeleton . . .	449
CIV. The Fossil Whale	451
CV. Does the Whale Diminish?	455
CVI. Ahab's Leg	459
CVII. The Carpenter	462
CVIII. The Deck. Ahab and the Carpenter . . .	465
CIX. The Cabin. Ahab and Starbuck	469
CX. Queequeg in his Coffin	472
CXI. The Pacific	478
CXII. The Blacksmith	479
CXIII. The Forge	482
CXIV. The Gilder	485
CXV. The Pequod meets the Bachelor	487
CXVI. The Dying Whale	490
CXVII. The Whale-Watch	491
CXVIII. The Quadrant	493
CXIX. The Candles	495
CXX. The Deck	502
CXXI. Midnight, on the Forecastle	503
CXXII. Midnight, Aloft	505
CXXIII. The Musket	505
CXXIV. The Needle	508
CXXV. The Log and Line	512
CXXVI. The Life-Buoy	515
CXXVII. Ahab and the Carpenter	519
CXXVIII. The Pequod meets the Rachel	521
CXXIX. The Cabin. Ahab and Pip	525
CXXX. The Hat	526
CXXXI. The Pequod meets the Delight	531
CXXXII. The Symphony	532
CXXXIII. The Chase. First Day	537
CXXXIV. The Chase. Second Day	546
CXXXV. The Chase. Third Day	555
Epilogue	567
Explanatory Notes	569
Index	833

INTRODUCTION

For five years, 1845-1850, Herman Melville had followed writing as a trade. Four of his books had brought him critical success and a subsistence income; only *Mardi*, the third, had been so unfavorably received that both fame and fortune had been seriously threatened. "Dollars damn me," he lamented, and clearly driving for self-damnation, he began the composition of a sixth book, a "whaling voyage," as he called it.

Nothing suggests that Melville wrote a single word of *Moby-Dick* before his return from London in February of 1850. But shreds of evidence—from his *Literary World* review of *Etchings of a Whaling Cruise* to the whaling references in *Mardi*, *Redburn*, and *White-Jacket*—show that his mind was slowly working over his whaleman's experience on the *Acushnet* and the *Charles and Henry*, that his creative talent was mysteriously preparing rich material for some future use. With the successful sale of *White-Jacket* to Bentley, December 1849, Melville was free to turn his mind to these accumulated, partially ordered impressions, free at last to use the one segment of personal experience not yet exploited in his writings.

By the first of May he was well along in his composition. He wrote Richard Henry Dana, Jr., "About the 'whaling voyage'—I am half way in the work, & am very glad that your suggestion so jumps with mine. It will be a strange sort of a book, tho', I fear; blubber is blubber you know; tho' you may get oil out of it, the poetry runs as hard as sap from a frozen maple tree;—& to cook the thing up, one must needs throw in a little fancy, which from the nature of the thing, must be ungainly as the gambols of the whales themselves. Yet I mean to give the truth of the thing, spite of this."

Notwithstanding the ambiguities of these words, they showed that Melville was writing freely, and that he was following a writing pace used in all his other novels. But what was this

suggestion of Dana's which "so jumps with mine"? Probably it was the advice to make his work a factual document, to show the actualities of the whaling fishery even as *White-Jacket* (the subject of the rest of the letter) had exposed the brutalities and humours aboard a man-of-war. Two days before this letter, Melville had drawn from the New York Society Library the two volumes of William Scoresby, Jr.'s *An Account of the Arctic Regions*, the most famous and the most precisely factual book on whaling in print. At this same time, probably, he placed an order with Putnam's for a copy of Thomas Beale's *The Natural History of the Sperm Whale*, a book which had to be ordered from England, and which reached Melville on 10 July. Like Scoresby's work, Beale's was factual, authoritative. Working with these volumes Melville could report on whales and whaling with a conviction and with a wealth of detail not derivable from half-forgotten experience.

Melville continued to write freely. By 27 June 1850 he was sufficiently confident to write to Richard Bentley, his English publisher: "In the latter part of the coming autumn I shall have ready a new work; and I write you now to propose its publication in England. The book is a romance of adventure, founded upon certain wild legends of the Southern Sperm Whale Fisheries, and illustrated by the author's own personal experience, of two years & more, as a harpooner. Should you be inclined to undertake the book, I think that it will be worth to you £200. Could you be positively put in possession of the copyright, it might be worth to you a large sum—considering its great novelty; for I do not know that the subject treated of has ever been worked up by a romancer; or, indeed, by any writer, in any adequate manner."

Corroboration of this progress in writing came from Evert Duyckinck's early August report to his brother: "Melville has a new book mostly done—a romantic, fanciful and literal and most enjoyable presentment of the Whale Fishery,—something quite new."

Almost ready in some form by August, Melville's "whaling voyage" did not reach the publisher's hands for more than a year. No other novel of his required such a time-span for its

composition. Apparently in the summer of 1850 something happened which compelled a radical revision, or extension, of the "new book mostly done." What happened was the release within Melville's mind of repressed forces, insights, and powers—forces generated probably as early as 1849 by the reading of Shakespeare. The release was made possible by the example, the friendship, and the counsel of his new-found friend and neighbor, Nathaniel Hawthorne, to whom, in warm gratitude, the finished novel was dedicated.

On 18 July 1850 Herman Melville's Aunt Mary had given him the two volumes (now in the Harvard College Library) of Hawthorne's *Mosses from an Old Manse*. Melville was unfathomably stirred by these quiet, discerning stories, and as, with mounting excitement, he read through the volumes, he marked passage after passage, scribbled excited marginal comments as witness of his delighted discovery. This delight led Melville to write—interrupting his novel—an appreciative essay which he sent to the *Ducykincks*, who published it in the *Literary World*, 17 and 24 August 1850. This essay was a profound revelation of the mind and spirit of its author. Possibly overpraise of Hawthorne, it was the unwitting exposure of Melville's genius in the turbulence of creative activity. "Let America, then, prize and cherish her writers," and especially this Hawthorne, Melville cried; here is a man who has the tragic vision; Shakespeare has been approached, and by an American. Implicit in this essay was the fierce, proud awareness of creative powers of the very highest order—powers facing the danger of public unsuccess.

One of life's finest ironies was Melville's discovery that Hawthorne was a neighbor, living in Lenox, but six miles from Pittsfield. On 5 August the two men met at a gathering arranged by David Dudley Field. Friendship ripened rapidly, and during the winter the two men met several times, either at Melville's or at Hawthorne's, for long and wonderful discussions of things worldly and unworldly—discussions which must have subtly wound their way into passages of the novel then shaping.

Little or nothing is known of Melville's writing from August to December 1850. During these months he bought Arrowhead, a farm outside Pittsfield, and settled there in September. But

by December he had buried himself in his writing with an intensity in strong contrast to the jaunty spirit of the "whaling voyage" letter to Dana. Writing to Duyckinck 12 December, Melville described his authorial activity: "I have a sort of sea-feeling here in the country, now that the ground is all covered with snow. I look out of my window in the morning when I rise as I would out of a port-hole of a ship in the Atlantic. My room seems a ship's cabin; & at nights when I wake up & hear the wind shrieking, I almost fancy there is too much sail on the house, & I had better go on the roof & rig in the chimney. . . . I rise at eight—thereabouts—& go to my barn—say good-morning to the horse, & give him his breakfast. . . . Then, pay a visit to my cow—cut up a pumpkin or two for her, & stand by to see her eat it—for its a pleasant sight to see a cow move her jaws—she does it so mildly & with such a sanctity.—My own breakfast over, I go to my work-room & light my fire—then spread my M.S.S. on the table—take one business squint at it, & fall to with a will. At 2½ P.M. I hear a preconcerted knock at my door, which (by request) continues till I rise & go to the door, which serves to wean me effectively from my writing, however interested I may be. My friends the horse & cow now demand their dinner—& I go & give it them. My own dinner over, I rig my sleigh & with my mother or sisters start off for the village—& if it be a Literary World day, great is the satisfaction thereof.—My evenings I spend in a sort of mesmeric state in my room—not being able to read—only now & then skimming over some large-printed book.—Can you send me about fifty fast-writing youths, with an easy style & not averse to polishing their labors? If you can, I wish you would, because since I have been here I have planned about that number of future works & cant find enough time to think about them separately.—But I dont know but a book in a man's brain is better off than a book bound in calf—at any rate it is safer from criticism. And taking a book off the brain, is akin to the ticklish & dangerous business of taking an old painting off a panel—you have to scrape off the whole brain in order to get at it with due safety—& even then, the painting may not be worth the trouble."

This passage reveals a poetic absorption with writing; it was

Melville "in his wholeness, wholly attending." The later description of Pierre at work was probably a description of himself working on *Moby-Dick*: "For when unfathomably stirred, the subtler elements of man do not always reveal themselves in the concocting act; but, as with all other potencies, show themselves chiefly in their ultimate resolvings and results. Strange wild work, and awfully symmetrical and reciprocal, was that now going on, within the self-apparently chaotic breast of Pierre. . . . that which now absorbs the time and life of Pierre, is not the book, but the primitive elementalising of the strange stuff, which in the act of attempting that book, had upheaved and upgushed in his soul. Two books are being writ." Perhaps in *Moby-Dick* one book was mostly written when another came along, the deeper and the more daring, and the two wonderfully fused into the published volume.

Melville's "concocting act" was wrapped in obscurity, but hints appeared in external facts. In March 1851 Hawthorne presented Melville with the four volumes of *The Mariner's Chronicle*, an anthology of sea disasters. The gift suggests that Melville was seeking from other sea stories details adaptable in rounding out his conclusion. The story finally used was not in the four volume gift, which, rather strangely, omitted it. Melville's climax derived from the famous sinking of the whaleship *Essex* by a spermaceti whale in the Pacific in 1820. Melville had long known the tale, and now at his need it rose to mind. Wanting the facts for review, he sought the original telling, Owen Chase's *Narrative of the most extraordinary and distressing Shipwreck of the Whale-Ship Essex*, a rare volume long out of print. Melville's distinguished father-in-law, Chief Justice Lemuel Shaw, acquired a copy from his Nantucket friend, Thomas Macy, and sent it to him in April. The excited Melville studied the work with care, marking many passages and adding pages of notes as evidence of his knowledge, his interest, and his absorption in a story used as narrative and as profoundly tragic symbol.

By June 1851 Melville wrote Hawthorne that he was going "to New York to bury myself in a third-story room, and work and slave on my 'Whale'—while it is driving through the press. That is the only way I can finish it now,—I am so pulled hither

and thither by circumstances. . . . But I was talking about the 'Whale.' As the fishermen say, 'He's in his flurry' when I left him some three weeks ago. I'm going to take him by his jaw, however, before long, and finish him up in some fashion or other." In the city, Melville returned the Scoresby volumes to the New York Society Library, having kept them out for over thirteen months. "Disgusted with the heat and dust and Babylonish brick-kiln of New York," Melville returned to Arrowhead "to feel the grass, and end the book reclining on it." Probably not long after his arduous composition was finished, he wrote a lady: "Concerning my own forthcoming book—it is off my hands, but must cross the sea before publication here. Dont you buy it—dont you read it, when it does come out, because it is by no means the sort of book for you. It is not a piece of fine feminine Spitalfields silk—but it is of the horrible texture of a fabric that should be woven of ships' cables & hawsers. A Polar wind blows through it, & birds of prey hover over it. Warn all gently fastidious people from so much as peeping into the book—on risk of a lumbago & sciatica."

On 3 July 1851 Bentley wrote Melville, offering to publish the new book. Melville, 20 July, accepted the offer. The agreement between them was signed 13 August: Melville was to receive £150 on delivery of the manuscript of *The Whale*, the sum being an advance on a half-profits arrangement; the English edition was to appear at least fourteen days before the American. A month later, 10 September, proof-sheets from Harper and Brothers were sent to Bentley for use as printer's copy for *The Whale*. Two days later Allan Melville, acting for his brother Herman, signed an agreement for Harper and Brothers "to publish and sell and keep for sale a certain work entitled 'The Whale' whereof the said Herman Melville is the author."

Late in September Allan Melville wrote Bentley asking that the title be changed from *The Whale* to *Moby-Dick*, as more appropriate to "the hero of the book." Apparently his letter arrived too late to effect the change. Therefore, on 18 October, the three octavo volumes of *The Whale* were published in England in an edition of 500 copies. On 14 November *Moby-Dick*, a one-volume edition of 2,915 copies, was published in America.

Almost as if "the grand programme of Providence" which had put down Ishmael for "this shabby part of a whaling voyage" were compensating the author with a fortuitous advertising stunt, on 5 November 1851 the news reached New York that on 20 August in mid-Pacific a huge whale had rammed and sunk the *Ann Alexander* of New Bedford, much as Moby Dick sank the *Pequod*. At once, Evert Duyckinck sent off a letter to Pittsfield and Melville replied 7 November 1851: "Ye Gods! What a Commentator is this Ann Alexander whale. What he has to say is short and pithy but very much to the point. I wonder if my evil art has raised this monster." This seemed to both men quite obviously the work of Moby Dick himself. *The Whalemens's Shipping List* of New Bedford likewise accepted the *Ann Alexander* story—reported to the United States through the *Panama Herald* of 16 October—for the fact it clearly was. But *Punch* in London was incredulous and 6 December 1851 treated the catastrophe with humor and ridicule. This landsman's skepticism was also reflected in the article published by the *Daily Gazette* of Utica, New York. The *Pittsfield Sun* for 18 November 1851, however, reprinted the sober report of the *Boston Traveler*.

The reception of the book *Moby-Dick* was quite as varied as the reactions to the factual story of the *Ann Alexander*. The variety of interpretation and evaluation has continued to the present day. In "Experience," Emerson told of "a witty physician who found the creed in the biliary duct, and used to affirm that if there was disease in the liver, the man became a Calvinist, and if that organ was sound, he became a Unitarian." The creeds of the readers—whatever their physiological or psychological causes—have determined reactions to Melville's masterpiece no less than aesthetic standards and theories. In general, those critics and reviewers of 1851 and 1852 wrote perceptively and with admiration, who could understand and accept Melville's peculiarly qualified Transcendentalism and the romantic rhetoric of his style, derived largely from the English writers of the seventeenth century (Shakespeare through Milton) and from Carlyle and Emerson among his contemporaries. The objectors at the time of the book's publication were primarily the religious conservatives or those who had a marked preference for the classic simplicity and directness of the eighteenth-century writers.

Since the revival of widespread interest in Melville following the author's centenary in 1919, interpretation of *Moby-Dick* has commonly reflected the political and psychological doctrines of the interpreters, although more and more—as the result of scholarly activity—it has become possible to view the book as a product of its time, and its author as a man reading and thinking and writing among other men, with his individual response to common intellectual, religious, and aesthetic questions, to which these other men were also making their individual responses. This temporal quality is the objective element which makes a book art—beyond the accident of the individual temperament and psychology of the reader. The masterpieces are the books which shape history by stating the issues of their own day definitively and thus molding the questions for the future. In *Moby-Dick*, Melville was concerned—as were Emerson and other contemporaries—with the possibility of conflict between orthodox Christianity and the American doctrine of the free individual, and with art as part of life, not as escape from life—as more than mere reporting, inclusive, unhindered by arbitrary rules in its quest for value and vitality. In a sense, these were perennial questions inherited from the past, but their urgency for Melville and the form their definition took in Melville's mind were of his own time and place—part of the quest for a democratic metaphysics and a democratic aesthetics.

Melville's friend Duyckinck, reviewing *Moby-Dick* for the *Literary World*, 15 and 22 November 1851, began with a citation of the *Ann Alexander* disaster as evidence of the credibility of the catastrophe which Melville had assigned to the *Pequod*. He approved the "preliminary flourish" of the Extracts and Etymology as "a whet and fillip to the imagination, exciting it to the curious, ludicrous, sublime traits and contemplations which are to follow." He found no fault with the inclusiveness which made the book "a natural-historical, philosophical, romantic account of the person, habits, manners, ideas of the great sperm whale." It did not matter that it was "quite impossible to submit such books to a distinct classification as fact, fiction, or essay." Melville's characters were "more or less spiritual personages talking and acting differently from the general business run of the conversation on the decks of whalers . . . realities of

some kinds at bottom, but veiled in all sorts of poetical incidents and expressions." Ahab, "the Faust of the quarter-deck," was "too long drawn out," but "a striking conception, firmly planted on the wild deck of the Pequod—a dark disturbed soul arraying itself with every ingenuity of material resources for a conflict with the most dangerous extant physical monster of the earth, embodying, in strongly drawn lines of mental association, the vaster moral evil of the world." Reviewing the earlier book, 17 November 1849, Duyckinck had pronounced Jackson "perhaps the most remarkable specimen of portraiture" in *Redburn*. He had no objection to the similar Ahab except the extension of the portrait: "If we had as much of Hamlet or Macbeth as Mr. Melville gives us of Ahab, we should be tired even of their sublime company." He had mild objections to the persistent "association of whaling and lamentation," which suggested "why blubber is popularly synonymous with tears." And though willing to interpret them as in some degree required for the dramatic characterization of Ishmael, Duyckinck found thoroughly distasteful "this piratical running down of creeds and opinions, the conceited indifferentism of Emerson, or the run-a-muck style of Carlyle," which colored so much of the philosophical and reflective portions of the book. Nevertheless, the review closed with acknowledgement of "divine impulses" and "the acuteness of observation, the freshness of perception, with which the author brings home to us from the deep, 'things unattempted yet in prose or rhyme,' the weird influences of his ocean scenes, the salient imagination which connects them with the past and distant, the world of books and the life of experience."

The reviewer, probably George Ripley, in the December 1851 issue of *Harper's New Monthly Magazine* called *Moby-Dick* "a romance, a tragedy, and a natural history, not without numerous gratuitous suggestions on psychology, ethics, and theology," and suggested that "beneath the whole story, the subtle, imaginative reader may perhaps find a pregnant allegory, intended to illustrate the mystery of human life. Certain it is that the rapid, pointed hints which are often thrown out, with the keenness and velocity of a harpoon, penetrate deep into the heart of things, showing that the genius of the author for moral

analysis is scarcely surpassed by his wizard power of description." The extended and painstaking documentation on whales and whaling seemed "interspersed with excellent artistic effect among the thrilling scenes of the story . . . contrasting strangely with the weird, phantom-like character of the plot, and of some of the leading personages, who present a no less unearthly appearance than the witches in Macbeth." Praise was accorded the "sketches of life in the great marts of Whalingdom, New Bedford and Nantucket," and the "fine vein of comic humor" of the earlier part of the book, which showed particularly in Peleg and Bildad. For this reviewer, there was "wonderful power" in the portrait of Ahab, who "exercises a wild, bewildering fascination by his dark and mysterious nature, which is not at all diminished when we obtain a clearer insight into his strange history." Queequeg was "the pearl of a New Zealand harpooner," and the rest of the crew stood out "in the strongest individual relief, presenting a unique picture gallery, which every artist must despair of rivaling." Moby Dick himself seemed "inspired with the same fierce, inveterate cunning with which Captain Ahab has followed the traces of his mortal foe," and the final fight with the whale was "described in letters of blood."

Proud of earlier faith in the author's genius and of having "had eyes to see it," the reviewer in *Bentley's Miscellany* (London), January 1852, declared *The Whale* "certainly one of the most remarkable books that has appeared for many years past," and maintained that "there are descriptions in this book of almost unrivalled force, coloured and warmed as they are, by the light and the heat of a most poetical imagination, and many passages might be cited of vigorous thought, of earnest and tender sentiment and of glowing fancy, which would at once suffice to show—contest or dispute about the matter being out of the question—that Herman Melville is a man of the truest and most original genius." *John Bull* (London), 25 October 1851, had been even more penetrating and approving: "The flashes of truth, too, which sparkle on the surface of the foaming sea of thought. . . . The profound reflections uttered by the actors in the wild watery chase. . . . and the graphic representations of human nature in the startling disguises under which it appears

on the deck of the *Pequod*,—all these things combine to raise *The Whale* far beyond the level of an ordinary work of fiction. It is not a mere tale of adventures, but a whole philosophy of life, that it unfolds." *The Atlas* (London) spoke approvingly of the "high-soaring imaginative powers" and the "thoroughly original veins of philosophic speculation" Melville showed in this book: "Upon the whale, its mysteries, and its terrors, he revels as if the subject had enchantment for him. He pours into multitudinous chapters a mass of knowledge touching the whale—its habits and its history—the minutest details of its feeding or sporting, or swimming, strangely mixed with ingenious and daring speculations on the mysterious habits and peculiarities of the great brute—the whole written in a tone of exaltation and poetic sentiment, which has a strange effect upon the reader's mind, in refining and elevating the subject of discourse, and, at last, making him look upon the whale as a sort of awful and unsoluble mystery—the most strange and the most terrible of the wonders of the deep." *The Leader* (London), 8 November 1851, made its review of *The Whale* the occasion for a shrewd appreciation of the distinctive quality of literature on this side of the Atlantic: "Want of originality has long been the just and standing reproach to American literature; the best of its writers were but second-hand Englishmen. Of late some have given evidence of originality; not *absolute* originality, but such genuine outcoming of the American intellect as can be safely called national. Edgar Poe, Nathaniel Hawthorne, and Herman Melville are assuredly no British off-shoots; nor is Emerson—the *German* American that he is! The observer of this commencement of an American literature, properly so called, will notice as significant that these writers have a wild and mystic love of the super-sensual, peculiarly their own. To move a horror skillfully, with something of the earnest faith in the Unseen, and with weird imagery to shape these phantasms so vividly that the most incredulous mind is hushed, absorbed—to do this no European pen has apparently any longer the power—to do this American literature is without a rival. What *romance* writer can be named with HAWTHORNE? Who knows the horrors of the seas like HERMAN MELVILLE? . . . The ghostly terrors

which [he] so skilfully invokes, have a strange fascination. In vain Reason rebels. . . . Imagination has a credulity of its own respondent to power. So it is with Melville's superstitions; we believe in them imaginatively."

Beyond the usual no-man's-land of casualness, triviality, and non-commitment in between, the unfavorable reviews probably equaled the favorable. Among the earliest English reviews, 25 October 1851, *The Spectator* dismissed this "sea novel" as "a singular medley of naval observation, magazine article writing, satiric reflection upon the conventionalisms of civilized life, and rhapsody run mad," and *The Athenaeum* found it "an ill-compounded mixture of romance and matter-of-fact," and after speculating that "the idea of a connected and collected story has obviously visited and abandoned the writer again and again in the course of composition," pronounced that "the style of his tale is in places disfigured by mad (rather than bad) English; and its catastrophe is hastily, weakly, and obscurely managed." The omission of the Epilogue in the English edition probably accounted for this critic's condemnation of the ending.

Voicing objections based on religious or moral as well as aesthetic grounds, one of the strongest American dissents was registered by *The Southern Quarterly Review*, January 1852: "In all the scenes where the whale is the performer or the sufferer, the delineation and action are highly vivid and exciting. In all other respects, the book is sad stuff, dull and dreary, or ridiculous. Mr. Melville's Quakers are the wretchedest dolts and drivellers, and his Mad Captain . . . is a monstrous bore. . . . His ravings, and the ravings of some of the tributary characters, and the ravings of Mr. Melville himself, meant for eloquent declamation, are such stuff as would justify a writ *de lunatico* against all parties."

Of the other articles about *Moby-Dick* written in the nineteenth century, but subsequent to the flurry of publication, most were casual or merely repetitive. The earliest known French account was by E.-D. Forgues and appeared in the *Revue des Deux Mondes*, 1 February 1853, under the title "*Moby-Dick: La Chasse à la Baleine, scènes de mer.*" Objecting to Melville's Transcendentalism, Forgues was only mildly enthusiastic and

ranked Melville with Charles Brockden Brown, Irving, and Cooper among American romancers. Somewhat phenomenal for its date, October 1899, was the article by Archibald MacMechan entitled "The Best Sea Story Ever Written," which appeared in the *Queen's Quarterly*. MacMechan, who had had an interchange of letters with Melville in 1889, was disturbed by the lack of justice done Melville and his book, "at once the epic and the encyclopedia of whaling. . . a monument to the honour of an extinct race of daring seamen; but . . . a monument overgrown with the lichen of neglect." MacMechan recognized: "Great are the prejudices to be overcome; but he triumphs over all. Whalers are commonly regarded as sea-scavengers. He convinces you that their business is poetic; and that they are the finest fellows afloat. . . . The book is not a record of fact; but of fact idealized, which supplies the frame for a terrible duel to the death. . . . It is not a love-story, but a story of undying hate."

The flood tide of interest in Melville and of articles and books about him and *Moby-Dick* began rolling in shortly after 1919, the centennial of his birth. One of the most perceptive of the early articles was by E. L. Grant Watson in the *London Mercury*, December 1920. Watson felt that any reader of *Moby-Dick* must be "left aghast at the courage of one who dares with unflinching perception follow into the heart of its uttermost ocean that quality which, in our cowardice, we call madness." *Moby Dick* was "the sensuous symbol of nature's beauty and terror," and Ahab—somewhat the counterpart of the whale—was the "incarnation of the active and courageous madness that lies brooding and fierce, every ready to spring to command, within the man of genius. . . . the atheistical captain of the tormented soul." Further, the biography of Ahab was "the history of a man who sees the world as the creation of a suffering and malignant Deity, a Deity whose highest thought is inferior to his own high courage." *

The pioneering biography by Raymond Weaver, *Herman Melville: Mariner and Mystic*, in 1921, laid a solid foundation for the wide-spread revival of the author and his work, although Weaver devoted relatively little space to criticism and interpretation. For Weaver, *Moby-Dick* was "after the order of Melchi-

zedek . . . without issue and without descent. . . . an allegory of the demonism at the cankered heart of nature," and its author a "devil's advocate," kindred soul to the iconoclasts and debunkers of the twenties. Following Weaver's lead, though with less caution, many of the critics of this decade persisted in an unqualified identification of the author with his character Ahab, and distorted Melville—as they also distorted Henry Adams and Stephen Crane—into mere images of their own God-accusing selves. The reviewer of Weaver's book in the *Catholic World*, February 1922, insisting that the biographer had completely misunderstood *Moby-Dick*, called him "sophomoric," and suggested an alternate interpretation: "The white whale is the heart of humanity. Captain Ahab is mad, and be it carefully noted, mad with hate. In hatred he pursues, seeking revenge. . . . He who loves not humankind and the heart of humankind, wicked, faithless, ungrateful, treacherous as it is—he who turns upon it in disdainful hate—will be destroyed by it. To change the figure, Melville hanged upon his own gibbet—a terrible lesson in literature and spiritual life." Without attempting to read Melville's heart from the words he assigned to Ahab, John Freeman, *Herman Melville*, 1926, was content with the pertinent but sane analogy with earlier myth: "Vindicating his pride against almightiness, Lucifer is overthrown, but unsubdued; but vindicating his perverted spirit against a malignity not less perverse, Ahab is slain by the White Whale."

Reviewing Freeman's book in the *New Republic*, 29 September 1926, Lewis Mumford took occasion to commiserate with Melville about his fellow-craftsmen, "the novelists of his own century, who were all, save perhaps the Brontës, the truly begotten issue of the prosy and philistine Defoe." When Mumford came to write his own biography, *Herman Melville*, 1929, he included as chapter seven what was unquestionably the finest criticism of *Moby-Dick* up to that date, or perhaps even yet. Largely impressionistic, his interpretation nevertheless hit squarely upon the two most significant aspects of the novel—the metaphysical and the aesthetic—and placed it perceptively against the background of literary art throughout the history of the human race. "Moby-Dick is a story of the sea, and the sea

is life. . . . the story of the eternal Narcissus in man, gazing into all rivers and oceans to grasp the unfathomable phantom of life—perishing in the illusive waters a portrait of the whale and a presentation of the demonic energies of the universe that harass and frustrate and extinguish the spirit of man.” As Mumford saw it, “in one sense, Ahab achieves victory: he vanquishes in himself that which would retreat from Moby-Dick and acquiesce in his insensate energies and his brutal sway. His end is tragic: evil engulfs him. But in battling against evil, with power instead of love, Ahab himself, in A. E.’s phrase, becomes the image of the thing he hates; he has lost his humanity in the act of vindicating it. . . . if his defiance is noble, his methods are ill-chosen. . . . Man’s ultimate defence against the Universe, against evil and accident and malice, is not by any fictitious resolution of these things into an Absolute which justifies them and utilizes them for its own ends. . . . Man’s defence lies within himself, not within the narrow, isolated ego, which may be overwhelmed, but in that self which we share with our fellows and which assures us that, whatever happens to our own carcasses and hides, good men will remain, to carry on the work, to foster and protect the things we have recognized as excellent. . . . Melville’s method, that of writing Moby-Dick, was correct: as correct as Ahab’s method, taken literally, that of fighting Moby-Dick, was fallacious.”

No less than the religious or philosophical issue involved, Mumford saw keenly the aesthetic issue: “Moby-Dick, then, is one of the first great mythologies to be created in the modern world, created, that is, out of the stuff of that world, its science, its exploration, its terrestrial daring, its concentration upon power and dominion over nature, and not out of ancient symbols. . . . if the story is bedded in facts, the facts themselves are not lost in the further interpretation. Moby-Dick thus brings together the two dissevered halves of the modern world and the modern self—its positive, practical, scientific, externalized self, bent on conquest and knowledge, and its imaginative, ideal half, bent on the transposition of conflict into art, and power into humanity. This resolution is achieved in Moby-Dick itself: it is as if a Shakespeare and a Bacon . . . had collaborated on a single work

of art, with a heightening of their several powers. The best handbook on whaling is also—I say this scrupulously—the best tragic epic of modern times and one of the fine poetic works of all time. . . . the book itself is greater than the fable it embodies, it foreshadows more than it actually reflects: as a work of art, Moby-Dick is part of a new integration of thought, a widening of the fringe of consciousness, a deepening of insight, through which the modern vision of life will finally be embodied.”

Where Mumford had prejudices or preconceptions in reading *Moby-Dick*, they were large ones, more likely to exaggerate than to minimize the significance of Melville's book. The prejudices and preconceptions of William S. Gleim, on the other hand, seem unfortunately, in trying to pin down the meaning more precisely, to have narrowed and confined its sprawling Gothic magnificence. “A Theory of *Moby Dick*,” first published as an article in the *New England Quarterly*, July 1929, was enlarged into a book in 1938, *The Meaning of Moby-Dick*. Applying to Melville's work the Swedenborgian doctrine of correspondences, Gleim undertook to specify the symbolical equivalent for every character, every object, every event in the story. Although the specifications were occasionally provocative—Ahab was will or Ego, the whale was fate, the ivory leg of the captain was will limited by fate, the nine gams each represented some aspect of fate, Bulkington was reason, Queequeg was religion—the net result was indeed the reduction of the book to the “monstrous allegory” Melville had feared. In *Le Mysticisme dans la Pensée Américaine*, 1931, John E. Jacoby maintained: “Le Capitaine Ahab est un type de puritain, pour le nom et le reste,—du puritanisme officiel porté a son apogée. . . . Ahab était donc un homme de la mer,—et la mer est païenne, mais détient cependant une invincible vérité. Symboliquement, elle est l'univers, le complexe des forces avec lesquelles l'homme doit vivre.”

George C. Homans, in “The Dark Angel: the Tragedy of Herman Melville,” which appeared in the *New England Quarterly*, October 1932, defined the theme of *Moby-Dick*—as of *Mardi* before it, and *Pierre* afterward—to be the pursuit of the ultimate, with the conflict of earthly truth and heavenly truth already adumbrated here. The Titanism of the hero seemed to

Homans one of the most striking points in all three novels, because "the Titanism of the mind, the mind's refusal to admit its mortal limitations in its pursuit of the Ultimate implies a denial of any force higher than itself, a denial of God." With Homans the shift was clearly underway from the interpretation of Ahab as a "Lucifer of Nantucket" (Carl Van Doren's phrase), who was mostly to be admired and sympathized with, to the view, which had been part of Mumford's interpretation, which tended increasingly to regard Ahab (and sometimes this character's creator as well) as an irreverent and terrifying pariah, a horrible example of what was to be shunned with fear and trembling. Some correction of the interpretation of the twenties was needed, but the pendulum swung too far. Although his chief concern there was not critical, Willard Thorp in his "Introduction" to *Herman Melville: Representative Selections*, 1938, interpreted *Moby-Dick* as the story of a quest for the ultimate truth: "The Penultimate will not satisfy him; he must have the Ultimate." Thorp documented Melville's criticisms of his character, and concluded that "Ahab brought his own fate on board with him," and that his creator clearly recognized as "delusion" the captain's attempt to dodge responsibility by insisting he was the Fates' lieutenant acting under orders. Much the same view, refined and buttressed, appeared in Thorp's later essay for the *Literary History of the United States*, 1949.

Almost the first seriously to treat problems of form in *Moby-Dick* was Yvor Winters in his essay "Herman Melville and the Problems of Moral Navigation," which was included in *Maule's Curse*, 1938. This critic objected to Melville's philosophical and religious views largely because they made for formlessness, not only in life, but in literary art. The point was well taken, though with perhaps too little sympathy for experimentation in areas yet uncharted a century ago. Possibly, however, Winters's bias against anything resembling Transcendentalism dimmed his sight to what might be clues to a possible basis for literary form premised on that outlook. Since Winters, there have been several studies of form, though largely with respect to details or sections only of the book, or most superficially in terms of the whole.

In 1939 was published the first full-length scholarly study of a limited aspect of Melville's life and art, *Melville in the South Seas* by Charles R. Anderson. Organizing earlier research and adding new materials, chapter four, "Facts and Symbols in 'Moby-Dick,'" laid the ground work for much further investigation of Melville's own experiences in and his use of sources dealing with the Pacific. Ready in the same year, though the war delayed publication, was the first French biography of Melville, by Jean Simon. Since then there have been other French studies and interpretations of the American author, among them Jean Giono's fanciful *Pour Saluer Melville*, 1943, and Pierre Frédéric's *Herman Melville*, 1950.

Writing in the *Sewanee Review* for January-March 1939, Aileen Wells Parks, in an article entitled "Leviathan: An Essay in Interpretation," was one of the first to consider *Moby-Dick* primarily as social criticism. Equating the whale with industrialism and taking Ahab as Rugged Individualist or "finance-capitalist," this critic was confident that Melville "foretold the doom of a culture and a civilization." Similarly, but in more credible statement, F. O. Matthiessen maintained in *American Renaissance*, 1941, that Melville had "seen in Ahab the destruction that must overtake the Man-God, the self-appointed Messiah" and, for him, the career of Melville's character was "prophetic of many others of later nineteenth century America. Man's confidence in his own unaided resources has seldom been carried farther than during that era in this country. The strong-willed individuals who seized the land and gutted the forests and built the railroads were no longer troubled by Ahab's obsessive sense of evil, since theology had receded even farther into their backgrounds. (But their drives were as relentless as his . . . They tended to be as dead to enjoyment as he, as blind to everything but their one pursuit, as unmoved by fear or sympathy, as confident in assuming an identification of their wills with immutable plan or manifest destiny, as liable to regard other men as merely arms and legs for the fulfilment of their purposes, and, finally, as arid and exhausted in their burnt out souls. Without deliberately intending it, but by virtue of his intense concern with the precariously maintained values of democratic Christianity, which he

saw everywhere threatened or being broken down, Melville created in Ahab's tragedy a fearful symbol of the self-enclosed individualism that, carried to its furthest extreme, brings disaster both upon itself and upon the group of which it is part. This was Marxian Puritanism carried far, and Matthiessen tended to minimize the qualities in Ahab which were, as Melville meant to represent them to be, admirable.

But the chief significance of *American Renaissance* was not the social implications read into Ahab, but Matthiessen's sensitive analysis of the impact of Shakespeare on Melville, in concepts of character, and particularly in language. More than any critic before him, Matthiessen discussed *Moby-Dick*, in the fullest sense, as part of the English literary tradition, comparing Melville's use of the language with that of the classic writers of the early seventeenth century. The criticism was largely in terms of detail. William Ellery Sedgwick, in *Herman Melville: The Tragedy of Mind*, 1944, considered *Moby-Dick* more for its ideas and its larger structure, with emphasis also, however, on the impact of Shakespeare. As Sedgwick phrased it, "Shakespeare was satisfied to leave the mysterious background of life to random probings or to inference. Melville could not. . . . In *Moby-Dick* the mysterious background truth looms in the foreground of palpable facts. It articulates itself in those facts and by so doing it confers upon them something of an apocalyptic scale and intensity foreign to Shakespeare's prevailing naturalism." [Ahab, for Sedgwick, was "man sentient, speculative, purposive, religious, standing his full human stature against the immense mystery of creation." *Moby Dick was that immense mystery, not the author of it.* "Ahab's noble madness sprang from an excess of humanity. His monomania on the contrary is identified with mutilation. Truly a monomania, wherever it looks it sees only itself. It sees evil in the White Whale." Sedgwick called Ahab's conflict Shakespearean, but Ishmael, who "stands to Ahab as the shadow to the object which casts it," seemed Dantesque because involved in "the action of man's comprehension slowly completing itself." Melville's "wholeness of vision" was not to be found in other American writers and "might be summed up roughly by adding Hawthorne's human

interiors to Thoreau's nature." For Sedgwick the best American trait in *Moby-Dick* was its "absence of bookishness."

Relating *Moby-Dick* to the metaphysics of democracy, Henry Alonzo Myers wrote in *Are Men Equal?*, 1945: "Inspired by the infinite worth of the individual Melville set out to explore the final mysteries of equality. He created the story of Ahab and the white whale in order to prove that men are equal in their fate. . . . For Captain Ahab the last voyage of the *Pequod* was a quest for certainty that ended in a great discovery. . . . Once he had identified the whale as the cause of evil, his fierce, proud spirit refused to accept the necessity of defeat and suffering. The consciousness of his own powers led him to believe that he could trace all sorrows to a single cause, pursue that cause to the ends of the earth, and in one last, Titanic struggle rid the universe of evil. So it has been for two hundred years; the pursuit of the white whales—ignorance, clericalism, ~~slavery~~, ~~alcohol~~, capitalism, war—has busied many an Ahab. *Moby-Dick* is well suited to be the tragedy of an age. The whole romantic world has made Ahab's mistake again and again, but in life only an occasional John Brown can match his intensity and devotion to the iron way of heroes. . . . The central meaning of *Moby Dick*, like that of every tragedy, lies in the influence of character on event. . . . Whether or not in his last moment Ahab thought himself accursed, he accepted his fate, for he grasped the high principle of tragic morality, the principle that men pay for what they get. The price of intensity is intensity. . . . Ahab, who is different from other men in the degree of his intensity, is like all other men in that he is equal to himself. Ahab's victory equals his defeat, his joy equals his sorrow. . . . Like Emerson and Hawthorne, Melville discovered divine justice in present experience. Emerson had attempted to formulate the law of justice and equality in 'Compensation'. . . . Although some men have a greater capacity for feeling than others, a universal law of intensity balances sorrows and joys in the life of every individual. By virtue of this law meanest mariners and renegades are the equals of captains and kings."

Call Me Ishmael, published in 1947 by Charles Olson, included a revision of an earlier article on "Lear and Moby-Dick,"

in *Twice A Year*, and added the transcript of Melville's notes written in his own copy of Owen Chase's "*Narrative . . . of the Whale-ship Essex*. From the annotations and markings in the volumes of Shakespeare and Chase, Olson launched into a poetic rhapsody about Space, Tragedy, and Myth in *Moby-Dick*.

In his critical study, *Herman Melville*, 1949, Richard Chase centered on the quest for a father as one of the essential facts of Melville's biography and of the careers of the various Ishmael-like heroes: "Ishmael, seeking always for some human embodiment of the lost patrimony of nobility, splendor, and virtue, meets a various array of Promethean figures. . . . there are two kinds of Prometheus, whom we shall call the true and the false. The false Prometheus betrays his humanity through some monstrous pride, some titanic quest for moral purity, some obsessed abdication from the natural ambiguities of life in quest of the absolute and inviolable, or some moral treachery which involves his companions as well as himself in a final catastrophe. The true Prometheus is the hero whom Melville came to call 'the Handsome Sailor.' He is Prometheus, as we may say, in a state of becoming Oedipus. The ideal human hero must not be *only* the young Promethean revolutionary. . . . The ideal hero must also be Oedipus—the man who has accepted the full moral responsibility for his fallible humanity, the man who has suffered and grown wise in the leadership of his fellows. . . . The false Prometheus is he who rejects the psychological and cultural sustenance of life; the true Prometheus is he who accepts it. . . . The predicament of Ahab as Prometheus is, in certain senses, the Puritan predicament; and his failure is the Puritan failure. Having cut himself off from society, having become in his 'radical protestantism' . . . an 'individualist,' Ahab turns in upon himself, and eats away his own vitality. . . . Ahab is the one fully objectified character who is both father and son. He is both the savior-god who addresses his fiery father and the patriarch with forty years of whaling behind him who lords it over his awestruck men like a sultan. . . . Ahab's 'purpose,' as Melville says, is an 'unfathered birth' from which 'common vitality' flees horror-stricken. . . . And because Ahab is unfathered, he cannot be a father. . . . neither Ishmael, consciously searching for his mythical

destiny, nor Starbuck, the good and loving mediocre citizen, can be anything but repulsed and terrified by this 'horrible old man.' The *Pequod*, therefore, can be no civilization, such as Ishmael seeks in its full mythical meaning and Starbuck longs for with his natural affections and sense of justice. It can be only an anarchy planned in the likeness of a machine, contrived with American technical skill, driven forward by a ruthless and mindless bravery which, though it is embellished with a touching hint of swagger, is totally devoted—since no other ideals seem to be natural or workable—to self-destruction in the name of purity. . . . Melville correctly pictures the soul of Ahab as the contested battleground of the gods, saviors, and heroes of the Western world.”

Also appearing in 1949 was Geoffrey Stone's *Melville*, which included an interpretation of this book from the point of view of a Catholic layman. Stone objected: “The orthodoxy of *Moby-Dick* is the orthodoxy of the Old Dispensation, and it is not surprising that 1,851 years after it had been set aside a man should find it intolerable. In Melville's world . . . Noah and Moses were his contemporaries, and . . . Christ hardly figured there at all. Melville never fully understood Christianity.” Melville's book was assessed largely in terms of Kierkegaard and Dostoevski in M. O. Percival's *A Reading of Moby-Dick*, 1950. W. H. Auden also saw Ahab as a representation of Kierkegaard's definition of “defiant despair,” but his central concern in *The Enchafed Flood*, 1950, was to relate *Moby-Dick* to the literary tradition of “the romantic iconography of the sea.” The third section of Auden's book, “Ishmael-Don Quixote,” presented detailed analysis of Melville's most important characters, stressed the romantic conception that the hero ought to be unhappy, and pointed out: “The characteristic of the Romantic period is that the artist, the maker himself, becomes the epic hero, the daring thinker, whose deeds he has to record. . . . Faust, Don Juan, Captain Ahab are not really the heroes of their respective books, but the imaginative projections of their creators, i.e., what they do is not really done as a man of action acts for the sake of the act, but in order to know what it feels like to act. Ahab is, so to speak, what it feels like to be Ishmael the recorder. . . . The romantic artist is a

poète maudit, i.e., an individual marked out by some catastrophe like Ahab's which supplies the driving passion to go ever forward, to the limits of exhaustion."

Treating the intricacies of *Moby-Dick* on "four planes of significance . . . the literal, the oneiric or psychological, the moral, and the mythic," Newton Arvin in *Herman Melville*, 1950, found Ahab's ivory leg a clear symbol of a "profound sexual injury . . . an equivocal symbol both of his own impotence and of the independent male principle directed cripplingly against him." The whale was "the archetypal Parent; the father, yes, but the mother also, so far as she becomes a substitute for the father. And the emotions Moby Dick evokes in us are the violently contradictory emotions that prevail between parent and child. . . . The White Whale is a grandiose mythic presentation of what is godlike in the cosmos as this could be intuited by a painfully meditative and passionately honest poetic mind in the heart of the American nineteenth century. . . . an immanent god in some sense, not a transcendent one; an emergent deity, not an Absolute; a deity that embodies the physical vastness of the cosmos in space and time as astronomy and geology have exhibited it . . . power—the half-conscious, half-unconscious power of blind, restless, perhaps purposeless, but always overbearing and unconquerable force."

Developing the same general interpretation of the whale in slightly different terms, Henry Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, 1950, commented: "God is Milton's symbol for the unlimited reality which contains man. Is not the White Whale a symbol for the same concept? Milton, true to his age, thought of irresistible destiny in terms of a divine power centered in God. Melville, equally true to his age, thought of irresistible destiny in terms of the mysterious powers of unleashed nature, best symbolized by the most powerful animate creation of nature. God was still the consciously or outwardly worshipped power of 1851, but the unconscious metaphysic . . . held nature as its deity to worship and to fear." Pommer also asked the provocative question: "May it be after all that the whale, not Ahab, is a metamorphosis of Satan, whereas Ahab is an agent of God? . . . Were both Ahab and Michael representing moral power

combatting mere physical force represented by the White Whale and by Satan?" He concluded, however, that in Ahab an overgrown hatred of evil had ceased to be a virtue, a good impulse had become a monomania, because "it takes to itself God's function of overcoming the devil, and . . . even comes to think of itself as the equal of God."

The numerous critical and scholarly articles and books during the past three decades have presented a variety of interpretations of *Moby-Dick*. Some few have shared the skepticism of Montgomery Beligion, whose article in the *Sewanee Review*, Winter 1947, was frankly called "Heterodoxy on *Moby-Dick*." Many have been provocative but far-fetched, even fanatical. It is all too true, as Willard Thorp remarked in 1938, that "the reader can make of *Moby-Dick* pretty much what he pleases." With some readers, the acceptance of this privilege and possibility has produced grotesque interpretations, which reduce literary art to mere accidental stimulus, without substantive content defined by form, and make of criticism simply the recording of an uncontrolled stream-of-consciousness. These purely psychological responses which a work of art may happen to produce have nothing to do with that work as art. Along with the flood of such purely personal responses, which the acceptance of *Moby-Dick* as a classic has inevitably produced, have come sober and authentic studies which have worked out, with patient detail, some minor scene or character in such a way that an essential block in the final edifice of critical interpretation has been contributed to those builders who follow after. There have been a great many serious scholarly and critical efforts to understand what Melville meant to do and what Melville did, by tracing where possible his specific sources or reconstructing some part of the cultural world in which Melville lived. Matthiessen and Olson, for instance, have discussed the impact of Shakespeare, with much documentation of Melville's markings and annotations in his volumes of the plays. And *The Trying-Out of Moby-Dick* (1949) has presented an exhaustive analysis of Melville's use of his "fish documents."

Art is a memorializing of life, of some particular way of life limited in space and time. Only this temporal quality, this con-

creteness and particularity, can lift it out of the temporary and the accidental. Great books are great, not because they directly mirror the reader to himself, but because they present another, a different impression of life. In the book the reader meets another man, sees with another man's eyes, and feels with another man's heart. The service of art is to present this otherness, because the more vividly it is presented the more keenly the reader is aware of his own uniqueness in all its facets. The primary question must be always what Melville meant, what way of life its author intended *Moby-Dick* to memorialize, what otherness is here. To bring together the results of many critical and scholarly efforts and to add new materials so that *Moby-Dick* may be interpreted as a whole and more fully known as a great literary memorial of its time and of its author, this elaborately annotated edition was conceived and is now published in the centennial year of Melville's masterpiece.

LUTHER S. MANSFIELD

Williams College

HOWARD P. VINCENT

Illinois Institute of Technology

September 1951

In Token

of my admiration for his genius,

This book is inscribed

to

NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE.

ETYMOLOGY

(SUPPLIED BY A LATE CONSUMPTIVE USHER TO A
GRAMMAR SCHOOL.)

THE pale Usher—threadbare in coat, heart, body, and brain; I see him now. He was ever dusting his old lexicons and grammars, with a queer handkerchief, mockingly embellished with all the gay flags of all the known nations of the world. He loved to dust his old grammars; it somehow mildly reminded him of his mortality.

ETYMOLOGY

“While you take in hand to school others, and to teach them by what name a whale-fish is to be called in our tongue, leaving out, through ignorance, the letter H, which almost alone maketh up the signification of the word, you deliver that which is not true.”
Hackluyt.

“WHALE. * * * Sw. and Dan. *hval*. This animal is named from roundness or rolling; for in Dan. *hvalt* is arched or vaulted.”
Webster’s Dictionary.

“WHALE. * * * It is more immediately from the Dut. and Ger. *Wallen*; A.S. *Walw-ian*, to roll, to wallow.”
Richardson’s Dictionary.

𐤆,	<i>Hebrew.</i>
χητος,	<i>Greek.</i>
CETUS,	<i>Latin.</i>
WHÆL,	<i>Anglo-Saxon.</i>
HVALT,	<i>Danish.</i>
WAL,	<i>Dutch.</i>
HWAL,	<i>Swedish.</i>
WHALE,	<i>Icelandic.</i>
WHALE,	<i>English.</i>
BALEINE,	<i>French.</i>
BALLENA,	<i>Spanish.</i>
PEKEE-NUEE-NUEE,	<i>Fegee.</i>
PEHEE-NUEE-NUEE,	<i>Erromangoan.</i>

EXTRACTS

(SUPPLIED BY A SUB-SUB-LIBRARIAN.)

It will be seen that this mere painstaking burrower and grub-worm of a poor devil of a Sub-Sub appears to have gone through the long Vaticans and street-stalls of the earth, picking up whatever random allusions to whales he could anyways find in any book whatsoever, sacred or profane. Therefore you must not, in every case at least, take the higgledy-piggledy whale statements, however authentic, in these extracts, for veritable gospel cetology. Far from it. As touching the ancient authors generally, as well as the poets here appearing, these extracts are solely valuable or entertaining, as affording a glancing bird's eye view of what has been promiscuously said, thought, fancied, and sung of Leviathan, by many nations and generations, including our own.

So fare thee well, poor devil of a Sub-Sub, whose commentator I am. Thou belongest to that hopeless, sallow tribe which no wine of this world will ever warm; and for whom even Pale Sherry would be too rosy-strong; but with whom one sometimes loves to sit, and feel poor-devilish, too; and grow convivial upon tears; and say to them bluntly, with full eyes and empty glasses, and in not altogether unpleasant sadness—Give it up, Sub-Subs! For by how much the more pains ye take to please the world, by so much the more shall ye for ever go thankless! Would that I could clear out Hampton Court and the Tuileries for ye! But gulp down your tears and hie aloft to the royal-mast with your hearts; for your friends who have gone before are clearing out the seven-storied heavens, and making refugees of long-pampered Gabriel, Michael, and Raphael, against your coming. Here ye strike but splintered hearts together—there, ye shall strike unsplinterable glasses!

EXTRACTS

“And God created great whales.”
Genesis.

“Leviathan maketh a path to shine after him;
One would think the deep to be hoary.”
Job.

“Now the Lord had prepared a great fish to swallow up
Jonah.”
Jonah.

“There go the ships; there is that Leviathan whom thou hast
made to play therein.”
Psalms.

“In that day, the Lord with his sore, and great, and strong
sword, shall punish Leviathan the piercing serpent, even Levia-
than that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is
in the sea.”
Isaiah.

“And what thing soever besides cometh within the chaos of
this monster’s mouth, be it beast, boat, or stone, down it goes
all incontinently that foul great swallow of his, and perisheth in
the bottomless gulf of his paunch.”

Holland’s Plutarch’s Morals.

“The Indian Sea breedeth the most and the biggest fishes
that are: among which the Whales and Whirlpooles called
Balæne, take up as much in length as four acres or arpens of
land.”
Holland’s Pliny.

"Scarcely had we proceeded two days on the sea, when about sunrise a great many Whales and other monsters of the sea, appeared. Among the former, one was of a most monstrous size. * * This came towards us, open-mouthed, raising the waves on all sides, and beating the sea before him into a foam."

Tooke's Lucian.

"The True History."

"He visited this country also with a view of catching horse-whales, which had bones of very great value for their teeth, of which he brought some to the king. * * * The best whales were caught in his own country, of which some were forty-eight, some fifty yards long. He said that he was one of six who had killed sixty in two days."

*Other or Ochter's verbal narrative taken down
from his mouth by King Alfred. A.D. 890.*

"And whereas all the other things, whether beast or vessel, that enter into the dreadful gulf of this monster's (whale's) mouth, are immediately lost and swallowed up, the sea-gudgeon retires into it in great security, and there sleeps."

MONTAIGNE.—Apology for Raimond Sebond.

"Let us fly, let us fly! Old Nick take me if it is not Leviathan described by the noble prophet Moses in the life of patient Job."

Rabelais.

"This whale's liver was two cart-loads."

Stowe's Annals.

"The great Leviathan that maketh the seas to seethe like boiling pan."

Lord Bacon's Version of the Psalms.

"Touching that monstrous bulk of the whale or ork we have received nothing certain. They grow exceeding fat, insomuch that an incredible quantity of oil will be extracted out of one whale."

Ibid "History of Life and Death."

"The sovereignest thing on earth is parmacetti for an inward bruise."

King Henry.

“Very like a whale.”

Hamlet.

“Which to secure, no skill of leach’s art
Mote him availle, but to returne againe
To his wound’s worker, that with lowly dart,
Dinting his breast, had bred his restless paine,
Like as the wounded whale to shore flies thro’ the maine.”

The Fairie Queen.

“Immense as whales, the motion of whose vast bodies can in
a peaceful calm trouble the ocean till it boil.”

Sir William Davenant. Preface to Gondibert.

“What spermacetti is, men might justly doubt, since the learned
Hosmannus in his work of thirty years, saith plainly, *Nescio quid
sit.*”

*Sir T. Browne. Of Sperma Ceti and the
Sperma Ceti Whale. Vide his V. E.*

“Like Spencer’s Talus with his modern flail
He threatens ruin with his ponderous tail.
* * * * *

Their fixed jav’lins in his side he wears,
And on his back a grove of pikes appears.”

Waller’s Battle of the Summer Islands.

“By art is created that great Leviathan, called a Common-
wealth or State—(in Latin, Civitas) which is but an artificial
man.”

Opening sentence of Hobbes’s Leviathan.

“Silly Mansoul swallowed it without chewing, as if it had
been a sprat in the mouth of a whale.”

Pilgrim’s Progress.

“That sea beast
Leviathan, which God of all his works
Created hugest that swim the ocean stream.”

Paradise Lost.

——— "There Leviathan,
 Hugest of living creatures, in the deep
 Stretched like a promontory sleeps or swims,
 And seems a moving land; and at his gills
 Draws in, and at his breath spouts out a sea."

Ibid.

"The mighty whales which swim in a sea of water, and have
 a sea of oil swimming in them."

Fuller's Profane and Holy State.

"So close behind some promontory lie
 The huge Leviathans to attend their prey,
 And give no chace, but swallow in the fry,
 Which through their gaping jaws mistake the way."
Dryden's Annus Mirabilis.

"While the whale is floating at the stern of the ship, they cut
 off his head, and tow it with a boat as near the shore as it will
 come; but it will be aground in twelve or thirteen feet water."

Thomas Edge's Ten Voyages to Spitzbergen, in Purchass.

"In their way they saw many whales sporting in the ocean,
 and in wantonness fuzzing up the water through their pipes and
 vents, which nature has placed on their shoulders."

Sir T. Herbert's Voyages into Asia and Africa.

Harris Coll.

"Here they saw such huge troops of whales, that they were
 forced to proceed with a great deal of caution for fear they
 should run their ship upon them."

Schouten's Sixth Circumnavigation.

"We set sail from the Elbe, wind N. E. in the ship called The
 Jonas-in-the-Whale. • • •

Some say the whale can't open his mouth, but that is a
 fable. • • •

They frequently climb up the masts to see whether they can

see a whale, for the first discoverer has a ducat for his pains. * * *

I was told of a whale taken near Shetland, that had above a barrel of herrings in his belly. * * *

One of our harpooneers told me that he caught once a whale in Spitzbergen that was white all over."

A Voyage to Greenland, A.D. 1671.

Harris Coll.

"Several whales have come in upon this coast (Fife). Anno 1652, one eighty feet in length of the whale-bone kind came in, which, (as I was informed) besides a vast quantity of oil, did afford 500 weight of baleen. The jaws of it stand for a gate in the garden of Pitferren."

Sibbald's Fife and Kinross.

"Myself have agreed to try whether I can master and kill this Sperma-ceti whale, for I could never hear of any of that sort that was killed by any man, such is his fierceness and swiftness."

Richard Strafford's Letter from the Bermudas.

Phil. Trans. A.D. 1668.

"Whales in the sea
God's voice obey."

N. E. Primer.

"We saw also abundance of large whales, there being more in those southern seas, as I may say, by a hundred to one; than we have to the northward of us."

Captain Cowley's Voyage round the Globe. A.D. 1729.

* * * * * "and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell, as to bring on a disorder of the brain."

Ulloa's South America.

"To fifty chosen sylphs of special note,
We trust the important charge, the petticoat.
Oft have we known that seven-fold fence to fail,
Tho' stuffed with hoops and armed with ribs of whale."

Rape of the Lock.

"If we compare land animals in respect to magnitude, with those that take up their abode in the deep, we shall find they will appear contemptible in the comparison. The whale is doubtless the largest animal in creation."

Goldsmith, Nat. His.

"If you should write a fable for little fishes, you would make them speak like great whales."

Goldsmith to Johnson.

"In the afternoon we saw what was supposed to be a rock, but it was found to be a dead whale, which some Asiatics had killed, and were then towing ashore. They seemed to endeavor to conceal themselves behind the whale, in order to avoid being seen by us."

Cook's Voyages.

"The larger whales, they seldom venture to attack. They stand in so great dread of some of them, that when out at sea they are afraid to mention even their names, and carry dung, limestone, juniper-wood, and some other articles of the same nature in their boats, in order to terrify and prevent their too near approach."

*Uno Von Troil's Letters on Banks's and
Solander's Voyage to Iceland in 1772.*

"The Spermacetti Whale found by the Nantuckois, is an active, fierce animal, and requires vast address and boldness in the fishermen."

*Thomas Jefferson's Whale Memorial to the
French minister in 1778.*

"And pray, sir, what in the world is equal to it?"

*Edmund Burke's reference in Parliament
to the Nantucket Whale-Fishery.*

"Spain—a great whale stranded on the shores of Europe."
Edmund Burke. (somewhere.)

"A tenth branch of the king's ordinary revenue, said to be grounded on the consideration of his guarding and protecting the seas from pirates and robbers, is the right to *royal* fish, which are whale and sturgeon. And these, when either thrown ashore or caught near the coast, are the property of the king."

Blackstone.

"Soon to the sport of death the crews repair:
Rodmond unerring o'er his head suspends
The barbed steel, and every turn attends."

Falconer's Shipwreck.

"Bright shone the roofs, the domes, the spires,
And rockets blew self driven,
To hang their momentary fire
Around the vault of heaven.

"So fire with water to compare,
The ocean serves on high,
Up-spouted by a whale in air,
To express unwieldy joy."

Cowper, on the Queen's Visit to London.

"Ten or fifteen gallons of blood are thrown out of the heart at a stroke, with immense velocity."

*John Hunter's account of the dissection
of a whale. (A small sized one.)*

"The aorta of a whale is larger in the bore than the main pipe of the water-works at London Bridge, and the water roaring in its passage through that pipe is inferior in impetus and velocity to the blood gushing from the whale's heart."

Paley's Theology.

"The whale is a mammiferous animal without hind feet."

Baron Cuvier.

"In 40 degrees south, we saw Spermacetti Whales, but did not take any till the first of May, the sea being then covered with them."

*Colnett's Voyage for the Purpose of
Extending the Spermacetti Whale Fishery.*

"In the free element beneath me swam,
Floundered and dived, in play, in chace, in battle,
Fishes of every color, form, and kind;
Which language cannot paint, and mariner
Had never seen; from dread Leviathan
To insect millions peopling every wave:
Gather'd in shoals immense, like floating islands,
Led by mysterious instincts through that waste
And trackless region, though on every side
Assaulted by voracious enemies,
Whales, sharks, and monsters, arm'd in front or jaw.
With swords, saws, spiral horns, or hooked fangs."
Montgomery's World before the Flood.

"Io! Pæan! Io! sing,
To the finny people's king.
Not a mightier whale than this
In the vast Atlantic is;
Not a fatter fish than he,
Flounders round the Polar Sea."
Charles Lamb's Triumph of the Whale.

"In the year 1690 some persons were on a high hill observing the whales spouting and sporting with each other, when one observed; there—pointing to the sea—is a green pasture where our children's grand-children will go for bread."
Obed Macy's History of Nantucket.

"I built a cottage for Susan and myself and made a gateway in the form of a Gothic Arch, by setting up a whale's jaw bones."
Hawthorne's Twice Told Tales.

"She came to bespeak a monument for her first love, who had been killed by a whale in the Pacific ocean, no less than forty years ago."
Ibid.

"No, Sir, 'tis a Right Whale," answered Tom; "I saw his spout; he threw up a pair of as pretty rainbows as a Christian would wish to look at. He's a raal oil-butt, that fellow!"
Cooper's Pilot.

"The papers were brought in, and we saw in the Berlin Gazette that whales had been introduced on the stage there."

Eckermann's Conversations with Goethe.

"My God! Mr. Chace, what is the matter?" I answered, "we have been stove by a whale."

"Narrative of the Shipwreck of the Whale Ship Essex of Nantucket, which was attacked and finally destroyed by a large Sperm Whale in the Pacific Ocean." By Owen Chace of Nantucket, first mate of said vessel. New York. 1821.

"A mariner sat in the shrouds one night,
The wind was piping free;
Now bright, now dimmed, was the moonlight pale,
And the phosphor gleamed in the wake of the whale,
As it floundered in the sea."

Elizabeth Oakes Smith.

"The quantity of line withdrawn from the different boats engaged in the capture of this one whale, amounted altogether to 10,440 yards or nearly six English miles." * * *

"Sometimes the whale shakes its tremendous tail in the air, which, cracking like a whip, resounds to the distance of three or four miles."

Scoresby.

"Mad with the agonies he endures from these fresh attacks, the infuriated Sperm Whale rolls over and over; he rears his enormous head, and with wide expanded jaws snaps at everything around him; he rushes at the boats with his head; they are propelled before him with vast swiftness, and sometimes utterly destroyed.

* * * It is a matter of great astonishment that the consideration of the habits of so interesting, and, in a commercial point of view, of so important an animal (as the Sperm Whale) should have been so entirely neglected, or should have excited so little curiosity among the numerous, and many of them competent

observers, that of late years must have possessed the most abundant and the most convenient opportunities of witnessing their habitudes."

Thomas Beale's History of the Sperm Whale, 1839.

"The Cachalot" (Sperm Whale) "is not only better armed than the True Whale" (Greenland or Right Whale) "in possessing a formidable weapon at either extremity of its body, but also more frequently displays a disposition to employ these weapons offensively, and in a manner at once so artful, bold, and mischievous, as to lead to its being regarded as the most dangerous to attack of all the known species of the whale tribe."

*Frederick Debell Bennett's Whaling
Voyage Round the Globe. 1840.*

October 13. "There she blows," was sung out from the mast-head.

"Where away?" demanded the captain.

"Three points off the lee bow, sir."

"Raise up your wheel. Steady!"

"Steady, sir."

"Mast-head ahoy! Do you see that whale now?"

"Ay ay, sir! A shoal of Sperm Whales! There she blows! There she breaches!"

"Sing out! sing out every time!"

"Ay ay, sir! There she blows! there—there—*thar* she blows—bowes—bo-o-o-s!"

"How far off?"

"Two miles and a half."

"Thunder and lightning! so near! Call all hands!"

*J. Ross Browne's Etchings
of a Whaling Cruise. 1846.*

"The Whale-ship Globe, on board of which vessel occurred the horrid transactions we are about to relate, belonged to the island of Nantucket."

*"Narrative of the Globe Mutiny, by
Lay and Hussey survivors. A.D. 1828.*

"Being once pursued by a whale which he had wounded, he parried the assault for some time with a lance; but the furious monster at length rushed on the boat; himself and comrades only being preserved by leaping into the water when they saw the onset was inevitable."

Missionary Journal of Tyerman and Bennett.

"Nantucket itself," said Mr. Webster, "is a very striking and peculiar portion of the National interest. There is a population of eight or nine thousand persons, living here in the sea, adding largely every year to the National wealth by the boldest and most persevering industry."

*Report of Daniel Webster's Speech in the
U. S. Senate, on the application for the
Erection of a Breakwater at Nantucket.
1828.*

"The whale fell directly over him, and probably killed him in a moment."

*"The Whale and his Captors, or The Whaleman's
Adventures and the Whale's Biography, gathered
on the Homeward Cruise of the Commodore
Preble." By Rev. Henry T. Cheever.*

"If you make the least damn bit of noise," replied Samuel, "I will send you to hell."

*Life of Samuel Comstock (the mutineer), by
his brother, William Comstock. Another Ver-
sion of the whale-ship Globe narrative.*

"The voyages of the Dutch and English to the Northern Ocean, in order, if possible, to discover a passage through it to India, though they failed of their main object, laid open the haunts of the whale."

McCulloch's Commercial Dictionary.

"These things are reciprocal; the ball rebounds, only to bound forward again; for now in laying open the haunts of the whale,

the whalemén seem to have indirectly hit upon new clews to that same mystic North-West Passage."

From "Something" unpublished.

"It is impossible to meet a whale-ship on the ocean without being struck by her near appearance. The vessel under short sail, with look-outs at the mast-heads, eagerly scanning the wide expanse around them, has a totally different air from those engaged in a regular voyage."

Currents and Whaling. U. S. Ex. Ex.

"Pedestrians in the vicinity of London and elsewhere may recollect having seen large curved bones set upright in the earth, either to form arches over gateways, or entrances to alcoves, and they may perhaps have been told that these were the ribs of whales."

*Tales of a Whale Voyager
to the Arctic Ocean.*

"It was not till the boats returned from the pursuit of these whales, that the whites saw their ship in bloody possession of the savages enrolled among the crew."

*Newspaper Account of the Taking and
Retaking of the Whale-ship Hobomack.*

"It is generally well known that out of the crews of Whaling vessels (American) few ever return in the ships on board of which they departed."

Cruise in a Whale Boat.

"Suddenly a mighty mass emerged from the water, and shot up perpendicularly into the air. It was the whale."

Miriam Coffin or the Whale Fisherman.

"The Whale is harpooned to be sure; but bethink you, how you would manage a powerful unbroken colt, with the mere appliance of a rope tied to the root of his tail."

A Chapter on Whaling in Ribs and Trucks.

"On one occasion I saw two of these monsters (whales) probably male and female, slowly swimming, one after the other, within less than a stone's throw of the shore" (Terra Del Fuego), "over which the beech tree extended its branches."

Darwin's Voyage of a Naturalist.

"'Stern all!' exclaimed the mate, as upon turning his head, he saw the distended jaws of a large Sperm Whale close to the head of the boat, threatening it with instant destruction;—'Stern all, for your lives!'"

Wharton the Whale Killer.

"So be cheery, my lads, let your hearts never fail,
While the bold harpooneer is striking the whale!"

Nantucket Song.

"Oh, the rare old Whale, mid storm and gale
In his ocean home will be
A giant in might, where might is right,
And King of the boundless sea."

Whale Song.

CHAPTER I

LOOMINGS

CALL me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself involuntarily pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong moral principle to prevent me from deliberately stepping into the street, and methodically knocking people's hats off—then, I account it high time to get to sea as soon as I can. This is my substitute for pistol and ball. With a philosophical flourish Cato throws himself upon his sword; I quietly take to the ship. There is nothing surprising in this. If they but knew it, almost all men in their degree, some time or other, cherish very nearly the same feelings towards the ocean with me.

There now is your insular city of the Marhattoes, belted round by wharves as Indian isles by coral reefs—commerce surrounds it with her surf. Right and left, the streets take you waterward. Its extreme down-town is the battery, where that noble mole is washed by waves, and cooled by breezes, which a few hours previous were out of sight of land. Look at the crowds of water-gazers there.

Circumambulate the city of a dreamy Sabbath afternoon. Go from Corlears Hook to Coenties Slip, and from thence, by Whitehall, northward. What do you see?—Posted like silent sentinels all around the town, stand thousands upon thousands of mortal men fixed in ocean reveries. Some leaning against the spiles; some seated upon the pier-heads; some looking over the bul-

warks of ships from China; some high aloft in the rigging, as if striving to get a still better seaward peep. But these are all landmen; of week days pent up in lath and plaster—tied to counters, nailed to benches, clinched to desks. How then is this? Are the green fields gone? What do they here?

But look! here come more crowds, pacing straight for the water, and seemingly bound for a dive. Strange! Nothing will content them but the extremest limit of the land; loitering under the shady lee of yonder warehouses will not suffice. No. They must get just as nigh the water as they possibly can without falling in. And there they stand—miles of them—leagues. Inlanders all, they come from lanes and alleys, streets and avenues—north, east, south, and west. Yet here they all unite. Tell me, does the magnetic virtue of the needles of the compasses of all those ships attract them thither?

Once more. Say, you are in the country; in some high land of lakes. Take almost any path you please, and ten to one it carries you down in a dale, and leaves you there by a pool in the stream. There is magic in it. Let the most absent-minded of men be plunged in his deepest reveries—stand that man on his legs, set his feet a-going, and he will infallibly lead you to water, if water there be in all that region. Should you ever be athirst in the great American desert, try this experiment, if your caravan happen to be supplied with a metaphysical professor. Yes, as every one knows, meditation and water are wedded for ever.

But here is an artist. He desires to paint you the dreamiest, shadiest, quietest, most enchanting bit of romantic landscape in all the valley of the Saco. What is the chief element he employs? There stand his trees, each with a hollow trunk, as if a hermit and a crucifix were within; and here sleeps his meadow, and there sleep his cattle; and up from yonder cottage goes a sleepy smoke. Deep into distant woodlands winds a mazy way, reaching to overlapping spurs of mountains bathed in their hill-side blue. But though the picture lies thus tranced, and though this pine-tree shakes down its sighs like leaves upon this shepherd's head, yet all were vain, unless the shepherd's eye were fixed upon the magic stream before him. Go visit the Prairies in June,

when for scores on scores of miles you wade knee-deep among Tiger-lilies—what is the one charm wanting?—Water—there is not a drop of water there! Were Niagara but a cataract of sand, would you travel your thousand miles to see it? Why did the poor poet of Tennessee, upon suddenly receiving two handfuls of silver, deliberate whether to buy him a coat, which he sadly needed, or invest his money in a pedestrian trip to Rockaway Beach? Why is almost every robust healthy boy with a robust healthy soul in him, at some time or other crazy to go to sea? Why upon your first voyage as a passenger, did you yourself feel such a mystical vibration, when first told that you and your ship were now out of sight of land? Why did the old Persians hold the sea holy? Why did the Greeks give it a separate deity, and own brother of Jove? Surely all this is not without meaning. And still deeper the meaning of that story of Narcissus, who because he could not grasp the tormenting, mild image he saw in the fountain, plunged into it and was drowned. But that same image, we ourselves see in all rivers and oceans. It is the image of the ungraspable phantom of life; and this is the key to it all.

Now, when I say that I am in the habit of going to sea whenever I begin to grow hazy about the eyes, and begin to be over conscious of my lungs, I do not mean to have it inferred that I ever go to sea as a passenger. For to go as a passenger you must needs have a purse, and a purse is but a rag unless you have something in it. Besides, passengers get sea-sick—grow quarrelsome—don't sleep of nights—do not enjoy themselves much, as a general thing;—no, I never go as a passenger; nor, though I am something of a salt, do I ever go to sea as a Commodore, or a Captain, or a Cook. I abandon the glory and distinction of such offices to those who like them. For my part, I abominate all honorable respectable toils, trials, and tribulations of every kind whatsoever. It is quite as much as I can do to take care of myself, without taking care of ships, barques, brigs, schooners, and what not. And as for going as cook,—though I confess there is considerable glory in that, a cook being a sort of officer on ship-board—yet, somehow, I never fancied broiling fowls;—though once broiled, judiciously buttered, and judgmatically salted and peppered, there is no one who will

speaking more respectfully, not to say reverentially, of a broiled fowl than I will. It is out of the idolatrous dotings of the old Egyptians upon broiled ibis and roasted river horse, that you see the mummies of those creatures in their huge bake-houses the pyramids.

No, when I go to sea, I go as a simple sailor, right before the mast, plumb down into the forecastle, aloft there to the royal mast-head. True, they rather order me about some, and make me jump from spar to spar, like a grasshopper in a May meadow. And at first, this sort of thing is unpleasant enough. It touches one's sense of honor, particularly if you come of an old established family in the land, the Van Rensselaers, or Randolphins, or Hardicanutes. And more than all, if just previous to putting your hand into the tar-pot, you have been lording it as a country schoolmaster, making the tallest boys stand in awe of you. The transition is a keen one, I assure you, from a schoolmaster to a sailor, and requires a strong decoction of Seneca and the Stoics to enable you to grin and bear it. But even this wears off in time.

What of it, if some old hunks of a sea-captain orders me to get a broom and sweep down the decks? What does that indignity amount to, weighed, I mean, in the scales of the New Testament? Do you think the archangel Gabriel thinks anything the less of me, because I promptly and respectfully obey that old hunks in that particular instance? Who aint a slave? Tell me that. Well, then, however the old sea-captains may order me about—however they may thump and punch me about, I have the satisfaction of knowing that it is all right; that everybody else is one way or other served in much the same way—either in a physical or metaphysical point of view, that is; and so the universal thump is passed round, and all hands should rub each other's shoulder-blades, and be content.

Again, I always go to sea as a sailor, because they make a point of paying me for my trouble, whereas they never pay passengers a single penny that I ever heard of. On the contrary, passengers themselves must pay. And there is all the difference in the world between paying and being paid. The act of paying is perhaps the most uncomfortable infliction that the two orchard

thieves entailed upon us. But *being paid*,—what will compare with it? The urbane activity with which a man receives money is really marvellous, considering that we so earnestly believe money to be the root of all earthly ills, and that on no account can a monied man enter heaven. Ah! how cheerfully we consign ourselves to perdition!

Finally, I always go to sea as a sailor, because of the wholesome exercise and pure air of the fore-castle deck. For as in this world, head winds are far more prevalent than winds from astern (that is, if you never violate the Pythagorean maxim), so for the most part the Commodore on the quarter-deck gets his atmosphere at second hand from the sailors on the fore-castle. He thinks he breathes it first; but not so. In much the same way do the commonalty lead their leaders in many other things, at the same time that the leaders little suspect it. But wherefore it was that after having repeatedly smelt the sea as a merchant sailor, I should now take it into my head to go on a whaling voyage; this the invisible police officer of the Fates, who has the constant surveillance of me, and secretly dogs me, and influences me in some unaccountable way—he can better answer than any one else.) And, doubtless, my going on this whaling voyage, formed part of the grand programme of Providence that was drawn up a long time ago. It came in as a sort of brief interlude and solo between more extensive performances. I take it that this part of the bill must have run something like this:

*“Grand Contested Election for the Presidency of the
United States.*

“WHALING VOYAGE BY ONE ISHMAEL.

“BLOODY BATTLE IN AFFGHANISTAN.”

Though I cannot tell why it was exactly that those stage managers, the Fates, put me down for this shabby part of a whaling voyage, when others were set down for magnificent parts in high tragedies, and short and easy parts in genteel comedies, and jolly parts in farces—though I cannot tell why this was exactly; yet, now that I recall all the circumstances, I think I can see a little into the springs and motives which being cunningly presented to me under various disguises, induced me to set about

performing the part I did, besides cajoling me into the delusion that it was a choice resulting from my own unbiased freewill and discriminating judgment.]

Chief among these motives was the overwhelming idea of the great whale himself. Such a portentous and mysterious monster roused all my curiosity. Then the wild and distant seas where he rolled his island bulk; the undeliverable, nameless perils of the whale; these, with all the attending marvels of a thousand Patagonian sights and sounds, helped to sway me to my wish. With other men, perhaps, such things would not have been inducements; but as for me, I am tormented with an everlasting itch for things remote. I love to sail forbidden seas, and land on barbarous coasts. Not ignoring what is good, I am quick to perceive a horror, and could still be social with it—would they let me—since it is but well to be on friendly terms with all the inmates of the place one lodges in.

By reason of these things, then, the whaling voyage was welcome; the great flood-gates of the wonder-world swung open, and in the wild conceits that swayed me to my purpose, two and two there floated into my inmost soul, endless processions of the whale, and, mid most of them all, one grand hooded phantom, like a snow hill in the air.]

CHAPTER II

THE CARPET-BAG

I STUFFED a shirt or two into my old carpet-bag, tucked it under my arm, and started for Cape Horn and the Pacific. Quitting the good city of old Manhatta, I duly arrived in New Bedford. It was on a Saturday night in December. Much was I disappointed upon learning that the little packet for Nantucket had already sailed, and that no way of reaching that place would offer, till the following Monday.

As most young candidates for the pains and penalties of whal-

ing stop at this same New Bedford, thence to embark on their voyage, it may as well be related that I, for one, had no idea of so doing. For my mind was made up to sail in no other than a Nantucket craft, because there was a fine, boisterous something about everything connected with that famous old island, which amazingly pleased me. Besides though New Bedford has of late been gradually monopolizing the business of whaling, and though in this matter poor old Nantucket is now much behind her, yet Nantucket was her great original—the Tyre of this Carthage;—the place where the first dead American whale was stranded. Where else but from Nantucket did those aboriginal whalers, the Red-Men, first sally out in canoes to give chase to the Leviathan? And where but from Nantucket, too, did that first adventurous little sloop put forth, partly laden with imported cobble-stones—so goes the story—to throw at the whales, in order to discover when they were nigh enough to risk a harpoon from the bowsprit?

Now having a night, a day, and still another night following before me in New Bedford, ere I could embark for my destined port, it became a matter of concernment where I was to eat and sleep meanwhile. It was a very dubious-looking, nay, a very dark and dismal night, biting cold and cheerless. I knew no one in the place. With anxious grapnels I had sounded my pocket, and only brought up a few pieces of silver,—So, wherever you go, Ishmael, said I to myself, as I stood in the middle of a dreary street shouldering my bag, and comparing the gloom towards the north with the darkness towards the south—wherever in your wisdom you may conclude to lodge for the night, my dear Ishmael, be sure to inquire the price, and don't be too particular.

With halting steps I paced the streets, and passed the sign of "The Crossed Harpoons"—but it looked too expensive and jolly there. Further on, from the bright red windows of the "Sword-Fish Inn," there came such fervent rays, that it seemed to have melted the packed snow and ice from before the house, for everywhere else the congealed frost lay ten inches thick in a hard, asphaltic pavement,—rather weary for me, when I struck my foot against the flinty projections, because from hard, re-

morseless service the soles of my boots were in a most miserable plight. Too expensive and jolly, again thought I, pausing one moment to watch the broad glare in the street, and hear the sounds of the tinkling glasses within. But go on, Ishmael, said I at last; don't you hear? get away from before the door; your patched boots are stopping the way. So on I went. I now by instinct followed the streets that took me waterward, for there, doubtless, were the cheapest, if not the cheeriest inns.

Such dreary streets! blocks of blackness, not houses, on either hand, and here and there a candle, like a candle moving about in a tomb. At this hour of the night, of the last day of the week, that quarter of the town proved all but deserted. But presently I came to a smoky light proceeding from a low, wide building, the door of which stood invitingly open. It had a careless look, as if it were meant for the uses of the public; so, entering, the first thing I did was to stumble over an ash-box in the porch. Ha! thought I, ha, as the flying particles almost choked me, are these ashes from that destroyed city, Gomorrah? But "The Crossed Harpoons," and "The Sword-Fish?"—this, then, must needs be the sign of "The Trap." However, I picked myself up and hearing a loud voice within, pushed on and opened a second, interior door.

It seemed the great Black Parliament sitting in Tophet. A hundred black faces turned round in their rows to peer; and beyond, a black Angel of Doom was beating a book in a pulpit. It was a negro church; and the preacher's text was about the blackness of darkness, and the weeping and wailing and teeth-gnashing there. Ha, Ishmael, muttered I, backing out, Wretched entertainment at the sign of "The Trap!"

Moving on, I at last came to a dim sort of light not far from the docks, and heard a forlorn creaking in the air; and looking up, saw a swinging sign over the door with a white painting upon it, faintly representing a tall straight jet of misty spray, and these words underneath—"The Spouter-Inn:—Peter Coffin."

Coffin?—Spouter?—Rather ominous in that particular connexion, thought I. But it is a common name in Nantucket, they say, and I suppose this Peter here is an emigrant from there. As the light looked so dim, and the place, for the time, looked

quiet enough, and the dilapidated little wooden house itself looked as if it might have been carted here from the ruins of some burnt district, and as the swinging sign had a poverty-stricken sort of creak to it, I thought that here was the very spot for cheap lodgings, and the best of pea coffee.

It was a queer sort of place—a gable-ended old house, one side palsied as it were, and leaning over sadly. It stood on a sharp bleak corner, where that tempestuous wind Euroclydon kept up a worse howling than ever it did about poor Paul's tossed craft. Euroclydon, nevertheless, is a mighty pleasant zephyr to any one in-doors, with his feet on the hob quietly toasting for bed. "In judging of that tempestuous wind called Euroclydon," says an old writer—of whose works I possess the the only copy extant—"it maketh a marvellous difference, whether thou lookest out at it from a glass window where the frost is all on the outside, or whether thou observest it from that sashless window, where the frost is on both sides, and of which the wight Death is the only glazier." True enough, thought I, as this passage occurred to my mind—old black-letter, thou reasonest well. Yes, these eyes are windows, and this body of mine is the house. What a pity they didn't stop up the chinks and the crannies though, and thrust in a little lint here and there. But it's too late to make any improvements now. The universe is finished; the copestone is on, and the chips were carted off a million years ago. Poor Lazarus there, chattering his teeth against the curbstone for his pillow, and shaking off his tatters with his shiverings, he might plug up both ears with rags, and put a corn-cob into his mouth, and yet that would not keep out the tempestuous Euroclydon. Euroclydon! says old Dives, in his red silken wrapper—(he had a redder one afterwards) pooh, pooh! What a fine frosty night; how Orion glitters; what northern lights! Let them talk of their oriental summer climes of everlasting conservatories; give me the privilege of making my own summer with my own coals.

But what thinks Lazarus? Can he warm his blue hands by holding them up to the grand northern lights? Would not Lazarus rather be in Sumatra than here? Would he not far rather lay him down lengthwise along the line of the equator; yea, ye

gods! go down to the fiery pit itself, in order to keep out this frost?

Now, that Lazarus should lie stranded there on the curbstone before the door of Dives, this is more wonderful than that an iceberg should be moored to one of the Moluccas. Yet Dives himself, he too lives like a Czar in an ice palace made of frozen sighs, and being a president of a temperance society, he only drinks the tepid tears of orphans.

But no more of this blubbering now, we are going a-whaling, and there is plenty of that yet to come. Let us scrape the ice from our frosted feet, and see what sort of a place this "Spouter" may be.

CHAPTER III

THE SPOUTER-INN

ENTERING that gable-ended Spouter-Inn, you found yourself in a wide, low, straggling entry with old-fashioned wainscots, reminding one of the bulwarks of some condemned old craft. On one side hung a very large oil-painting so thoroughly be-smoked, and every way defaced, that in the unequal cross-lights by which you viewed it, it was only by diligent study and a series of systematic visits to it, and careful inquiry of the neighbors, that you could any way arrive at an understanding of its purpose. Such unaccountable masses of shades and shadows, that at first you almost thought some ambitious young artist, in the time of the New England hags, had endeavored to delineate chaos bewitched. But by dint of much and earnest contemplation, and oft repeated ponderings, and especially by throwing open the little window towards the back of the entry, you at last come to the conclusion that such an idea, however wild, might not be altogether unwarranted.

But what most puzzled and confounded you was a long, limber, portentous, black mass of something hovering in the

centre of the picture over three blue, dim, perpendicular lines floating in a nameless yeast. A boggy, soggy, squitchy picture truly, enough to drive a nervous man distracted. Yet was there a sort of indefinite, half-attained, unimaginable sublimity about it that fairly froze you to it, till you involuntarily took an oath with yourself to find out what that marvellous painting meant. Ever and anon a bright, but, alas, deceptive idea would dart you through.—It's the Black Sea in a midnight gale.—It's the unnatural combat of the four primal elements.—It's a blasted heath.—It's a Hyperborean winter scene.—It's the breaking-up of the ice-bound stream of Time. But at last all these fancies yielded to that one portentous something in the picture's midst. *That* once found out, and all the rest were plain. But stop; does it not bear a faint resemblance to a gigantic fish? even the great leviathan himself?

In fact, the artist's design seemed this: a final theory of my own, partly based upon the aggregated opinions of many aged persons with whom I conversed upon the subject. The picture represents a Cape-Horner in a great hurricane; the half-foudered ship weltering there with its three dismantled masts alone visible; and an exasperated whale, purposing to spring clean over the craft, is in the enormous act of impaling himself upon the three mast-heads.

The opposite wall of this entry was hung all over with a heathenish array of monstrous clubs and spears. Some were thickly set with glittering teeth resembling ivory saws; others were tufted with knots of human hair; and one was sickle-shaped, with a vast handle sweeping round like the segment made in the new-mown grass by a long-armed mower. You shuddered as you gazed, and wondered what monstrous cannibal and savage could ever have gone a death-harvesting with such a hacking, horrifying implement. Mixed with these were rusty old whaling lances and harpoons all broken and deformed. Some were storied weapons. With this once long lance, now wildly elbowed, fifty years ago did Nathan Swain kill fifteen whales between a sunrise and a sunset. And that harpoon—so like a corkscrew now—was flung in Javan seas, and run away with by a whale, years afterward slain off the Cape of Blanco. The original iron entered

nigh the tail, and, like a restless needle sojourning in the body of a man, travelled full forty feet, and at last was found imbedded in the hump.

Crossing this dusky entry, and on through yon low-arched way—cut through what in old times must have been a great central chimney with fire-places 'all round—you enter the public room. A still duskier place is this, with such low ponderous beams above, and such old wrinkled planks beneath, that you would almost fancy you trod some old craft's cockpits, especially of such a howling night, when this corner-anchored old ark rocked so furiously. On one side stood a long, low, shelf-like table covered with cracked glass cases, filled with dusty rarities gathered from this wide world's remotest nooks. Projecting from the further angle of the room stands a dark-looking den—the bar—a rude attempt at a right whale's head. Be that how it may, there stands the vast arched bone of the whale's jaw, so wide, a coach might almost drive beneath it. Within are shabby shelves, ranged round with old decanters, bottles, flasks; and in those jaws of swift destruction, like another cursed Jonah (by which name indeed they called him), bustles a little withered old man, who, for their money, dearly sells the sailors deliriums and death.

Abominable are the tumblers into which he pours his poison. Though true cylinders without—within, the villanous green goggling glasses deceitfully tapered downwards to a cheating bottom. Parallel meridians rudely pecked into the glass, surround these footpads' goblets. Fill to *this* mark, and your charge is but a penny; to *this* a penny more; and so on to the full glass—the Cape Horn measure, which you may gulp down for a shilling.

Upon entering the place I found a number of young seamen gathered about a table, examining by a dim light divers specimens of skrimshander. I sought the landlord, and telling him I desired to be accommodated with a room, received for answer that his house was full—not a bed unoccupied. "But avast," he added, tapping his forehead, "you haint no objections to sharing a harpooneer's blanket, have ye? I s'pose you are goin' a whalin', so you'd better get used to that sort of thing."

I told him that I never liked to sleep two in a bed; that if I should ever do so, it would depend upon who the harpooneer might be, and that if he (the landlord) really had no other place for me, and the harpooneer was not decidedly objectionable, why rather than wander further about a strange town on so bitter a night, I would put up with the half of any decent man's blanket.

"I thought so. All right; take a seat. Supper?—you want supper? Supper 'll be ready directly."

I sat down on an old wooden settle, carved all over like a bench on the Battery. At one end a ruminating tar was still further adorning it with his jack-knife, stooping over and diligently working away at the space between his legs. He was trying his hand at a ship under full sail, but he didn't make much headway, I thought.

At last some four or five of us were summoned to our meal in an adjoining room. It was cold as Iceland—no fire at all—the landlord said he couldn't afford it. Nothing but two dismal tallow candles, each in a winding sheet. We were fain to button up our monkey jackets, and hold to our lips cups of scalding tea with our half frozen fingers. But the fare was of the most substantial kind—not only meat and potatoes, but dumplings; good heavens! dumplings for supper! One young fellow in a green box coat, addressed himself to these dumplings in a most direful manner.

"My boy," said the landlord, "you'll have the nightmare to a dead sartainty."

"Landlord," I whispered, "that aint the harpooneer, is it?"

"Oh, no," said he, looking a sort of diabolically funny, "the harpooneer is a dark complexioned chap. He never eats dump-lings, he don't—he eats nothing but steaks, and likes 'em rare."

"The devil he does," says I. "Where is that harpooneer? Is he here?"

"He'll be here afore long," was the answer.

I could not help it, but I began to feel suspicious of this "dark complexioned" harpooneer. At any rate, I made up my mind that if it so turned out that we should sleep together, he must undress and get into bed before I did.

Supper over, the company went back to the bar-room, when, knowing not what else to do with myself, I resolved to spend the rest of the evening as a looker on.

Presently a rioting noise was heard without. Starting up, the landlord cried, "That's the Grampus's crew. I seed her reported in the offing this morning; a three years' voyage, and a full ship. Hurrah, boys; now we'll have the latest news from the Feegees."

A tramping of sea boots was heard in the entry; the door was flung open, and in rolled a wild set of mariners enough. Enveloped in their shaggy watch coats, and with their heads muffled in woollen comforters, all bedarned and ragged, and their beards stiff with icicles, they seemed an eruption of bears from Labrador. They had just landed from their boat, and this was the first house they entered. No wonder, then, that they made a straight wake for the whale's mouth—the bar—when the wrinkled little old Jonah, there officiating, soon poured them out brimmers all round. One complained of a bad cold in his head, upon which Jonah mixed him a pitch-like potion of gin and molasses, which he swore was a sovereign cure for all colds and catarrhs whatsoever, never mind of how long standing, or whether caught off the coast of Labrador, or on the weather side of an ice-island.

The liquor soon mounted into their heads, as it generally does even with the arrantest toppers newly landed from sea, and they began capering about most obstreperously.

I observed, however, that one of them held somewhat aloof, and though he seemed desirous not to spoil the hilarity of his shipmates by his own sober face, yet upon the whole he refrained from making as much noise as the rest. This man interested me at once; and since the sea-gods had ordained that he should soon become my shipmate (though but a sleeping-partner one, so far as this narrative is concerned), I will here venture upon a little description of him. He stood full six feet in height, with noble shoulders, and a chest like a coffer-dam. I have seldom seen such brawn in a man. His face was deeply brown and burnt, making his white teeth dazzling by the contrast; while in the deep shadows of his eyes floated some reminiscences that did not seem to give him much joy. His voice at once announced

that he was a Southerner, and from his fine stature, I thought he must be one of those tall mountaineers from the Alleganian Ridge in Virginia. When the revelry of his companions had mounted to its height, this man slipped away unobserved, and I saw no more of him till he became my comrade on the sea. In a few minutes, however, he was missed by his shipmates, and being, it seems, for some reason a huge favorite with them, they raised a cry of "Bulkington! Bulkington! where's Bulkington?" and darted out of the house in pursuit of him.

It was now about nine o'clock, and the room seeming almost supernaturally quiet after these orgies, I began to congratulate myself upon a little plan that had occurred to me just previous to the entrance of the seamen.

No man prefers to sleep two in a bed. In fact, you would a good deal rather not sleep with your own brother. I don't know how it is, but people like to be private when they are sleeping. And when it comes to sleeping with an unknown stranger, in a strange inn, in a strange town, and that stranger a harpooneer, then your objections indefinitely multiply. Nor was there any earthly reason why I as a sailor should sleep two in a bed, more than anybody else; for sailors no more sleep two in a bed at sea, than bachelor Kings do ashore. To be sure they all sleep together in one apartment, but you have your own hammock, and cover yourself with your own blanket, and sleep in your own skin.

The more I pondered over this harpooneer, the more I abominated the thought of sleeping with him. It was fair to presume that being a harpooneer, his linen or woollen, as the case might be, would not be of the tidiest, certainly none of the finest. I began to twitch all over. Besides, it was getting late, and my decent harpooneer ought to be home and going bedwards. Suppose now, he should tumble in upon me at midnight—how could I tell from what vile hole he had been coming?

"Landlord! I've changed my mind about that harpooneer.—I shan't sleep with him. I'll try the bench here."

"Just as you please; I'm sorry I cant spare ye a tablecloth for a mattress, and it's a plaguy rough board here"—feeling of the knots and notches. "But wait a bit, Skrimshander; I've

got a carpenter's plane there in the bar—wait, I say, and I'll make ye snug enough." So saying he procured the plane; and with his old silk handkerchief first dusting the bench, vigorously set to planing away at my bed, the while grinning like an ape. The shavings flew right and left; till at last the plane-iron came bump against an indestructible knot. The landlord was near spraining his wrist, and I told him for heaven's sake to quit—the bed was soft enough to suit me, and I did not know how all the planing in the world could make eider down of a pine plank. So gathering up the shavings with another grin, and throwing them into the great stove in the middle of the room, he went about his business, and left me in a brown study.

I now took the measure of the bench, and found that it was a foot too short; but that could be mended with a chair. But it was a foot too narrow, and the other bench in the room was about four inches higher than the planed one—so there was no yoking them. I then placed the first bench lengthwise along the only clear space against the wall, leaving a little interval between, for my back to settle down in. But I soon found that there came such a draught of cold air over me from under the sill of the window, that this plan would never do at all, especially as another current from the rickety door met the one from the window, and both together formed a series of small whirlwinds in the immediate vicinity of the spot where I had thought to spend the night.

The devil fetch that harpooneer, thought I, but stop, couldn't I steal a march on him—bolt his door inside, and jump into his bed, not to be wakened by the most violent knockings? It seemed no bad idea; but upon second thoughts I dismissed it. For who could tell but what the next morning, so soon as I popped out of the room, the harpooneer might be standing in the entry, all ready to knock me down!

Still, looking around me again, and seeing no possible chance of spending a sufferable night unless in some other person's bed, I began to think that after all I might be cherishing unwarrantable prejudices against this unknown harpooneer. Thinks I, I'll wait awhile; he must be dropping in before long. I'll have a good look at him then, and perhaps we may become jolly good bedfellows after all—there's no telling.

But though the other boarders kept coming in by ones, twos, and threes, and going to bed, yet no sign of my harpooneer.

"Landlord!" said I, "what sort of a chap is he—does he always keep such late hours?" It was now hard upon twelve o'clock.

The landlord chuckled again with his lean chuckle, and seemed to be mightily tickled at something beyond my comprehension. "No," he answered, "generally he's an early bird—airley to bed and airley to rise—yes, he's the bird what catches the worm.—But to-night he went out a peddling, you see, and I don't see what on airth keeps him so late, unless, may be, he can't sell his head."

"Can't sell his head?—What sort of a bamboozingly story is this you are telling me?" getting into a towering rage. "Do you pretend to say, landlord, that this harpooneer is actually engaged this blessed Saturday night, or rather Sunday morning, in peddling his head around this town?"

"That's precisely it," said the landlord, "and I told him he couldn't sell it here, the market's overstocked."

"With what?" shouted I.

"With heads to be sure; ain't there too many heads in the world?"

"I tell you what it is, landlord," said I, quite calmly, "you'd better stop spinning that yarn to me—I'm not green."

"May be not," taking out a stick and whittling a toothpick, "but I rayther guess you'll be done *brown* if that ere harpooneer hears you a slanderin' his head."

"I'll break it for him," said I, now flying into a passion again at this unaccountable farrago of the landlord's.

"It's broke a'ready," said he.

"Broke," said I—"broke, do you mean?"

"Sartain, and that's the very reason he can't sell it, I guess."

"Landlord," said I, going up to him as cool as Mt. Hecla in a snow storm,—“landlord, stop whittling. You and I must understand one another, and that too without delay. I come to your house and want a bed; you tell me you can only give me half a one; that the other half belongs to a certain harpooneer. And about this harpooneer, whom I have not yet seen, you persist in telling me the most mystifying and exasperating stories, tending to beget in me an uncomfortable feeling towards the man whom

you design for my bedfellow—a sort of connexion, landlord, which is an intimate and confidential one in the highest degree. I now demand of you to speak out and tell me who and what this harpooneer is, and whether I shall be in all respects safe to spend the night with him. And in the first place, you will be so good as to unsay that story about selling his head, which if true I take to be good evidence that this harpooneer is stark mad, and I've no idea of sleeping with a madman; and you, sir, *you* I mean, landlord, *you*, sir, by trying to induce me to do so knowingly, would thereby render yourself liable to a criminal prosecution."

"Wall," said the landlord, fetching a long breath, "that's a purty long sarmon for a chap that rips a little now and then. But be easy, be easy, this here harpooneer I have been tellin' you of has just arrived from the south seas, where he bought up a lot of 'balmed New Zealand heads (great curios, you know), and he's sold all on 'em but one, and that one he's trying to sell to-night, cause to-morrow's Sunday, and it would not do to be sellin' human heads about the streets when folks is goin' to churches. He wanted to, last Sunday, but I stopped him just as he was goin' out of the door with four heads strung on a string, for all the airth like a string of inions."

This account cleared up the otherwise unaccountable mystery, and showed that the landlord, after all, had had no idea of fooling me—but at the same time what could I think of a harpooneer who stayed out a Saturday night clean into the holy Sabbath, engaged in such a cannibal business as selling the heads of dead idolators?

"Depend upon it, landlord, that harpooneer is a dangerous man."

"He pays reg'lar," was the rejoinder. "But come, it's getting dreadful late, you had better be turning flukes—it's a nice bed: Sall and me slept in that ere bed the night we were spliced. There's plenty room for two to kick about in that bed; it's an almighty big bed that. Why, afore we give it up, Sal used to put our Sam and little Johnny in the foot of it. But I got a dreaming and sprawling about one night, and somehow, Sam got pitched on the floor, and came near breaking his arm. Arter

that, Sal said it wouldn't do. Come along here, I'll give ye a glim in a jiffy;" and so saying he lighted a candle and held it towards me, offering to lead the way. But I stood irresolute; when looking at a clock in the corner, he exclaimed "I vum it's Sunday—you won't see that harpooneer to-night; he's come to anchor somewhere—come along then; *do* come; *won't* ye come?"

I considered the matter a moment, and then up stairs we went, and I was ushered into a small room, cold as a clam, and furnished, sure enough, with a prodigious bed, almost big enough indeed for any four harpooneers to sleep abreast.

"There," said the landlord, placing the candle on a crazy old sea chest that did double duty as a wash-stand and centre table; "there, make yourself comfortable now, and good night to ye." I turned round from eyeing the bed, but he had disappeared.

Folding back the counterpane, I stooped over the bed. Though none of the most elegant, it yet stood the scrutiny tolerably well. I then glanced round the room; and besides the bedstead and centre table, could see no other furniture belonging to the place, but a rude shelf, the four walls, and a papered fireboard representing a man striking a whale. Of things not properly belonging to the room, there was a hammock lashed up, and thrown upon the floor in one corner; also a large seaman's bag, containing the harpooneer's wardrobe, no doubt in lieu of a land trunk. Likewise, there was a parcel of outlandish bone fish hooks on the shelf over the fire-place, and a tall harpoon standing at the head of the bed.

But what is this on the chest? I took it up, and held it close to the light, and felt it, and smelt it, and tried every way possible to arrive at some satisfactory conclusion concerning it. I can compare it to nothing but a large door mat, ornamented at the edges with little tinkling tags something like the stained porcupine quills round an Indian moccasin. There was a hole or slit in the middle of this mat, as you see the same in South American ponchos. But could it be possible that any sober harpooneer would get into a door mat, and parade the streets of any Christian town in that sort of guise? I put it on, to try it, and it weighed me down like a hamper, being uncommonly shaggy and thick, and I thought a little damp, as though this

mysterious harpooneer had been wearing it of a rainy day. I went up in it to a bit of glass stuck against the wall, and I never saw such a sight in my life. I tore myself out of it in such a hurry that I gave myself a kink in the neck.

I sat down on the side of the bed, and commenced thinking about this head-peddling harpooneer, and his door mat. After thinking some time on the bed-side, I got up and took off my monkey jacket, and then stood in the middle of the room thinking. I then took off my coat, and thought a little more in my shirt sleeves. But beginning to feel very cold now, half undressed as I was, and remembering what the landlord said about the harpooneer's not coming home at all that night, it being so very late, I made no more ado, but jumped out of my pantaloons and boots, and then blowing out the light tumbled into bed, and commended myself to the care of heaven.

Whether that mattress was stuffed with corn-cobs or broken crockery, there is no telling, but I rolled about a good deal, and could not sleep for a long time. At last I slid off into a light doze, and had pretty nearly made a good offing towards the land of Nod, when I heard a heavy footfall in the passage, and saw a glimmer of light come into the room from under the door.

Lord save me, thinks I, that must be the harpooneer, the infernal head-peddler. But I lay perfectly still, and resolved not to say a word till spoken to. Holding a light in one hand, and that identical New Zealand head in the other, the stranger entered the room, and without looking towards the bed, placed his candle a good way off from me on the floor in one corner, and then began working away at the knotted cords of the large bag I before spoke of as being in the room. I was all eagerness to see his face, but he kept it averted for some time while employed in unlacing the bag's mouth. This accomplished, however, he turned round—when, good heavens! what a sight! Such a face! It was of a dark, purplish, yellow color, here and there stuck over with large, blackish looking squares. Yes, it's just as I thought, he's a terrible bedfellow; he's been in a fight, got dreadfully cut, and here he is, just from the surgeon. But at that moment he chanced to turn his face so towards the light, that I plainly saw they could not be sticking-plasters at all,

those black squares on his cheeks. They were stains of some sort or other. At first I knew not what to make of this; but soon an inkling of the truth occurred to me. I remembered a story of a white man—a whaleman too—who, falling among the cannibals, had been tattooed by them. I concluded that this harpooneer, in the course of his distant voyages, must have met with a similar adventure. And what is it, thought I, after all! It's only his outside; a man can be honest in any sort of skin. But then, what to make of his unearthly complexion, that part of it, I mean, lying round about, and completely independent of the squares of tattooing. To be sure, it might be nothing but a good coat of tropical tanning; but I never heard of a hot sun's tanning a white man into a purplish yellow one. However, I had never been in the South Seas; and perhaps the sun there produced these extraordinary effects upon the skin. Now, while all these ideas were passing through me like lightning, this harpooneer never noticed me at all. But, after some difficulty having opened his bag, he commenced fumbling in it, and presently pulled out a sort of tomahawk, and a seal-skin wallet with the hair on. Placing these on the old chest in the middle of the room, he then took the New Zealand head—a ghastly thing enough—and crammed it down into the bag. He now took off his hat—a new beaver hat—when I came nigh singing out with fresh surprise. There was no hair on his head—none to speak of at least—nothing but a small scalp-knot twisted up on his forehead. His bald purplish head now looked for all the world like a mildewed skull. Had not the stranger stood between me and the door, I would have bolted out of it quicker than ever I bolted a dinner.

Even as it was, I thought something of slipping out of the window, but it was the second floor back. I am no coward, but what to make of this head-peddling purple rascal altogether passed my comprehension. Ignorance is the parent of fear, and being completely nonplussed and confounded about the stranger, I confess I was now as much afraid of him as if it was the devil himself who had thus broken into my room at the dead of night. In fact, I was so afraid of him that I was not game enough just then to address him, and demand a satisfactory answer concerning what seemed inexplicable in him.

Meanwhile, he continued the business of undressing, and at last showed his chest and arms. As I live, these covered parts of him were checkered with the same squares as his face; his back, too, was all over the same dark squares; he seemed to have been in a Thirty Years' War, and just escaped from it with a sticking-plaster shirt. Still more, his very legs were marked, as if a parcel of dark green frogs were running up the trunks of young palms. It was now quite plain that he must be some abominable savage or other shipped aboard of a whaleman in the South Seas, and so landed in this Christian country. I quaked to think of it. A peddler of heads too—perhaps the heads of his own brothers. He might take a fancy to mine—heavens! look at that tomahawk!

But there was no time for shuddering, for now the savage went about something that completely fascinated my attention, and convinced me that he must indeed be a heathen. Going to his heavy grego, or wrapall, or dreadnaught, which he had previously hung on a chair, he fumbled in the pockets, and produced at length a curious little deformed image with a hunch on its back, and exactly the color of a three days' old Congo baby. Remembering the embalmed head, at first I almost thought that this black manikin was a real baby preserved in some similar manner. But seeing that it was not at all limber, and that it glistened a good deal like polished ebony, I concluded that it must be nothing but a wooden idol, which indeed it proved to be. For now the savage goes up to the empty fire-place, and removing the papered fire-board, sets up this little hunchbacked image, like a tenpin, between the andirons. The chimney jambs and all the bricks inside were very sooty, so that I thought this fire-place made a very appropriate little shrine or chapel for his Congo idol.

I now screwed my eyes hard towards the half hidden image, feeling but ill at ease meantime—to see what was next to follow. First he takes about a double handful of shavings out of his grego pocket, and places them carefully before the idol; then laying a bit of ship biscuit on top and applying the flame from the lamp, he kindled the shavings into a sacrificial blaze. Presently, after many hasty snatches into the fire, and still hastier

withdrawals of his fingers (whereby he seemed to be scorching them badly), he at last succeeded in drawing out the biscuit; then blowing off the heat and ashes a little, he made a polite offer of it to the little negro. But the little devil did not seem to fancy such dry sort of fare at all; he never moved his lips. All these strange antics were accompanied by still stranger guttural noises from the devotee, who seemed to be praying in a sing-song or else singing some pagan psalmody or other, during which his face twitched about in the most unnatural manner. At last extinguishing the fire, he took the idol up very uncere- moniously, and bagged it again in his grego pocket as carelessly as if he were a sportsman bagging a dead woodcock.

All these queer proceedings increased my uncomfortableness, and seeing him now exhibiting strong symptoms of concluding his business operations, and jumping into bed with me, I thought it was high time, now or never, before the light was put out, to break the spell in which I had so long been bound.

But the interval I spent in deliberating what to say, was a fatal one. Taking up his tomahawk from the table, he examined the head of it for an instant, and then holding it to the light, with his mouth at the handle, he puffed out great clouds of tobacco smoke. The next moment the light was extinguished, and this wild cannibal, tomahawk between his teeth, sprang into bed with me. I sang out, I could not help it now; and giving a sudden grunt of astonishment he began feeling me.

Stammering out something, I knew not what, I rolled away from him against the wall, and then conjured him, whoever or whatever he might be, to keep quiet, and let me get up and light the lamp again. But his guttural responses satisfied me at once that he but ill comprehended my meaning.

"Who-e debel you?"—he at last said—"you no speak-e, dam-me, I kill-e." And so saying the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.

"Landlord, for God's sake, Peter Coffin!" shouted I. "Land- lord! Watch! Coffin! Angels! save me!"

"Speak-el tell-ee me who-ee be, or dam-me, I kill-el!" again growled the cannibal, while his horrid flourishings of the toma- hawk scattered the hot tobacco ashes about me till I thought

my linen would get on fire. But thank heaven, at that moment the landlord came into the room light in hand, and leaping from the bed I ran up to him.

"Don't be afraid now," said he, grinning again. "Queequeg here wouldn't harm a hair of your head."

"Stop your grinning," shouted I, "and why didn't you tell me that that infernal harpooneer was a cannibal?"

"I thought ye know'd it;—didn't I tell ye, he was peddlin' heads around town?—but turn flukes again and go to sleep. Queequeg, look here—you sabbee me, I sabbee you—this man sleepe you—you sabbee?"—

"Me sabbee plenty"—grunted Queequeg, puffing away at his pipe and sitting up in bed.

"You gettee in," he added, motioning to me with his tomahawk, and throwing the clothes to one side. He really did this in not only a civil but a really kind and charitable way. I stood looking at him a moment. For all his tattooings he was on the whole a clean, comely looking cannibal. What's all this fuss I have been making about, thought I to myself—the man's a human being just as I am: he has just as much reason to fear me, as I have to be afraid of him. Better sleep with a sober cannibal than a drunken Christian.

"Landlord," said I, "tell him to stash his tomahawk there, or pipe, or whatever you call it; tell him to stop smoking, in short, and I will turn in with him. But I don't fancy having a man smoking in bed with me. It's dangerous. Besides, I aint insured."

This being told to Queequeg, he at once complied, and again politely motioned me to get into bed—rolling over to one side as much as to say—I wont touch a leg of ye.

"Good night, landlord," said I, "you may go."

I turned in, and never slept better in my life.

CHAPTER IV

THE COUNTERPANE

UPON waking next morning about daylight, I found Queequeg's arm thrown over me in the most loving and affectionate manner. You had almost thought I had been his wife. The counterpane was of patchwork, full of odd little parti-colored squares and triangles; and this arm of his tattooed all over with an interminable Cretan labyrinth of a figure, no two parts of which were of one precise shade—owing I suppose to his keeping his arm at sea unmethodically in sun and shade, his shirt sleeves irregularly rolled up at various times—this same arm of his, I say, looked for all the world like a strip of that same patchwork quilt. Indeed, partly lying on it as the arm did when I first awoke, I could hardly tell it from the quilt, they so blended their hues together; and it was only by the sense of weight and pressure that I could tell that Queequeg was hugging me.

My sensations were strange. Let me try to explain them. When I was a child, I well remember a somewhat similar circumstance that befell me; whether it was a reality or a dream, I never could entirely settle. The circumstance was this. I had been cutting up some caper or other—I think it was trying to crawl up the chimney, as I had seen a little sweep do a few days previous; and my stepmother who, somehow or other, was all the time whipping me, or sending me to bed supperless,—my mother dragged me by the legs out of the chimney and packed me off to bed, though it was only two o'clock in the afternoon of the 21st June, the longest day in the year in our hemisphere. I felt dreadfully. But there was no help for it, so up stairs I went to my little room in the third floor, undressed myself as slowly as possible so as to kill time, and with a bitter sigh got between the sheets.

I lay there dismally calculating that sixteen entire hours must elapse before I could hope for a resurrection. Sixteen hours in

bed! the small of my back ached to think of it. And it was so light too; the sun shining in at the window, and a great rattling of coaches in the streets, and the sound of gay voices all over the house. I felt worse and worse—at last I got up, dressed, and softly going down in my stockinged feet, sought out my step-mother, and suddenly threw myself at her feet, beseeching her as a particular favor to give me a good slipper for my misbehavior; anything indeed but condemning me to lie abed such an unendurable length of time. But she was the best and most conscientious of stepmothers, and back I had to go to my room. For several hours I lay there broad awake, feeling a great deal worse than I have ever done since, even from the greatest subsequent misfortunes. At last I must have fallen into a troubled nightmare of a doze; and slowly waking from it—half steeped in dreams—I opened my eyes, and the before sun-lit room was now wrapped in outer darkness. Instantly I felt a shock running through all my frame; nothing was to be seen, and nothing was to be heard; but a supernatural hand seemed placed in mine. My arm hung over the counterpane, and the nameless, unimaginable, silent form or phantom, to which the hand belonged, seemed closely seated by my bedside. For what seemed ages piled on ages, I lay there, frozen with the most awful fears, not daring to drag away my hand; yet ever thinking that if I could but stir it one single inch, the horrid spell would be broken. I knew not how this consciousness at last glided away from me; but waking in the morning, I shudderingly remembered it all, and for days and weeks and months afterwards I lost myself in confounding attempts to explain the mystery. Nay, to this very hour, I often puzzle myself with it.

Now, take away the awful fear, and my sensations at feeling the supernatural hand in mine were very similar, in their strangeness, to those which I experienced on waking up and seeing Queequeg's pagan arm thrown round me. But at length all the past night's events soberly recurred, one by one, in fixed reality, and then I lay only alive to the comical predicament. For though I tried to move his arm—unlock his bridegroom clasp—yet, sleeping as he was, he still hugged me tightly, as though naught but death should part us twain. I now strove to rouse him—

"Queequeg!"—but his only answer was a snore. I then rolled over, my neck feeling as if it were in a horse-collar; and suddenly felt a slight scratch. Throwing aside the counterpane, there lay the tomahawk sleeping by the savage's side, as if it were a hatchet-faced baby. A pretty pickle, truly, thought I; abed here in a strange house in the broad day, with a cannibal and a tomahawk! "Queequeg!—in the name of goodness, Queequeg, waken!" At length, by dint of much wriggling, and loud and incessant expostulations upon the unbecomingness of his hugging a fellow male in that matrimonial sort of style, I succeeded in extracting a grunt; and presently, he drew back his arm, shook himself all over like a Newfoundland dog just from the water, and sat up in bed, stiff as a pike-staff, looking at me, and rubbing his eyes as if he did not altogether remember how I came to be there, though a dim consciousness of knowing something about me seemed slowly dawning over him. Meanwhile, I lay quietly eyeing him, having no serious misgivings now, and bent upon narrowly observing so curious a creature. When, at last, his mind seemed made up touching the character of his bedfellow, and he became, as it were, reconciled to the fact; he jumped out upon the floor, and by certain signs and sounds gave me to understand that, if it pleased me, he would dress first and then leave me to dress afterwards, leaving the whole apartment to myself. Thinks I, Queequeg, under the circumstances, this is a very civilized overture; but, the truth is, these savages have an innate sense of delicacy, say what you will; it is marvellous how essentially polite they are. I pay this particular compliment to Queequeg, because he treated me with so much civility and consideration, while I was guilty of great rudeness; staring at him from the bed, and watching all his toilette motions; for the time my curiosity getting the better of my breeding. Nevertheless, a man like Queequeg you don't see every day, he and his ways were well worth unusual regarding.

He commenced dressing at top by donning his beaver hat, a very tall one, by the by, and then—still minus his trowsers—he hunted up his boots. What under the heavens he did it for, I cannot tell, but his next movement was to crush himself—boots in hand, and hat on—under the bed; when, from sundry violent

boots

gasps and strainings, I inferred he was hard at work booting himself; though by no law of propriety that I ever heard of, is any man required to be private when putting on his boots. But Queequeg, do you see, was a creature in the transition state—neither caterpillar nor butterfly. He was just enough civilized to show off his outlandishness in the strangest possible manner. His education was not yet completed. He was an undergraduate. If he had not been a small degree civilized, he very probably would not have troubled himself with boots at all; but then, if he had not been still a savage, he never would have dreamt of getting under the bed to put them on. At last, he emerged with his hat very much dented and crushed down over his eyes, and began creaking and limping about the room, as if, not being much accustomed to boots, his pair of damp, wrinkled cowhide ones—probably not made to order either—rather pinched and tormented him at the first go off of a bitter cold morning.

Seeing, now, that there were no curtains to the window, and that the street being very narrow, the house opposite commanded a plain view into the room, and observing more and more the indecorous figure that Queequeg made, staving about with little else but his hat and boots on; I begged him as well as I could, to accelerate his toilet somewhat, and particularly to get into his pantaloons as soon as possible. He complied, and then proceeded to wash himself. At that time in the morning any Christian would have washed his face; but Queequeg, to my amazement, contented himself with restricting his ablutions to his chest, arms, and hands. He then donned his waistcoat, and taking up a piece of hard soap on the wash-stand centre-table, dipped it into water and commenced lathering his face. I was watching to see where he kept his razor, when lo and behold, he takes the harpoon from the bed corner, slips out the long wooden stock, unsheathes the head, whets it a little on his boot, and striding up to the bit of mirror against the wall, begins a vigorous scraping, or rather harpooning of his cheeks. Thinks I, Queequeg, this is using Rogers's best cutlery with a vengeance. Afterwards I wondered the less at this operation when I came to know of what fine steel the head of a harpoon is made, and how exceedingly sharp the long straight edges are always kept.

The rest of his toilet was soon achieved, and he proudly marched out of the room, wrapped up in his great pilot monkey jacket, and sporting his harpoon like a marshal's baton.

CHAPTER V

BREAKFAST

I QUICKLY followed suit, and descending into the bar-room accosted the grinning landlord very pleasantly. I cherished no malice towards him, though he had been skylarking with me not a little in the matter of my bedfellow.

However, a good laugh is a mighty good thing, and rather too scarce a good thing; the more's the pity. So, if any one man, in his own proper person, afford stuff for a good joke to anybody, let him not be backward, but let him cheerfully allow himself to spend and be spent in that way. And the man that has anything bountifully laughable about him, be sure there is more in that man than you perhaps think for.

The bar-room was now full of the boarders who had been dropping in the night previous, and whom I had not as yet had a good look at. They were nearly all whalemens; chief mates, and second mates, and third mates, and sea carpenters, and sea coopers, and sea blacksmiths, and harpooneers, and ship keepers; a brown and brawny company, with bosky beards; an unshorn, shaggy set, all wearing monkey jackets for morning gowns.

You could pretty plainly tell how long each one had been ashore. This young fellow's healthy cheek is like a sun-toasted pear in hue, and would seem to smell almost as musky; he cannot have been three days landed from his Indian voyage. That man next him looks a few shades lighter; you might say a touch of satin wood is in him. In the complexion of a third still lingers a tropic tawn, but slightly bleached withal; *he* doubtless has tarried whole weeks ashore. But who could show a cheek like

Queequeg? which, barred with various tints, seemed like the Andes' western slope, to show forth in one array, contrasting climates, zone by zone.

"Grub, hol" now cried the landlord, flinging open a door, and in we went to breakfast.

They say that men who have seen the world, thereby become quite at ease in manner, quite self-possessed in company. Not always, though: Ledyard, the great New England traveller, and Mungo Park, the Scotch one; of all men, they possessed the least assurance in the parlor. But perhaps the mere crossing of Siberia in a sledge drawn by dogs as Ledyard did, or the taking a long solitary walk on an empty stomach, in the negro heart of Africa, which was the sum of poor Mungo's performances—this kind of travel, I say, may not be the very best mode of attaining a high social polish. Still, for the most part, that sort of thing is to be had anywhere.

These reflections just here are occasioned by the circumstance that after we were all seated at the table, and I was preparing to hear some good stories about whaling; to my no small surprise, nearly every man maintained a profound silence. And not only that, but they looked embarrassed. Yes, here were a set of sea-dogs, many of whom without the slightest bashfulness had boarded great whales on the high seas—entire strangers to them—and duelled them dead without winking; and yet, here they sat at a social breakfast table—all of the same calling, all of kindred tastes—looking round as sheepishly at each other as though they had never been out of sight of some sheepfold among the Green Mountains. A curious sight; these bashful bears, these timid warrior whalemén!

But as for Queequeg—why, Queequeg sat there among them—at the head of the table, too, it so chanced; as cool as an icicle. To be sure I cannot say much for his breeding. His greatest admirer could not have cordially justified his bringing his harpoon into breakfast with him, and using it there without ceremony; reaching over the table with it, to the imminent jeopardy of many heads, and grappling the beefsteaks towards him. But *that* was certainly very coolly done by him, and every

one knows that in most people's estimation, to do anything coolly is to do it genteelly.

We will not speak of all Queequeg's peculiarities here; how he eschewed coffee and hot rolls, and applied his undivided attention to beefsteaks, done rare. Enough, that when breakfast was over he withdrew like the rest into the public room, lighted his tomahawk-pipe, and was sitting there quietly digesting and smoking with his inseparable hat on, when I sallied out for a stroll.

CHAPTER VI

THE STREET

IF I had been astonished at first catching a glimpse of so outlandish an individual as Queequeg circulating among the polite society of a civilized town, that astonishment soon departed upon taking my first daylight stroll through the streets of New Bedford.

In thoroughfares nigh the docks, any considerable seaport will frequently offer to view the queerest looking nondescripts from foreign parts. Even in Broadway and Chestnut streets, Mediterranean mariners will sometimes jostle the affrighted ladies. Regent street is not unknown to Lascars and Malays; and at Bombay, in the Apollo Green, live Yankees have often scared the natives. But New Bedford beats all Water street and Wapping. In these last-mentioned haunts you see only sailors; but in New Bedford, actual cannibals stand chatting at street corners; savages outright; many of whom yet carry on their bones unholy flesh. It makes a stranger stare.

But, besides the Feejeeans, Tongatabooarrs, Erromanggoans, Pannangians, and Brighggians, and, besides the wild specimens of the whaling-craft which unheeded reel about the streets, you will see other sights still more curious, certainly more comical.

There weekly arrive in this town scores of green Vermonters and New Hampshire men, all athirst for gain and glory in the fishery. They are mostly young, of stalwart frames; fellows who have felled forests, and now seek to drop the axe and snatch the whale-lance. Many are as green as the Green Mountains whence they came. In some things you would think them but a few hours old. Look there! that chap strutting round the corner. He wears a beaver hat and swallow-tailed coat, girdled with a sailor-belt and sheath-knife. Here comes another with a sou'-wester and a bombazine cloak.

No town-bred dandy will compare with a country-bred one—I mean a downright bumpkin dandy—a fellow that, in the dog-days, will mow his two acres in buckskin gloves for fear of tanning his hands. Now when a country dandy like this takes it into his head to make a distinguished reputation, and joins the great whale-fishery, you should see the comical things he does upon reaching the seaport. In bespeaking his sea-outfit, he orders bell-buttons to his waistcoats; straps to his canvas trowsers. Ah, poor Hay-Seed! how bitterly will burst those straps in the first howling gale, when thou art driven, straps, buttons, and all, down the throat of the tempest.

But think not that this famous town has only harpooneers, cannibals, and bumpkins to show her visitors. Not at all. Still New Bedford is a queer place. Had it not been for us whale-men, that tract of land would this day perhaps have been in as howling condition as the coast of Labrador. As it is, parts of her back country are enough to frighten one, they look so bony. The town itself is perhaps the dearest place to live in, in all New England. It is a land of oil, true enough: but not like Canaan; a land, also, of corn and wine. The streets do not run with milk; nor in the spring-time do they pave them with fresh eggs. Yet, in spite of this, nowhere in all America will you find more patrician-like houses; parks and gardens more opulent, than in New Bedford. Whence came they? how planted upon this once scraggy scoria of a country?

Go and gaze upon the iron emblematical harpoons round yonder lofty mansion, and your question will be answered. Yes; all these brave houses and flowery gardens came from the

Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans. One and all, they were harpooned and dragged up hither from the bottom of the sea. Can Herr Alexander perform a feat like that?

In New Bedford, fathers, they say, give whales for dowers to their daughters, and portion off their nieces with a few porpoises a-piece. You must go to New Bedford to see a brilliant wedding; for, they say, they have reservoirs of oil in every house, and every night recklessly burn their lengths in spermaceti candles.

In summer time, the town is sweet to see; full of fine maples—long avenues of green and gold. And in August, high in air, the beautiful and bountiful horse-chestnuts, candelabra-wise, proffer the passer-by their tapering upright cones of congregated blossoms. So omnipotent is art; which in many a district of New Bedford has superinduced bright terraces of flowers upon the barren refuse rocks thrown aside at creation's final day.

And the women of New Bedford, they bloom like their own red roses. But roses only bloom in summer; whereas the fine carnation of their cheeks is perennial as sunlight in the seventh heavens. Elsewhere match that bloom of theirs, ye cannot, save in Salem, where they tell me the young girls breathe such musk, their sailor sweethearts smell them miles off shore, as though they were drawing nigh the odorous Moluccas instead of the Puritanic sands.

CHAPTER VII



THE CHAPEL

IN this same New Bedford there stands a Whaleman's Chapel, and few are the moody fishermen, shortly bound for the Indian Ocean or Pacific, who fail to make a Sunday visit to the spot. I am sure that I did not.

Returning from my first morning stroll, I again sallied out upon this special errand. The sky had changed from clear,

sunny cold, to driving sleet and mist. Wrapping myself in my shaggy jacket of the cloth called bearskin, I fought my way against the stubborn storm. Entering, I found a small scattered congregation of sailors, and sailors' wives and widows. A muffled silence reigned, only broken at times by the shrieks of the storm. Each silent worshipper seemed purposely sitting apart from the other, as if each silent grief were insular and incommunicable. The chaplain had not yet arrived; and there these silent islands of men and women sat steadfastly eyeing several marble tablets, with black borders, masoned into the wall on either side the pulpit. Three of them ran something like the following, but I do not pretend to quote:—

SACRED
TO THE MEMORY
OF
JOHN TALBOT,
Who, at the age of eighteen, was lost overboard,
Near the Isle of Desolation, off Patagonia,
November 1st, 1836.
THIS TABLET
Is erected to his Memory
BY HIS SISTER.

SACRED
TO THE MEMORY
OF
ROBERT LONG, WILLIS ELLERY,
NATHAN COLEMAN, WALTER CANNY, SETH MACY,
AND SAMUEL GLEIG,
Forming one of the boats' crews
OF
THE SHIP ELIZA,
Who were towed out of sight by a Whale,
On the Off-shore Ground in the
PACIFIC,
December 31st, 1839.
THIS MARBLE
Is here placed by their surviving
SHIPMATES.

SACRED
TO THE MEMORY
OF
The late
CAPTAIN EZEKIEL HARDY,
Who in the bows of his boat was killed by a
Sperm Whale on the coast of Japan,
August 3d, 1833.
THIS TABLET
Is erected to his Memory
BY
HIS WIDOW.

Shaking off the sleet from my ice-glazed hat and jacket, I seated myself near the door, and turning sideways was surprised to see Queequeg near me. Affected by the solemnity of the scene, there was a wondering gaze of incredulous curiosity in his countenance. This savage was the only person present who seemed to notice my entrance; because he was the only one who could not read, and, therefore, was not reading those frigid inscriptions on the wall. Whether any of the relatives of the seamen whose names appeared there were now among the congregation, I knew not; but so many are the unrecorded accidents in the fishery, and so plainly did several women present wear the countenance if not the trappings of some unceasing grief, that I feel sure that here before me were assembled those, in whose unhealing hearts the sight of those bleak tablets sympathetically caused the old wounds to bleed afresh.

Oh! ye whose dead lie buried beneath the green grass; who standing among flowers can say—here, *here* lies my beloved; ye know not the desolation that broods in bosoms like these. What bitter blanks in those black-bordered marbles which cover no ashes! What despair in those immovable inscriptions! What deadly voids and unbidden infidelities in the lines that seem to gnaw upon all Faith, and refuse resurrections to the beings who have placelessly perished without a grave. As well might those tablets stand in the cave of Elephanta as here.

In what census of living creatures, the dead of mankind are included; why it is that a universal proverb says of them, that

they tell no tales, though containing more secrets than the Goodwin Sands; how it is that to his name who yesterday departed for the other world, we prefix so significant and infidel a word, and yet do not thus entitle him, if he but embarks for the remotest Indies of this living earth; why the Life Insurance Companies pay death-forfeitures upon immortals; in what eternal, unstirring paralysis, and deadly, hopeless trance, yet lies antique Adam who died sixty round centuries ago; how it is that we still refuse to be comforted for those who we nevertheless maintain are dwelling in unspeakable bliss; why all the living so strive to hush all the dead; wherefore but the rumor of a knocking in a tomb will terrify a whole city. All these things are not without their meanings.

But Faith, like a jackal, feeds among the tombs, and even from these dead doubts she gathers her most vital hope.

It needs scarcely to be told, with what feelings, on the eve of a Nantucket voyage, I regarded those marble tablets, and by the murky light of that darkened, doleful day read the fate of the whalemens who had gone before me, Yes, Ishmael, the same fate may be thine. But somehow I grew merry again. Delightful inducements to embark, fine chance for promotion, it seems—aye, a stove boat will make me an immortal by brevet. Yes, there is death in this business of whaling—a speechlessly quick chaotic bundling of a man into Eternity. But what then? Methinks we have hugely mistaken this matter of Life and Death. Methinks that what they call my shadow here on earth is my true substance. Methinks that in looking at things spiritual, we are too much like oysters observing the sun through the water, and thinking that thick water the thinnest of air. Methinks my body is but the lees of my better being. In fact take my body who will, take it I say, it is not me. And therefore three cheers for Nantucket; and come a stove boat and stove body when they will, for stave my soul, Jove himself cannot.

CHAPTER VIII

THE PULPIT

I HAD not been seated very long ere a man of a certain venerable robustness entered; immediately as the storm-pelted door flew back upon admitting him, a quick regardful eyeing of him by all the congregation, sufficiently attested that this fine old man was the chaplain. Yes, it was the famous Father Mapple, so called by the whalemén, among whom he was a very great favorite. He had been a sailor and a harpooneer in his youth, but for many years past had dedicated his life to the ministry. At the time I now write of, Father Mapple was in the hardy winter of a healthy old age; that sort of old age which seems merging into a second flowering youth, for among all the fissures of his wrinkles, there shone certain mild gleams of a newly developing bloom—the spring verdure peeping forth even beneath February's snow. No one having previously heard his history, could for the first time behold Father Mapple without the utmost interest, because there were certain engrafted clerical peculiarities about him, imputable to that adventurous maritime life he had led. When he entered I observed that he carried no umbrella, and certainly had not come in his carriage, for his tarpaulin hat ran down with melting sleet, and his great pilot cloth jacket seemed almost to drag him to the floor with the weight of the water it had absorbed. However, hat and coat and overshoes were one by one removed, and hung up in a little space in an adjacent corner; when, arrayed in a decent suit, he quietly approached the pulpit.

Like most old fashioned pulpits, it was a very lofty one, and since a regular stairs to such a height would, by its long angle with the floor, seriously contract the already small area of the chapel, the architect, it seemed, had acted upon the hint of Father Mapple, and finished the pulpit without a stairs, substituting a perpendicular side ladder, like those used in mounting

a ship from a boat at sea. The wife of a whaling captain had provided the chapel with a handsome pair of red worsted man-ropes for this ladder, which, being itself nicely headed, and stained with a mahogany color, the whole contrivance, considering what manner of chapel it was, seemed by no means in bad taste. Halting for an instant at the foot of the ladder, and with both hands grasping the ornamental knobs of the man-ropes, Father Mapple cast a look upwards, and then with a truly sailor-like but still reverential dexterity, hand over hand, mounted the steps as if ascending the main-top of his vessel.

The perpendicular parts of this side ladder, as is usually the case with swinging ones, were of cloth-covered rope, only the rounds were of wood, so that at every step there was a joint. At my first glimpse of the pulpit, it had not escaped me that however convenient for a ship, these joints in the present instance seemed unnecessary. For I was not prepared to see Father Mapple after gaining the height, slowly turn round, and stooping over the pulpit, deliberately drag up the ladder step by step, till the whole was deposited within, leaving him impregnable in his little Quebec.

I pondered some time without fully comprehending the reason for this. Father Mapple enjoyed such a wide reputation for sincerity and sanctity, that I could not suspect him of courting notoriety by any mere tricks of the stage. No, thought I, there must be some sober reason for this thing; furthermore, it must symbolize something unseen. Can it be, then, that by that act of physical isolation, he signifies his spiritual withdrawal for the time, from all outward worldly ties and connexions? Yes, for replenished with the meat and wine of the word, to the faithful man of God, this pulpit, I see, is a self-containing stronghold—a lofty Ehrenbreitstein, with a perennial well of water within the walls.

But the side ladder was not the only strange feature of the place, borrowed from the chaplain's former sea-farings. Between the marble cenotaphs on either hand of the pulpit, the wall which formed its back was adorned with a large painting representing a gallant ship beating against a terrible storm off a lee coast of black rocks and snowy breakers. But high above the

flying scud and dark-rolling clouds, there floated a little isle of sunlight, from which beamed forth an angel's face; and this bright face shed a distinct spot of radiance upon the ship's tossed deck, something like that silver plate now inserted into the Victory's plank where Nelson fell. "Ah, noble ship," the angel seemed to say, "beat on, beat on, thou noble ship, and bear a hardy helm; for lo! the sun is breaking through; the clouds are rolling off—serenest azure is at hand."

Nor was the pulpit itself without a trace of the same sea-taste that had achieved the ladder and the picture. Its panelled front was in the likeness of a ship's bluff bows, and the Holy Bible rested on the projecting piece of scroll work, fashioned after a ship's fiddle-headed beak.

What could be more full of meaning?—for the pulpit is ever this earth's foremost part; all the rest comes in its rear; the pulpit leads the world. From thence it is the storm of God's quick wrath is first descried, and the bow must bear the earliest brunt. From thence it is the God of breezes fair or foul is first invoked for favorable winds. Yes, the world's a ship on its passage out, and not a voyage complete; and the pulpit is its prow.

CHAPTER IX

THE SERMON

FATHER MAPPLE rose, and in a mild voice of unassuming authority ordered the scattered people to condense. "Starboard gangway, there! side away to larboard—larboard gangway to starboard! Midships! midships!"

There was a low rumbling of heavy sea-boots among the benches, and a still slighter shuffling of women's shoes, and all was quiet again, and every eye on the preacher.

He paused a little; then kneeling in the pulpit's bows, folded his large brown hands across his chest, uplifted his closed eyes,

and offered a prayer so deeply devout that he seemed kneeling and praying at the bottom of the sea.

This ended, in prolonged solemn tones, like the continual tolling of a bell in a ship that is foundering at sea in a fog—in such tones he commenced reading the following hymn; but changing his manner towards the concluding stanzas, burst forth with a pealing exultation and joy—

“The ribs and terrors in the whale,
Arched over me a dismal gloom,
While all God’s sun-lit waves rolled by,
And lift me deepening down to doom.

“I saw the opening maw of hell,
With endless pains and sorrows there;
Which none but they that feel can tell—
Oh, I was plunging to despair.

“In black distress, I called my God,
When I could scarce believe him mine,
He bowed his ear to my complaints—
No more the whale did me confine.

“With speed he flew to my relief,
As on a radiant dolphin borne;
Awful, yet bright, as lightning shone
The face of my Deliverer God.

“My song for ever shall record
That terrible, that joyful hour;
I give the glory to my God,
His all the mercy and the power.”

Nearly all joined in singing this hymn, which swelled high above the howling of the storm. A brief pause ensued; the preacher slowly turned over the leaves of the Bible, and at last, folding his hand down upon the proper page, said: “Beloved shipmates, clinch the last verse of the first chapter of Jonah—
“And God had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah.”

“Shipmates, this book, containing only four chapters—four yarns—is one of the smallest strands in the mighty cable of the Scriptures. Yet what depths of the soul does Jonah’s deep sea-line sound! what a pregnant lesson to us is this prophet! What

a noble thing is that canticle in the fish's belly! How billow-like and boisterously grand! We feel the floods surging over us; we sound with him to the kelpy bottom of the waters; sea-weed and all the slime of the sea is about us! But *what* is this lesson that the book of Jonah teaches? Shipmates, it is a two-stranded lesson; a lesson to us all as sinful men, and a lesson to me as a pilot of the living God. As sinful men, it is a lesson to us all, because it is a story of the sin, hard-heartedness, suddenly awakened fears, the swift punishment, repentance, prayers, and finally the deliverance and joy of Jonah. As with all sinners among men, the sin of this son of Amittai was in his wilful disobedience of the command of God—never mind now what that command was, or how conveyed—which he found a hard command. But all the things that God would have us do are hard for us to do—remember that—and hence, he oftener commands us than endeavors to persuade. And if we obey God, we must disobey ourselves; and it is in this disobeying ourselves, wherein the hardness of obeying God consists.

“With this sin of disobedience in him, Jonah still further flouts at God, by seeking to flee from Him. He thinks that a ship made by men, will carry him into countries where God does not reign, but only the Captains of this earth. He skulks about the wharves of Joppa, and seeks a ship that's bound for Tarshish. There lurks, perhaps, a hitherto unheeded meaning here. By all accounts Tarshish could have been no other city than the modern Cadiz. That's the opinion of learned men. And where is Cadiz, shipmates? Cadiz is in Spain; as far by water, from Joppa, as Jonah could possibly have sailed in those ancient days, when the Atlantic was an amost unknown sea. Because Joppa, the modern Jaffa, shipmates, is on the most easterly coast of the Mediterranean, the Syrian; and Tarshish or Cadiz more than two thousand miles to the westward from that, just outside the Straits of Gibraltar. See ye not then, shipmates, that Jonah sought to flee world-wide from God? Miserable man! Oh! most contemptible and worthy of all scorn; with slouched hat and guilty eye, skulking from his God; prowling among the shipping like a vile burglar hastening to cross the seas. So disordered, self-condemning is his look, that had there been policemen in

those days, Jonah, on the mere suspicion of something wrong, had been arrested ere he touched a deck. How plainly he's a fugitive! no baggage, not a hat-box, valise, or carpet-bag,—no friends accompany him to the wharf with their adieux. At last, after much dodging search, he finds the Tarshish ship receiving the last items of her cargo; and as he steps on board to see its Captain in the cabin, all the sailors for the moment desist from hoisting in the goods, to mark the stranger's evil eye. Jonah sees this; but in vain he tries to look all ease and confidence; in vain essays his wretched smile. Strong intuitions of the man assure the mariners he can be no innocent. In their gamesome but still serious way, one whispers to the other—'Jack, he's robbed a widow;' or, 'Joe, do you mark him; he's a bigamist;' or, 'Harry lad, I guess he's the adulterer that broke jail in old Gomorrah, or belike, one of the missing murderers from Sodom.' Another runs to read the bill that's stuck against the spile upon the wharf to which the ship is moored, offering five hundred gold coins for the apprehension of a parricide, and containing a description of his person. He reads, and looks from Jonah to the bill; while all his sympathetic shipmates now crowd round Jonah, prepared to lay their hands upon him. Frighted Jonah trembles, and summoning all his boldness to his face, only looks so much the more a coward. He will not confess himself suspected; but that itself is strong suspicion. So he makes the best of it; and when the sailors find him not to be the man that is advertised, they let him pass, and he descends into the cabin.

'Who's there?' cries the Captain at his busy desk, hurriedly making out his papers for the Customs—'Who's there?' Oh! how that harmless question mangles Jonah! For the instant he almost turns to flee again. But he rallies. 'I seek a passage in this ship to Tarshish; how soon sail ye, sir?' Thus far the busy Captain had not looked up to Jonah, though the man now stands before him; but no sooner does he hear that hollow voice, than he darts a scrutinizing glance. 'We sail with the next coming tide,' at last he slowly answered, still intently eyeing him. 'No sooner, sir?'—'Soon enough for any honest man that goes a passenger.' Ha! Jonah, that's another stab. But he swiftly calls away the Captain from that scent. 'I'll sail with ye,'—he says,—'the passage

money, how much is that?—I'll pay now.' For it is particularly written, shipmates, as if it were a thing not to be overlooked in this history, 'that he paid the fare thereof' ere the craft did sail. And taken with the context, this is full of meaning.

Now Jonah's Captain, shipmates, was one whose discernment detects crime in any, but whose cupidity exposes it only in the penniless. In this world, shipmates, sin that pays its way can travel freely, and without a passport; whereas Virtue, if a pauper, is stopped at all frontiers. So Jonah's Captain prepares to test the length of Jonah's purse, ere he judge him openly. He charges him thrice the usual sum; and it's assented to. Then the Captain knows that Jonah is a fugitive; but at the same time resolves to help a flight that paves its rear with gold. Yet when Jonah fairly takes out his purse, prudent suspicions still molest the Captain. He rings every coin to find a counterfeit. Not a forger, any way, he mutters; and Jonah is put down for his passage. 'Point out my state-room, Sir,' says Jonah now. 'I'm travel-weary; I need sleep.' 'Thou look'st like it,' says the Captain, 'there's thy room.' Jonah enters, and would lock the door, but the lock contains no key. Hearing him foolishly fumbling there, the Captain laughs lowly to himself, and mutters something about the doors of convicts' cells being never allowed to be locked within. All dressed and dusty as he is, Jonah throws himself into his berth, and finds the little state-room ceiling almost resting on his forehead. The air is close, and Jonah gasps. Then, in that contracted hole, sunk, too, beneath the ship's water-line, Jonah feels the heralding presentiment of that stifling hour, when the whale shall hold him in the smallest of his bowels' wards.

"Screwed at its axis against the side, a swinging lamp slightly oscillates in Jonah's room; and the ship, heeling over towards the wharf with the weight of the last bales received, the lamp, flame and all, though in slight motion, still maintains a permanent obliquity with reference to the room; though, in truth, infallibly straight itself, it but made obvious the false, lying levels among which it hung. The lamp alarms and frightens Jonah; as lying in his berth his tormented eyes roll round the place, and this thus far successful fugitive finds no refuge for his restless glance. But that contradiction in the lamp more and

more appals him. The floor, the ceiling, and the side, are all awry. 'Oh! so my conscience hangs in me!' he groans, 'straight upward, so it burns; but the chambers of my soul are all in crookedness!'

Like one who after a night of drunken revelry hies to his bed, still reeling, but with conscience yet pricking him, as the plungings of the Roman race-horse but so much the more strike his steel tags into him; as one who in that miserable plight still turns and turns in giddy anguish, praying God for annihilation until the fit be passed; and at last amid the whirl of woe he feels, a deep stupor steals over him, as over the man who bleeds to death, for conscience is the wound, and there's naught to staunch it; so, after sore wrestlings in his berth, Jonah's prodigy of ponderous misery drags him drowning down to sleep.

"And now the time of tide has come; the ship casts off her cables; and from the deserted wharf the uncheered ship for Tarshish, all careening, glides to sea. That ship, my friends, was the first of recorded smugglers! the contraband was Jonah. But the sea rebels; he will not bear the wicked burden. A dreadful storm comes on, the ship is like to break. But now when the boatswain calls all hands to lighten her; when boxes, bales, and jars are clattering overboard; when the wind is shrieking, and the men are yelling, and every plank thunders with trampling feet right over Jonah's head; in all this raging tumult, Jonah sleeps his hideous sleep. He sees no black sky and raging sea, feels not the reeling timbers, and little hears he or heeds he the far rush of the mighty whale, which even now with open mouth is cleaving the seas after him. Aye, shipmates, Jonah was gone down into the sides of the ship—a berth in the cabin as I have taken it, and was fast asleep. But the frightened master comes to him, and shrieks in his dead ear, 'What meanest thou, O sleeper! arisel!' Startled from his lethargy by that direful cry, Jonah staggers to his feet, and stumbling to the deck, grasps a shroud, to look out upon the sea. But at that moment he is sprung upon by a panther billow leaping over the bulwarks. Wave after wave thus leaps into the ship, and finding no speedy vent runs roaring fore and aft, till the mariners come nigh to drowning while yet afloat. And ever, as the white moon shows

her affrighted face from the steep gullies in the blackness overhead, aghast Jonah sees the rearing bowsprit pointing high upward, but soon beat downward again towards the tormented deep.

“Terrors upon terrors run shouting through his soul. In all his cringing attitudes, the God-fugitive is now too plainly known. The sailors mark him; more and more certain grow their suspicions of him, and at last, fully to test the truth, by referring the whole matter to high Heaven, they fall to casting lots, to see for whose cause this great tempest was upon them. The lot is Jonah’s; that discovered, then how furiously they mob him with their questions. ‘What is thine occupation? Whence comest thou? Thy country? What people?’ But mark now, my shipmates, the behavior of poor Jonah. The eager mariners but ask him who he is, and where from; whereas, they not only receive an answer to those questions, but likewise another answer to a question not put by them, but the unsolicited answer is forced from Jonah by the hard hand of God that is upon him.

“‘I am a Hebrew,’ he cries—and then—‘I fear the Lord the God of Heaven who hath made the sea and the dry land!’ Fear him, O Jonah? Aye, well mightest thou fear the Lord God *then!* Straightway, he now goes on to make a full confession; whereupon the mariners became more and more appalled, but still are pitiful. For when Jonah, not yet supplicating God for mercy, since he but too well knew the darkness of his deserts,—when wretched Jonah cries out to them to take him and cast him forth into the sea, for he knew that for *his* sake this great tempest was upon them; they mercifully turn from him, and seek by other means to save the ship. But all in vain; the indignant gale howls louder; then, with one hand raised invoking to God, with the other they not unreluctantly lay hold of Jonah.

And now behold Jonah taken up as an anchor and dropped into the sea; when instantly an oily calmness floats out from the east, and the sea is still, as Jonah carries down the gale with him, leaving smooth water behind. He goes down in the whirling heart of such a masterless commotion that he scarce heeds the moment when he drops seething into the yawning jaws

awaiting him; and the whale shoots-to all his ivory teeth, like so many white bolts, upon his prison. Then Jonah prayed unto the Lord out of the fish's belly. But observe his prayer, and learn a weighty lesson. For sinful as he is, Jonah does not weep and wail for direct deliverance. He feels that his dreadful punishment is just. He leaves all his deliverance to God, contenting himself with this, that spite of all his pains and pangs, he will still look towards His holy temple. And here, shipmates, is true and faithful repentance; not clamorous for pardon, but grateful for punishment. And how pleasing to God was this conduct in Jonah, is shown in the eventual deliverance of him from the sea and the whale. Shipmates, I do not place Jonah before you to be copied for his sin but I do place him before you as a model for repentance. Sin not; but if you do, take heed to repent of it like Jonah."

While he was speaking these words, the howling of the shrieking, slanting storm without seemed to add new power to the preacher, who, when describing Jonah's sea-storm, seemed tossed by a storm himself. His deep chest heaved as with a ground-swell; his tossed arms seemed the warring elements at work; and the thunders that rolled away from off his swarthy brow, and the light leaping from his eye, made all his simple hearers look on him with a quick fear that was strange to them.

There now came a lull in his look, as he silently turned over the leaves of the Book once more; and, at last, standing motionless, with closed eyes, for the moment, seemed communing with God and himself.

But again he leaned over towards the people, and bowing his head lowly, with an aspect of the deepest yet manliest humility, he spake these words:

"Shipmates, God has laid but one hand upon you; both his hands press upon me. I have read ye by what murky light may be mine the lesson that Jonah teaches to all sinners; and therefore to ye, and still more to me, for I am a greater sinner than ye. And now how gladly would I come down from this mast-head and sit on the hatches there where you sit, and listen as you listen, while some one of you reads *me* that other and more awful lesson which Jonah teaches to *me*, as a pilot of

the living God. How being an anointed pilot-prophet, or speaker of true things, and bidden by the Lord to sound those unwelcome truths in the ears of a wicked Nineveh, Jonah, appalled at the hostility he should raise, fled from his mission, and sought to escape his duty and his God by taking ship at Joppa. But God is everywhere; Tarshish he never reached. As we have seen, God came upon him in the whale, and swallowed him down to living gulfs of doom, and with swift slantings tore him along 'into the midst of the seas,' where the eddying depths sucked him ten thousand fathoms down, and 'the weeds were wrapped about his head,' and all the watery world of woe bowled over him. Yet even then beyond the reach of any plummet—'out of the belly of hell'—when the whale grounded upon the ocean's utmost bones, even then, God heard the engulfed, repenting prophet when he cried. Then God spake unto the fish; and from the shuddering cold and blackness of the sea, the whale came breaching up towards the warm and pleasant sun, and all the delights of air and earth; and 'vomited out Jonah upon the dry land;' when the word of the Lord came a second time; and Jonah, bruised and beaten—his ears, like two sea-shells, still multitudinously murmuring of the ocean—Jonah did the Almighty's bidding. And what was that, shipmates? To preach the Truth to the face of Falsehood! That was it!

"This, shipmates, this is that other lesson; and woe to that pilot of the living God who slights it. Woe to him whom this world charms from Gospel duty! Woe to him who seeks to pour oil upon the waters when God has brewed them into a gale! Woe to him who seeks to please rather than to appall! Woe to him whose good name is more to him than goodness! Woe to him who, in this world, courts not dishonor! Woe to him who would not be true, even though to be false were salvation! Yea, woe to him who, as the great Pilot Paul has it, while preaching to others is himself a castaway!"

He drooped and fell away from himself for a moment; then lifting his face to them again, showed a deep joy in his eyes, as he cried out with a heavenly enthusiasm,—“But oh! shipmates! on the starboard hand of every woe, there is a sure delight; and higher the top of that delight, than the bottom of the woe is

deep. Is not the main-truck higher than the kelson is low? Delight is to him—a far, far upward, and inward delight—who against the proud gods and commodores of this earth, ever stands forth his own inexorable self. Delight is to him whose strong arms yet support him, when the ship of this base treacherous world has gone down beneath him. Delight is to him, who gives no quarter in the truth, and kills, burns, and destroys all sin though he pluck it out from under the robes of Senators and Judges. Delight,—top-gallant delight is to him, who acknowledges no law or lord, but the Lord his God, and is only a patriot to heaven. Delight is to him, whom all the waves of the billows of the seas of the boisterous mob can never shake from this sure Keel of the Ages. And eternal delight and deliciousness will be his, who coming to lay him down, can say with his final breath—O Father!—chiefly known to me by Thy rod—mortal or immortal, here I die. I have striven to be Thine, more than to be this world's, or mine own. Yet this is nothing; I leave eternity to Thee; for what is man that he should live out the lifetime of his God?"

He said no more, but slowly waving a benediction, covered his face with his hands, and so remained kneeling, till all the people had departed, and he was left alone in the place.

CHAPTER X

A BOSOM FRIEND

RETURNING to the Spouter-Inn from the Chapel, I found Queequeg there quite alone; he having left the Chapel before the benediction some time. He was sitting on a bench before the fire, with his feet on the stove hearth, and in one hand was holding close up to his face that little negro idol of his; peering hard into its face, and with a jack-knife gently whittling away at its nose, meanwhile humming to himself in his heathenish way.

But being now interrupted, he put up the image; and pretty

soon, going to the table, took up a large book there, and placing it on his lap began counting the pages with deliberate regularity; at every fiftieth page—as I fancied—stopping a moment, looking vacantly around him, and giving utterance to a long-drawn gurgling whistle of astonishment. He would then begin again at the next fifty; seeming to commence at number one each time, as though he could not count more than fifty, and it was only by such a large number of fifties being found together, that his astonishment at the multitude of pages was excited.

With much interest I sat watching him. Savage though he was, and hideously marred about the face—at least to my taste—his countenance yet had a something in it which was by no means disagreeable. You cannot hide the soul. Through all his unearthly tattooings, I thought I saw the traces of a simple honest heart; and in his large, deep eyes, fiery black and bold, there seemed tokens of a spirit that would dare a thousand devils. And besides all this, there was a certain lofty bearing about the Pagan, which even his uncouthness could not altogether maim. He looked like a man who had never cringed and never had had a creditor. Whether it was, too, that his head being shaved, his forehead was drawn out in freer and brighter relief, and looked more expansive than it otherwise would, this I will not venture to decide; but certain it was his head was phrenologically an excellent one. It may seem ridiculous, but it reminded me of General Washington's head, as seen in the popular busts of him. It had the same long regularly graded retreating slope from above the brows, which were likewise very projecting, like two long promontories thickly wooded on top. Queequeg was George Washington cannibalistically developed.

Whilst I was thus closely scanning him, half-pretending meanwhile to be looking out at the storm from the casement, he never heeded my presence, never troubled himself with so much as a single glance; but appeared wholly occupied with counting the pages of the marvellous book. Considering how sociably we had been sleeping together the night previous, and especially considering the affectionate arm I had found thrown over me upon waking in the morning, I thought this indifference of his

very strange. But savages are strange beings; at times you do not know exactly how to take them. At first they are overawing; their calm self-collectedness of simplicity seems a Socratic wisdom. I had noticed also that Queequeg never consorted at all, or but very little, with the other seamen in the inn. He made no advances whatever; appeared to have no desire to enlarge the circle of his acquaintances. All this struck me as mightily singular; yet, upon second thoughts, there was something almost sublime in it. Here was a man some twenty thousand miles from home, by the way of Cape Horn, that is—which was the only way he could get there—thrown among people as strange to him as though he were in the planet Jupiter; and yet he seemed entirely at his ease; preserving the utmost serenity; content with his own companionship; always equal to himself. Surely this was a touch of fine philosophy; though no doubt he had never heard there was such a thing as that. But, perhaps, to be true philosophers, we mortals should not be conscious of so living or so striving. So soon as I hear that such or such a man gives himself out for a philosopher, I conclude that, like the dyspeptic old woman, he must have “broken his digester.”

As I sat there in that now lonely room; the fire burning low, in that mild stage when, after its first intensity has warmed the air, it then only glows to be looked at; the evening shades and phantoms gathering round the casements, and peering in upon us silent, solitary twain; the storm booming without in solemn swells; I began to be sensible of strange feelings. I felt a melting in me. No more my splintered heart and maddened hand were turned against the wolfish world. This soothing savage had redeemed it. There he sat, his very indifference speaking a nature in which there lurked no civilized hypocrisies and bland deceits. Wild he was; a very sight of sights to see; yet I began to feel myself mysteriously drawn towards him. And those same things that would have repelled most others, they were the very magnets that thus drew me. I'll try a pagan friend, thought I, since Christian kindness has proved but hollow courtesy. I drew my bench near him, and made some friendly signs and hints, doing my best to talk with him meanwhile. At first he little noticed these advances; but presently, upon my referring to his last

wearily
+ sh.

night's hospitalities, he made out to ask me whether we were again to be bedfellows. I told him yes; whereat I thought he looked pleased, perhaps a little complimented.

We then turned over the book together, and I endeavored to explain to him the purpose of the printing, and the meaning of the few pictures that were in it. Thus I soon engaged his interest; and from that we went to jabbering the best we could about the various outer sights to be seen in this famous town. Soon I proposed a social smoke; and, producing his pouch and tomahawk, he quietly offered me a puff. And then we sat exchanging puffs from that wild pipe of his, and keeping it regularly passing between us.

If there yet lurked any ice of indifference towards me in the Pagan's breast, this pleasant, genial smoke we had, soon thawed it out, and left us cronies. He seemed to take to me quite as naturally and unbiddenly as I to him; and when our smoke was over, he pressed his forehead against mine, clasped me round the waist, and said that henceforth we were married; meaning, in his country's phrase, that we were bosom friends; he would gladly die for me, if need should be. In a countryman, this sudden flame of friendship would have seemed far too premature, a thing to be much distrusted; but in this simple savage those old rules would not apply.

After supper, and another social chat and smoke, we went to our room together. He made me a present of his embalmed head; took out his enormous tobacco wallet, and groping under the tobacco, drew out some thirty dollars in silver; then spreading them on the table, and mechanically dividing them into two equal portions, pushed one of them towards me, and said it was mine. I was going to remonstrate; but he silenced me by pouring them into my trowsers' pockets. I let them stay. He then went about his evening prayers, took out his idol, and removed the paper fireboard. By certain signs and symptoms, I thought he seemed anxious for me to join him; but well knowing what was to follow, I deliberated a moment whether, in case he invited me, I would comply or otherwise.

I was a good Christian; born and bred in the bosom of the infallible Presbyterian Church. How then could I unite with

this wild idolator in worshipping his piece of wood? But what is worship? thought I. Do you suppose now, Ishmael, that the magnanimous God of heaven and earth—pagans and all included—can possibly be jealous of an insignificant bit of black wood? Impossible! But what is worship?—to do the will of God—that is worship. And what is the will of God?—to do to my fellow man what I would have my fellow man to do to me—that is the will of God. Now, Queequeg is my fellow man. And what do I wish that this Queequeg would do to me? Why, unite with me in my particular Presbyterian form of worship. Consequently, I must then unite with him in his; ergo, I must turn idolator. So I kindled the shavings; helped prop up the innocent little idol; offered him burnt biscuit with Queequeg; salamed before him twice or thrice; kissed his nose; and that done, we undressed and went to bed, at peace with our own consciences and all the world. But we did not go to sleep without some little chat.

How it is I know not; but there is no place like a bed for confidential disclosures between friends. Man and wife, they say, there open the very bottom of their souls to each other; and some old couples often lie and chat over old times till nearly morning. Thus, then, in our hearts' honeymoon, lay I and Queequeg—a cosy, loving pair.

CHAPTER XI

NIGHTGOWN

WE had lain thus in bed, chatting and napping at short intervals, and Queequeg now and then affectionately throwing his brown tattooed legs over mine, and then drawing them back; so entirely sociable and free and easy were we; when, at last, by reason of our confabulations, what little nappishness remained in us altogether departed, and we felt like getting up again, though day-break was yet some way down the future.

Yes, we became very wakeful; so much so that our recum-

bent position began to grow wearisome, and by little and little we found ourselves sitting up; the clothes well tucked around us, leaning against the head-board with our four knees drawn up close together, and our two noses bending over them, as if our knee-pans were warming-pans. We felt very nice and snug, the more so since it was so chilly out of doors; indeed out of bed-clothes too, seeing that there was no fire in the room. The more so, I say, because truly to enjoy bodily warmth, some small part of you must be cold, for there is no quality in this world that is not what it is merely by contrast. Nothing exists in itself. If you flatter yourself that you are all over comfortable, and have been so a long time, then you cannot be said to be comfortable any more. But if, like Queequeg and me in the bed, the tip of your nose or the crown of your head be slightly chilled, why then, indeed, in the general consciousness you feel most delightfully and unmistakably warm. For this reason a sleeping apartment should never be furnished with a fire, which is one of the luxurious discomforts of the rich. For the height of this sort of deliciousness is to have nothing but the blanket between you and your snugness and the cold of the outer air. Then there you lie like the one warm spark in the heart of an arctic crystal.

We had been sitting in this crouching manner for some time, when all at once I thought I would open my eyes; for when between sheets, whether by day or by night, and whether asleep or awake, I have a way of always keeping my eyes shut, in order the more to concentrate the snugness of being in bed. Because no man can ever feel his own identity aright except his eyes be closed; as if darkness were indeed the proper element of our essences, though light be more congenial to our clayey part. Upon opening my eyes then, and coming out of my own pleasant and self-created darkness into the imposed and coarse outer gloom of the unilluminated twelve-o'clock-at-night, I experienced a disagreeable revulsion. Nor did I at all object to the hint from Queequeg that perhaps it were best to strike a light, seeing that we were so wide awake; and besides he felt a strong desire to have a few quiet puffs from his Tomahawk. Be it said, that though I had felt such a strong repugnance to his smoking in

the bed the night before, yet see how elastic our stiff prejudices grow when love once comes to bend them. For now I liked nothing better than to have Queequeg smoking by me, even in bed, because he seemed to be full of such serene household joy then. I no more felt unduly concerned for the landlord's policy of insurance. I was only alive to the condensed confidential comfortableness of sharing a pipe and a blanket with a real friend. With our shaggy jackets drawn about our shoulders, we now passed the Tomahawk from one to the other, till slowly there grew over us a blue hanging tester of smoke, illuminated by the flame of the new-lit lamp.

Whether it was that this undulating tester rolled the savage away to far distant scenes, I know not, but he now spoke of his native island; and, eager to hear his history, I begged him to go on and tell it. He gladly complied. Though at the time I but ill comprehended not a few of his words, yet subsequent disclosures, when I had become more familiar with his broken phraseology, now enable me to present the whole story such as it may prove in the mere skeleton I give.

CHAPTER XII

BIOGRAPHICAL

QUEEQUEG was a native of Kokovoko, an island far away to the West and South. It is not down in any map; true places never are.

When a new-hatched savage running wild about his native woodlands in a grass clout, followed by the nibbling goats, as if he were a green sapling; even then, in Queequeg's ambitious soul, lurked a strong desire to see something more of Christendom than a specimen whaler or two. His father was a High Chief, a King; his uncle a High Priest; and on the maternal side he boasted aunts who were the wives of unconquerable warriors. There was excellent blood in his veins—royal stuff; though

sadly vitiated, I fear, by the cannibal propensity he nourished in his untutored youth.

A Sag Harbor ship visited his father's bay, and Queequeg sought a passage to Christian lands. But the ship, having her full complement of seamen, spurned his suit; and not all the King his father's influence could prevail. But Queequeg vowed a vow. Alone in his canoe, he paddled off to a distant strait, which he knew the ship must pass through when she quitted the island. On one side was a coral reef; on the other a low tongue of land, covered with mangrove thickets that grew out into the water. Hiding his canoe, still afloat, among these thickets, with its prow seaward, he sat down in the stern, paddle low in hand; and when the ship was gliding by, like a flash he darted out; gained her side; with one backward dash of his foot capsized and sank his canoe; climbed up the chains; and throwing himself at full length upon the deck, grappled a ring-bolt there, and swore not to let it go, though hacked in pieces.

In vain the captain threatened to throw him overboard; suspended a cutlass over his naked wrists; Queequeg was the son of a King, and Queequeg budged not. Struck by his desperate dauntlessness, and his wild desire to visit Christendom, the captain at last relented, and told him he might make himself at home. But this fine young savage—this sea Prince of Wales, never saw the captain's cabin. They put him down among the sailors, and made a whalerman of him. But like Czar Peter content to toil in the shipyards of foreign cities, Queequeg disdained no seeming ignominy, if thereby he might happily gain the power of enlightening his untutored countrymen. For at bottom—so he told me—he was actuated by a profound desire to learn among the Christians, the arts whereby to make his people still happier than they were; and more than that, still better than they were. But, alas! the practices of whalermen soon convinced him that even Christians could be both miserable and wicked; infinitely more so, than all his father's heathens. Arrived at last in old Sag Harbor; and seeing what the sailors did there; and then going on to Nantucket, and seeing how they spent their wages in *that* place also, poor Queequeg gave it up for lost. Thought he, it's a wicked world in all meridians; I'll die a pagan.

And thus an old idolator at heart, he yet lived among these Christians, wore their clothes, and tried to talk their gibberish. Hence the queer ways about him, though now some time from home.

By hints, I asked him whether he did not propose going back, and having a coronation; since he might now consider his father dead and gone, he being very old and feeble at the last accounts. He answered no, not yet; and added that he was fearful Christianity, or rather Christians, had unfitted him for ascending the pure and undefiled throne of thirty pagan Kings before him. But by and by, he said, he would return,—as soon as he felt himself baptized again. For the nonce, however, he proposed to sail about, and sow his wild oats in all four oceans. They had made a harpooneer of him, and that barbed iron was in lieu of a sceptre now.

I asked him what might be his immediate purpose, touching his future movements. He answered, to go to sea again, in his old vocation. Upon this, I told him that whaling was my own design, and informed him of my intention to sail out of Nantucket, as being the most promising port for an adventurous whaleman to embark from. He at once resolved to accompany me to that island, ship aboard the same vessel, get into the same watch, the same boat, the same mess with me, in short to share my every hap; with both my hands in his, boldly dip into the Potluck of both worlds. To all this I joyously assented; for besides the affection I now felt for Queequeg, he was an experienced harpooneer, and as such, could not fail to be of great usefulness to one, who, like me, was wholly ignorant of the mysteries of whaling, though well acquainted with the sea, as known to merchant seamen.

His story being ended with his pipe's last dying puff, Queequeg embraced me, pressed his forehead against mine, and blowing out the light, we rolled over from each other, this way and that, and very soon were sleeping.

CHAPTER XIII

WHEELBARROW

NEXT morning, Monday, after disposing of the embalmed head to a barber, for a block, I settled my own and comrade's bill; using, however, my comrade's money. The grinning landlord, as well as the boarders, seemed amazingly tickled at the sudden friendship which had sprung up between me and Queequeg—especially as Peter Coffin's cock and bull stories about him had previously so much alarmed me concerning the very person whom I now companied with.

We borrowed a wheelbarrow, and embarking our things, including my own poor carpet-bag, and Queequeg's canvas sack and hammock, away we went down to "the Moss," the little Nantucket packet schooner moored at the wharf. As we were going along the people stared; not at Queequeg so much—for they were used to seeing cannibals like him in their streets,—but at seeing him and me upon such confidential terms. But we heeded them not, going along wheeling the barrow by turns, and Queequeg now and then stopping to adjust the sheath on his harpoon barbs. I asked him why he carried such a troublesome thing with him ashore, and whether all whaling ships did not find their own harpoons. To this, in substance, he replied, that though what I hinted was true enough, yet he had a particular affection for his own harpoon, because it was of assured stuff, well tried in many a mortal combat, and deeply intimate with the hearts of whales. In short, like many inland reapers and mowers, who go into the farmers' meadows armed with their own scythes—though in no wise obliged to furnished them—even so, Queequeg, for his own private reasons, preferred his own harpoon.

Shifting the barrow from my hand to his, he told me a funny story about the first wheelbarrow he had ever seen. It was in Sag Harbor. The owners of his ship, it seems, had lent him one,

in which to carry his heavy chest to his boarding house. Not to seem ignorant about the thing—though in truth he was entirely so, concerning the precise way in which to manage the barrow—Queequeg puts his chest upon it; lashes it fast; and then shoulders the barrow and marches up the wharf. “Why,” said I, Queequeg, you might have known better than that, one would think. Didn’t the people laugh?”

Upon this, he told me another story. The people of his island of Rokovoko, it seems, at their wedding feasts express the fragrant water of young cocoanuts into a large stained calabash like a punchbowl; and this punchbowl always forms the great central ornament on the braided mat where the feast is held. Now a certain grand merchant ship once touched at Rokovoko, and its commander—from all accounts, a very stately punctilious gentleman, at least for a sea captain—this commander was invited to the wedding feast of Queequeg’s sister, a pretty young princess just turned of ten. Well; when all the wedding guests were assembled at the bride’s bamboo cottage, this Captain marches in, and being assigned the post of honor, placed himself over against the punchbowl, and between the High Priest and his majesty the King, Queequeg’s father. Grace being said,—for those people have their grace as well as we—though Queequeg told me that unlike us, who at such times look downwards to our platters, they, on the contrary, copying the ducks, glance upwards to the great Giver of all feasts—Grace, I say, being said, the High Priest opens the banquet by the immemorial ceremony of the island; that is, dipping his consecrated and consecrating fingers into the bowl before the blessed beverage circulates. Seeing himself placed next the Priest, and noting the ceremony, and thinking himself—being Captain of a ship—as having plain precedence over a mere island King, especially in the King’s own house—the Captain coolly proceeds to wash his hands in the punch bowl;—taking it I suppose for a huge finger-glass. “Now,” said Queequeg, “what you tink now?—Didn’t our people laugh?”

At last, passage paid, and luggage safe, we stood on board the schooner. Hoisting sail, it glided down the Acushnet river. On

one side, New Bedford rose in terraces of streets, their ice-covered trees all glittering in the clear, cold air. Huge hills and mountains of casks on casks were piled upon her wharves, and side by side the world-wandering whale ships lay silent and safely moored at last; while from others came a sound of carpenters and coopers, with blended noises of fires and forges to melt the pitch, all betokening that new cruises were on the start; that one most perilous and long voyage ended, only begins a second; and a second ended, only begins a third, and so on, for ever and for aye. Such is the endlessness, yea, the intolerableness of all earthly effort.

Gaining the more open water, the bracing breeze waxed fresh; the little Moss tossed the quick foam from her bows, as a young colt his snortings. How I snuffed that Tartar air!—how I spurned that turnpike earth!—that common highway all over dented with the marks of slavish heels and hoofs; and turned me to admire the magnanimity of the sea which will permit no records.

At the same foam-fountain, Queequeg seemed to drink and reel with me. His dusky nostrils swelled apart; he showed his filed and pointed teeth. On, on we flew, and our offing gained, the Moss did homage to the blast; ducked and dived her brows as a slave before the Sultan. Sideways leaning, we sideways darted; every ropeyarn tingling like a wire; the two tall masts buckling like Indian canes in land tornadoes. So full of this reeling scene were we, as we stood by the plunging bowsprit, that for some time we did not notice the jeering glances of the passengers, a lubber-like assembly, who marvelled that two fellow beings should be so companionable; as though a white man were anything more dignified than a whitewashed negro. But there were some boobies and bumpkins there, who, by their intense greenness, must have come from the heart and centre of all verdure. Queequeg caught one of these young saplings mimicking him behind his back. I thought the bumpkin's hour of doom was come. Dropping his harpoon, the brawny savage caught him in his arms, and by an almost miraculous dexterity and strength, sent him high up bodily into the air; then slightly

tapping his stern in mid-somerset, the fellow landed with bursting lungs upon his feet, while Queequeg, turning his back upon him, lighted his tomahawk pipe and passed it to me for a puff.

"Capting! Capting!" yelled the bumpkin, running towards that officer; "Capting, Capting, here's the devil."

"Hallo, *you* sir," cried the Captain, a gaunt rib of the sea, stalking up to Queequeg, "what in thunder do you mean by that? Don't you know you might have killed that chap?"

"What him say?" said Queequeg, as he mildly turned to me.

"He say," said I, "that you came near kill-e that man there," pointing to the still shivering greenhorn.

"Kill-e," cried Queequeg, twisting his tattooed face into an unearthly expression of disdain, "ah! him bevy small-e fish-e; Queequeg no kill-e so small-e fish-e; Queequeg kill-e big whale!"

"Look you," roared the Captain, "I'll kill-e *you*, you cannibal, if you try any more of your tricks aboard here; so mind your eye."

But it so happened just then, that it was high time for the Captain to mind his own eye. The prodigious strain upon the main-sail had parted the weather-sheet, and the tremendous boom was now flying from side to side, completely sweeping the entire after part of the deck. The poor fellow whom Queequeg had handled so roughly, was swept overboard; all hands were in a panic; and to attempt snatching at the boom to stay it, seemed madness. It flew from right to left, and back again, almost in one ticking of a watch, and every instant seemed on the point of snapping into splinters. Nothing was done, and nothing seemed capable of being done; those on deck rushed towards the bows, and stood eyeing the boom as if it were the lower jaw of an exasperated whale. In the midst of this consternation, Queequeg dropped deftly to his knees, and crawling under the path of the boom, whipped hold of a rope, secured one end to the bulwarks, and then flinging the other like a lasso, caught it round the boom as it swept over his head, and at the next jerk, the spar was that way trapped, and all was safe. The schooner was run into the wind, and while the hands were clearing away the stern boat, Queequeg, stripped to the waist, darted from the side with a long living arc of a leap. For three

minutes or more he was seen swimming like a dog, throwing his long arms straight out before him, and by turns revealing his brawny shoulders through the freezing foam. I looked at the grand and glorious fellow, but saw no one to be saved. The greenhorn had gone down. Shooting himself perpendicularly from the water, Queequeg now took an instant's glance around him, and seeming to see just how matters were, dived down and disappeared. A few minutes more, and he rose again, one arm still striking out, and with the other dragging a lifeless form. The boat soon picked them up. The poor bumpkin was restored. All hands voted Queequeg a noble trump; the captain begged his pardon. From that hour I clove to Queequeg like a barnacle; yea, till poor Queequeg took his last long dive.

Was there ever such unconsciousness? He did not seem to think that he at all deserved a medal from the Humane and Magnanimous Societies. He only asked for water—fresh water—something to wipe the brine off; that done, he put on dry clothes, lighted his pipe, and leaning against the bulwarks, and mildly eyeing those around him, seemed to be saying to himself—"It's a mutual, joint-stock world, in all meridians. We cannibals must help these Christians."

CHAPTER XIV

NANTUCKET

NOTHING more happened on the passage worthy the mentioning; so, after a fine run, we safely arrived in Nantucket.

Nantucket! Take out your map and look at it. See what a real corner of the world it occupies; how it stands there, away off shore, more lonely than the Eddystone lighthouse. Look at it—a mere hillock, and elbow of sand; all beach, without a background. There is more sand there than you would use in twenty years as a substitute for blotting paper. Some gamesome wights will tell you that they have to plant weeds there, they don't

grow naturally; that they import Canada thistles; that they have to send beyond seas for a spile to stop a leak in an oil cask; that pieces of wood in Nantucket are carried about like bits of the true cross in Rome; that people there plant toadstools before their houses, to get under the shade in summer time; that one blade of grass makes an oasis, three blades in a day's walk a prairie; that they wear quicksand shoes, something like Laplander snowshoes; that they are so shut up, belted about, every way inclosed, surrounded, and made an utter island of by the ocean, that to their very chairs and tables small clams will sometimes be found adhering, as to the backs of sea turtles. But these extravaganzas only show that Nantucket is no Illinois.

Look now at the wondrous traditional story of how this island was settled by the red-men. Thus goes the legend. In olden times an eagle swooped down upon the New England coast, and carried off an infant Indian in his talons. With loud lament the parents saw their child borne out of sight over the wide waters. They resolved to follow in the same direction. Setting out in their canoes, after a perilous passage they discovered the island, and there they found an empty ivory casket,—the poor little Indian's skeleton.

What wonder, then, that these Nantucketers, born on a beach, should take to the sea for a livelihood! They first caught crabs and quohogs in the sand; grown bolder, they waded out with nets for mackerel; more experienced, they pushed off in boats and captured cod; and at last, launching a navy of great ships on the sea, explored this watery world; put an incessant belt of circumnavigations round it; peeped in at Bhering's Straits; and in all seasons and all oceans declared everlasting war with the mightiest animated mass that has survived the flood; most monstrous and most mountainous! That Himmalehan, salt-sea Mastodon, clothed with such portentousness of unconscious power, that his very panics are more to be dreaded than his most fearless and malicious assaults!

And thus have these naked Nantucketers, these sea hermits, issuing from their ant-hill in the sea, overrun and conquered the watery world like so many Alexanders; parcelling out among

them the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian oceans, as the three pirate powers did Poland. Let America add Mexico to Texas, and pile Cuba upon Canada; let the English 'overswarm all India, and hang out their blazing banner from the sun; two thirds of this terraqueous globe are the Nantucketer's. For the sea is his; he owns it, as Emperors own empires; other seamen having but a right of way through it. Merchant ships are but extension bridges; armed ones but floating forts; even pirates and privateers, though following the sea as highwaymen the road, they but plunder other ships, other fragments of the land like themselves, without seeking to draw their living from the bottomless deep itself. The Nantucketer, he alone resides and riots on the sea; he alone, in Bible language, goes down to it in ships; to and fro ploughing it as his own special plantation. *There* is his home; *there* lies his business, which a Noah's flood would not interrupt, though it overwhelmed all the millions in China. He lives on the sea, as prairie cocks in the prairie; he hides among the waves, he climbs them as chamois hunters climb the Alps. For years he knows not the land; so that when he comes to it at last, it smells like another world, more strangely than the moon would to an Earthsman. With the landless gull, that at sunset folds her wings and is rocked to sleep between billows; so at nightfall, the Nantucketer, out of sight of land, furls his sails, and lays him to his rest, while under his very pillow rush herds of walruses and whales.

CHAPTER XV

CHOWDER

It was quite late in the evening when the little Moss came snugly to anchor, and Queequeg and I went ashore; so we could attend to no business that day, at least none but a supper and a bed. The landlord of the Spouter-Inn had recommended us to his cousin Hosea Hussey of the Try Pots, whom he asserted to

be the proprietor of one of the best kept hotels in all Nantucket, and moreover he had assured us that cousin Hosea, as he called him, was famous for his chowders. In short, he plainly hinted that we could not possibly do better than try pot-luck at the Try Pots. But the directions he had given us about keeping a yellow warehouse on our starboard hand till we opened a white church to the larboard, and then keeping that on the larboard hand till we made a corner three points to the starboard, and that done, then ask the first man we met where the place was: these crooked directions of his very much puzzled us at first, especially as, at the outset, Queequeg insisted that the yellow warehouse—our first point of departure—must be left on the larboard hand, whereas I had understood Peter Coffin to say it was on the starboard. However, by dint of beating about a little in the dark, and now and then knocking up a peaceable inhabitant to inquire the way, we at last came to something which there was no mistaking.

Two enormous wooden pots painted black, and suspended by asses' ears, swung from the cross-trees of an old top-mast, planted in front of an old doorway. The horns of the cross-trees were sawed off on the other side, so that this old top-mast looked not a little like a gallows. Perhaps I was over sensitive to such impressions at the time, but I could not help staring at this gallows with a vague misgiving. A sort of crick was in my neck as I gazed up to the two remaining horns; yes, *two* of them, one for Queequeg, and one for me. It's ominous, thinks I. A Coffin my Innkeeper upon landing in my first whaling port; tombstones staring at me in the whalemens' chapel; and here a gallows! and a pair of prodigious black pots too! Are these last throwing out oblique hints touching Tophet?

I was called from these reflections by the sight of a freckled woman with yellow hair and a yellow gown, standing in the porch of the inn, under a dull red lamp swinging there, that looked much like an injured eye, and carrying on a brisk scolding with a man in a purple woollen shirt.

"Get along with ye," said she to the man, "or I'll be combing ye!"

"Come on, Queequeg," said I, "all right. There's Mrs. Hussey."

And so it turned out; Mr. Hosea Hussey being from home, but leaving Mrs. Hussey entirely competent to attend to all his affairs. Upon making known our desires for a supper and a bed, Mrs. Hussey, postponing further scolding for the present, ushered us into a little room, and seating us at a table spread with the relics of a recently concluded repast, turned round to us and said—"Clam or Cod?"

"What's that about Cods, ma'am?" said I, with much politeness.

"Clam or Cod?" she repeated.

"A clam for supper? a cold clam; is *that* what you mean, Mrs. Hussey?" says I; "but that's a rather cold and clammy reception in the winter time, ain't it, Mrs. Hussey?"

But being in a great hurry to resume scolding the man in the purple shirt, who was waiting for it in the entry, and seeming to hear nothing but the word "clam," Mrs. Hussey hurried towards an open door leading to the kitchen, and bawling out "clam for two," disappeared.

"Queequeg," said I, "do you think that we can make out a supper for us both on one clam?"

However, a warm savory steam from the kitchen served to belie the apparently cheerless prospect before us. But when that smoking chowder came in, the mystery was delightfully explained. Oh, sweet friends! hearken to me. It was made of small juicy clams, scarcely bigger than hazel nuts, mixed with pounded ship biscuit, and salted pork cut up into little flakes; the whole enriched with butter, and plentifully seasoned with pepper and salt. Our appetites being sharpened by the frosty voyage, and in particular, Queequeg seeing his favorite fishing food before him, and the chowder being surpassingly excellent, we despatched it with great expedition: when leaning back a moment and bethinking me of Mrs. Hussey's clam and cod announcement, I thought I would try a little experiment. Stepping to the kitchen door, I uttered the word "cod" with great emphasis, and resumed my seat. In a few moments the savory steam came forth again, but with a different flavor, and in good time a fine cod-chowder was placed before us.

We resumed business; and while plying our spoons in the

bowl, thinks I to myself, I wonder now if this here has any effect on the head? What's that stultifying saying about chowder-headed people? "But look, Queequeg, ain't that a live eel in your bowl? Where's your harpoon?"

Fishest of all fishy places was the Try Pots, which well deserved its name; for the pots there were always boiling chowders. Chowder for breakfast, and chowder for dinner, and chowder for supper, till you began to look for fish-bones coming through your clothes. The area before the house was paved with clamshells. Mrs. Hussey wore a polished necklace of codfish vertebra; and Hosea Hussey had his account books bound in superior old shark-skin. There was a fishy flavor to the milk, too, which I could not at all account for, till one morning happening to take a stroll along the beach among some fishermen's boats, I saw Hosea's brindled cow feeding on fish remnants, and marching along the sand with each foot in a cod's decapitated head, looking very slipshod, I assure ye.

Supper concluded, we received a lamp, and directions from Mrs. Hussey concerning the nearest way to bed; but, as Queequeg was about to precede me up the stairs, the lady reached forth her arm, and demanded his harpoon; she allowed no harpoon in her chambers. "Why not?" said I; "every true whaleman sleeps with his harpoon—but why not?" "Because it's dangerous," says she. "Ever since young Stiggs coming from that unfort'nt v'y'ge of his, when he was gone four years and a half, with only three barrels of *ile*, was found dead in my first floor back, with his harpoon in his side; ever since then I allow no boarders to take sich dangerous weepens in their rooms at night. So, Mr. Queequeg" (for she had learned his name), "I will just take this here iron, and keep it for you till morning. But the chowder; clam or cod to-morrow for breakfast, men?"

"Both," says I; "and let's have a couple of smoked herring by way of variety."

CHAPTER XVI

THE SHIP

IN bed we concocted our plans for the morrow. But to my surprise and no small concern, Queequeg now gave me to understand, that he had been diligently consulting Yojo—the name of his black little god—and Yojo had told him two or three times over, and strongly insisted upon it everyway, that instead of our going together among the whaling-fleet in harbor, and in concert selecting our craft; instead of this, I say, Yojo earnestly enjoined that the selection of the ship should rest wholly with me, inasmuch as Yojo purposed befriending us; and, in order to do so, had already pitched upon a vessel, which, if left to myself, I, Ishmael, should infallibly light upon, for all the world as though it had turned out by chance; and in that vessel I must immediately ship myself, for the present irrespective of Queequeg.

I have forgotten to mention that, in many things, Queequeg placed great confidence in the excellence of Yojo's judgment and surprising forecast of things; and cherished Yojo with considerable esteem, as a rather good sort of god, who perhaps meant well enough upon the whole, but in all cases did not succeed in his benevolent designs.

Now, this plan of Queequeg's, or rather Yojo's, touching the selection of our craft; I did not like that plan at all. I had not a little relied upon Queequeg's sagacity to point out the whaler best fitted to carry us and our fortunes securely. But as all my remonstrances produced no effect upon Queequeg, I was obliged to acquiesce; and accordingly prepared to set about this business with a determined rushing sort of energy and vigor, that should quickly settle that trifling little affair. Next morning early, leaving Queequeg shut up with Yojo in our little bedroom—for it seemed that it was some sort of Lent or Ramadan, or day of fasting, humiliation, and prayer with Queequeg and Yojo that

day; *how* it was I never could find out, for, though I applied myself to it several times, I never could master his liturgies and XXXIX Articles—leaving Queequeg, then, fasting on his tomahawk pipe, and Yojo warming himself at his sacrificial fire of shavings, I sallied out among the shipping. After much prolonged sauntering and many random inquiries, I learnt that there were three ships up for three-years' voyages—The Devil-dam, the Tit-bit, and the Pequod. *Devil-Dam*, I do not know the origin of; *Tit-bit* is obvious; *Pequod*, you will no doubt remember, was the name of a celebrated tribe of Massachusetts Indians, now extinct as the ancient Medes. I peered and pryed about the Devil-Dam; from her, hopped over to the Tit-bit; and, finally, going on board the Pequod, looked around her for a moment, and then decided that this was the very ship for us.

You may have seen many a quaint craft in your day, for aught I know;—squared-toed luggers; mountainous Japanese junks; butter-box galliots, and what not; but take my word for it, you never saw such a rare old craft as this same rare old Pequod. She was a ship of the old school, rather small if anything; with an old fashioned claw-footed look about her. Long seasoned and weather-stained in the typhoons and calms of all four oceans, her old hull's complexion was darkened like a French grenadier's, who has alike fought in Egypt and Siberia. Her venerable bows looked bearded. Her masts—cut somewhere on the coast of Japan, where her original ones were lost overboard in a gale—her masts stood stiffly up like the spines of the three old kings of Cologne. Her ancient decks were worn and wrinkled, like the pilgrim-worshipped flag-stone in Canterbury Cathedral where Beckett bled. But to all these her old antiquities, were added new and marvellous features, pertaining to the wild business that for more than half a century she had followed. Old Captain Peleg, many years her chief-mate, before he commanded another vessel of his own, and now a retired seaman, and one of the principal owners of the Pequod,—this old Peleg, during the term of his chief-mateship, had built upon her original grotesqueness, and inlaid it, all over, with a quaintness both of material and device, unmatched by anything except it be Thorkill-Hake's carved buckler or bedstead. She was

apparelled like any barbaric Ethiopian emperor, his neck heavy with pendants of polished ivory. She was a thing of trophies. A cannibal of a craft, tricking herself forth in the chased bones of her enemies. All round, her unpanelled, open bulwarks were garnished like one continuous jaw, with the long sharp teeth of the sperm whale, inserted there for pins, to fasten her old hempen thews and tendons to. Those thews ran not through base blocks of land wood, but deftly travelled over sheaves of sea-ivory. Scorning a turnstile wheel at her reverend helm, she sported there a tiller; and that tiller was in one mass, curiously carved from the long narrow lower jaw of her hereditary foe. The helmsman who steered by that tiller in a tempest, felt like the Tartar, when he holds back his fiery steed by clutching its jaw. A noble craft, but somehow a most melancholy! All noble things are touched with that.

Now when I looked about the quarter-deck, for some one having authority, in order to propose myself as a candidate for the voyage, at first I saw nobody; but I could not well overlook a strange sort of tent, or rather wigwam, pitched a little behind the main-mast. It seemed only a temporary erection used in port. It was of a conical shape, some ten feet high; consisting of the long, huge slabs of limber black bone taken from the middle and highest part of the jaws of the right-whale. Planted with their broad ends on the deck, a circle of these slabs laced together, mutually sloped towards each other, and at the apex united in a tufted point, where the loose hairy fibres waved to and fro like a top-knot on some old Pottowotamie Sachem's head. A triangular opening faced towards the bows of the ship, so that the insider commanded a complete view forward.

And half concealed in this queer tenement, I at length found one who by his aspect seemed to have authority; and who, it being noon, and the ship's work suspended, was now enjoying respite from the burden of command. He was seated on an old-fashioned oaken chair, wriggling all over with curious carving; and the bottom of which was formed of a stout interlacing of the same elastic stuff of which the wigwam was constructed.

There was nothing so very particular, perhaps, about the

appearance of the elderly man I saw; he was brown and brawny, like most old seamen, and heavily rolled up in blue pilot-cloth, cut in the Quaker style; only there was a fine and almost microscopic net-work of the minutest wrinkles interlacing round his eyes, which must have arisen from his continual sailings in many hard gales, and always looking to windward;—for this causes the muscles about the eyes to become pursed together. Such eye-wrinkles are very effectual in a scowl.

“Is this the Captain of the Pequod?” said I, advancing to the door of the tent.

“Supposing it be the Captain of the Pequod, what dost thou want of him?” he demanded.

“I was thinking of shipping.”

“Thou wast, wast thou? I see thou are no Nantucketer—ever been in a stove boat?”

“No, Sir, I never have.”

“Dost know nothing at all about whaling, I dare say—eh?”

“Nothing, Sir; but I have no doubt I shall soon learn. I’ve been several voyages in the merchant service, and I think that—”

“Merchant service be damned. Talk not that lingo to me. Dost see that leg?—I’ll take that leg away from thy stern, if ever thou talkest of the marchant service to me again. Marchant service indeed! I suppose now ye feel considerable proud of having served in those marchant ships. But flukes! man, what makes thee want to go a whaling, eh?—it looks a little suspicious, don’t it, eh?—Hast not been a pirate, hast thou?—Didst not rob thy last Captain, didst thou?—Dost not think of murdering the officers when thou gettest to sea?”

I protested my innocence of these things. I saw that under the mask of these half humorous inuendoes, this old seaman, as an insulated Quakerish Nantucketer, was full of his insular prejudices, and rather distrustful of all aliens, unless they hailed from Cape Cod or the Vineyard.

“But what takes thee a-whaling? I want to know that before I think of shipping ye.”

“Well, sir, I want to see what whaling is. I want to see the world.”

“Want to see what whaling is, eh? Have ye clapped eye on Captain Ahab?”

"Who is Captain Ahab, sir?"

"Aye, aye, I thought so. Captain Ahab is the Captain of this ship.

"I am mistaken then. I thought I was speaking to the Captain himself."

"Thou art speaking to Captain Peleg—that's who ye are speaking to, young man. It belongs to me and Captain Bildad to see the Pequod fitted out for the voyage, and supplied with all her needs, including crew. We are part owners and agents. But as I was going to say, if thou wantest to know what whaling is, as thou tellest ye do, I can put ye in a way of finding it out before ye bind yourself to it, past backing out. Clap eye on Captain Ahab, young man, and thou wilt find that he has only one leg."

"What do you mean, sir? Was the other one lost by a whale?"

"Lost by a whale! Young man, come nearer to me: it was devoured, chewed up, crunched by the monstrousest parmacetty that ever chipped a boat!—ah, ahl!"

I was a little alarmed by his energy, perhaps also a little touched at the hearty grief in his concluding exclamation, but said as calmly as I could, "What you say is no doubt true enough, sir; but how could I know there was any peculiar ferocity in that particular whale, though indeed I might have inferred as much from the simple fact of the accident."

"Look ye now, young man, thy lungs are a sort of soft, d'ye see; thou dost not talk shark a bit. *Sure*, ye've been to sea before now; sure of that?"

"Sir," said I, "I thought I told you that I had been four voyages in the merchant——"

"Hard down out of that! Mind what I said about the marchant service—don't aggravate me—I won't have it. But let us understand each other. I have given thee a hint about what whaling is; do ye yet feel inclined for it?"

"I do, sir."

"Very good. Now, art thou the man to pitch a harpoon down a live whale's throat, and then jump after it? Answer, quick!"

"I am, sir, if it should be positively indispensable to do so; not to be got rid of, that is; which I don't take to be the fact."

"Good again. Now then, thou not only wantest to go a-whaling, to find out by experience what whaling is, but ye also want to

go in order to see the world? Was not that what ye said? I thought so. Well then, just step forward there, and take a peep over the weather-bow, and then back to me and tell me what ye see there."

For a moment I stood a little puzzled by this curious request, not knowing exactly how to take it, whether humorously or in earnest. But concentrating all his crow's feet into one scowl, Captain Peleg started me on the errand.

Going forward and glancing over the weather bow, I perceived that the ship swinging to her anchor with the flood-tide, was now obliquely pointing towards the open ocean. The prospect was unlimited, but exceedingly monotonous and forbidding; not the slightest variety that I could see.

"Well, what's the report?" said Peleg when I came back; "what did ye see?"

"Not much," I replied—"nothing but water; considerable horizon though, and there's a squall coming up, I think."

"Well, what dost thou think then of seeing the world? Do ye wish to go round Cape Horn to see any more of it, eh? Can't ye see the world where you stand?"

I was a little staggered, but go a-whaling I must, and I would; and the Pequod was as good a ship as any—I thought the best—and all this I now repeated to Peleg. Seeing me so determined, he expressed his willingness to ship me.

"And thou mayest as well sign the papers right off," he added—"come along with ye." And so saying, he led the way below deck into the cabin.

Seated on the transom was what seemed to me a most uncommon and surprising figure. It turned out to be Captain Bildad, who along with Captain Peleg was one of the largest owners of the vessel; the other shares, as is sometimes the case in these ports, being held by a crowd of old annuitants; widows, fatherless children, and chancery wards; each owning about the value of a timber head, or a foot of plank, or a nail or two in the ship. People in Nantucket invest their money in whaling vessels, the same way that you do yours in approved state stocks bringing in good interest.

Now, Bildad, like Peleg, and indeed many other Nantucketers,

was a Quaker, the island having been originally settled by that sect; and to this day its inhabitants in general retain in an uncommon measure the peculiarities of the Quaker, only variously and anomalously modified by things altogether alien and heterogeneous. For some of these same Quakers are the most sanguinary of all sailors and whale-hunters. They are fighting Quakers; they are Quakers with a vengeance.

So that there are instances among them of men, who, named with Scripture names—a singularly common fashion on the island—and in childhood naturally imbibing the stately dramatic thee and thou of the Quaker idiom; still, from the audacious, daring, and boundless adventure of their subsequent lives, strangely blend with these unoutgrown peculiarities, a thousand bold dashes of character, not unworthy a Scandinavian sea-king, or a poetical Pagan Roman. And when these things unite in a man of greatly superior natural force, with a globular brain and a ponderous heart; who has also by the stillness and seclusion of many long night-watches in the remotest waters, and beneath constellations never seen here at the north, been led to think untraditionally and independently; receiving all nature's sweet or savage impressions fresh from her own virgin voluntary and confiding breast, and thereby chiefly, but with some help from accidental advantages, to learn a bold and nervous lofty language—that man makes one in a whole nation's census—a mighty pageant creature, formed for noble tragedies. Nor will it at all detract from him, dramatically regarded, if either by birth or other circumstances, he have what seems a half wilful overruling morbidness at the bottom of his nature. For all men tragically great are made so through a certain morbidness. Be sure of this, O young ambition, all mortal greatness is but disease. But, as yet we have not to do with such an one, but with quite another; and still a man, who, if indeed peculiar, it only results again from another phase of the Quaker, modified by individual circumstances.

Like Captain Peleg, Captain Bildad was a well-to-do, retired whaleman. But unlike Captain Peleg—who cared not a rush for what are called serious things, and indeed deemed those self-same serious things the veriest of all trifles—Captain Bildad

had not only been originally educated according to the strictest sect of Nantucket Quakerism, but all his subsequent ocean life, and the sight of many unclad, lovely island creatures, round the Horn—all that had not moved this native born Quaker one single jot, had not so much as altered one angle of his vest. Still, for all this immutableness, was there some lack of common consistency about worthy Captain Bildad. Though refusing, from conscientious scruples, to bear arms against land invaders, yet himself had illimitably invaded the Atlantic and Pacific; and though a sworn foe to human bloodshed, yet had he in his straight-bodied coat, spilled tuns upon tuns of leviathan gore. How now in the contemplative evening of his days, the pious Bildad reconciled these things in the reminiscence, I do not know; but it did not seem to concern him much, and very probably he had long since come to the sage and sensible conclusion that a man's religion is one thing, and this practical world quite another. This world pays dividends. Rising from a little cabin-boy in short clothes of the drabdest drab, to a harpooneer in a broad shad-bellied waistcoat; from that becoming boat-header, chief-mate, and captain, and finally a ship-owner; Bildad, as I hinted before, had concluded his adventurous career by wholly retiring from active life at the goodly age of sixty, and dedicating his remaining days to the quiet receiving of his well-earned income.

Now Bildad, I am sorry to say, had the reputation of being an incorrigible old hunk, and in his sea-going days, a bitter, hard task-master. They told me in Nantucket, though it certainly seems a curious story, that when he sailed the old Categut whaleman, his crew, upon arriving home, were mostly all carried ashore to the hospital, sore exhausted and worn out. For a pious man, especially for a Quaker, he was certainly rather hard-hearted, to say the least. He never used to swear, though, at his men, they said; but somehow he got an inordinate quantity of cruel, unmitigated hard work out of them. When Bildad was a chief-mate, to have his drab-colored eye intently looking at you, made you feel completely nervous, till you could clutch something—a hammer or a marling-spike, and go to work like mad, at something or other, never mind what. Indolence and

idleness perished from before him. His own person was the exact embodiment of his utilitarian character. On his long, gaunt body, he carried no spare flesh, no superfluous beard, his chin having a soft, economical nap to it, like the worn nap of his broad-brimmed hat.

Such, then, was the person that I saw seated on the transom when I followed Captain Peleg down into the cabin. The space between the decks was small; and there, bolt-upright, sat old Bildad, who always sat so, and never leaned, and this to save his coat tails. His broad-brim was placed beside him; his legs were stiffly crossed; his drab vesture was buttoned up to his chin; and spectacles on nose, he seemed absorbed in reading from a ponderous volume.

"Bildad," cried Captain Peleg, "at it again, Bildad, eh? Ye have been studying those Scriptures, now, for the last thirty years, to my certain knowledge. How far ye got, Bildad?"

As if long habituated to such profane talk from his old shipmate, Bildad, without noticing his present irreverence, quietly looked up, and seeing me, glanced again inquiringly towards Peleg.

"He says he's our man, Bildad," said Peleg, "he wants to ship."

"Dost thee?" said Bildad, in a hollow tone, and turning round to me.

"I *dost*," said I unconsciously, he was so intense a Quaker.

"What do ye think of him, Bildad?" said Peleg.

"He'll do," said Bildad, eyeing me, and then went on spelling away at his book in a mumbling tone quite audible.

I thought him the queerest old Quaker I ever saw, especially as Peleg, his friend and old shipmate, seemed such a blusterer. But I said nothing, only looking round me sharply. Peleg now threw open a chest, and drawing forth the ship's articles, placed pen and ink before him, and seated himself at a little table. I began to think it was high time to settle with myself at what terms I would be willing to engage for the voyage. I was already aware that in the whaling business they paid no wages; but all hands, including the captain, received certain shares of the profits called *lays*, and that these lays were proportioned to the degree of importance pertaining to the respective duties of the ship's com-

pany. I was also aware that being a green hand at whaling, my own lay would not be very large; but considering that I was used to the sea, could steer a ship, splice a rope, and all that, I made no doubt that from all I had heard I should be offered at least the 275th lay—that is, the 275th part of the clear nett proceeds of the voyage, whatever that might eventually amount to. And though the 275th lay was what they call a rather *long lay*, yet it was better than nothing; and if we had a lucky voyage, might pretty nearly pay for the clothing I would wear out on it, not to speak of my three years' beef and board, for which I would not have to pay one stiver.

It might be thought that this was a poor way to accumulate a princely fortune—and so it was, a very poor way indeed. But I am one of those that never take on about princely fortunes, and am quite content if the world is ready to board and lodge me, while I am putting up at this grim sign of the Thunder Cloud. Upon the whole, I thought that the 275th lay would be about the fair thing, but would not have been surprised had I been offered the 200th, considering I was of a broad-shouldered make.

But one thing, nevertheless, that made me a little distrustful about receiving a generous share of the profits was this: Ashore, I had heard something of both Captain Peleg and his unaccountable old crony Bildad; how that they being the principal proprietors of the Pequod, therefore the other and more inconsiderable and scattered owners, left nearly the whole management of the ship's affairs to these two. And I did not know but what the stingy old Bildad might have a mighty deal to say about shipping hands, especially as I now found him on board the Pequod, quite at home there in the cabin, and reading his Bible as if at his own fireside. Now while Peleg was vainly trying to mend a pen with his jack-knife, old Bildad, to my no small surprise, considering that he was such an interested party in these proceedings; Bildad never heeded us, but went on mumbling to himself out of his book, "*Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth—*"

"Well, Captain Bildad," interrupted Peleg, "what d'ye say, what lay shall we give this young man?"

"Thou knowest best," was the sepulchral reply, "the seven hundred and seventy-seventh wouldn't be too much, would it?—'where moth and rust do corrupt, but *lay*—'"

Lay, indeed, thought I, and such a lay! the seven hundred and seventy-seventh! Well, old Bildad, you are determined that I, for one, shall not *lay* up many *lays* here below, where moth and rust do corrupt. It was an exceedingly *long lay* that, indeed; and though from the magnitude of the figure it might at first deceive a landsman, yet the slightest consideration will show that though seven hundred and seventy-seven is a pretty large number, yet, when you come to make a *teenth* of it, you will then see, I say, that the seven hundred and seventy-seventh part of a farthing is a good deal less than seven hundred and seventy-seven gold doubloons; and so I thought at the time.

"Why, blast your eyes, Bildad," cried Peleg, "thou dost not want to swindle this young man! he must have more than that."

"Seven hundred and seventy-seventh," again said Bildad, without lifting his eyes; and then went on mumbling—"for where your treasure is, there will your heart be also."

"I am going to put him down for the three hundredth," said Peleg, "do ye hear that, Bildad! The three hundredth lay, I say."

Bildad laid down his book, and turning solemnly towards him said, "Captain Peleg, thou hast a generous heart; but thou must consider the duty thou owest to the other owners of this ship—widows and orphans, many of them—and that if we too abundantly reward the labors of this young man, we may be taking the bread from those widows and those orphans. The seven hundred and seventy-seventh lay, Captain Peleg."

"Thou Bildad!" roared Peleg, starting up and clattering about the cabin. "Blast ye, Captain Bildad, if I had followed thy advice in these matters, I would afore now had a conscience to lug about that would be heavy enough to founder the largest ship that ever sailed round Cape Horn."

"Captain Peleg," said Bildad steadily, "thy conscience may be drawing ten inches of water, or ten fathoms, I can't tell; but as thou art still an impenitent man, Captain Peleg, I greatly fear lest thy conscience be but a leaky one; and will in the end sink thee foundering down to the fiery pit, Captain Peleg."

"Fiery pit! fiery pit! ye insult me, man; past all natural bearing, ye insult me. It's an all-fired outrage to tell any human creature that he's bound to hell. Flukes and flames! Bildad, say that again to me, and start my soul-bolts, but I'll—I'll—yes, I'll swallow a live goat with all his hair and horns on. Out of the cabin, ye canting, drab-colored son of a wooden gun—a straight wake with yel"

As he thundered out this he made a rush at Bildad, but with a marvellous oblique, sliding celerity, Bildad for that time eluded him.

Alarmed at this terrible outburst between the two principal and responsible owners of the ship, and feeling half a mind to give up all idea of sailing in a vessel so questionably owned and temporarily commanded, I stepped aside from the door to give egress to Bildad, who, I made no doubt, was all eagerness to vanish from before the awakened wrath of Peleg. But to my astonishment, he sat down again on the transom very quietly, and seemed to have not the slightest intention of withdrawing. He seemed quite used to impenitent Peleg and his ways. As for Peleg, after letting off his rage as he had, there seemed no more left in him, and he, too, sat down like a lamb, though he twitched a little as if still nervously agitated. "Whew!" he whistled at last—"the squall's gone off to leeward, I think. Bildad, thou used to be good at sharpening a lance, mend that pen, will ye. My jack-knife here needs the grindstone. That's he; thank ye, Bildad. Now then, my young man, Ishmael's thy name, didn't ye say? Well then, down ye go here, Ishmael, for the three hundredth lay."

"Captain Peleg," said I, "I have a friend with me who wants to ship too—shall I bring him down to-morrow?"

"To be sure," said Peleg. "Fetch him along, and we'll look at him."

"What lay does he want?" groaned Bildad, glancing up from the book in which he had again been burying himself.

"Oh! never thee mind about that, Bildad," said Peleg. "Has he ever whaled it any?" turning to me.

"Killed more whales than I can count, Captain Peleg."

"Well, bring him along then."

And, after signing the papers, off I went; nothing doubting but that I had done a good morning's work, and that the Pequod was the identical ship that Yojo had provided to carry Queequeg and me round the Cape.

But I had not proceeded far, when I began to bethink me that the captain with whom I was to sail yet remained unseen be me; though, indeed, in many cases, a whale-ship will be completely fitted out, and receive all her crew on board, ere the captain makes himself visible by arriving to take command; for sometimes these voyages are so prolonged, and the shore intervals at home so exceedingly brief, that if the captain have a family, or any absorbing concernment of that sort, he does not trouble himself much about his ship in port, but leaves her to the owners till all is ready for sea. However, it is always as well to have a look at him before irrevocably committing yourself into his hands. Turning back I accosted Captain Peleg, inquiring where Captain Ahab was to be found.

"And what dost thou want of Captain Ahab? It's all right enough; thou art shipped."

"Yes, but I should like to see him."

"But I don't think thou wilt be able to at present. I don't know exactly what's the matter with him; but he keeps close inside the house; a sort of sick, and yet he don't look so. In fact, he ain't sick; but no, he isn't well either. Any how, young man, he won't always see me, so I don't suppose he will thee. He's a queer man, Captain Ahab—so some think—but a good one. Oh, thou'lt like him well enough; no fear, no fear. He's a grand, ungodly, god-like man, Captain Ahab; doesn't speak much; but, when he does speak, then you may well listen. Mark ye, be forewarned; Ahab's above the common; Ahab's been in colleges, as well as 'mong the cannibals; been used to deeper wonders than the waves; fixed his fiery lance in mightier, stranger foes than whales. His lance! aye, the keenest and the surest that out of all our isle! Oh! he ain't Captain Bildad; no, and he ain't Captain Peleg; *he's Ahab*, boy; and Ahab of old, thou knowest, was a crowned king!"

"And a very vile one. When that wicked king was slain, the dogs, did they not lick his blood?"

"Come hither to me—hither, hither," said Peleg, with a significance in his eye that almost startled me. "Look ye, lad; never say that on board the *Pequod*. Never say it anywhere. Captain Ahab did not name himself. 'Twas a foolish, ignorant whim of his crazy, widowed mother, who died when he was only a twelvemonth old. And yet the old squaw Tistig, at Gayhead, said that the name would somehow prove prophetic. And, perhaps, other fools like her may tell thee the same. I wish to warn thee. It's a lie. I know Captain Ahab well; I've sailed with him as mate years ago; I know what he is—a good man—not a pious, good man, like Bildad, but a swearing good man—something like me—only there's a good deal more of him. Aye, aye, I know that he was never very jolly; and I know that on the passage home, he was a little out of his mind for a spell; but it was the sharp shooting pains in his bleeding stump that brought that about, as any one might see. I know, too, that ever since he lost his leg last voyage by that accursed whale, he's been a kind of moody—desperate moody, and savage sometimes; but that will all pass off. And once for all, let me tell thee and assure thee, young man, it's better to sail with a moody good captain than a laughing bad one. So good-bye to thee—and wrong not Captain Ahab, because he happens to have a wicked name. Besides, my boy, he has a wife—not three voyages wedded—a sweet, resigned girl. Think of that; by that sweet girl that old man has a child: hold ye then there can be any utter, hopeless harm in Ahab? No, no, my lad; stricken, blasted, if he be, Ahab has his humanities!"

As I walked away, I was full of thoughtfulness; what had been incidentally revealed to me of Captain Ahab, filled me with a certain wild vagueness of painfulness concerning him. And somehow, at the time, I felt a sympathy and a sorrow for him, but for I don't know what, unless it was the cruel loss of his leg. And yet I also felt a strange awe of him; but that sort of awe, which I cannot at all describe, was not exactly awe; I do not know what it was. But I felt it; and it did not disincline me towards him; though I felt impatience at what seemed like mystery in him, so imperfectly as he was known to me then. However, my thoughts were at length carried in other directions, so that for the present dark Ahab slipped my mind.

CHAPTER XVII

THE RAMADAN

As Queequeg's Ramadan, or Fasting and Humiliation, was to continue all day, I did not choose to disturb him till towards night-fall; for I cherish the greatest respect towards everybody's religious obligations, never mind how comical, and could not find it in my heart to undervalue even a congregation of ants worshipping a toad-stool; or those other creatures in certain parts of our earth, who with a degree of footmanism quite unprecedented in other planets, bow down before the torso of a deceased landed proprietor merely on account of the inordinate possessions yet owned and rented in his name.

I say, we good Presbyterian Christians should be charitable in these things, and not fancy ourselves so vastly superior to other mortals, pagans and what not, because of their half-crazy conceits on these subjects. There was Queequeg, now, certainly entertaining the most absurd notions about Yojo and his Ramadan;—but what of that? Queequeg thought he knew what he was about, I suppose; he seemed to be content; and there let him rest. All our arguing with him would not avail; let him be, I say: and Heaven have mercy on us all—Presbyterians and Pagans alike—for we are all somehow dreadfully cracked about the head, and sadly need mending.

Towards evening, when I felt assured that all his performances and rituals must be over, I went up to his room and knocked at the door; but no answer. I tried to open it, but it was fastened inside. "Queequeg," said I softly through the key-hole:—all silent. "I say, Queequeg! why don't you speak? It's I—Ishmael." But all remained still as before. I began to grow alarmed. I had allowed him such abundant time; I thought he might have had an apoplectic fit. I looked through the key-hole; but the door opening into an odd corner of the room, the key-hole prospect was but a crooked and sinister one. I could only see part of the foot-board of the bed and a line of

the wall, but nothing more. I was surprised to behold resting against the wall the wooden shaft of Queequeg's harpoon, which the landlady the evening previous had taken from him, before our mounting to the chamber. That's strange, thought I; but at any rate, since the harpoon stands yonder, and he seldom or never goes abroad without it, therefore he must be inside here, and no possible mistake.

"Queequeg!—Queequeg!"—all still. Something must have happened. Apoplexy! I tried to burst open the door; but it stubbornly resisted. Running down stairs, I quickly stated my suspicions to the first person I met—the chambermaid. "La! La!" she cried, "I thought something must be the matter. I went to make the bed after breakfast, and the door was locked; and not a mouse to be heard; and it's been just so silent ever since. But I thought, may be, you had both gone off and locked your baggage in for safe keeping. La! La, ma'am!—Mistress! murder! Mrs. Hussey! apoplexy!"—and with these cries, she ran towards the kitchen, I following.

Mrs. Hussey soon appeared, with a mustard-pot in one hand and a vinegar-cruet in the other, having just broken away from the occupation of attending to the castors, and scolding her little black boy meantime.

"Wood-house!" cried I, "which way to it? Run for God's sake, and fetch something to pry open the door—the axe!—the axe!—he's had a stroke; depend upon it!"—and so saying I was unmethodically rushing up stairs again empty-handed, when Mrs. Hussey interposed the mustard-pot and vinegar-cruet, and the entire castor of her countenance.

"What's the matter with you, young man?"

"Get the axe! For God's sake, run for the doctor, some one, while I pry it open!"

"Look here," said the landlady, quickly putting down the vinegar-cruet, so as to have one hand free; "look here; are you talking about prying open any of my doors?"—and with that she seized my arm. "What's the matter with you? What's the matter with you, shipmate?"

In as calm, but rapid a manner as possible, I gave her to understand the whole case. Unconsciously clapping the vinegar-

cruet to one side of her nose, she ruminated for an instant; then exclaimed—"No! I haven't seen it since I put it there." Running to a little closet under the landing of the stairs, she glanced in, and returning, told me that Queequeg's harpoon was missing. "He's killed himself," she cried. "It's unfort'nate Stiggs done over again—there goes another counterpane—God pity his poor mother!—it will be the ruin of my house. Has the poor lad a sister? Where's that girl?—there, Betty, go to Snarles the Painter, and tell him to paint me a sign, with—'no suicides permitted here, and no smoking in the parlor;—might as well kill both birds at once. Kill? The Lord be merciful to his ghost! What's that noise there? You, young man, avast there!"

And running up after me, she caught me as I was again trying to force open the door.

"I won't allow it; I won't have my premises spoiled. Go for the locksmith, there's one about a mile from here. But avast!" putting her hand in her side-pocket, "here's a key that'll fit, I guess; let's see." And with that, she turned it in the lock; but, alas! Queequeg's supplemental bolt remained unwithdrawn within.

"Have to burst it open," said I, and was running down the entry a little, for a good start, when the landlady caught at me, again vowing I should not break down her premises; but I tore from her, and with a sudden bodily rush dashed myself full against the mark.

With a prodigious noise the door flew open, and the knob slamming against the wall, sent the plaster to the ceiling; and there, good heavens! there sat Queequeg, altogether cool and self-collected; right in the middle of the room; squatting on his hams, and holding Yojo on top of his head. He looked neither one way nor the other way, but sat like a carved image with scarce a sign of active life.

"Queequeg," said I, going up to him, "Queequeg, what's the matter with you?"

"He hain't been a sittin' so all day, has he?" said the landlady.

But all we said, not a word could we drag out of him; I almost felt like pushing him over, so as to change his position, for it was almost intolerable, it seemed so painfully and un-

naturally constrained; especially, as in all probability he had been sitting so for upwards of eight or ten hours, going too without his regular meals.

"Mrs. Hussey," said I, "he's *alive* at all events; so leave us, if you please, and I will see to this strange affair myself."

Closing the door upon the landlady, I endeavored to prevail upon Queequeg to take a chair; but in vain. There he sat; and all he could do—for all my polite arts and blandishments—he would not move a peg, nor say a single word, nor even look at me, nor notice my presence in any the slightest way.

I wonder, thought I, if this can possibly be a part of his Ramadan; do they fast on their hams that way in his native island. It must be so; yes, it's part of his creed, I suppose; well, then, let him rest; he'll get up sooner or later, no doubt. It can't last for ever, thank God, and his Ramadan only comes once a year; and I don't believe it's very punctual then.

I went down to supper. After sitting a long time listening to the long stories of some sailors who had just come from a plum-pudding voyage, as they called it (that is, a short whaling-voyage in a schooner or brig, confined to the north of the line, in the Atlantic Ocean only); after listening to these plum-puddingers till nearly eleven o'clock, I went up stairs to go to bed, feeling quite sure by this time Queequeg must certainly have brought his Ramadan to a termination. But no; there he was just where I had left him; he had not stirred an inch. I began to grow vexed with him; it seemed so downright senseless and insane to be sitting there all day and half the night on his hams in a cold room, holding a piece of wood on his head.

"For heaven's sake, Queequeg, get up and shake yourself; get up and have some supper. You'll starve; you'll kill yourself, Queequeg." But not a word did he reply.

Despairing of him, therefore, I determined to go to bed and to sleep; and no doubt, before a great while, he would follow me. But previous to turning in, I took my heavy bearskin jacket, and threw it over him, as it promised to be a very cold night; and he had nothing but his ordinary round jacket on. For some time, do all I would, I could not get into the faintest doze. I had blown out the candle; and the mere thought of Queequeg—

not four feet off—sitting there in that uneasy position, stark alone in the cold and dark; this made me really wretched. Think of it; sleeping all night in the same room with a wide awake pagan on his hams in this dreary, unaccountable Ramadan!

But somehow I dropped off at last, and knew nothing more till break of day; when, looking over the bedside, there squatted Queequeg, as if he had been screwed down to the floor. But as soon as the first glimpse of sun entered the window, up he got, with stiff and grating joints, but with a cheerful look; limped towards me where I lay; pressed his forehead again against mine; and said his Ramadan was over.

Now, as I before hinted, I have no objection to any person's religion, be it what it may, so long as that person does not kill or insult any other person, because that other person don't believe it also. But when a man's religion becomes really frantic; when it is a positive torment to him; and, in fine, makes this earth of ours an uncomfortable inn to lodge in; then I think it high time to take that individual aside and argue the point with him.

And just so I now did with Queequeg. "Queequeg," said I, "get into bed now, and lie and listen to me." I then went on, beginning with the rise and progress of the primitive religions, and coming down to the various religions of the present time, during which time I labored to show Queequeg that all these Lents, Ramadans, and prolonged ham-squatting in cold, cheerless rooms were stark nonsense; bad for the health; useless for the soul; opposed, in short, to the obvious laws of Hygiene and common sense. I told him, too, that he being in other things such an extremely sensible and sagacious savage, it pained me, very badly pained me, to see him now so deplorably foolish about this ridiculous Ramadan of his. Besides, argued I, fasting makes the body cave in; hence the spirit caves in; and all thoughts born of a fast must necessarily be half-starved. This is the reason why most dyspeptic religionists cherish such melancholy notions about their hereafters. In one word, Queequeg, said I, rather digressively; hell is an idea first born on an undigested apple-dumpling; and since then perpetuated through the hereditary dyspepsias nurtured by Ramadans.

I then asked Queequeg whether he himself was ever troubled with dyspepsia; expressing the idea very plainly, so that he could take it in. He said no; only upon one memorable occasion. It was after a great feast given by his father the king, on the gaining of a great battle wherein fifty of the enemy had been killed by about two o'clock in the afternoon, and all cooked and eaten that very evening.

"No more, Queequeg," said I, shuddering; "that will do;" for I knew the inferences without his further hinting them. I had seen a sailor who had visited that very island, and he told me that it was the custom, when a great battle had been gained there, to barbecue all the slain in the yard or garden of the victor; and then, one by one, they were placed in great wooden trenchers, and garnished round like a pilau, with breadfruit and cocoanuts; and with some parsley in their mouths, were sent round with the victor's compliments to all his friends, just as though these presents were so many Christmas turkeys.

After all, I do not think that my remarks about religion made much impression upon Queequeg. Because, in the first place, he somehow seemed dull of hearing on that important subject, unless considered from his own point of view; and, in the second place, he did not more than one third understand me, couch my ideas simply as I would; and, finally, he no doubt thought he knew a good deal more about the true religion than I did. He looked at me with a sort of condescending concern and compassion, as though he thought it a great pity that such a sensible young man should be so hopelessly lost to evangelical pagan piety.

At last we rose and dressed; and Queequeg, taking a prodigiously hearty breakfast of chowders of all sorts, so that the landlady should not make much profit by reason of his Ramadan, we sallied out to board the Pequod, sauntering along, and picking our teeth with halibut bones.

CHAPTER XVIII

HIS MARK

As we were walking down the end of the wharf towards the ship, Queequeg carrying his harpoon, Captain Peleg in his gruff voice loudly hailed us from his wigwam, saying he had not suspected my friend was a cannibal, and furthermore announcing that he let no cannibals on board that craft, unless they previously produced their papers.

"What do you mean by that, Captain Peleg?" said I, now jumping on the bulwarks, and leaving my comrade standing on the wharf.

"I mean," he replied, "he must show his papers."

"Yea," said Captain Bildad in his hollow voice, sticking his head from behind Peleg's, out of the wigwam. "He must show that he's converted. Son of darkness," he added, turning to Queequeg, "art thou at present in communion with any christian church?"

"Why," said I, "he's a member of the first Congregational Church." Here be it said, that many tattooed savages sailing in Nantucket ships at last come to be converted into the churches.

"First Congregational Church," cried Bildad, "what! that worships in Deacon Deuteronomy Coleman's meeting-house?" and so saying, taking out his spectacles, he rubbed them with his great yellow bandana handkerchief, and putting them on very carefully, came out of the wigwam, and leaning stiffly over the bulwarks, took a good long look at Queequeg.

"How long hath he been a member?" he then said, turning to me; "not very long, I rather guess, young man."

"No," said Peleg, "and he hasn't been baptized right either, or it would have washed some of that devil's blue off his face."

"Do tell, now," cried Bildad, "is this Philistine a regular member of Deacon Deuteronomy's meeting? I never saw him going there, and I pass it every Lord's day."

"I don't know anything about Deacon Deuteronomy or his meeting," said I, "all I know is, that Queequeg here is a born member of the First Congregational Church. He is a deacon himself, Queequeg is."

"Young man," said Bildad sternly, "thou art skylarking with me—explain thyself, thou young Hittite. What church dost thee mean? answer me."

Finding myself thus hard pushed, I replied. "I mean, sir, the same ancient Catholic Church to which you and I, and Captain Peleg there, and Queequeg here, and all of us, and every mother's son and soul of us belong; the great and everlasting First Congregation of this whole worshipping world; we all belong to that; only some of us cherish some queer crotchets noways touching the grand belief; in *that* we all join hands."

"Splice, thou mean'st *splice* hands," cried Peleg, drawing nearer. "Young man, you'd better ship for a missionary, instead of a fore-mast hand; I never heard a better sermon. Deacon Deuteronomy—why Father Mapple himself couldn't beat it, and he's reckoned something. Come aboard, come aboard; never mind about the papers. I say, tell Quohog there—what's that you call him? tell Quohog to step along. By the great anchor, what a harpoon he's got there! looks like good stuff that; and he handles it about right. I say, Quohog, or whatever your name is, did you ever stand in the head of a whale-boat? did you ever strike a fish?"

Without saying a word, Queequeg, in his wild sort of way, jumped upon the bulwarks, from thence into the bows of one of the whale-boats hanging to the side; and then bracing his left knee, and poising his harpoon, cried out in some such way as this:—

"Cap'ain, you see him small drop tar on water dere? You see him? well, spouse him one whale eye, well, den!" and taking sharp aim at it, he darted the iron right over old Bildad's broad brim, clean across the ship's decks, and struck the glistening tar spot out of sight.

"Now," said Queequeg, quietly hauling in the line, "spose him whale-e eye; why, dad whale dead."

"Quick, Bildad," said Peleg, his partner, who, aghast at the

close vicinity of the flying harpoon, had retreated towards the cabin gangway. "Quick, I say, you Bildad, and get the ship's papers. We must have Hedgehog there, I mean Quohog, in one of our boats. Look ye, Quohog, we'll give ye the ninetieth lay, and that's more than ever was given a harpooneer yet out of Nantucket."

So down we went into the cabin, and to my great joy Queequeg was soon enrolled among the same ship's company to which I myself belonged.

When all preliminaries were over and Peleg had got everything ready for signing, he turned to me and said, "I guess, Quohog there don't know how to write, does he? I say, Quohog, blast yel dost thou sign thy name or make thy mark?"

But at this question, Queequeg, who had twice or thrice before taken part in similar ceremonies, looked no ways abashed; but taking the offered pen, copied upon the paper, in the proper place, an exact counterpart of a queer round figure which was tattooed upon his arm; so that through Captain Peleg's obstinate mistake touching his appellative, it stood something like this:—

Quohog.
his ✠ mark.

Meanwhile Captain Bildad sat earnestly and steadfastly eyeing Queequeg, and at last rising solemnly and fumbling in the huge pockets of his broad-skirted drab coat, took out a bundle of tracts, and selecting one entitled "The Latter Day Coming; or No Time to Lose," placed it in Queequeg's hands, and then grasping them and the book with both his, looked earnestly into his eyes, and said, "Son of darkness, I must do my duty by thee; I am part owner of this ship, and feel concerned for the souls of all its crew; if thou still clingest to thy Pagan ways, which I sadly fear, I beseech thee, remain not for aye a Belial bondsman. Spurn the idol Bell, and the hideous dragon; turn from the wrath to come; mind thine eye, I say; oh! goodness gracious! steer clear of the fiery pit!"

Something of the salt sea yet lingered in old Bildad's language, heterogeneously mixed with Scriptural and domestic phrases.

"Avast there, avast there, Bildad, avast now spoiling our har-

pooneer," cried Peleg. "Pious harpooneers never make good voyagers—it takes the shark out of 'em; no harpooneer is worth a straw who aint pretty sharkish. There was young Nat Swaine, once the bravest boat-header out of all Nantucket and the Vineyard; he joined the meeting, and never came to good. He got so frightened about his plaguy soul, that he shrinked and sheered away from whales, for fear of after-claps in case he got stove and went to Davy Jones."

"Peleg! Peleg!" said Bildad, lifting his eyes and hands, "thou thyself, as I myself, hast seen many a perilous time; thou knowest, Peleg, what it is to have the fear of death; how, then, can'st thou prate in this ungodly guise. Thou beliest thine own heart, Peleg. Tell me, when this same Pequod here had her three masts overboard in that typhoon on Japan, that same voyage when thou went mate with Captain Ahab, did'st thou not think of Death and the Judgment then?"

"Hear him, hear him now," cried Peleg, marching across the cabin, and thrusting his hands far down into his pockets,—
"hear him, all of ye. Think of that! When every moment we thought the ship would sink! Death and the Judgment then? What? With all three masts making such an everlasting thundering against the side; and every sea breaking over us, fore and aft. Think of Death and the Judgment then? No! no time to think about Death then. Life was what Captain Ahab and I was thinking of; and how to save all hands—how to rig jury-masts—how to get into the nearest port; that was what I was thinking of."

Bildad said no more, but buttoning up his coat, stalked on deck, where we followed him. There he stood, very quietly overlooking some sail-makers who were mending a top-sail in the waist. Now and then he stooped to pick up a patch, or save an end of tarred twine, which otherwise might have been wasted.

CHAPTER XIX

THE PROPHET

"SHIPMATES, have ye shipped in that ship?"

Queequeg and I had just left the Pequod, and were sauntering away from the water, for the moment each occupied with his own thoughts, when the above words were put to us by a stranger, who, pausing before us, levelled his massive forefinger at the vessel in question. He was but shabbily apparelled in faded jacket and patched trowsers; a rag of a black handkerchief investing his neck. A confluent small-pox had in all directions flowed over his face, and left it like the complicated ribbed bed of a torrent, when the rushing waters have been dried up.

"Have ye shipped in her?" he repeated.

"You mean the ship Pequod, I suppose," said I, trying to gain a little more time for an uninterrupted look at him.

"Aye, the Pequod—that ship there," he said, drawing back his whole arm, and then rapidly shoving it straight out from him, with the fixed bayonet of his pointed finger darted full at the object.

"Yes," said I, "we have just signed the articles."

"Anything down there about your souls?"

"About what?"

"Oh, perhaps you hav'n't got any," he said quickly. "No matter though, I know many chaps that hav'n't got any,—good luck to 'em; and they are all the better off for it. A soul's a sort of a fifth wheel to a wagon."

"What are you jabbering about, shipmate?" said I.

"*He's* got enough, though, to make up for all deficiencies of that sort in other chaps," abruptly said the stranger, placing a nervous emphasis upon the word *he*.

"Queequeg," said I, "let's go; this fellow has broken loose from somewhere; he's talking about something and somebody we don't know."

"Stop!" cried the stranger. "Ye said true—ye hav'n't seen Old Thunder yet, have ye?"

"Who's Old Thunder?" said I, again riveted with the insane earnestness of his manner.

"Captain Ahab."

"What! the captain of our ship, the Pequod?"

"Aye, among some of us old sailor chaps, he goes by that name. Ye hav'n't seen him yet, have ye?"

"No, we hav'n't. He's sick they say, but is getting better, and will be all right again before long."

"All right again before long!" laughed the stranger, with a solemnly derisive sort of laugh. "Look ye; when captain Ahab is all right, then this left arm of mine will be all right; not before."

"What do you know about him?"

"What did they *tell* you about him? Say that!"

"They didn't tell much of anything about him; only I've heard that he's a good whale-hunter, and a good captain to his crew."

"That's true, that's true—yes, both true enough. But you must jump when he gives an order. Step and growl; growl and go—that's the word with Captain Ahab. But nothing about that thing that happened to him off Cape Horn, long ago, when he lay like dead for three days and nights; nothing about that deadly skirmmage with the Spaniard afore the altar in Santa?—heard nothing about that, eh? Nothing about the silver calabash he spat into? And nothing about his losing his leg last voyage, according to the prophecy. Didn't ye hear a word about them matters and something more, eh? No, I don't think ye did; how could ye? Who knows it? Not all Nantucket, I guess. But hows'ever, mayhap, ye've heard tell about the leg, and how he lost it; aye, ye have heard of that, I dare say. Oh yes, *that* every one knows a'most—I mean they know he's only one leg; and that a parmacetti took the other off."

"My friend," said I, "what all this gibberish of yours is about, I don't know, and I don't much care; for it seems to me that you must be a little damaged in the head. But if you are speaking of Captain Ahab, of that ship there, the Pequod, then let me tell you, that I know all about the loss of his leg."

"All about it, eh—sure you do?—all?"

"Pretty sure."

With finger pointed and eye levelled at the Pequod, the beggar-like stranger stood a moment, as if in a troubled reverie; then starting a little, turned and said:—"Ye've shipped, have ye? Names down on the papers? Well, well, what's signed, is signed; and what's to be, will be; and then again, perhaps it wont be, after all. Any how, it's all fixed and arranged a'ready; and some sailors or other must go with him, I suppose; as well these as any other men, God pity 'em! Morning to ye, shipmates, morning; the ineffable heavens bless ye; I'm sorry I stopped ye."

"Look here, friend," said I, "if you have anything important to tell us, out with it; but if you are only trying to bamboozle us, you are mistaken in your game; that's all I have to say."

"And it's said very well, and I like to hear a chap talk up that way; you are just the man for him—the likes of ye. Morning to ye, shipmates, morning! Oh, when ye get there, tell 'em I've concluded not to make one of 'em."

"Ah, my dear fellow, you can't fool us that way—you can't fool us. It is the easiest thing in the world for a man to look as if he had a great secret in him."

"Morning to ye, shipmates, morning."

"Morning it is," said I. "Come along, Queequeg, let's leave this crazy man. But stop, tell me your name, will you?"

Elijah.

Elijah! thought I, and we walked away, both commenting, after each other's fashion, upon this ragged old sailor; and agreed that he was nothing but a humbug, trying to be a bugbear. But we had not gone perhaps above a hundred yards, when chancing to turn a corner, and looking back as I did so, who should be seen but Elijah following us, though at a distance. Somehow, the sight of him struck me so, that I said nothing to Queequeg of his being behind, but passed on with my comrade, anxious to see whether the stranger would turn the same corner that we did. He did; and then it seemed to me that he was dogging us, but with what intent I could not for the life of me imagine. This circumstance, coupled with his ambiguous, half-hinting, half-revealing, shrouded sort of talk, now begat in me

all kinds of vague wonderments and half-apprehensions, and all connected with the Pequod; and Captain Ahab; and the leg he had lost; and the Cape Horn fit; and the silver calabash; and what Captain Peleg had said of him, when I left the ship the day previous; and the prediction of the squaw Tistig; and the voyage we had bound ourselves to sail; and a hundred other shadowy things.

I was resolved to satisfy myself whether this ragged Elijah was really dogging us or not, and with that intent crossed the way with Queequeg, and on that side of it retraced our steps. But Elijah passed on, without seeming to notice us. This relieved me; and once more, and finally as it seemed to me, I pronounced him in my heart, a humbug.

CHAPTER XX

ALL ASTIR

A DAY or two passed, and there was great activity aboard the Pequod. Not only were the old sails being mended, but new sails were coming on board, and bolts of canvas, and coils of rigging; in short, everything betokened that the ship's preparations were hurrying to a close. Captain Peleg seldom or never went ashore, but sat in his wigwam keeping a sharp look-out upon the hands: Bildad did all the purchasing and providing at the stores; and the men employed in the hold and on the rigging were working till long after night-fall.

On the day following Queequeg's signing the articles, word was given at all the inns where the ship's company were stopping, that their chests must be on board before night, for there was no telling how soon the vessel might be sailing. So Queequeg and I got down our traps, resolving, however, to sleep ashore till the last. But it seems they always give very long notice in these cases, and the ship did not sail for several days. But no wonder; there was a good deal to be done, and there

is no telling how many things to be thought of, before the Pequod was fully equipped.

Every one knows what a multitude of things—beds, sauce-pans, knives and forks, shovels and tongs, napkins, nut-crackers, and what not, are indispensable to the business of housekeeping. Just so with whaling, which necessitates a three-years' house-keeping upon the wide ocean, far from all grocers, costermongers, doctors, bakers, and bankers. And though this also holds true of merchant vessels, yet not by any means to the same extent as with whalemén. For besides the great length of the whaling voyage, the numerous articles peculiar to the prosecution of the fishery, and the impossibility of replacing them at the remote harbors usually frequented, it must be remembered, that of all ships, whaling vessels are the most exposed to accidents of all kinds, and especially to the destruction and loss of the very things upon which the success of the voyage most depends. Hence, the spare boats, spare spars, and spare lines and harpoons, and spare everythings, almost, but a spare Captain and duplicate ship.

At the period of our arrival at the Island, the heaviest storage of the Pequod had been almost completed; comprising her beef, bread, water, fuel, and iron hoops and staves. But, as before hinted, for some time there was a continual fetching and carrying on board of divers odds and ends of things, both large and small.

Chief among those who did this fetching and carrying was Captain Bildad's sister, a lean old lady of a most determined and indefatigable spirit, but withal very kindhearted, who seemed resolved that, if *she* could help it, nothing should be found wanting in the Pequod, after once fairly getting to sea. At one time she would come on board with a jar of pickles for the steward's pantry; another time with a bunch of quills for the chief mate's desk, where he kept his log; a third time with a roll of flannel for the small of some one's rheumatic back. Never did any woman better deserve her name, which was Charity—Aunt Charity, as everybody called her. And like a sister of charity did this charitable Aunt Charity bustle about hither and thither, ready to turn her hand and heart to anything that promised to yield safety, comfort, and consolation to all on board

a ship in which her beloved brother Bildad was concerned, and in which she herself owned a score or two of well-saved dollars.

But it was startling to see this excellent hearted Quakeress coming on board, as she did the last day, with a long oil-ladle in one hand, and a still longer whaling lance in the other. Nor was Bildad himself nor Captain Peleg at all backward. As for Bildad, he carried about with him a long list of the articles needed, and at every fresh arrival, down went his mark opposite that article upon the paper. Every once and a while Peleg came hobbling out of his whalebone den, roaring at the men down the hatchways, roaring up to the riggers at the mast-head, and then concluded by roaring back into his wigwam.

During these days of preparation, Queequeg and I often visited the craft, and as often I asked about Captain Ahab, and how he was, and when he was going to come on board his ship. To these questions they would answer, that he was getting better and better, and was expected aboard every day; meantime, the two Captains, Peleg and Bildad, could attend to everything necessary to fit the vessel for the voyage. If I had been downright honest with myself, I would have seen very plainly in my heart that I did but half fancy being committed this way to so long a voyage, without once laying my eyes on the man who was to be the absolute dictator of it, so soon as the ship sailed out upon the open sea. But when a man suspects any wrong, it sometimes happens that if he be already involved in the matter, he insensibly strives to cover up his suspicions even from himself. And much this way it was with me. I said nothing, and tried to think nothing.

At last it was given out that some time next day the ship would certainly sail. So next morning, Queequeg and I took a very early start.

CHAPTER XXI

GOING ABOARD

It was nearly six o'clock, but only grey imperfect misty dawn, when we drew nigh the wharf.

"There are some sailors running ahead there, if I see right," said I to Queequeg, "it can't be shadows; she's off by sunrise, I guess; come on!"

"Avast!" cried a voice, whose owner at the same time coming close behind us, laid a hand upon both our shoulders, and then insinuating himself between us, stood stooping forward a little, in the uncertain twilight, strangely peering from Queequeg to me. It was Elijah.

"Going aboard?"

"Hands off, will you," said I.

"Lookee here," said Queequeg, shaking himself, "go 'way!"

"Aint going aboard, then?"

"Yes, we are," said I, "but what business is that of yours? Do you know, Mr. Elijah, that I consider you a little impertinent?"

"No, no, no; I wasn't aware of that," said Elijah, slowly and wonderingly looking from me to Queequeg, with the most unaccountable glances.

"Elijah," said I, "you will oblige my friend and me by withdrawing. We are going to the Indian and Pacific Oceans, and would prefer not to be detained."

"Ye be, be ye? Coming back afore breakfast?"

"He's cracked, Queequeg," said I, "come on."

"Holloa!" cried stationary Elijah, hailing us when we had removed a few paces.

"Never mind him," said I, "Queequeg, come on."

But he stole up to us again, and suddenly clapping his hand on my shoulder, said—"Did ye see anything looking like men going towards that ship a while ago?"

Struck by this plain matter-of-fact question, I answered, say-

ing, "Yes, I thought I did see four or five men; but it was too dim to be sure."

"Very dim, very dim," said Elijah. "Morning to ye."

Once more we quitted him; but once more he came softly after us; and touching my shoulder again, said, "See if you can find 'em now, will ye?"

"Find who?"

"Morning to yel morning to yel" he rejoined, again moving off. "Oh! I was going to warn ye against—but never mind, never mind—it's all one, all in the family too;—sharp frost this morning, ain't it? Good bye to ye. Shan't see ye again very soon, I guess; unless it's before the Grand Jury." And with these cracked words he finally departed, leaving me, for the moment, in no small wonderment at his frantic impudence.

At last, stepping on board the Pequod, we found everything in profound quiet, not a soul moving. The cabin entrance was locked within; the hatches were all on, and lumbered with coils of rigging. Going forward to the forecabin, we found the slide of the scuttle open. Seeing a light, we went down, and found only an old rigger there, wrapped in a tattered pea-jacket. He was thrown at whole length upon two chests, his face downwards and inclosed in his folded arms. The profoundest slumber slept upon him.

"Those sailors we saw, Queequeg, where can they have gone to?" said I, looking dubiously at the sleeper. But it seemed that, when on the wharf, Queequeg had not at all noticed what I now alluded to; hence I would have thought myself to have been optically deceived in that matter, were it not for Elijah's otherwise inexplicable question. But I beat the thing down; and again marking the sleeper, jocularly hinted to Queequeg that perhaps we had best sit up with the body; telling him to establish himself accordingly. He put his hand upon the sleeper's rear, as though feeling if it was soft enough; and then, without more ado, sat quietly down there.

"Gracious! Queequeg, don't sit there," said I.

"Oh! perry dood seat," said Queequeg, "my country way; won't hurt him face."

"Face!" said I, "call that his face? very benevolent countenance

then; but how hard he breathes, he's heaving himself; get off, Queequeg, you are heavy, it's grinding the face of the poor. Get off, Queequeg! Look, he'll twitch you off soon. I wonder he don't wake."

Queequeg removed himself to just beyond the head of the sleeper, and lighted his tomahawk pipe. I sat at the feet. We kept the pipe passing over the sleeper, from one to the other. Meanwhile, upon questioning him in his broken fashion, Queequeg gave me to understand that, in his land, owing to the absence of settees and sofas of all sorts, the king, chiefs, and great people generally, were in the custom of fattening some of the lower orders for ottomans; and to furnish a house comfortably in that respect, you had only to buy up eight or ten lazy fellows, and lay them round in the piers and alcoves. Besides, it was very convenient on an excursion; much better than those garden-chairs which are convertible into walking-sticks; upon occasion, a chief calling his attendant, and desiring him to make a settee of himself under a spreading tree, perhaps in some damp marshy place.

While narrating these things, every time Queequeg received the tomahawk from me, he flourished the hatchet-side of it over the sleeper's head.

"What's that for, Queequeg?"

"Perry easy, kill-e; oh! perry easy!"

He was going on with some wild reminiscences about his tomahawk-pipe, which, it seemed, had in its two uses both brained his foes and soothed his soul, when we were directly attracted to the sleeping rigger. The strong vapor now completely filling the contracted hole, it began to tell upon him. He breathed with a sort of muffledness; then seem troubled in the nose; then revolved over once or twice; then sat up and rubbed his eyes.

"Holloa!" he breathed at last, "who be ye smokers?"

"Shipped men," answered I, "when does she sail?"

"Aye, aye, ye are going in her, be ye? She sails to-day. The Captain came aboard last night."

"What Captain?—Ahab?"

"Who but him indeed?"

I was going to ask him some further questions concerning Ahab, when we heard a noise on deck.

"Halloa! Starbuck's astir," said the rigger. "He's a lively chief mate, that; good man, and a pious; but all alive now, I must turn to." And so saying he went on deck, and we followed.

It was now clear sunrise. Soon the crew came on board in twos and threes; the riggers bestirred themselves; the mates were actively engaged; and several of the shore people were busy in bringing various last things on board. Meanwhile Captain Ahab remained invisibly enshrined within his cabin.

CHAPTER XXII

MERRY CHRISTMAS

At length, towards noon, upon the final dismissal of the ship's riggers, and after the Pequod had been hauled out from the wharf, and after the ever-thoughtful Charity had come off in a whaleboat, with her last gift—a night-cap for Stubb, the second mate, her brother-in-law, and a spare Bible for the steward—after all this, the two captains, Peleg and Bildad, issued from the cabin, and turning to the chief mate, Peleg said:

"Now, Mr. Starbuck, are you sure everything is right? Captain Ahab is all ready—just spoke to him—nothing more to be got from shore, eh? Well, call all hands, then. Muster 'em aft here—blast 'em!"

"No need of profane words, however great the hurry, Peleg," said Bildad, "but away with thee, friend Starbuck, and do our bidding."

How now! Here upon the very point of starting for the voyage, Captain Peleg and Captain Bildad were going it with a high hand on the quarter-deck, just as if they were to be joint-commanders at sea, as well as to all appearances in port. And, as for Captain Ahab, no sign of him was yet to be seen; only, they said he was in the cabin. But then, the idea was,

that his presence was by no means necessary in getting the ship under weigh, and steering her well out to sea. Indeed, as that was not at all his proper business, but the pilot's; and as he was not yet completely recovered—so they said—therefore, Captain Ahab stayed below. And all this seemed natural enough; especially as in the merchant service many captains never show themselves on deck for a considerable time after heaving up the anchor, but remain over the cabin table, having a farewell merry-making with their shore friends, before they quit the ship for good with the pilot.

But there was not much chance to think over the matter, for Captain Peleg was now all alive. He seemed to do most of the talking and commanding, and not Bildad.

"Aft here, ye sons of bachelors," he cried, as the sailors lingered at the main-mast. "Mr. Starbuck, drive 'em aft."

"Strike the tent there!"—was the next order. As I hinted before, this whalebone marquee was never pitched except in port; and on board the Pequod, for thirty years, the order to strike the tent was well known to be the next thing to heaving up the anchor.

"Man the capstan! Blood and thunder!—jump!"—was the next command, and the crew sprang for the handspikes.

Now, in getting under weigh, the station generally occupied by the pilot is the forward part of the ship. And here Bildad, who, with Peleg, be it known, in addition to his other offices, was one of the licensed pilots of the port—he being suspected to have got himself made a pilot in order to save the Nantucket pilot-fee to all the ships he was concerned in, for he never piloted any other craft—Bildad, I say, might now be seen actively engaged in looking over the bows for the approaching anchor, and at intervals singing what seemed a dismal stave of psalmody, to cheer the hands at the windlass, who roared forth some sort of a chorus about the girls in Booble Alley, with hearty good will. Nevertheless, not three days previous, Bildad had told them that no profane songs would be allowed on board the Pequod, particularly in getting under weigh; and Charity, his sister, had placed a small choice copy of Watts in each seaman's berth.

Meantime, overseeing the other part of the ship, Captain Peleg

ripped and swore astern in the most frightful manner. I almost thought he would sink the ship before the anchor could be got up; involuntarily I paused on my handspike, and told Queequeg to do the same, thinking of the perils we both ran, in starting on the voyage with such a devil for a pilot. I was comforting myself, however, with the thought that in pious Bildad might be found some salvation, spite of his seven hundred and seventy-seventh lay; when I felt a sudden sharp poke in my rear, and turning round, was horrified at the apparition of Captain Peleg in the act of withdrawing his leg from my immediate vicinity. That was my first kick.

"Is that the way they heave in the marchant service?" he roared. "Spring, thou sheep-head; spring, and break thy back-bone! Why don't ye spring, I say, all of ye—spring! Quohag! spring, thou chap with the red whiskers; spring there, Scotch-cap; spring, thou green pants. Spring, I say, all of ye, and spring your eyes out!" And so saying, he moved along the windlass, here and there using his leg very freely, while imperturbable Bildad kept leading off with his psalmody. Thinks I, Captain Peleg must have been drinking something to-day.

At last the anchor was up, the sails were set, and off we glided. It was a short, cold Christmas; and as the short northern day merged into night, we found ourselves almost broad upon the wintry ocean, whose freezing spray cased us in ice, as in polished armor. The long rows of teeth on the bulwarks glistened in the moonlight; and like the white ivory tusks of some huge elephant, vast curving icicles depended from the bows.

Lank Bildad, as pilot, headed the first watch, and ever and anon, as the old craft deep dived into the green seas, and sent the shivering frost all over her, and the winds howled, and the cordage rang, his steady notes were heard,—

"Sweet fields beyond the swelling flood,
Stand dressed in living green.
So to the Jews old Canaan stood,
While Jordan rolled between."

Never did those sweet words sound more sweetly to me than then. They were full of hope and fruition. Spite of this frigid

winter night in the boisterous Atlantic, spite of my wet feet and wetter jacket, there was yet, it then seemed to me, many a pleasant haven in store; and meads and glades so eternally vernal, that the grass shot up by the spring, untrodden, unwilted, remains at midsummer.

At last we gained such an offing, that the two pilots were needed no longer. The stout sail-boat that had accompanied us began ranging alongside.

It was curious and not unpleasing, how Peleg and Bildad were affected at this juncture, especially Captain Bildad. For loath to depart, yet; very loath to leave, for good, a ship bound on so long and perilous a voyage—beyond both stormy Capes; a ship in which some thousands of his hard earned dollars were invested; a ship, in which an old shipmate sailed as captain; a man almost as old as he, once more starting to encounter all the terrors of the pitiless jaw; loath to say good-bye to a thing so every way brimful of every interest to him,—poor old Bildad lingered long; paced the deck with anxious strides; ran down into the cabin to speak another farewell word there; again came on deck, and looked to windward; looked towards the wide and endless waters, only bounded by the far-off unseen Eastern Continents; looked towards the land, looked aloft; looked right and left; looked everywhere and nowhere; and at last, mechanically coiling a rope upon its pin, convulsively grasped stout Peleg by the hand, and holding up a lantern, for a moment stood gazing heroically in his face, as much as to say, "Nevertheless, friend Peleg, I can stand it; yes, I can."

As for Peleg himself, he took it more like a philosopher; but for all his philosophy, there was a tear twinkling in his eye, when the lantern came too near. And he, too, did not a little run from cabin to deck—now a word below, and now a word with Starbuck, the chief mate.

But, at last, he turned to his comrade, with a final sort of look about him,—“Captain Bildad—come, old shipmate, we must go. Back the main-yard there! Boat ahoy! Stand by to come close alongside, now! Careful, carefull—come, Bildad, boy—say your last. Luck to ye, Starbuck—luck to ye, Mr. Stubb—luck to ye,

Mr. Flask—good-bye, and good luck to ye all—and this day three years I'll have a hot supper smoking for ye in old Nantucket. Hurrah and away!"

"God bless ye, and have ye in His holy keeping, men," murmured old Bildad, almost incoherently. "I hope ye'll have fine weather now, so that Captain Ahab may soon be moving among ye—a pleasant sun is all he needs, and ye'll have plenty of them in the tropic voyage ye go. Be careful in the hunt, ye mates. Don't stave the boats needlessly, ye harpooneers; good white cedar plank is raised full three per cent. within the year. Don't forget your prayers, either. Mr. Starbuck, mind that cooper don't waste the spare staves. Oh! the sail-needles are in the green locker! Don't whale it too much a' Lord's days, men; but don't miss a fair chance either, that's rejecting Heaven's good gifts. Have an eye to the molasses tierce, Mr. Stubb; it was a little leaky, I thought. If ye touch at the islands, Mr. Flask, beware of fornication. Good-bye, good-bye! Don't keep that cheese too long down in the hold, Mr. Starbuck; it'll spoil. Be careful with the butter—twenty cents the pound it was, and mind ye, if—"

"Come, come, Captain Bildad; stop palavering,—away!" and with that, Peleg hurried him over the side, and both dropt into the boat.

Ship and boat diverged; the cold, damp night breeze blew between; a screaming gull flew overhead; the two hulls wildly rolled; we gave three heavy-hearted cheers, and blindly plunged like fate into the lone Atlantic.

CHAPTER XXIII

THE LEE SHORE

SOME chapters back, one Bulkington was spoken of, a tall, new-landed mariner, encountered in New Bedford at the inn.

When on that shivering winter's night, the Pequod thrust her vindictive bows into the cold malicious waves, who should I see

standing at her helm but Bulkington! I looked with sympathetic awe and fearfulness upon the man, who in mid-winter just landed from a four years' dangerous voyage, could so unrestingly push off again for still another tempestuous term. The land seemed scorching to his feet. Wonderfulest things are ever the unmentionable; deep memories yield no epitaphs; this six-inch chapter is the stoneless grave of Bulkington. Let me only say that it fared with him as with the storm-tossed ship, that miserably drives along the leeward land. The port would fain give succor; the port is pitiful; in the port is safety, comfort, hearth-stone, supper, warm blankets, friends, all that's kind to our mortalities. But in that gale, the port, the land, is that ship's direst jeopardy; she must fly all hospitality; one touch of land, though it but graze the keel, would make her shudder through and through. With all her might she crowds all sail off shore; in so doing, fights 'gainst the very winds that fain would blow her homeward; seeks all the lashed sea's landlessness again; for refuge's sake forlornly rushing into peril; her only friend her bitterest foe!

Know ye, now, Bulkington? Glimpses do ye seem to see of that mortally intolerable truth; that all deep, earnest thinking is but the intrepid effort of the soul to keep the open independence of her sea; while the wildest winds of heaven and earth conspire to cast her on the treacherous, slavish shore?

But as in landlessness alone resides the highest truth, shoreless, indefinite as God—so, better is it to perish in that howling infinite, than be ingloriously dashed upon the lee, even if that were safety! For worm-like, then, oh! who would craven crawl to land! Terrors of the terrible! is all this agony so vain? Take heart, take heart, O Bulkington! Bear thee grimly, demigod! Up from the spray of thy ocean-perishing—straight up, leaps thy apotheosis!

CHAPTER XXIV

THE ADVOCATE

As Queequeg and I are now fairly embarked in this business of whaling; and as this business of whaling has somehow come to be regarded among landmen as a rather unpoetical and disreputable pursuit; therefore, I am all anxiety to convince ye, ye landmen, of the injustice hereby done to us hunters of whales.

In the first place, it may be deemed almost superfluous to establish the fact, that among people at large, the business of whaling is not accounted on a level with what are called the liberal professions. If a stranger were introduced into any miscellaneous metropolitan society, it would but slightly advance the general opinion of his merits, were he presented to the company as a harpooneer, say; and if in emulation of the naval officers he should append the initials S.W.F. (Sperm Whale Fishery) to his visiting card, such a procedure would be deemed pre-eminently presuming and ridiculous.

Doubtless one leading reason why the world declines honoring us whalemens, is this: they think that, at best, our vocation amounts to a butchering sort of business; and that when actively engaged therein, we are surrounded by all manner of defilements. Butchers we are, that is true. But butchers, also, and butchers of the bloodiest badge have been all Martial Commanders whom the world invariably delights to honor. And as for the matter of the alleged uncleanness of our business, ye shall soon be initiated into certain facts hitherto pretty generally unknown, and which, upon the whole, will triumphantly plant the sperm whale-ship at least among the cleanliest things of this tidy earth. But even granting the charge in question to be true; what disordered slippery decks of a whale-ship are comparable to the unspeakable carrion of those battle-fields from which so many soldiers return to drink in all ladies' plaudits? And if the

idea of peril so much enhances the popular conceit of the soldier's profession; let me assure ye that many a veteran who has freely marched up to a battery, would quickly recoil at the apparition of the sperm whale's vast tail, fanning into eddies the air over his head. For what are the comprehensible terrors of man compared with the interlinked terrors and wonders of God!

But, though the world scouts at us whale hunters, yet does it unwittingly pay us the profoundest homage; yea, an all-abounding adoration! for almost all the tapers, lamps, and candles that burn round the globe, burn, as before so many shrines, to our glory!

But look at this matter in other lights; weigh it in all sorts of scales; see what we whalemens are, and have been.

Why did the Dutch in DeWitt's time have admirals of their whaling fleets? Why did Louis XVI. of France, at his own personal expense, fit out whaling ships from Dunkirk, and politely invite to that town some score or two of families from our own island of Nantucket? Why did Britain between the years 1750 and 1788 pay to her whalemens in bounties upwards of £1,000,000? And lastly, how comes it that we whalemens of America now outnumber all the rest of the banded whalemens in the world; sail a navy of upwards of seven hundred vessels; manned by eighteen thousand men; yearly consuming 4,000,000 of dollars; the ships worth, at the time of sailing, \$20,000,000; and every year importing into our harbors a well reaped harvest of \$7,000,000. How comes all this, if there be not something puissant in whaling?

But this is not the half; look again.

I freely assert, that the cosmopolite philosopher cannot, for his life, point out one single peaceful influence, which within the last sixty years has operated more potentially upon the whole broad world, taken in one aggregate, than the high and mighty business of whaling. One way and another, it has begotten events so remarkable in themselves, and so continuously momentous in their sequential issues, that whaling may well be regarded as that Egyptian mother, who bore offspring themselves pregnant from her womb. It would be a hopeless, endless task to catalogue all these things. Let a handful suffice. For many

years past the whale-ship has been the pioneer in ferreting out the remotest and least known parts of the earth. She has explored seas and archipelagoes which had no chart, where no Cook or Vancouver had ever sailed. If American and European men-of-war now peacefully ride in once savage harbors, let them fire salutes to the honor and the glory of the whale-ship, which originally showed them the way, and first interpreted between them and the savages. They may celebrate as they will the heroes of Exploring Expeditions, your Cookes, your Krusensterns; but I say that scores of anonymous Captains have sailed out of Nantucket, that were as great, and greater than your Cooke and your Krusenstern. For in their succorless empty-handedness, they, in the heathenish sharked waters, and by the beaches of unrecorded, javelin islands, battled with virgin wonders and terrors that Cooke with all his marines and muskets would not willingly have dared. All that is made such a flourish of in the old South Sea Voyages, those things were but the life-time commonplaces of our heroic Nantucketers. Often, adventures which Vancouver dedicates three chapters to, these men accounted unworthy of being set down in the ship's common log. Ah, the world! Oh, the world!

Until the whale fishery rounded Cape Horn, no commerce but colonial, scarcely any intercourse but colonial, was carried on between Europe and the long line of the opulent Spanish provinces on the Pacific coast. It was the whaleman who first broke through the jealous policy of the Spanish crown, touching those colonies; and, if space permitted, it might be distinctly shown how from those whalemen at last eventuated the liberation of Peru, Chili, and Bolivia from the yoke of Old Spain, and the establishment of the eternal democracy in those parts.

That great America on the other side of the sphere, Australia, was given to the enlightened world by the whaleman. After its first blunder-born discovery by a Dutchman, all other ships long shunned those shores as pestiferously barbarous; but the whale-ship touched there. The whale-ship is the true mother of that now mighty colony. Moreover, in the infancy of the first Australian settlement, the emigrants were several times saved

from starvation by the benevolent biscuit of the whale-ship luckily dropping an anchor in their waters. The uncounted isles of all Polynesia confess the same truth, and do commercial homage to the whale-ship, that cleared the way for the missionary and the merchant, and in many cases carried the primitive missionaries to their first destinations. If that double-bolted land, Japan, is ever to become hospitable, it is the whale-ship alone to whom the credit will be due; for already she is on the threshold.

But if, in the face of all this, you still declare that whaling has no æsthetically noble associations connected with it, then am I ready to shiver fifty lances with you there, and unhorse you with a split helmet every time.

The whale has no famous author, and whaling no famous chronicler, you will say.

The whale no famous author, and whaling no famous chronicler? Who wrote the first account of our Leviathan? Who but mighty Job! And who composed the first narrative of a whaling-voyage? Who, but no less a prince than Alfred the Great, who, with his own royal pen, took down the words from Other, the Norwegian whale-hunter of those times! And who pronounced our glowing eulogy in Parliament? Who, but Edmund Burke!

True enough, but then whalemens themselves are poor devils; they have no good blood in their veins.

No good blood in their veins? They have something better than royal blood there. The grandmother of Benjamin Franklin was Mary Morrel; afterwards, by marriage, Mary Folger, one of the old settlers of Nantucket, and the ancestress to a long line of Folgers and harpooneers—all kith and kin to noble Benjamin—this day darting the barbed iron from one side of the world to the other.

Good again; but then all confess that somehow whaling is not respectable.

Whaling not respectable? Whaling is imperial! By old English statutory law, the whale is declared "a royal fish." *

* See subsequent chapters for something more on this head.

Oh, that's only nominal! The whale himself has never figured in any grand imposing way.

The whale never figured in any grand imposing way? In one of the mighty triumphs given to a Roman general upon his entering the world's capital, the bones of a whale, brought all the way from the Syrian coast, were the most conspicuous object in the cymballed procession.*

Grant it, since you cite it; but, say what you will, there is no real dignity in whaling.

No dignity in whaling? The dignity of our calling the very heavens attest. Cetus is a constellation in the South! No more! Drive down your hat in presence of the Czar, and take it off to Queequeg! No more! I know a man that, in his lifetime, has taken three hundred and fifty whales. I account that man more honorable than that great captain of antiquity who boasted of taking as many walled towns.

And, as for me, if, by any possibility, there be any as yet undiscovered prime thing in me; if I shall ever deserve any real repute in that small but high hushed world which I might not be unreasonably ambitious of; if hereafter I shall do anything that, upon the whole, a man might rather have done than to have left undone; if, at my death, my executors, or more properly my creditors, find any precious MSS. in my desk, then here I prospectively ascribe all the honor and the glory to whaling; for a whale-ship was my Yale College and my Harvard.

CHAPTER XXV

POSTSCRIPT

IN behalf of the dignity of whaling, I would fain advance naught but substantiated facts. But after embattling his facts, an advocate who should wholly suppress a not unreasonable

* See subsequent chapters for somethings more on this head.

surmise, which might tell eloquently upon his cause—such an advocate, would he not be blameworthy?

It is well known that at the coronation of kings and queens, even modern ones, a certain curious process of seasoning them for their functions is gone through. There is a saltcellar of state, so called, and there may be a caster of state. How they use the salt, precisely—who knows? Certain I am, however, that a king's head is solemnly oiled at his coronation, even as a head of salad. Can it be, though, that they anoint it with a view of making its interior run well, as they anoint machinery? Much might be ruminated here, concerning the essential dignity of this regal process, because in common life we esteem but meanly and contemptibly a fellow who anoints his hair, and palpably smells of that anointing. In truth, a mature man who uses hair-oil, unless medicinally, that man has probably got a quoggy spot in him somewhere. As a general rule, he can't amount to much in his totality.

But the only thing to be considered here, is this—what kind of oil is used at coronations? Certainly it cannot be olive oil, nor macassar oil, nor castor oil, nor bear's oil, nor train oil, nor cod-liver oil. What then can it possibly be, but sperm oil in its unmanufactured, unpolluted state, the sweetest of all oils?

Think of that, ye loyal Britons! we whalemens supply your kings and queens with coronation stuff!

CHAPTER XXVI

KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES

THE chief mate of the Pequod was Starbuck, a native of Nantucket, and a Quaker by descent. He was a long, earnest man, and though born on an icy coast, seemed well adapted to endure hot latitudes, his flesh being hard as twice-baked biscuit. Transported to the Indies, his live blood would not spoil like bottled

ale. He must have been born in some time of general drought and famine, or upon one of those fast days for which his state is famous. Only some thirty arid summers had he seen; those summers had dried up all his physical superfluities. But this, his thinness, so to speak, seemed no more the token of wasting anxieties and cares, than it seemed the indication of any bodily blight. It was merely the condensation of the man. He was by no means ill-looking; quite the contrary. His pure tight skin was an excellent fit; and closely wrapped up in it, and embalmed with inner health and strength, like a revived Egyptian, this Starbuck seemed prepared to endure for long ages to come, and to endure always, as now; for be it Polar snow or torrid sun, like a patent chronometer, his interior vitality was warranted to do well in all climates. Looking into his eyes, you seemed to see there the yet lingering images of those thousand-fold perils he had calmly confronted through life. A staid, steadfast man, whose life for the most part was a telling pantomime of action, and not a tame chapter of sounds. Yet, for all his hardy sobriety and fortitude, there were certain qualities in him which at times affected, and in some cases seemed well nigh to overbalance all the rest. Uncommonly conscientious for a seaman, and endued with a deep natural reverence, the wild watery loneliness of his life did therefore strongly incline him to superstition; but to that sort of superstition, which in some organizations seems rather to spring, somehow, from intelligence than from ignorance. Outward portents and inward presentiments were his. And if at times these things bent the welded iron of his soul, much more did his far-away domestic memories of his young Cape wife and child, tend to bend him still more from the original ruggedness of his nature, and open him still further to those latent influences which, in some honest-hearted men, restrain the gush of dare-devil daring, so often evinced by others in the more perilous vicissitudes of the fishery. "I will have no man in my boat," said Starbuck, "who is not afraid of a whale." By this, he seemed to mean, not only that the most reliable and useful courage was that which arises from the fair estimation of the encountered peril, but that an utterly fearless man is a far more dangerous comrade than a coward.

"Aye, aye," said Stubb, the second mate, "Starbuck, there, is as careful a man as you'll find anywhere in this fishery." But we shall ere long see what that word "careful" precisely means when used by a man like Stubb, or almost any other whale hunter.

Starbuck was no crusader after perils; in him courage was not a sentiment; but a thing simply useful to him, and always at hand upon all mortally practical occasions. Besides, he thought, perhaps, that in this business of whaling, courage was one of the great staple outfits of the ship, like her beef and her bread, and not to be foolishly wasted. Wherefore he had no fancy for lowering for whales after sun-down; nor for persisting in fighting a fish that too much persisted in fighting him. For, * thought Starbuck, I am here in this critical ocean to kill whales for my living, and not to be killed by them for theirs; and that hundreds of men had been so killed Starbuck well knew. What doom was his own father's? Where, in the bottomless deeps, could he find the torn limbs of his brother?

With memories like these in him, and, moreover, given to a certain superstitiousness, as has been said; the courage of this Starbuck which could, nevertheless, still flourish, must indeed have been extreme. But it was not in reasonable nature that a man so organized, and with such terrible experiences and remembrances as he had; it was not in nature that these things should fail in latently engendering an element in him, which, under suitable circumstances, would break out from its confinement, and burn all his courage up. And brave as he might be, it was that sort of bravery chiefly, visible in some intrepid men, † which, while generally abiding firm in the conflict with seas, or winds, or whales, or any of the ordinary irrational horrors of the world, yet cannot withstand those more terrific, because more spiritual terrors, which sometimes menace you from the concentrating brow of an enraged and mighty man.

But were the coming narrative to reveal, in any instance, the complete abasement of poor Starbuck's fortitude, scarce might I have the heart to write it; for it is a thing most sorrowful, nay shocking, to expose the fall of valor in the soul. Men may seem detestable as joint stock-companies and nations; knaves,

fools, and murderers there may be; men may have mean and meagre faces; but man, in the ideal, is so noble and so sparkling, such a grand and glowing creature, that over any ignominious blemish in him all his fellows should run to throw their costliest robes. That immaculate manliness we feel within ourselves, so far within us, that it remains intact though all the outer character seem gone; bleeds with keenest anguish at the undraped spectacle of a valor-ruined man. Nor can piety itself, at such a shameful sight, completely stifle her upbraidings against the permitting stars. But this august dignity I treat of, is not the dignity of kings and robes, but that abounding dignity which has no robed investiture. Thou shalt see it shining in the arm that wields a pick or drives a spike; that democratic dignity which, on all hands, radiates without end from God; Himself! The great God absolutel The centre and circumference of all democracy! His omnipresence, our divine equality!

If, then, to meanest mariners, and renegades and castaways, I shall hereafter ascribe high qualities, though dark; weave round them tragic graces; if even the most mournful, perchance the most abased, among them all, shall at times lift himself to the exalted mounts; if I shall touch that workman's arm with some ethereal light; if I shall spread a rainbow over his disastrous set of sun; then against all mortal critics bear me out in it, thou just Spirit of Equality, which hast spread one royal mantle of humanity over all my kind! Bear me out in it, thou great democratic God! who didst not refuse to the swart convict, Bunyan, the pale, poetic pearl; Thou who didst clothe with doubly hammered leaves of finest gold, the stumped and paupered arm of old Cervantes; Thou who didst pick up Andrew Jackson from the pebbles; who didst hurl him upon a war-horse; who didst thunder him higher than a throne! Thou who, in all Thy mighty, earthly marchings, ever cullest Thy selectest champions from the kingly commons; bear me out in it, O God!

CHAPTER XXVII

KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES

STUBB was the second mate. He was a native of Cape Cod; and hence, according to local usage, was called a Cape-Cod-man. A happy-go-lucky; neither craven nor valiant; taking perils as they came with an indifferent air; and while engaged in the most imminent crisis of the chase, toiling away, calm and collected as a journeyman joiner engaged for the year. Good-humored, easy, and careless, he presided over his whale-boat as if the most deadly encounter were but a dinner, and his crew all invited guests. He was as particular about the comfortable arrangement of his part of the boat, as an old stage-driver is about the snugness of his box. When close to the whale, in the very death-lock of the fight, he handled his unpitying lance coolly and off-handedly, as a whistling tinker his hammer. He would hum over his old rigadig tunes while flank and flank with the most exasperated monster. Long usage had, for this Stubb, converted the jaws of death into an easy chair. What he thought of death itself, there is no telling. Whether he ever thought of it at all, might be a question; but, if he ever did chance to cast his mind that way after a comfortable dinner, no doubt, ✓ like a good sailor, he took it to be a sort of call of the watch to tumble aloft, and bestir themselves there, about something which he would find out when he obeyed the order, and not sooner.

What, perhaps, with other things, made Stubb such an easy-going, unfearing man, so cheerily trudging off with the burden of life in a world full of grave peddlers, all bowed to the ground with their packs; what helped to bring about that almost impious good-humor of his; that thing must have been his pipe. For, like his nose, his short, black little pipe was one of the regular features of his face. You would almost as soon have expected him to turn out of his bunk without his nose as without his pipe.

He kept a whole row of pipes there ready loaded, stuck in a rack, within easy reach of his hand; and, whenever he turned in, he smoked them all out in succession, lighting one from the other to the end of the chapter; then loading them again to be in readiness anew. For, when Stubb dressed, instead of first putting his legs into his trowsers, he put his pipe into his mouth.

I say this continual smoking must have been one cause, at least, of his peculiar disposition; for every one knows that this earthly air, whether ashore or afloat, is terribly infected with the nameless miseries of the numberless mortals who have died exhaling it; and as in time of the cholera, some people go about with a camphorated handkerchief to their mouths; so, likewise, against all mortal tribulations, Stubb's tobacco smoke might have operated as a sort of disinfecting agent.

The third mate was Flask, a native of Tisbury, in Martha's Vineyard. A short, stout, ruddy young fellow, very pugnacious concerning whales, who somehow seemed to think that the great Leviathans had personally and hereditarily affronted him; and therefore it was a sort of point of honor with him, to destroy them whenever encountered. So utterly lost was he to all sense of reverence for the many marvels of their majestic bulk and mystic ways; and so dead to anything like an apprehension of any possible danger from encountering them; that in his poor opinion, the wondrous whale was but a species of magnified mouse, or at least water-rat, requiring only a little circumvention and some small application of time and trouble in order to kill and boil. This ignorant, unconscious fearlessness of his made him a little waggish in the matter of whales; he followed these fish for the fun of it; and a three years' voyage round Cape Horn was only a jolly joke that lasted that length of time. As a carpenter's nails are divided into wrought nails and cut nails; so mankind may be similarly divided. Little Flask was one of the wrought ones; made to clinch tight and last long. They called him King-Post on board of the Pequod; because, in form, he could be well likened to the short, square timber known by that name in Arctic whalers; and which by the means of many radiating side timbers inserted in it, serves to brace the ship against the icy concussions of those battering seas.

Now these three mates—Starbuck, Stubb, and Flask, were

momentous men. They it was who by universal prescription commanded three of the Pequod's boats as headsmen. In that grand order of battle in which Captain Ahab would probably marshal his forces to descend on the whales, these three headsmen were as captains of companies. Or, being armed with their long keen whaling spears, they were as a picked trio of lancers; even as the harpooneers were flingers of javelins.

And since in this famous fishery, each mate or headsmen, like a Gothic Knight of old, is always accompanied by his boat-steerer or harpooneer, who in certain conjunctures provides him with a fresh lance, when the former one has been badly twisted, or elbowed in the assault; and moreover, as there generally subsists between the two, a close intimacy and friendliness; it is therefore but meet, that in this place we set down who the Pequod's harpooneers were, and to what headsmen each of them belonged.

First of all was Queequeg, whom Starbuck, the chief mate, had selected for his squire. But Queequeg is already known.

Next was Tashtego, an unmixed Indian from Gay Head, the most westerly promontory of Martha's Vineyard, where there still exists the last remnant of a village of red men, which has long supplied the neighboring island of Nantucket with many of her most daring harpooneers. In the fishery, they usually go by the generic name of Gay-Headers. Tashtego's long, lean, sable hair, his high cheek bones, and black rounding eyes—for an Indian, Oriental in their largeness, but Antarctic in their glittering expression—all this sufficiently proclaimed him an inheritor of the unvitiated blood of those proud warrior hunters, who, in quest of the great New England moose, had scoured, bow in hand, the aboriginal forests of the main. But no longer snuffing in the trail of the wild beasts of the woodland, Tashtego now hunted in the wake of the great whales of the sea; the unerring harpoon of the son fitly replacing the infallible arrow of the sires. To look at the tawny brawn of his lithe snaky limbs, you would almost have credited the superstitions of some of the earlier Puritans, and half believed this wild Indian to be a son of the Prince of the Powers of the Air. Tashtego was Stubb the second mate's squire.

Third among the harpooneers was Daggoo, a gigantic, coal-

black negro-savage, with a lion-like tread—an Ahasuerus to behold. Suspended from his ears were two golden hoops, so large that the sailors called them ring-bolts, and would talk of securing the top-sail halyards to them. In his youth Daggoo had voluntarily shipped on board of a whaler, lying in a lonely bay on his native coast. And never having been anywhere in the world but in Africa, Nantucket, and the pagan harbors most frequented by whalemens; and having now led for many years the bold life of the fishery in the ships of owners uncommonly heedful of what manner of men they shipped; Daggoo retained all his barbaric virtues, and erect as a giraffe, moved about the decks in all the pomp of six feet five in his socks. There was a corporeal humility in looking up at him; and a white man standing before him seemed a white flag come to beg truce of a fortress. Curious to tell, this imperial negro, Ahasuerus Daggoo, was the Squire of little Flask, who looked like a chess-man beside him. As for the residue of the Pequod's company, be it said, that at the present day not one in two of the many thousand men before the mast employed in the American whale fishery, are Americans born, though pretty nearly all the officers are. Herein it is the same with the American whale fishery as with the American army and military and merchant navies, and the engineering forces employed in the construction of the American Canals and Railroads. The same, I say, because in all these cases the native American liberally provides the brains, the rest of the world as generously supplying the muscles. No small number of these whaling seamen belong to the Azores, where the outward bound Nantucket whalers frequently touch to augment their crews from the hardy peasants of those rocky shores. In like manner, the Greenland whalers sailing out of Hull or London, put in at the Shetland Islands, to receive the full complement of their crew. Upon the passage homewards, they drop them there again. How it is, there is no telling, but Islanders seem to make the best whalemens. They were nearly all Islanders in the Pequod, *Isolatoos* too, I call such, not acknowledging the common continent of men, but each *Isolato* living on a separate continent of his own. Yet now, federated along one keel, what a set these *Isolatoos* were! An Anacharsis Clootz deputation from all the

isles of the sea, and all the ends of the earth, accompanying Old Ahab in the Pequod to lay the world's grievances before that bar from which not very many of them ever come back. Black Little Pip—he never did—oh, no! he went before. Poor Alabama boy! On the grim Pequod's forecastle, ye shall ere long see him, beating his tambourine; prelude of the eternal time, when sent for, to the great quarter-deck on high, he was bid strike in with angels, and beat his tambourine in glory; called a coward here, hailed a hero there!

CHAPTER XXVIII

AHAB

FOR several days after leaving Nantucket, nothing above hatches was seen of Captain Ahab. The mates regularly relieved each other at the watches, and for aught that could be seen to the contrary, they seemed to be the only commanders of the ship; only they sometimes issued from the cabin with orders so sudden and peremptory, that after all it was plain they but commanded vicariously. Yes, their supreme lord and dictator was there, though hitherto unseen by any eyes not permitted to penetrate into the now sacred retreat of the cabin.

Every time I ascended to the deck from my watches below, I instantly gazed aft to mark if any strange face were visible; for my first vague disquietude touching the unknown captain, now in the seclusion of the sea, became almost a perturbation. This was strangely heightened at times by the ragged Elijah's diabolical incoherences uninvitedly recurring to me, with a subtle energy I could not have before conceived of. But poorly could I withstand them, much as in other moods I was almost ready to smile at the solemn whimsicalities of that outlandish prophet of the wharves. But whatever it was of apprehensiveness or uneasiness—to call it so—which I felt, yet whenever I came to look about me in the ship, it seemed against all warrantry to

cherish such emotions. For though the harpooneers, with the great body of the crew, were a far more barbaric, heathenish, and motley set than any of the tame merchant-ship companies which my previous experiences had made me acquainted with, still I ascribed this—and rightly ascribed it—to the fierce uniqueness of the very nature of that wild Scandinavian vocation in which I had so abandonedly embarked. But it was especially the aspect of the three chief officers of the ship, the mates, which was most forcibly calculated to allay these colorless misgivings, and induce confidence and cheerfulness in every presentment of the voyage. Three better, more likely sea-officers and men, each in his own different way, could not readily be found, and they were every one of them Americans; a Nantucketer, a Vineyarder, a Cape man. Now, it being Christmas when the ship shot from out her harbor, for a space we had biting Polar weather, though all the time running away from it to the southward; and by every degree and minute of latitude which we sailed, gradually leaving that merciless winter, and all its intolerable weather behind us. It was one of those less lowering, but still grey and gloomy enough mornings of the transition, when with a fair wind the ship was rushing through the water with a vindictive sort of leaping and melancholy rapidity, that as I mounted to the deck at the call of the forenoon watch, so soon as I levelled my glance towards the taffrail, foreboding shivers ran over me. Reality outran apprehension; Captain Ahab stood upon his quarter-deck.

There seemed no sign of common bodily illness about him, nor of the recovery from any. He looked like a man cut away from the stake, when the fire has overrunningly wasted all the limbs without consuming them, or taking away one particle from their compacted aged robustness. His whole high, broad form, seemed made of solid bronze, and shaped in an unalterable mould, like Cellini's cast Perseus. Threading its way out from among his grey hairs, and continuing right down one side of his tawny scorched face and neck, till it disappeared in his clothing, you saw a slender rod-like mark, lividly whitish. It resembled that perpendicular seam sometimes made in the straight, lofty trunk of a great tree, when the upper lightning

tearfully darts down it, and without wrenching a single twig, peels and grooves out the bark from top to bottom, ere running off into the soil, leaving the tree still greenly alive, but branded. Whether that mark was born with him, or whether it was the scar left by some desperate wound, no one could certainly say. By some tacit consent, throughout the voyage little or no allusion was made to it, especially by the mates. But once Tashtego's senior, an old Gay-Head Indian among the crew, superstitiously asserted that not till he was full forty years old did Ahab become that way branded, and then it came upon him, not in the fury of any mortal fray, but in an elemental strife at sea. Yet, this wild hint seemed inferentially negatived, by what a grey Manxman insinuated, an old sepulchral man, who, having never before sailed out of Nantucket, had never ere this laid eye upon wild Ahab. Nevertheless, the old sea-traditions, the immemorial credulities, popularly invested this old Manxman with preternatural powers of discernment. So that no white sailor seriously contradicted him when he said that if ever Captain Ahab should be tranquilly laid out—which might hardly come to pass, so he muttered—then, whoever should do that last office for the dead, would find a birth-mark on him from crown to sole.

So powerfully did the whole grim aspect of Ahab affect me, and the livid brand which streaked it, that for the first few moments I hardly noted that not a little of this overbearing grimness was owing to the barbaric white leg upon which he partly stood. It had previously come to me that this ivory leg had at sea been fashioned from the polished bone of the sperm whale's jaw. "Aye, he was dismasted off Japan," said the old Gay-Head Indian once; "but like his dismasted craft, he shipped another mast without coming home for it. He has a quiver of 'em."

I was struck with the singular posture he maintained. Upon each side of the Pequod's quarter deck, and pretty close to the mizen shrouds, there was an auger hole, bored about half an inch or so, into the plank. His bone leg steadied in that hole; one arm elevated, and holding by a shroud; Captain Ahab stood erect, looking straight out beyond the ship's ever-pitching prow. There was an infinity of firmest fortitude, a determinate, unsur-

renderable wilfulness, in the fixed and fearless, forward dedication of that glance. Not a word he spoke; nor did his officers say aught to him; though by all their minutest gestures and expressions, they plainly showed the uneasy, if not painful, consciousness of being under a troubled master-eye. And not only that, but moody stricken Ahab stood before them with a crucifixion in his face; in all the nameless regal overbearing dignity of some mighty woe.

Ere long, from his first visit in the air, he withdrew into his cabin. But after that morning, he was every day visible to the crew; either standing in his pivot-hole, or seated upon an ivory stool he had; or heavily walking the deck. As the sky grew less gloomy; indeed, began to grow a little genial, he became still less and less a recluse; as if, when the ship had sailed from home, nothing but the dead wintry bleakness of the sea had then kept him so secluded. And, by and by, it came to pass, that he was almost continually in the air; but, as yet, for all that he said, or perceptibly did, on the at last sunny deck, he seemed as unnecessary there as another mast. But the Pequod was only making a passage now; not regularly cruising; nearly all whaling preparatives needing supervision the mates were fully competent to, so that there was little or nothing, out of himself, to employ or excite Ahab, now; and thus chase away, for that one interval, the clouds that layer upon layer were piled upon his brow, as ever all clouds choose the loftiest peaks to pile themselves upon.

Nevertheless, ere long, the warm, warbling persuasiveness of the pleasant, holiday weather we came to, seemed gradually to charm him from his mood. For, as when the red-cheeked, dancing girls, April and May, trip home to the wintry, misanthropic woods; even the barest, ruggedest, most thunder-cloven old oak will at least send forth some few green sprouts, to welcome such glad-hearted visitants; so Ahab did, in the end, a little respond to the playful allurings of that girlish air. More than once did he put forth the faint blossom of a look, which, in any other man, would have soon flowered out in a smile.

CHAPTER XXIX

ENTER AHAB; TO HIM, STUBB

SOME days elapsed, and ice and icebergs all astern, the Pequod now went rolling through the bright Quito spring, which, at sea, almost perpetually reigns on the threshold of the eternal August of the Tropic. The warmly cool, clear, ringing, perfumed, overflowing, redundant days, were as crystal goblets of Persian sherbet, heaped up—flaked up, with rose-water snow. The starred and stately nights seemed haughty dames in jewelled velvets, nursing at home in lonely pride, the memory of their absent conquering Earls, the golden helmeted suns! For sleeping man, 'twas hard to choose between such winsome days and such seducing nights. But all the witcheries of that unwaning weather did not merely lend new spells and potencies to the outward world. Inward they turned upon the soul, especially when the still mild hours of eve came on; then, memory shot her crystals as the clear ice most forms of noiseless twilights. And all these subtle agencies, more and more they wrought on Ahab's texture.

Old age is always wakeful; as if, the longer linked with life, the less man has to do with aught that looks like death. Among sea-commanders, the old greybeards will oftenest leave their berths to visit the night-cloaked deck. It was so with Ahab; only that now, of late, he seemed so much to live in the open air, that truly speaking, his visits were more to the cabin, than from the cabin to the planks. "It feels like going down into one's tomb,"—he would mutter to himself,—"for an old captain like me to be descending this narrow scuttle, to go to my grave-dug berth."

So, almost every twenty-four hours, when the watches of the night were set, and the band on deck sentinelled the slumbers of the band below; and when if a rope was to be hauled upon the forecastle, the sailors flung it not rudely down, as by day,

but with some cautiousness dropt it to its place, for fear of disturbing their slumbering shipmates; when this sort of steady quietude would begin to prevail, habitually, the silent steersman would watch the cabin-scuttle; and ere long the old man would emerge, gripping at the iron banister, to help his crippled way. Some considering touch of humanity was in him; for at times like these, he usually abstained from patrolling the quarter-deck; because to his wearied mates, seeking repose within six inches of his ivory heel, such would have been the reverberating crack and din of that bony step, that their dreams would have been of the crunching teeth of sharks. But once, the mood was on him too deep for common regardings; and as with heavy, lumber-like pace he was measuring the ship from taffrail to mainmast, Stubb, the odd second mate, came up from below, and with a certain unassured, deprecating humorousness, hinted that if Captain Ahab was pleased to walk the planks, then, no one could say nay; but there might be some way of muffling the noise; hinting something indistinctly and hesitatingly about a globe of tow, and the insertion into it, of the ivory heel. Ah! Stubb, thou did'st not know Ahab then.

"Am I a cannon-ball, Stubb," said Ahab, "that thou wouldst wad me that fashion? But go thy ways; I had forgot. Below to thy nightly grave; where such as ye sleep between shrouds, to use ye to the filling one at last.—Down, dog, and kennel!"

Starting at the unforeseen concluding exclamation of the so suddenly scornful old man, Stubb was speechless a moment; then said excitedly, "I am not used to be spoken to that way, sir; I do but less than half like it, sir."

"Avast!" gritted Ahab between his set teeth, and violently moving away, as if to avoid some passionate temptation.

"No, sir; not yet," said Stubb, emboldened, "I will not tamely be called a dog, sir."

"Then be called ten times a donkey, and a mule, and an ass, and begone, or I'll clear the world of thee!"

As he said this, Ahab advanced upon him with such overbearing terrors in his aspect, that Stubb involuntarily retreated.

"I was never served so before without giving a hard blow for it," muttered Stubb, as he found himself descending the cabin-

scuttle. "It's very queer. Stop, Stubb; somehow, now, I don't well know whether to go back and strike him, or—what's that?—down here on my knees and pray for him? Yes, that was the thought coming up in me; but it would be the first time I ever *did* pray. It's queer; very queer; and he's queer too; aye, take him fore and aft, he's about the queerest old man Stubb ever sailed with. How he flashed at me!—his eyes like powder-pans! is he mad? Anyway there's something on his mind, as sure as there must be something on a deck when it cracks. He aint in his bed now, either, more than three hours out of the twenty-four; and he don't sleep then. Didn't that Dough-Boy, the steward, tell me that of a morning he always finds the old man's hammock clothes all rumpled and tumbled, and the sheets down at the foot, and the coverlid almost tied into knots, and the pillow a sort of frightful hot, as though a baked brick had been on it? A hot old man! I guess he's got what some folks ashore call a conscience; it's a kind of Tic-Dolly-row they say—worse nor a toothache. Well, well; I don't know what it is, but the Lord keep me from catching it. He's full of riddles; I wonder what he goes into the after hold for, every night, as Dough-Boy tells me he suspects; what's that for, I should like to know? Who's made appointments with him in the hold? Ain't that queer, now? But there's no telling, it's the old game—Here goes for a snooze. Damn me, it's worth a fellow's while to be born into the world, if only to fall right asleep. And now that I think of it, that's about the first thing babies do, and that's a sort of queer, too. Damn me, but all things are queer, come to think of 'em. But that's against my principles. Think not, is my eleventh commandment; and sleep when you can, is my twelfth—~~So here goes again. But how's that? didn't he call me a dog? blazes! he called me ten times a donkey, and piled a lot of jackasses on top of that! He might as well have kicked me, and done with it. Maybe he *did* kick me, and I didn't observe it, I was so taken all aback with his brow, somehow. It flashed like a bleached bone. What the devil's the matter with me? I don't stand right on my legs. Coming afoul of that old man has a sort of turned me wrong side out. By the Lord, I must have been dreaming, though—How? how? how?—but the only way's~~

to stash it; so here goes to hammock again; and in the morning, I'll see how this plaguey juggling thinks over by day-light."

CHAPTER XXX

THE PIPE

WHEN Stubb had departed, Ahab stood for a while leaning over the bulwarks; and then, as had been usual with him of late, calling a sailor of the watch, he sent him below for his ivory stool, and also his pipe. Lighting the pipe at the binnacle lamp and planting the stool on the weather side of the deck, he sat and smoked.

In old Norse times, the thrones of the sea-loving Danish kings were fabricated, saith tradition, of the tusks of the narwhale. How could one look at Ahab then, seated on that tripod of bones, without bethinking him of the royalty it symbolized? For a Khan of the plank, and a king of the sea, and a great lord of Leviathans was Ahab.

Some moments passed, during which the thick vapor came from his mouth in quick and constant puffs, which blew back again into his face. "How now," he soliloquized at last, withdrawing the tube, "this smoking no longer soothes. Oh, my pipe! - hard must it go with me if thy charm be gone! Here have I been unconsciously toiling, not pleasuring,—aye, and ignorantly smoking to windward all the while; to windward, and with such nervous whiffs, as if, like the dying whale, my final jets were the strongest and fullest of trouble. What business have I with this pipe? This thing that is meant for sereneness, to send up mild white vapors among mild white hairs, not among torn iron-grey locks like mine. I'll smoke no more—"

He tossed the still lighted pipe into the sea. The fire hissed in the waves; the same instant the ship shot by the bubble the sinking pipe made. With slouched hat, Ahab lurchingly paced the planks.

CHAPTER XXXI

QUEEN MAB

NEXT morning Stubb accosted Flask.

"Such a queer dream, King-Post, I never had. You know the old man's ivory leg, well I dreamed he kicked me with it; and when I tried to kick back, upon my soul, my little man, I kicked my leg right off! And then, presto! Ahab seemed a pyramid, and I, like a blazing fool, kept kicking at it. But what was still more curious, Flask—you know how curious all dreams are—through all this rage that I was in, I somehow seemed to be thinking to myself, that after all, it was not much of an insult, that kick from Ahab. 'Why,' thinks I, 'what's the row? It's not a real leg, only a false leg.' And there's a mighty difference between a living thump and a dead thump. That's what makes a blow from the hand, Flask, fifty times more savage to bear than a blow from a cane. The living member—that makes the living insult, my little man. And thinks I to myself all the while, mind, while I was stubbing my silly toes against that cursed pyramid—so confoundedly contradictory was it all, all the while, I say, I was thinking to myself, 'what's his leg now, but a cane—a whalebone cane. Yes,' thinks I, 'it was only a playful cudgelling—in fact, only a whaleboning that he gave me—not a base kick. Besides,' thinks I, 'look at it once; why, the end of it—the foot part—what a small sort of end it is; whereas, if a broad footed farmer kicked me, *there's* a devilish broad insult. But this insult is whittled down to a point only.' But now comes the greatest joke of the dream, Flask. While I was battering away at the pyramid, a sort of badger-haired old merman, with a hump on his back, takes me by the shoulders, and slews me round. 'What are you 'bout?' says he. Slid! man, but I was frightened. Such a phiz! But, somehow, next moment I was over the fright. 'What am I about?' says I at last. 'And what business is that of yours, I should like to know, Mr. Humpback? Do *you* want a

kick?' By the lord, Flask, I had no sooner said that, than he turned round his stern to me, bent over, and dragging up a lot of seaweed he had for a clout—what do you think, I saw?—why thunder alive, man, his stern was stuck full of marlinspikes, with the points out. Says I, on second thoughts, 'I guess I won't kick you, old fellow.' 'Wise Stubb,' said he, 'wise Stubb;' and kept muttering it all the time, a sort of eating of his own gums like a chimney hag. Seeing he wasn't going to stop saying over his 'wise Stubb, wise Stubb,' I thought I might as well fall to kicking the pyramid again. But I had only just lifted my foot for it, when he roared out, 'Stop that kicking!' 'Halloa, says I, 'what's the matter now, old fellow?' 'Look ye here,' says he; 'let's argue the insult. Captain Ahab kicked ye, didn't he?' 'Yes, he did,' says I—'right *here* it was.' 'Very good,' says he—'he used his ivory leg, didn't he?' 'Yes, he did,' says I. 'Well then,' says he, 'wise Stubb, what have you to complain of? Didn't he kick with right good will? it wasn't a common pitch pine leg he kicked with, was it? No, you were kicked by a great man, and with a beautiful ivory leg, Stubb. It's an honor; I consider it an honor. Listen, wise Stubb. In old England the greatest lords think it great glory to be slapped by a queen, and made garter-knights of; but, be *your* boast, Stubb, that ye were kicked by old Ahab, and made a wise man of. Remember what I say; *be* kicked by him; account his kicks honors; and on no account kick back; for you can't help yourself, wise Stubb. Don't you see that pyramid?' With that, he all of a sudden seemed somehow, in some queer fashion, to swim off into the air. I snored; rolled over; and there I was in my hammock! Now, what do you think of that dream, Flask?"

"I don't know; it seems a sort of foolish to me, tho'."

"May be; may be. But it's made a wise man of me, Flask. D'ye see Ahab standing there, sideways looking over the stern? Well, the best thing you can do, Flask, is to let that old man alone; never speak to him, whatever he says. Halloa! what's that he shouts? Hark!"

"Mast-head, there! Look sharp, all of ye! There are whales hereabouts! If ye see a white one, split your lungs for him!"

"What d'ye think of that now, Flask? ain't there a small drop

of something queer about that, eh? A white whale—did ye mark that, man? Look ye—there's something special in the wind. ✓ Stand by for it, Flask. Ahab has that that's bloody on his mind. But, mum; he comes this way."

CHAPTER XXXII

CETOLOGY

ALREADY we are boldly launched upon the deep; but soon we shall be lost in its unshored, harborless immensities. Ere that come to pass; ere the Pequod's weedy hull rolls side by side with the barnacled hulls of the leviathan; at the outset it is but well to attend to a matter almost indispensable to a thorough appreciative understanding of the more special leviathanic revelations and allusions of all sorts which are to follow.

It is some systematized exhibition of the whale in his broad genera, that I would now fain put before you. Yet is it no easy task. The classification of the constituents of a chaos, nothing less is here essayed. Listen to what the best and latest authorities have laid down.

"No branch of Zoology is so much involved as that which is entitled Cetology," says Captain Scoresby, A. D. 1820.

"It is not my intention, were it in my power, to enter into the inquiry as to the true method of dividing the cetacea into groups and families. * * * Utter confusion exists among the historians of this animal" (sperm whale), says Surgeon Beale, A. D. 1839.

"Unfitness to pursue our research in the unfathomable waters." "Impenetrable veil covering our knowledge of the cetacea." "A field strewn with thorns." "All these incomplete indications but serve to torture us naturalists."

Thus speak of the whale, the great Cuvier, and John Hunter, and Lesson, those lights of zoology and anatomy. Nevertheless, though of real knowledge there be little, yet of books there are

a plenty; and so in some small degree, with cetology, or the science of whales. Many are the men, small and great, old and new, landsmen and seamen, who have at large or in little, written of the whale. Run over a few:—The Authors of the Bible; Aristotle; Pliny; Aldrovandi; Sir Thomas Browne; Gesner; Ray; Linnæus; Rondeletius; Willoughby; Green; Artedi; Sibbald; Brisson; Marten; Lacépède; Bonnetterre; Desmarest; Baron Cuvier; Frederick Cuvier; John Hunter; Owen; Scoresby; Beale; Bennett; J. Ross Browne; the Author of *Miriam Coffin*; Olmstead; and the Rev. T. Cheever. But to what ultimate generalizing purpose all these have written, the above cited extracts will show.

Of the names in this list of whale authors, only those following Owen ever saw living whales; and but one of them was a real professional harpooneer and whaler. I mean Captain Scoresby. On the separate subject of the Greenland or right-whale, he is the best existing authority. But Scoresby knew nothing and says nothing of the great sperm whale, compared with which the Greenland whale is almost unworthy mentioning. And here be it said, that the Greenland whale is an usurper upon the throne of the seas. He is not even by any means the largest of the whales. Yet, owing to the long priority of his claims, and the profound ignorance which, till some seventy years back, invested the then fabulous and utterly unknown sperm-whale, and which ignorance to this present day still reigns in all but some few scientific retreats and whale-ports; this usurpation has been every way complete. Reference to nearly all the leviathanic allusions in the great poets of past days, will satisfy you that the Greenland whale, without one rival, was to them the monarch of the seas. But the time has at last come for a new proclamation. This is Charing Cross; hear ye! good people all,—the Greenland whale is deposed,—the great sperm whale now reigneth!

There are only two books in being which at all pretend to put the living sperm whale before you, and at the same time, in the remotest degree succeed in the attempt. Those books are Beale's and Bennett's; both in their time surgeons to English South-Sea whale-ships, and both exact and reliable men. The

original matter touching the sperm whale to be found in their volumes is necessarily small; but so far as it goes, it is of excellent quality, though mostly confined to scientific description. As yet, however, the sperm whale, scientific or poetic, lives not complete in any literature. Far above all other hunted whales, his is an unwritten life.

Now the various species of whales need some sort of popular comprehensive classification, if only an easy outline one for the present, hereafter to be filled in all its departments by subsequent laborers. As no better man advances to take this matter in hand, I hereupon offer my own poor endeavors. I promise nothing complete; because any human thing supposed to be complete, must for that very reason infallibly be faulty. I shall not pretend to a minute anatomical description of the various species, or—in this place at least—to much of any description. My object here is simply to project the draught of a systematization of cetology. I am the architect, not the builder.

But it is a ponderous task; no ordinary letter-sorter in the Post-office is equal to it. To grope down into the bottom of the sea after them; to have one's hands among the unspeakable foundations, ribs, and very pelvis of the world; this is a fearful thing. What am I that I should essay to hook the nose of this leviathan! The awful tauntings in Job might well appal me. "Will he (the leviathan) make a covenant with thee? Behold the hope of him is vain!" But I have swam through libraries and sailed through oceans; I have had to do with whales with these visible hands; I am in earnest; and I will try. There are some preliminaries to settle.

First: The uncertain, unsettled condition of this science of Cetology is in the very vestibule attested by the fact, that in some quarters it still remains a moot point whether a whale be a fish. In his *System of Nature*, A. D. 1776, Linnæus declares, "I hereby separate the whales from the fish." But of my own knowledge, I know that down to the year 1850, sharks and shad, alewives and herring, against Linnæus's express edict, were still found dividing the possession of the same seas with the Leviathan.

The grounds upon which Linnæus would fain have banished

the whales from the waters, he states as follows: "On account of their warm bilocular heart, their lungs, their movable eyelids, their hollow ears, penem intransem feminam mammis lactantem," and finally, "ex lege naturæ jure meritoque." I submitted all this to my friends Simeon Macey and Charley Coffin, of Nantucket, both messmates of mine in a certain voyage, and they united in the opinion that the reasons set forth were altogether insufficient. Charley profanely hinted they were humbug.

Be it known that, waiving all argument, I take the good old fashioned ground that the whale is a fish, and call upon holy Jonah to back me. This fundamental thing settled, the next point is, in what internal respect does the whale differ from other fish. Above, Linnæus has given you those items. But in brief, they are these: lungs and warm blood; whereas, all other fish are lungless and cold blooded.

Next: how shall we define the whale, by his obvious externals, so as conspicuously to label him for all time to come? To be short, then, a whale is *a spouting fish with a horizontal tail*. There you have him. However contracted, that definition is the result of expanded meditation. A walrus spouts much like a whale, but the walrus is not a fish, because he is amphibious. But the last term of the definition is still more cogent, as coupled with the first. Almost any one must have noticed that all the fish familiar to landsmen have not a flat, but a vertical, or up-and-down tail. Whereas, among spouting fish the tail, though it may be similarly shaped, invariably assumes a horizontal position.

By the above definition of what a whale is, I do by no means exclude from the leviathanic brotherhood any sea creature hitherto identified with the whale by the best informed Nantucketers; nor, on the other hand, link with it any fish hitherto authoritatively regarded as alien.* Hence, all the smaller, spout-

* I am aware that down to the present time, the fish styled Lamatins and Dugongs (Pig-fish and Sow-fish of the Coffins of Nantucket) are included by many naturalists among the whales. But as these pig-fish are a nosy, contemptible set, mostly lurking in the mouths of rivers, and feeding on wet hay, and especially as they do not spout, I deny their credentials as whales; and have presented them with their passports to quit the Kingdom of Cetology.

ing, and horizontal tailed fish must be included in this ground-plan of Cetology. Now, then, come the grand divisions of the entire whale host.

First: According to magnitude I divide the whales into three primary BOOKS (subdivisible into CHAPTERS), and these shall comprehend them all, both small and large.

I. The FOLIO WHALE; II. the OCTAVO WHALE; III. the DUODECIMO WHALE.

As the type of the FOLIO I present the *Sperm Whale*; of the OCTAVO, the *Grampus*; of the DUODECIMO, the *Porpoise*.

FOLIOS. Among these I here include the following chapters:—
I. The *Sperm Whale*; II. the *Right Whale*; III. the *Fin Back Whale*; IV. the *Hump-backed Whale*; V. the *Razor Back Whale*; VI. the *Sulphur Bottom Whale*.

BOOK I. (*Folio*), CHAPTER I. (*Sperm Whale*).—This whale, among the English of old vaguely known as the Trumpa whale, and the Physeter whale, and the Anvil Headed whale, is the present Cachalot of the French, and the Pottsich of the Germans, and the Macrocephalus of the Long Words. He is, without doubt, the largest inhabitant of the globe; the most formidable of all whales to encounter; the most majestic in aspect; and lastly, by far the most valuable in commerce; he being the only creature from which that valuable substance, spermaceti, is obtained. All his peculiarities will, in many other places, be enlarged upon. It is chiefly with his name that I now have to do. Philologically considered, it is absurd. Some centuries ago, when the Sperm whale was almost wholly unknown in his own proper individuality, and when his oil was only accidentally obtained from the stranded fish; in those days spermaceti, it would seem, was popularly supposed to be derived from a creature identical with the one then known in England as the Greenland or Right Whale. It was the idea also, that this same spermaceti was that quickening humor of the Greenland Whale which the first syllable of the word literally expresses. In those times, also, spermaceti was exceedingly scarce, not being used for light, but only as an ointment and medicament. It was only to be had from the druggists as you nowadays buy an ounce of rhubarb. When, as I opine, in the course of time, the true nature of spermaceti be-

came known, its original name was still retained by the dealers; no doubt to enhance its value by a notion so strangely significant of its scarcity. And so the appellation must at last have come to be bestowed upon the whale from which this spermaceti was really derived.

BOOK I. (*Folio*), CHAPTER II. (*Right Whale*).—In one respect this is the most venerable of the leviathans, being the one first regularly hunted by man. It yields the article commonly known as whalebone or baleen; and the oil specially known as “whale oil,” an inferior article in commerce. Among the fishermen, he is indiscriminately designated by all the following titles: The Whale; the Greenland Whale; the Black Whale; the Great Whale; the True Whale; the Right Whale. There is a deal of obscurity concerning the identity of the species thus multitudinously baptized. What then is the whale, which I include in the second species of my Folios? It is the Great Mysticetus of the English naturalists; the Greenland Whale of the English Whalemén; the Baliene Ordinaire of the French whalemén; the Growlands Walfish of the Swedes. It is the whale which for more than two centuries past has been hunted by the Dutch and English in the Arctic seas; it is the whale which the American fishermen have long pursued in the Indian ocean, on the Brazil Banks, on the Nor’ West Coast, and various other parts of the world, designated by them Right Whale Cruising Grounds.

Some pretend to see a difference between the Greenland whale of the English and the right whale of the Americans. But they precisely agree in all their grand features; nor has there yet been presented a single determinate fact upon which to ground a radical distinction. It is by endless subdivisions based upon the most inconclusive differences, that some departments of natural history become so repellingly intricate. The right whale will be elsewhere treated of at some length, with reference to elucidating the sperm whale.

BOOK I. (*Folio*), CHAPTER III. (*Fin-Back*).—Under this head I reckon a monster which, by the various names of Fin-Back, Tall-Spout, and Long-John, has been seen almost in every sea and is commonly the whale whose distant jet is so often descried by passengers crossing the Atlantic, in the New York

packet-tracks. In the length he attains, and in his baleen, the Fin-back resembles the right whale, but is of a less portly girth, and a lighter color, approaching to olive. His great lips present a cable-like aspect, formed by the intertwisting, slanting folds of large wrinkles. His grand distinguishing feature, the fin, from which he derives his name, is often a conspicuous object. This fin is some three or four feet long, growing vertically from the hinder part of the back, of an angular shape, and with a very sharp pointed end. Even if not the slightest other part of the creature be visible, this isolated fin will, at times, be seen plainly projecting from the surface. When the sea is moderately calm, and slightly marked with spherical ripples, and this gnomon-like fin stands up and casts shadows upon the wrinkled surface, it may well be supposed that the watery circle surrounding it somewhat resembles a dial, with its style and wavy hour-lines graved on it. On that Ahaz-dial the shadow often goes back. The Fin-Back is not gregarious. He seems a whale-hater, as some men are man-haters. Very shy; always going solitary; unexpectedly rising to the surface in the remotest and most sullen waters; his straight and single lofty jet rising like a tall misanthropic spear upon a barren plain; gifted with such wondrous power and velocity in swimming, as to defy all present pursuit from man; this leviathan seems the banished and unconquerable Cain of his race, bearing for his mark that style upon his back. From having the baleen in his mouth, the Fin-Back is sometimes included with the right whale, among a theoretic species denominated *Whalebone whales*, that is, whales with baleen. Of these so called Whalebone whales, there would seem to be several varieties, most of which, however, are little known. Broad-nosed whales and beaked whales; pike-headed whales; bunched whales; under-jawed whales and rostrated whales, are the fishermen's names for a few sorts.

In connexion with this appellative of "Whalebone whales," it is of great importance to mention, that however such a nomenclature may be convenient in facilitating allusions to some kind of whales, yet it is in vain to attempt a clear classification of the Leviathan, founded upon either his baleen, or hump, or fin, or teeth; notwithstanding that those marked parts or features very

obviously seem better adapted to afford the basis for a regular system of Cetology than any other detached bodily distinctions, which the whale, in his kinds, presents. How then? The baleen, hump, back-fin, and teeth; these are things whose peculiarities are indiscriminately dispersed among all sorts of whales, without any regard to what may be the nature of their structure in other and more essential particulars. Thus, the sperm whale and the humpbacked whale, each has a hump; but there the similitude ceases. Then, this same humpbacked whale and the Greenland whale, each of these has baleen; but there again the similitude ceases. And it is just the same with the other parts above mentioned. In various sorts of whales, they form such irregular combinations; or, in the case of any one of them detached, such an irregular isolation; as utterly to defy all general methodization formed upon such a basis. On this rock every one of the whale-naturalists has split.

But it may possibly be conceived that, in the internal parts of the whale, in his anatomy—there, at least, we shall be able to hit the right classification. Nay; what thing, for example, is there in the Greenland whale's anatomy more striking than his baleen? Yet we have seen that by his baleen it is impossible correctly to classify the Greenland whale. And if you descend into the bowels of the various leviathans, why there you will not find distinctions a fiftieth part as available to the systematizer as those external ones already enumerated. What then remains? nothing but to take hold of the whales bodily, in their entire liberal volume, and boldly sort them that way. And this is the Bibliographical system here adopted; and it is the only one that can possibly succeed, for it alone is practicable. To proceed.

BOOK I. (*Folio*), CHAPTER IV. (*Hump Back*).—This whale is often seen on the northern American coast. He has been frequently captured there, and towed into harbor. He has a great pack on him like a peddler; or you might call him the Elephant and Castle whale. At any rate, the popular name for him does not sufficiently distinguish him, since the sperm whale also has a hump, though a smaller one. His oil is not very valuable. He has baleen. He is the most gamesome and light-hearted of all

the whales, making more gay foam and white water generally than any other of them.

BOOK I. (*Folio*), CHAPTER V. (*Razor Back*).—Of this whale little is known but his name. I have seen him at a distance off Cape Horn. Of a retiring nature, he eludes both hunters and philosophers. Though no coward, he has never yet shown any part of him but his back, which rises in a long sharp ridge. Let him go. I know little more of him, nor does anybody else.

BOOK I. (*Folio*), CHAPTER VI. (*Sulphur Bottom*).—Another retiring gentleman, with a brimstone belly, doubtless got by scraping along the Tartarian tiles in some of his profounder divings. He is seldom seen; at least I have never seen him except in the remoter southern seas, and then always at too great a distance to study his countenance. He is never chased; he would run away with rope-walks of line. Prodigies are told of him. Adieu, Sulphur Bottom! I can say nothing more that is true of ye, nor can the oldest Nantucketer.

Thus ends BOOK I. (*Folio*), and now begins BOOK II. (*Octavo*).

OCTAVOES.* These embrace the whales of middling magnitude, among which at present may be numbered:—I., the *Grampus*; II., the *Black Fish*; III., the *Narwhale*; IV., the *Thrasher*; V., the *Killer*.

BOOK II. (*Octavo*), CHAPTER I. (*Grampus*).—Though this fish, whose loud sonorous breathing, or rather blowing, has furnished a proverb to landsmen, is so well known a denizen of the deep, yet is he not popularly classed among whales. But possessing all the grand distinctive features of the leviathan, most naturalists have recognised him for one. He is of moderate octavo size, varying from fifteen to twenty-five feet in length, and of corresponding dimensions round the waist. He swims in herds; he is never regularly hunted, though his oil is con-

* Why this book of whales is not denominated the Quarto is very plain. Because, while the whales of this order, though smaller than those of the former order, nevertheless retain a proportionate likeness to them in figure, yet the bookbinder's Quarto volume in its diminished form does not preserve the shape of the Folio volume, but the Octavo volume does.

siderable in quantity, and pretty good for light. By some fishermen his approach is regarded as premonitory of the advance of the great sperm whale.

BOOK II. (*Octavo*), CHAPTER II. (*Black Fish*).—I give the popular fishermen's names for all these fish, for generally they are the best. Where any name happens to be vague or inexpressive, I shall say so, and suggest another. I do so now, touching the Black Fish, so called, because blackness is the rule among almost all whales. So, call him the Hyena Whale, if you please. His voracity is well known, and from the circumstance that the inner angles of his lips are curved upwards, he carries an everlasting Mephistophelean grin on his face. This whale averages some sixteen or eighteen feet in length. He is found in almost all latitudes. He has a peculiar way of showing his dorsal hooked fin in swimming, which looks something like a Roman nose. When not more profitably employed, the sperm whale hunters sometimes capture the Hyena whale, to keep up the supply of cheap oil for domestic employment—as some frugal housekeepers, in the absence of company, and quite alone by themselves, burn unsavory tallow instead of odorous wax. Though their blubber is very thin, some of these whales will yield you upwards of thirty gallons of oil.

BOOK II. (*Octavo*), CHAPTER III. (*Narwhale*), that is, *Nostril whale*.—Another instance of a curiously named whale, so named I suppose from his peculiar horn being originally mistaken for a peaked nose. The creature is some sixteen feet in length, while its horn averages five feet, though some exceed ten, and even attain to fifteen feet. Strictly speaking, this horn is but a lengthened tusk, growing out from the jaw in a line a little depressed from the horizontal. But it is only found on the sinister side, which has an ill effect, giving its owner something analogous to the aspect of a clumsy left-handed man. What precise purpose this ivory horn or lance answers, it would be hard to say. It does not seemed to be used like the blade of the sword-fish and bill-fish; though some sailors tell me that the Narwhale employs it for a rake in turning over the bottom of the sea for food. Charley Coffin said it was used for an ice-piercer; for the Narwhale, rising to the surface of the Polar Sea,

and finding it sheeted with ice, thrusts his horn up, and so breaks through. But you cannot prove either of these surmises to be correct. My own opinion is, that however this one-sided horn may really be used by the Narwhale—however that may be—it would certainly be very convenient to him for a folder in reading pamphlets. The Narwhale I have heard called the Tusked whale, the Horned whale, and the Unicorn whale. He is certainly a curious example of the Unicornism to be found in almost every kingdom of animated nature. From certain cloistered old authors I have gathered that this same sea-unicorn's horn was in ancient days regarded as the great antidote against poison, and as such, preparations of it brought immense prices. It was also distilled to a volatile salts for fainting ladies, the same way that the horns of the male deer are manufactured into hartshorn. Originally it was in itself accounted an object of great curiosity. Black Letter tells me that Sir Martin Frobisher on his return from that voyage, when Queen Bess did gallantly wave her jewelled hand to him from a window of Greenwich Palace, as his bold ship sailed down the Thames; "when Sir Martin returned from that voyage," saith Black Letter, "on bended knees he presented to her highness a prodigious long horn of the Narwhale, which for a long period after hung in the castle at Windsor." An Irish author avers that the Earl of Leicester, on bended knees, did likewise present to her highness another horn, pertaining to a land beast of the unicorn nature.

The Narwhale has a very picturesque, leopard-like look, being of a milk-white ground color, dotted with round and oblong spots of black. His oil is very superior, clear and fine; but there is little of it, and he is seldom hunted. He is mostly found in the circumpolar seas.

BOOK II. (*Octavo*), CHAPTER IV. (*Killer*).—Of this whale little is precisely known to the Nantucketer, and nothing at all to the professed naturalist. From what I have seen of him at a distance, I should say that he was about the bigness of a grampus. He is very savage—a sort of Feegee fish. He sometimes takes the great Folio whales by the lip, and hangs there like a leech, till the mighty brute is worried to death. The Killer is never hunted. I never heard what sort of oil he has. Exception

might be taken to the name bestowed upon this whale, on the ground of its indistinctness. For we are all killers, on land and on sea; Bonapartes and Sharks included.

BOOK II. (*Octavo*), CHAPTER V. (*Thrasher*).—This gentleman is famous for his tail, which he uses for a ferule in thrashing his foes. He mounts the Folio whale's back, and as he swims, he works his passage by flogging him; as some schoolmasters get along in the world by a similar process. Still less is known of the Thrasher than of the Killer. Both are outlaws, even in the lawless seas.

Thus ends BOOK II. (*Octavo*), and begins BOOK III. (*Duodecimo*).

DUODECIMOES.—These include the smaller whales. I. The Huzza Porpoise. II. The Algerine Porpoise. III. The Mealy-mouthed Porpoise.

To those who have not chanced specially to study the subject, it may possibly seem strange, that fishes not commonly exceeding four or five feet should be marshalled among WHALES—a word, which, in the popular sense, always conveys an idea of hugeness. But the creatures set down above as Duodecimoes are infallibly whales, by the terms of my definition of what a whale is—i.e. a spouting fish, with a horizontal tail.

BOOK III. (*Duodecimo*), CHAPTER I (*Huzza Porpoise*).—This is the common porpoise found almost all over the globe. The name is of my own bestowal; for there are more than one sort of porpoises, and something must be done to distinguish them. I call him thus, because he always swims in hilarious shoals, which upon the broad sea keep tossing themselves to heaven like caps in a Fourth-of-July crowd. Their appearance is generally hailed with delight by the mariner. Full of fine spirits, they invariably come from the breezy billows to windward. They are the lads that always live before the wind. They are accounted a lucky omen. If you yourself can withstand three cheers at beholding these vivacious fish, then heaven help ye; the spirit of godly gamesomeness is not in ye. A well-fed, plump Huzza Porpoise will yield you one good gallon of good oil. But the fine and delicate fluid extracted from his jaws is exceedingly valuable. It is in request among jewellers and watchmakers.

Sailors put it on their hones. Porpoise meat is good eating, you know. It may never have occurred to you that a porpoise spouts. Indeed, his spout is so small that it is not very readily discernible. But the next time you have a chance, watch him; and you will then see the great Sperm whale himself in miniature.

BOOK III. (*Duodecimo*), CHAPTER II. (*Algerine Porpoise*).—A pirate. Very savage. He is only found, I think, in the Pacific. He is somewhat larger than the Huzza Porpoise, but much of the same general make. Provoke him, and he will buckle to a shark. I have lowered for him many times, but never yet saw him captured.

BOOK III. (*Duodecimo*), CHAPTER III. (*Mealy-mouthed Porpoise*).—The largest kind of Porpoise; and only found in the Pacific, so far as it is known. The only English name, by which he has hitherto been designated, is that of the fishers—Right-Whale Porpoise, from the circumstance that he is chiefly found in the vicinity of that Folio. In shape, he differs in some degree from the Huzza Porpoise, being of a less rotund and jolly girth; indeed, he is of quite a neat and gentleman-like figure. He has no fins on his back (most other porpoises have), he has a lovely tail, and sentimental Indian eyes of a hazel hue. But his mealy-mouth spoils all. Though his entire back down to his side fins is of a deep sable, yet a boundary line, distinct as the mark in a ship's hull, called the "bright waist," that line streaks him from stem to stern, with two separate colors, black above and white below. The white comprises part of his head, and the whole of his mouth, which makes him look as if he had just escaped from a felonious visit to a meal-bag. A most mean and mealy aspect! His oil is much like that of the common porpoise.

* * * * *

Beyond the *Duodecimo*, this system does not proceed, inasmuch as the Porpoise is the smallest of the whales. Above, you have all the Leviathans of note. But there are a rabble of uncertain, fugitive, half-fabulous whales, which, as an American whaleman, I know by reputation, but not personally. I shall enumerate them by their fore-castle appellations; for possibly such a list may be valuable to future investigators, who may complete what I have here but begun. If any of the following

whales, shall hereafter be caught and marked, then he can readily be incorporated into this System, according to his Folio, Octavo, or Duodecimo magnitude:—The Bottle-Nose Whale; the Junk Whale; the Pudding-Headed Whale; the Cape Whale; the Leading Whale; the Cannon Whale; the Scragg Whale; the Coppered Whale; the Elephant Whale; the Iceberg Whale; the Quog Whale; the Blue Whale; &c. From Icelandic, Dutch, and old English authorities, there might be quoted other lists of uncertain whales, blessed with all manner of uncouth names. But I omit them as altogether obsolete; and can hardly help suspecting them for mere sounds, full of Leviathanism, but signifying nothing.

Finally: It was stated at the outset, that this system would not be here, and at once, perfected. You cannot but plainly see that I have kept my word. But I now leave my cetological System standing thus unfinished, even as the great Cathedral of Cologne was left, with the crane still standing upon the top of the uncompleted tower. For small erections may be finished by their first architects; grand ones, true ones, ever leave the copestone to posterity. God keep me from ever completing anything. This whole book is but a draught—nay, but the draught of a draught. Oh, Time, Strength, Cash, and Patience!

CHAPTER XXXIII

THE SPECKSYNDER

CONCERNING the officers of the whale-craft, this seems as good a place as any to set down a little domestic peculiarity on ship-board, arising from the existence of the harpooneer class of officers, a class unknown of course in any other marine than the whale-fleet.

The large importance attached to the harpooneer's vocation is evinced by the fact, that originally in the old Dutch Fishery, two centuries and more ago, the command of a whale ship was

not wholly lodged in the person now called the captain, but was divided between him and an officer called the Specksynder. Literally this word means Fat-Cutter; usage, however, in time made it equivalent to Chief Harpooneer. In those days, the captain's authority was restricted to the navigation and general management of the vessel: while over the whale-hunting department and all its concerns, the Specksynder or Chief Harpooneer reigned supreme. In the British Greenland Fishery, under the corrupted title of Specksioneer, this old Dutch official is still retained, but his former dignity is sadly abridged. At present he ranks simply as senior Harpooneer; and as such, is but one of the captain's more inferior subalterns. Nevertheless, as upon the good conduct of the harpooneers the success of a whaling voyage largely depends, and since in the American Fishery he is not only an important officer in the boat, but under certain circumstances (night watches on a whaling ground) the command of the ship's deck is also his; therefore the grand political maxim of the sea demands, that he should nominally live apart from the men before the mast, and be in some way distinguished as their professional superior; though always, by them, familiarly regarded as their social equal.

Now, the grand distinction drawn between officer and man at sea, is this—the first lives aft, the last forward. Hence, in whale-ships and merchantmen alike, the mates have their quarters with the captain; and so, too, in most of the American whalers the harpooneers are lodged in the after part of the ship. That is to say, they take their meals in the captain's cabin, and sleep in a place indirectly communicating with it.

Though the long period of a Southern whaling voyage (by far the longest of all voyages now or ever made by man), the peculiar perils of it, and the community of interest prevailing among a company, all of whom, high or low, depend for their profits, not upon fixed wages, but upon their common luck, together with their common vigilance, intrepidity, and hard work; though all these things do in some cases tend to beget a less rigorous discipline than in merchantmen generally; yet, never mind how much like an old Mesopotamian family these whalemen may, in some primitive instances, live together; for all that,

the punctilious externals, at least, of the quarter-deck are seldom materially relaxed, and in no instance done away. Indeed, many are the Nantucket ships in which you will see the skipper parading his quarter-deck with an elated grandeur not surpassed in any military navy; nay, extorting almost as much outward homage as if he wore the imperial purple, and not the shabbiest of pilot-cloth.

And though of all men the moody captain of the *Pequod* was the least given to that sort of shallowest assumption; and though the only homage he ever exacted, was implicit, instantaneous obedience; though he required no man to remove the shoes from his feet ere stepping upon the quarter-deck; and though there were times when, owing to peculiar circumstances connected with events hereafter to be detailed, he addressed them in unusual terms, whether of condescension or *in terrorem*, or otherwise; yet even Captain Ahab was by no means unobservant of the paramount forms and usages of the sea.

Nor, perhaps, will it fail to be eventually perceived, that behind those forms and usages, as it were, he sometimes masked himself; incidentally making use of them for other and more private ends than they were legitimately intended to subserve. That certain sultanism of his brain, which had otherwise in a good degree remained unmanifested; through those forms that same sultanism became incarnate in an irresistible dictatorship. For be a man's intellectual superiority what it will, it can never assume the practical, available supremacy over other men, without the aid of some sort of external arts and entrenchments, always, in themselves, more or less paltry and base. This it is, that for ever keeps God's true princes of the Empire from the world's hustings; and leaves the highest honors that this air can give, to those men who become famous more through their infinite inferiority to the choice hidden handful of the Divine Inert, than through their undoubted superiority over the dead level of the mass. Such large virtue lurks in these small things when extreme political superstitions invest them, that in some royal instances even to idiot imbecility they have imparted potency. But when, as in the case of Nicholas the Czar, the ringed crown of geographical empire encircles an imperial brain;

then, the plebeian herds crouch abased before the tremendous centralization. Nor, will the tragic dramatist who would depict mortal indomitableness in its fullest sweep and direct swing, ever forget a hint, incidentally so important in his art, as the one now alluded to.

But Ahab, my Captain, still moves before me in all his Nantucket grimness and shagginess; and in this episode touching Emperors and Kings, I must not conceal that I have only to do with a poor old whale-hunter like him; and, therefore, all outward majestical trappings and housings are denied me. Oh, Ahab! what shall be grand in thee, it must needs be plucked ✓ at from the skies, and dived for in the deep, and featured in the unbodied air!

CHAPTER XXXIV

THE CABIN-TABLE

It is noon; and Dough-Boy, the steward, thrusting his pale loaf-of-bread face from the cabin-scuttle, announces dinner to his lord and master; who, sitting in the lee quarter-boat, has just been taking an observation of the sun; and is now mutely reckoning the latitude on the smooth, medallion-shaped tablet, reserved for that daily purpose on the upper part of his ivory leg. From his complete inattention to the tidings, you would think that moody Ahab had not heard his menial. But presently, catching hold of the mizen shrouds, he swings himself to the deck, and in an even, unexhilarated voice, saying, "Dinner, Mr. Starbuck," disappears into the cabin.

When the last echo of his sultan's step has died away, and Starbuck, the first Emir, has every reason to suppose that he is seated, then Starbuck rouses from his quietude, takes a few turns along the planks, and, after a grave peep into the binnacle, says, with some touch of pleasantness, "Dinner, Mr. Stubb," and descends the scuttle. The second Emir lounges about the rigging

awhile, and then slightly shaking the main brace, to see whether it be all right with that important rope, he likewise takes up the old burden, and with a rapid "Dinner, Mr. Flask," follows after his predecessors.

But the third Emir, now seeing himself all alone on the quarter-deck, seems to feel relieved from some curious restraint; for, tipping all sorts of knowing winks in all sorts of directions, and kicking off his shoes, he strikes into a sharp but noiseless squall of a hornpipe right over the Grand Turk's head; and then, by a dexterous sleight, pitching his cap up into the mizentop for a shelf, he goes down rollicking, so far at least as he remains visible from the deck, reversing all other processions, by bringing up the rear with music. But ere stepping into the cabin doorway below, he pauses, ships a new face altogether, and, then, independent, hilarious little Flask enters King Ahab's presence, in the character of Abjectus, or the Slave.

It is not the least among the strange things bred by the intense artificialness of sea-usages, that while in the open air of the deck some officers will, upon provocation, bear themselves boldly and defyingly enough towards their commander; yet, ten to one, let those very officers the next moment go down to their customary dinner in that same commander's cabin, and straightway their inoffensive, not to say deprecatory and humble air towards him, as he sits at the head of the table; this is marvellous, sometimes most comical. Wherefore this difference? A problem? Perhaps not. To have been Belshazzar, King of Babylon; and to have been Belshazzar, not haughtily but courteously, therein certainly must have been some touch of mundane grandeur. But he who in the rightly regal and intelligent spirit presides over his own private dinner-table of invited guests, that man's unchallenged power and dominion of individual influence for the time; that man's royalty of state transcends Belshazzar's, for Belshazzar was not the greatest. Who has but once dined his friends, has tasted what it is to be Cæsar. It is a witchery of social czarship which there is no withstanding. Now, if to this consideration you superadd the official supremacy of a ship-master, then, by inference, you will derive the cause of that peculiarity of sea-life just mentioned.

Over his ivory-inlaid table, Ahab presided like a mute, maned sea-lion on the white coral beach, surrounded by his warlike but still deferential cubs. In his own proper turn, each officer waited to be served. They were as little children before Ahab; and yet, in Ahab, there seemed not to lurk the smallest social arrogance. With one mind, their intent eyes all fastened upon the old man's knife, as he carved the chief dish before him. I do not suppose that for the world they would have profaned that moment with the slightest observation, even upon so neutral a topic as the weather. No! And when reaching out his knife and fork, between which the slice of beef was locked, Ahab thereby motioned Starbuck's plate towards him, the mate received his meat as though receiving alms; and cut it tenderly; and a little started if, perchance, the knife grazed against the plate; and chewed it noiselessly; and swallowed it, not without circumspection. For, like the Coronation banquet at Frankfort, where the German Emperor profoundly dines with the seven Imperial Electors, so these cabin meals were somehow solemn meals, eaten in awful silence; and yet at table old Ahab forbade not conversation; only he himself was dumb. What a relief it was to choking Stubb, when a rat made a sudden racket in the hold below. And poor little Flask, he was the youngest son, and little boy of this weary family party. His were the shin-bones of the saline beef; his would have been the drumsticks. For Flask to have presumed to help himself, this must have seemed to him tantamount to larceny in the first degree. Had he helped himself at that table, doubtless, never more would he have been able to hold his head up in this honest world; nevertheless, strange to say, Ahab never forbade him. And had Flask helped himself, the chances were Ahab had never so much as noticed it. Least of all, did Flask presume to help himself to butter. Whether he thought the owners of the ship denied it to him, on account of its clotting his clear, sunny complexion; or whether he deemed that, on so long a voyage in such marketless waters, butter was at a premium, and therefore was not for him, a subaltern; however it was, Flask, alas! was a butterless man!

Another thing. Flask was the last person down at the dinner,

and Flask is the first man up. Consider! For hereby Flask's dinner was badly jammed in point of time. Starbuck and Stubb both had the start of him; and yet they also have the privilege of lounging in the rear. If Stubb even, who is but a peg higher than Flask, happens to have but a small appetite, and soon shows symptoms of concluding his repast, then Flask must bestir himself, he will not get more than three mouthfuls that day; for it is against holy usage for Stubb to precede Flask to the deck. Therefore it was that Flask once admitted in private, that ever since he had arisen to the dignity of an officer, from that moment he had never known what it was to be otherwise than hungry, more or less. For what he ate did not so much relieve his hunger, as keep it immortal in him. Peace and satisfaction, thought Flask, have for ever departed from my stomach. I am an officer; but, how I wish I could fist a bit of old-fashioned beef in the forecastle, as I used to when I was before the mast. There's the fruits of promotion now; there's the vanity of glory: there's the insanity of life! Besides, if it were so that any mere sailor of the Pequod had a grudge against Flask in Flask's official capacity, all that sailor had to do, in order to obtain ample vengeance, was to go aft at dinner-time, and get a peep at Flask through the cabin sky-light, sitting silly and dumfounded before awful Ahab.

Now, Ahab and his three mates formed what may be called the first table in the Pequod's cabin. After their departure, taking place in inverted order to their arrival, the canvas cloth was cleared, or rather was restored to some hurried order by the pallid steward. And then the three harpooneers were bidden to the feast, they being its residuary legatees. They made a sort of temporary servants' hall of the high and mighty cabin.

In strange contrast to the hardly tolerable constraint and nameless invisible domineerings of the captain's table, was the entire care-free license and ease, the almost frantic democracy of those inferior fellows the harpooneers. While their masters, the mates, seemed afraid of the sound of the hinges of their own jaws, the harpooneers chewed their food with such a relish that there was a report to it. They dined like lords; they filled their bellies like Indian ships all day loading with spices. Such por-

tentous appetites had Queequeg and Tashtego, that to fill out the vacancies made by the previous repast, often the pale Dough-Boy was fain to bring on a great baron of salt-junk, seemingly quarried out of the solid ox. And if he were not lively about it, if he did not go with a nimble hop-skip-and-jump, then Tashtego had an ungentlemanly way of accelerating him by darting a fork at his back, harpoonwise. And once Daggoo, seized with a sudden humor, assisted Dough-Boy's memory by snatching him up bodily, and thrusting his head into a great empty wooden trencher, while Tashtego, knife in hand, began laying out the circle preliminary to scalping him. He was naturally a very nervous, shuddering sort of little fellow, this bread-faced steward; the progeny of a bankrupt baker and a hospital nurse. And what with the standing spectacle of the black terrific Ahab, and the periodical tumultuous visitations of these three savages, Dough-Boy's whole life was one continual lip-quiver. Commonly, after seeing the harpooneers furnished with all things they demanded, he would escape from their clutches into his little pantry adjoining, and fearfully peep out at them through the blinds of its door, till all was over.

It was a sight to see Queequeg seated over against Tashtego, opposing his filed teeth to the Indian's: crosswise to them, Daggoo seated on the floor, for a bench would have brought his hearse-plumed head to the low carlines; at every motion of his colossal limbs, making the low cabin framework to shake, as when an African elephant goes passenger in a ship. But for all this, the great negro was wonderfully abstemious, not to say dainty. It seemed hardly possible that by such comparatively small mouthfuls he could keep up the vitality diffused through so broad, baronial, and superb a person. But, doubtless, this noble savage fed strong and drank deep of the abounding element of air; and through his dilated nostrils snuffed in the sublime life of the worlds. Not by beef or by bread, are giants made or nourished. But Queequeg, he had a mortal, barbaric smack of the lip in eating—an ugly sound enough—so much so, that the trembling Dough-Boy almost looked to see whether any marks of teeth lurked in his own lean arms. And when he would hear Tashtego singing out for him to produce himself,

that his bones might be picked, the simple-witted Steward all but shattered the crockery hanging round him in the pantry, by his sudden fits of the palsy. Nor did the whetstone which the harpooneers carried in their pockets, for their lances and other weapons; and with which whetstones, at dinner, they would ostentatiously sharpen their knives; that grating sound did not at all tend to tranquillize poor Dough-Boy. How could he forget that in his Island days, Queequeg, for one, must certainly have been guilty of some murderous, convivial indiscretions. Alas! Dough-Boy! hard fares the white waiter who waits upon cannibals. Not a napkin should he carry on his arm, but a buckler. In good time, though, to his great delight, the three salt-sea warriors would rise and depart; to his credulous, fable-mongering ears, all their martial bones jingling in them at every step, like Moorish scimetars in scabbards.

But, though these barbarians dined in the cabin, and nominally lived there; still, being anything but sedentary in their habits, they were scarcely ever in it except at meal-times, and just before sleeping-time, when they passed through it to their own peculiar quarters.

In this one matter, Ahab seemed no exception to most American whale captains, who, as a set, rather incline to the opinion that by rights the ship's cabin belongs to them; and that it is by courtesy alone that anybody else is, at any time, permitted there. So that, in real truth, the mates and harpooneers of the Pequod might more properly be said to have lived out of the cabin than in it. For when they did enter it, it was something as a street-door enters a house; turning inwards for a moment, only to be turned out the next; and, as a permanent thing, residing in the open air. Nor did they lose much hereby; in the cabin was no companionship; socially, Ahab was inaccessible. Though nominally included in the census of Christendom, he was still an alien to it. He lived in the world, as the last of the Grisly Bears lived in settled Missouri. And as when Spring and Summer had departed, that wild Logan of the woods, burying himself in the hollow of a tree, lived out the winter there, sucking his own paws; so, in his inclement, howling old age, Ahab's soul, shut up in the caved trunk of his body, there fed upon the sullen paws of its gloom!

CHAPTER XXXV

THE MAST-HEAD

It was during the more pleasant weather, that in due rotation with the other seamen my first mast-head came round.

In most American whalemén the mast-heads are manned almost simultaneously with the vessel's leaving her port; even though she may have fifteen thousand miles, and more, to sail ere reaching her proper cruising ground. And if, after a three, four, or five years' voyage she is drawing nigh home with anything empty in her—say, an empty vial even—then, her mast-heads are kept manned to the last; and not till her skysail-poles sail in among the spires of the port, does she altogether relinquish the hope of capturing one whale more.

Now, as the business of standing mast-heads, ashore or afloat, is a very ancient and interesting one, let us in some measure expatiate here. I take it, that the earliest standers of mast-heads were the old Egyptians; because, in all my researches, I find none prior to them. For though their progenitors, the builders of Babel, must doubtless, by their tower, have intended to rear the loftiest mast-head in all Asia, or Africa either; yet (ere the final truck was put to it) as that great stone mast of theirs may be said to have gone by the board, in the dread gale of God's wrath; therefore, we cannot give these Babel builders priority over the Egyptians. And that the Egyptians were a nation of mast-head standers, is an assertion based upon the general belief among archæologists, that the first pyramids were founded for astronomical purposes: a theory singularly supported by the peculiar stair-like formation of all four sides of those edifices; whereby, with prodigious long upliftings of their legs, those old astronomers were wont to mount to the apex, and sing out for new stars; even as the look-outs of a modern ship sing out for a sail, or a whale just bearing in sight. In Saint Stylites, the famous Christian hermit of old times, who built him a lofty stone pillar in the desert and spent the whole latter portion of

his life on its summit, hoisting his food from the ground with a tackle; in him we have a remarkable instance of a dauntless stander-of-mast-heads; who was not to be driven from his place by fogs or frosts, rain, hail, or sleet; but valiantly facing everything out to the last, literally died at his post. Of modern standers-of-mast-heads we have but a lifeless set; mere stone, iron, and bronze men; who, though well capable of facing out a stiff gale, are still entirely incompetent to the business of singing out upon discovering any strange sight. There is Napoleon; who, upon the top of the column of Vendome, stands with arms folded, some one hundred and fifty feet in the air; careless, now, who rules the decks below; whether Louis Philippe, Louis Blanc, or Louis the Devil. Great Washington, too, stands high aloft on his towering main-mast in Baltimore, and like one of Hercules' pillars, his column marks that point of human grandeur beyond which few mortals will go. Admiral Nelson, also, on a capstan of gun-metal, stands his mast-head in Trafalgar Square; and ever when most obscured by that London smoke, token is yet given that a hidden hero is there; for where there is smoke, must be fire. But neither great Washington, nor Napoleon, nor Nelson, will answer a single hail from below, however madly invoked to befriend by their counsels the distracted decks upon which they gaze; however it may be surmised, that their spirits penetrate through the thick haze of the future, and descry what shoals and what rocks must be shunned.

It may seem unwarrantable to couple in any respect the mast-head standers of the land with those of the sea; but that in truth it is not so, is plainly evinced by an item for which Obed Macy, the sole historian of Nantucket, stands accountable. The worthy Obed tells us, that in the early times of the whale fishery, ere ships were regularly launched in pursuit of the game, the people of that island erected lofty spars along the sea-coast, to which the look-outs ascended by means of nailed cleats, something as fowls go upstairs in a hen-house. A few years ago this same plan was adopted by the Bay whalers of New Zealand, who, upon descrying the game, gave notice to the ready-manned boats nigh the beach. But this custom has now become obsolete; turn we then to the one proper mast-head, that of a whale-ship

at sea. The three mast-heads are kept manned from sun-rise to sun-set; the seamen taking their regular turns (as at the helm), and relieving each other every two hours. In the serene weather of the tropics it is exceedingly pleasant the mast-head; nay, to a dreamy meditative man it is delightful. There you stand, a hundred feet above the silent decks, striding along the deep, as if the masts were gigantic stilts, while beneath you and between your legs, as it were, swim the hugest monsters of the sea, even as ships once sailed between the boots of the famous Colossus at old Rhodes. There you stand, lost in the infinite series of the sea, with nothing ruffled but the waves. The tranced ship indolently rolls; the drowsy trade winds blow; everything resolves you into languor. For the most part, in this tropic whaling life, a sublime uneventfulness invests you; you hear no news; read no gazettes; extras with startling accounts of commonplaces never delude you into unnecessary excitements; you hear of no domestic afflictions; bankrupt securities; fall of stocks; are never troubled with the thought of what you shall have for dinner—for all your meals for three years and more are snugly stowed in casks, and your bill of fare is immutable.

In one of those southern whalemén, on a long three or four years' voyage, as often happens, the sum of the various hours you spend at the mast-head would amount to several entire months. And it is much to be deplored that the place to which you devote so considerable a portion of the whole term of your natural life, should be so sadly destitute of anything approaching to a cosy inhabitiveness, or adapted to breed a comfortable localness of feeling, such as pertains to a bed, a hammock, a hearse, a sentry box, a pulpit, a coach, or any other of those small and snug contrivances in which men temporarily isolate themselves. Your most usual point of perch is the head of the t' gallant-mast, where you stand upon two thin parallel sticks (almost peculiar to whalemén) called the t' gallant cross-trees. Here, tossed about by the sea, the beginner feels about as cosy as he would standing on a bull's horns. To be sure, in cold weather you may carry your house aloft with you, in the shape of a watch-coat; but properly speaking the thickest watch-coat is no more of a house than the unclad body; for as the soul is glued inside

of its fleshly tabernacle, and cannot freely move about in it, nor even move out of it, without running great risk of perishing (like an ignorant pilgrim crossing the snowy Alps in winter); so a watch-coat is not so much of a house as it is a mere envelope, or additional skin encasing you. You cannot put a shelf or chest of drawers in your body, and no more can you make a convenient closet of your watch-coat.

Concerning all this, it is much to be deplored that the mast-heads of a southern whale ship are unprovided with those enviable little tents or pulpits, called *crow's-nests*, in which the look-outs of a Greenland whaler are protected from the inclement weather of the frozen seas. In the fire-side narrative of Captain Sleet, entitled "A Voyage among the Icebergs, in quest of the Greenland Whale, and incidentally for the re-discovery of the Lost Icelandic Colonies of Old Greenland;" in this admirable volume, all standers of mast-heads are furnished with a charmingly circumstantial account of the then recently invented *crow's-nest* of the Glacier, which was the name of Captain Sleet's good craft. He called it the *Sleet's crow's-nest*, in honor of himself; he being the original inventor and patentee, and free from all ridiculous false delicacy, and holding that if we call our own children after our own names (we fathers being the original inventors and patentees), so likewise should we denominate after ourselves any other apparatus we may beget. In shape, the Sleet's *crow's-nest* is something like a large tierce or pipe; it is open above, however, where it is furnished with a movable side-screen to keep to windward of your head in a hard gale. Being fixed on the summit of the mast, you ascend into it through a little trap-hatch in the bottom. On the after side, or side next the stern of the ship, is a comfortable seat, with a locker underneath for umbrellas, comforters, and coats. In front is a leather rack, in which to keep your speaking trumpet, pipe, telescope, and other nautical conveniences. When Captain Sleet in person stood his mast-head in this *crow's nest* of his, he tells us that he always had a rifle with him (also fixed in the rack), together with a powder flask and shot, for the purpose of popping off the stray narwhales, or vagrant sea unicorns infesting those waters; for you cannot successfully shoot at them from

the deck owing to the resistance of the water, but to shoot down upon them is a very different thing. Now, it was plainly a labor of love for Captain Sleet to describe, as he does, all the little detailed conveniences of his crow's-nest; but though he so enlarges upon many of these, and though he treats us to a very scientific account of his experiments in this crow's-nest, with a small compass he kept there for the purpose of counteracting the errors resulting from what is called the "local attraction" of all binnacle magnets; an error ascribable to the horizontal vicinity of the iron in the ship's planks, and in the Glacier's case, perhaps, to there having been so many broken-down blacksmiths among her crew; I say, that though the Captain is very discreet and scientific here, yet, for all his learned "binnacle deviations," "azimuth compass observations," and "approximate errors," he knows very well, Captain Sleet, that he was not so much immersed in those profound magnetic meditations, as to fail being attracted occasionally towards that well replenished little case-bottle, so nicely tucked in on one side of his crow's nest, within easy reach of his hand. Though, upon the whole, I greatly admire and even love the brave, the honest, and learned Captain; yet I take it very ill of him that he should so utterly ignore that case-bottle, seeing what a faithful friend and comforter it must have been, while with mittened fingers and hooded head he was studying the mathematics aloft there in that bird's nest within three or four perches of the pole.

But if we Southern whale-fishers are not so snugly housed aloft as Captain Sleet and his Greenland-men were; yet that disadvantage is greatly counterbalanced by the widely contrasting serenity of those seductive seas in which we South fishers mostly float. For one, I used to lounge up the rigging very leisurely, resting in the top to have a chat with Queequeg, or any one else off duty whom I might find there; then ascending a little way further, and throwing a lazy leg over the top-sail yard, take a preliminary view of the watery pastures, and so at last mount to my ultimate destination.

Let me make a clean breast of it here, and frankly admit that I kept but sorry guard. With the problem of the universe revolving in me, how could I—being left completely to myself

at such a thought-engendering altitude,—how could I but lightly hold my obligations to observe all whale-ships' standing orders, "Keep your weather eye open, and sing out every time."

And let me in this place movingly admonish you, ye ship-owners of Nantucket! Beware of enlisting in your vigilant fisheries any lad with lean brow and hollow eye; given to unseasonable meditateness; and who offers to ship with the Phædon instead of Bowditch in his head. Beware of such an one, I say: your whales must be seen before they can be killed; and this sunken-eyed young Platonist will tow you ten wakes round the world, and never make you one pint of sperm the richer. Nor are these monitions at all unneeded. For nowadays, the whale-fishery furnishes an asylum for many romantic, melancholy, and absent-minded young men, disgusted with the carking cares of earth, and seeking sentiment in tar and blubber. Childe Harold not unfrequently perches himself upon the mast-head of some luckless disappointed whale-ship, and in moody phrase ejaculates:—

"Roll on, thou deep and dark blue ocean, roll!

Ten thousand blubber-hunters sweep over thee in vain."

Very often do the captains of such ships take those absent-minded young philosophers to task, upbraiding them with not feeling sufficient "interest" in the voyage; half-hinting that they are so hopelessly lost to all honorable ambition, as that in their secret souls they would rather not see whales than otherwise. But all in vain; those young Platonists have a notion that their vision is imperfect; they are short-sighted; what use, then, to strain the visual nerve? They have left their opera-glasses at home.

✓ "Why, thou monkey," said a harpooneer to one of these lads, "we've been cruising now hard upon three years, and thou hast not raised a whale yet. Whales are scarce as hen's teeth whenever thou art up here." Perhaps they were; or perhaps there might have been shoals of them in the far horizon; but lulled into such an opium-like listlessness of vacant, unconscious reverie is this absent-minded youth by the blending cadence of waves with thoughts, that at last he loses his identity; takes the mystic

ocean at his feet for the visible image of that deep, blue, bottomless soul, pervading mankind and nature; and every strange, half-seen, gliding, beautiful thing that eludes him; every dimly-discovered, uprising fin of some undiscernible form, seems to him the embodiment of those elusive thoughts that only people the soul by continually flitting through it. In this enchanted mood, thy spirit ebbs away to whence it came; becomes diffused through time and space; like Cranmer's sprinkled Pantheistic ashes, forming at last a part of every shore the round globe over. ✓

There is no life in thee, now, except that rocking life imparted by a gently rolling ship; by her, borrowed from the sea; by the sea, from the inscrutable tides of God. But while this sleep, this dream is on ye, move your foot or hand an inch; slip your hold at all; and your identity comes back in horror. Over Cartesian vortices you hover. And perhaps, at mid-day, in the fairest weather, with one half-throttled shriek you drop through that transparent air into the summer sea, no more to rise for ever. Heed it well, ye Pantheists!

CHAPTER XXXVI

THE QUARTER-DECK

(Enter Ahab: Then, all.)

It was not a great while after the affair of the pipe, that one morning shortly after breakfast, Ahab, as was his wont, ascended the cabin-gangway to the deck. There most sea-captains usually walk at that hour, as country gentlemen, after the same meal, take a few turns in the garden.

Soon his steady, ivory stride was heard, as to and fro he paced his old rounds, upon planks so familiar to his tread, that they were all over dented, like geological stones, with the peculiar mark of his walk. Did you fixedly gaze, too, upon that ribbed

and dented brow; there also, you would see still stranger foot-prints—the foot-prints of his one unsleeping, ever-pacing thought.

But on the occasion in question, those dents looked deeper, even as his nervous step that morning left a deeper mark. And, so full of his thought was Ahab, that at every uniform turn that he made, now at the main-mast and now at the binnacle, you could almost see that thought turn in him as he turned, and pace in him as he paced; so completely possessing him, indeed, that it all but seemed the inward mould of every outer movement.

“D’ye mark him, Flask?” whipered Stubb; “the chick that’s in him pecks the shell. T’will soon be out.”

The hours wore on;—Ahab now shut up within his cabin; anon, pacing the deck, with the same intense bigotry of purpose in his aspect.

It drew near the close of day. Suddenly he came to a halt by the bulwarks, and inserting his bone leg into the auger-hole there, and with one hand grasping a shroud, he ordered Starbuck to send everybody aft.

“Sir!” said the mate, astonished at an order seldom or never given on ship-board except in some extraordinary case.

“Send everybody aft,” repeated Ahab. “Mast-heads, there! come down!”

When the entire ship’s company were assembled, and with curious and not wholly unapprehensive faces, were eyeing him, for he looked not unlike the weather horizon when a storm is coming up, Ahab, after rapidly glancing over the bulwarks, and then darting his eyes among the crew, started from his standpoint; and as though not a soul were nigh him resumed his heavy turns upon the deck. With bent head and half-slouched hat he continued to pace, unmindful of the wondering whispering among the men; till Stubb cautiously whispered to Flask, that Ahab must have summoned them there for the purpose of witnessing a pedestrian feat. But this did not last long. Vehemently pausing, he cried:—

“What do ye do when ye see a whale, men?”

“Sing out for him!” was the impulsive rejoinder from a score of clubbed voices.

"Good!" cried Ahab, with a wild approval in his tones; observing the hearty animation into which his unexpected question had so magnetically thrown them.

"And what do ye next, men?"

"Lower away, and after him!"

"And what tune is it ye pull to, men?"

"A dead whale or a stove boat!"

More and more strangely and fiercely glad and approving, grew the countenance of the old man at every shout; while the mariners began to gaze curiously at each other, as if marvelling how it was that they themselves became so excited at such seemingly purposeless questions.

But, they were all eagerness again, as Ahab, now half-revolving in his pivot-hole, with one hand reaching high up a shroud, and tightly, almost convulsively grasping it, addressed them thus:—

"All ye mast-headers have before now heard me give orders about a white whale. Look ye! d'ye see this Spanish ounce of gold?"—holding up a broad bright coin to the sun—"it is a sixteen dollar piece, men. D'ye see it? Mr. Starbuck, hand me yon top-maul."

While the mate was getting the hammer, Ahab, without speaking, was slowly rubbing the gold piece against the skirts of his jacket, as if to heighten its lustre, and without using any words was meanwhile lowly humming to himself, producing a sound so strangely muffled and inarticulate that it seemed the mechanical humming of the wheels of his vitality in him.

Receiving the top-maul from Starbuck, he advanced towards the main-mast with the hammer uplifted in one hand, exhibiting the gold with the other, and with a high raised voice exclaiming: "Whosoever of ye raises me a white-headed whale with a wrinkled brow and a crooked jaw; whosoever of ye raises me that white-headed whale, with three holes punctured in his starboard fluke—look ye, whosoever of ye raises me that same white whale, he shall have this gold ounce, my boys!"

"Huzza! huzza!" cried the seamen, as with swinging tarpaulins they hailed the act of nailing the gold to the mast.

"It's a white whale, I say," resumed Ahab, as he threw down

the top-maul; "a white whale. Skin your eyes for him, men; look sharp for white water; if ye see but a bubble, sing out."

All this while Tashtego, Daggoo, and Queequeg had looked on with even more intense interest and surprise than the rest, and at the mention of the wrinkled brow and crooked jaw they had started as if each was separately touched by some specific recollection.

"Captain Ahab," said Tashtego, "that white whale must be the same that some call Moby Dick."

"Moby Dick?" shouted Ahab. "Do ye know the white whale then, Tash?"

"Does he fan-tail a little curious, sir, before he goes down?" said the Gay-Header deliberately.

"And has he a curious spout, too," said Daggoo, "very bushy, even for a parmacetty, and mighty quick, Captain Ahab?"

"And he have one, two, tree—oh! good many iron in him hide, too, Captain," cried Queequeg disjointedly, "all twiske-tee betwisk, like him—him—" faltering hard for a word, and screwing his hand round and round as though uncorking a bottle—"like him—him—"

"Corkscrew!" cried Ahab, "aye, Queequeg, the harpoons lie all twisted and wrenched in him; aye, Daggoo, his spout is a big one, like a whole shock of wheat, and white as a pile of our Nantucket wool after the great annual sheep-shearing; aye, Tashtego, and he fan-tails like a split jib in a squall. Death and devils! men, it is Moby Dick ye have seen—Moby Dick—Moby Dick!"

"Captain Ahab," said Starbuck, who, with Stubb and Flask, had thus far been eyeing his superior with increasing surprise, but at last seemed struck with a thought which somewhat explained all the wonder. "Captain Ahab, I have heard of Moby Dick—but it was not Moby Dick that took off thy leg?"

"Who told thee that?" cried Ahab; then pausing, "Aye, Starbuck; aye, my hearties all round; it was Moby Dick that dismasted me; Moby Dick that brought me to this dead stump I stand on now. Aye, aye," he shouted with a terrific, loud, animal sob, like that of a heart-stricken moose; "Aye, aye! it was that accursed white whale that razeed me; made a poor pegging

lubber of me for ever and a day!" Then tossing both arms, with measureless imprecations he shouted out: "Aye, ayel and I'll chase him round Good Hope, and round the Horn, and round the Norway Maelstrom, and round perdition's flames before I give him up. And this is what ye have shipped for, men! to chase that white whale on both sides of land, and over all sides of earth, till he spouts black blood and rolls fin out. What say ye, men, will ye splice hands on it, now? I think ye do look brave."

"Aye, ayel!" shouted the harpooneers and seamen, running closer to the excited old man: "A sharp eye for the White Whale; a sharp lance for Moby Dick!"

"God bless ye," he seemed to half sob and half shout. "God bless ye, men. Steward! go draw the great measure of grog. But what's this long face about, Mr. Starbuck; wilt thou not chase the white whale? art not game for Moby Dick?"

"I am game for his crooked jaw, and for the jaws of Death too, Captain Ahab, if it fairly comes in the way of the business we follow; but I came here to hunt whales, not my commander's vengeance. How many barrels will thy vengeance yield thee even if thou gettest it, Captain Ahab? it will not fetch thee much in our Nantucket market."

"Nantucket market! Hoot! But come closer, Starbuck; thou requirest a little lower layer. If money's to be the measurer, man, and the accountants have computed their great counting-house the globe, by girdling it with guineas, one to every three parts of an inch; then, let me tell thee, that my vengeance will fetch a great premium *here!*"

"He smites his chest," whispered Stubb, "what's that for? methinks it rings most vast, but hollow."

"Vengeance on a dumb brute!" cried Starbuck, "that simply smote thee from blindest instinct! Madness! To be enraged with a dumb thing, Captain Ahab, seems blasphemous."

"Hark ye yet again,—the little lower layer. All visible objects, man, are but as pasteboard masks. But in each event—in the living act, the undoubted deed—there, some unknown but still reasoning thing puts forth the mouldings of its features from behind the unreasoning mask. If man will strike, strike through

the mask! How can the prisoner reach outside except by thrusting through the wall? To me, the white whale is that wall, shoved near to me. Sometimes I think there's naught beyond. But 'tis enough. He tasks me; he heaps me; I see in him outrageous strength, with an inscrutable malice sinewing it. That inscrutable thing is chiefly what I hate; and be the white whale agent, or be the white whale principal, I will wreak that hate upon him. Talk not to me of blasphemy, man; I'd strike the sun if it insulted me. For could the sun do that, then could I do the other; since there is ever a sort of fair play herein, jealousy presiding over all creations. But not my master, man, is even that fair play. Who's over me? Truth hath no confines. Take off thine eye! more intolerable than fiends' glarings is a doltish stare! So, so; thou reddenest and palest; my heat has melted thee to anger-glow. But look ye, Starbuck, what is said in heat, that thing unsays itself. There are men from whom warm words are small indignity. I meant not to incense thee. Let it go. Look! see yonder Turkish cheeks of spotted tawn—living, breathing pictures painted by the sun. The Pagan leopards—the unrecking and unworshipping things, that live; and seek, and give no reasons for the torrid life they feel! The crew, man, the crew! Are they not one and all with Ahab, in this matter of the whale? See Stubb! he laughs! See yonder Chilian! he snorts to think of it. Stand up amid the general hurricane, thy one tost sapling cannot, Starbuck! And what is it? Reckon it. 'Tis but to help strike a fin; no wondrous feat for Starbuck. What is it more? From this one poor hunt, then, the best lance out of all Nantucket, surely he will not hang back, when every foremast-hand has clutched a whetstone? Ah! constrainings seize thee; I see! the billow lifts thee! Speak, but speak!—Aye, aye! thy silence, then, *that* voices thee. (*Aside*) Something shot from my dilated nostrils, he has inhaled it in his lungs. Starbuck now is mine; cannot oppose me now, without rebellion."

"God keep me!—keep us all!" murmured Starbuck, lowly.

But in his joy at the enchanted, tacit acquiescence of the mate, Ahab did not hear his foreboding invocation; nor yet the low laugh from the hold; nor yet the presaging vibrations of

the winds in the cordage; nor yet the hollow flap of the sails against the masts, as for a moment their hearts sank in. For again Starbuck's downcast eyes lighted up with the stubbornness of life; the subterranean laugh died away; the winds blew on; the sails filled out; the ship heaved and rolled as before. Ah, ye admonitions and warnings! why stay ye not when ye come? But rather are ye predictions than warnings, ye shadows! Yet not so much predictions from without, as verifications of the foregoing things within. For with little external to constrain us, the innermost necessities in our being, these still drive us on. ✓

"The measure! the measure!" cried Ahab.

Receiving the brimming pewter, and turning to the harpooneers, he ordered them to produce their weapons. Then ranging them before him near the capstan, with their harpoons in their hands, while his three mates stood at his side with their lances, and the rest of the ship's company formed a circle round the group; he stood for an instant searchingly eyeing every man of his crew. But those wild eyes met his, as the bloodshot eyes of the prairie wolves meet the eye of their leader, ere he rushes on at their head in the trail of the bison; but, alas! only to fall into the hidden snare of the Indian.

"Drink and pass!" he cried, handing the heavy charged flagon to the nearest seaman. "The crew alone now drink. Round with it, round! Short draughts—long swallows, men; 'tis hot as Satan's hoof. So, so; it goes round excellently. It spiralizes in ye; forks out at the serpent-snapping eye. Well done; almost drained. That way it went, this way it comes. Hand it me—here's a hollow! Men, ye seem the years; so brimming life is gulped and gone. Steward, refill! ✓

"Attend now, my braves. I have mustered ye all round this capstan; and ye mates, flank me with your lances; and ye harpooneers, stand there with your irons; and ye, stout mariners, ring me in, that I may in some sort revive a noble custom of my fisherman fathers before me. O men, you will yet see that— Hal boy, come back? bad pennies come not sooner. Hand it me. Why, now, this pewter had run brimming again, wer't not thou St. Vitus' imp—away, thou ague!

"Advance, ye mates! Cross your lances full before me. Well

done! Let me touch the axis." So saying, with extended arm, he grasped the three level, radiating lances at their crossed centre; while so doing, suddenly and nervously twitched them; meanwhile, glancing intently from Starbuck to Stubb; from Stubb to Flask. It seemed as though, by some nameless, interior volition, he would fain have shocked into them the same fiery emotion accumulated within the Leyden jar of his own magnetic life. The three mates quailed before his strong, sustained, and mystic aspect. Stubb and Flask looked sideways from him; the honest eye of Starbuck fell downright.

"In vain!" cried Ahab; "but, maybe, 'tis well. For did ye three but once take the full-forced shock, then mine own electric thing, *that* had perhaps expired from out me. Perchance, too, it would have dropped ye dead. Perchance ye need it not. Down lances! And now, ye mates, I do appoint ye three cup-bearers to my three pagan kinsmen there—yon three most honorable gentlemen and noblemen, my valiant harpooneers. Disdain the task? What, when the great Pope washes the feet of beggars, using his tiara for ewer? Oh, my sweet cardinals! your own condescension, *that* shall bend ye to it. I do not order ye; ye will it. Cut your seizings and draw the poles, ye harpooneers!"

Silently obeying the order, the three harpooneers now stood with the detached iron part of their harpoons, some three feet long, held, barbs up, before him.

"Stab me not with that keen steell! Cant them; cant them over! know ye not the goblet end? Turn up the socket! So, so; now, ye cup-bearers, advance. The irons! take them; hold them while I fill!" Forthwith, slowly going from one officer to the other, he brimmed the harpoon sockets with the fiery waters from the pewter.

"Now, three to three, ye stand. Commend the murderous chalices! Bestow them, ye who are now made parties to this indissoluble league. Ha! Starbuck! but the deed is done! Yon rati-fying sun now waits to sit upon it. Drink, ye harpooneers! drink and swear, ye men that man the deathful whaleboat's bow—Death to Moby Dick! God hunt us all, if we do not hunt Moby Dick to his death!" The long, barbed steel goblets were lifted; and to cries and maledictions against the white whale, the spirits

were simultaneously quaffed down with a hiss. Starbuck paled, and turned, and shivered. Once more, and finally, the replenished pewter went the rounds among the frantic crew; when, waving his free hand to them, they all dispersed; and Ahab retired within his cabin.

CHAPTER XXXVII

SUNSET

The cabin; by the stern windows; Ahab sitting alone, and gazing out.

I LEAVE a white and turbid wake; pale waters, paler cheeks, where'er I sail. The envious billows sidelong swell to whelm my track; let them; but first I pass.

Yonder, by the ever-brimming goblet's rim, the warm waves blush like wine. The gold brow plumbs the blue. The diver sun—slow dived from noon,—goes down; my soul mounts up! she wearies with her endless hill. Is, then, the crown too heavy that I wear? this Iron Crown of Lombardy. Yet is it bright with many a gem; I, the wearer, see not its far flashings; but darkly feel that I wear that, that dazzlingly confounds. 'Tis iron—that I know—not gold. 'Tis split, too—that I feel; the jagged edge galls me so, my brain seems to beat against the solid metal; aye, steel skull, mine; the sort that needs no helmet in the most brain-battering fight!

Dry heat upon my brow? Oh! time was, when as the sunrise nobly spurred me, so the sunset soothed. No more. This lovely light, it lights not me; all loveliness is anguish to me, since I can ne'er enjoy. Gifted with the high perception, I lack the low, enjoying power; damned, most subtly and most malignantly! damned in the midst of Paradise! Good night—good night! (*waving his hand, he moves from the window.*)

'Twas not so hard a task. I thought to find one stubborn, at

the least; but my one cogged circle fits into all their various wheels, and they revolve. Or, if you will, like so many ant-hills of powder, they all stand before me; and I their match. Oh, hard! that to fire others, the match itself must needs be wasting! What I've dared, I've willed; and what I've willed, I'll do! They think me mad—Starbuck does; but I'm demoniac, I am madness maddened! That wild madness that's only calm to comprehend itself! The prophecy was that I should be dismembered; and—Aye! I lost this leg. I now prophesy that I will dismember my dismemberer. Now, then, be the prophet and the fulfiller one. That's more than ye, ye great gods, ever were. I laugh and hoot at ye, ye cricket-players, ye pugilists, ye deaf Burkes and blinded Bendigoes! I will not say as school-boys do to bullies,—Take some one of your own size; don't pommel *me*! No, ye've knocked me down, and I am up again; but *ye* have run and hidden. Come forth from behind your cotton bags! I have no long gun to reach ye. Come, Ahab's compliments to ye; come and see if ye can swerve me. Swerve me? ye cannot swerve me, else ye swerve yourselves! man has ye there. Swerve me? The path to my fixed purpose is laid with iron rails, whereon my soul is grooved to run. Over unsounded gorges, through the rifled hearts of mountains, under torrents' beds, unerringly I rush! Naught's an obstacle, naught's an angle to the iron way!

CHAPTER XXXVIII

DUSK

By the Mainmast; Starbuck leaning against it.

My soul is more than matched; she's overmanned; and by a madman! Insufferable sting, that sanity should ground arms on such a field! But he drilled deep down, and blasted all my reason out of me! I think I see his impious end; but feel that

I must help him to it. Will I, nill I, the ineffable thing has tied me to him; tows me with a cable I have no knife to cut. Horrible old man! Who's over him, he cries;—aye, he would be a democrat to all above; look, how he lords it over all below! Oh! I plainly see my miserable office,—to obey, rebelling; and worse yet, to hate with touch of pity! For in his eyes I read some lurid woe would shrivel me up, had I it. Yet is there hope. Time and tide flow wide. The hated whale has the round watery world to swim in, as the small gold-fish has its glassy globe. His heaven-insulting purpose, God may wedge aside. I would up heart, were it not like lead. But my whole clock's run down; my heart the all-controlling weight, I have no key to lift again.

[A burst of revelry from the forecastle.]

Oh, God! to sail with such a heathen crew that have small touch of human mothers in them! Whelped somewhere by the sharkish sea. The white whale is their demigorgon. Hark! the infernal orgies! that revelry is forward! mark the unfaltering silence aft! Methinks it pictures life. Foremost through the sparkling sea shoots on the gay, embattled, bantering bow, but only to drag dark Ahab after it, where he broods within his sternward cabin, builded over the dead water of the wake, and further on, hunted by its wolfish gurglings. The long howl thrills me through! Peace! ye revellers, and set the watch! Oh, life! 'tis in an hour like this, with soul beat down and held to knowledge,—as wild, untutored things are forced to feed—Oh, life! 'tis now that I do feel the latent horror in thee! but 'tis not me! that horror's out of me! and with the soft feeling of the human in me, yet will I try to fight ye, ye grim, phantom futures! Stand by me, hold me, bind me, O ye blessed influences!

CHAPTER XXXIX

FIRST NIGHT-WATCH

FORE-TOP

(Stubb solus, and mending a brace.)

HA! ha! ha! ha! hem! clear my throat!—I've been thinking over it ever since, and that ha, ha's the final consequence. Why so? Because a laugh's the wisest, easiest answer to all that's queer; and come what will, one comfort's always left—that unfailing comfort is, it's all predestinated. I heard not all his talk with Starbuck; but to my poor eye Starbuck then looked something as I the other evening felt. Be sure the old Mogul has fixed him, too. I twigged it, knew it; had had the gift, might readily have prophesied it—for when I clapped my eye upon his skull I saw it. Well, Stubb, *wise* Stubb—that's my title—well, Stubb, what of it, Stubb? Here's a carcase. I know not all that may be coming, but be it what it will, I'll go to it laughing. Such a waggish leering as lurks in all your horrors! I feel funny. Fa, la! lirra, skirra! What's my juicy little pear at home doing now? Crying its eyes out?—Giving a party to the last arrived harpooneers, I dare say, gay as a frigate's pennant, and so am I—fa, la! lirra, skirra! Oh—

We'll drink to-night with hearts as light,
To love, as gay and fleeting
As bubbles that swim, on the beaker's brim,
And break on the lips while meeting.

A brave stave that—who calls? Mr. Starbuck? Aye, aye, sir—*(Aside)* he's my superior, he has his too, if I'm not mistaken.—Aye, aye, sir, just through with this job—coming.

CHAPTER XL

MIDNIGHT, FORECASTLE

HARPOONEERS AND SAILORS

(Foresail rises and discovers the watch standing, lounging, leaning, and lying in various attitudes, all singing in chorus.)

Farewell and adieu to you, Spanish ladies!
Farewell and adieu to you, ladies of Spain!
Our captain's commanded.—

1ST NANTUCKET SAILOR

Oh, boys, don't be sentimental; it's bad for the digestion!
Take a tonic, follow me!

(Sings, and all follow.)

Our captain stood upon the deck,
A spy-glass in his hand,
A viewing of those gallant whales
That blew at every strand.
Oh, your tubs in your boats, my boys,
And by your braces stand,
And we'll have one of those fine whales,
Hand, boys, over hand!
So, be cheery, my lads! may your hearts never fail
While the bold harpooneer is striking the whale!

MATE'S VOICE FROM THE QUARTER-DECK

Eight bells there, forward!

2D NANTUCKET SAILOR

Avast the chorus! Eight bells there! d'ye hear, bell-boy?
Strike the bell eight, thou Pip! thou blackling! and let me call
the watch. I've the sort of mouth for that—the hogshead mouth.
So, so, *(thrusts his head down the scuttle,)* Star—bo—l-e-e-n-s,
a-h-o-y! Eight bells there below! Tumble up!

DUTCH SAILOR

Grand snoozing to-night, maty; fat night for that. I mark
this in our old Mogul's wine; it's quite as deadening to some as

filliping to others. We sing; they sleep—aye, lie down there, like ground-tier butts. At 'em again! There, take this copper-pump, and hail 'em through it. Tell 'em to avast dreaming of their lasses. Tell 'em it's the resurrection; they must kiss their last, and come to judgment. That's the way—*that's* it; thy throat ain't spoiled with eating Amsterdam butter.

FRENCH SAILOR

Hist, boys! let's have a jig or two before we ride to anchor in Blanket Bay. What say ye? There comes the other watch. Stand by all legs! Pip! little Pip! hurrah with your tambourine!

PIP

(Sulky and sleepy.)

Don't know where it is.

FRENCH SAILOR

Beat thy belly, then, and wag thy ears. Jig it, men, I say; merry's the word; hurrah! Damn me, won't you dance? Form, now, Indian-file, and gallop into the double-shuffle? Throw yourselves! Legs! legs!

ICELAND SAILOR

I don't like your floor, maty; it's too springy to my taste. I'm used to ice-floors. I'm sorry to throw cold water on the subject; but excuse me.

MALTESE SAILOR

Me too; where's your girls? Who but a fool would take his left hand by his right, and say to himself, how d'ye do? Partners! I must have partners!

SICILIAN SAILOR

Aye; girls and a green!—then I'll hop with ye; yea, turn grasshopper!

LONG-ISLAND SAILOR

Well, well, ye sulkies, there's plenty more of us. Hoe corn when you may, say I. All legs go to harvest soon. Ah! here come's the music; now for it!

AZORE SAILOR

(Ascending, and pitching the tambourine up the scuttle.)

Here you are, Pip; and there's the windlass-bitts; up you mount! Now, boys!

(The half of them dance to the tambourine; some go below; some sleep or lie among the coils of rigging. Oaths a-plenty.)

AZORE SAILOR

(Dancing.)

Go it, Pip! Bang it, bell-boy! Rig it, dig it, stig it, quig it, bell-boy; Make fire-flies; break the jinglers!

PIP

Jinglers, you say?—there goes another, dropped off; I pound it so.

CHINA SAILOR

Rattle thy teeth, then, and pound away; make a pagoda of thyself.

FRENCH SAILOR

Merry-mad! Hold up thy hoop, Pip, till I jump through it! Split jibs! tear yourselves!

TASHTEGO

(Quietly smoking.)

That's a white man; he calls that fun: humph! I save my sweat.

OLD MANX SAILOR

I wonder whether those jolly lads bethink them of what they are dancing over. I'll dance over your grave, I will—that's the bitterest threat of your night-women, that beat head-winds round corners. O Christ! to think of the green navies and the green-skulled crews! Well, well; belike the whole world's a ball, as you scholars have it; and so 'tis right to make one ball-room of it. Dance on, lads, you're young; I was once.

3D NANTUCKET SAILOR

Spell oh!—whew! this is worse than pulling after whales in a calm—give us a whiff, Tash.

(They cease dancing, and gather in clusters. Meantime the sky darkens—the wind rises.)

LASCAR SAILOR

By Brahma! boys, it'll be douse sail soon. The sky-born, high-tide Ganges turned to wind! Thou showest thy black brow, Seeval

MALTESE SAILOR

(Reclining and shaking his cap.)

It's the waves—the snow's caps turn to jig it now. They'll shake their tassels soon. Now would all the waves were women, then I'd go drown, and chassee with them evermore! There's naught so sweet on earth—heaven may not match it!—as those swift glances of warm, wild bosoms in the dance, when the over-arching arms hide such ripe, bursting grapes.

SICILIAN SAILOR

(Reclining.)

Tell me not of it! Hark ye, lad—fleet interlacings of the limbs—lithe swayings—coyings—flutterings! lip! heart! hip! all graze: unceasing touch and go! not taste, observe ye, else come satiety. Eh, Pagan? *(Nudging.)*

TAHITAN SAILOR

(Reclining on a mat.)

Hail, holy nakedness of our dancing girls!—the Heeva-Heeva! Ah! low veiled, high palmed Tahiti! I still rest me on thy mat, but the soft soil has slid! I saw thee woven in the wood, my mat! green the first day I brought ye thence; now worn and wilted quite. Ah me!—not thou nor I can bear the change! How then, if so be transplanted to yon sky? Hear I the roaring streams from Pirohitee's peak of spears, when they leap down the crags and drown the villages?—The blast! the blast! Up, spine, and meet it! *(Leaps to his feet.)*

PORTUGUESE SAILOR

How the sea rolls swashing 'gainst the side! Stand by for reefing, hearties! the winds are just crossing swords, pell-mell they'll go lunging presently.

DANISH SAILOR

Crack, crack, old ship! so long as thou crackest, thou holdest! Well done! The mate there holds ye to it stiffly. He's no more

afraid than the isle fort at Cattegat, put there to fight the Baltic with storm-lashed guns, on which the sea-salt cakes!

4TH NANTUCKET SAILOR

He has his orders, mind ye that. I heard old Ahab tell him he must always kill a squall, something as they burst a water-spout with a pistol—fire your ship right into it!

ENGLISH SAILOR

Blood! but that old man's a grand old cove! We are the lads ✓
to hunt him up his whale!

ALL

Aye! aye!

OLD MANX SAILOR

How the three pines shake! Pines are the hardest sort of tree to live when shifted to any other soil, and here there's none but the crew's cursed clay. Steady, helmsman! steady. This is the sort of weather when brave hearts snap ashore, and keeled hulls split at sea. Our captain has his birth-mark; look yonder, boys, there's another in the sky—lurid-like, ye see, all else pitch black.

DAGGOO

What of that? Who's afraid of black's afraid of me! I'm quarried out of it!

SPANISH SAILOR

(*Aside.*) He wants to bully, ah!—the old grudge makes me touchy. (*Advancing.*) Aye, harpooneer, thy race is the undeniable dark side of mankind—devilish dark at that. No offence.

DAGGOO (*grimly*)

None.

ST. JAGO'S SAILOR

That Spaniard's mad or drunk. But that can't be, or else in his one case our old Mogul's fire-waters are somewhat long in working.

5TH NANTUCKET SAILOR

What's that I saw—lightning? Yes.

SPANISH SAILOR

No; Daggoo showing his teeth.

DAGGOO (*springing*)

Swallow thine, mannikin! White skin, white liver!

SPANISH SAILOR (*meeting him*)

Knife thee heartily! big frame, small spirit!

ALL

A row! a row! a row!

TASHTEGO (*with a whiff*)

A row a'low, and a row aloft—Gods and men—both brawlers!
Humph!

BELFAST SAILOR

A row! arrah a row! The Virgin be blessed, a row! Plunge
in with yel

ENGLISH SAILOR

Fair play! Snatch the Spaniard's knife! A ring, a ring!

OLD MANX SAILOR

Ready formed. Therel the ringed horizon. In that ring Cain
struck Abel. Sweet work, right work! No? Why then, God,
mad'st thou the ring?

MATE'S VOICE FROM THE QUARTER DECK

Hands by the halyards! in top-gallant sails! Stand by to reef
topsails!

ALL

The squall! the squall! jump, my jollies! (*They scatter.*)

PIP (*shrinking under the windlass*)

Jollies? Lord help such jollies! Crish, crash! there goes the
jib-stay! Blang-whang! God! Duck lower, Pip, here comes the
royal yard! It's worse than being in the whirled woods, the last
day of the year; Who'd go climbing after chestnuts now? But
there they go, all cursing, and here I don't. Fine prospects to
'em; they're on the road to heaven. Hold on hard! Jimmini,
what a squall! But those chaps there are worse yet—they are
your white squalls, they. White squalls? white whale, shirr!

shirr! Here have I heard all their chat just now, and the white whale—shirr! shirr!—but spoken of oncel and only this evening—it makes me jingle all over like my tambourine—that anaconda of an old man swore 'em in to hunt him! Oh, thou big white God aloft there somewhere in yon darkness, have mercy on this small black boy down here; preserve him from all men that have no bowels to feel fear!

* * * * *

CHAPTER XLI

MOBY DICK

I, ISHMAEL, was one of that crew; my shouts had gone up with the rest; my oath had been welded with theirs; and stronger I shouted, and more did I hammer and clinch my oath, because of the dread in my soul. A wild, mystical, sympathetical feeling was in me; Ahab's quenchless feud seemed mine. With greedy ears I learned the history of that murderous monster against whom I and all the others had taken our oaths of violence and revenge.

For some time past, though at intervals only, the unaccompanied, secluded White Whale had haunted those uncivilized seas mostly frequented by the Sperm Whale fishermen. But not all of them knew of his existence; only a few of them, comparatively, had knowingly seen him; while the number who as yet had actually and knowingly given battle to him, was small indeed. For, owing to the large number of whale-cruisers; the disorderly way they were sprinkled over the entire watery circumference, many of them adventurously pushing their quest along solitary latitudes, so as seldom or never for a whole twelvemonth or more on a stretch, to encounter a single news-telling sail of any sort; the inordinate length of each separate voyage; the irregularity of the times of sailing from home; all these, with other circumstances, direct and indirect, long ob-

structed the spread through the whole world-wide whaling-fleet of the special individualizing tidings concerning Moby-Dick. It was hardly to be doubted, that several vessels reported to have encountered, at such or such a time, or on such or such a meridian, a Sperm Whale of uncommon magnitude and malignity, which whale, after doing great mischief to his assailants, had completely escaped them; to some minds it was not an unfair presumption, I say, that the whale in question must have been no other than Moby Dick. Yet as of late the Sperm Whale fishery had been marked by various and not unfrequent instances of great ferocity, cunning, and malice in the monster attacked; therefore it was, that those who by accident ignorantly gave battle to Moby Dick; such hunters, perhaps, for the most part, were content to ascribe the peculiar terror he bred, more, as it were, to the perils of the Sperm Whale fishery at large, than to the individual cause. In that way, mostly, the disastrous encounter between Ahab and the whale had hitherto been popularly regarded.

And as for those who, previously hearing of the White Whale, by chance caught sight of him; in the beginning of the thing they had every one of them, almost, as boldly and fearlessly lowered for him, as for any other whale of that species. But at length, such calamities did ensue in these assaults—not restricted to sprained wrists and ancles, broken limbs, or devouring amputations—but fatal to the last degree of fatality; those repeated disastrous repulses, all accumulating and piling their terrors upon Moby Dick; those things had gone far to shake the fortitude of many brave hunters, to whom the story of the White Whale had eventually come.

Nor did wild rumors of all sorts fail to exaggerate, and still the more horrify the true histories of these deadly encounters. For not only do fabulous rumors naturally grow out of the very body of all surprising terrible events,—as the smitten tree gives birth to its fungi; but, in maritime life, far more than in that of terra firma, wild rumors abound, wherever there is any adequate reality for them to cling to. And as the sea surpasses the land in this matter, so the whale fishery surpasses every other sort of maritime life, in the wonderfulness and fearfulness of the

rumors which sometimes circulate there. For not only are whalemens as a body unexempt from that ignorance and superstitiousness hereditary to all sailors; but of all sailors, they are by all odds the most directly brought into contact with whatever is appallingly astonishing in the sea; face to face they not only eye its greatest marvels, but, hand to jaw, give battle to them. Alone, in such remotest waters, that though you sailed a thousand miles, and passed a thousand shores, you would not come to any chiselled hearthstone, or aught hospitable beneath that part of the sun; in such latitudes and longitudes, pursuing too such a calling as he does, the whaleman is wrapped by influences all tending to make his fancy pregnant with many a mighty birth.

No wonder, then, that ever gathering volume from the mere transit over the widest watery spaces, the outblown rumors of the White Whale did in the end incorporate with themselves all manner of morbid hints, and half-formed foetal suggestions of supernatural agencies, which eventually invested Moby Dick with new terrors unborrowed from anything that visibly appears. So that in many cases such a panic did he finally strike, that few who by those rumors, at least, had heard of the White Whale, few of those hunters were willing to encounter the perils of his jaw.

But there were still other and more vital practical influences at work. Not even at the present day has the original prestige of the Sperm Whale, as fearfully distinguished from all other species of the leviathan, died out of the minds of the whalemens as a body. There are those this day among them, who, though intelligent and courageous enough in offering battle to the Greenland or Right whale, would perhaps—either from professional inexperience, or incompetency, or timidity, decline a contest with the Sperm Whale; at any rate, there are plenty of whalemens, especially among those whaling nations not sailing under the American flag, who have never hostilely encountered the Sperm Whale, but whose sole knowledge of the leviathan is restricted to the ignoble monster primitively pursued in the North; seated on their hatches, these men will hearken with a childish fire-side interest and awe, to the wild, strange tales of

Southern whaling. Nor is the pre-eminent tremendousness of the great Sperm Whale anywhere more feelingly comprehended, than on board of those prows which stem him.

And as if the now tested reality of his might had in former legendary times thrown its shadow before it; we find some book naturalists—Olassen and Povelson—declaring the Sperm Whale not only to be a consternation to every other creature in the sea, but also to be so incredibly ferocious as continually to be athirst for human blood. Nor even down to so late a time as Cuvier's, were these or almost similar impressions effaced. For in his Natural History, the Baron himself affirms that at sight of the Sperm Whale, all fish (sharks included) are "struck with the most lively terrors," and "often in the precipitancy of their flight dash themselves against the rocks with such violence as to cause instantaneous death." And however the general experiences in the fishery may amend such reports as these; yet in their full terribleness, even to the bloodthirsty item of Povelson, the superstitious belief in them is, in some vicissitudes of their vocation, revived in the minds of the hunters.

So that overawed by the rumors and portents concerning him, not a few of the fishermen recalled, in reference to Moby Dick, the earlier days of the Sperm Whale fishery, when it was oftentimes hard to induce long practised Right whalers to embark in the perils of this new and daring warfare; such men protesting that although other leviathans might be hopefully pursued, yet to chase and point lance at such an apparition as the Sperm Whale was not for mortal man. That to attempt it, would be inevitably to be torn into a quick eternity. On this head, there are some remarkable documents that may be consulted.

Nevertheless, some there were, who even in the face of these things were ready to give chase to Moby Dick; and a still greater number who, chancing only to hear of him distantly and vaguely, without the specific details of any certain calamity, and without superstitious accompaniments, were sufficiently hardy not to flee from the battle if offered.

One of the wild suggestings referred to, as at last coming to be linked with the White Whale in the minds of the superstitiously inclined, was the unearthly conceit that Moby Dick was

ubiquitous; that he had actually been encountered in opposite latitudes at one and the same instant of time. ✓

Nor, credulous as such minds must have been, was this conceit altogether without some faint show of superstitious probability. For as the secrets of the currents in the seas have never yet been divulged, even to the most erudite research; so the hidden ways of the Sperm Whale when beneath the surface remain, in great part, unaccountable to his pursuers; and from time to time have originated the most curious and contradictory speculations regarding them, especially concerning the mystic modes whereby, after sounding to a great depth, he transports himself with such vast swiftness to the most widely distant points. ✓

It is a thing well known to both American and English whalers, and as well a thing placed upon authoritative record years ago by Scoresby, that some whales have been captured far north in the Pacific, in whose bodies have been found the barbs of harpoons darted in the Greenland seas. Nor is it to be gainsaid, that in some of these instances it has been declared that the interval of time between the two assaults could not have exceeded very many days. Hence, by inference, it has been believed by some whalers, that the Nor' West Passage, so long a problem to man, was never a problem to the whale. So that here, in the real living experience of living men, the prodigies related in old times of the inland Strello mountain in Portugal (near whose top there was said to be a lake in which the wrecks of ships floated up to the surface); and that still more wonderful story of the Arethusa fountain near Syracuse (whose waters were believed to have come from the Holy Land by an underground passage); these fabulous narrations are almost fully equalled by the realities of the whaleman.

Forced into familiarity, then, with such prodigies as these; and knowing that after repeated, intrepid assaults, the White Whale had escaped alive; it cannot be much matter of surprise that some whalers should go still further in their superstitions; declaring Moby Dick not only ubiquitous, but immortal (for immortality is but ubiquity in time); that though groves of spears should be planted in his flanks, he would still swim away unharmed; or if indeed he should ever be made to spout thick ✓

blood, such a sight would be but a ghastly deception; for again in unensanguined billows hundreds of leagues way, his unsullied jet would once more be seen.)

But even stripped of these supernatural surmisings, there was enough in the earthly make and incontestable character of the monster to strike the imagination with unwonted power. For, it was not so much his uncommon bulk that so much distinguished him from other sperm whales, but, as was elsewhere thrown out—a peculiar snow-white wrinkled forehead, and a high, pyramidical white hump. These were his prominent features; the tokens whereby, even in the limitless, uncharted seas, he revealed his identity, at a long distance, to those who knew him.

The rest of his body was so streaked, and spotted, and marbled with the same shrouded hue, that, in the end, he had gained his distinctive appellation of the White Whale; a name, indeed, literally justified by his vivid aspect, when seen gliding at high noon through a dark blue sea, leaving a milky-way wake of creamy foam, all spangled with golden gleamings.

Nor was it ~~his~~ his unwonted magnitude, nor his remarkable hue, nor yet his deformed lower jaw, that so much invested the whale with natural terror, as that unexampled, intelligent malignity which, according to specific accounts, he had over and over again evinced in his assaults. More than all, his treacherous retreats struck more of dismay than perhaps aught else. For, when swimming before his exulting pursuers, with every apparent symptom of alarm, he had several times been known to turn around suddenly, and, bearing down upon them, either stave their boats to splinters, or drive them back in consternation to their ship.

Already several fatalities had attended his chase. But though similar disasters, however little bruited ashore, were by no means unusual in the fishery; yet, in most instances, such seemed the White Whale's infernal aforethought of ferocity, that every dismembering or death that he caused, was not wholly regarded as having been inflicted by an unintelligent agent.

Judge, then, to what pitches of inflamed, distracted fury the

minds of his more desperate hunters were impelled, when amid the chips of chewed boats, and the sinking limbs of torn comrades, they swam out of the white curds of the whale's direful wrath into the serene, exasperating sunlight, that smiled on, as if at a birth or a bridal.

burst of what

His three boats stove around him, and oars and men both whirling in the eddies; one captain, seizing the line-knife from his broken prow, had dashed at the whale, as an Arkansas duellist at his foe, blindly seeking with a six inch blade to reach the fathom-deep life of the whale. That captain was Ahab. And then it was, that suddenly sweeping his sickle-shaped lower jaw beneath him, Moby Dick had reaped away Ahab's leg, as a mower a blade of grass in the field. No turbaned Turk, no hired Venetian or Malay, could have smote him with more seeming malice. Small reason was there to doubt, then, that ever since that almost fatal encounter, Ahab had cherished a wild vindictiveness against the whale, all the more fell for that in his frantic morbidness he at last came to identify with him, not only all his bodily woes, but all his intellectual and spiritual exasperations. The White Whale swam before him as the monomaniac incarnation of all those malicious agencies which some deep men feel eating in them, till they are left living on with half a heart and half a lung. That intangible malignity which has been from the beginning; to whose dominion even the modern Christians ascribe one-half of the worlds; which the ancient Ophites of the east revered in their statue devil;—Ahab did not fall down and worship it like them; but deliriously transferring its idea to the abhorred white whale, he pitted himself, all mutilated, against it. All that most maddens and torments; all that stirs up the lees of things; all truth with malice in it; all that cracks the sinews and cakes the brain; all the subtle demonisms of life and thought; all evil, to crazy Ahab, were visibly personified, and made practically assailable in Moby Dick. He piled upon the whale's white hump the sum of all the general rage and hate felt by his whole race from Adam down; and then, as if his chest had been a mortar, he burst his hot heart's shell upon it.

It is not probable that this monomania in him took its instant rise at the precise time of his bodily dismemberment. Then, in darting at the monster, knife in hand, he had but given loose to a sudden, passionate, corporal animosity; and when he received the stroke that tore him, he probably but felt the agonizing bodily laceration, but nothing more. Yet, when by this collision forced to turn towards home, and for long months of days and weeks, Ahab and anguish lay stretched together in one hammock, rounding in mid winter that dreary, howling Patagonian Cape; then it was, that his torn body and gashed soul bled into one another; and so interfusing, made him mad. That it was only then, on the homeward voyage, after the encounter, that the final monomania seized him, seems all but certain from the fact that, at intervals during the passage, he was a raving lunatic; and, though unlimbed of a leg, yet such vital strength yet lurked in his Egyptian chest, and was moreover intensified by his delirium, that his mates were forced to lace him fast, even there, as he sailed, raving in his hammock. In a strait-jacket, he swung to the mad rockings of the gales. And, when running into more sufferable latitudes, the ship, with mild stunsails spread, floated across the tranquil tropics, and, to all appearances, the old man's delirium seemed left behind him with the Cape Horn swells, and he came forth from his dark den into the blessed light and air; even then, when he bore that firm, collected front, however pale, and issued his calm orders once again; and his mates thanked God the direful madness ~~was~~ now gone; even then, Ahab, in his hidden self, raved on. Human madness is oftentimes a cunning and most feline thing. When you think it fled, it may have but become transfigured into some still subtler form. Ahab's full lunacy subsided not, but deepeningly contracted; like the unabated Hudson, when that noble Northman flows narrowly, but unfathomably through the Highland gorge. But, as in his narrow-flowing monomania, not one jot of Ahab's broad madness had been left behind; so in that broad madness, not one jot of his great natural intellect had perished. That before living agent, now became the living instrument. If such a furious trope may stand, his special lunacy

stormed his general sanity, and carried it, and turned all its concentrated cannon upon its own mad mark; so that far from having lost his strength, Ahab, to that one end, did now possess a thousand fold more potency than ever he had sanely brought to bear upon any one reasonable object.

This is much; yet Ahab's larger, darker, deeper part remains unhinted. But vain to popularize profundities, and all truth is profound. Winding far down from within the very heart of this spiked Hotel de Cluny where we here stand—however grand and wonderful, now quit it;—and take your way, ye nobler, sadder souls, to those vast Roman halls of Thermes; where far beneath the fantastic towers of man's upper earth, his root of grandeur, his whole awful essence sits in bearded state; an antique buried beneath antiquities, and throned on torsoes! So with a broken throne, the great gods mock that captive king; so like a Caryatid, he patient sits, upholding on his frozen brow the piled entablatures of ages. Wind ye down there, ye prouder, sadder souls! question that proud, sad king! A family likeness! aye, he did beget ye, ye young exiled royalties; and from your grim sire only will the old State-secret come.

what is this?

Now, in his heart, Ahab had some glimpse of this, namely: all my means are sane, my motive and my object mad. Yet without power to kill, or change, or shun the fact; he likewise knew that to mankind he did long dissemble; in some sort, did still. But that thing of his dissembling was only subject to his perceptibility, not to his will determinate. Nevertheless, so well did he succeed in that dissembling, that when with ivory leg he stepped ashore at last, no Nantucketer thought him otherwise than but naturally grieved, and that to the quick, with the terrible casualty which had overtaken him.

The report of his undeniable delirium at sea was likewise popularly ascribed to a kindred cause. And so too, all the added moodiness which always afterwards, to the very day of sailing in the Pequod on the present voyage, sat brooding on his brow. Nor is it so very unlikely, that far from distrusting his fitness for another whaling voyage, on account of such dark symptoms, the calculating people of that prudent isle were inclined to

harbor the conceit, that for those very reasons he was all the better qualified and set on edge, for a pursuit so full of rage and wildness as the bloody hunt of whales. Gnawed within and scorched without, with the infixed, unrelenting fangs of some incurable idea; such an one, could he be found, would seem the very man to dart his iron and lift his lance against the most appalling of all brutes. Or, if for any reason thought to be corporeally incapacitated for that, yet such an one would seem superlatively competent to cheer and howl on his underlings to the attack. But be all this as it may, certain it is, that with the mad secret of his unabated rage bolted up and keyed in him, Ahab had purposely sailed upon the present voyage with the one only and all-engrossing object of hunting the White Whale. Had any one of his old acquaintances on shore but half dreamed of what was lurking in him then, how soon would their aghast and righteous souls have wrenched the ship from such a fiendish man! They were bent on profitable cruises, the profit to be counted down in dollars from the mint. He was intent on an audacious, immitigable, and supernatural revenge.

Here, then, was this grey-headed, ungodly old man, chasing with curses a Job's whale round the world, at the head of a crew, too, chiefly made up of mongrel renegades, and castaways, and cannibals—morally enfeebled also, by the incompetence of mere unaided virtue or right-mindedness in Starbuck, the invulnerable jollity of indifference and recklessness in Stubb, and the pervading mediocrity in Flask. Such a crew, so officered, seemed specially picked and packed by some infernal fatality to help him to his monomaniac revenge. How it was that they so aboundingly responded to the old man's ire—by what evil magic their souls were possessed, that at times his hate seemed almost theirs; the White Whale as much their insufferable foe as his; how all this came to be—what the White Whale was to them, or how to their unconscious understandings, also, in some dim, unsuspected way, he might have seemed the gliding great demon of the seas of life,—all this to explain, would be to dive deeper than Ishmael can go. The subterranean miner that works in us all, how can one tell whither leads his shaft by the ever shifting, muffled sound of his pick? Who does not feel the

irresistible arm drag? What skiff in tow of a seventy-four can stand still? For one, I gave myself up to the abandonment of the time and the place; but while yet all a-rush to encounter the whale, could see naught in that brute but the deadliest ill.

CHAPTER XLII

THE WHITENESS OF THE WHALE

WHAT the white whale was to Ahab, has been hinted; what, at times, he was to me, as yet remains unsaid.

Aside from those more obvious considerations touching Moby Dick, which could not but occasionally awaken in any man's soul some alarm, there was another thought, or rather vague, nameless horror concerning him, which at times by its intensity completely overpowered all the rest; and yet so mystical and well nigh ineffable was it, that I almost despair of putting it in a comprehensible form. It was the whiteness of the whale that above all things appalled me. But how can I hope to explain myself here; and yet, in some dim, random way, explain myself I must, else all these chapters might be naught.

Though in many natural objects, whiteness refiningly enhances beauty, as if imparting some special virtue of its own, as in marbles, japonicas, and pearls; and though various nations have in some way recognised a certain royal pre-eminence in this hue; even the barbaric, grand old kings of Pegu placing the title "Lord of the White Elephants" above all their other magniloquent ascriptions of dominion; and the modern kings of Siam unfurling the same snow-white quadruped in the royal standard; and the Hanoverian flag bearing the one figure of a snow-white charger; and the great Austrian Empire, Cæsarian, heir to overlording Rome, having for the imperial color the same imperial hue; and though this pre-eminence in it applies to the human race itself, giving the white man ideal mastership over every dusky tribe; and though, besides all this, whiteness has been

even made significant of gladness, for among the Romans a white stone marked a joyful day; and though in other mortal sympathies and symbolizings, this same hue is made the emblem of many touching, noble things—the innocence of brides, the benignity of age; though among the Red Men of America the giving of the white belt of wampum was the deepest pledge of honor; though in many climes, whiteness typifies the majesty of Justice in the ermine of the Judge, and contributes to the daily state of kings and queens drawn by milk-white steeds; though even in the higher mysteries of the most august religions it has been made the symbol of the divine spotlessness and power; by the Persian fire worshippers, the white forked flame being held the holiest on the altar; and in the Greek mythologies, Great Jove himself made incarnate in a snow-white bull; and though to the noble Iroquois, the midwinter sacrifice of the sacred White Dog was by far the holiest festival of their theology, that spotless, faithful creature being held the purest envoy they could send to the Great Spirit with the annual tidings of their own fidelity; and though directly from the Latin word for white, all Christian priests derive the name of one part of their sacred vesture, the alb or tunic, worn beneath the cassock; and though among the holy pomps of the Romish faith, white is specially employed in the celebration of the Passion of our Lord; though in the Vision of St. John, white robes are given to the redeemed, and the four-and-twenty elders stand clothed in white before the great white throne, and the Holy One that sitteth there white like wool; yet for all these accumulated associations, with whatever is sweet, and honorable, and sublime, there yet lurks an elusive something in the innermost idea of this hue, which strikes more of panic to the soul than that redness which affrights in blood.

This elusive quality it is, which causes the thought of whiteness, when divorced from more kindly associations, and coupled with any object terrible in itself, to heighten that terror to the furthest bounds. Witness the white bear of the poles, and the white shark of the tropics; what but their smooth, flaky whiteness makes them the transcendent horrors they are? That ghastly whiteness it is which imparts such an abhorrent mildness, even

more loathsome than terrific, to the dumb gloating of their aspect. So that not the fierce-fanged tiger in his heraldic coat can so stagger courage as the white-shrouded bear or shark.*

Bethink thee of the albatross, whence come those clouds of spiritual wonderment and pale dread, in which that white phantom sails in all imaginations? Not Coleridge first threw that spell; but God's great, unflattering laureate, Nature.*

* With reference to the Polar bear, it may possibly be urged by him who would fain go still deeper into this matter, that it is not the whiteness, separately regarded, which heightens the intolerable hideousness of that brute; for, analysed, that heightened hideousness, it might be said, only arises from the circumstance, that the irresponsible ferociousness of the creature stands invested in the fleece of celestial innocence and love; and hence, by bringing together two such opposite emotions in our minds, the Polar bear frightens us with so unnatural a contrast. But even assuming all this to be true; yet, were it not for the whiteness, you would not have that intensified terror.

*double
world*

As for the white shark, the white gliding ghostliness of repose in that creature, when beheld in his ordinary moods, strangely tallies with the same quality in the Polar quadruped. This peculiarity is most vividly hit by the French in the name they bestow upon that fish. The Romish mass for the dead begins with "*Requiem eternam*" (eternal rest), whence *Requiem* denominating the mass itself, and any other funereal music. Now, in allusion to the white, silent stillness of death in this shark, and the mild deadliness of his habits, the French call him *Requin*.

* I remember the first albatross I ever saw. It was during a prolonged gale, in waters hard upon the Antarctic seas. From my forenoon watch below, I ascended to the overclouded deck; and there, dashed upon the main hatches, I saw a regal, feathery thing of unspotted whiteness, and with a hooked, Roman bill sublime. At intervals, it arched forth its vast archangel wings, as if to embrace some holy ark. Wondrous flutterings and throbblings shook it. Though bodily unharmed, it uttered cries, as some king's ghost in supernatural distress. Through its inexpressible, strange eyes, methought I peeped to secrets which took hold of God. As Abraham before the angels, I bowed myself; the white thing was so white, its wings so wide, and in those for ever exiled waters, I had lost the miserable warping memories of traditions and of towns. Long I gazed at that prodigy of plumage. I cannot tell, can only hint, the things that darted through me then. But at last I awoke; and turning, asked a sailor what bird was this. A goney, he replied. Goney! I never had heard that name before; is it conceivable that this glorious thing is utterly unknown to men ashore! never! But some time after, I learned that goney was some seaman's name for albatross. So that by no possibility could Coleridge's wild Rhyme have had

Most famous in our Western annals and Indian traditions is that of the White Steed of the Praries; a magnificent milk-white charger, large-eyed, small-headed, bluff-chested, and with the dignity of a thousand monarchs in his lofty, overscoring carriage. He was the elected Xerxes of vast herds of wild horses, whose pastures in those days were only fenced by the Rocky Mountains and the Alleghanies. At their flaming head he westward trooped it like that chosen star which every evening leads on the hosts of light. The flashing cascade of his mane, the curving comet of his tail, invested him with housings more resplendent than gold and silver-beaters could have furnished him. A most imperial and archangelical apparition of that unfallen, western world, which to the eyes of the old trappers and hunters revived the glories of those primeval times when Adam walked majestic as a god, bluff-bowed and fearless as this mighty steed. Whether marching amid his aides and marshals in the van of countless cohorts that endlessly streamed it over the plains, like an Ohio; or whether with his circumambient subjects browsing all around at the horizon, the White Steed gallopingly reviewed them with warm nostrils reddening through his cool milkiness; in whatever aspect he presented himself, always to the bravest Indians he was the object of trembling reverence and awe. Nor can it be questioned from what stands on legendary record of

aught to do with those mystical impressions which were mine, when I saw that bird upon our deck. For neither had I then read the Rhyme, nor knew the bird to be an albatross. Yet, in saying this, I do but indirectly burnish a little brighter the noble merit of the poem and the poet.

I assert, then, that in the wondrous bodily whiteness of the bird chiefly lurks the secret of the spell; a truth the more evinced in this, that by a solecism of terms there are birds called grey albatrosses; and these I have frequently seen, but never with such emotions as when I beheld the Antarctic fowl.

But how had the mystic thing been caught? Whisper it not, and I will tell; with a treacherous hook and line, as the fowl floated on the sea. At last the Captain made a postman of it; tying a lettered, leathern tally round its neck, with the ship's time and place; and then letting it escape. But I doubt not, that leathern tally, meant for man, was taken off in Heaven, when the white fowl flew to join the wing-folding, the invoking, and adoring cherubim!

this noble horse, that it was his spiritual whiteness chiefly, which so clothed him with divineness; and that this divineness had that in it which, though commanding worship, at the same time enforced a certain nameless terror.

But there are other instances where this whiteness loses all that accessory and strange glory which invests it in the White Steed and Albatross.

What is it that in the Albino man so peculiarly repels and often shocks the eye, as that sometimes he is loathed by his own kith and kin! It is that whiteness which invests him, a thing expressed by the name he bears. The Albino is as well made as other men—has no substantive deformity—and yet this mere aspect of all-pervading whiteness makes him more strangely hideous than the ugliest abortion. Why should this be so?

[Nor, in quite other aspects, does Nature in her least palpable but not the less malicious agencies, fail to enlist among her forces this crowning attribute of the terrible.] From its snowy aspect, the gauntleted ghost of the Southern Seas has been denominated the White Squall. Nor, in some historic instances, has the art of human malice omitted so potent an auxiliary. How wildly it heightens the effect of that passage in Froissart, when, masked in the snowy symbol of their faction, the desperate White Hoods of Ghent murder their bailiff in the market-place!

Nor, in some things, does the common, hereditary experience of all mankind fail to bear witness [to the supernaturalism of this hue.] It cannot well be doubted, that the one visible quality in the aspect of the dead which most appals the gazer, is the marble pallor lingering there; as if indeed that pallor were as much like the badge of consternation in the other world, as of mortal trepidation here. And from that pallor of the dead, we borrow the expressive hue of the shroud in which we wrap them. Nor even in our superstitions do we fail to throw the same snowy mantle round our phantoms; all ghosts rising in a milk-white fog—Yea, while these terrors seize us, let us add, that even the kings of terrors, when personified by the evangelist, rides on his pallid horse.

Therefore, in his other moods, symbolize whatever grand or

gracious thing he will by whiteness, no man can deny that in its profoundest idealized significance it calls up a peculiar apparition to the soul.

But though without dissent this point be fixed, how is mortal man to account for it? To analyse it, would seem impossible. Can we, then, by the citation of some of those instances wherein this thing of whiteness—though for the time either wholly or in great part stripped of all direct associations calculated to impart to it aught fearful, but, nevertheless, is found to exert over us the same sorcery, however modified;—can we thus hope to light upon some chance clue to conduct us to the hidden cause we seek?

Let us try. But in a matter like this, subtlety appeals to subtlety, and without imagination no man can follow another into these halls. And though, doubtless, some at least of the imaginative impressions about to be presented may have been shared by most men, yet few perhaps were entirely conscious of them at the time, and therefore may not be able to recall them now.

Why to the man of untutored ideality, who happens to be but loosely acquainted with the peculiar character of the day, does the bare mention of Whitsuntide marshal in the fancy such long, dreary, speechless processions of slow-pacing pilgrims, down-cast and hooded with new-fallen snow? Or, to the unread, unsophisticated Protestant of the Middle American States, why does the passing mention of a White Friar or a White Nun, evoke such an eyeless statue in the soul?

Or what is there apart from the traditions of dungeoned warriors and kings (which will not wholly account for it) that makes the White Tower of London tell so much more strongly on the imagination of an untravelled American, than those other storied structures, its neighbors—the Byward Tower, or even the Bloody? And those sublimer towers, the White Mountains of New Hampshire, whence, in peculiar moods, comes that gigantic ghostliness over the soul at the bare mention of that name, while the thought of Virginia's Blue Ridge is full of a soft, dewy, distant dreaminess? Or why, irrespective of all latitudes and longitudes, does the name of the White Sea exert such a spec-

tralness over the fancy, while that of the Yellow Sea lulls us with mortal thoughts of long lacquered mild afternoons on the waves, followed by the gaudiest and yet sleepest of sunsets? Or, to choose a wholly unsubstantial instance, purely addressed to the fancy, why, in reading the old fairy tales of Central Europe, does "the tall pale man" of the Hartz forests, whose changeless pallor unrustingly glides through the green of the groves—why is this phantom more terrible than all the whooping imps of the Blocksburg?

Nor is it, altogether, the remembrance of her cathedral-topping earthquakes; nor the stampedes of her frantic seas: nor the tearlessness of arid skies that never rain; nor the sight of her wide field of leaning spires, wrenched cope-stones, and crosses all adroop (like canted yards of anchored fleets); and her suburban avenues of house-walls lying over upon each other, as a tossed pack of cards;—it is not these things alone which make tearless Lima, the strangest, saddest city thou can'st see. For Lima has taken the white veil; and there is a higher horror in this whiteness of her woe. Old as Pizarro, this whiteness keeps her ruins for ever new; admits not the cheerful greenness of complete decay; spreads over her broken ramparts the rigid pallor of an apoplexy that fixes its own distortions.

I know that, to the common apprehension, this phenomenon of whiteness is not confessed to be the prime agent in exaggerating the terror of objects otherwise terrible; nor to the unimaginative mind is there aught of terror in those appearances whose awfulness to another mind almost solely consists in this one phenomenon, especially when exhibited under any form at all approaching to muteness or universality. What I mean by these two statements may perhaps be respectively elucidated by the following examples.

First: The mariner, when drawing nigh the coasts of foreign lands, if by night he hear the roar of breakers, starts to vigilance, and feels just enough of trepidation to sharpen all his faculties; but under precisely similar circumstances, let him be called from his hammock to view his ship sailing through a midnight sea of milky whiteness—as if from encircling headlands shoals of combed white bears were swimming round him, then he feels

— a silent, superstitious dread; the shrouded phantom of the whitened waters is horrible to him as a real ghost; in vain the lead assures him he is still off soundings; heart and helm they both go down; he never rests till blue water is under him again. Yet where is the mariner who will tell thee, "Sir, it was not so much the fear of striking hidden rocks, as the fear of that hideous whiteness that so stirred me?"

Second: To the native Indian of Peru, the continual sight of the snow-howdahed Andes conveys naught of dread, except, perhaps, in the mere fancying of the eternal frosted desolateness reigning at such vast altitudes, and the natural conceit of what a fearfulness it would be to lose oneself in such inhuman solitudes. Much the same is it with the backwoodsman of the West, who with comparative indifference views an unbounded prairie sheeted with driven snow, no shadow of tree or twig to break the fixed trance of whiteness. Not so the sailor, beholding the scenery of the Antarctic seas; where at times, by some infernal trick of legerdemain in the powers of frost and air, he, shivering and half shipwrecked, instead of rainbows speaking hope and solace to his misery, views what seems a boundless church-yard grinning upon him with its lean ice monuments and splintered crosses.

But thou sayest, methinks this white-lead chapter about whiteness is but a white flag hung out from a craven soul; thou surrenderest to a hypo, Ishmael.

Tell me, why this strong young colt, foaled in some peaceful valley of Vermont, far removed from all beasts of prey—why is it that upon the sunniest day, if you but shake a fresh buffalo robe behind him, so that he cannot even see it, but only smells its wild animal muskiness—why will he start, snort, and with bursting eyes paw the ground in phrensies of affright? There is no remembrance in him of any gorings of wild creatures in his green northern home, so that the strange muskiness he smells cannot recall to him anything associated with the experience of former perils; for what knows he, this New England colt, of the black bisons of distant Oregon?

✓ No: but here thou beholdest even in a dumb brute, the instinct of the knowledge of the demonism in the world. Though

thousands of miles from Oregon, still when he smells that savage musk, the rending, goring bison herds are as present as to the deserted wild foal of the prairies, which this instant they may be trampling into dust.

Thus, then, the muffled rollings of a milky sea; the bleak rustlings of the festooned frosts of mountains; the desolate shiftings of the windrowed snows of prairies; all these, to Ishmael, are as the shaking of that buffalo robe to the frightened colt!

Though neither knows where lie the nameless things of which the mystic sign gives forth such hints; yet with me, as with the colt, somewhere those things must exist. Though in many of its aspects this visible world seems formed in love, the invisible spheres were formed in fright.

But not yet have we solved the incantation of this whiteness, and learned why it appeals with such power to the soul; and more strange and far more portentous—why, as we have seen, it is at once the most meaning symbol of spiritual things, nay, the very veil of the Christian's Deity; and yet should be as it is, the intensifying agent in things the most appalling to mankind.

Is it that by its indefiniteness it shadows forth the heartless voids and immensities of the universe, and thus stabs us from behind with the thought of annihilation, when beholding the white depths of the milky way? Or is it, that as in essence whiteness is not so much a color as the visible absence of color, and at the same time the concrete of all colors; is it for these reasons that there is such a dumb blankness, full of meaning, in a wide landscape of snows—a colorless, all-color of atheism from which we shrink? And when we consider that other theory of the natural philosophers, that all other earthly hues—every stately or lovely emblazoning—the sweet tinges of sunset skies and woods; yea, and the gilded velvets of butterflies, and the butterfly cheeks of young girls; all these are but subtile deceits, not actually inherent in substances, but only laid on from without; so that all deified Nature absolutely paints like the harlot, whose allurements cover nothing but the charnel-house within; and when we proceed further, and consider that the mystical cosmetic which produces every one of her hues, the great principle of light, for ever remains white or colorless in itself, and if

operating without medium upon matter, would touch all objects, even tulips and roses, with its own blank tinge—pondering all this, the palsied universe lies before us a leper; and like wilful travellers in Lapland, who refuse to wear colored and coloring glasses upon their eyes, so the wretched infidel gazes himself blind at the monumental white shroud that wraps all the prospect around him. And of all these things the Albino whale was the symbol. Wonder ye then at the fiery hunt?

CHAPTER XLIII

HARK!

“Hist! Did you hear that noise, Cabaco?”

It was the middle-watch: a fair moonlight; the seamen were standing in a cordon, extending from one of the fresh-water butts in the waist, to the scuttle-butt near the taffrail. In this manner, they passed the buckets to fill the scuttle-butt. Standing, for the most part, on the hallowed precincts of the quarter-deck, they were careful not to speak or rustle their feet. From hand to hand, the buckets went in the deepest silence, only broken by the occasional flap of a sail, and the steady hum of the unceasingly advancing keel.

It was in the midst of this repose, that Archy, one of the cordon, whose post was near the after-hatches, whispered to his neighbor, a Cholo, the words above.

“Hist! did you hear that noise, Cabaco?”

“Take the bucket, will ye, Archy? what noise d’ye mean?”

“There it is again—under the hatches—don’t you hear it—a cough—it sounded like a cough.”

“Cough be damned! Pass along that return bucket.”

“There again—there it is!—it sounds like two or three sleepers turning over, now!”

“Caramba! have done, shipmate, will ye? It’s the three soaked biscuits ye eat for supper turning over inside of ye—nothing else. Look to the bucket!”

"Say what ye will, shipmate; I've sharp ears."

"Aye, you are the chap, ain't ye, that heard the hum of the old Quakeress's knitting-needles fifty miles at sea from Nantucket; you're the chap."

"Grin away; we'll see what turns up. Hark ye, Cabaco, there is somebody down in the after-hold that has not yet been seen on deck; and I suspect our old Mogul knows something of it too. I heard Stubb tell Flask, one morning watch, that there was something of that sort in the wind."

"Tish! the bucket!"

CHAPTER XLIV

THE CHART

HAD you followed Captain Ahab down into his cabin after the squall that took place on the night succeeding that wild ratification of his purpose with his crew, you would have seen him go to a locker in the transom, and bringing out a large wrinkled roll of yellowish sea charts, spread them before him on his screwed-down table. Then seating himself before it, you would have seen him intently study the various lines and shadings which there met his eye; and with slow but steady pencil trace additional courses over spaces that before were blank. At intervals, he would refer to piles of old log-books beside him, wherein were set down the seasons and places in which, on various former voyages of various ships, sperm whales had been captured or seen.

While thus employed, the heavy pewter lamp suspended in chains over his head, continually rocked with the motion of the ship, and for ever threw shifting gleams and shadows of lines upon his wrinkled brow, till it almost seemed that while he himself was marking out lines and courses on the wrinkled charts, some invisible pencil was also tracing lines and courses upon the deeply marked chart of his forehead.

But it was not this night in particular that, in the solitude of

his cabin, Ahab thus pondered over his charts. Almost every night they were brought out; almost every night some pencil marks were effaced, and others were substituted. For with the charts of all four oceans before him, Ahab was threading a maze of currents and eddies, with a view to the more certain accomplishment of that monomaniac thought of his soul.

Now, to any one not fully acquainted with the ways of the leviathans, it might seem an absurdly hopeless task thus to seek out one solitary creature in the unhooped oceans of this planet. But not so did it seem to Ahab, who knew the sets of all tides and currents; and thereby calculating the driftings of the sperm whale's food; and, also, calling to mind the regular, ascertained seasons for hunting him in particular latitudes; could arrive at reasonable surmises, almost approaching to certainties, concerning the timeliest day to be upon this or that ground in search of his prey.

So assured, indeed, is the fact concerning the periodicalness of the sperm whale's resorting to given waters, that many hunters believe that, could he be closely observed and studied throughout the world; were the logs for one voyage of the entire whale fleet carefully collated, then the migrations of the sperm whale would be found to correspond in invariability to those of the herring-shoals or the flights of swallows. On this hint, attempts have been made to construct elaborate migratory charts of the sperm whale.*

Besides, when making a passage from one feeding-ground to another, the sperm whales, guided by some infallible instinct—say, rather, secret intelligence from the Deity—mostly swim in

* Since the above was written, the statement is happily borne out by an official circular, issued by Lieutenant Maury, of the National Observatory, Washington, April 16th, 1851. By that circular, it appears that precisely such a chart is in course of completion; and portions of it are presented in the circular. "This chart divides the ocean into districts of five degrees of latitude by five degrees of longitude; perpendicularly through each of which districts are twelve columns for the twelve months; and horizontally through each of which districts are three lines; one to show the number of days that have been spent in each month in every district, and the two others to show the number of days in which whales, sperm or right, have been seen."

veins, as they are called; continuing their way along a given ocean-line with such undeviating exactitude, that no ship ever sailed her course, by any chart, with one tithe of such marvellous precision. Though, in these cases, the direction taken by any one whale be straight as a surveyor's parallel, and though the line of advance be strictly confined to its own unavoidable, straight wake, yet the arbitrary *vein* in which at these times he is said to swim, generally embraces some few miles in width (more or less, as the vein is presumed to expand or contract); but never exceeds the visual sweep from the whale-ship's mast-heads, when circumspectly gliding along this magic zone. The sum is, that at particular seasons within that breadth and along that path, migrating whales may with great confidence be looked for.

And hence not only at substantiated times, upon well known separate feeding-grounds, could Ahab hope to encounter his prey; but in crossing the widest expanses of water between those grounds he could, by his art, so place and time himself on his way, as even then not to be wholly without prospect of a meeting.

There was a circumstance which at first sight seemed to entangle his delirious but still methodical scheme. But not so in the reality, perhaps. Though the gregarious sperm whales have their regular seasons for particular grounds, yet in general you cannot conclude that the herds which hunted such and such a latitude or longitude this year, say, will turn out to be identically the same with those that were found there the preceding season; though there are peculiar and unquestionable instances where the contrary of this has proved true. In general, the same remark, only within a less wide limit, applies to the solitaries and hermits among the matured, aged sperm whales. So that though Moby Dick had in a former year been seen, for example, on what is called the Seychelle ground in the Indian ocean, or Volcano Bay on the Japanese Coast; yet it did not follow, that were the Pequod to visit either of those spots at any subsequent corresponding season, she would infallibly encounter him there. So, too, with some other feeding grounds, where he had at times revealed himself. But all these seemed only his casual stopping-places and ocean-inns, so to speak, not his places of prolonged abode. And where Ahab's chances of accomplish-

ing his object have hitherto been spoken of, allusion has only been made to whatever way-side, antecedent, extra prospects were his, ere a particular set time or place were attained, when all possibilities would become probabilities, and, as Ahab fondly thought, every possibility the next thing to a certainty. That particular set time and place were conjoined in the one technical phrase—the Season-on-the-Line. For there and then, for several consecutive years, Moby Dick had been periodically descried, lingering in those waters for awhile, as the sun, in its annual round, loiters for a predicted interval in any one sign of the Zodiac. There it was, too, that most of the deadly encounters with the white whale had taken place; there the waves were storied with his deeds; there also was that tragic spot where the monomaniac old man had found the awful motive to his vengeance. But in the cautious comprehensiveness and unloitering vigilance with which Ahab threw his brooding soul into this unfaltering hunt, he would not permit himself to rest all his hopes upon the one crowning fact above mentioned, however flattering it might be to those hopes; nor in the sleeplessness of his vow could he so tranquillize his unquiet heart as to postpone all intervening quest.

Now, the Pequod had sailed from Nantucket at the very beginning of the Season-on-the-Line. No possible endeavor then could enable her commander to make the great passage southwards, double Cape Horn, and then running down sixty degrees of latitude arrive in the equatorial Pacific in time to cruise there. Therefore, he ~~must wait~~ for the next ensuing season. Yet the premature hour of the Pequod's sailing had, perhaps, been correctly selected by Ahab, with a view to this very complexion of things. Because, an interval of three hundred and sixty-five days and nights was before him; an interval which, instead of impatiently enduring ashore, he would spend in a miscellaneous hunt; if by chance the White Whale, spending his vacation in seas far remote from his periodical feeding-grounds, should turn up his wrinkled brow off the Persian Gulf, or in the Bengal Bay, or China Seas, or in any other waters haunted by his race. So that Monsoons, Pampas, Nor-Westerns, Harmattans, Trades; any wind but the Levanter and Simoon, might blow Moby Dick into

the devious zig-zag world-circle of the Pequod's circumnavigating wake.

But granting all this; yet, regarded discreetly and coolly, seems it not but a mad idea, this; that in the broad boundless ocean, one solitary whale, even if encountered, should be thought capable of individual recognition from his hunter, even as a white-bearded Mufti in the thronged thoroughfares of Constantinople? Yes. For the peculiar snow-white brow of Moby Dick, and his snow-white hump, could not but be unmistakable. And have I not tallied the whale, Ahab would mutter to himself, as after poring over his charts till long after midnight he would throw himself back in reveries—tallied him, and shall he escape? His broad fins are bored, and scalloped out like a lost sheep's ear! And here, his mad mind would run on in a breathless race; till a weariness and faintness of pondering came over him; and in the open air of the deck he would seek to recover his strength. Ah, God! what trances of torments does that man endure who is consumed with one unachieved revengeful desire. He sleeps with clenched hands; and wakes with his own bloody nails in his palms. ✓

Often, when forced from his hammock by exhausting and intolerably vivid dreams of the night, which, resuming his own intense thoughts through the day, carried them on amid a clashing of phrensies, and whirled them round and round in his blazing brain, till the very throbbing of his life-spot became insufferable anguish; and when, as was sometimes the case, these spiritual throes in him heaved his being up from its base, and a chasm seemed opening in him, from which forked flames and lightnings shot up, and accursed fiends beckoned him to leap down among them; when this hell in himself yawned beneath him, a wild cry would be heard through the ship; and with glaring eyes Ahab would burst from his state room, as though escaping from a bed that was on fire. Yet these, perhaps, instead of being the unsuppressable symptoms of some latent weakness, or fright at his own resolve, were but the plainest tokens of its intensity. For, at such times, crazy Ahab, the scheming, unappeasedly steadfast hunter of the white whale; this Ahab that had gone to his hammock, was not the agent that so caused ✓

him to burst from it in horror again. [The latter was the eternal, living principle or soul in him;] and in sleep, being for the time dissociated from the characterizing mind, which at other times employed it for its outer vehicle or agent, it spontaneously sought escape from the scorching contiguity of the frantic thing, of which, for the time, it was no longer an integral. But as the mind does not exist unless leagued with the soul, therefore it must have been that, in Ahab's case, yielding up all his thoughts and fancies to his one supreme purpose; that purpose, by its own sheer inveteracy of will, forced itself against gods and devils into a kind of self-assumed, independent being of its own. [Nay, could grimly live and burn, while the common vitality to which it was conjoined, fled horror-stricken from the unbidden and unfathered birth.] Therefore, the tormented spirit that glared out of bodily eyes, when what seemed Ahab rushed from his room, was for the time but a vacated thing, a formless somnambulist being, a ray of living light, to be sure, but without an object to color, and therefore a blankness in itself. God help thee, old man, thy thoughts have created a creature in thee; and he whose intense thinking thus makes him a Prometheus; a vulture feeds upon that heart for ever; that vulture the very creature he creates.

CHAPTER XLV

THE AFFIDAVIT

So far as what there may be of a narrative in this book; and, indeed, as indirectly touching one or two very interesting and curious particulars in the habits of sperm whales, the foregoing chapter, in its earlier part, is as important a one as will be found in this volume; but the leading matter of it requires to be still further and more familiarly enlarged upon, in order to be adequately understood, and moreover to take away any incredulity which a profound ignorance of the entire subject may

induce in some minds, as to the natural verity of the main points of this affair.

I care not to perform this part of my task methodically; but shall be content to produce the desired impression by separate citations of items, practically or reliably known to me as a whaleman; and from these citations, I take it—the conclusion aimed at will naturally follow of itself.

First: I have personally known three instances where a whale, after receiving a harpoon, has effected a complete escape; and, after an interval (in one instance of three years), has been again struck by the same hand, and slain; when the two irons, both marked by the same private cypher, have been taken from the body. In the instance where three years intervened between the flinging of the two harpoons; and I think it may have been something more than that; the man who darted them happening, in the interval, to go in a trading ship on a voyage to Africa, went ashore there, joined a discovery party, and penetrated far into the interior, where he travelled for a period of nearly two years, often endangered by serpents, savages, tigers, poisonous miasmas, with all the other common perils incident to wandering in the heart of unknown regions. Meanwhile, the whale he had struck must also have been on its travels; no doubt it had thrice circumnavigated the globe, brushing with its flanks all the coasts of Africa; but to no purpose. This man and this whale again came together, and the one vanquished the other. I say I, myself, have known three instances similar to this; that is in two of them I saw the whales struck; and, upon the second attack, saw the two irons with the respective marks cut in them, afterwards taken from the dead fish. In the three-year instance, it so fell out that I was in the boat both times, first and last, and the last time distinctly recognized a peculiar sort of huge mole under the whale's eye, which I had observed there three years previous. I say three years, but I am pretty sure it was more than that. Here are three instances, then, which I personally know the truth of; but I have heard of many other instances from persons whose veracity in the matter there is no good ground to impeach.

Secondly: It is well known in the Sperm Whale Fishery,

however ignorant the world ashore may be of it, that there have been several memorable historical instances where a particular whale in the ocean has been at distant times and places popularly cognisable. Why such a whale became thus marked was not altogether and originally owing to his bodily peculiarities as distinguished from other whales; for however peculiar in that respect any chance whale may be, they soon put an end to his peculiarities by killing him, and boiling him down into a peculiarly valuable oil. No: the reason was this: that from the fatal experiences of the fishery there hung a terrible prestige of perilousness about such a whale as there did about Rinaldo Rinaldini, insomuch that most fishermen were content to recognise him by merely touching their tarpaulins when he would be discovered lounging by them on the sea, without seeking to cultivate a more intimate acquaintance. Like some poor devils ashore that happen to know an irascible great man, they make distant unobtrusive salutations to him in the street, lest if they pursued the acquaintance further, they might receive a summary thump for their presumption.

But not only did each of these famous whales enjoy great individual celebrity—nay, you may call it an ocean-wide renown; not only was he famous in life and now is immortal in fore-castle stories after death, but he was admitted into all the rights, privileges, and distinctions of a name; had as much a name indeed as Cambyes or Cæsar. Was it not so, O Timor Tom! thou famed leviathan, scarred like an iceberg, who so long did'st lurk in the Oriental straits of that name, whose spout was oft seen from the palmy beach of Ombay? Was it not so, O New Zealand Jack! thou terror of all cruisers that crossed their wakes in the vicinity of the Tattoo Land? Was it not so, O Morquan! King of Japan, whose lofty jet they say at times assumed the semblance of a snow-white cross against the sky? Was it not so, O Don Miguell! thou ~~Chilian whale~~, marked like an old tortoise with mystic hieroglyphics upon the back! In plain prose, here are four whales as well known to the students of Cetacean History as Marius or Sylla to the classic scholar.

But this is not all. New Zealand Tom and Don Miguel, after at various times creating great havoc among the boats of different

vessels, were finally gone in quest of, systematically hunted out, chased and killed by valiant whaling captains, who heaved up their anchors with that express object as much in view, as in setting out through the Narragansett Woods, Captain Butler of old had it in his mind to capture that notorious murderous savage Annawon, the headmost warrior of the Indian King Philip.

I do not know where I can find a better place than just here, to make mention of one or two other things, which to me seem important, as in printed form establishing in all respects the reasonableness of the whole story of the White Whale, more especially the catastrophe. For this is one of those disheartening instances where truth requires full as much bolstering as error. So ignorant are most landsmen of some of the plainest and most palpable wonders of the world, that without some hints touching the plain facts, historical and otherwise, of the fishery, they might scout at Moby Dick as a monstrous fable, or still worse ✓ and more detestable, a hideous and intolerable allegory.

First: Though most men have some vague flitting ideas of the general perils of the grand fishery, yet they have nothing like a fixed, vivid conception of those perils, and the frequency with which they recur. One reason perhaps is, that not one in fifty of the actual disasters and deaths by casualties in the fishery, ever finds a public record at home, however transient and immediately forgotten that record. Do you suppose that that poor fellow there, who this moment perhaps caught by the whale-line off the coast of New Guinea, is being carried down to the bottom of the sea by the sounding leviathan—do you suppose that that poor fellow's name will appear in the newspaper obituary you will read to-morrow at your breakfast? No: because the mails are very irregular between here and New Guinea. In fact, did you ever hear what might be called regular news direct or indirect from New Guinea? Yet I tell you that upon one particular voyage which I made to the Pacific, among many others we spoke thirty different ships, every one of which had had a death by a whale, some of them more than one, and three that had each lost a boat's crew. For God's sake, be economical with your lamps and candles! not a gallon you burn, but at least one drop of man's blood was spilled for it.

Secondly: People ashore have indeed some indefinite idea that a whale is an enormous creature of enormous power; but I have ever found that when narrating to them some specific example of this two-fold enormousness, they have significantly complimented me upon my facetiousness; when, I declare upon my soul, I had no more idea of being facetious than Moses, when he wrote the history of the plagues of Egypt.

But fortunately the special point I here seek can be established upon testimony entirely independent of my own. That point is this: The Sperm Whale is in some cases sufficiently powerful, knowing, and judiciously malicious, as with direct aforethought to stave in, utterly destroy, and sink a large ship; and what is more, the Sperm Whale *has* done it.

First: In the year 1820 the ship Essex, Captain Pollard, of Nantucket, was cruising in the Pacific Ocean. One day she saw spouts, lowered her boats, and gave chase to a shoal of sperm whales. Ere long, several of the whales were wounded; when, suddenly, a very large whale escaping from the boats, issued from the shoal, and bore directly down upon the ship. Dashing his forehead against her hull, he so stove her in, that in less than "ten minutes" she settled down and fell over. Not a surviving plank of her has been seen since. After the severest exposure, part of the crew reached the land in their boats. Being returned home at last, Captain Pollard once more sailed for the Pacific in command of another ship, but the gods shipwrecked him again upon unknown rocks and breakers; for the second time his ship was utterly lost, and forthwith forswearing the sea, he has never tempted it since. At this day Captain Pollard is a resident of Nantucket. I have seen Owen Chace, who was chief mate of the Essex at the time of the tragedy; I have read his plain and faithful narrative; I have conversed with his son; and all this within a few miles of the scene of the catastrophe.*

* The following are extracts from Chace's narrative: "Every fact seemed to warrant me in concluding that it was anything but chance which directed his operations; he made two several attacks upon the ship, at a short interval between them, both of which, according to their direction, were calculated to do us the most injury, by being made ahead, and thereby

Secondly: The ship Union, also of Nantucket, was in the year 1807 totally lost off the Azores by a similar onset, but the authentic particulars of this catastrophe I have never chanced to encounter, though from the whale hunters I have now and then heard casual allusions to it.

Thirdly: Some eighteen or twenty years ago Commodore J— then commanding an American sloop-of-war of the first class, happened to be dining with a party of whaling captains, on board a Nantucket ship in the harbor of Oahu, Sandwich Islands. Conversation turning upon whales, the Commodore was pleased to be sceptical touching the amazing strength ascribed to them by the professional gentlemen present. He peremptorily denied for example, that any whale could so smite his stout sloop-of-war as to cause her to leak so much as a thimbleful. Very good; but there is more coming. Some weeks after, the commodore set sail in this impregnable craft for Valparaiso. But he was stopped on the way by a portly sperm whale, that begged a few moments' confidential business with him. That business consisted in fetching the Commodore's craft

• • • • • • • • •
• • • • • • • • •

combining the speed of the two objects for the shock; to effect which, the exact manœuvres which he made were necessary. His aspect was most horrible, and such as indicated resentment and fury. He came directly from the shoal which we had just before entered, and in which we had struck three of his companions, as if fired with revenge for their sufferings." Again: "At all events, the whole circumstances taken together, all happening before my own eyes, and producing, at the time, impressions in my mind of decided, calculating mischief, on the part of the whale (many of which impressions I cannot now recall), induce me to be satisfied that I am correct in my opinion."

Here are his reflections some time after quitting the ship, during a black night in an open boat, when almost despairing of reaching any hospitable shore. "The dark ocean and swelling waters were nothing; the fears of being swallowed up by some dreadful tempest, or dashed upon hidden rocks, with all the other ordinary subjects of fearful contemplation, seemed scarcely entitled to a moment's thought; the dismal looking wreck, and *the horrid aspect and revenge of the whale*, wholly engrossed my reflections, until day again made its appearance."

In another place—p. 45,—he speaks of "*the mysterious and mortal attack of the animal.*"

such a thwack, that with all his pumps going he made straight for the nearest port to heave down and repair. I am not superstitious, but I consider the Commodore's interview with that whale as providential. Was not Saul of Tarsus converted from unbelief by a similar fright? I tell you, the sperm whale will stand no nonsense.

I will now refer you to Langsdorff's Voyages for a little circumstance in point, peculiarly interesting to the writer hereof. Langsdorff, you must know by the way, was attached to the Russian Admiral Krusenstern's famous Discovery Expedition in the beginning of the present century. Captain Langsdorff thus begins his seventeenth chapter.

"By the thirteenth of May our ship was ready to sail, and the next day we were out in the open sea, on our way to Ochotsh. The weather was very clear and fine, but so intolerably cold that we were obliged to keep on our fur clothing. For some days we had very little wind; it was not till the nineteenth that a brisk gale from the northwest sprang up. An uncommon large whale, the body of which was larger than the ship itself, lay almost at the surface of the water, but was not perceived by any one on board till the moment when the ship, which was in full sail, was almost upon him, so that it was impossible to prevent its striking against him. We were thus placed in the most imminent danger, as this gigantic creature, setting up its back, raised the ship three feet at least out of the water. The masts reeled, and the sails fell altogether, while we who were below all sprang instantly upon the deck, concluding that we had struck upon some rock; instead of this we saw the monster sailing off with the utmost gravity and solemnity. Captain D'Wolf applied immediately to the pumps to examine whether or not the vessel had received any damage from the shock, but we found that very happily it had escaped entirely uninjured."

Now, the Captain D'Wolf here alluded to as commanding the ship in question, is a New Englander, who, after a long life of unusual adventures as a sea-captain, this day resides in the village of Dorchester near Boston. I have the honor of being a nephew of his. I have particularly questioned him concerning this passage in Langsdorff. He substantiates every word.

The ship, however, was by no means a large one: a Russian craft built on the Siberian coast, and purchased by my uncle after bartering away the vessel in which he sailed from home.

In that up and down manly book of old-fashioned adventure, so full, too, of honest wonders—the voyage of Lionel Wafer, one of ancient Dampier's old chums—I found a little matter set down so like that just quoted from Langsdorff, that I cannot forbear inserting it here for a corroborative example, if such be needed.

Lionel, it seems, was on his way to "John Ferdinando," as he calls the modern Juan Fernandes. "In our way thither," he says, "about four o'clock in the morning, when we were about one hundred and fifty leagues from the Main of America, our ship felt a terrible shock, which put our men in such consternation that they could hardly tell where they were or what to think; but every one began to prepare for death. And, indeed, the shock was so sudden and violent, that we took it for granted the ship had struck against a rock; but when the amazement was a little over, we cast the lead, and sounded, but found no ground. * * * * *

The suddenness of the shock made the guns leap in their carriages, and several of the men were shaken out of their hammocks. Captain Davis, who lay with his head on a gun, was thrown out of his cabin!" Lionel then goes on to impute the shock to an earthquake, and seems to substantiate the imputation by stating that a great earthquake, somewhere about that time, did actually do great mischief along the Spanish land. But I should not much wonder if, in the darkness of that early hour of the morning, the the shock was after all caused by an unseen whale vertically bumping the hull from beneath.

I might proceed with several more examples, one way or another known to me, of the great power and malice at times of the sperm whale. In more than one instance, he has been known, not only to chase the assailing boats back to their ships, but to pursue the ship itself, and long withstand all the lances hurled at him from its decks. The English ship *Pusie Hall* can tell a story on that head; and, as for his strength, let me say, that there have been examples where the lines attached to

✓ a running sperm whale have, in a calm, been transferred to the ship, and secured there; the whale towing her great hull through the water, as a horse walks off with a cart. Again, it is very often observed that, if the sperm whale, once struck, is allowed time to rally, he then acts, not so often with blind rage, as with wilful, deliberate designs of destruction to his pursuers; nor is it without conveying some eloquent indication of his character, that upon being attacked he will frequently open his mouth, and retain it in that dread expansion for several consecutive minutes. But I must be content with only one more and a concluding illustration; a remarkable and most significant one, by which you will not fail to see, that not only is the most marvellous event in this book corroborated by plain facts of the present day, but that these marvels (like all marvels) are mere repetitions of the ages; so that for the millionth time we say amen with Solomon—Verily there is nothing new under the sun.

In the sixth Christian century lived Procopius, a Christian magistrate of Constantinople, in the days when Justinian was Emperor and Belisarius general. As many know, he wrote the history of his own times, a work every way of uncommon value. By the best authorities, he has always been considered a most trustworthy and unexaggerating historian, except in some one or two particulars, not at all affecting the matter presently to be mentioned.

Now, in this history of his, Procopius mentions that, during the term of his prefecture at Constantinople, a great sea-monster was captured in the neighboring Propontis, or Sea of Marmora, after having destroyed vessels at intervals in those waters for a period of more than fifty years. A fact thus set down in substantial history cannot easily be gainsaid. Nor is there any reason it should be. Of what precise species this sea-monster was, is not mentioned. But as he destroyed ships, as well as for other reasons, he must have been a whale; and I am strongly inclined to think a sperm whale. And I will tell you why. For a long time I fancied that the sperm whale had been always unknown in the Mediterranean and the deep waters connecting with it. Even now I am certain that those seas are not, and perhaps never can be, in the present constitution of

things, a place for his habitual gregarious resort. But further investigations have recently proved to me, that in modern times there have been isolated instances of the presence of the sperm whale in the Mediterranean. I am told, on good authority, that on the Barbary coast, a Commodore Davis of the British navy found the skeleton of a sperm whale. Now, as a vessel of war readily passes through the Dardanelles, hence a sperm whale could, by the same route, pass out of the Mediterranean into the Propontis.

In the Propontis, as far as I can learn, none of that peculiar substance called *brit* is to be found, the aliment of the right whale. But I have every reason to believe that the food of the sperm whale—squid or cuttle-fish—lurks at the bottom of that sea, because large creatures, but by no means the largest of that sort, have been found at its surface. If, then, you properly put these statements together, and reason upon them a bit, you will clearly perceive that, according to all human reasoning, Procopius's sea-monster, that for half a century stove the ships of a Roman Emperor, must in all probability have been a sperm whale.

CHAPTER XLVI

SURMISES

THOUGH, consumed with the hot fire of his purpose, Ahab in all his thoughts and actions ever had in view the ultimate capture of Moby Dick; though he seemed ready to sacrifice all mortal interests to that one passion; nevertheless it may have been that he was by nature and long habituation far too wedded to a fiery whaleman's ways, altogether to abandon the collateral prosecution of the voyage. Or at least if this were otherwise, there were not wanting other motives much more influential with him. It would be refining too much, perhaps, even considering his monomania, to hint that his vindictiveness towards

the White Whale might have possibly extended itself in some degree to all sperm whales, and that the more monsters he slew by so much the more he multiplied the chances that each subsequently encountered whale would prove to be the hated one he hunted. But if such an hypothesis be indeed exceptionable, there were still additional considerations which, though not so strictly according with the wildness of his ruling passion, yet were by no means incapable of swaying him.

To accomplish his object Ahab must use tools; and of all tools used in the shadow of the moon, men are most apt to get out of order. He knew, for example, that however magnetic his ascendancy in some respects was over Starbuck, yet that ascendancy did not cover the complete spiritual man any more than mere corporeal superiority involves intellectual mastership; for to the purely spiritual, the intellectual but stand in a sort of corporeal relation. Starbuck's body and Starbuck's coerced will were Ahab's, so long as Ahab kept his magnet at Starbuck's brain; still he knew that for all this the chief mate, in his soul, /abhorred his captain's quest, and could he, would joyfully disintegrate himself from it, or even frustrate it. It might be that a long interval would elapse ere the White Whale was seen. During that long interval Starbuck would ever be apt to fall into open relapses of rebellion against his captain's leadership, unless some ordinary, prudential, circumstantial influences were brought to bear upon him. Not only that, but the subtle insanity of Ahab respecting Moby Dick was noways more significantly manifested than in his superlative sense and shrewdness in foreseeing that, for the present, the hunt should in some way be stripped of that strange imaginative impiety which naturally invested it; that the full terror of the voyage must be kept /withdrawn into the obscure background (for few men's courage is proof against protracted meditation unrelieved by action); that when they stood their long night watches, his officers and men must have some nearer things to think of than Moby Dick. For however eagerly and impetuously the savage crew had hailed the announcement of his quest; yet all sailors of all sorts are more or less capricious and unreliable—they live in the varying outer weather, and they inhale its fickleness—and when retained

for any object remote and blank in the pursuit, however promissory of life and passion in the end, it is above all things requisite that temporary interests and employment should intervene and hold them healthily suspended for the final dash.

Nor was Ahab unmindful of another thing. In times of strong emotion mankind disdain all base considerations; but such times are evanescent. The permanent constitutional condition of the manufactured man, thought Ahab, is sordidness. Granting that the White Whale fully incites the hearts of this my savage crew, and playing round their savageness even breeds a certain generous knight-errantism in them, still, while for the love of it they give chase to Moby Dick, they must also have food for their more common, daily appetites. For even the high lifted and chivalric Crusaders of old times were not content to traverse two thousand miles of land to fight for their holy sepulchre, without committing burglaries, picking pockets, and gaining other pious perquisites by the way. Had they been strictly held to their one final and romantic object—that final and romantic object, too many would have turned from in disgust. I will not strip these men, thought Ahab, of all hopes of cash—aye, cash. They may scorn cash now; but let some months go by, and no perspective promise of it to them, and then this same quiescent cash all at once mutinying in them, this same cash would soon cashier Ahab.

Nor was there wanting still another precautionary motive more related to Ahab personally. Having impulsively, it is probable, and perhaps somewhat prematurely revealed the prime but private purpose of the Pequod's voyage, Ahab was now entirely conscious that, in so doing, he had indirectly laid himself open to the unanswerable charge of usurpation; and with perfect impunity, both moral and legal, his crew if so disposed, and to that end competent, could refuse all further obedience to him, and even violently wrest from him the command. From even the barely hinted imputation of usurpation, and the possible consequences of such a suppressed impression gaining ground, Ahab must of course have been most anxious to protect himself. That protection could only consist in his own predominating brain and heart and hand, backed by a heedful, closely calculat-

ing attention to every minute atmospheric influence which it was possible for his crew to be subjected to.

For all these reasons then, and others perhaps too analytic to be verbally developed here, Ahab plainly saw that he must still in a good degree continue true to the natural, nominal purpose of the Pequod's voyage; observe all customary usages; and not only that, but force himself to evince all his well known passionate interest in the general pursuit of his profession.

Be all this as it may, his voice was now often heard hailing the three mast-heads and admonishing them to keep a bright look-out, and not omit reporting even a porpoise. This vigilance was not long without reward.

CHAPTER XLVII

THE MAT-MAKER

It was a cloudy, sultry afternoon; the seamen were lazily lounging about the decks, or vacantly gazing over into the lead-colored waters. Queequeg and I were mildly employed weaving what is called a sword-mat, for an additional lashing to our boat. So still and subdued and yet somehow preluding was all the scene, and such an incantation of revery lurked in the air, that each silent sailor seemed resolved into his own invisible self.

I was the attendant or page of Queequeg, while busy at the mat. As I kept passing and repassing the filling or woof of marline between the long yarns of the warp, using my own hand for the shuttle, and as Queequeg, standing sideways, ever and anon slid his heavy oaken sword between the threads, and idly looking off upon the water, carelessly and unthinkingly drove home every yarn: I say so strange a dreaminess did there then reign all over the ship and all over the sea, only broken by the intermitting dull sound of the sword, that it seemed as if this were the Loom of Time, and I myself were a shuttle mechanically weaving and weaving away at the Fates. There lay the fixed

threads of the warp subject to but one single, ever returning, unchanging vibration, and that vibration merely enough to admit of the crosswise interblending of other threads with its own. This warp seemed necessity; and here, thought I, with my own hand I ply my own shuttle and weave my own destiny into these unalterable threads. Meantime, Queequeg's impulsive, indifferent sword, sometimes hitting the woof slantingly, or crookedly, or strongly, or weakly, as the case might be; and by this difference in the concluding blow producing a corresponding contrast in the final aspect of the completed fabric; this savage's sword, thought I, which thus finally shapes and fashions both warp and woof; this easy, indifferent sword must be chance—aye, chance, free will, and necessity—no wise incompatible—all interweavingly working together. The straight warp of necessity, not to be swerved from its ultimate course—its every alternating vibration, indeed, only tending to that; free will still free to ply her shuttle between given threads; and chance, though restrained in its play within the right lines of necessity, and sideways in its motions directed by free will, though thus prescribed to by both, chance by turns rules either, and has the last featuring blow at events.

* * * * *

Thus we were weaving and weaving away when I started at a sound so strange, long drawn, and musically wild and unearthly, that the ball of free will dropped from my hand, and I stood gazing up at the clouds whence that voice dropped like a wing. High aloft in the cross-trees was that mad Gay-Header, Tashtego. His body was reaching eagerly forward, his hand stretched out like a wand, and at brief sudden intervals he continued his cries. To be sure the same sound was that very moment perhaps being heard all over the seas, from hundreds of whalemens' look-outs perched as high in the air; but from few of those lungs could that accustomed old cry have derived such a marvellous cadence as from Tashtego the Indian's.

As he stood hovering over you half suspended in air, so wildly and eagerly peering towards the horizon, you would have thought him some prophet or seer beholding the shadows of Fate, and by those wild cries announcing their coming.]

"There she blows! there! there! there! she blows! she blows!"

"Where-away?"

"On the lee-beam, about two miles off! a school of them!"

Instantly all was commotion.

✓ [The Sperm Whale blows as a clock ticks, with the same undeviating and reliable uniformity. And thereby whalers distinguish this fish from other tribes of his genus.]

"There go flukes!" was now the cry from Tashtego; and the whales disappeared.

"Quick, steward! cried Ahab. "Time! time!"

Dough-Boy hurried below, glanced at the watch, and reported the exact minute to Ahab.

The ship was now kept away from the wind, and she went gently rolling before it. Tashtego reporting that the whales had gone down heading to leeward, we confidently looked to see them again directly in advance of our bows. For that singular craft at times evinced by the Sperm Whale when, sounding with his head in one direction, he nevertheless, while concealed beneath the surface, mills round, and swiftly swims off in the opposite quarter—this deceitfulness of his could not now be in action; for there was no reason to suppose that the fish seen by Tashtego had been in any way alarmed, or indeed knew at all of our vicinity. One of the men selected for shipkeepers—that is, those not appointed to the boats, by this time relieved the Indian at the main-mast head. The sailors at the fore and mizzen had come down; the line tubs were fixed in their places; the cranes were thrust out; the mainyard was backed, and the three boats swung over the sea like three samphire baskets over high cliffs. Outside of the bulwarks their eager crews with one hand clung to the rail, while one foot was expectantly poised on the gunwale. So look the long line of man-of-war's men about to throw themselves on board an enemy's ship.

But at this critical instant a sudden exclamation was heard that took every eye from the whale. With a start all glared at dark Ahab, who was surrounded by five dusky phantoms that seemed fresh formed out of air.

CHAPTER XLVIII

THE FIRST LOWERING

THE phantoms, for so they then seemed, were flitting on the other side of the deck, and, with a noiseless celerity, were casting loose the tackles and bands of the boat which swung there. This boat had always been deemed one of the spare boats, though technically called the captain's, on account of its hanging from the starboard quarter. The figure that now stood by its bows was tall and swart, with one white tooth evilly protruding from its steel-like lips. A rumpled Chinese jacket of black cotton funereally invested him, with wide black trowsers of the same dark stuff. But strangely crowning his ebonness was a glistening white plaited turban, the living hair braided and coiled round and round upon his head. Less swart in aspect, the companions of this figure were of that vivid, tiger-yellow complexion peculiar to some of the aboriginal natives of the Manillas;—a race notorious for a certain diabolism of subtilty, and by some honest white mariners supposed to be the paid spies and secret confidential agents on the water of the devil, their lord, whose counting-room they suppose to be elsewhere.

While yet the wondering ship's company were gazing upon these strangers, Ahab cried out to the white-turbaned old man at their head, "All ready there, Fedallah?"

"Ready," was the half-hissed reply.

"Lower away then; d'ye hear?" shouting across the deck. "Lower away there, I say."

Such was the thunder of his voice, that spite of their amazement the men sprang over the rail; the sheaves whirled round in the blocks; with a wallow, the three boats dropped into the sea; while, with a dexterous, off-handed daring, unknown in any other vocation, the sailors, goat-like, leaped down the rolling ship's side into the tossed boats below.

Hardly had they pulled out from under the ship's lee, when

a fourth keel, coming from the windward side, pulled round under the stern, and showed the five strangers rowing Ahab, who, standing erect in the stern, loudly hailed Starbuck, Stubb, and Flask, to spread themselves widely, so as to cover a large expanse of water. But with all their eyes again riveted upon the swart Fedallah and his crew, the inmates of the other boats obeyed not the command.

"Captain Ahab?" said Starbuck.

"Spread yourselves," cried Ahab; "give way, all four boats. Thou, Flask, pull out more to leeward!"

"Aye, aye, sir," cheerily cried little King-Post, sweeping round his great steering oar. "Lay back!" addressing his crew. "There!—there!—there again! There she blows right ahead, boys!—lay back!"

"Never heed yonder yellow boys, Archy."

"Oh, I don't mind 'em, sir," said Archy; "I knew it all before now. Didn't I hear 'em in the hold? And didn't I tell Cabaco here of it? What say ye, Cabaco? They are stowaways, Mr. Flask."

"Pull, pull, my fine hearts-alive; pull, my children; pull, my little ones," drawingly and soothingly sighed Stubb to his crew, some of whom still showed signs of uneasiness. "Why don't you break your backbones, my boys? What is it you stare at? Those chaps in yonder boat? Tut! They are only five more hands come to help us—never mind from where—the more the merrier. Pull, then, do pull; never mind the brimstone—devils are good fellows enough. So, so; there you are now; that's the stroke for a thousand pounds; that's the stroke to sweep the stakes! Hurrah for the gold cup of sperm oil, my heroes! Three cheers, men—all hearts alive! Easy, easy; don't be in a hurry—don't be in a hurry. Why don't you snap your oars, you rascals? Bite something, you dogs! So, so, so, then;—softly, softly! That's it—that's it! long and strong. Give way there, give way! The devil fetch ye, ye ragamuffin rascallions; ye are all asleep. Stop snoring, ye sleepers, and pull. Pull, will ye? pull, can't ye? pull, won't ye? Why in the name of gudgeons and ginger-cakes don't ye pull?—pull and break something! pull, and start your

eyes out! Herel!" whipping out the sharp knife from his girdle; "every mother's son of ye draw his knife, and pull with the blade between his teeth. That's it—that's it. Now ye do something; that looks like it, my steel-bits. Start her—start her, my silver-spoons! Start her, marling-spikes!"

Stubb's exordium to his crew is given here at large, because he had rather a peculiar way of talking to them in general, and especially in inculcating the religion of rowing. But you must not suppose from this specimen of his sermonizings that he ever flew into downright passions with his congregation. Not at all; and therein consisted his chief peculiarity. He would say the most terrific things to his crew, in a tone so strangely compounded of fun and fury, and the fury seemed so calculated merely as a spice to the fun, that no oarsman could hear such queer invocations without pulling for dear life, and yet pulling for the mere joke of the thing. Besides he all the time looked so easy and indolent himself, so loungingly managed his steering-oar, and so broadly gaped—open-mouthed at times—that the mere sight of such a yawning commander, by sheer force of contrast, acted like a charm upon the crew. Then again, Stubb was one of those odd sort of humorists, whose jollity is sometimes so curiously ambiguous, as to put all inferiors on their guard in the matter of obeying them.

In obedience to a sign from Ahab, Starbuck was now pulling obliquely across Stubb's bow; and when for a minute or so the two boats were pretty near to each other, Stubb hailed the mate.

"Mr. Starbuck! larboard boat there, ahoy! a word with ye, sir, if ye please!"

"Halloa!" returned Starbuck, turning round not a single inch as he spoke; still earnestly but whisperingly urging his crew; his face set like a flint from Stubb's.

"What think ye of those yellow boys, sir!"

"Smuggled on board, somehow, before the ship sailed. (Strong, strong, boys!)" in a whisper to his crew, then speaking out loud again: "A sad business, Mr. Stubb! (seethe her, seethe her, my lads!) but never mind, Mr. Stubb, all for the best. Let all your crew pull strong, come what will. (Spring, my men, spring!)"

There's hogsheads of sperm ahead, Mr. Stubb, and that's what ye came for. (Pull, my boys!) Sperm, sperm's the play! This at least is duty; duty and profit hand in hand!"

"Aye, aye, I thought as much," soliloquized Stubb, when the boats diverged, "as soon as I clapt eye on 'em, I thought so. Aye, and that's what he went into the after hold for, so often, as Dough-Boy long suspected. They were hidden down there. The White Whale's at the bottom of it. Well, well, so be it! Can't be helped! All right! Give way, men! It ain't the White Whale to-day! Give way!"

Now the advent of these outlandish strangers at such a critical instant as the lowering of the boats from the deck, this had not unreasonably awakened a sort of superstitious amazement in some of the ship's company; but Archy's fancied discovery having some time previous got abroad among them, though indeed not credited then, this had in some small measure prepared them for the event. It took off the extreme edge of their wonder; and so what with all this and Stubb's confident way of accounting for their appearance, they were for the time freed from superstitious surmisings; though the affair still left abundant room for all manner of wild conjectures as to dark Ahab's precise agency in the matter from the beginning. For me, I silently recalled the mysterious shadows I had seen creeping on board the Pequod during the dim Nantucket dawn, as well as the enigmatical hintings of the unaccountable Elijah.

Meantime, Ahab, out of hearing of his officers, having sided the furthest to windward, was still ranging ahead of the other boats; a circumstance bespeaking how potent a crew was pulling him. Those tiger yellow creatures of his seemed all steel and whale-bone; like five trip-hammers they rose and fell with regular strokes of strength, which periodically started the boat along the water like a horizontal burst boiler out of a Mississippi steamer. As for Fedallah, who was seen pulling the harpooneer oar, he had thrown aside his black jacket, and displayed his naked chest with the whole part of his body above the gunwale, clearly cut against the alternating depressions of the watery horizon; while at the other end of the boat Ahab, with one

arm, like a fencer's, thrown half backward into the air, as if to counterbalance any tendency to trip: Ahab was seen steadily managing his steering oar as in a thousand boat lowerings ere the White Whale had torn him. All at once the out-stretched arm gave a peculiar motion and then remained fixed, while the boat's five oars were seen simultaneously peaked. Boat and crew sat motionless on the sea. Instantly the three spread boats in the rear paused on their way. The whales had irregularly settled bodily down into the blue, thus giving no distantly discernible token of the movement, though from his closer vicinity Ahab had observed it.

"Every man look out along his oars!" cried Starbuck. "Thou, Queequeg, stand up!"

Nimbly springing up on the triangular raised box in the bow, the savage stood erect there, and with intensely eager eyes gazed off towards the spot where the chase had last been descried. Likewise upon the extreme stern of the boat where it was also triangularly platformed level with the gunwale, Starbuck himself was seen coolly and adroitly balancing himself to the jerking tossings of his chip of a craft, and silently eyeing the vast blue eye of the sea.

Not very far distant Flask's boat was also lying breathlessly still; its commander recklessly standing upon the top of the loggerhead, a stout sort of post rooted in the keel, and rising some two feet above the level of the stern platform. It is used for catching turns with the whale line. Its top is not more spacious than the palm of a man's hand, and standing upon such a base as that, Flask seemed perched at the mast-head of some ship which had sunk to all but her trucks. But little King-Post was small and short, and at the same time little King-Post was full of a large and tall ambition, so that this loggerhead stand-point of his did by no means satisfy King-Post.

"I can't see three seas off; tip us up an oar there, and let me on to that."

Upon this, Daggoo, with either hand upon the gunwale to steady his way, swiftly slid aft, and then erecting himself volunteered his lofty shoulders for a pedestal.

"Good a mast-head as any, sir. Will you mount?"

"That I will, and thank ye very much, my fine fellow; only I wish you fifty feet taller."

Whereupon planting his feet firmly against two opposite planks of the boat, the gigantic negro, stooping a little, presented his flat palm to Flask's foot, and then putting Flask's hand on his hearse-plumed head and bidding him spring as he himself should toss, with one dexterous fling landed the little man high and dry on his shoulders. And here was Flask now standing, Daggo with one lifted arm furnishing him with a breast-band to lean against and steady himself by.

At any time it is a strange sight to the tyro to see with what wondrous habitude of unconscious skill the whaleman will maintain an erect posture in his boat, even when pitched about by the most riotously perverse and cross-running seas. Still more strange to see him giddily perched upon the loggerhead itself, under such circumstances. But the sight of little Flask mounted upon gigantic Daggo was yet more curious; for sustaining himself with a cool, indifferent, easy, unthought of, barbaric majesty, the noble negro to every roll of the sea harmoniously rolled his fine form. On his broad back, flaxen-haired Flask seemed a snow-flake. The bearer looked nobler than the rider. Though truly vivacious, tumultuous, ostentatious little Flask would now and then stamp with impatience; but not one added heave did he thereby give to the negro's lordly chest. [So have I seen Passion and Vanity stamping the living magnanimous earth, but the earth did not alter her tides and her seasons for that]

Meanwhile Stubb, the third mate, betrayed no such far-gazing solitudes. The whales might have made one of their regular soundings, not a temporary dive from mere fright; and if that were the case, Stubb, as his wont in such cases, it seems, was resolved to solace the languishing interval with his pipe. He withdrew it from his hatband, where he always wore it aslant like a feather. He loaded it, and rammed home the loading with his thumb-end; but hardly had he ignited his match across the rough sand-paper of his hand, when Tashtego, his harpooneer, whose eyes had been setting to windward like two fixed stars, suddenly dropped like light from his erect attitude to his seat,

crying out in a quick phrensy of hurry, "Down, down all, and give way!—there they are!"

To a landsman, no whale, nor any sign of a herring, would have been visible at that moment; nothing but a troubled bit of greenish white water, and thin scattered puffs of vapor hovering over it, and suffusingly blowing off to leeward, like the confused scud from white rolling billows. The air around suddenly vibrated and tingled, as it were, like the air over intensely heated plates of iron. Beneath this atmospheric waving and curling, and partially beneath a thin layer of water, also, the whales were swimming. Seen in advance of all the other indications, the puffs of vapor they spouted, seemed their forerunning couriers and detached flying outriders.

All four boats were now in keen pursuit of that one spot of troubled water and air. But it bade far to outstrip them; it flew on and on, as a mass of interblending bubbles borne down a rapid stream from the hills.

"Pull, pull, my good boys," said Starbuck, in the lowest possible but intensest concentrated whisper to his men; while the sharp fixed glance from his eyes darted straight ahead of the bow, almost seemed as two visible needles in two unerring binnacle compasses. He did not say much to his crew, though, nor did his crew say anything to him. Only the silence of the boat was at intervals startlingly pierced by one of his peculiar whispers, now harsh with command, now soft with entreaty.

How different the loud little King-Post. "Sing out and say something, my hearties. Roar and pull, my thunderbolts! Beach me, beach me on their black backs, boys; only do that for me, and I'll sign over to you my Martha's Vineyard plantation, boys; including wife and children, boys. Lay me on—lay me on! O Lord, Lord! but I shall go stark, staring mad: See! see that white water!" And so shouting, he pulled his hat from his head, and stamped up and down on it; then picking it up, flung it far off upon the sea; and finally fell to rearing and plunging in the boat's stern like a crazed colt from the prairie.

"Look at that chap now," philosophically drawled Stubb, who, with his unlighted short pipe, mechanically retained between his teeth, at a short distance, followed after—"He's got fits, that

Flask has. Fits? yes, give him fits—that's the very word—pitch fits into 'em. Merrily, merrily, hearts-alive. Pudding for supper, you know;—merry's the word. Pull, babes—pull, sucklings—pull, all. But what the devil are you hurrying about? Softly, softly, and steadily, my men. Only pull, and keep pulling; nothing more. Crack all your backbones, and bite your knives in two—that's all. Take it easy—why don't ye take it easy, I say, and burst all your livers and lungs!"

But what it was that inscrutable Ahab said to that tiger-yellow crew of his—these were words best omitted here; for you live under the blessed light of the evangelical land. Only the infidel sharks in the audacious seas may give ear to such words, when, with tornado brow, and eyes of red murder, and foam-glued lips, Ahab leaped after his prey.

Meanwhile, all the boats tore on. The repeated specific allusions of Flask to "that whale," as he called the fictitious monster which he declared to be incessantly tantalizing his boat's bow with its tail—these allusions of his were at times so vivid and life-like, that they would cause some one or two of his men to snatch a fearful look over the shoulder. But this was against all rule; for the oarsmen must put out their eyes, and ram a skewer through their necks; usage pronouncing that they must have no organs but ears, and no limbs but arms, in these critical moments.

It was a sight full of quick wonder and awe! The vast swells of the omnipotent sea; the surging, hollow roar they made, as they rolled along the eight gunwales, like gigantic bowls in a boundless bowling-green; the brief suspended agony of the boat, as it would tip for an instant on the knife-like edge of the sharper waves, that almost seemed threatening to cut it in two; the sudden profound dip into the watery glens and hollows; the keen spurtings and goadings to gain the top of the opposite hill; the headlong, sled-like slide down its other side;—all these, with the cries of the headsmen and harpooneers, and the shuddering gasps of the oarsmen, with the wondrous sight of the ivory Pequod bearing down upon her boats with outstretched sails, like a wild hen after her screaming brood;—all this was thrilling. Not the raw recruit, marching from the bosom of his wife into the fever heat of his first battle; not the dead man's ghost encountering

the first unknown phantom in the other world;—neither of these can feel stranger and stronger emotions than that man does, who for the first time finds himself pulling into the charmed, churned circle of the hunted sperm whale.

The dancing white water made by the chase was now becoming more and more visible, owing to the increasing darkness of the dun cloud-shadows flung upon the sea. The jets of vapor no longer blended, but tilted everywhere to right and left; the whales seemed separating their wakes. The boats were pulled more apart; Starbuck giving chase to three whales running dead to leeward. Our sail was now set, and, with the still rising wind, we rushed along; the boat going with such madness through the water, that the lee oars could scarcely be worked rapidly enough to escape being torn from the row-locks.

Soon we were running through a suffusing wide veil of mist; neither ship nor boat to be seen.

"Give way, men," whispered Starbuck, drawing still further aft the sheet of his sail; "there is time to kill a fish yet before the squall comes. There's white water again!—close to! Spring!"

Soon after, two cries in quick succession on each side of us denoted that the other boats had got fast; but hardly were they overheard, when with a lightning-like hurtling whisper Starbuck said: "Stand up!" and Queequeg, harpoon in hand, sprang to his feet.

Though not one of the oarsmen was then facing the life and death peril so close to them ahead, yet with their eyes on the intense countenance of the mate in the stern of the boat, they knew that the imminent instant had come; they heard, too, an enormous wallowing sound as of fifty elephants stirring in their litter. Meanwhile the boat was still booming through the mist, the waves curling and hissing around us like the erected crests of enraged serpents.

"That's his hump. *There, there*, give it to him!" whispered Starbuck.

A short rushing sound leaped out of the boat; it was the darted iron of Queequeg. Then all in one welded commotion came an invisible push from astern, while forward the boat seemed striking on a ledge; the sail collapsed and exploded; a

gush of scalding vapor shot up near by; something rolled and tumbled like an earthquake beneath us. The whole crew were half suffocated as they were tossed helter-skelter into the white curdling cream of the squall. Squall, whale, and harpoon had all blended together; and the whale, merely grazed by the iron, escaped.

Though completely swamped, the boat was nearly unharmed. Swimming round it we picked up the floating oars, and lashing them across the gunwale, tumbled back to our places. There we sat up to our knees in the sea, the water covering every rib and plank, so that to our downward gazing eyes the suspended craft seemed a coral boat grown up to us from the bottom of the ocean.

The wind increased to a howl; the waves dashed their bucklers together; the whole squall roared, forked, and crackled around us like a white fire upon the prairie, in which, unconsumed, we were burning; immortal in these jaws of death! In vain we hailed the other boats; as well roar to the live coals down the chimney of a flaming furnace as hail those boats in that storm. Meanwhile the driving scud, rack, and mist, grew darker with the shadows of night; no sign of the ship could be seen. The rising sea forbade all attempts to bale out the boat. The oars were useless as propellers, performing now the office of life-preservers. So, cutting the lashing of the waterproof match keg, after many failures Starbuck contrived to ignite the lamp in the lantern; then stretching it on a waif pole, handed it to Queequeg as the standard-bearer of this forlorn hope. There, then, he sat, holding up that imbecile candle in the heart of that almighty forlornness. There, then, he sat, the sign and symbol of a man without faith, hopelessly holding up hope in the midst of despair.

Wet, drenched through, and shivering cold, despairing of ship or boat, we lifted up our eyes as the dawn came on. The mist still spread over the sea, the empty lantern lay crushed in the bottom of the boat. Suddenly Queequeg started to his feet, hollowing his hand to his ear. We all heard a faint creaking, as of ropes and yards hitherto muffled by the storm. The sound came nearer and nearer; the thick mists were dimly parted by

a huge, vague form. Affrighted, we all sprang into the sea as the ship at last loomed into view, bearing right down upon us within a distance of not much more than its length.

Floating on the waves we saw the abandoned boat, as for one instant it tossed and gaped beneath the ship's bows like a chip at the base of a cataract; and then the vast hull rolled over it, and it was seen no more till it came up weltering astern. Again we swam for it, were dashed against it by the seas, and were at last taken up and safely landed on board. Ere the squall came close to, the other boats had cut loose from their fish and returned to the ship in good time. The ship had given us up, but was still cruising, if haply it might light upon some token of our perishing,—an oar or a lance pole.

CHAPTER XLIX

THE HYENA

THERE are certain queer times and occasions in this strange mixed affair we call life when a man takes this whole universe for a vast practical joke, though the wit thereof he but dimly discerns, and more than suspects that the joke is at nobody's expense but his own. However, nothing dispirits, and nothing seems worth while disputing. He bolts down all events, all creeds, and beliefs, and persuasions, all hard things visible and invisible, never mind how knobby; as an ostrich of potent digestion gobbles down bullets and gun flints. And as for small difficulties and worryings, prospects of sudden disaster, peril of life and limb; all these, and death itself, seem to him only sly, good-natured hits, and jolly punches in the side bestowed by the unseen and unaccountable old joker. That odd sort of wayward mood I am speaking of, comes over a man only in some time of extreme tribulation; it comes in the very midst of his earnestness, so that what just before might have seemed to him a thing most momentous, now seems but a part of the general

joke. There is nothing like the perils of whaling to breed this free and easy sort of genial, desperado philosophy; and with it I now regarded this whole voyage of the Pequod, and the great White Whale its object.

"Queequeg," said I, when they had dragged me, the last man, to the deck, and I was still shaking myself in my jacket to fling off the water; "Queequeg, my fine friend, does this sort of thing often happen?" Without much emotion, though soaked through just like me, he gave me to understand that such things did often happen.

"Mr. Stubb," said I, turning to that worthy, who, buttoned up in his oil-jacket, was now calmly smoking his pipe in the rain; "Mr. Stubb, I think I have heard you say that of all whalemén you ever met, our chief mate, Mr. Starbuck, is by far the most careful and prudent. I suppose then, that going plump on a flying whale with your sail set in a foggy squall is the height of a whalemán's discretion?"

"Certain. I've lowered for whales from a leaking ship in a gale off Cape Horn."

"Mr. Flask," said I, turning to little King-Post, who was standing close by; "you are experienced in these things, and I am not. Will you tell me whether it is an unalterable law in this fishery, Mr. Flask, for an oarsman to break his own back pulling himself back-foremost into death's jaws?"

"Can't you twist that smaller?" said Flask. "Yes, that's the law. I should like to see a boat's crew backing water up to a whale face foremost. Ha, ha! the whale would give them squint for squint, mind that!"

Here then, from three impartial witnesses, I had a deliberate statement of the entire case. Considering, therefore, that squalls and capsizings in the water and consequent bivouacks on the deep, were matters of common occurrence in this kind of life; considering that at the superlatively critical instant of going on to the whale I must resign my life into the hands of him who steered the boat—oftentimes a fellow who at that very moment is in his impetuousness upon the point of scuttling the craft with his own frantic stampings; considering that the particular disaster to our own particular boat was chiefly to be

imputed to Starbuck's driving on to his whale almost in the teeth of a squall, and considering that Starbuck, notwithstanding, was famous for his great heedfulness in the fishery; considering that I belonged to this uncommonly prudent Starbuck's boat; and finally considering in what a devil's chase I was implicated, touching the White Whale: taking all things together, I say, I thought I might as well go below and make a rough draft of my will. "Queequeg," said I, "come along, you shall be my lawyer, executor, and legatee."

It may seem strange that of all men sailors should be tinkering at their last wills and testaments, but there are no people in the world more fond of that diversion. This was the fourth time in my nautical life that I had done the same thing. After the ceremony was concluded upon the present occasion, I felt all the easier; a stone was rolled away from my heart. Besides, all the days I should now live would be as good as the days that Lazarus lived after his resurrection; a supplementary clean gain of so many months or weeks as the case might be. I survived myself; my death and burial were locked up in my chest. I looked round me tranquilly and contentedly, like a quiet ghost with a clean conscience sitting inside the bars of a snug family vault.

Now then, thought I, unconsciously rolling up the sleeves of my frock, here goes a cool, collected dive at death and destruction, and the devil fetch the hindmost. ✓

CHAPTER L

AHAB'S BOAT AND CREW. FEDALLAH

"Who would have thought it, Flask!" cried Stubb; "if I had but one leg you would not catch me in a boat, unless maybe to stop the plug-hole with my timber toe. Oh! he's a wonderful old man!"

"I don't think it so strange, after all, on that account," said

Flask. "If his leg were off at the hip, now, it would be a different thing. That would disable him; but he has one knee, and good part of the other left, you know."

["I don't know that, my little man; I never yet saw him kneel."]
• • • • •

Among whale-wise people it has often been argued whether, considering the paramount importance of his life to the success of the voyage, it is right for a whaling captain to jeopardize that life in the active perils of the chase. So Tamerlane's soldiers often argued with tears in their eyes, whether that invaluable life of his ought to be carried into the thickest of the fight.

But with Ahab the question assumed a modified aspect. Considering that with two legs man is but a hobbling wight in all times of danger; considering that the pursuit of whales is always under great and extraordinary difficulties; that every individual moment, indeed, then comprises a peril; under these circumstances is it wise for any maimed man to enter a whale-boat in the hunt? As a general thing, the joint-owners of the Pequod must have plainly thought not.

Ahab well knew that although his friends at home would think little of his entering a boat in certain comparatively harmless vicissitudes of the chase, for the sake of being near the scene of action and giving his orders in person, yet for Captain Ahab to have a boat actually apportioned to him as a regular headsman in the hunt—above all for Captain Ahab to be supplied with five extra men, as that same boat's crew, he well knew that such generous conceits never entered the heads of the owners of the Pequod. Therefore he had not solicited a boat's crew from them, nor had he in any way hinted his desires on that head. Nevertheless he had taken private measures of his own touching all that matter. Until Cabaco's published discovery, the sailors had little foreseen it, though to be sure when, after being a little while out of port, all hands had concluded the customary business of fitting the whaleboats for service; when some time after this Ahab was now and then found bestirring himself in the matter of making thole-pins with his own hands for what was thought to be one of the spare boats, and even solicitously cutting the small wooden skewers, which when the

line is running out are pinned over the groove in the bow: when all this was observed in him, and particularly his solicitude in having an extra coat of sheathing in the bottom of the boat, as if to make it better withstand the pointed pressure of his ivory limb; and also the anxiety he evinced in exactly shaping the thigh board, or clumsy cleat, as it is sometimes called, the horizontal piece in the boat's bow for bracing the knee against in darting or stabbing at the whale; when it was observed how often he stood up in that boat with his solitary knee fixed in the semi-circular depression in the cleat, and with the carpenter's chisel gouged out a little here and straightened it a little there; all these things, I say, had awakened much interest and curiosity at the time. But almost everybody supposed that this particular preparative heedfulness in Ahab must only be with a view to the ultimate chase of Moby Dick; for he had already revealed his intention to hunt that mortal monster in person. But such a supposition did by no means involve the remotest suspicion as to any boat's crew being assigned to that boat.

Now, with the subordinate phantoms, what wonder remained soon waned away; for in a whaler wonders soon wane. Besides, now and then such unaccountable odds and ends of strange nations come up from the unknown nooks and ash-holes of the earth to man these floating outlaws of whalers; and the ships themselves often pick up such queer castaway creatures found tossing about the open sea on planks, bits of wreck, oars, whale-boats, canoes, blown-off Japanese junks, and what not; that Beelzebub himself might climb up the side and step down into the cabin to chat with the captain, and it would not create any unsubduable excitement in the fore-castle.

But be all this as it may, certain it is that while the subordinate phantoms soon found their place among the crew, though still as it were somehow distinct from them, yet that hair-turbaned Fedallah remained a muffled mystery to the last. Whence he came in a mannerly world like this, by what sort of unaccountable tie he soon evinced himself to be linked with Ahab's peculiar fortunes; nay, so far as to have some sort of a half-hinted influence; Heaven knows, but it might have been even authority over him; all this none knew. But one cannot sustain

✓ an indifferent air concerning Fedallah. He was such a creature as civilized, domestic people in the temperate zone only see in their dreams, and that but dimly; but the like of whom now and then glide among the unchanging Asiatic communities, especially the Oriental isles to the east of the continent—those insulated, immemorial, unalterable countries, which even in these modern days still preserve much of the ghostly aboriginalness of earth's primal generations, when the memory of the first man was a distinct recollection, and all men his descendants, unknowing whence he came, eyed each other as real phantoms, and asked of the sun and the moon why they were created and to what end; when though, according to Genesis, the angels indeed consorted with the daughters of men, the devils also, add the uncanonical Rabbins, indulged in mundane amours.

CHAPTER LI

THE SPIRIT-SPOUT

DAYS, weeks passed, and under easy sail, the ivory Pequod had slowly swept across four several cruising-grounds; that off the Azores; off the Cape de Verdes; on the Plate (so called), being off the mouth of the Rio de la Plata; and the Carrol Ground, an unstaked, watery locality, southerly from St. Helena.

It was while gliding through these latter waters that one serene and moonlight night, when all the waves rolled by like scrolls of silver; and, by their soft, suffusing seethings, made what seemed a silvery silence, not a solitude: on such a silent night a silvery jet was seen far in advance of the white bubbles at the bow. Lit up by the moon, it looked celestial; seemed some plumed and glittering god uprising from the sea. Fedallah first descried this jet. For of these moonlight nights, it was his wont to mount to the main-mast head, and stand a look-out there, with the same precision as if it had been day. And yet, though herds of whales were seen by night, not one whaleman

in a hundred would venture a lowering for them. You may think with what emotions, then, the seamen beheld this old Oriental perched aloft at such unusual hours; his turban and the moon, companions in one sky. But when, after spending his uniform interval there for several successive nights without uttering a single sound; when, after all this silence, his unearthly voice was heard announcing that silvery, moon-lit jet, every reclining mariner started to his feet as if some winged spirit had lighted in the rigging, and hailed the mortal crew. "There she blows!" Had the trump of judgment blown, they could not have quivered more; yet still they felt no terror; rather pleasure. For though it was a most unwonted hour, yet so impressive was the cry, and so deliriously exciting, that almost every soul on board instinctively desired a lowering.

Walking the deck with quick, side-lunging strides, Ahab commanded the t'gallant sails and royals to be set, and every stunsail spread. The best man in the ship must take the helm. Then, with every mast-head manned, the piled-up craft rolled down before the wind. The strange, upheaving, lifting tendency of the taffrail breeze filling the hollows of so many sails, made the buoyant, hovering deck to feel like air beneath the feet; while still she rushed along, as if two antagonistic influences were struggling in her—one to mount direct to heaven, the other to drive yawingly to some horizontal goal. And had you watched Ahab's face that night, you would have thought that in him also two different things were warring. While his one live leg made lively echoes along the deck, every stroke of his dead limb sounded like a coffin-tap. On life and death this old man walked. But though the ship so swiftly sped, and though from every eye, like arrows, the eager glances shot, yet the silvery jet was no more seen that night. Every sailor swore he saw it once, but not a second time.

This midnight-spout had almost grown a forgotten thing, when, some days after, lol at the same silent hour, it was again announced: again it was descried by all; but upon making sail to overtake it, once more it disappeared as if it had never been. And so it served us night after night, till no one heeded it but to wonder at it. Mysteriously jetted into the clear moonlight,

or starlight, as the case might be; disappearing again for one whole day, or two days, or three; and somehow seeming at every distinct repetition to be advancing still further and further in our van, [this solitary jet seemed for ever alluring us on.]

Nor with the immemorial superstition of their race, and in accordance with the preternaturalness, as it seemed, which in many things invested the Pequod, were there wanting [some of the seamen who swore that whenever and wherever descried; at however remote times, or in however far apart latitudes and longitudes, that unneighbourable spout was cast by one self-same whale; and that whale, Moby Dick.] For a time, there reigned, too, a sense of peculiar dread at this flitting apparition, as if it were treacherously beckoning us on and on, in order that the monster might turn round upon us, and rend us at last in the remotest and most savage seas.

These temporary apprehensions, so vague but so awful, derived a wondrous potency from the contrasting serenity of the weather, in which, beneath all its blue blandness, some thought there lurked a devilish charm, as for day and days we voyaged along, through seas so wearily, lonesomely mild, that all space, in repugnance to our vengeful errand, seemed vacating itself of life before our urn-like prow.

But, at last, when turning to the eastward, the Cape winds began howling around us, and we rose and fell upon the long, troubled seas that are there; when the ivory-tusked Pequod sharply bowed to the blast, and gored the dark waves in her madness, till, like showers of silver chips, the foam-flakes flew over her bulwarks; then all this desolate vacuity of life went away, but gave place to sights more dismal than before.

Close to our bows, strange forms in the water darted hither and thither before us; while thick in our rear flew the inscrutable sea-ravens. And every morning, perched on our stays, rows of these birds were seen; [and spite of our hootings, for a long time obstinately clung to the hemp, as though they deemed our ship some drifting, uninhabited craft; a thing appointed to desolation, and therefore fit roosting-place for their homeless selves.] And heaved and heaved, still unrestingly heaved the black sea, as if its vast tides were a conscience; and the great

mundane soul were in anguish and remorse for the long sin and suffering it had bred. ✓

Cape of Good Hope, do they call ye? Rather Cape Tormentoto, as called of yore; for long allured by the perfidious silences that before had attended us, we found ourselves launched into this tormented sea, where guilty beings transformed into those fowls and these fish, seemed condemned to swim on everlastingly without any haven in store, or beat that black air without any horizon. But calm, snow-white, and un-
varying; still directing its fountain of feathers to the sky; still beckoning us on from before, the solitary jet would at times be
descried. ✓

During all this blackness of the elements, Ahab, though assuming for the time the almost continual command of the drenched and dangerous deck, manifested the gloomiest reserve; and more seldom than ever addressed his mates. In tempestuous times like these, after everything above and aloft has been secured, nothing more can be done but passively to await the issue of the gale. Then Captain and crew become practical fatalists. So, with his ivory leg inserted into its accustomed hole, and with one hand firmly grasping a shroud, Ahab for hours and hours would stand gazing dead to windward, while an occasional squall of sleet or snow would all but congeal his very eyelashes together. Meantime, the crew driven from the forward part of the ship by the perilous seas that burstingly broke over its bows, stood in a line along the bulwarks in the waist; and the better to guard against the leaping waves, each man had slipped himself into a sort of bowline secured to the rail, in which he swung as in a loosened belt. Few or no words were spoken; and the silent ship, as if manned by painted sailors in wax, day after day tore on through all the swift madness and gladness of the demoniac waves. By night the same muteness of humanity before the shrieks of the ocean prevailed; still in silence the men swung in the bowlines; still wordless Ahab stood up to the blast. Even when wearied nature seemed demanding repose he would not seek that repose in his hammock. Never could Starbuck forget the old man's aspect, when one night going down into the cabin to mark how the

barometer stood, he saw him with closed eyes sitting straight in his floor-screwed chair; the rain and half-melted sleet of the storm from which he had some time before emerged, still slowly dripping from the unremoved hat and coat. On the table beside him lay unrolled one of those charts of tides and currents which have previously been spoken of. His lantern swung from his tightly clenched hand. Though the body was erect, the head was thrown back so that the closed eyes were pointed towards the needle of the tell-tale that swung from a beam in the ceiling.*

Terrible old man! thought Starbuck with a shudder, sleeping in this gale, still thou steadfastly eyest thy purpose.

CHAPTER LII

THE ALBATROSS

SOUTH-EASTWARD from the Cape, off the distant Crozetts, a good cruising ground for Right Whalemén, a sail loomed ahead, the Goney (Albatross) by name. As she slowly drew nigh, from my lofty perch at the fore-mast-head, I had a good view of that sight so remarkable to a tyro in the far ocean fisheries—a whaler at sea, and long absent from home.

As if the waves had been fullers, this craft was bleached like the skeleton of a stranded walrus. All down her sides, this spectral appearance was traced with long channels of reddened rust, while all her spars and her rigging were like the thick branches of trees furred over with hoar-frost. Only her lower sails were set. A wild sight it was to see her long-bearded look-outs at those three mast-heads. They seemed clad in the skins of beasts, so torn and bepatched the raiment that had survived nearly four years of cruising. Standing in iron hoops nailed to the mast, they swayed and swung over a fathomless sea;

* The cabin-compass is called the tell-tale, because without going to the compass at the helm, the Captain, while below, can inform himself of the course of the ship.

and though, when the ship slowly glided close under our stern, we six men in the air came so nigh to each other that we might almost have leaped from the mast-heads of one ship to those of the other; yet, those forlorn-looking fishermen, mildly eyeing us as they passed, said not one word to our own look-outs, while the quarter-deck hail was being heard from below.

"Ship ahoy! Have ye seen the White Whale?"

But as the strange captain, leaning over the pallid bulwarks, was in the act of putting his trumpet to his mouth, it somehow fell from his hand into the sea; and the wind now rising amain, he in vain strove to make himself heard without it. Meantime his ship was still increasing the distance between. While in various silent ways the seamen of the Pequod were evincing their observance of this ominous incident at the first mere mention of the White Whale's name to another ship, Ahab for a moment paused; it almost seemed as though he would have lowered a boat to board the stranger, had not the threatening wind forbade. But taking advantage of his windward position, he again seized his trumpet, and knowing by her aspect that the stranger vessel was a Nantucketer and shortly bound home, he loudly hailed—"Ahoy there! This is the Pequod, bound round the world! Tell them to address all future letters to the Pacific ocean! and this time three years, if I am not at home, tell them to address them to ——"

At that moment the two wakes were fairly crossed, and instantly, then, in accordance with their singular ways, shoals of small harmless fish, that for some days before had been placidly swimming by our side, darted away with what seemed shuddering fins, and ranged themselves fore and aft with the stranger's flanks. Though in the course of his continual voyagings Ahab must often before have noticed a similar sight, yet, to any monomaniac man, the veriest trifles capriciously carry meanings.

"Swim away from me, do ye?" murmured Ahab, gazing over into the water. (There seemed but little in the words, but the tone conveyed more of deep helpless sadness than the insane old man had ever before evinced.) But turning to the steersman, who thus far had been holding the ship in the wind to diminish

her headway, he cried out in his old lion voice,—“Up helm! Keep her off round the world!”

Round the world! There is much in that sound to inspire proud feelings; but whereto does all that circumnavigation conduct? Only through numberless perils to the very point whence we started, where those that we left behind secure, were all the time before us.

Were this world an endless plain, and by sailing eastward we could for ever reach new distances, and discover sights more sweet and strange than any Cyclades or Islands of King Solomon, then there were promise in the voyage. But in pursuit of those far mysteries we dream of, or in tormented chase of that demon phantom that, some time or other, swims before all human hearts; while chasing such over this round globe, they either lead us on in barren mazes or midway leave us whelmed.

CHAPTER LIII

THE GAM

THE ostensible reason why Ahab did not go on board of the whaler we had spoken was this: the wind and sea betokened storms. But even had this not been the case, he would not after all, perhaps, have boarded her—judging by his subsequent conduct on similar occasions—if so it had been that, by the process of hailing, he had obtained a negative answer to the question he put. For, as it eventually turned out, he cared not to consort, even for five minutes, with any stranger captain, except he could contribute some of that information he so absorbingly sought. But all this might remain inadequately estimated, were not something said here of the peculiar usages of whaling-vessels when meeting each other in foreign seas, and especially on a common cruising-ground.

If two strangers crossing the Pine Barrens in New York State, or the equally desolate Salisbury Plain in England; if

casually encountering each other in such inhospitable wilds, these twain, for the life of them, cannot well avoid a mutual salutation; and stopping for a moment to interchange the news; and, perhaps, sitting down for a while and resting in concert: then, how much more natural that upon the illimitable Pine Barrens and Salisbury Plains of the sea, two whaling vessels descrying each other at the ends of the earth—off lone Fanning's Island, or the far away King's Mills; how much more natural, I say, that under such circumstances these ships should not only interchange hails, but come into still closer, more friendly and sociable contact. And especially would this seem to be a matter of course, in the case of vessels owned in one seaport, and whose captains, officers, and not a few of the men are personally known to each other; and consequently, have all sorts of dear domestic things to talk about.

For the long absent ship, the outward-bounder, perhaps, has letters on board; at any rate, she will be sure to let her have some papers of a date a year or two later than the last one on her blurred and thumb-worn files. And in return for that courtesy, the outward-bound ship would receive the latest whaling intelligence from the cruising-ground to which she may be destined, a thing of the utmost importance to her. And in degree, all this will hold true concerning whaling vessels crossing each other's track on the cruising-ground itself, even though they are equally long absent from home. For one of them may have received a transfer of letters from some third, and now far remote vessel; and some of those letters may be for the people of the ship she now meets. Besides, they would exchange the whaling news, and have an agreeable chat. For not only would they meet with all the sympathies of sailors, but likewise with all the peculiar congenialities arising from a common pursuit and mutually shared privations and perils.

Nor would difference of country make any very essential difference; that is, so long as both parties speak one language, as is the case with Americans and English. Though, to be sure, from the small number of English whalers, such meetings do not very often occur, and when they do occur there is too apt to be a sort of shyness between them; for your Englishman is rather

reserved, and your Yankee, he does not fancy that sort of thing in anybody but himself. Besides, the English whalers sometimes affect a kind of metropolitan superiority over the American whalers; regarding the long, lean Nantucketer, with his nondescript provincialisms, as a sort of sea-peasant. But where this superiority in the English whalemén does really consist, it would be hard to say, seeing that the Yankees in one day, collectively, kill more whales than all the English, collectively, in ten years. But this is a harmless little foible in the English whale-hunters, which the Nantucketer does not take much to heart; probably, because he knows that he has a few foibles himself.

So, then, we see that of all ships separately sailing the sea, the whalers have most reason to be sociable—and they are so. Whereas, some merchant ships crossing each other's wake in the mid-Atlantic, will oftentimes pass on without so much as a single word of recognition, mutually cutting each other on the high seas, like a brace of dandies in Broadway; and all the time indulging, perhaps, in finical criticism upon each other's rig. As for Men-of-War, when they chance to meet at sea, they first go through such a string of silly bowings and scrapings, such a ducking of ensigns, that there does not seem to be much right-down hearty good-will and brotherly love about it at all. As touching Slave-ships meeting, why, they are in such a prodigious hurry, they run away from each other as soon as possible. And as for Pirates, when they chance to cross each other's cross-bones, the first hail is—"How many skulls?"—the same way that whalers hail—"How many barrels?" And that question once answered, pirates straightway steer apart, for they are infernal villains on both sides, and don't like to see overmuch of each other's villanous likenesses.

But look at the godly, honest, unostentatious, hospitable, sociable, free-and-easy whaler! What does the whaler do when she meets another whaler in any sort of decent weather? She has a "*Gam*," a thing so utterly unknown to all other ships that they never heard of the name even; and if by chance they should hear of it, they only grin at it, and repeat gamesome stuff about "spouters" and "blubber-boilers," and such like pretty exclamations. Why it is that all Merchant-seamen, and also all

Pirates and Man-of-War's men, and Slave-ship sailors, cherish such a scornful feeling towards Whale-ships; this is a question it would be hard to answer. Because, in the case of pirates, say, I should like to know whether that profession of theirs has any peculiar glory about it. It sometimes ends in uncommon elevation, indeed; but only at the gallows. And besides, when a man is elevated in that odd fashion, he has no proper foundation for his superior altitude. Hence, I conclude, that in boasting himself to be high lifted above a whaleman, in that assertion the pirate has no solid basis to stand on. ugh!

But what is a *Gam*? You might wear out your index-finger running up and down the columns of dictionaries, and never find the word. Dr. Johnson never attained to that erudition; Noah Webster's ark does not hold it. Nevertheless, this same expressive word has now for many years been in constant use among some fifteen thousand true born Yankees. Certainly it needs a definition, and should be incorporated into the Lexicon. With that view, let me learnedly define it.

GAM. NOUN—A *social meeting of two (or more) Whale-ships, generally on a cruising-ground; when, after exchanging hails, they exchange visits by boats' crews: the two captains remaining, for the time, on board of one ship, and the two chief mates on the other.*

There is another little item about Gamming which must not be forgotten here. All professions have their own little peculiarities of detail; so has the whale fishery. In a pirate, man-of-war, or slave ship, when the captain is rowed anywhere in his boat, he always sits in the stern sheets on a comfortable, sometimes cushioned seat there, and often steers himself with a pretty little milliner's tiller decorated with gay cords and ribbons. But the whale-boat has no seat astern, no sofa of that sort whatever, and no tiller at all. High times indeed, if whaling captains were wheeled about the water on castors like gouty old aldermen in patent chairs. And as for a tiller, the whale-boat never admits of any such effeminacy; and therefore as in gamming a complete boat's crew must leave the ship, and hence as the boat steerer or harpooneer is of the number, that subordinate is the steersman upon the occasion, and the captain, having no

place to sit in, is pulled off to his visit all standing like a pine tree. And often you will notice that being conscious of the eyes of the whole visible world resting on him from the sides of the two ships, this standing captain is all alive to the importance of sustaining his dignity by maintaining his legs. Nor is this any very easy matter; for in his rear is the immense projecting steering oar hitting him now and then in the small of his back, the after-oar reciprocating by rapping his knees in front. He is thus completely wedged before and behind, and can only expand himself sideways by settling down on his stretched legs; but a sudden, violent pitch of the boat will often go far to topple him, because length of foundation is nothing without corresponding breadth. Merely make a spread angle of two poles, and you cannot stand them up. Then, again, it would never do in plain sight of the world's riveted eyes, it would never do, I say, for this straddling captain to be seen steadying himself the slightest particle by catching hold of anything with his hands; indeed, as token of his entire, buoyant self-command, he generally carries his hands in his trowsers' pockets; but perhaps being generally very large, heavy hands, he carries them there for ballast. Nevertheless there have occurred instances, well authenticated ones too, where the captain has been known for an uncommonly critical moment or two, in a sudden squall say—to seize hold of the nearest oarsman's hair, and hold on there like grim death.

CHAPTER LIV

THE TOWN-HO'S STORY

(As told at the Golden Inn.)

THE Cape of Good Hope, and all the watery region round about there, is much like some noted four corners of a great highway, where you meet more travellers than in any other part.

It was not very long after speaking the Goney that another

homeward-bound whaleman, the Town-Ho,* was encountered. She was manned almost wholly by Polynesians. In the short gam that ensued she gave us strong news of Moby Dick. To some the general interest in the White Whale was now wildly heightened by a circumstance of the Town-Ho's story, which seemed obscurely to involve with the whale a certain wondrous, inverted visitation of one of those so called judgments of God which at times are said to overtake some men. This latter circumstance, with its own particular accompaniments, forming what may be called the secret part of the tragedy about to be narrated, never reached the ears of Captain Ahab or his mates. For that secret part of the story was unknown to the captain of the Town-Ho himself. It was the private property of three confederate white seamen of that ship, one of whom, it seems, communicated it to Tashtego with Romish injunctions of secrecy, but the following night Tashtego rambled in his sleep, and revealed so much of it in that way, that when he was wakened he could not well withhold the rest. Nevertheless, so potent an influence did this thing have on those seamen in the Pequod who came to the full knowledge of it, and by such a strange delicacy, to call it so, were they governed in this matter, that they kept the secret among themselves so that it never transpired abaft the Pequod's main-mast. Interweaving in its proper place this darker thread with the story as publicly narrated on the ship, the whole of this strange affair I now proceed to put on lasting record.

For my humor's sake, I shall preserve the style in which I once narrated it at Lima, to a lounging circle of my Spanish friends, one saint's eve, smoking upon the thick-gilt tiled piazza of the Golden Inn. Of those fine cavaliers, the young Dons, Pedro and Sebastian, were on the closer terms with me; and hence the interluding questions they occasionally put, and which are duly answered at the time.

"Some two years prior to my first learning the events which I am about rehearsing to you, gentlemen, the Town-Ho, Sperm

* The ancient whale-cry upon first sighting a whale from the mast-head, still used by whalemen in hunting the famous Gallipagos terrapin.

Whaler of Nantucket, was cruising in your Pacific here, not very many days' sail westward from the eaves of this good Golden Inn. She was somewhere to the northward of the Line. One morning upon handling the pumps, according to daily usage, it was observed that she made more water in her hold than common. They supposed a sword-fish had stabbed her, gentlemen. But the captain, having some unusual reason for believing that rare good luck awaited him in those latitudes; and therefore being very averse to quit them, and the leak not being then considered at all dangerous, though, indeed, they could not find it after searching the hold as low down as was possible in rather heavy weather, the ship still continued her cruising, the mariners working at the pumps at wide and easy intervals; but no good luck came; more days went by, and not only was the leak yet undiscovered, but it sensibly increased. So much so, that now taking some alarm, the captain, making all sail, stood away for the nearest harbor among the islands, there to have his hull hove out and repaired.

"Though no small passage was before her, yet, if the commonest chance favored, he did not at all fear that his ship would founder by the way, because his pumps were of the best, and being periodically relieved at them, those six-and-thirty men of his could easily keep the ship free; never mind if the leak should double on her. In truth, well nigh the whole of this passage being attended by very prosperous breezes, the Town-Ho had all but certainly arrived in perfect safety at her port without the occurrence of the least fatality, had it not been for the brutal overbearing of Radney, the mate, a Vineyarder, and the bitterly provoked vengeance of Steelkilt, a Lakeman and desperado from Buffalo."

"'Lakeman!—Buffalo! Pray, what is a Lakeman, and where is Buffalo?' said Don Sebastian, rising in his swinging mat of grass.

"On the eastern shore of our Lake Erie, Don; but—I crave your courtesy—may be, you shall soon hear further of all that. Now, gentlemen, in square-sail brigs and three-masted ships, well-nigh as large and stout as any that ever sailed out of your old Callao to far Manilla; this Lakeman, in the land-locked heart of our America, had yet been nurtured by all those agrarian

freebooting impressions popularly connected with the open ocean. For in their interflowing aggregate, those grand fresh-water seas of ours—Erie, and Ontario, and Huron, and Superior, and Michigan,—possess an ocean-like expansiveness, with many of the ocean's noblest traits; with many of its rimmed varieties of races and of climes. They contain round archipelagoes of romantic isles, even as the Polynesian waters do; in large part, are shored by two great contrasting nations, as the Atlantic is; they furnish long maritime approaches to our numerous territorial colonies from the East, dotted all round their banks; here and there are frowned upon by batteries, and by the goat-like craggy guns of lofty Mackinaw; they have heard the fleet thunders of naval victories; at intervals, they yield their beaches to wild barbarians, whose red painted faces flash from out their peltry wigwams; for leagues and leagues are flanked by ancient and unentered forests, where the gaunt pines stand like serried lines of kings in Gothic genealogies; those same woods harboring wild Afric beasts of prey, and silken creatures whose exported furs give robes to Tartar Emperors; they mirror the paved capitals of Buffalo and Cleveland, as well as Winnebago villages; they float alike the full-rigged merchant ship, the armed cruiser of the State, the steamer, and the beech canoe; they are swept by Borean and dismasting blasts as direful as any that lash the salted wave; they know what shipwrecks are, for out of sight of land, however inland, they have drowned full many a midnight ship with all its shrieking crew. Thus, gentlemen, though an inlander, Steelkilt was wild-ocean born, and wild-ocean nurtured; as much of an audacious mariner as any. And for Radney, though in his infancy he may have laid him down on the lone Nantucket beach, to nurse at his maternal sea; though in after life he had long followed our austere Atlantic and your contemplative Pacific; yet was he quite as vengeful and full of social quarrel as the backwoods seaman, fresh from the latitudes of buck-horn handled Bowie-knives. Yet was this Nantucketer a man with some good-hearted traits; and this Lake-man, a mariner, who though a sort of devil indeed, might yet by inflexible firmness, only tempered by that common decency of human recognition which is the meanest slave's right; thus

treated, this Steelkilt had long been retained harmless and docile. At all events, he had proved so thus far; but Radney was doomed and made mad, and Steelkilt—but, gentlemen, you shall hear.

“It was not more than a day or two at the furthest after pointing her prow for her island haven, that the Town-Ho's leak seemed again increasing, but only so as to require an hour or more at the pumps every day. You must know that in a settled and civilized ocean like our Atlantic, for example, some skippers think little of pumping their whole way across it; though of a still, sleepy night, should the officer of the deck happen to forget his duty in that respect, the probability would be that he and his shipmates would never again remember it, on account of all hands gently subsiding to the bottom. Nor in the solitary and savage seas far from you to the westward, gentlemen, is it altogether unusual for ships to keep clanging at their pump-handles in full chorus even for a voyage of considerable length; that is, if it lie along a tolerably accessible coast, or if any other reasonable retreat is afforded them. It is only when a leaky vessel is in some very out of the way part of those waters, some really landless latitude, that her captain begins to feel a little anxious.

“Much this way had it been with the Town-Ho; so when her leak was found gaining once more, there was in truth some small concern manifested by several of her company; especially by Radney the mate. He commanded the upper sails to be well hoisted, sheeted home anew, and every way expanded to the breeze. Now this Radney, I suppose, was as little of a coward, and as little inclined to any sort of nervous apprehensiveness touching his own person as any fearless, unthinking creature on land or on sea that you can conveniently imagine, gentlemen. Therefore when he betrayed this solicitude about the safety of the ship, some of the seamen declared that it was only on account of his being a part owner in her. So when they were working that evening at the pumps, there was on this head no small gamesomeness slily going on among them, as they stood with their feet continually overflowed by the rippling clear water; clear as any mountain spring, gentlemen—that bubbling from

the pumps ran across the deck, and poured itself out in steady spouts at the lee scupper-holes.

"Now, as you well know, it is not seldom the case in this conventional world of ours—watery or otherwise; that when a person placed in command over his fellow-men finds one of them to be very significantly his superior in general pride of manhood, straightway against that man he conceives an unconquerable dislike and bitterness; and if he have a chance he will pull down and pulverize that subaltern's tower, and make a little heap of dust of it. Be this conceit of mine as it may, gentlemen, at all events Steelkilt was a tall and noble animal with a head like a Roman, and a flowing golden beard like the tasseled housings of your last viceroy's snorting charger; and a brain, and a heart, and a soul in him, gentlemen, which had made Steelkilt Charlemagne, had he been born son to Charlemagne's father. But Radney, the mate, was ugly as a mule; yet as hardy, as stubborn, as malicious. He did not love Steelkilt, and Steelkilt knew it.

"Espying the mate drawing near as he was toiling at the pump with the rest, the Lakeman affected not to notice him, but unawed, went on with his gay banterings.

"'Aye, aye, my merry lads, it's a lively leak this; hold a cannikin, one of ye, and let's have a taste. By the Lord, it's worth bottling! I tell ye what, men, old Rad's investment must go for it! he had best cut away his part of the hull and tow it home. The fact is, boys, that sword-fish only began the job; he's come back again with a gang of ship-carpenters, saw-fish, and file-fish, and what not; and the whole posse of 'em are now hard at work cutting and slashing at the bottom; making improvements, I suppose. If old Rad were here now, I'd tell him to jump overboard and scatter 'em. They're playing the devil with his estate, I can tell him. But he's a simple old soul,—Rad, and a beauty too. Boys, they say the rest of his property is invested in looking-glasses. I wonder if he'd give a poor devil like me the model of his nose."

"'Damn your eyes! what's that pump stopping for?' roared Radney, pretending not to have heard the sailors' talk. 'Thunder away at it!'

"‘Aye, aye, sir,’ said Steelkilt, merry as a cricket. ‘Lively, boys, lively, now!’ And with that the pump clanged like fifty fire-engines; the men tossed their hats off to it, and ere long that peculiar gasping of the lungs was heard which denotes the fullest tension of life’s utmost energies.

"Quitting the pump at last, with the rest of his band, the Lakeman went forward all panting, and sat himself down on the windlass; his face fiery red, his eyes bloodshot, and wiping the profuse sweat from his brow. Now what cozening fiend it was, gentlemen, that possessed Radney to meddle with such a man in that corporeally exasperated state, I know not; but so it happened. Intolerably striding along the deck, the mate commanded him to get a broom and sweep down the planks, and also a shovel, and remove some offensive matters consequent upon allowing a pig to run at large.

"Now, gentlemen, sweeping a ship’s deck at sea is a piece of household work which in all times but raging gales is regularly attended to every evening; it has been known to be done in the case of ships actually foundering at the time. Such, gentlemen, is the inflexibility of sea-usages and the instinctive love of neatness in seamen; some of whom would not willingly drown without first washing their faces. But in all vessels this broom business is the prescriptive province of the boys, if boys there be aboard. Besides, it was the stronger men in the Town-Ho that had been divided into gangs, taking turns at the pumps; and being the most athletic seaman of them all, Steelkilt had been regularly assigned captain of one of the gangs; consequently he should have been freed from any trivial business not connected with truly nautical duties, such being the case with his comrades. I mention all these particulars so that you may understand exactly how this affair stood between the two men.

"But there was more than this: the order about the shovel was almost as plainly meant to sting and insult Steelkilt, as though Radney had spat in his face. Any man who has gone sailor in a whale-ship will understand this; and all this and doubtless much more, the Lakeman fully comprehended when the mate uttered his command. But as he sat still for a moment, and as he steadfastly looked into the mate’s malignant eye and

perceived the stacks of powder-casks heaped up in him and the slow-match silently burning along towards them; as he instinctively saw all this, that strange forbearance and unwillingness to stir up the deeper passionateness in any already ireful being—a repugnance most felt, when felt at all, by really valiant men even when aggrieved—this nameless phantom feeling, gentlemen, stole over Steerkilt.

“Therefore, in his ordinary tone, only a little broken by the bodily exhaustion he was temporarily in, he answered him saying that sweeping the deck was not his business, and he would not do it. And then, without at all alluding to the shovel, he pointed to three lads as the customary sweepers; who, not being billeted at the pumps, had done little or nothing all day. To this, Radney replied with an oath, in a most domineering and outrageous manner unconditionally reiterating his command; meanwhile advancing upon the still seated Lakeman, with an uplifted cooper’s club hammer which he had snatched from a cask near by.

“Heated and irritated as he was by his spasmodic toil at the pumps, for all his first nameless feeling of forbearance the sweating Steerkilt could but ill brook this bearing in the mate; but somehow still smothering the conflagration within him, without speaking he remained doggedly rooted to his seat, till at last the incensed Radney shook the hammer within a few inches of his face, furiously commanding him to do his bidding.

“Steerkilt rose, and slowly retreating round the windlass, steadily followed by the mate with his menacing hammer, deliberately repeated his intention not to obey. Seeing, however, that his forbearance had not the slightest effect, by an awful and unspeakable intimation with his twisted hand he warned off the foolish and infatuated man; but it was to no purpose. And in this way the two went once slowly round the windlass; when, resolved at last no longer to retreat, bethinking him that he had now forborne as much as comported with his humor, the Lakeman paused on the hatches and thus spoke to the officer:

“‘Mr. Radney, I will not obey you. Take that hammer away, or look to yourself.’ But the predestinated mate coming still closer to him, where the Lakeman stood fixed, now shook the

heavy hammer within an inch of his teeth; meanwhile repeating a string of insufferable maledictions. Retreating not the thousandth part of an inch; stabbing him in the eye with the unflinching poniard of his glance, Steelkilt, clenching his right hand behind him and creepingly drawing it back, told his persecutor that if the hammer but grazed his cheek he (Steelkilt) would murder him. But, gentlemen, the fool had been branded for the slaughter by the gods. Immediately the hammer touched the cheek; the next instant the lower jaw of the mate was stove in his head; he fell on the hatch spouting blood like a whale.

"Ere the cry could go aft Steelkilt was shaking one of the backstays leading far aloft to where two of his comrades were standing their mast-heads. They were both Canallers.

"'Canallers!' cried Don Pedro, "'We have seen many whale-ships in our harbors, but never heard of your Canallers. Pardon: who and what are they?'

"'Canallers, Don, are the boatmen belonging to our grand Erie Canal. You must have heard of it.'

"'Nay, Senor; hereabouts in this dull, warm, most lazy, and hereditary land, we know but little of your vigorous North.'

"'Aye? Well then, Don, refill my cup. Your chicha's very fine; and ere proceeding further I will tell ye what our Canallers are; for such information may throw side-light upon my story.'

"For three hundred and sixty miles, gentlemen, through the entire breadth of the state of New York; through numerous populous cities and most thriving villages; through long, dismal, uninhabited swamps, and affluent, cultivated fields, unrivalled for fertility; by billiard-room and bar-room; through the holy-of-holies of great forests; on Roman arches over Indian rivers; through sun and shade; by happy hearts or broken; through all the wide contrasting scenery of those noble Mohawk counties; and especially, by rows of snow-white chapels, whose spires stand almost like milestones, flows one continual stream of Venetianly corrupt and often lawless life. There's your true Ashantee, gentlemen; there howl your pagans; where you ever find them, next door to you; under the long-flung shadow, and the snug patronizing lee of churches. For by some curious fatality, as it is often noted of your metropolitan freebooters

that they ever encamp around the halls of justice, so sinners, gentlemen, most abound in holiest vicinities.

"Is that a friar passing?" said Don Pedro, looking downwards into the crowded piazza, with humorous concern.

"Well for our northern friend, Dame Isabella's Inquisition wanes in Lima," laughed Don Sebastian. "Proceed, Senor."

"A moment! Pardon!" cried another of the company. "In the name of all us Limeese, I but desire to express to you, sir sailor, that we have by no means overlooked your delicacy in not substituting present Lima for distant Venice in your corrupt comparison. Oh! do not bow and look surprised; you know the proverb all along this coast—"Corrupt as Lima." It but bears out your saying, too; churches more plentiful than billiard-tables, and for ever open—and "Corrupt as Lima." So, too, Venice; I have been there; the holy city of the blessed evangelist, St. Mark!—St. Dominic, purge it! Your cup! Thanks: here I refill; now, you pour out again."

"Freely depicted in his own vocation, gentlemen, the Canaller would make a fine dramatic hero, so abundantly and picturesquely wicked is he. Like Mark Antony, for days and days along his green-turfed, flowery Nile, he indolently floats, openly toying with his red-cheeked Cleopatra, ripening his apricot thigh upon the sunny deck. But ashore, all this effeminacy is dashed. The brigandish guise which the Canaller so proudly sports; his slouched and gaily-ribboned hat betoken his grand features. A terror to the smiling innocence of the villages through which he floats; his swart visage and bold swagger are not unshunned in cities. Once a vagabond on his own canal, I have received good turns from one of these Canallers; I thank him heartily; would fain be not ungrateful; but it is often one of the prime redeeming qualities of your man of violence, that at times he has as stiff an arm to back a poor stranger in a strait, as to plunder a wealthy one. In sum, gentlemen, what the wildness of this canal life is, is emphatically evinced by this; that our wild whale-fishery contains so many of its most finished graduates, and that scarce any race of mankind, except Sydney men, are so much distrusted by our whaling captains. Nor does it at all diminish the curiousness of this matter, that to many thousands of our

rural boys and young men born along its line, the probationary life of the Grand Canal furnishes the sole transition between quietly reaping in a Christian corn-field, and recklessly ploughing the waters of the most barbaric seas."

✓ "I see! I see!" impetuously exclaimed Don Pedro, spilling his chicha upon his silvery ruffles. [No need to travel! The world's one Lima.] I had thought, now, that at your temperate North the generations were cold and holy as the hills.—But the story.'

"I left off, gentlemen, where the Lakeman shook the backstay. Hardly had he done so, when he was surrounded by the three junior mates and the four harpooneers, who all crowded him to the deck. But sliding down the ropes like baleful comets, the two Canallers rushed into the uproar, and sought to drag their man out of it towards the fore-castle. Others of the sailors joined with them in this attempt, and a twisted turmoil ensued; while standing out of harm's way, the valiant captain danced up and down with a whale-pike, calling upon his officers to manhandle that atrocious scoundrel, and smoke him along to the quarter-deck. At intervals, he ran close up to the revolving border of the confusion, and prying into the heart of it with his pike, sought to prick out the object of his resentment. But Steelkilt and his desperadoes were too much for them all; they succeeded in gaining the fore-castle deck, where, hastily slewing about three or four large casks in a line with the windlass, these sea-Parisians entrenched themselves behind the barricade."

"Come out of that, ye pirates!" roared the captain, now menacing them with a pistol in each hand, just brought to him by the steward. 'Come out of that, ye cut-throats!'

"Steelkilt leaped on the barricade, and striding up and down there, defied the worst the pistols could do; but gave the captain to understand distinctly, that his (Steelkilt's) death would be the signal for a murderous mutiny on the part of all hands. Fearing in his heart lest this might prove but too true, the captain a little desisted, but still commanded the insurgents instantly to return to their duty.

"Will you promise not to touch us, if we do?" demanded their ringleader.

"Turn to! turn to!—I make no promise;—to your duty! Do you want to sink the ship, by knocking off at a time like this? Turn to!" and he once more raised a pistol.

"Sink the ship?" cried Steelkilt. "Aye, let her sink. Not a man of us turns to, unless you swear not to raise a rope-yarn against us. What say ye, men?" turning to his comrades. A fierce cheer was their response.

"The Lakeman now patrolled the barricade, all the while keeping his eye on the Captain, and jerking out such sentences as these:—'It's not our fault; we didn't want it; I told him to take his hammer away; it was boy's business; he might have known me before this; I told him not to prick the buffalo; I believe I have broken a finger here against his cursed jaw; ain't those mincing knives down in the forecastle there, men? look to those handspikes, my hearties. Captain, by God, look to yourself; say the word; don't be a fool; forget it all; we are ready to turn to; treat us decently, and we're your men; but we won't be flogged.'

"Turn to! I make no promises, turn to, I say!"

"Look ye, now," cried the Lakeman, flinging out his arm towards him, 'there are a few of us here (and I am one of them) who have shipped for the cruise, d'ye see; now as you well know, sir, we can claim our discharge as soon as the anchor is down; so we don't want a row; it's not our interest; we want to be peaceable; we are ready to work, but we won't be flogged.'

"Turn to!" roared the Captain.

"Steelkilt glanced round him a moment, and then said:—'I tell you what it is now, Captain, rather than kill ye, and be hung for such a shabby rascal, we won't lift a hand against ye unless ye attack us; but till you say the word about not flogging us, we won't do a hand's turn.'

"Down into the forecastle then, down with ye, I'll keep ye there till ye're sick of it. Down ye go.'

"Shall we?" cried the ringleader to his men. Most of them were against it; but at length, in obedience to Steelkilt, they preceded him down into their dark den, growlingly disappearing, like bears into a cave.

"As the Lakeman's bare head was just level with the planks,

the Captain and his posse leaped the barricade, and rapidly drawing over the slide of the scuttle, planted their group of hands upon it, and loudly called for the steward to bring the heavy brass padlock belonging to the companion-way. Then opening the slide a little, the Captain whispered something down the crack, closed it, and turned the key upon them—ten in number—leaving on deck some twenty or more, who thus far had remained neutral.

"All night a wide-awake watch was kept by all the officers, forward and aft, especially about the forecastle scuttle and fore hatchway; at which last place it was feared the insurgents might emerge, after breaking through the bulkhead below. But the hours of darkness passed in peace; the men who still remained at their duty toiling hard at the pumps, whose clinking and clanking at intervals through the dreary night dismally resounded through the ship.

"At sunrise the Captain went forward, and knocking on the deck, summoned the prisoners to work; but with a yell they refused. Water was then lowered down to them, and a couple of handfuls of biscuit were tossed after it; when again turning the key upon them and pocketing it, the Captain returned to the quarter-deck. Twice every day for three days this was repeated; but on the fourth morning a confused wrangling, and then a scuffling was heard, as the customary summons was delivered; and suddenly four men burst up from the forecastle, saying they were ready to turn to. The fetid closeness of the air, and a famishing diet, united perhaps to some fears of ultimate retribution, had constrained them to surrender at discretion. Emboldened by this, the Captain reiterated his demand to the rest, but Steerkilt shouted up to him a terrific hint to stop his babbling and betake himself where he belonged. On the fifth morning three others of the mutineers bolted up into the air from the desperate arms below that sought to restrain them. Only three were left.

"'Better turn to, now?' said the Captain with a heartless jeer.

"'Shut us up again, will ye!' cried Steerkilt.

"'Oh! certainly,' said the Captain and the key clicked.

"It was at this point, gentlemen, that enraged by the defection

of seven of his former associates, and stung by the mocking voice that had last hailed him, and maddened by his long entombment in a place as black as the bowels of despair; it was then that Steerkilt proposed to the two Canallers, thus far apparently of one mind with him, to burst out of their hole at the next summoning of the garrison; and armed with their keen mincing knives (long, crescentic, heavy implements with a handle at each end) run a muck from the bowsprit to the taffrail; and if by any devilishness of desperation possible, seize the ship. For himself, he would do this, he said, whether they joined him or not. That was the last night he should spend in that den. But the scheme met with no opposition on the part of the other two; they swore they were ready for that, or for any other mad thing, for anything in short but a surrender. And what was more, they each insisted upon being the first man on deck, when the time to make the rush should come. But to this their leader as fiercely objected, reserving that priority for himself; particularly as his two comrades would not yield, the one to the other, in the matter; and both of them could not be first, for the ladder would but admit one man at a time. And here, gentlemen, the foul play of these miscreants must come out.

"Upon hearing the frantic project of their leader, each in his own separate soul had suddenly lighted, it would seem, upon the same piece of treachery, namely: to be foremost in breaking out, in order to be the first of the three, though the last of the ten, to surrender; and thereby secure whatever small chance of pardon such conduct might merit. But when Steerkilt made known his determination still to lead them to the last, they in some way, by some subtle chemistry of villany, mixed their before secret treacheries together; and when their leader fell into a doze, verbally opened their souls to each other in three sentences; and bound the sleeper with cords, and gagged him with cords; and shrieked out for the Captain at midnight.

"Thinking murder at hand, and smelling in the dark for the blood, he and all his armed mates and harpooneers rushed for the fore-castle. In a few minutes the scuttle was opened, and, bound hand and foot, the still struggling ringleader was shoved up into the air by his perfidious allies, who at once claimed the

honor of securing a man who had been fully ripe for murder. But all these were collared, and dragged along the deck like dead cattle; and, side by side, were seized up into the mizen rigging, like three quarters of meat, and there they hung till morning. 'Damn ye,' cried the Captain, pacing to and fro before them, 'the vultures would not touch ye, ye villains!'

"At sunrise he summoned all hands; and separating those who had rebelled from those who had taken no part in the mutiny, he told the former that he had a good mind to flog them all round—thought, upon the whole, he would do so—he ought to—justice demanded it; but for the present, considering their timely surrender, he would let them go with a reprimand, which he accordingly administered in the vernacular.

"'But as for you, ye carrion rogues,' turning to the three men in the rigging—'for you, I mean to mince ye up for the try-pots;' and, seizing a rope, he applied it with all his might to the backs of the two traitors, till they yelled no more, but lifelessly hung their heads sideways, as the two crucified thieves are drawn.

"'My wrist is sprained with ye!' he cried, at last; 'but there is still rope enough left for you, my fine bantam, that wouldn't give up. Take that gag from his mouth, and let us hear what he can say for himself.'

"For a moment the exhausted mutineer made a tremulous motion of his cramped jaws, and then painfully twisting round his head, said in a sort of hiss, 'What I say is this—and mind it well—if you flog me, I murder you!'

"'Say ye so? then see how ye frighten me'—and the Captain drew off with the rope to strike.

"'Best not,' hissed the Lakeman.

"'But I must,'—and the rope was once more drawn back for the stroke.

"Steelkilt here hissed out something, inaudible to all but the Captain; who, to the amazement of all hands, started back, paced the deck rapidly two or three times, and then suddenly throwing down his rope, said, 'I won't do it—let him go—cut him down: d'ye hear?'

But as the junior mates were hurrying to execute the order,

a pale man, with a bandaged head, arrested them—Radney the chief mate. Ever since the blow, he had lain in his berth; but that morning, hearing the tumult on the deck, he had crept out, and thus far had watched the whole scene. Such was the state of his mouth, that he could hardly speak; but mumbling something about *his* being willing and able to do what the captain dared not attempt, he snatched the rope and advanced to his pinioned foe.

“You are a coward!” hissed the Lakeman.

“So I am, but take that.” The mate was in the very act of striking, when another hiss stayed his uplifted arm. He paused: and then pausing no more, made good his word, spite of Steelkilt’s threat, whatever that might have been. The three men were then cut down, all hands were turned to, and, sullenly worked by the moody seamen, the iron pumps clanged as before.

“Just after dark that day, when one watch had retired below, a clamor was heard in the forecastle; and the two trembling traitors running up, besieged the cabin door, saying they durst not consort with the crew. Entreaties, cuffs, and kicks could not drive them back, so at their own instance they were put down in the ship’s run for salvation. Still, no sign of mutiny reappeared among the rest. On the contrary, it seemed, that mainly at Steelkilt’s instigation, they had resolved to maintain the strictest peacefulness, obey all orders to the last, and, when the ship reached port, desert her in a body. But in order to insure the speediest end to the voyage, they all agreed to another thing—namely, not to sing out for whales, in case any should be discovered. For, spite of her leak, and spite of all her other perils, the Town-Ho still maintained her mast-heads, and her captain was just as willing to lower for a fish that moment, as on the day his craft first struck the cruising ground; and Radney the mate was quite as ready to change his berth for a boat, and with his bandaged mouth seek to gag in death the vital jaw of the whale.

“But though the Lakeman had induced the seamen to adopt this sort of passiveness in their conduct, he kept his own counsel (at least till all was over) concerning his own proper and private revenge upon the man who had stung him in the ven-

tricles of his heart. He was in Radney the chief mate's watch; and as if the infatuated man sought to run more than half way to meet his doom, after the scene at the rigging, he insisted, against the express counsel of the captain, upon resuming the head of his watch at night. Upon this, and one or two other circumstances, Steelkilt systematically built the plan of his revenge.

"During the night, Radney had an unseamanlike way of sitting on the bulwarks of the quarter-deck, and leaning his arm upon the gunwale of the boat which was hoisted up there, a little above the ship's side. In this attitude, it was well known, he sometimes dozed. There was a considerable vacancy between the boat and the ship, and down between this was the sea. Steelkilt calculated his time, and found that his next trick at the helm would come round at two o'clock, in the morning of the third day from that in which he had been betrayed. At his leisure, he employed the interval in braiding something very carefully in his watches below.

"What are you making there?" said a shipmate.

"What do you think? what does it look like?"

"Like a lanyard for your bag; but it's an odd one, seems to me."

"Yes, rather oddish," said the Lakeman, holding it at arm's length before him; "but I think it will answer. Shipmate, I haven't enough twine,—have you any?"

"But there was none in the fore-castle."

"Then I must get some from old Rad;" and he rose to go aft.

"You don't mean to go a begging to *him*?" said a sailor.

"Why not? Do you think he won't do me a turn, when it's to help himself in the end, shipmate?" and going to the mate, he looked at him quietly, and asked him for some twine to mend his hammock. It was given him—neither twine nor lanyard were seen again; but the next night an iron ball, closely netted, partly rolled from the pocket of the Lakeman's monkey jacket, as he was tucking the coat into his hammock for a pillow. Twenty-four hours after, his trick at the silent helm—nigh to the man who was apt to doze over the grave always ready dug to the seaman's hand—that fatal hour was then to come; and in

the fore-ordaining soul of Steerkilt, the mate was already stark and stretched as a corpse, with his forehead crushed in.

"But, gentlemen, a fool saved the would-be murderer from the bloody deed he had planned. Yet complete revenge he had, and without being the avenger. For by a mysterious fatality, Heaven itself seemed to step in to take out of his hands into its own the damning thing he would have done.

"It was just between daybreak and sunrise of the morning of the second day, when they were washing down the decks, that a stupid Teneriffe man, drawing water in the main-chains, all at once shouted out, 'There she rolls! there she rolls!' Jesu, what a whale! It was Moby Dick.

"'Moby Dick!' cried Don Sebastian; 'St. Dominic! Sir sailor, but do whales have christenings? Whom call you Moby Dick?'

"'A very white, and famous, and most deadly immortal monster, Don;—but that would be too long a story.'

"'How? how!' cried all the young Spaniards, crowding.

"'Nay, Dons, Dons—nay, nay! I cannot rehearse that now. Let me get more into the air, Sirs.'

"'The chichal! the chichal!' cried Don Pedro; 'our vigorous friend looks faint;—fill up his empty glass!'

"No need, gentlemen; one moment, and I proceed.—Now, gentlemen, so suddenly perceiving the snowy whale within fifty yards of the ship—forgetful of the compact among the crew—in the excitement of the moment, the Teneriffe man had instinctively and involuntarily lifted his voice for the monster, though for some little time past it had been plainly beheld from the three sullen mast-heads. All was now a phrensy. 'The White Whale—the White Whale!' was the cry from captain, mates, and harpooneers, who, undeterred by fearful rumors, were all anxious to capture so famous and precious a fish; while the dogged crew eyed askance, and with curses, the appalling beauty of the vast milky mass, that lit up by a horizontal spangling sun, shifted and glistened like a living opal in the blue morning sea.

[Gentlemen, a strange fatality pervades the whole career of these events, as if verily mapped out before the world itself was charted.] The mutineer was the bowsman of the mate, and when fast to a fish, it was his duty to sit next him, while Radney stood

up with his lance in the prow, and haul in or slacken the line, at the word of command. Moreover, when the four boats were lowered, the mate's got the start; and none howled more fiercely with delight than did Steerkilt, as he strained at his oar. After a stiff pull, their harpooneer got fast, and, spear in hand, Radney sprang to the bow. He was always a furious man, it seems, in a boat. And now his bandaged cry was, to beach him on the whale's topmost back. Nothing loath, his bowsman hauled him up and up, through a blinding foam that blent two whitenesses together, till of a sudden the boat struck as against a sunken ledge, and keeling over, spilled out the standing mate. That instant, as he fell on the whale's slippery back, the boat righted, and was dashed aside by the swell, while Radney was tossed over into the sea, on the other flank of the whale. He struck out through the spray, and, for an instant, was dimly seen through that veil, wildly seeking to remove himself from the eye of Moby Dick. But the whale rushed round in a sudden maelstrom; seized the swimmer between his jaws; and rearing high up with him, plunged headlong again, and went down.

"Meantime, at the first tap of the boat's bottom, the Lakeman had slackened the line, so as to drop astern from the whirlpool; calmly looking on, he thought his own thoughts. But a sudden, terrific, downward jerking of the boat, quickly brought his knife to the line. He cut it; and the whale was free. But, at some distance, Moby Dick rose again, with some tatters of Radney's red woollen shirt, caught in the teeth that had destroyed him. All four boats gave chase again; but the whale eluded them, and finally wholly disappeared.

"In good time, the Town-Ho reached her port—a savage, solitary place—where no civilized creature resided. There, headed by the Lakeman, all but five or six of the foremast-men deliberately deserted among the palms; eventually, as it turned out, seizing a large double war-canoe of the savages, and setting sail for some other harbor.

"The ship's company being reduced to but a handful, the captain called upon the Islanders to assist him in the laborious business of heaving down the ship to stop the leak. But to such unrelaxing vigilance over their dangerous allies was this small

band of whites necessitated, both by night and by day, and so extreme was the hard work they underwent, that upon the vessel being ready again for sea, they were in such a weakened condition that the captain durst not put off with them in so heavy a vessel. After taking counsel with his officers, he anchored the ship as far off shore as possible; loaded and ran out his two cannon from the bows; stacked his muskets on the poop; and warning the Islanders not to approach the ship at their peril, took one man with him, and setting the sail of his best whale-boat, steered straight before the wind for Tahiti, five hundred miles distant, to procure a reinforcement to his crew.

"On the fourth day of the sail, a large canoe was descried, which seemed to have touched at a low isle of corals. He steered away from it; but the savage craft bore down on him; and soon the voice of Steelkilt hailed him to heave to, or he would run him under water. The captain presented a pistol. With one foot on each prow of the yoked war-canoes, the Lakeman laughed him to scorn; assuring him that if the pistol so much as clicked in the lock, he would bury him in bubbles and foam.

"What do you want of me?" cried the captain.

"Where are you bound? and for what are you bound?" demanded Steelkilt; 'no lies.'

"I am bound to Tahiti for more men."

"Very good. Let me board you a moment—I come in peace." With that he leaped from the canoe, swam to the boat; and climbing the gunwale, stood face to face with the captain.

"Cross your arms, sir; throw back your head. Now, repeat after me. As soon as Steelkilt leaves me, I swear to beach this boat on yonder island, and remain there six days. If I do not, may lightnings strike me!"

"A pretty scholar," laughed the Lakeman. 'Adios, Senor!' and leaping into the sea, he swam back to his comrades.

"Watching the boat till it was fairly beached, and drawn up to the roots of the cocoa-nut trees, Steelkilt made sail again, and in due time arrived at Tahiti, his own place of destination. There, luck befriended him; two ships were about to sail for France, and were providentially in want of precisely that num-

ber of men which the sailor headed. They embarked; and so for ever got the start of their former captain, had he been at all minded to work them legal retribution.

"Some ten days after the French ships sailed, the whale-boat arrived, and the captain was forced to enlist some of the more civilized Tahitians, who had been somewhat used to the sea. Chartering a small native schooner, he returned with them to his vessel; and finding all right there, again resumed his cruising.

"Where Steerkilt now is, gentlemen, none know; but upon the island of Nantucket, the widow of Radney still turns to the sea which refuses to give up its dead; still in dreams sees the awful white whale that destroyed him. * * * *

"Are you through?" said Don Sebastian, quietly.

"I am, Don."

"Then I entreat you, tell me if to the best of your own convictions, this your story is in substance really true? It is so passing wonderful! Did you get it from an unquestionable source? Bear with me if I seem to press."

"Also bear with all of us, sir sailor; for we all join in Don Sebastian's suit," cried the company, with exceeding interest.

"Is there a copy of the Holy Evangelists in the Golden Inn, gentlemen?"

"Nay," said Don Sebastian; "but I know a worthy priest near by, who will quickly procure one for me. I go for it; but are you well advised? this may grow too serious."

"Will you be so good as to bring the priest also, Don?"

"Though there are no Auto-da-Fés in Lima now," said one of the company to another: "I fear our sailor friend runs risk of the archiepiscopacy. Let us withdraw more out of the moonlight. I see no need for this."

"Excuse me for running after you, Don Sebastian; but may I also beg that you will be particular in procuring the largest sized Evangelists you can." * * * *

"This is the priest, he brings you the Evangelists," said Don Sebastian, gravely, returning with a tall and solemn figure.

"Let me remove my hat. Now, venerable priest, further into the light, and hold the Holy Book before me that I may touch it."

“So help me Heaven, and on my honor the story I have told ye, gentlemen, is in substance and its great items, true. I know it to be true; it happened on this ball; I trod the ship; I knew the crew; I have seen and talked with Steerkilt since the death of Radney.’”

CHAPTER LV

OF THE MONSTROUS PICTURES OF WHALES

I SHALL ere long paint to you as well as one can without canvas, something like the true form of the whale as he actually appears to the eye of the whaleman when in his own absolute body the whale is moored alongside the whale-ship so that he can be fairly stepped upon there. It may be worth while, therefore, previously to advert to those curious imaginary portraits of him which even down to the present day confidently challenge the faith of the landsman. It is time to set the world right in this matter, by proving such pictures of the whale all wrong.

It may be that the primal source of all those pictorial delusions will be found among the oldest Hindoo, Egyptian, and Grecian sculptures. For ever since those inventive but unscrupulous times when on the marble panellings of temples, the pedestals of statues, and on shields, medallions, cups, and coins, the dolphin was drawn in scales of chain-armor like Saladin's, and a helmeted head like St. George's; ever since then has something of the same sort of license prevailed, not only in most popular pictures of the whale, but in many scientific presentations of him.

Now, by all odds, the most ancient extant portrait anyways purporting to be the whale's, is to be found in the famous cavern-pagoda of Elephanta, in India. The Brahmins maintain that in the almost endless sculptures of that immemorial pagoda, all the trades and pursuits, every conceivable avocation of man, were prefigured ages before any of them actually came into being. No wonder then, that in some sort our noble profession

of whaling should have been there shadowed forth. The Hindoo whale referred to, occurs in a separate department of the wall, depicting the incarnation of Vishnu in the form of leviathan, learnedly known as the Matse Avatar. But though this sculpture is half man and half whale, so as only to give the tail of the latter, yet that small section of him is all wrong. It looks more like the tapering tail of an anaconda, than the broad palms of the true whale's majestic flukes.

But go to the old Galleries, and look now at a great Christian painter's portrait of this fish; for he succeeds no better than the antediluvian Hindoo. It is Guido's picture of Perseus rescuing Andromeda from the sea-monster or whale. Where did Guido get the model of such a strange creature as that? Nor does Hogarth, in painting the same scene in his own "Perseus Descending," make out one whit better. The huge corpulence of that Hogarthian monster undulates on the surface, scarcely drawing one inch of water. It has a sort of howdah on its back, and its distended tusked mouth into which the billows are rolling, might be taken for the Traitors' Gate leading from the Thames by water into the Tower. Then, there are the Prodromus whales of old Scotch Sibbald, and Jonah's whale, as depicted in the prints of old Bibles and the cuts of old primers. What shall be said of these? As for the book-binder's whale winding like a vine-stalk round the stock of a descending anchor—as stamped and gilded on the backs and title-pages of many books both old and new—that is a very picturesque but purely fabulous creature, imitated, I take it, from the like figures on antique vases. Though universally denominated a dolphin, I nevertheless call this book-binder's fish an attempt at a whale; because it was so intended when the device was first introduced. It was introduced by an old Italian publisher somewhere about the 15th century, during the Revival of Learning; and in those days, and even down to a comparatively late period, dolphins were popularly supposed to be a species of the Leviathan.

In the vignettes and other embellishments of some ancient books you will at times meet with very curious touches at the whale, where all manner of spouts, jets d'eau, hot springs and cold, Saratoga and Baden-Baden, come bubbling up from his

unexhausted brain. In the title-page of the original edition of the "Advancement of Learning" you will find some curious whales.

But quitting all these unprofessional attempts, let us glance at those pictures of leviathan purporting to be sober, scientific delineations, by those who know. In old Harris's collection of voyages there are some plates of whales extracted from a Dutch book of voyages, A. D. 1671, entitled "A Whaling Voyage to Spitzbergen in the ship Jonas in the Whale, Peter Peterson of Friesland, master." In one of those plates the whales, like great rafts of logs, are represented lying among ice-isles, with white bears running over their living backs. In another plate, the prodigious blunder is made of representing the whale with perpendicular flukes.

Then again, there is an imposing quarto, written by one Captain Colnett, a Post Captain in the English navy, entitled "A Voyage round Cape Horn into the South Seas, for the purpose of extending the Spermaceti Whale Fisheries." In this book is an outline purporting to be a "Picture of a Physeter or Spermaceti whale, drawn by scale from one killed on the coast of Mexico, August, 1793, and hoisted on deck." I doubt not the captain had this veracious picture taken for the benefit of his marines. To mention but one thing about it, let me say that it has an eye which applied, according to the accompanying scale, to a full grown sperm whale, would make the eye of that whale a bow-window some five feet long. Ah, my gallant captain, why did ye not give us Jonah looking out of that eye!

Nor are the most conscientious compilations of Natural History for the benefit of the young and tender, free from the same heinousness of mistake. Look at that popular work "Goldsmith's Animated Nature." In the abridged London edition of 1807, there are plates of an alleged "whale" and a "narwhale." I do not wish to seem inelegant, but this unsightly whale looks much like an amputated sow; and, as for the narwhale, one glimpse at it is enough to amaze one, that in this nineteenth century such a hippogriff could be palmed for genuine upon any intelligent public of schoolboys.

Then, again, in 1825, Bernard Germain, Count de Lacépède,

a great naturalist, published a scientific systemized whale book, wherein are several pictures of the different species of the Leviathan. All these are not only incorrect, but the picture of the *Mysticetus* or Greenland whale (that is to say, the Right whale), even Scoresby, a long experienced man as touching that species, declares not to have its counterpart in nature.

But the placing of the cap-sheaf to all this blundering business was reserved for the scientific Frederick Cuvier, brother to the famous Baron. In 1836, he published a *Natural History of Whales*, in which he gives what he calls a picture of the Sperm Whale. Before showing that picture to any Nantucketer, you had best provide for your summary retreat from Nantucket. In a word, Frederick Cuvier's Sperm Whale is not a Sperm Whale, but a squash. Of course, he never had the benefit of a whaling voyage (such men seldom have), but whence he derived that picture, who can tell? Perhaps he got it as his scientific predecessor in the same field, Desmarest, got one of his authentic abortions; that is, from a Chinese drawing. And what sort of lively lads with the pencil those Chinese are, many queer cups and saucers inform us.

As for the sign-painters' whales seen in the streets hanging over the shops of oil-dealers, what shall be said of them? They are generally Richard III. whales, with dromedary humps, and very savage; breakfasting on three or four sailor tarts, that is whaleboats full of mariners: their deformities floundering in seas of blood and blue paint.

But these manifold mistakes in depicting the whale are not so very surprising after all. Consider! Most of the scientific drawings have been taken from the stranded fish; and these are about as correct as a drawing of a wrecked ship, with broken back, would correctly represent the noble animal itself in all its undashed pride of hull and spars. Though elephants have stood for their full-lengths, the living Leviathan has never yet fairly floated himself for his portrait. The living whale, in his full majesty and significance, is only to be seen at sea in unfathomable waters; and afloat the vast bulk of him is out of sight, like a launched line-of-battle ship; and out of that element it is a thing eternally impossible for mortal man to hoist

him bodily into the air, so as to preserve all his mighty swells and undulations. And, not to speak of the highly presumable difference of contour between a young sucking whale and a full-grown Platonian Leviathan; yet, even in the case of one of those young sucking whales hoisted to a ship's deck, such is then the outlandish, eel-like, limbered, varying shape of him, that his precise expression the devil himself could not catch.

But it may be fancied, that from the naked skeleton of the stranded whale, accurate hints may be derived touching his true form. Not at all. For it is one of the more curious things about this Leviathan, that his skeleton gives very little idea of his general shape. Though Jeremy Bentham's skeleton, which hangs for candelabra in the library of one of his executors, correctly conveys the idea of a burly-browed utilitarian old gentleman, with all Jeremy's other leading personal characteristics; yet nothing of this kind could be inferred from any leviathan's articulated bones. In fact, as the great Hunter says, the mere skeleton of the whale bears the same relation to the fully invested and padded animal as the insect does to the chrysalis that so roundly envelopes it. This peculiarity is strikingly evinced in the head, as in some part of this book will be incidentally shown. It is also very curiously displayed in the side fin, the bones of which almost exactly answer to the bones of the human hand, minus only the thumb. This fin has four regular bone-fingers, the index, middle, ring, and little finger. But all these are permanently lodged in their fleshy covering, as the human fingers in an artificial covering. "However recklessly the whale may sometimes serve us," said humorous Stubb one day, "he can never be truly said to handle us without mittens."

(For all these reasons, then, any way you may look at it, you must needs conclude that the great Leviathan is that one creature in the world which must remain unpainted to the last. True, one portrait may hit the mark much nearer than another, but none can hit it with any very considerable degree of exactness. So there is no earthly way of finding out precisely what the whale really looks like. And the only mode in which you can derive even a tolerable idea of his living coutour, is by

J

going a whaling yourself; but by so doing, you run no small risk of being eternally stove and sunk by him. Wherefore, it seems to me you had best not be too fastidious in your curiosity touching this Leviathan.

CHAPTER LVI

OF THE LESS ERRONEOUS PICTURES OF WHALES, AND THE TRUE PICTURES OF WHALING SCENES

IN connexion with the monstrous pictures of whales, I am strongly tempted here to enter upon those still more monstrous stories of them which are to be found in certain books, both ancient and modern, especially in Pliny, Purchas, Hackluyt, Harris, Cuvier, &c. But I pass that matter by.

I know of only four published outlines of the great Sperm Whale; Colnett's, Huggins's, Frederick Cuvier's, and Beale's. In the previous chapter Colnett and Cuvier have been referred to. Huggins's is far better than theirs; but, by great odds, Beale's is the best. All Beale's drawings of this whale are good, excepting the middle figure in the picture of three whales in various attitudes, capping his second chapter. His frontispiece, boats attacking Sperm Whales, though no doubt calculated to excite the civil scepticism of some parlor men, is admirably correct and life-like in its general effect. Some of the Sperm Whale drawings in J. Ross Browne are pretty correct in contour; but they are wretchedly engraved. That is not his fault though.

Of the Right Whale, the best outline pictures are in Scoresby; but they are drawn on too small a scale to convey a desirable impression. He has but one picture of whaling scenes, and this is a sad deficiency, because it is by such pictures only, when at all well done, that you can derive anything like a truthful idea of the living whale as seen by his living hunters.

But, taken for all in all, by far the finest, though in some details not the most correct, presentations of whales and whaling

scenes to be anywhere found, are two large French engravings, well executed, and taken from paintings by one Garnery. Respectively, they represent attacks on the Sperm and Right Whale. In the first engraving a noble Sperm Whale is depicted in full majesty of might, just risen beneath the boat from the profundities of the ocean, and bearing high in the air upon his back the terrific wreck of the stoven planks. The prow of the boat is partially unbroken, and is drawn just balancing upon the monster's spine; and standing in that prow, for that one single incomputable flash of time, you behold an oarsman, half shrouded by the incensed boiling spout of the whale, and in the act of leaping, as if from a precipice. The action of the whole thing is wonderfully good and true. The half-emptied line-tub floats on the whitened sea; the wooden poles of the spilled harpoons obliquely bob in it; the heads of the swimming crew are scattered about the whale in contrasting expressions of affright; while in the black stormy distance the ship is bearing down upon the scene. Serious fault might be found with the anatomical details of this whale, but let that pass; since, for the life of me, I could not draw so good a one.

In the second engraving, the boat is in the act of drawing alongside the barnacled flank of a large running Right Whale, that rolls his black weedy bulk in the sea like some mossy rock-slide from the Patagonian cliffs. His jets are erect, full, and black like soot; so that from so abounding a smoke in the chimney, you would think there must be a brave supper cooking in the great bowels below. Sea fowls are pecking at the small crabs, shell-fish, and other sea candies and maccaroni, which the Right Whale sometimes carries on his pestilent back. And all the while the thick-lipped leviathan is rushing through the deep, leaving tons of tumultuous white curds in his wake, and causing the slight boat to rock in the swells like a skiff caught nigh the paddle-wheels of an ocean steamer. Thus, the foreground is all raging commotion; but behind, in admirable artistic contrast, is the glassy level of a sea becalmed, the drooping unstarched sails of the powerless ship, and the inert mass of a dead whale, a conquered fortress, with the flag of capture lazily hanging from the whale-pole inserted into his spout-hole.

Who Garnery the painter is, or was, I know not. But my life for it he was either practically conversant with his subject, or else marvellously tutored by some experienced whaleman. The French are the lads for painting action. Go and gaze upon all the paintings of Europe, and where will you find such a gallery of living and breathing commotion on canvas, as in that triumphal hall at Versailles; where the beholder fights his way, pell-mell, through the consecutive great battles of France; where every sword seems a flash of the Northern Lights, and the successive armed kings and Emperors dash by, like a charge of crowned centaurs? Not wholly unworthy of a place in that gallery, are these sea battle-pieces of Garnery.

The naural aptitude of the French for seizing the picturesqueness of things seems to be peculiarly evinced in what paintings and engravings they have of their whaling scenes. With not one tenth of England's experience in the fishery, and not the thousandth part of that of the Americans, they have nevertheless furnished both nations with the only finished sketches at all capable of conveying the real spirit of the whale hunt. For the most part, the English and American whale draughtsmen seem entirely content with presenting the mechanical outline of things, such as the vacant profile of the whale; which, so far as picturesqueness of effect is concerned, is about tantamount to sketching the profile of a pyramid. Even Scoresby, the justly renowned Right whaleman, after giving us a stiff full length of the Greenland whale, and three or four delicate miniatures of narwhales and porpoises, treats us to a series of classical engravings of boat hooks, chopping knives, and grapnels; and with the microscopic diligence of a Leuwenhoeck submits to the inspection of a shivering world ninety-six fac-similes of magnified Arctic snow crystals. I mean no disparagement to the excellent voyager (I honor him for a veteran), but in so important a matter it was certainly an oversight not to have procured for every crystal a sworn affidavit taken before a Greenland Justice of the Peace.

In addition to those fine engravings from Garnery, there are two other French engravings worthy of note, by some one who subscribes himself "H. Durand." One of them, though not pre-

cisely adapted to our present purpose, nevertheless deserves mention on other accounts. It is a quiet noon-scene among the isles of the Pacific; a French whaler anchored, inshore, in a calm, and lazily taking water on board; the loosened sails of the ship, and the long leaves of the palms in the background, both drooping together in the breezeless air. The effect is very fine, when considered with reference to its presenting the hardy fishermen under one of their few aspects of oriental repose. The other engraving is quite a different affair: the ship hove-to upon the open sea, and in the very heart of the Leviathanic life, with a Right Whale alongside; the vessel (in the act of cutting-in) hove over to the monster as if to a quay; and a boat, hurriedly pushing off from this scene of activity, is about giving chase to whales in the distance. The harpoons and lances lie levelled for use; three oarsmen are just setting the mast in its hole; while from a sudden roll of the sea, the little craft stands half-erect out of the water, like a rearing horse. From the ship, the smoke of the torments of the boiling whale is going up like the smoke over a village of smithies; and to windward, a black cloud, rising up with earnest of squalls and rains, seems to quicken the activity of the excited seamen.

CHAPTER LVII

OF WHALES IN PAINT; IN TEETH; IN WOOD; IN SHEET-IRON;
IN STONE; IN MOUNTAINS; IN STARS

ON Tower-hill, as you go down to the London docks, you may have seen a crippled beggar (or *kedger*, as the sailors say) holding a painted board before him, representing the tragic scene in which he lost his leg. There are three whales and three boats; and one of the boats (presumed to contain the missing leg in all its original integrity) is being crunched by the jaws of the foremost whale. Any time these ten years, they tell me, has that man held up that picture, and exhibited

that stump to an incredulous world. But the time of his justification has now come. His three whales are as good whales as were ever published in Wapping, at any rate; and his stump as unquestionable a stump as any you will find in the western clearings. But, though for ever mounted on that stump, never a stump-speech does the poor whaleman make; but, with down-cast eyes, stands ruefully contemplating his own amputation.

Throughout the Pacific, and also in Nantucket, and New Bedford, and Sag Harbor, you will come across lively sketches of whales and whaling-scenes, graven by the fishermen themselves on Sperm Whale-teeth, or ladies' busks wrought out of the Right Whale-bone, and other like skrimshander articles, as the whalemén call the numerous little ingenious contrivances they elaborately carve out of the rough material, in their hours of ocean leisure. Some of them have little boxes of dentistical-looking implements, specially intended for the skrimshandering business. But, in general, they toil with their jack-knives alone; and, with that almost omnipotent tool of the sailor, they will turn you out anything you please, in the way of a mariner's fancy.

Long exile from Christendom and civilization inevitably restores a man to that condition in which God placed him, *i. e.* what is called savagery. Your true whale-hunter is as much a savage as an Iroquois. I myself am a savage; owning no allegiance but to the King of the Cannibals; and ready at any moment to rebel against him.

Now, one of the peculiar characteristics of the savage in his domestic hours, is his wonderful patience of industry. An ancient Hawaiian war-club or spear-paddle, in its full multiplicity and elaboration of carving, is as great a trophy of human perseverance as a Latin lexicon. For, with but a bit of broken sea-shell or a shark's tooth, that miraculous intricacy of wooden net-work has been achieved; and it has cost steady years of steady application.

As with the Hawaiian savage, so with the white sailor-savage. With the same marvellous patience, and with the same single shark's tooth, of his one poor jack-knife, he will carve you a bit of bone sculpture, not quite as workmanlike, but as close

packed in its mazziness of design, as the Greek savage, Achilles's shield; and full of barbaric spirit and suggestiveness, as the prints of that fine old Dutch savage, Albert Durer.

Wooden whales, or whales cut in profile out of the small dark slabs of the noble South Sea war-wood, are frequently met with in the forecastles of American whalers. Some of them are done with much accuracy.

At some old gable-roofed country houses you will see brass whales hung by the tail for knockers to the road-side door. When the porter is sleepy, the anvil-headed whale would be best. But these knocking whales are seldom remarkable as faithful essays. On the spires of some old-fashioned churches you will see sheet-iron whales placed there for weather-cocks; but they are so elevated, and besides that are to all intents and purposes so labelled with "*Hands off!*" you cannot examine them closely enough to decide upon their merit.

In bony, ribby regions of the earth, where at the base of high broken cliffs masses of rock lie strewn in fantastic groupings upon the plain, you will often discover images as of the petrified forms of the Leviathan partly merged in grass, which of a windy day breaks against them in a surf of green surges.

Then, again, in mountainous countries where the traveller is continually girdled by amphitheatrical heights; here and there from some lucky point of view you will catch passing glimpses of the profiles of whales defined along the undulating ridges. But you must be a thorough whaler, to see these sights; and not only that, but if you wish to return to such a sight again, you must be sure and take the exact intersecting latitude and longitude of your first stand-point, else so chance-like are such observations of the hills, that your precise, previous stand-point would require a laborious re-discovery; like the Solomon islands, which still remain incognita, though once high-ruffed Mendanna trod them and old Figuera chronicled them.

Nor when expandingly lifted by your subject, can you fail to trace out great whales in the starry heavens, and boats in pursuit of them; as when long filled with thoughts of war the Eastern nations saw armies locked in battle among the clouds. Thus at the North have I chased Leviathan round and round

the Pole with the revolutions of the bright points that first defined him to me. And beneath the effulgent Antarctic skies I have boarded the Argo-Navis, and joined the chase against the starry Cetus far beyond the utmost stretch of Hydrus and the Flying Fish.

With a frigate's anchors for my bridle-bitts and fasces of harpoons for spurs, would I could mount that whale and leap the topmost skies, to see whether the fabled heavens with all their countless tents really lie encamped beyond my mortal sight!

CHAPTER LVIII

BRIT

STEERING north-eastward from the Crozetts, we fell in with vast meadows of brit, the minute, yellow substance, upon which the Right Whale largely feeds. For leagues and leagues it undulated round us, so that we seemed to be sailing through boundless fields of ripe and golden wheat.

On the second day, numbers of Right Whales were seen, who, secure from the attack of a Sperm Whaler like the Pequod, with open jaws sluggishly swam through the brit, which, adhering to the fringing fibres of that wondrous Venetian blind in their mouths, was in that manner separated from the water that escaped at the lip.

As morning mowers, who side by side slowly and seethingly advance their scythes through the long wet grass of marshy meads; even so these monsters swam, making a strange, grassy, cutting sound; and leaving behind them endless swaths of blue upon the yellow sea.*

* That part of the sea known among whalers as the "Brazil Banks" does not bear that name as the Banks of Newfoundland do, because of there being shallows and soundings there, but because of this remarkable meadow-like appearance, caused by the vast drifts of brit continually floating in those latitudes, where the Right Whale is often chased.

But it was only the sound they made as they parted the brit which at all reminded one of mowers. Seen from the mast-heads, especially when they paused and were stationary for a while, their vast black forms looked more like lifeless masses of rock than anything else. And as in the great hunting countries of India, the stranger at a distance will sometimes pass on the plains recumbent elephants without knowing them to be such, taking them for bare, blackened elevations of the soil; even so, often, with him, who for the first time beholds this species of the leviathans of the sea. And even when recognised at last, their immense magnitude renders it very hard really to believe that such bulky masses of overgrowth can possibly be instinct, in all parts, with the same sort of life that lives in a dog or a horse.

Indeed, in other respects, you can hardly regard any creatures of the deep with the same feelings that you do those of the shore. For though some old naturalists have maintained that all creatures of the land are of their kind in the sea; and though taking a broad general view of the thing, this may very well be; yet coming to specialties, where, for example, does the ocean furnish any fish that in disposition answers to the sagacious kindness of the dog? The accursed shark alone can in any generic respect be said to bear comparative analogy to him.

[But though, to landsmen in general, the native inhabitants of the seas have ever been regarded with emotions unspeakably unsocial and repelling; though we know the sea to be an everlasting terra incognita, so that Columbus sailed over numberless unknown worlds to discover his one superficial western one; though, by vast odds, the most terrific of all mortal disasters have immemorially and indiscriminately befallen tens and hundreds of thousands of those who have gone upon the waters; though but a moment's consideration will teach, that however baby man may brag of his science and skill, and however much, in a flattering future, that science and skill may augment; yet for ever and for ever, to the crack of doom, the sea will insult and murder him, and pulverize the stateliest, stiffest frigate he can make; nevertheless, by the continual repetition of these

*mostly
bringing it
back (?)*

very impressions, man has lost that sense of the full awfulness of the sea which aboriginally belongs to it.]

The first boat we read of, floated on an ocean, that with Portuguese vengeance had whelmed a whole world without leaving so much as a widow. That same ocean rolls now; that same ocean destroyed the wrecked ships of last year. Yea, foolish mortals, Noah's flood is not yet subsided; two thirds of the fair world it yet covers.

Wherein differ the sea and the land, that a miracle upon one is not a miracle upon the other? Preternatural terrors rested upon the Hebrews, when under the feet of Korah and his company the live ground opened and swallowed them up for ever; yet not a modern sun ever sets, but in precisely the same manner the live sea swallows up ships and crews.

But not only is the sea such a foe to man who is an alien to it, but it is also a fiend to its own offspring; worse than the Persian host who murdered his own guests; sparing not the creatures which itself hath spawned. Like a savage tigress that tossing in the jungle overlays her own cubs, so the sea dashes even the mightiest whales against the rocks, and leaves them there side by side with the split wrecks of ships. No mercy, no power but its own controls it. Panting and snorting like a mad battle steed that has lost its rider, the masterless ocean overruns the globe.

Consider the subtleness of the sea; how its most dreaded creatures glide under water, unapparent for the most part, and treacherously hidden beneath the loveliest tints of azure. Consider also the devilish brilliance and beauty of many of its most remorseless tribes, as the dainty embellished shape of many species of sharks. Consider, once more, the universal cannibalism of the sea; all whose creatures prey upon each other, carrying on eternal war since the world began.

{ Consider all this; and then turn to this green, gentle, and most docile earth; consider them both, the sea and the land; and do you not find a strange analogy to something in yourself? For as this appalling ocean surrounds the verdant land, so in the soul of man there lies one insular Tahiti, full of peace and joy, but encompassed by all the horrors of the half known life.

God keep thee! Push not off from that isle, thou canst never
return!

*It is the
main-mast-head?
Daggoo's head?*

CHAPTER LIX

SQUID

SLOWLY wading through the meadows of brit, the Pequod still held on her way north-eastward towards the island of Java; a gentle air impelling her keel, so that in the surrounding serenity her three tall tapering masts mildly waved to that languid breeze, as three mild palms on a plain. And still, at wide intervals in the silvery night, the lonely, alluring jet would be seen.

But one transparent blue morning, when a stillness almost preternatural spread over the sea, however unattended with any stagnant calm; when the long burnished sun-glade on the waters seemed a golden finger laid across them, enjoining some secresy; when the slippered waves whispered together as they softly ran on; in this profound hush of the visible sphere a strange spectre was seen by Daggoo from the main-mast-head.

In the distance, a great white mass lazily rose, and rising higher and higher, and disentangling itself from the azure, at last gleamed before our prow like a snow-slide, new slid from the hills. Thus glistening for a moment, as slowly it subsided, and sank. Then once more arose, and silently gleamed. It seemed not a whale; and yet is this Moby Dick? thought Daggoo. Again the phantom went down, but on re-appearing once more, with a stiletto-like cry that startled every man from his nod, the negro yelled out—"There! there again! there she breaches! right ahead! The White Whale, the White Whale!"

Upon this, the seamen rushed to the yard-arms, as in swarming-time the bees rush to the boughs. Bare-headed in the sultry sun, Ahab stood on the bowsprit, and with one hand pushed far behind in readiness to wave his orders to the helmsman, cast

his eager glance in the direction indicated aloft by the outstretched motionless arm of Daggoo.

Whether the flitting attendance of the one still and solitary jet had gradually worked upon Ahab, so that he was now prepared to connect the ideas of mildness and repose with the first sight of the particular whale he pursued; however this was, or whether his eagerness betrayed him; whichever way it might have been, no sooner did he distinctly perceive the white mass, than with a quick intensity he instantly gave orders for lowering.

The four boats were soon on the water; Ahab's in advance, and all swiftly pulling towards their prey. Soon it went down, and while, with oars suspended, we were awaiting its reappearance, lo! in the same spot where it sank, once more it slowly rose. Almost forgetting for the moment all thoughts of Moby Dick, we now gazed at the most wondrous phenomenon which the secret seas have hitherto revealed to mankind. A vast pulpy mass, furlongs in length and breadth, of a glancing cream-color, lay floating on the water, innumerable long arms radiating from its centre, and curling and twisting like a nest of anacondas, as if blindly to clutch at any hapless object within reach. No perceptible face or front did it have; no conceivable token of either sensation or instinct; (but undulated there on the billows, an unearthly, formless, chance-like apparition of life.)

As with a low sucking sound it slowly disappeared again, Starbuck still gazing at the agitated waters where it had sunk, with a wild voice exclaimed—"Almost rather had I seen Moby Dick and fought him, than to have seen thee, thou white ghost!"

"What was it, Sir?" said Flask.

"The great live squid, which, they say, few whale-ships ever beheld, and returned to their ports to tell of it."

But Ahab said nothing; turning his boat, he sailed back to the vessel; the rest as silently following.

Whatever superstitions the sperm whalers in general have connected with the sight of this object, certain it is, that a glimpse of it being so very unusual, that circumstance has gone far to invest it with portentousness. So rarely is it beheld, that though one and all of them declare it to be the largest animated thing in the ocean, yet very few of them have any but

analogy of 277

the most vague ideas concerning its true nature and form; notwithstanding, they believe it to furnish to the sperm whale his only food. For though other species of whales find their food above water, and may be seen by man in the act of feeding, the spermaceti whale obtains his whole food in unknown zones below the surface; and only by inference is it that any one can tell of what, precisely, that food consists. At times, when closely pursued, he will disgorge what are supposed to be the detached arms of the squid; some of them thus exhibited exceeding twenty and thirty feet in length. They fancy that the monster to which these arms belonged ordinarily clings by them to the bed of the ocean; and that the sperm whale, unlike other species, is supplied with teeth in order to attack and tear it.

There seems some ground to imagine that the great Kraken of Bishop Pontoppodan may ultimately resolve itself into Squid. The manner in which the Bishop describes it, as alternately rising and sinking, with some other particulars he narrates, in all this the two correspond. But much abatement is necessary with respect to the incredible bulk he assigns it.

By some naturalists who have vaguely heard rumors of the mysterious creature, here spoken of, it is included among the class of cuttle-fish, to which, indeed, in certain external respects it would seem to belong, but only as the Anak of the tribe.

CHAPTER LX

THE LINE

WITH reference to the whaling scene shortly to be described, as well as for the better understanding of all similar scenes elsewhere presented, I have here to speak of the magical, sometimes horrible whale-line.

The line originally used in the fishery was of the best hemp, slightly vaped with tar, not impregnated with it, as in the

case of ordinary ropes; for while tar, as ordinarily used, makes the hemp more pliable to the rope-maker, and also renders the rope itself more convenient to the sailor for common ship use; yet, not only would the ordinary quantity too much stiffen the whale-line for the close coiling to which it must be subjected; but as most seamen are beginning to learn, tar in general by no means adds to the rope's durability or strength, however much it may give it compactness and gloss.

Of late years the Manilla rope has in the American fishery almost entirely superseded hemp as a material for whale-lines; for, though not so durable as hemp, it is stronger, and far more soft and elastic; and I will add (since there is an æsthetics in all things), is much more handsome and becoming to the boat, than hemp. Hemp is a dusky, dark fellow, a sort of Indian; but Manilla is as a golden-haired Circassian to behold.

The whale line is only two thirds of an inch in thickness. At first sight, you would not think it so strong as it really is. By experiment its one and fifty yarns will each suspend a weight of one hundred and twenty pounds; so that the whole rope will bear a strain nearly equal to three tons. In length, the common sperm whale-line measures something over two hundred fathoms. Towards the stern of the boat it is spirally coiled away in the tub, not like the worm-pipe of a still though, but so as to form one round, cheese-shaped mass of densely bedded "sheaves," or layers of concentric spiralizations, without any hollow but the "heart," or minute vertical tube formed at the axis of the cheese. As the least tangle or kink in the coiling would, in running out, infallibly take somebody's arm, leg, or entire body off, the utmost precaution is used in stowing the line in its tub. Some harpooneers will consume almost an entire morning in this business, carrying the line high aloft and then reeving it downwards through a block towards the tub, so as in the act of coiling to free it from all possible wrinkles and twists.

In the English boats two tubs are used instead of one; the same line being continuously coiled in both tubs. There is some advantage in this; because these twin-tubs being so small they fit more readily into the boat, and do not strain it so much; whereas, the American tub, nearly three feet in diameter and

by is his
right

of proportionate depth, makes a rather bulky freight for a craft whose planks are but one half-inch in thickness; for the bottom of the whale-boat is like critical ice, which will bear up a considerable distributed weight, but not very much of a concentrated one. When the painted canvas cover is clapped on the American line-tub, the boat looks as if it were pulling off with a prodigious great wedding-cake to present to the whales.

Both ends of the line are exposed; the lower end terminating in an eye-splice or loop coming up from the bottom against the side of the tub, and hanging over its edge completely disengaged from everything. This arrangement of the lower end is necessary on two accounts. First: In order to facilitate the fastening to it of an additional line from a neighboring boat, in case the stricken whale should sound so deep as to threaten to carry off the entire line originally attached to the harpoon. In these instances, the whale of course is shifted like a mug of ale, as it were, from the one boat to the other; though the first boat always hovers at hand to assist its consort. Second: This arrangement is indispensable for common safety's sake; for were the lower end of the line in any way attached to the boat, and were the whale then to run the line out to the end almost in a single, smoking minute as he sometimes does, he would not stop there, for the doomed boat would infallibly be dragged down after him into the profundity of the sea; and in that case no town-crier would ever find her again.

Before lowering the boat for the chase, the upper end of the line is taken aft from the tub, and passing round the logger-head there, is again carried forward the entire length of the boat, resting crosswise upon the loom or handle of every man's oar, so that it jogs against his wrist in rowing; and also passing between the men, as they alternately sit at the opposite gunwales, to the leaded chocks or grooves in the extreme pointed prow of the boat, where a wooden pin or skewer the size of a common quill, prevents it from slipping out. From the chocks it hangs in a slight festoon over the bows, and is then passed inside the boat again; and some ten or twenty fathoms (called box-line) being coiled upon the box in the bows, it continues its way to the gunwale still a little further aft, and is then

attached to the short-warp—the rope which is immediately connected with the harpoon; but previous to that connexion, the short-warp goes through sundry mystifications too tedious to detail.

Thus the whale-line folds the whole boat in its complicated coils, twisting and writhing around it in almost every direction. All the oarsmen are involved in its perilous contortions; so that to the timid eye of the landsman, they seem as Indian jugglers, with the deadliest snakes sportively festooning their limbs. Nor can any son of mortal woman, for the first time, seat himself amid those hempen intricacies, and while straining his utmost at the oar, bethink him that at any unknown instant the harpoon may be darted, and all these horrible contortions be put in play like ringed lightnings; he cannot be thus circumstanced without a shudder that makes the very marrow in his bones to quiver in him like a shaken jelly. Yet habit—strange thing! what cannot habit accomplish?—Gayer sallies, more merry mirth, better jokes, and brighter repartees, you never heard over your mahogany, than you will hear over the half-inch white cedar of the whale-boat, when thus hung in hangman's nooses; and, like the six burghers of Calais before King Edward, the six men composing the crew pull into the jaws of death, with a halter around every neck, as you may say.

Perhaps a very little thought will now enable you to account for those repeated whaling disasters—some few of which are casually chronicled—of this man or that man being taken out of the boat by the line, and lost. For, when the line is darting out, to be seated then in the boat, is like being seated in the midst of the manifold whizzings of a steam-engine in full play, when every flying beam, and shaft, and wheel, is grazing you. It is worse; for you cannot sit motionless in the heart of these perils, because the boat is rocking like a cradle, and you are pitched one way and the other, without the slightest warning; and only by a certain self-adjusting buoyancy and simultaneousness of volition and action, can you escape being made a Mazeppa of, and run away with where the all-seeing sun himself could never pierce you out.

Again: as the profound calm which only apparently precedes

and prophesies of the storm, is perhaps more awful than the storm itself; for, indeed, the calm is but the wrapper and envelope of the storm; and contains it in itself, as the seemingly harmless rifle holds the fatal powder, and the ball, and the explosion; so the graceful repose of the line, as it silently serpentine about the oarsmen before being brought into actual play—this is a thing which carries more of true terror than any other aspect of this dangerous affair. But why say more? All men live enveloped in whale-lines. All are born with halters round their necks; but it is only when caught in the swift, sudden turn of death, that mortals realize the silent, subtle, ever-present perils of life. And if you be a philosopher, though seated in the whale-boat, you would not at heart feel one whit more of terror, than though seated before your evening fire with a poker, and not a harpoon, by your side.

CHAPTER LXI

STUBB KILLS A WHALE

IF to Starbuck the apparition of the Squid was a thing of portents, to Queequeg it was quite a different object.

"When you see him 'quid," said the savage, honing his harpoon in the bow of his hoisted boat, "then you quick see him 'parm whale."

The next day was exceedingly still and sultry, and with nothing special to engage them, the Pequod's crew could hardly resist the spell of sleep induced by such a vacant sea. For this part of the Indian Ocean through which we then were voyaging is not what whalers call a lively ground; that is, it affords fewer glimpses of porpoises, dolphins, flying-fish, and other vivacious denizens of more stirring waters, than those off the Rio de la Plata, or the in-shore ground off Peru.

It was my turn to stand at the foremast-head; and with my shoulders leaning against the slackened royal shrouds, to and

fro I idly swayed in what seemed an enchanted air. No resolution could withstand it; in that dreamy mood losing all consciousness, at last my soul went out of my body; though my body still continued to sway as a pendulum will, long after the power which first moved it is withdrawn.

Ere forgetfulness altogether came over me, I had noticed that the seamen at the main and mizen mast-heads were already drowsy. So that at last all three of us lifelessly swung from the spars, and for every swing that we made there was a nod from below from the slumbering helmsman. The waves, too, nodded their indolent crests; and across the wide trance of the sea, east nodded to west, and the sun over all.

Suddenly bubbles seemed bursting beneath my closed eyes; like vices my hands grasped the shrouds; some invisible, gracious agency preserved me; with a shock I came back to life. And lo! close under our lee, not forty fathoms off, a gigantic Sperm Whale lay rolling in the water like the capsized hull of a frigate, his broad, glossy back, of an Ethiopian hue, glistening in the sun's rays like a mirror. But lazily undulating in the trough of the sea, and ever and anon tranquilly spouting his vapory jet, the whale looked like a portly burgher smoking his pipe of a warm afternoon. But that pipe, poor whale, was thy last. As if struck by some enchanter's wand, the sleepy ship and every sleeper in it all at once started into wakefulness; and more than a score of voices from all parts of the vessel, simultaneously with the three notes from aloft, shouted forth the accustomed cry, as the great fish slowly and regularly spouted the sparkling brine into the air.

"Clear away the boats! Luff!" cried Ahab. And obeying his own order, he dashed the helm down before the helmsman could handle the spokes.

The sudden exclamations of the crew must have alarmed the whale; and ere the boats were down, majestically turning, he swam away to the leeward, but with such a steady tranquillity, and making so few ripples as he swam, that thinking after all he might not as yet be alarmed, Ahab gave orders that not an oar should be used, and no man must speak but in whispers. So seated like Ontario Indians on the gunwales of the boats,

we swiftly but silently paddled along; the calm not admitting of the noiseless sails being set. Presently, as we thus glided in chase, the monster perpendicularly flitted his tail forty feet into the air, and then sank out of sight like a tower swallowed up.

"There go flukes!" was the cry, an announcement immediately followed by Stubb's producing his match and igniting his pipe, for now a respite was granted. After the full interval of his sounding had elapsed, the whale rose again, and being now in advance of the smoker's boat, and much nearer to it than to any of the others, Stubb counted upon the honor of the capture. It was obvious, now, that the whale had at length become aware of his pursuers. All silence of cautiousness was therefore no longer of use. Paddles were dropped, and oars came loudly into play. And still puffing at his pipe, Stubb cheered on his crew to the assault.

Yes, a mighty change had come over the fish. All alive to his jeopardy, he was going "head out;" that part obliquely projecting from the mad yeast which he brewed.*

"Start her, start her, my men! Don't hurry yourselves; take plenty of time—but start her; start her like thunder-claps, that's all," cried Stubb, spluttering out the smoke as he spoke. "Start her, now; give 'em the long and strong stroke, Tashtego. Start her, Tash, my boy—start her, all; but keep cool, keep cool—cucumbers is the word—easy, easy—only start her like grim death and grinning devils, and raise the buried dead perpendicular out of their graves, boys—that's all. Start her!"

"Woo-hoo! Wa-heel!" screamed the Gay-Header in reply, raising some old war-whoop to the skies; as every oarsman in the strained boat involuntarily bounced forward with the one tremendous leading stroke which the eager Indian gave.

* It will be seen in some other place of what a very light substance the entire interior of the sperm whale's enormous head consists. Though apparently the most massive, it is by far the most buoyant part about him. So that with ease he elevates it in the air, and invariably does so when going at his utmost speed. Besides, such is the breadth of the upper part of the front of his head, and such the tapering cut-water formation of the lower part, that by obliquely elevating his head, he thereby may be said to transform himself from a bluff-bowed sluggish galliot into a sharp-pointed New York pilot-boat.

But his wild screams were answered by others quite as wild. "Kee-heel Kee-heel" yelled Daggoo, straining forwards and backwards on his seat, like a pacing tiger in his cage.

"Ka-la! Koo-loo!" howled Queequeg, as if smacking his lips over a mouthful of Grenadier's steak. And thus with oars and yells the keels cut the sea. Meanwhile, Stubb retaining his place in the van, still encouraged his men to the onset, all the while puffing the smoke from his mouth. Like desperadoes they tugged and they strained, till the welcome cry was heard—"Stand up, Tashtego!—give it to him!" The harpoon was hurled. "Stern all!" The oarsmen backed water; the same moment something went hot and hissing along every one of their wrists. It was the magical line. An instant before, Stubb had swiftly caught two additional turns with it round the loggerhead, whence, by reason of its increased rapid circlings, a hempen blue smoke now jetted up and mingled with the steady fumes from his pipe. As the line passed round and round the loggerhead; so also, just before reaching that point, it blisteringly passed through and through both of Stubb's hands, from which the hand-cloths, or squares of quilted canvas sometimes worn at these times, had accidentally dropped. It was like holding an enemy's sharp two-edged sword by the blade, and that enemy all the time striving to wrest it out of your clutch.

"Wet the line! wet the line!" cried Stubb to the tub oarsman (him seated by the tub) who, snatching off his hat, dashed the sea-water into it.* More turns were taken, so that the line began holding its place. The boat now flew through the boiling water like a shark all fins. Stubb and Tashtego here changed places—stem for stern—a staggering business truly in that rocking commotion.

From the vibrating line extending the entire length of the upper part of the boat, and from its now being more tight than a harpstring, you would have thought the craft had two keels—one cleaving the water, the other the air—as the boat churned

* Partly to show the indispensableness of this act, it may here be stated, that, in the old Dutch fishery, a mop was used to dash the running line with water; in many other ships, a wooden piggin, or bailer, is set apart for that purpose. Your hat, however, is the most convenient.

on through both opposing elements at once. A continual cascade played at the bows; a ceaseless whirling eddy in her wake; and, at the slightest motion from within, even but of a little finger, the vibrating, cracking craft canted over her spasmodic gunwale into the sea. Thus they rushed; each man with might and main clinging to his seat, to prevent being tossed to the foam; and the tall form of Tashtego at the steering oar crouching almost double, in order to bring down his centre of gravity. Whole Atlantics and Pacifics seemed passed as they shot on their way, till at length the whale somewhat slackened his flight.

"Haul in — haul in!" cried Stubb to the bowsman! and, facing round towards the whale, all hands began pulling the boat up to him, while yet the boat was being towed on. Soon ranging up by his flank, Stubb, firmly planting his knee in the clumsy cleat, darted dart after dart into the flying fish; at the word of command, the boat alternately sterning out of the way of the whale's horrible wallow, and then ranging up for another fling.

The red tide now poured from all sides of the monster like brooks down a hill. His tormented body rolled not in brine but in blood, which bubbled and seethed for furlongs behind in their wake. The slanting sun playing upon this crimson pond in the sea, sent back its reflection into every face, so that they all glowed to each other like red men. And all the while, jet after jet of white smoke was agonizingly shot from the spiracle of the whale, and vehement puff after puff from the mouth of the excited headsman; as at every dart, hauling in upon his crooked lance (by the line attached to it), Stubb straightened it again and again, by a few rapid blows against the gunwale, then again and again sent it into the whale.

"Pull up—pull up!" he now cried to the bowsman, as the waning whale relaxed in his wrath. "Pull up!—close to!" and the boat ranged along the fish's flank. When reaching far over the bow, Stubb slowly churned his long sharp lance into the fish, and kept it there, carefully churning and churning, as if cautiously seeking to feel after some gold watch that the whale might have swallowed, and which he was fearful of breaking ere he could hook it out. But that gold watch he sought was the innermost life of the fish. And now it is struck; for, starting

from his trance into that unspeakable thing called his "flurry," the monster horribly wallowed in his blood, over-wrapped himself in impenetrable, mad, boiling spray, so that the imperilled craft, instantly dropping astern, had much ado blindly to struggle out from that phrensied twilight into the clear air of the day.

And now abating in his flurry, the whale once more rolled out into view; surging from side to side; spasmodically dilating and contracting his spout-hole, with sharp, cracking, agonized respirations. At last, gush after gush of clotted red gore, as if it had been the purple lees of red wine, shot into the frightened air; and falling back again, ran dripping down his motionless flanks into the sea. His heart had burst!

"He's dead, Mr. Stubb," said Daggo.

"Yes; both pipes smoked out!" and withdrawing his own from his mouth, Stubb scattered the dead ashes over the water; and, for a moment, stood thoughtfully eyeing the vast corpse he had made.

CHAPTER LXII

THE DART

A WORD concerning an incident in the last chapter.

According to the invariable usage of the fishery, the whale-boat pushes off from the ship, with the headsman or whale-killer as temporary steersman, and the harpooneer or whale-fastener pulling the foremost oar, the one known as the harpooneer-oar. Now it needs a strong, nervous arm to strike the first iron into the fish; for often, in what is called a long dart, the heavy implement has to be flung to the distance of twenty or thirty feet. But however prolonged and exhausting the chase, the harpooneer is expected to pull his oar meanwhile to the uttermost; indeed, he is expected to set an example of superhuman activity to the rest, not only by incredible rowing, but by repeated loud and intrepid exclamations; and what it is to keep shouting at the top of one's compass, while all the other

muscles are strained and half started—what that is none know but those who have tried it. For one, I cannot bawl very heartily and work very recklessly at one and the same time. In this straining, bawling state, then, with his back to the fish, all at once the exhausted harpooneer hears the exciting cry—"Stand up, and give it to him!" He now has to drop and secure his oar, turn round on his centre half way, seize his harpoon from the crotch, and with what little strength may remain, he essays to pitch it somehow into the whale. No wonder, taking the whole fleet of whalemén in a body, that out of fifty fair chances for a dart, not five are successful; no wonder that so many hapless harpooneers are madly cursed and disrated; no wonder that some of them actually burst their blood-vessels in the boat; no wonder that some sperm whalemén are absent four years with four barrels; no wonder that to many ship owners, whaling is but a losing concern; for it is the harpooneer that makes the voyage, and if you take the breath out of his body how can you expect to find it there when most wanted!

Again, if the dart be successful, then at the second critical instant, that is, when the whale starts to run, the boat-header and harpooneer likewise start to running fore and aft, to the imminent jeopardy of themselves and every one else. It is then they change places; and the headsman, the chief officer of the little craft, takes his proper station in the bows of the boat.

Now, I care not who maintains the contrary, but all this is both foolish and unnecessary. The headsman should stay in the bows from first to last; he should both dart the harpoon and the lance, and no rowing whatever should be expected of him, except under circumstances obvious to any fisherman. I know that this would sometimes involve a slight loss of speed in the chase; but long experience in various whalemén of more than one nation has convinced me that in the vast majority of failures in the fishery, it has not by any means been so much the speed of the whale as the before described exhaustion of the harpooneer that has caused them.

To insure the greatest efficiency in the dart, the harpooneers of this world must start to their feet from out of idleness, and not from out of toil. ✓

CHAPTER LXIII

THE CROTCH

Out of the trunk, the branches grow; out of them, the twigs. So, in productive subjects, grow the chapters.

The crotch alluded to on a previous page deserves independent mention. It is a notched stick of a peculiar form, some two feet in length, which is perpendicularly inserted into the star-board gunwale near the bow, for the purpose of furnishing a rest for the wooden extremity of the harpoon, whose other naked, barbed end slopingly projects from the prow. Thereby the weapon is instantly at hand to its hurler, who snatches it up as readily from its rest as a backwoodsman swings his rifle from the wall. It is customary to have two harpoons reposing in the crotch, respectively called the first and second irons.

But these two harpoons, each by its own cord, are both connected with the line; the object being this: to dart them both, if possible, one instantly after the other into the same whale; so that if, in the coming drag, one should draw out, the other may still retain a hold. It is a doubling of the chances. But it very often happens that owing to the instantaneous, violent, convulsive running of the whale upon receiving the first iron, it becomes impossible for the harpooneer, however lightning-like in his movements, to pitch the second iron into him. Nevertheless, as the second iron is already connected with the line, and the line is running, hence that weapon must, at all events, be anticipatively tossed out of the boat, somehow and somewhere; else the most terrible jeopardy would involve all hands. Tumbled into the water, it accordingly is in such cases; the spare coils of box line (mentioned in a preceding chapter) making this feat, in most instances, prudently practicable. But this critical act is not always unattended with the saddest and most fatal casualties.

Furthermore: you must know that when the second iron is thrown overboard, it thenceforth becomes a dangling, sharp-

edged terror, skittishly curvetting about both boat and whale, entangling the lines, or cutting them, and making a prodigious sensation in all directions. Nor, in general, is it possible to secure it again until the whale is fairly captured and a corpse.

Consider, now, how it must be in the case of four boats all engaging one unusually strong, active, and knowing whale; when owing to these qualities in him, as well as to the thousand concurring accidents of such an audacious enterprise, eight or ten loose second irons may be simultaneously dangling about him. For, of course, each boat is supplied with several harpoons to bend on to the line should the first one be ineffectually darted without recovery. All these particulars are faithfully narrated here, as they will not fail to elucidate several most important, however intricate passages, in scenes hereafter to be painted.

CHAPTER LXIV

STUBB'S SUPPER

STUBB's whale had been killed some distance from the ship. It was a calm; so, forming a tandem of three boats, we commenced the slow business of towing the trophy to the Pequod. And now, as we eighteen men with our thirty-six arms, and one hundred and eighty thumbs and fingers, slowly toiled hour after hour upon that inert, sluggish corpse in the sea; and it seemed hardly to budge at all, except at long intervals; good evidence was hereby furnished of the enormousness of the mass we moved. For, upon the great canal of Hang-Ho, or whatever they call it, in China, four or five laborers on the foot-path will draw a bulky freighted junk at the rate of a mile an hour; but this grand argosy we towed heavily forged along, as if laden with pig-lead in bulk.

Darkness came on; but three lights up and down in the Pequod's main-rigging dimly guided our way; till drawing nearer we saw Ahab dropping one of several more lanterns over the

bulwarks. Vacantly eyeing the heaving whale for a moment, he issued the usual orders for securing it for the night, and then handing his lantern to a seaman, went his way into the cabin, and did not come forward again until morning.

Though, in overseeing the pursuit of this whale, Captain Ahab had evinced his customary activity, to call it so; yet now that the creature was dead, some vague dissatisfaction, or impatience, or despair, seemed working in him; as if the sight of that dead body reminded him that Moby Dick was yet to be slain; and though a thousand other whales were brought to his ship, all that would not one jot advance his grand, monomaniac object. Very soon you would have thought from the sound on the Pequod's decks, that all hands were preparing to cast anchor in the deep; for heavy chains are being dragged along the deck, and thrust rattling out of the port-holes. But by those clanking links, the vast corpse itself, not the ship, is to be moored. Tied by the head to the stern, and by the tail to the bows, the whale now lies with its black hull close to the vessel's, and seen through the darkness of the night, which obscured the spars and rigging aloft, the two—ship and whale, seemed yoked together like colossal bullocks, whereof one reclines while the other remains standing.*

If moody Ahab was now all quiescence, at least so far as could be known on deck, Stubb, his second mate, flushed with conquest, betrayed an unusual but still good-natured excitement. Such an unwonted bustle was he in that the staid Starbuck, his

* A little item may as well be related here. The strongest and most reliable hold which the ship has upon the whale when moored alongside, is by the flukes or tail; and as from its greater density that part is relatively heavier than any other (excepting the side-fins), its flexibility even in death, causes it to sink low beneath the surface; so that with the hand you cannot get at it from the boat, in order to put the chain round it. But this difficulty is ingeniously overcome: a small, strong line is prepared with a wooden float at its outer end, and a weight in its middle, while the other end is secured to the ship. By adroit management the wooden float is made to rise on the other side of the mass, so that now having girdled the whale, the chain is readily made to follow suit; and being slipped along the body, is at last locked fast round the smallest part of the tail, at the point of junction with its broad flukes or lobes.

official superior, quietly resigned to him for the time the sole management of affairs. One small, helping cause of all this liveliness in Stubb, was soon made strangely manifest. Stubb was a high liver; he was somewhat intemperately fond of the whale as a flavorish thing to his palate.

"A steak, a steak, ere I sleep! You, Daggo! overboard you go, and cut me one from his small!"

Here be it known, that though these wild fishermen do not, as a general thing, and according to the great military maxim, make the enemy defray the current expenses of the war (at least before realizing the proceeds of the voyage), yet now and then you find some of these Nantucketers who have a genuine relish for that particular part of the Sperm Whale designated by Stubb; comprising the tapering extremity of the body.

About midnight that steak was cut and cooked; and lighted by two lanterns of sperm oil, Stubb stoutly stood up to his spermaceti supper at the capstan-head, as if that capstan were a sideboard. Nor was Stubb the only banqueter on whale's flesh that night. Mingling their mumblings with his own mastications, thousands on thousands of sharks, swarming round the dead leviathan, smackingly feasted on its fatness. The few sleepers below in their bunks were often startled by the sharp slapping of their tails against the hull, within a few inches of the sleepers' hearts. Peering over the side you could just see them (as before you heard them) wallowing in the sullen, black waters, and turning over on their backs as they scooped out huge globular pieces of the whale of the bigness of a human head. This particular feat of the shark seems all but miraculous. How, at such an apparently unassailable surface, they contrive to gouge out such symmetrical mouthfuls, remains a part of the universal problem of all things. The mark they thus leave on the whale, may best be likened to the hollow made by a carpenter in countersinking for a screw.

Though amid all the smoking horror and diabolism of a sea-fight, sharks will be seen longingly gazing up to the ship's decks, like hungry dogs round a table where red meat is being carved, ready to bolt down every killed man that is tossed to them; and though, while the valiant butchers over the deck-table are

thus cannibally carving each other's live meat with carving-knives all gilded and tasselled, the sharks, also, with their jewel-hilted mouths, are quarrelsome carving away under the table at the dead meat; and though, were you to turn the whole affair upside down, it would still be pretty much the same thing, that is to say, a shocking sharkish business enough for all parties; and though sharks also are the invariable outriders of all slave ships crossing the Atlantic, systematically trotting alongside, to be handy in case a parcel is to be carried anywhere, or a dead slave to be decently buried; and though one or two other like instances might be set down, touching the set terms, places, and occasions, when sharks do most socially congregate, and most hilariously feast; yet is there no conceivable time or occasion when you will find them in such countless numbers, and in gayer or more jovial spirits, than around a dead sperm whale, moored by night to a whale-ship at sea. If you have never seen that sight, then suspend your decision about the propriety of devil-worship, and the expediency of conciliating the devil.

But, as yet, Stubb heeded not the mumblings of the banquet that was going on so nigh him, no more than the sharks heeded the smacking of his own epicurean lips.

"Cook, cook!—where's that old Fleece?" he cried at length, widening his legs still further, as if to form a more secure base for his supper; and, at the same time darting his fork into the dish, as if stabbing with his lance; "cook, you cook!—sail this way, cook!"

The old black, not in any very high glee at having been previously roused from his warm hammock at a most unseasonable hour, came shambling along from his galley, for, like many old blacks, there was something the matter with his knee-pans, which he did not keep well scoured like his other pans; this old Fleece, as they called him, came shuffling and limping along, assisting his step with his tongs, which, after a clumsy fashion, were made of straightened iron hoops; this old Ebony floundered along, and in obedience to the word of command, came to a dead stop on the opposite side of Stubb's sideboard; when,

with both hands folded before him, and resting on his two-legged cane, he bowed his arched back still further over, at the same time sideways inclining his head, so as to bring his best ear into play.

"Cook," said Stubb, rapidly lifting a rather reddish morsel to his mouth, "don't you think this steak is rather overdone? You've been beating this steak too much, cook; it's too tender. Don't I always say that to be good, a whale-steak must be tough? There are those sharks now over the side, don't you see they prefer it tough and rare? What a shindy they are kicking up! Cook, go and talk to 'em; tell 'em they are welcome to help themselves civilly, and in moderation, but they must keep quiet. Blast me, if I can hear my own voice. Away, cook, and deliver my message. Here, take this lantern," snatching one from his sideboard; "now then, go and preach to 'em!"

Sullenly taking the offered lantern, old Fleece limped across the deck to the bulwarks; and then, with one hand dropping his light low over the sea, so as to get a good view of his congregation, with the other hand he solemnly flourished his tongs, and leaning far over the side in a mumbling voice began addressing the sharks, while Stubb, softly crawling behind, overheard all that was said.

"Fellow-critters: I've ordered here to say dat you must stop dat dam noise dare. You hear? Stop dat dam smackin' ob de lip! Massa Stubb say dat you can fill your dam bellies up to de hatchings, but by Gor! you must stop dat dam racket!"

"Cook," here interposed Stubb, accompanying the word with a sudden slap on the shoulder,—“Cook! why, damn your eyes, you mustn't swear that way when you're preaching. That's no way to convert sinners, Cook!”

"Who dat? Den preach to him yourself," sullenly turning to go.

"No, Cook; go on, go on."

"Well, den, Belubed fellow-critters:"—

"Right!" exclaimed Stubb, approvingly, "coax 'em to it; try that," and Fleece continued.

"Do you is all sharks, and by natur wery voracious, yet I

zay to you, fellow-critters, dat dat voraciousness—'top dat dam slappin' ob de tail! How you tink to hear, 'spose you keep up such a dam slappin' and bitin' dare?"

"Cook," cried Stubb, collaring him, "I wont have that swearing. Talk to 'em gentlemanly."

Once more the sermon proceeded.

"Your voraciousness, fellow-critters, I don't blame ye so much for; dat is natur, and can't be helped; but to gobern dat wicked natur, dat is de pint. You is sharks, sartin; but if you gobern de shark in you, why den you be angel; for all angel is not'ing more dan de shark well goberned. Now, look here, bred'ren, just try wonst to be cibil, a helping yoursebls from dat whale. Don't be tearin' de blubber out your neighbour's mout, I say. Is not one shark dood right as toder to dat whale? And, by Gor, none on you has de right to dat whale; dat whale belong to some one else. I know some o' you has berry brig mout, brigger dan oders; but den de brig mouts sometimes has de small bellies; so dat de brigness ob de mout is not to swallar wid, but to bite off de blubber for de small fry ob sharks, dat can't get into de scrouge to help demselves."

"Well done, old Fleece!" cried Stubb, "that's Christianity; go on."

"No use goin' on; de dam willains will keep a scrougin' and slappin' each oder, Massa Stubb; dey don't hear one word; no use a-preachin' to such dam g'uttons as you call 'em, till dare bellies is full, and dare bellies is bottomless; and when dey do get em full, dey wont hear you den; for den dey sink in de sea, go fast to sleep on de coral, and can't hear not'ing at all, no more, for eber and eber."

"Upon my soul, I am about of the same opinion; so give the benediction, Fleece, and I'll away to my supper."

Upon this, Fleece, holding both hands over the fishy mob, raised his shrill voice, and cried—

"Cussed fellow-critters! Kick up de damndest row as ever you can; fill your dam' bellies 'till dey bust—and den die."

"Now, cook," said Stubb, resuming his supper at the capstan; "Stand just where you stood before, there, over against me, and pay particular attention."

"All dention," said Fleece, again stooping over upon his tongs in the desired position.

"Well," said Stubb, helping himself freely meanwhile; "I shall now go back to the subject of this steak. In the first place, how old are you, cook?"

"What dat do wid de 'teak," said the old black, testily.

"Silence! How old are you, cook?"

"'Bout ninety, dey say," he gloomily muttered.

"And have you lived in this world hard upon one hundred years, cook, and don't know yet how to cook a whale-steak?" rapidly bolting another mouthful at the last word, so that that morsel seemed a continuation of the question. "Where were you born, cook?"

"'Hind de hatchway, in ferry-boat, goin' ober de Roanoke."

"Born in a ferry-boat! That's queer, too. But I want to know what country you were born in, cook?"

"Didn't I say de Roanoke country?" he cried, sharply.

"No, you didn't, cook; but I'll tell you what I'm coming to, cook. You must go home and be born over again; you don't know how to cook a whale-steak yet."

"Bress my soul, if I cook noder one," he growled, angrily, turning round to depart.

"Come back, cook;—here, hand me those tongs;—now take that bit of steak there, and tell me if you think that steak cooked as it should be? Take it, I say"—holding the tongs towards him—"take it, and taste it."

Faintly smacking his withered lips over it for a moment, the old negro muttered, "Best cooked 'teak I eber taste; joosy, berry joosy."

"Cook," said Stubb, squaring himself once more; "do you belong to the church?"

"Passed one once in Cape-Down," said the old man sullenly.

"And you have once in your life passed a holy church in Cape-Town, where you doubtless overheard a holy parson addressing his hearers as his beloved fellow-creatures, have you, cook! And yet you come here, and tell me such a dreadful lie as you did just now, eh?" said Stubb. "Where do you expect to go to, cook?"

"Go to bed berry soon," he mumbled, half-turning as he spoke.

"Avast! heave to! I mean when you die, cook. It's an awful question. Now what's your answer?"

"When dis old brack man dies," said the negro slowly, changing his whole air and demeanor, "he hisself won't go nowhere; but some bressed angel will come and fetch him."

"Fetch him? How? In a coach and four, as they fetched Elijah? And fetch him where?"

"Up dere," said Fleece, holding his tongs straight over his head, and keeping it there very solemnly.

"So, then, you expect to go up into our main-top, do you, cook, when you are dead? But don't you know the higher you climb, the colder it gets? Main-top, eh?"

"Didn't say dat t'all," said Fleece, again in the sulks.

"You said up there, didn't you? and now look yourself, and see where your tongs are pointing. But, perhaps you expect to get into heaven by crawling through the lubber's hole, cook; but, no, no, cook, you don't get there, except you go the regular way, round by the rigging. It's a ticklish business, but must be done, or else it's no go. But none of us are in heaven yet. Drop your tongs, cook, and hear my orders. Do ye hear? Hold your hat in one hand, and clap t'other a'top of your heart, when I'm giving my orders, cook. What! that your heart, there?—that's your gizzard! Aloft! aloft!—that's it—now you have it. Hold it there now, and pay attention."

"All 'dention," said the old black, with both hands placed as desired, vainly wriggling his grizzled head, as if to get both ears in front at one and the same time.

"Well then, cook, you see this whale-steak of yours was so very bad, that I have put it out of sight as soon as possible; you see that, don't you? Well, for the future, when you cook another whale-steak for my private table here, the capstan, I'll tell you what to do so as not to spoil it by overdoing. Hold the steak in one hand, and show a live coal to it with the other; that done, dish it; d'ye hear? And now to-morrow, cook, when we are cutting in the fish, be sure you stand by to get the tips of his fins; have them put in pickle. As for the ends of the flukes, have them soused, cook. There, now ye may go."

But Fleece had hardly got three paces off, when he was recalled.

"Cook, give me cutlets for supper to-morrow night in the mid-watch. D'ye hear? away you sail, then.—Halloa! stop! make a bow before you go.—Avast heaving again! Whale-balls for breakfast—don't forget."

"Wish, by gor! whale eat him, 'stead of him eat whale. I'm bressed if he ain't more of shark dan Massa Shark hisself," muttered the old man, limping away; with which sage ejaculation he went to his hammock.

CHAPTER LXV

THE WHALE AS A DISH

THAT mortal man should feed upon the creature that feeds his lamp, and, like Stubb, eat him by his own light, as you may say; this seems so outlandish a thing that one must needs go a little into the history and philosophy of it.

It is upon record, that three centuries ago the tongue of the Right Whale was esteemed a great delicacy in France, and commanded large prices there. Also, that in Henry VIIIth's time, a certain cook of the court obtained a handsome reward for inventing an admirable sauce to be eaten with barbacued porpoises, which, you remember, are a species of whale. Porpoises, indeed, are to this day considered fine eating. The meat is made into balls about the size of billiard balls, and being well seasoned and spiced might be taken for turtle-balls or veal balls. The old monks of Dunfermline were very fond of them. They had a great porpoise grant from the crown.

The fact is, that among his hunters at least, the whale would by all hands be considered a noble dish, were there not so much of him; but when you come to sit down before a meat-pie nearly one hundred feet long, it takes away your appetite. Only the most unprejudiced of men like Stubb, nowadays partake of

cooked whales; but the Esquimaux are not so fastidious. We all know how they live upon whales, and have rare old vintages of prime old train oil. Zogrande, one of their most famous doctors, recommends strips of blubber for infants, as being exceedingly juicy and nourishing. And this reminds me that certain Englishmen, who long ago were accidentally left in Greenland by a whaling vessel—that these men actually lived for several months on the mouldy scraps of whales which had been left ashore after trying out the blubber. Among the Dutch whalers these scraps are called “fritters;” which, indeed, they greatly resemble, being brown and crisp, and smelling something like old Amsterdam housewives’ dough-nuts or oly-cooks, when fresh. They have such an eatable look that the most self-denying stranger can hardly keep his hands off.

But what further depreciates the whale as a civilized dish, is his exceeding richness. He is the great prize ox of the sea, too fat to be delicately good. Look at his hump, which would be as fine eating as the buffalo’s (which is esteemed a rare dish), were it not such a solid pyramid of fat. But the spermaceti itself, how bland and creamy that is; like the transparent, half-jellied, white meat of a cocoanut in the third month of its growth, yet far too rich to supply a substitute for butter. Nevertheless, many whalers have a method of absorbing it into some other substance, and then partaking of it. In the long try watches of the night it is a common thing for the seamen to dip their ship-biscuit into the huge oil-pots and let them fry there awhile. Many a good supper have I thus made.

In the case of a small Sperm Whale the brains are accounted a fine dish. The casket of the skull is broken into with an axe, and the two plump, whitish lobes being withdrawn (precisely resembling two large puddings), they are then mixed with flour, and cooked into a most delectable mess, in flavor somewhat resembling calves’ head, which is quite a dish among some epicures; and every one knows that some young bucks among the epicures, by continually dining upon calves’ brains, by and by get to have a little brains of their own, so as to be able to tell a calf’s head from their own heads; which, indeed, requires uncommon discrimination. And that is the reason why

a young buck with an intelligent looking calf's head before him, is somehow one of the saddest sights you can see. The head looks a sort of reproachfully at him, with an "Et tu Brutel!" expression.

It is not, perhaps, entirely because the whale is so excessively unctuous that landsmen seem to regard the eating of him with abhorrence; that appears to result, in some way, from the consideration before mentioned: i. e. that a man should eat a newly murdered thing of the sea, and eat it too by its own light. But no doubt the first man that ever murdered an ox was regarded as a murderer; perhaps he was hung; and if he had been put on his trial by oxen, he certainly would have been; and he certainly deserved it if any murderer does. Go to the meat-market of a Saturday night and see the crowds of live bipeds staring up at the long rows of dead quadrupeds. Does not that sight take a tooth out of the cannibal's jaw? Cannibals? who is not a cannibal? I tell you it will be more tolerable for the Fejee that salted down a lean missionary in his cellar against a coming famine; it will be more tolerable for that provident Fejee, I say, in the day of judgment, than for thee, civilized and enlightened gourmand, who nailest geese to the ground and featest on their bloated livers in thy *paté-de-foie-gras*.

But Stubb, he eats the whale by its own light, does he? and that is adding insult to injury, is it? Look at your knife-handle, there, my civilized and enlightened gourmand dining off that roast beef, what is that handle made of?—what but the bones of the brother of the very ox you are eating? And what do you pick your teeth with, after devouring that fat goose? With a feather of the same fowl. And with what quill did the Secretary of the Society for the Suppression of Cruelty to Ganders formally indite his circulars? It is only within the last month or two that that society passed a resolution to patronize nothing but steel pens.

CHAPTER LXVI

THE SHARK MASSACRE

WHEN in the Southern Fishery, a captured Sperm Whale, after long and weary toil, is brought alongside late at night, it is not, as a general thing at least, customary to proceed at once to the business of cutting him in. For that business is an exceedingly laborious one; is not very soon completed; and requires all hands to set about it. Therefore, the common usage is to take in all sail; lash the helm a'lee; and then send every one below to his hammock till daylight, with the reservation that, until that time, anchor-watches shall be kept; that is, two and two for an hour, each couple, the crew in rotation shall mount the deck to see that all goes well.

But sometimes, especially upon the Line in the Pacific, this plan will not answer at all; because such incalculable hosts of sharks gather round the moored carcase, that were he left so for six hours, say, on a stretch, little more than the skeleton would be visible by morning. In most other parts of the ocean, however, where these fish do not so largely abound, their wondrous voracity can be at times considerably diminished, by vigorously stirring them up with sharp whaling-spades, a procedure notwithstanding, which, in some instances, only seems to tickle them into still greater activity. But it was not thus in the present case with the Pequod's sharks; though, to be sure, any man unaccustomed to such sights, to have looked over her side that night, would have almost thought the whole round sea was one huge cheese, and those sharks the maggots in it.

Nevertheless, upon Stubb setting the anchor-watch after his supper was concluded; and when, accordingly, Queequeg and a forecastle seaman came on deck, no small excitement was created among the sharks; for immediately suspending the cutting stages over the side, and lowering three lanterns, so that they cast long gleams of light over the turbid sea, these

two mariners, darting their long whaling-spades, kept up an incessant murdering of the sharks,* by striking the keen steel deep into their skulls, seemingly their only vital part. But in the foamy confusion of their mixed and struggling hosts, the marksmen could not always hit their mark; and this brought about new revelations of the incredible ferocity of the foe. They viciously snapped, not only at each other's disembowelments, but like flexible bows, bent round, and bit their own; till those entrails seemed swallowed over and over again by the same mouth, to be oppositely voided by the gaping wound. Nor was this all. It was unsafe to meddle with the corpses and ghosts of these creatures. A sort of generic or Pantheistic vitality seemed to lurk in their very joints and bones, after what might be called the individual life had departed. Killed and hoisted on deck for the sake of his skin, one of these sharks almost took poor Queequeg's hand off, when he tried to shut down the dead lid of his murderous jaw.

"Queequeg no care what god made him shark," said the savage, agonizingly lifting his hand up and down; "wedder Fejee god or Nantucket god; but de god wat made shark must be one dam Ingin."

CHAPTER LXVII

CUTTING IN

It was a Saturday night, and such a Sabbath as followed! Ex officio professors of Sabbath breaking are all whalemén. The ivory Pequod was turned into what seemed a shamble;

* The whaling-spade used for cutting-in is made of the very best steel; is about the bigness of a man's spread hand; and in general shape, corresponds to the garden implement after which it is named; only its sides are perfectly flat, and its upper end considerably narrower than the lower. This weapon is always kept as sharp as possible; and when being used is occasionally honed, just like a razor. In its socket, a stiff pole, from twenty to thirty feet long, is inserted for a handle.

every sailor a butcher. You would have thought we were offering up ten thousand red oxen to the sea gods.

In the first place, the enormous cutting tackles, among other ponderous things comprising a cluster of blocks generally painted green, and which no single man can possibly lift—this vast bunch of grapes was swayed up to the main-top and firmly lashed to the lower mast-head, the strongest point anywhere above a ship's deck. The end of the hawser-like rope winding through these intricacies, was then conducted to the windlass, and the huge lower block of the tackles was swung over the whale; to this block the great blubber hook, weighing some one hundred pounds, was attached. And now suspended in stages over the side, Starbuck and Stubb, the mates, armed with their long spades, began cutting a hole in the body for the insertion of the hook just above the nearest of the two side-fins. This done, a broad, semicircular line is cut round the hole, the hook is inserted, and the main body of the crew striking up a wild chorus, now commence heaving in one dense crowd at the windlass. When instantly, the entire ship careens over on her side; every bolt in her starts like the nail-heads of an old house in frosty weather; she trembles, quivers, and nods her frightened mast-heads to the sky. More and more she leans over to the whale, while every gasping heave of the windlass is answered by a helping heave from the billows; till at last, a swift, startling snap is heard; with a great swash the ship rolls upwards and backwards from the whale, and the triumphant tackle rises into sight dragging after it the disengaged semicircular end of the first strip of blubber. Now as the blubber envelopes the whale precisely as the rind does an orange, so is it stripped off from the body precisely as an orange is sometimes stripped by spiralizing it. For the strain constantly kept up by the windlass continually keeps the whale rolling over and over in the water, and as the blubber in one strip uniformly peels off along the line called the "scarf," simultaneously cut by the spades of Starbuck and Stubb, the mates; and just as fast as it is thus peeled off, and indeed by that very act itself, it is all the time being hoisted higher and higher aloft till its upper end grazes the main-top; the men at the windlass then cease heaving, and for a moment

or two the prodigious blood-dripping mass sways to and fro as if let down from the sky, and every one present must take good heed to dodge it when it swings, else it may box his ears and pitch him headlong overboard.

One of the attending harpooneers now advances with a long, keen weapon called a boarding-sword, and watching his chance he dexterously slices out a considerable hole in the lower part of the swaying mass. Into this hole, the end of the second alternating great tackle is then hooked so as to retain a hold upon the blubber, in order to prepare for what follows. Whereupon, this accomplished swordsman, warning all hands to stand off, once more makes a scientific dash at the mass, and with a few sidelong, desperate, lunging slicings, severs it completely in twain; so that while the short lower part is still fast, the long upper strip, called a blanket-piece, swings clear, and is all ready for lowering. The heavers forward now resume their song, and while the one tackle is peeling and hoisting a second strip from the whale, the other is slowly slackened away, and down goes the first strip through the main hatchway right beneath, into an unfurnished parlor called the blubber-room. Into this twilight apartment sundry nimble hands keep coiling away the long blanket-piece as if it were a great live mass of plaited serpents. And thus the work proceeds; the two tackles hoisting and lowering simultaneously; both whale and windlass heaving, the heavers singing, the blubber-room gentlemen coiling, the mates scarfing, the ship straining, and all hands swearing occasionally, by way of assuaging the general friction.

CHAPTER LXVIII

THE BLANKET

I HAVE given no small attention to that not unvexed subject, the skin of the whale. I have had controversies about it with experienced whalers afloat, and learned naturalists ashore.

My original opinion remains unchanged; but it is only an opinion.

The question is, what and where is the skin of the whale? Already you know what his blubber is. That blubber is something of the consistence of firm, close-grained beef, but tougher, more elastic and compact, and ranges from eight or ten to twelve and fifteen inches in thickness.

Now, however preposterous it may at first seem to talk of any creature's skin as being of that sort of consistence and thickness, yet in point of fact these are no arguments against such a presumption; because you cannot raise any other dense enveloping layer from the whale's body but that same blubber; and the outermost enveloping layer of any animal, if reasonably dense, what can that be but the skin? True, from the unmarred dead body of the whale, you may scrape off with your hand an infinitely thin, transparent substance, somewhat resembling the thinnest shreds of isinglass, only it is almost as flexible and soft as satin; that is, previous to being dried, when it not only contracts and thickens, but becomes rather hard and brittle. I have several such dried bits, which I use for marks in my whale-books. It is transparent, as I said before; and being laid upon the printed page, I have sometimes pleased myself with fancying it exerted a magnifying influence. At any rate, it is pleasant to read about whales through their own spectacles, as you may say. But what I am driving at here is this. That same infinitely thin, isinglass substance, which, I admit, invests the entire body of the whale, is not so much to be regarded as the skin of the creature, as the skin of the skin, so to speak; for it were simply ridiculous to say, that the proper skin of the tremendous whale is thinner and more tender than the skin of a new-born child. But no more of this.

Assuming the blubber to be the skin of the whale; then, when this skin, as in the case of a very large Sperm Whale, will yield the bulk of one hundred barrels of oil; and, when it is considered that, in quantity, or rather weight, that oil, in its expressed state, is only three fourths, and not the entire substance of the coat; some idea may hence be had of the enormousness of that animated mass, a mere part of whose mere

integument yields such a lake of liquid as that. Reckoning ten barrels to the ton, you have ten tons for the net weight of only three quarters of the stuff of the whale's skin.

In life, the visible surface of the Sperm Whale is not the least among the many marvels he presents. Almost invariably it is all over obliquely crossed and re-crossed with numberless straight marks in thick array, something like those in the finest Italian line engravings. But these marks do not seem to be impressed upon the isinglass substance above mentioned, but seem to be seen through it, as if they were engraved upon the body itself. Nor is this all. In some instances, to the quick, observant eye, those linear marks, as in a veritable engraving, but afford the ground for far other delineations. These are hieroglyphical; that is, if you call those mysterious cyphers on the walls of pyramids hieroglyphics, then that is the proper word to use in the present connexion. By my retentive memory of the hieroglyphics upon one Sperm Whale in particular, I was much struck with a plate representing the old Indian characters chiselled on the famous hieroglyphic palisades on the banks of the Upper Mississippi. Like those mystic rocks, too, the mystic-marked whale remains undecipherable. This allusion to the Indian rocks reminds me of another thing. Besides all the other phenomena which the exterior of the Sperm Whale presents, he not seldom displays the back, and more especially his flanks, effaced in great part of the regular linear appearance, by reason of numerous rude scratches, altogether of an irregular, random aspect. I should say that those New England rocks on the sea-coast, which Agassiz imagines to bear the marks of violent scraping contact with vast floating icebergs—I should say, that those rocks must not a little resemble the Sperm Whale in this particular. It also seems to me that such scratches in the whale are probably made by hostile contact with other whales; for I have most remarked them in the large, full-grown bulls of the species.

A word or two more concerning this matter of the skin or blubber of the whale. It has already been said, that it is stript from him in long pieces, called blanket-pieces. Like most sea-terms, this one is very happy and significant. For the whale is

indeed wrapt up in his blubber as in a real blanket or counterpane; or, still better, an Indian poncho slipt over his head, and skirting his extremity. It is by reason of this cosy blanketing of his body, that the whale is enabled to keep himself comfortable in all weathers, in all seas, times, and tides. What would become of a Greenland whale, say, in those shuddering, icy seas of the North, if unsupplied with his cosy surtout? True, other fish are found exceedingly brisk in those Hyperborean waters; but these, be it observed, are your cold-blooded, lungless fish, whose very bellies are refrigerators; creatures, that warm themselves under the lee of an iceberg, as a traveller in winter would bask before an inn fire; whereas, like man, the whale has lungs and warm blood. Freeze his blood, and he dies. How wonderful is it then—except after explanation—that this great monster, to whom corporeal warmth is as indispensable as it is to man; how wonderful that he should be found at home, immersed to his lips for life in those Arctic waters! where, when seamen fall overboard, they are sometimes found, months afterwards, perpendicularly frozen into the hearts of fields of ice, as a fly is found glued in amber. But more surprising is it to know, as has been proved by experiment, that the blood of a Polar whale is warmer than that of a Borneo negro in summer.

✓ It does seem to me, that herein we see the rare virtue of a strong individual vitality, and the rare virtue of thick walls and the rare virtue of interior spaciousness. Oh, man! admire and model thyself after the whale! Do thou, too, remain warm among ice. Do thou, too, live in this world without being of it. Be cool at the equator; keep thy blood fluid at the Pole. Like the great dome of St. Peter's, and like the great whale, retain, O man! in all seasons a temperature of thine own.

But how easy and how hopeless to teach these fine things! Of erections, how few are domed like St. Peter's! of creatures, how few vast as the whale!

CHAPTER LXIX

THE FUNERAL

"HAUL in the chains! Let the carcase go astern!"

The vast tackles have now done their duty. The peeled white body of the beheaded whale flashes like a marble sepulchre; though changed in hue, it has not perceptibly lost anything in bulk. It is still colossal. Slowly it floats more and more away, the water round it torn and splashed by the insatiate sharks, and the air above vexed with rapacious flights of screaming fowls, whose beaks are like so many insulting poniards in the whale. The vast white headless phantom floats further and further from the ship, and every rod that it so floats, what seem square roods of sharks and cubic roods of fowls, augment the murderous din. For hours and hours from the almost stationary ship that hideous sight is seen. Beneath the unclouded and mild azure sky, upon the fair face of the pleasant sea, wafted by the joyous breezes, that great mass of death floats on and on, till lost in infinite perspectives.

There's a most doleful and most mocking funeral! The sea-vultures all in pious mourning, the air-sharks all punctiliously in black or speckled. In life but few of them would have helped the whale, I ween, if peradventure he had needed it; but upon the banquet of his funeral they most piously do pounce. Oh, horrible vultureism of earth! from which not the mightiest whale is free.

Nor is this the end. Desecrated as the body is, a vengeful ghost survives and hovers over it to scare. Espied by some timid man-of-war or blundering discovery-vessel from afar, when the distance obscuring the swarming fowls, nevertheless still shows the white mass floating in the sun, and the white spray heaving high against it; straightway the whale's unharmed corpse, with trembling fingers is set down in the log—*shoals, rocks, and breakers hereabouts: beware!* And for years after-

wards, perhaps, ships shun the place; leaping over it as silly sheep leap over a vacuum, because their leader originally leaped there when a stick was held. There's your law of precedents; there's your utility of traditions; there's the story of your obstinate survival of old beliefs never bottomed on the earth, and now not even hovering in the air! There's orthodoxy!

Thus, while in life the great whale's body may have been a real terror to his foes, in his death his ghost becomes a powerless panic to a world.

Are you a believer in ghosts, my friend? There are other ghosts than the Cock-Lane one, and far deeper men than Doctor Johnson who believe in them.

CHAPTER LXX

THE SPHYNX

It should not have been omitted that previous to completely stripping the body of the leviathan, he was beheaded. Now, the beheading of the Sperm Whale is a scientific anatomical feat, upon which experienced whale surgeons very much pride themselves: and not without reason.

Consider that the whale has nothing that can properly be called a neck; on the contrary, where his head and body seem to join, there, in that very place, is the thickest part of him. Remember, also, that the surgeon must operate from above, some eight or ten feet intervening between him and his subject, and that subject almost hidden in a discolored, rolling, and oftentimes tumultuous and bursting sea. Bear in mind, too, that under these untoward circumstances he has to cut many feet deep in the flesh; and in that subterranean manner, without so much as getting one single peep into the ever-contracting gash thus made, he must skilfully steer clear of all adjacent, interdicted parts, and exactly divide the spine at a critical point hard by its insertion into the skull. Do you not marvel,

then, at Stubb's boast, that he demanded but ten minutes to behead a sperm whale?

When first severed, the head is dropped astern and held there by a cable till the body is stripped. That done, if it belong to a small whale it is hoisted on deck to be deliberately disposed of. But, with a full grown leviathan this is impossible; for the sperm whale's head embraces nearly one third of his entire bulk, and completely to suspend such a burden as that, even by the immense tackles of a whaler, this were as vain a thing as to attempt weighing a Dutch barn in jewellers' scales.

The Pequod's whale being decapitated and the body stripped, the head was hoisted against the ship's side—about half way out of the sea, so that it might yet in great part be buoyed up by its native element. And there with the strained craft steeply leaning over to it, by reason of the enormous downward drag from the lower mast-head, and every yard-arm on that side projecting like a crane over the waves; there, that blood-dripping head hung to the Pequod's waist like the giant Holofernes's from the girdle of Judith.

When this last task was accomplished it was noon, and the seamen went below to their dinner. Silence reigned over the before tumultuous but now deserted deck. An intense copper calm, like a universal yellow lotus, was more and more unfolding its noiseless measureless leaves upon the sea.

A short space elapsed, and up into this noiselessness came Ahab alone from his cabin. Taking a few turns on the quarter-deck, he paused to gaze over the side, then slowly getting into the main-chains he took Stubb's long spade—still remaining there after the whale's decapitation—and striking it into the lower part of the half-suspended mass, placed its other end crutch-wise under one arm, and so stood leaning over with eyes attentively fixed on this head.

It was a black and hooded head; and hanging there in the midst of so intense a calm, it seemed the Sphynx's in the desert. "Speak, thou vast and venerable head," muttered Ahab, "which, though ungarnished with a beard, yet here and there lookest hoary with mosses; speak, mighty head, and tell us the secret thing that is in thee. Of all divers, thou hast dived the deepest.

That head upon which the upper sun now gleams, has moved amid this world's foundations. Where unrecorded names and navies rust, and untold hopes and anchors rot; where in her murderous hold this frigate earth is ballasted with bones of millions of the drowned; there, in that awful water-land, there was thy most familiar home. Thou hast been where bell or diver never went; hast slept by many a sailor's side, where sleepless mothers would give their lives to lay them down. Thou saw'st the locked lovers when leaping from their flaming ship; heart to heart they sank beneath the exulting wave; true to each other, when heaven seemed false to them. Thou saw'st the murdered mate when tossed by pirates from the midnight deck; for hours he fell into the deeper midnight of the insatiate maw; and his murderers still sailed on unharmed—while swift lightnings shivered the neighboring ship that would have borne a righteous husband to outstretched, longing arms. O head! thou hast seen enough to split the planets and make an infidel of Abraham, and not one syllable is thine!"

"Sail ho!" cried a triumphant voice from the main-masthead.

"Aye? Well, now, that's cheering," cried Ahab, suddenly erecting himself, while whole thunder-clouds swept aside from his brow. "That lively cry upon this deadly calm might almost convert a better man.—Where away?"

"Three points on the starboard bow, sir, and bringing down her breeze to us!"

"Better and better, man. Would now St. Paul would come along that way, and to my breezelessness bring his breeze! O Nature, and O soul of man! how far beyond all utterance are your linked analogies! not the smallest atom stirs or lives on matter, but has its cunning duplicate in mind."

CHAPTER LXXI

THE JEROBOAM'S STORY

HAND in hand, ship and breeze blew on; but the breeze came faster than the ship, and soon the Pequod began to rock.

By and by, through the glass the strangers' boats and manned mast-heads proved her a whale-ship. But as she was so far to windward, and shooting by, apparently making a passage to some other ground, the Pequod could not hope to reach her. So the signal was set to see what response would be made.

Here be it said, that like the vessels of military marines, the ships of the American Whale Fleet have each a private signal; all which signals being collected in a book with the names of the respective vessels attached, every captain is provided with it. Thereby, the whale commanders are enabled to recognise each other upon the ocean, even at considerable distances, and with no small facility.

The Pequod's signal was at last responded to by the stranger's setting her own; which proved the ship to be the Jeroboam of Nantucket. Squaring her yards, she bore down, ranged abeam under the Pequod's lee, and lowered a boat; it soon drew nigh; but, as the side-ladder was being rigged by Starbuck's order to accommodate the visiting captain, the stranger in question waved his hand from his boat's stern in token of that proceeding being entirely unnecessary. It turned out that the Jeroboam had a malignant epidemic on board, and that Mayhew, her captain, was fearful of infecting the Pequod's company. For, though himself and boat's crew remained untainted, and though his ship was half a rifle-shot off, and an incorruptible sea and air rolling and flowing between; yet conscientiously adhering to the timid quarantine of the land, he peremptorily refused to come into direct contact with the Pequod.

But this did by no means prevent all communication. Preserving an interval of some few yards between itself and the

ship, the Jeroboam's boat by the occasional use of its oars contrived to keep parallel to the Pequod, as she heavily forged through the sea (for by this time it blew very fresh), with her main-topsail aback; though, indeed, at times by the sudden onset of a large rolling wave, the boat would be pushed some way ahead; but would be soon skilfully brought to her proper bearings again. Subject to this, and other the like interruptions now and then, a conversation was sustained between the two parties; but at intervals not without still another interruption of a very different sort.

Pulling an oar in the Jeroboam's boat, was a man of a singular appearance, even in that wild whaling life where individual notabilities make up all totalities. He was a small, short, youngish man, sprinkled all over his face with freckles, and wearing redundant yellow hair. A long-skirted, cabalistically-cut coat of a faded walnut tinge enveloped him; the overlapping sleeves of which were rolled up on his wrists. A deep, settled, fanatic delirium was in his eyes.

So soon as this figure had been first descried, Stubb had exclaimed—"That's he! that's he!—the long-togged scaramouch the Town-Ho's company told us of!" Stubb here alluded to a strange story told of the Jeroboam, and a certain man among her crew, some time previous when the Pequod spoke the Town-Ho. According to this account and what was subsequently learned, it seemed that the scaramouch in question had gained a wonderful ascendancy over almost everybody in the Jeroboam. His story was this:

He had been originally nurtured among the crazy society of Neskyeuna Shakers, where he had been a great prophet; in their cracked, secret meetings having several times descended from heaven by the way of a trap-door, announcing the speedy opening of the seventh vial, which he carried in his vest-pocket; but, which, instead of containing gunpowder, was supposed to be charged with laudanum. A strange, apostolic whim having seized him, he had left Neskyeuna for Nantucket, where, with that cunning peculiar to craziness, he assumed a steady, common sense exterior, and offered himself as a green-hand candidate for the Jeroboam's whaling voyage. They engaged him;

but straightway upon the ship's getting out of sight of land, his insanity broke out in a freshet. He announced himself as the archangel Gabriel, and commanded the captain to jump overboard. He published his manifesto, whereby he set himself forth as the deliverer of the isles of the sea and vicar-general of all Oceanica. The unflinching earnestness with which he declared these things;—the dark, daring play of his sleepless, excited imagination, and all the preternatural terrors of real delirium, united to invest this Gabriel in the minds of the majority of the ignorant crew, with an atmosphere of sacredness. Moreover, they were afraid of him. As such a man, however, was not of much practical use in the ship, especially as he refused to work except when he pleased, the incredulous captain would fain have been rid of him; but apprised that that individual's intention was to land him in the first convenient port, the archangel forthwith opened all his seals and vials—devoting the ship and all hands to unconditional perdition, in case this intention was carried out. So strongly did he work upon his disciples among the crew, that at last in a body they went to the captain and told him if Gabriel was sent from the ship, not a man of them would remain. He was therefore forced to relinquish his plan. Nor would they permit Gabriel to be any way maltreated, say or do what he would; so that it came to pass that Gabriel had the complete freedom of the ship. The consequence of all this was, that the archangel cared little or nothing for the captain and mates; and since the epidemic had broken out, he carried a higher hand than ever; declaring that the plague, as he called it, was at his sole command; nor should it be stayed but according to his good pleasure. The sailors, mostly poor devils, cringed, and some of them fawned before him; in obedience to his instructions, sometimes rendering him personal homage, as to a god. Such things may seem incredible; but, however wondrous, they are true. Nor is the history of fanatics half so striking in respect to the measureless self-deception of the fanatic himself, as his measureless power of deceiving and bedevilling so many others. But it is time to return to the Pequod.

"I fear not thy epidemic, man," said Ahab from the bul-

warks, to Captain Mayhew, who stood in the boat's stern; "come on board."

But now Gabriel started to his feet.

"Think, think of the fevers, yellow and bilious! Beware of the horrible plague!"

"Gabriel, Gabriell" cried Captain Mayhew; "thou must either—" But that instant a headlong wave shot the boat far ahead, and its seethings drowned all speech.

"Hast thou seen the White Whale?" demanded Ahab, when the boat drifted back.

"Think, think of thy whale-boat, stoven and sunk! Beware of the horrible tail!"

"I tell thee again, Gabriel, that—" But again the boat tore ahead as if dragged by fiends. Nothing was said for some moments, while a succession of riotous waves rolled by, which by one of those occasional caprices of the seas were tumbling, not heaving it. Meantime, the hoisted sperm whale's head jogged about very violently, and Gabriel was seen eyeing it with rather more apprehensiveness than his archangel nature seemed to warrant.

When this interlude was over, Captain Mayhew began a dark story concerning Moby Dick; not, however, without frequent interruptions from Gabriel, whenever his name was mentioned, and the crazy sea that seemed leagued with him.

It seemed that the Jeroboam had not long left home, when upon speaking a whale-ship, her people were reliably apprised of the existence of Moby Dick, and the havoc he had made. Greedily sucking in this intelligence, Gabriel solemnly warned the captain against attacking the White Whale, in case the monster should be seen; in his gibbering insanity, pronouncing the White Whale to be no less a being than the Shaker God incarnated; the Shakers receiving the Bible. But when, some year or two afterwards, Moby Dick was fairly sighted from the mast-heads, Macey, the chief mate, burned with ardor to encounter him; and the captain himself being not unwilling to let him have the opportunity, despite all the archangel's denunciations and forewarnings, Macey succeeded in persuading five men to man his boat. With them he pushed off; and, after

much weary pulling, and many perilous, unsuccessful onsets, he at last succeeded in getting one iron fast. Meantime, Gabriel, ascending to the main-royal mast-head, was tossing one arm in frantic gestures, and hurling forth prophecies of speedy doom to the sacrilegious assailants of his divinity. Now, while Macey, the mate, was standing up in his boat's bow, and with all the reckless energy of his tribe was venting his wild exclamations upon the whale, and essaying to get a fair chance for his poised lance, lo! a broad white shadow rose from the sea; by its quick, fanning motion, temporarily taking the breath out of the bodies of the oarsmen. Next instant, the luckless mate, so full of furious life, was smitten bodily into the air, and making a long arc in his descent, fell into the sea at the distance of about fifty yards. Not a chip of the boat was harmed, nor a hair of any oarsman's head; but the mate for ever sank.

It is well to parenthesize here, that of the fatal accidents in the Sperm-Whale Fishery, this kind is perhaps almost as frequent as any. Sometimes, nothing is injured but the man who is thus annihilated; oftener the boat's bow is knocked off, or the thigh-board, in which the headsman stands, is torn from its place and accompanies the body. But strangest of all is the circumstance, that in more instances than one, when the body has been recovered, not a single mark of violence is discernible; the man being stark dead.

The whole calamity, with the falling form of Macey, was plainly descried from the ship. Raising a piercing shriek—"The vial! the vial!" Gabriel called off the terror-stricken crew from the further hunting of the whale. This terrible event clothed the archangel with added influence; because his credulous disciples believed that he had specifically fore-announced it, instead of only making a general prophecy, which any one might have done, and so have chanced to hit one of many marks in the wide margin allowed. He became a nameless terror to the ship.

Mayhew having concluded his narration, Ahab put such questions to him, that the stranger captain could not forbear inquiring whether he intended to hunt the White Whale, if opportunity should offer. To which Ahab answered—"Aye." Straightway, then, Gabriel once more started to his feet, glaring

upon the old man, and vehemently exclaimed, with downward pointed finger—"Think, think of the blasphemer—dead, and down there!—beware of the blasphemer's end!"

Ahab stolidly turned aside; then said to Mayhew, "Captain, I have just bethought me of my letter-bag; there is a letter for one of thy officers, if I mistake not. Starbuck, look over the bag."

Every whale-ship takes out a goodly number of letters for various ships, whose delivery to the persons to whom they may be addressed, depends upon the mere chance of encountering them in the four oceans. Thus, most letters never reach their mark; and many are only received after attaining an age of two or three years or more.

Soon Starbuck returned with a letter in his hand. It was sorely tumbled, damp, and covered with a dull, spotted, green mould, in consequence of being kept in a dark locker of the cabin. Of such a letter, Death himself might well have been the post-boy.

"Can'st not read it?" cried Ahab. "Give it me, man. Aye, aye, it's but a dim scrawl;—what's this?" As he was studying it out, Starbuck took a long cutting-spade pole, and with his knife slightly split the end, to insert the letter there, and in that way, hand it to the boat, without its coming any closer to the ship.

Meantime, Ahab holding the letter, muttered, "Mr. Har—yes, Mr. Harry—(a woman's pinny hand,—the man's wife, I'll wager)—Aye—Mr. Harry Macey, Ship Jeroboam;—why it's Macey, and he's dead!"

"Poor fellow! poor fellow! and from his wife," sighed Mayhew; "but let me have it."

✓ "Nay, keep it thyself," cried Gabriel to Ahab; "thou art soon going that way."

"Curses throttle thee!" yelled Ahab. "Captain Mayhew, stand by now to receive it;" and taking the fatal missive from Starbuck's hands, he caught it in the slit of the pole, and reached it over towards the boat. But as he did so, the oarsmen expectantly desisted from rowing; the boat drifted a little towards the ship's stern; so that, as if by magic, the letter suddenly ranged along with Gabriel's eager hand. He clutched it in an instant, seized the boat-knife, and impaling the letter on it, sent it thus loaded back into the ship. It fell at Ahab's feet. Then Gabriel

shrieked out to his comrades to give way with their oars, and in that manner the mutinous boat rapidly shot away from the Pequod.

As, after this interlude, the seamen resumed their work upon the jacket of the whale, many strange things were hinted in reference to this wild affair.

CHAPTER LXXII

THE MONKEY-ROPE

IN the tumultuous business of cutting-in and attending to a whale, there is much running backwards and forwards among the crew. Now hands are wanted here, and then again hands are wanted there. There is no staying in any one place; for at one and the same time everything has to be done everywhere. It is much the same with him who endeavors the description of the scene. We must now retrace our way a little. It was mentioned that upon first breaking ground in the whale's back, the blubber-hook was inserted into the original hole there cut by the spades of the mates. But how did so clumsy and weighty a mass as that same hook get fixed in that hole? It was inserted there by my particular friend Queequeg, whose duty it was, as harpooneer, to descend upon the monster's back for the special purpose referred to. But in very many cases, circumstances require that the harpooneer shall remain on the whale till the whole flensing or stripping operation is concluded. The whale, be it observed, lies almost entirely submerged, excepting the immediate parts operated upon. So down there, some ten feet below the level of the deck, the poor harpooneer flounders about, half on the whale and half in the water, as the vast mass revolves like a tread-mill beneath him. On the occasion in question, Queequeg figured in the Highland costume—a shirt and socks—in which to my eyes, at least, he appeared to uncommon

advantage; and no one had a better chance to observe him, as will presently be seen.

Being the savage's bowsman, that is, the person who pulled the bow-oar in his boat (the second one from forward), it was my cheerful duty to attend upon him while taking that hard-scrabble scramble upon the dead whale's back. You have seen Italian organ-boys holding a dancing-ape by a long cord. Just so, from the ship's steep side, did I hold Queequeg down there in the sea, by what is technically called in the fishery a monkey-rope, attached to a strong strip of canvas belted round his waist.

It was a humorously perilous business for both of us. For, before we proceed further, it must be said that the monkey-rope was fast at both ends; fast to Queequeg's broad canvas belt, and fast to my narrow leather one. So that for better or for worse, we two, for the time, were wedded; and should poor Queequeg sink to rise no more, then both usage and honor demanded, that instead of cutting the cord, it should drag me down in his wake. So, then, an elongated Siamese ligature united us. Queequeg was my own inseparable twin brother; nor could I any way get rid of the dangerous liabilities which the hempen bond entailed.

So strongly and metaphysically did I conceive of my situation then, that while earnestly watching his motions, I seemed distinctly to perceive that my own individuality was now merged in a joint stock company of two: that my free will had received a mortal wound; and that another's mistake or misfortune might plunge innocent me into unmerited disaster and death. Therefore, I saw that here was a sort of interregnum in Providence; for its even-handed equity never could have sanctioned so gross an injustice. And yet still further pondering—while I jerked him now and then from between the whale and the ship, which would threaten to jam him—still further pondering, I say, I saw that this situation of mine was the precise situation of every mortal that breathes; only, in most cases, he, one way or other, has this Siamese connexion with a plurality of other mortals. If your banker breaks, you snap; if your apothecary by mistake sends you poison in your pills, you die. True, you may say that, by exceeding caution, you may possibly escape these and

the multitudinous other evil chances of life. But handle Queequeg's monkey-rope heedfully as I would, sometimes he jerked it so, that I came very near sliding overboard. (Nor could I possibly forget that, do what I would, I only had the management of one end of it.)

I have hinted that I would often jerk poor Queequeg from between the whale and the ship—where he would occasionally fall, from the incessant rolling and swaying of both. But this was not the only jamming jeopardy he was exposed to. Unappalled by the massacre made upon them during the night, the sharks now freshly and more keenly allured by the before pent blood which began to flow from the carcase—the rabid creatures swarmed round it like bees in a beehive.

And right in among those sharks was Queequeg; who often pushed them aside with his floundering feet. A thing altogether incredible were it not that attracted by such prey as a dead whale, the otherwise miscellaneously carnivorous shark will seldom touch a man.

Nevertheless, it may well be believed that since they have such a ravenous finger in the pie, it is deemed but wise to look sharp to them. Accordingly, besides the monkey-rope, with which I now and then jerked the poor fellow from too close a vicinity to the maw of what seemed a peculiarly ferocious shark—he was provided with still another protection. Suspended over the side in one of the stages, Tashtego and Daggoo continually flourished over his head a couple of keen whale-spades, wherewith they slaughtered as many sharks as they could reach. This procedure of theirs, to be sure, was very disinterested and benevolent of them. They meant Queequeg's best happiness, I admit; but in their hasty zeal to befriend him, and from the circumstance that both he and the sharks were at times half hidden by the blood-mudded water, those indiscreet spades of theirs would come nearer amputating a leg than a tail. But poor

• The monkey-rope is found in all whalers; but it was only in the Pequod that the monkey and his holder were ever tied together. This improvement upon the original usage was introduced by no less a man than Stubb, in order to afford to the imperilled harpooneer the strongest possible guarantee for the faithfulness and vigilance of his monkey-rope holder.

Queequeg, I suppose, straining and gasping there with that great iron hook—poor Queequeg, I suppose, only prayed to his Yojo, and gave up his life into the hands of his gods.

Well, well, my dear comrade and twin-brother, thought I, as I drew in and then slacked off the rope to every swell of the sea—what matters it, after all? Are you not the precious image of each and all of us men in this whaling world? That unsounded ocean you gasp in, is Life; those sharks, your foes; those spades, your friends; and what between sharks and spades you are in a sad pickle and peril, poor lad.

But courage! there is good cheer in store for you, Queequeg. For now, as with blue lips and bloodshot eyes the exhausted savage at last climbs up the chains and stands all dripping and involuntarily trembling over the side; the steward advances, and with a benevolent, consolatory glance hands him—what? Some hot Cogniac? No! hands him, ye gods! hands him a cup of tepid ginger and water!

“Ginger? Do I smell ginger?” suspiciously asked Stubb, coming near. “Yes, this must be ginger,” peering into the as yet untasted cup. Then standing as if incredulous for a while, he calmly walked towards the astonished steward slowly saying, “Ginger? ginger? and will you have the goodness to tell me, Mr. Dough-Boy, where lies the virtue of ginger? Ginger! is ginger the sort of fuel you use, Dough-Boy, to kindle a fire in this shivering cannibal? Ginger!—what the devil is ginger?—sea-coal?—fire-wood?—lucifer matches?—tinder?—gun-powder?—what the devil is ginger, I say, that you offer this cup to our poor Queequeg here?”

“There is some sneaking Temperance Society movement about this business,” he suddenly added, now approaching Starbuck, who had just come from forward. “Will you look at that kannakin, sir: smell of it, if you please.” Then watching the mate’s countenance, he added: “The steward, Mr. Starbuck, had the face to offer that calomel and jalap to Queequeg, there, this instant off the whale. Is the steward an apothecary, sir? and may I ask whether this is the sort of bitters by which he blows back the life into a half-drowned man?”

“I trust not,” said Starbuck, “it is poor stuff enough.”

"Aye, aye, steward," cried Stubb, "we'll teach you to drug a harpooneer; none of your apothecary's medicine here; you want to poison us, do ye? You have got out insurances on our lives and want to murder us all, and pocket the proceeds, do ye?"

"It was not me," cried Dough-Boy, "it was Aunt Charity that brought the ginger on board; and bade me never give the harpooneers any spirits, but only this ginger-jub—so she called it."

"Ginger-jub! you gingerly rascall take that! and run along with ye to the lockers, and get something better. I hope I do no wrong, Mr. Starbuck. It is the captain's orders—grog for the harpooneer on a whale."

"Enough," replied Starbuck, "only don't hit him again, but—"

"Oh, I never hurt when I hit, except when I hit a whale or something of that sort; and this fellow's a weazel. What were you about saying, sir?"

"Only this: go down with him, and get what thou wantest thyself."

When Stubb reappeared, he came with a dark flask in one hand, and a sort of tea-caddy in the other. The first contained strong spirits, and was handed to Queequeg; the second was Aunt Charity's gift, and that was freely given to the waves.

CHAPTER LXXIII

STUBB AND FLASK KILL A RIGHT WHALE; AND THEN HAVE A TALK OVER HIM

It must be borne in mind that all this time we have a Sperm Whale's prodigious head hanging to the Pequod's side. But we must let it continue hanging there a while till we can get a chance to attend to it. For the present other matters press, and the best we can do now for the head, is to pray heaven the tackles may hold.

Now, during the past night and forenoon, the Pequod had gradually drifted into a sea, which, by its occasional patches of

yellow brit, gave unusual tokens of the vicinity of Right Whales, a species of the Leviathan that but few supposed to be at this particular time lurking anywhere near. And though all hands commonly disdained the capture of those inferior creatures; and though the Pequod was not commissioned to cruise for them at all, and though she had passed numbers of them near the Crozetts without lowering a boat; yet now that a Sperm Whale had been brought alongside and beheaded, to the surprise of all, the announcement was made that a Right Whale should be captured that day, if opportunity offered.

Nor was this long wanting. Tall spouts were seen to leeward; and two boats, Stubb's and Flask's, were detached in pursuit. Pulling further and further away, they at last became almost invisible to the men at the mast-head. But suddenly in the distance, they saw a great heap of tumultuous white water, and soon after news came from aloft that one or both the boats must be fast. An interval passed and the boats were in plain sight, in the act of being dragged right towards the ship by the towing whale. So close did the monster come to the hull, that at first it seemed as if he meant it malice; but suddenly going down in a maelstrom, within three rods of the planks, he wholly disappeared from view, as if diving under the keel. "Cut, cut!" was the cry from the ship to the boats, which, for one instant, seemed on the point of being brought with a deadly dash against the vessel's side. But having plenty of line yet in the tubs, and the whale not sounding very rapidly, they paid out abundance of rope, and at the same time pulled with all their might so as to get ahead of the ship. For a few minutes the struggle was intensely critical; for while they still slacked out the tightened line in one direction, and still plied their oars in another, the contending strain threatened to take them under. But it was only a few feet advance they sought to gain. And they stuck to it till they did gain it; when instantly, a swift tremor was felt running like lightning along the keel, as the strained line, scraping beneath the ship, suddenly rose to view under her bows, snapping and quivering; and so flinging off its drippings, that the drops fell like bits of broken glass on the water, while the whale beyond also rose to sight, and once more the boats were free

to fly. But the fagged whale abated his speed, and blindly altering his course, went round the stern of the ship towing the two boats after him, so that they performed a complete circuit.

Meantime, they hauled more and more upon their lines, till close flanking him on both sides, Stubb answered Flask with lance for lance; and thus round and round the Pequod the battle went, while the multitudes of sharks that had before swum round the Sperm Whale's body, rushed to the fresh blood that was spilled, thirstily drinking at every new gash, as the eager Israelites did at the new bursting fountains that poured from the smitten rock.

At last his spout grew thick, and with a frightful roll and vomit, he turned upon his back a corpse.

While the two headsmen were engaged in making fast cords to his flukes, and in other ways getting the mass in readiness for towing, some conversation ensued between them.

"I wonder what the old man wants with this lump of foul lard," said Stubb, not without some disgust at the thought of having to do with so ignoble a leviathan.

"Wants with it?" said Flask, coiling some spare line in the boat's bow, "did you never hear that the ship which but once has a Sperm Whale's head hoisted on her starboard side, and at the same time a Right Whale's on the larboard; did you never hear, Stubb, that that ship can never afterwards capsize?"

"Why not?"

"I don't know, but I heard that gamboge ghost of a Fedallah saying so, and he seems to know all about ships' charms. But I sometimes think he'll charm the ship to no good at last. I don't half like that chap, Stubb. Did you ever notice how that tusk of his is a sort of carved into a snake's head, Stubb?" ✓

"Sink him! I never look at him at all; but if ever I get a chance of a dark night, and he standing hard by the bulwarks, and no one by; look down there, Flask"—pointing into the sea with a peculiar motion of both hands—"Aye, will I! Flask, I take that Fedallah to be the devil in disguise. Do you believe that cock and bull story about his having been stowed away on board ship? He's the devil, I say. The reason why you don't see his tail, is because he tucks it up out of sight; he carries it

coiled away in his pocket, I guess. Blast him! now that I think of it, he's always wanting oakum to stuff into the toes of his boots."

"He sleeps in his boots, don't he? He hasn't got any hammock; but I've seen him lay of nights in a coil of rigging."

"No doubt, and it's because of his cursed tail; he coils it down, do ye see, in the eye of the rigging."

"What's the old man have so much to do with him for?"

"Striking up a swap or a bargain, I suppose."

"Bargain?—about what?"

"Why, do ye see, the old man is hard bent after that White Whale, and the devil there is trying to come round him, and get him to swap away his silver watch, or his soul, or something of that sort, and then he'll surrender Moby Dick."

"Pooh! Stubb, you are skylarking; how can Fedallah do that?"

"I don't know, Flask, but the devil is a curious chap, and a wicked one, I tell ye. Why, they say as how he went a sauntering into the old flag-ship once, switching his tail about devilish easy and gentlemanlike, and inquiring if the old governor was at home. Well, he was at home, and asked the devil what he wanted. The devil, switching his hoofs, up and says, 'I want John.' What for?' says the old governor, 'What business is that of yours,' says the devil, getting mad,—'I want to use him.' 'Take him,' says the governor—and by the Lord, Flask, if the devil didn't give John the Asiatic cholera before he got through with him, I'll eat this whale in one mouthful. But look sharp—aint you all ready there? Well, then, pull ahead, and let's get the whale alongside."

"I think I remember some such story as you were telling," said Flask, when at last the two boats were slowly advancing with their burden towards the ship, "but I can't remember where."

"Three Spaniards? Adventures of those three bloody-minded soldadoes? Did ye read it there, Flask? I guess ye did?"

"No: never saw such a book; heard of it, though. But now, tell me, Stubb, do you suppose that that devil you was speaking of just now, was the same you say is now on board the Pequod?"

"Am I the same man that helped kill this whale? Doesn't the devil live for ever; who ever heard that the devil was dead? Did you ever see any parson a wearing mourning for the devil? And if the devil has a latch-key to get into the admiral's cabin, don't you suppose he can crawl into a port-hole? Tell me that, Mr. Flask?"

"How old do you suppose Fedallah is, Stubb?"

"Do you see that mainmast there?" pointing to the ship; "well, that's the figure one; now take all the hoops in the Pequod's hold, and string 'em along in a row with that mast, for oughts, do you see; well, that wouldn't begin to be Fedallah's age. Nor all the coopers in creation couldn't show hoops enough to make oughts enough."

"But see here, Stubb, I thought you a little boasted just now, that you meant to give Fedallah a sea-toss, if you got a good chance. Now, if he's so old as all those hoops of yours come to, and if he is going to live for ever, what good will it do to pitch him overboard—tell me that?"

"Give him a good ducking, anyhow."

"But he'd crawl back."

"Duck him again; and keep ducking him."

"Suppose he should take it into his head to duck you, though—yes, and drown you—what then?"

"I should like to see him try it; I'd give him such a pair of black eyes that he wouldn't dare to show his face in the admiral's cabin again for a long while, let alone down in the orlop there, where he lives, and hereabouts on the upper decks where he sneaks so much. Damn the devil, Flask; do you suppose I'm afraid of the devil? Who's afraid of him, except the old governor who daresn't catch him and put him in double-darbies, as he deserves, but let's him go about kidnapping people; aye, and signed a bond with him, that all the people the devil kidnapped, he'd roast for him? There's a governor!"

"Do you suppose Fedallah wants to kidnap Captain Ahab?"

"Do I suppose it? You'll know it before long, Flask. But I am going now to keep a sharp look-out on him; and if I see anything very suspicious going on, I'll just take him by the nape of his neck, and say—Look here, Beelzebub, you don't do

it; and if he makes any fuss, by the Lord I'll make a grab into his pocket for his tail, take it to the capstan, and give him such a wrenching and heaving, that his tail will come short off at the stump—do you see; and then, I rather guess when he finds himself docked in that queer fashion, he'll sneak off without the poor satisfaction of feeling his tail between his legs."

"And what will you do with the tail, Stubb?"

"Do with it? Sell it for an ox whip when we get home;—what else?"

"Now, do you mean what you say, and have been saying all along, Stubb?"

"Mean or not mean, here we are at the ship."

The boats were here hailed, to tow the whale on the larboard side, where fluke chains and other necessities were already prepared for securing him.

"Didn't I tell you so?" said Flask; "yes, you'll soon see this right whale's head hoisted up opposite that parmacetti's."

In good time, Flask's saying proved true. As before, the Pequod steeply leaned over towards the sperm whale's head, now, by the counterpoise of both heads, she regained her even keel; though sorely strained, you may well believe. So, when on one side you hoist in Locke's head, you go over that way; but now, on the other side, hoist in Kant's and you come back again; but in very poor plight. Thus, some minds for ever keep trimming boat. Oh, ye foolish! throw all these thunder-heads overboard, and then you will float light and right.

In disposing of the body of a right whale, when brought alongside the ship, the same preliminary proceedings commonly take place as in the case of a sperm whale; only, in the latter instance, the head is cut off whole, but in the former the lips and tongue are separately removed and hoisted on deck, with all the well known black bone attached to what is called the crown-piece. But nothing like this, in the present case, had been done. The carcasses of both whales had dropped astern; and the head-laden ship not a little resembled a mule carrying a pair of overburdening panniers.

Meantime, Fedallah was calmly eyeing the right whale's head, and ever and anon glancing from the deep wrinkles there to the

lines in his own hand. And Ahab chanced so to stand, that the Parsee occupied his shadow; while, if the Parsee's shadow was there at all it seemed only to blend with, and lengthen Ahab's. As the crew toiled on, Laplandish speculations were bandied among them, concerning all these passing things.

CHAPTER LXXIV

THE SPERM WHALE'S HEAD—CONTRASTED VIEW

HERE, now, are two great whales, laying their heads together; let us join them, and lay together our own.

Of the grand order of folio leviathans, the Sperm Whale and the Right Whale are by far the most noteworthy. They are the only whales regularly hunted by man. To the Nantucketer, they present the two extremes of all the known varieties of the whale. As the external difference between them is mainly observable in their heads; and as a head of each is this moment hanging from the Pequod's side; and as we may freely go from one to the other, by merely stepping across the deck:—where, I should like to know, will you obtain a better chance to study practical cetology than here?

In the first place, you are struck by the general contrast between these heads. Both are massive enough in all conscience; but there is a certain mathematical symmetry in the Sperm Whale's which the Right Whale's sadly lacks. There is more character in the Sperm Whale's head. As you behold it, you involuntarily yield the immense superiority to him, in point of pervading dignity. In the present instance, too, this dignity is heightened by the pepper and salt color of his head at the summit, giving token of advanced age and large experience. In short, he is what the fishermen technically call a "grey-headed whale."

Let us now note what is least dissimilar in these heads—namely, the two most important organs, the eye and the ear.

Far back on the side of the head, and low down, near the angle of either whale's jaw, if you narrowly search, you will at last see a lashless eye, which you would fancy to be a young colt's eye; so out of all proportion is it to the magnitude of the head.

Now, from this peculiar sideways position of the whale's eyes, it is plain that he can never see an object which is exactly ahead, no more than he can one exactly astern. In a word, the position of the whale's eyes corresponds to that of a man's ears; and you may fancy, for yourself, how it would fare with you, did you sideways survey objects through your ears. You would find that you could only command some thirty degrees of vision in advance of the straight side-line of sight; and about thirty more behind it. If your bitterest foe were walking straight towards you, with dagger uplifted in broad day, you would not be able to see him, any more than if he were stealing upon you from behind. In a word, you would have two backs, so to speak; but, at the same time, also, two fronts (side fronts): for what is it that makes the front of a man—what, indeed, but his eyes?

Moreover, while in most other animals that I can now think of, the eyes are so planted as imperceptibly to blend their visual power, so as to produce one picture and not two to the brain; the peculiar position of the whale's eyes, effectually divided as they are by many cubic feet of solid head, which towers between them like a great mountain separating two lakes in valleys; this, of course, must wholly separate the impressions which each independent organ imparts. The whale, therefore, must see one distinct picture on this side, and another distinct picture on that side; while all between must be profound darkness and nothingness to him. Man may, in effect, be said to look out on the world from a sentry-box with two joined sashes for his window. But with the whale, these two sashes are separately inserted, making two distinct windows, but sadly impairing the view. This peculiarity of the whale's eyes is a thing always to be borne in mind in the fishery; and to be remembered by the reader in some subsequent scenes.

A curious and most puzzling question might be started con-

cerning this visual matter as touching the Leviathan. But I must be content with a hint. So long as a man's eyes are open in the light, the act of seeing is involuntary; that is, he cannot then help mechanically seeing whatever objects are before him. Nevertheless, any one's experience will teach him, that though he can take in an indiscriminating sweep of things at one glance, it is quite impossible for him, attentively, and completely, to examine any two things—however large or however small—at one and the same instant of time; never mind if they lie side by side and touch each other. But if you now come to separate these two objects, and surround each by a circle of profound darkness; then, in order to see one of them, in such a manner as to bring your mind to bear on it, the other will be utterly excluded from your contemporary consciousness. How is it, then, with the whale? True, both his eyes, in themselves, must simultaneously act; but is his brain so much more comprehensive, combining, and subtle than man's, that he can at the same moment of time attentively examine two distinct prospects, one on one side of him, and the other in an exactly opposite direction? If he can, then is it as marvellous a thing in him, as if a man were able simultaneously to go through the demonstrations of two distinct problems in Euclid. Nor, strictly investigated, is there any incongruity in this comparison.

It may be but an idle whim, but it has always seemed to me, that the extraordinary vacillations of movement displayed by some whales when beset by three or four boats; the timidity and liability to queer frights, so common to such whales; I think that all this indirectly proceeds from the helpless perplexity of volition, in which their divided and diametrically opposite powers of vision must involve them.

But the ear of the whale is full as curious as the eye. If you are an entire stranger to their race, you might hunt over these two heads for hours, and never discover that organ. The ear has no external leaf whatever; and into the hole itself you can hardly insert a quill, so wondrously minute is it. It is lodged a little behind the eye. With respect to their ears, this important difference is to be observed between the sperm whale and the

right. While the ear of the former has an external opening, that of the latter is entirely and evenly covered over with a membrane, so as to be quite imperceptible from without.

Is it not curious, that so vast a being as the whale should see the world through so small an eye, and hear the thunder through an ear which is smaller than a hare's? But if his eyes were broad as the lens of Herschel's great telescope; and his ears capacious as the porches of cathedrals; would that make him any longer of sight, or sharper of hearing? Not at all.—Why then do you try to "enlarge" your mind? Subtilize it.

Let us now with whatever levers and steam-engines we have at hand, cant over the sperm whale's head, so that it may lie bottom up; then, ascending by a ladder to the summit, have a peep down the mouth; and were it not that the body is now completely separated from it, with a lantern we might descend into the great Kentucky Mammoth Cave of his stomach. But let us hold on here by this tooth, and look about us where we are. What a really beautiful and chaste-looking mouth! from floor to ceiling, lined, or rather papered with a glistening white membrane, glossy as bridal satins.

But come out now, and look at this portentous lower jaw, which seems like the long narrow lid of an immense snuff-box, with a hinge at one end, instead of one side. If you pry it up, so as to get it overhead, and expose its rows of teeth, it seems a terrific portcullis; and such, alas! it proves to many a poor wight in the fishery, upon whom these spikes fall with impaling force. But far more terrible is it to behold, when fathoms down in the sea, you see some sulky whale, floating there suspended, with his prodigious jaw, some fifteen feet long, hanging straight down at right-angles with his body, for all the world like a ship's jib-boom. This whale is not dead; he is only dispirited; out of sorts, perhaps; hypochondriac; and so supine, that the hinges of his jaw have relaxed, leaving him there in that ungainly sort of plight, a reproach to all his tribe, who must, no doubt, imprecate lock-jaws upon him.

In most cases this lower jaw—being easily unhinged by a practised artist—is disengaged and hoisted on deck for the purpose of extracting the ivory teeth, and furnishing a supply of

that hard white whalebone with which the fishermen fashion all sorts of curious articles, including canes, umbrella-stocks, and handles to riding-whips.

With a long, weary hoist the jaw is dragged on board, as if it were an anchor; and when the proper time comes—some few days after the other work—Queequeg, Daggoo, and Tashtego, being all accomplished dentists, are set to drawing teeth. With a keen cutting-spade, Queequeg lances the gums; then the jaw is lashed down to ringbolts, and a tackle being rigged from aloft, they drag out these teeth, as Michigan oxen drag stumps of old oaks out of wild wood-lands. There are generally forty-two teeth in all; in old whales, much worn down, but undecayed; nor filled after our artificial fashion. The jaw is afterwards sawn into slabs, and piled away like joists for building houses.

CHAPTER LXXV

THE RIGHT WHALE'S HEAD—CONTRASTED VIEW

CROSSING the deck, let us now have a good long look at the Right Whale's head.

As in general shape the noble Sperm Whale's head may be compared to a Roman war-chariot (especially in front, where it is so broadly rounded); so, at a broad view, the Right Whale's head bears a rather inelegant resemblance to a gigantic galliot-toed shoe. Two hundred years ago an old Dutch voyager likened its shape to that of a shoemaker's last. And in this same last or shoe, that old woman of the nursery tale, with the swarming brood, might very comfortably be lodged, she and all her progeny.

But as you come nearer to this great head it begins to assume different aspects, according to your point of view. If you stand on its summit and look at these two *f*-shaped spout-holes, you would take the whole head for an enormous bass-viol, and these

spiracles, the apertures in its sounding-board. Then, again, if you fix your eye upon this strange, crested, comb-like incrustation on the top of the mass—this green, barnacled thing, which the Greenlanders call the “crown,” and the Southern fishers the “bonnet” of the Right Whale; fixing your eyes solely on this, you would take the head for the trunk of some huge oak, with a bird’s nest in its crotch. At any rate, when you watch those live crabs that nestle here on this bonnet, such an idea will be almost sure to occur to you; unless, indeed, your fancy has been fixed by the technical term “crown” also bestowed upon it; in which case you will take great interest in thinking how this mighty monster is actually a diademed king of the sea, whose green crown has been put together for him in this marvellous manner. But if this whale be a king, he is a very sulky looking fellow to grace a diadem. Look at that hanging lower lip! what a huge sulk and pout is there! a sulk and pout, by carpenter’s measurement, about twenty feet long and five feet deep; a sulk and pout that will yield you some 500 gallons of oil and more.

A great pity, now, that this unfortunate whale should be hare-lipped. The fissure is about a foot across. Probably the mother during an important interval was sailing down the Peruvian coast, when earthquakes caused the beach to gape. Over this lip, as over a slippery threshold, we now slide into the mouth. Upon my word were I at Mackinaw, I should take this to be the inside of an Indian wigwam. Good Lord! is this the road that Jonah went? The roof is about twelve feet high, and runs to a pretty sharp angle, as if there were a regular ridge-pole there; while these ribbed, arched, hairy sides, present us with those wondrous, half vertical, scimeter-shaped slats of whale-bone, say three hundred on a side, which depending from the upper part of the head or crown bone, form those Venetian blinds which have elsewhere been cursorily mentioned. The edges of these bones are fringed with hairy fibres, through which the Right Whale strains the water, and in whose intricacies he retains the small fish, when open-mouthed he goes through the seas of brit in feeding time. In the central blinds of bone, as they stand in their natural order, there are certain curious marks, curves, hollows, and ridges, whereby some whalers calculate

the creature's age, as the age of an oak by its circular rings. Though the certainty of this criterion is far from demonstrable, yet it has the savor of analogical probability. At any rate, if we yield to it, we must grant a far greater age to the Right Whale than at first glance will seem reasonable.

In old times, there seem to have prevailed the most curious fancies concerning these blinds. One voyager in Purchas calls them the wondrous "whiskers" inside of the whale's mouth;* another, "hogs' bristles;" a third old gentleman in Hackluyt uses the following elegant language: "There are about two hundred and fifty fins growing on each side of his upper *chop*, which arch over his tongue on each side of his mouth."

As every one knows, these same "hogs' bristles," "fins," "whiskers," "blinds," or whatever you please, furnish to the ladies their busks and other stiffening contrivances. But in this particular, the demand has long been on the decline. It was in Queen Anne's time that the bone was in its glory, the farthingale being then all the fashion. And as those ancient dames moved about gaily, though in the jaws of the whale, as you may say; even so, in a shower, with the like thoughtlessness, do we nowadays fly under the same jaws for protection; the umbrella being a tent spread over the same bone.

But now forget all about blinds and whiskers for a moment, and, standing in the Right Whale's mouth, look around you afresh. Seeing all these colonnades of bone so methodically ranged about, would you not think you were inside the great Haarlem organ, and gazing upon its thousand pipes? For a carpet to the organ we have a rug of the softest Turkey—the tongue, which is glued, as it were, to the floor of the mouth. It is very fat and tender, and apt to tear in pieces in hoisting it on deck. This particular tongue now before us; at a passing glance I should say it was a six-barreler; that is, it will yield you about that amount of oil.

Ere this, you must have plainly seen the truth of what I

* This reminds us that the Right Whale really has a sort of whisker, or rather a moustache, consisting of a few scattered white hairs on the upper part of the outer end of the lower jaw. Sometimes these tufts impart a rather brigandish expression to his otherwise solemn countenance.

started with—that the Sperm Whale and the Right Whale have almost entirely different heads. To sum up, then: in the Right Whale's there is no great well of sperm; no ivory teeth at all; no long, slender mandible of a lower jaw, like the Sperm Whale's. Nor in the Sperm Whale are there any of those blinds of bone; no huge lower lip; and scarcely anything of a tongue. Again, the Right Whale has two external spout-holes, the Sperm Whale only one.

Look your last, now, on these venerable hooded heads, while they yet lie together; for one will soon sink, unrecorded, in the sea; the other will not be very long in following.

Can you catch the expression of the Sperm Whale's there? It is the same he died with, only some of the longer wrinkles in the forehead seem now faded away. I think his broad brow to be full of a prairie-like placidity, born of a speculative indifference as to death. But mark the other head's expression. See that amazing lower lip, pressed by accident against the vessel's side, so as firmly to embrace the jaw. Does not this whole head seem to speak of an enormous practical resolution in facing death? This Right Whale I take to have been a Stoic; the Sperm Whale, a Platonian, who might have taken up Spinoza in his latter years.

CHAPTER LXXVI

THE BATTERING-RAM

ERE quitting, for the nonce, the Sperm Whale's head, I would have you, as a sensible physiologist, simply—particularly remark its front aspect, in all its compacted collectedness. I would have you investigate it now with the sole view of forming to yourself some unexaggerated, intelligent estimate of whatever battering-ram power may be lodged there. Here is a vital point; for you must either satisfactorily settle this matter with yourself, or for ever remain an infidel as to one of the most appalling,

but not the less true events, perhaps anywhere to be found in all recorded history.

You observe that in the ordinary swimming position of the Sperm Whale, the front of his head presents an almost wholly vertical plane to the water; you observe that the lower part of that front slopes considerably backwards, so as to furnish more of a retreat for the long socket which receives the boom-like lower jaw; you observe that the mouth is entirely under the head, much in the same way, indeed, as though your own mouth were entirely under your chin. Moreover you observe that the whale has no external nose; and that what nose he has—his spout hole—is on the top of his head; you observe that his eyes and ears are at the sides of his head, nearly one third of his entire length from the front. Wherefore, you must now have perceived that the front of the Sperm Whale's head is a dead, blind wall, without a single organ or tender prominence of any sort whatsoever. Furthermore, you are now to consider that only in the extreme, lower, backward sloping part of the front of the head, is there the slightest vestige of bone; and not till you get near twenty feet from the forehead do you come to the full cranial development. So that this whole enormous boneless mass is as one wad. Finally, though, as will soon be revealed, its contents partly comprise the most delicate oil; yet, you are now to be apprised of the nature of the substance which so impregnably invests all that apparent effeminacy. In some previous place I have described to you how the blubber wraps the body of the whale, as the rind wraps an orange. Just so with the head; but with this difference: about the head this envelope, though not so thick, is of a boneless toughness, inestimable by any man who has not handled it. The severest pointed harpoon, the sharpest lance darted by the strongest human arm, impotently rebounds from it. It is as though the forehead of the Sperm Whale were paved with horses' hoofs. I do not think that any sensation lurks in it.

Bethink yourself also of another thing. When two large, loaded Indiamen chance to crowd and crush towards each other in the docks, what do the sailors do? They do not suspend between them, at the point of coming contact, any merely hard sub-

stance, like iron or wood. No, they hold there a large, round wad of tow and cork, enveloped in the thickest and toughest of ox-hide. That bravely and uninjured takes the jam which would have snapped all their oaken handspikes and iron crow-bars. By itself this sufficiently illustrates the obvious fact I drive at. But supplementary to this, it has hypothetically occurred to me, that as ordinary fish possess what is called a swimming bladder in them, capable, at will, of distension or contraction; and as the Sperm Whale, as far as I know, has no such provision in him; considering, too, the otherwise inexplicable manner in which he now depresses his head altogether beneath the surface, and anon swims with it high elevated out of the water; considering the unobstructed elasticity of its envelop; considering the unique interior of his head; it has hypothetically occurred to me, I say, that those mystical lung-celled honeycombs there may possibly have some hitherto unknown and unsuspected connexion with the outer air, so as to be susceptible to atmospheric distension and contraction. If this be so, fancy the irresistibility of that might, to which the most impalpable and destructive of all elements contributes.

Now, mark. Unerringly impelling this dead, impregnable, uninjurable wall, and this most buoyant thing within; there swims behind it all a mass of tremendous life, only to be adequately estimated as piled wood is—by the cord; and all obedient to one volition, as the smallest insect. So that when I shall hereafter detail to you all the specialties and concentrations of potency everywhere lurking in this expansive monster; when I shall show you some of his more inconsiderable braining feats; I trust you will have renounced all ignorant incredulity, and be ready to abide by this; that though the Sperm Whale stove a passage through the Isthmus of Darien, and mixed the Atlantic with the Pacific, you would not elevate one hair of your eye-brow. For unless you own the whale, you are but a provincial and sentimentalist in Truth. But clear Truth is a thing for salamander giants only to encounter; how small the chances for the provincials then? What befel the weakling youth lifting the dread goddess's veil at Sais?

CHAPTER LXXVII

THE GREAT HEIDELBURGH TUN

Now comes the Baling of the Case. But to comprehend it aright, you must know something of the curious internal structure of the thing operated upon.

Regarding the Sperm Whale's head as a solid oblong, you may, on an inclined plane, sideways divide it into two quoins,* whereof the lower is the bony structure, forming the cranium and jaws, and the upper an unctuous mass wholly free from bones; its broad forward end forming the expanded vertical apparent forehead of the whale. At the middle of the forehead horizontally subdivide this upper quoin, and then you have two almost equal parts, which before were naturally divided by an internal wall of a thick tendinous substance.

The lower subdivided part, called the junk, is one immense honeycomb of oil, formed by the crossing and re-crossing, into ten thousand infiltrated cells, of tough elastic white fibres throughout its whole extent. The upper part, known as the Case, may be regarded as the great Heidelburgh Tun of the Sperm Whale. And as that famous great tierce is mystically carved in front, so the whale's vast plaited forehead forms innumerable strange devices for the emblematical adornment of his wondrous tun. Moreover, as that of Heidelburgh was always replenished with the most excellent of the wines of the Rhenish valleys, so the tun of the whale contains by far the most precious of all his oily vintages; namely, the highly-prized spermaceti, in its absolutely pure, limpid, and odoriferous state. Nor is this precious substance found unalloyed in any other part of the creature. Though in life it remains perfectly fluid, yet, upon

* Quoin is not a Euclidean term. It belongs to the pure nautical mathematics. I know not that it has been defined before. A quoin is a solid which differs from a wedge in having its sharp end formed by the steep inclination of one side, instead of the mutual tapering of both sides.

exposure to the air, after death, it soon begins to concrete; sending forth beautiful crystalline shoots, as when the first thin delicate ice is just forming in water. A large whale's case generally yields about five hundred gallons of sperm, though from unavoidable circumstances, considerable of it is spilled, leaks, and dribbles away, or is otherwise irrevocably lost in the ticklish business of securing what you can.

I know not with what fine and costly material the Heidelberg Tun was coated within, but in superlative richness that coating could not possibly have compared with the silken pearl-colored membrane, like the lining of a fine pelisse, forming the inner surface of the Sperm Whale's case.

It will have been seen that the Heidelberg Tun of the Sperm Whale embraces the entire length of the entire top of the head; and since—as has been elsewhere set forth—the head embraces one third of the whole length of the creature, then setting that length down at eighty feet for a good sized whale, you have more than twenty-six feet for the depth of the tun, when it is lengthwise hoisted up and down against a ship's side.

As in decapitating the whale, the operator's instrument is brought close to the spot where an entrance is subsequently forced into the spermaceti magazine; he has, therefore, to be uncommonly heedful, lest a careless, untimely stroke should invade the sanctuary and wastingly let out its invaluable contents. It is this decapitated end of the head, also, which is at last elevated out of the water, and retained in that position by the enormous cutting tackles, whose hempen combinations, on one side, make quite a wilderness of ropes in that quarter.

Thus much being said, attend now, I pray you, to that marvellous and—in this particular instance—almost fatal operation whereby the Sperm Whale's great Heidelberg Tun is tapped.

CHAPTER LXXVIII

CISTERN AND BUCKETS

NIMBLE as a cat, Tashtego mounts' aloft; and without altering his erect posture, runs straight out upon the overhanging main-yard-arm, to the part where it exactly projects over the hoisted Tun. He has carried with him a light tackle called a whip, consisting of only two parts, travelling through a single-sheaved block. Securing this block, so that it hangs down from the yard-arm, he swings one end of the rope, till it is caught and firmly held by a hand on deck. Then, hand-over-hand, down the other part, the Indian drops through the air, till dexterously he lands on the summit of the head. There—still high elevated above the rest of the company, to whom he vivaciously cries—he seems some Turkish Muezzin calling the good people to prayers from the top of a tower. A short-handled sharp spade being sent up to him, he diligently searches for the proper place to begin breaking into the Tun. In this business he proceeds very heedfully, like a treasure-hunter in some old house, sounding the walls to find where the gold is masoned in. By the time this cautious search is over, a stout iron-bound bucket, precisely like a well-bucket, has been attached to one end of the whip; while the other end, being stretched across the deck, is there held by two or three alert hands. These last now hoist the bucket within grasp of the Indian, to whom another person has reached up a very long pole. Inserting this pole into the bucket, Tashtego downward guides the bucket into the Tun, till it entirely disappears; then giving the word to the seamen at the whip, up comes the bucket again, all bubbling like a dairy-maid's pail of new milk. Carefully lowered from its height, the full-freighted vessel is caught by an appointed hand, and quickly emptied into a large tub. Then re-mounting aloft, it again goes through the same round until the deep cistern will yield no more. Towards the end, Tashtego has to ram his long pole harder and

harder, and deeper and deeper into the Tun, until some twenty feet of the pole have gone down.

Now, the people of the Pequod had been baling some time in this way; several tubs had been filled with the fragrant sperm; when all at once a queer accident happened. Whether it was that Tashtego, that wild Indian, was so heedless and reckless as to let go for a moment his one-handed hold on the great cabled tackles suspending the head; or whether the place where he stood was so treacherous and oozy; or whether the Evil One himself would have it to fall out so, without stating his particular reasons; how it was exactly, there is no telling now; but, on a sudden, as the eightieth or ninetieth bucket came suckingly up—my God! poor Tashtego—like the twin reciprocating bucket in a veritable well, dropped head-foremost down into this great Tun of Heidelburgh, and with a horrible oily gurgling, went clean out of sight!

“Man overboard!” cried Daggoo, who amid the general consternation first came to his senses. “Swing the bucket this way!” and putting one foot into it, so as the better to secure his slippery hand-hold on the whip itself, the hoisters ran him high up to the top of the head, almost before Tashtego could have reached its interior bottom. Meantime, there was a terrible tumult. Looking over the side, they saw the before lifeless head throbbing and heaving just below the surface of the sea, as if that moment seized with some momentous idea; whereas it was only the poor Indian unconsciously revealing by those struggles the perilous depth to which he had sunk.

At this instant, while Daggoo, on the summit of the head, was clearing the whip—which had somehow got foul of the great cutting tackles—a sharp cracking noise was heard; and to the unspeakable horror of all, one of the two enormous hooks suspending the head tore out, and with a vast vibration the enormous mass sideways swung, till the drunk ship reeled and shook as if smitten by an iceberg. The one remaining hook, upon which the entire strain now depended, seemed every instant to be on the point of giving way; an event still more likely from the violent motions of the head.

“Come down, come down!” yelled the seamen to Daggoo, but

with one hand holding on to the heavy tackles, so that if the head should drop, he would still remain suspended; the negro having cleared the foul line, rammed down the bucket into the now collapsed well, meaning that the buried harpooneer should grasp it, and so be hoisted out.

"In heaven's name, man," cried Stubb, "are you ramming home a cartridge there?—Avast! How will that help him; jamming that iron-bound bucket on top of his head? Avast, will yel?"

"Stand clear of the tackle!" cried a voice like the bursting of a rocket.

Almost in the same instant, with a thunder-boom, the enormous mass dropped into the sea, like Niagara's Table-Rock into the whirlpool; the suddenly relieved hull rolled away from it, to far down her glittering copper; and all caught their breath, as half swinging—now over the sailors' heads, and now over the water—Daggoo, through a thick mist of spray, was dimly beheld clinging to the pendulous tackles, while poor, buried-alive Tash-tego was sinking utterly down to the bottom of the sea! But hardly had the blinding vapor cleared away, when a naked figure with a boarding-sword in its hand, was for one swift moment seen hovering over the bulwarks. The next, a loud splash announced that my brave Queequeg had dived to the rescue. One packed rush was made to the side, and every eye counted every ripple, as moment followed moment, and no sign of either the sinker or the diver could be seen. Some hands now jumped into a boat alongside, and pushed a little off from the ship.

"Ha! ha!" cried Daggoo, all at once, from his now quiet, swinging perch overhead; and looking further off from the side, we saw an arm thrust upright from the blue waves; a sight strange to see, ~~as an arm thrust forth from the grass over a grave.~~ ✓

"Both! both!—it is both!"—cried Daggoo again with a joyful shout; and soon after, Queequeg was seen boldly striking out with one hand, and with the other clutching the long hair of the Indian. Drawn into the waiting boat, they were quickly brought to the deck; but Tashtego was long in coming to, and Queequeg did not look very brisk.

Now, how had this noble rescue been accomplished? Why, diving after the slowly descending head, Queequeg with his keen sword had made side lunges near its bottom, so as to scuttle a large hole there; then dropping his sword, had thrust his long arm far inwards and upwards, and so hauled out our poor Tash by the head. He averred, that upon first thrusting in for him, a leg was presented; but well knowing that that was not as it ought to be, and might occasion great trouble;—he had thrust back the leg, and by a dexterous heave and toss, had wrought a somerset upon the Indian; so that with the next trial, he came forth in the good old way—head foremost. As for the great head itself, that was doing as well as could be expected.

And thus, through the courage and great skill in obstetrics of Queequeg, the deliverance, or rather, delivery of Tashtego, was successfully accomplished, in the teeth, too, of the most untoward and apparently hopeless impediments; which is a lesson by no means to be forgotten. Midwifery should be taught in the same course with fencing and boxing, riding and rowing.

I know that this queer adventure of the Gay-Header's will be sure to seem incredible to some landmen, though they themselves may have either seen or heard of some one's falling into a cistern ashore; an accident which not seldom happens, and with much less reason too than the Indian's, considering the exceeding slipperiness of the curb of the Sperm Whale's well.

But, peradventure, it may be sagaciously urged, how is this? We thought the tissued, infiltrated head of the Sperm Whale, was the lightest and most corky part about him; and yet thou makest it sink in an element of a far greater specific gravity than itself. We have thee there. Not at all, but I have ye; for at the time poor Tash fell in, the case had been nearly emptied of its lighter contents, leaving little but the dense tendinous wall of the well—a double welded, hammered substance, as I have before said, much heavier than the sea water, and a lump of which sinks in it like lead almost. But the tendency to rapid sinking in this substance was in the present instance materially counteracted by the other parts of the head remaining undetached from it, so that it sank very slowly and deliberately indeed, affording Queequeg a fair chance for performing his agile

obstetrics on the run, as you may say. Yes, it was a running delivery, so it was.

Now, had Tashtego perished in that head, it had been a very precious perishing; smothered in the very whitest and daintiest of fragrant spermaceti; confined, hearsed, and tombed in the secret inner chamber and sanctum sanctorum of the whale. Only one sweeter end can readily be recalled—the delicious death of an Ohio honey-hunter, who seeking honey in the crotch of a hollow tree, found such exceeding store of it, that leaning too far over, it sucked him in, so that he died embalmed. How many, think ye, have likewise fallen into Plato's honey head, and sweetly perished there?

CHAPTER LXXIX

THE PRAIRE

To scan the lines of his face, or feel the bumps on the head of this Leviathan; this is a thing which no Physiognomist or Phrenologist has as yet undertaken. Such an enterprise would seem almost as hopeful as for Lavater to have scrutinized the wrinkles on the Rock of Gibraltar, or for Gall to have mounted a ladder and manipulated the Dome of the Pantheon. Still, in that famous work of his, Lavater not only treats of the various faces of men, but also attentively studies the faces of horses, birds, serpents, and fish; and dwells in detail upon the modifications of expression discernible therein. Nor have Gall and his disciple Spurzheim failed to throw out some hints touching the phrenological characteristics of other beings than man. Therefore, though I am but ill qualified for a pioneer, in the application of these two semi-sciences to the whale, I will do my endeavor. I try all things; I achieve what I can.

Physiognomically regarded, the Sperm Whale is an anomalous creature. He has no proper nose. And since the nose is the central and most conspicuous of the features; and since it per-

haps most modifies and finally controls their combined expression; hence it would seem that its entire absence, as an external appendage, must very largely affect the countenance of the whale. For as in landscape gardening, a spire, cupola, monument, or tower of some sort, is deemed almost indispensable to the completion of the scene; so no face can be physiognomically in keeping without the elevated open-work belfry of the nose. Dash the nose from Phidias's marble Jove, and what a sorry remainder! Nevertheless, Leviathan is of so mighty a magnitude, all his proportions are so stately, that the same deficiency which in the sculptured Jove were hideous, in him is no blemish at all. Nay, it is an added grandeur. A nose to the whale would have been impertinent. As on your physiognomical voyage you sail round his vast head in your jolly-boat, your noble conceptions of him are never insulted by the reflection that he has a nose to be pulled. A pestilent conceit, which so often will insist upon obtruding even when beholding the mightiest royal beadle on his throne.

In some particulars, perhaps the most imposing physiognomical view to be had of the Sperm Whale, is that of the full front of his head. This aspect is sublime.

In thought a fine human brow is like the East when troubled with the morning. In the repose of the pasture, the curled brow of the bull has a touch of the grand in it. Pushing heavy cannon up mountain defiles, the elephant's brow is majestic. Human or animal, the mystical brow is as that great golden seal affixed by the German emperors to their decrees. It signifies "God: done this day by my hand." But in most creatures, nay in man himself, very often the brow is but a mere strip of alpine land lying along the snow line. Few are the foreheads which like Shakespeare's or Melancthon's rise so high, and descend so low, that the eyes themselves seem clear, eternal, tideless mountain lakes; and all above them in the forehead's wrinkles, you seem to track the antlered thoughts descending there to drink, as the Highland hunters track the snow prints of the deer. But in the great Sperm Whale, this high and mighty god-like dignity inherent in the brow is so immensely amplified, that gazing on it, in that full front view, you feel the Deity and the dread powers

more forcibly than in beholding any other object in living nature. For you see no one point precisely; not one distinct feature is revealed; no nose, eyes, ears, or mouth; no face; he has none, proper; nothing but that one broad firmament of a forehead, pleated with riddles; dumbly lowering with the doom of boats, and ships, and men. Nor, in profile, does this wondrous brow diminish; though that way viewed, its grandeur does not domineer upon you so. In profile, you plainly perceive that horizontal, semi-crescentic depression in the forehead's middle, which, in man, is Lavater's mark of genius.

But how? Genius in the Sperm Whale? Has the Sperm Whale ever written a book, spoken a speech? No, his great genius is declared in his doing nothing particular to prove it. It is moreover declared in his pyramidical silence. And this reminds me that had the great Sperm Whale been known to the young Orient World, he would have been deified by their child-magian thoughts. They deified the crocodile of the Nile, because the crocodile is tongueless; and the Sperm Whale has no tongue, or at least it is so exceedingly small, as to be incapable of protrusion. If hereafter any highly cultured, poetical nation shall lure back to their birth-right, the merry May-day gods of old; and livingly enthrone them again in the now egotistical sky; in the now unhaunted hill; then be sure, exalted to Jove's high seat, the great Sperm Whale shall lord it.

Champollion deciphered the wrinkled granite hieroglyphics. But there is no Champollion to decipher the Egypt of every man's and every being's face. Physiognomy, like every other human science, is but a passing fable. If then, Sir William Jones, who read in thirty languages, could not read the simplest peasant's face in its profounder and more subtle meanings, how may unlettered Ishmael hope to read the awful Chaldee of the Sperm Whale's brow? I but put that brow before you. Read it if you can.

CHAPTER LXXX

THE NUT

IF the Sperm Whale be physiognomically a Sphinx, to the phrenologist his brain seems that geometrical circle which it is impossible to square.

In the full-grown creature the skull will measure at least twenty feet in length. Unhinge the lower jaw, and the side view of this skull is as the side view of a moderately inclined plane resting throughout on a level base. But in life—as we have elsewhere seen—this inclined plane is angularly filled up, and almost squared by the enormous superincumbent mass of the junk and sperm. At the high end the skull forms a crater to bed that part of the mass; while under the long floor of this crater—in another cavity seldom exceeding ten inches in length and as many in depth—reposes the mere handful of this monster's brain. The brain is at least twenty feet from his apparent forehead in life; it is hidden away behind its vast outworks, like the innermost citadel within the amplified fortifications of Quebec. So like a choice casket is it secreted in him, that I have known some whalemén who peremptorily deny that the Sperm Whale has any other brain than that palpable semblance of one formed by the cubic-yards of his sperm magazine. Lying in strange folds, courses, and convolutions, to their apprehensions, it seems more in keeping with the idea of his general might to regard that mystic part of him as the seat of his intelligence.

It is plain, then, that phrenologically the head of this Leviathan, in the creature's living intact state, is an entire delusion. As for his true brain, you can then see no indications of it, nor feel any. The whale, like all things that are mighty, wears a false brow to the common world.

If you unload his skull of its spermy heaps and then take a rear view of its rear end, which is the high end, you will be

struck by its resemblance to the human skull, beheld in the same situation, and from the same point of view. Indeed, place this reversed skull (scaled down to the human magnitude) among a plate of men's skulls, and you would involuntarily confound it with them; and remarking the depressions on one part of its summit, in phrenological phrase you would say—This man had no self-esteem, and no veneration. And by those negations, considered along with the affirmative fact of his prodigious bulk and power, you can best form to yourself the truest, though not the most exhilarating conception of what the most exalted potency is.

But if from the comparative dimensions of the whale's proper brain, you deem it incapable of being adequately charted, then I have another idea for you. If you attentively regard almost any quadruped's spine, you will be struck with the resemblance of its vertebrae to a strung necklace of dwarfed skulls, all bearing rudimental resemblance to the skull proper. It is a German conceit, that the vertebrae are absolutely undeveloped skulls. But the curious external resemblance, I take it the Germans were not the first men to perceive. A foreign friend once pointed it out to me, in the skeleton of a foe he had slain, and with the vertebrae of which he was inlaying, in a sort of basso-relievo, the beaked prow of his canoe. Now, I consider that the phrenologists have omitted an important thing in not pushing their investigations from the cerebellum through the spinal canal. For I believe that much of a man's character will be found betokened in his backbone. I would rather feel your spine than your skull, whoever you are. A thin joist of a spine never yet upheld a full and noble soul. I rejoice in my spine, as in the firm audacious staff of that flag which I fling half out to the world.

Apply this spinal branch of phrenology to the *Sperm Whale*. His cranial cavity is continuous with the first neck-vertebra; and in that vertebra the bottom of the spinal canal will measure ten inches across, being eight in height, and of a triangular figure with the base downwards. As it passes through the remaining vertebrae the canal tapers in size, but for a considerable distance remains of large capacity. Now, of course, this

canal is filled with much the same strangely fibrous substance—the spinal cord—as the brain; and directly communicates with the brain. And what is still more, for many feet after emerging from the brain's cavity, the spinal cord remains of an undecreasing girth, almost equal to that of the brain. Under all these circumstances, would it be unreasonable to survey and map out the whale's spine phrenologically? For, viewed in this light, the wonderful comparative smallness of his brain proper is more than compensated by the wonderful comparative magnitude of his spinal cord.

But leaving this hint to operate as it may with the phrenologists, I would merely assume the spinal theory for a moment, in reference to the Sperm Whale's hump. This august hump, if I mistake not, rises over one of the larger vertebræ, and is, therefore, in some sort, the outer convex mould of it. From its relative situation then, I should call this high hump the organ of firmness or indomitableness in the Sperm Whale. And that ✓ the great monster is indomitable, you will yet have reason to know.

CHAPTER LXXXI

THE PEQUOD MEETS THE VIRGIN

THE predestinated day arrived, and we duly met the ship Jungfrau, Derick De Deer, master, of Bremen.

At one time the greatest whaling people in the world, the Dutch and Germans are now among the least; but here and there at very wide intervals of latitude and longitude, you still occasionally meet with their flag in the Pacific.

For some reason, the Jungfrau seemed quite eager to pay her respects. While yet some distance from the Pequod, she rounded to, and dropping a boat, her captain was impelled towards us, impatiently standing in the bows instead of the stern.

"What has he in his hand there?" cried Starbuck, pointing to something wavingly held by the German. "Impossible!—a lamp-feeder!"

"Not that," said Stubb, "no, no, it's a coffee-pot, Mr. Starbuck; he's coming off to make us our coffee, is the Yarman; don't you see that big tin can there alongside of him?—that's his boiling water. Oh! he's all right, is the Yarman."

"Go along with you," cried Flask, "it's a lamp-feeder and an oil-can. He's out of oil, and has come a-begging."

However curious it may seem for an oil-ship to be borrowing oil on the whale-ground, and however much it may invertedly contradict the old proverb about carrying coals to Newcastle, yet sometimes such a thing really happens; and in the present case Captain Derick De Deer did indubitably conduct a lamp-feeder as Flask did declare.

As he mounted the deck, Ahab abruptly accosted him, without at all heeding what he had in his hand; but in his broken lingo, the German soon evinced his complete ignorance of the White Whale; immediately turning the conversation to his lamp-feeder and oil can, with some remarks touching his having to turn into his hammock at night in profound darkness—his last drop of Bremen oil being gone, and not a single flying-fish yet captured to supply the deficiency; concluding by hinting that his ship was indeed what in the Fishery is technically called a *clean* one (that is, an empty one), well deserving the name of Jungfrau or the Virgin.

His necessities supplied, Derick departed; but he had not gained his ship's side, when whales were almost simultaneously raised from the mast-heads of both vessels; and so eager for the chase was Derick, that without pausing to put his oil-can and lamp-feeder aboard, he slewed round his boat and made after the leviathan lamp-feeders.

Now, the game having risen to leeward, he and the other three German boats that soon followed him, had considerably the start of the Pequod's keels. There were eight whales, an average pod. Aware of their danger, they were going all abreast with great speed straight before the wind, rubbing their flanks as closely as so many spans of horses in harness. They left a

great, wide wake, as though continually unrolling a great wide parchment upon the sea.

Full in this rapid wake, and many fathoms in the rear, swam a huge, humped old bull, which by his comparatively slow progress, as well as by the unusual yellowish incrustations overgrowing him, seemed afflicted with the jaundice, or some other infirmity. Whether this whale belonged to the pod in advance, seemed questionable; for it is not customary for such venerable leviathans to be at all social. Nevertheless, he stuck to their wake, though indeed their back water must have retarded him, because the white-bone or swell at his broad muzzle was a dashed one, like the swell formed when two hostile currents meet. His spout was short, slow, and laborious; coming forth with a choking sort of gush, and spending itself in torn shreds, followed by strange subterranean commotions in him, which seemed to have egress at his other buried extremity, causing the waters behind him to upbubble.

"Who's got some paregoric?" said Stubb, "he has the stomach-ache, I'm afraid. Lord, think of having half an acre of stomach-ache! Adverse winds are holding mad Christmas in him, boys. It's the first foul wind I ever knew to blow from astern; but look, did ever whale yaw so before? it must be, he's lost his tiller."

As an overladen Indiaman bearing down the Hindostan coast with a deck load of frightened horses, careens, buries, rolls, and wallows on her way; so did this old whale heave his aged bulk, and now and then partly turning over on his cumbrous rib-ends, expose the cause of his devious wake in the unnatural stump of his starboard fin. Whether he had lost that fin in battle, or had been born without it, it were hard to say.

"Only wait a bit, old chap, and I'll give ye a sling for that wounded arm," cried cruel Flask, pointing to the whale-line near him.

"Mind he don't sling thee with it," cried Starbuck. "Give way, or the German will have him."

With one intent all the combined rival boats were pointed for this one fish, because not only was he the largest, and therefore the most valuable whale, but he was nearest to them, and the other whales were going with such great velocity, moreover,

as almost to defy pursuit for the time. At this juncture, the Pequod's keels had shot by the three German boats last lowered; but from the great start he had had, Derick's boat still led the chase, though every moment neared by his foreign rivals. The only thing they feared, was, that from being already so nigh to his mark, he would be enabled to dart his iron before they could completely overtake and pass him. As for Derick, he seemed quite confident that this would be the case, and occasionally with a deriding gesture shook his lamp-feeder at the other boats.

"The ungracious and ungrateful dog!" cried Starbuck; "he mocks and dares me with the very poor-box I filled for him not five minutes ago!"—then in his old intense whisper—"give way, greyhounds! Dog to it!"

"I tell ye what it is, men"—cried Stubb to his crew—"It's against my religion to get mad; but I'd like to eat that villanous Yarman—Pull—wont ye? Are ye going to let that rascal beat ye? Do ye love brandy? A hogshead of brandy, then, to the best man. Come, why don't some of ye burst a blood-vessel? Who's that been dropping an anchor overboard—we don't budge an inch—we're becalmed. Halloo, here's grass growing in the boat's bottom—and by the Lord, the mast there's budding. This won't do, boys. Look at that Yarman! The short and long of it is, men, will ye spit fire or not?"

"Oh! see the suds he makes!" cried Flask, dancing up and down—"What a hump—Oh, *do* pile on the beef—lays like a log! Oh! my lads, *do* spring—slap-jacks and quohogs for supper, you know, my lads—baked clams and muffins—oh, *do, do* spring—he's a hundred barreler—don't lose him now—don't oh, *don't!*—see that Yarman—Oh! won't ye pull for your duff, my lads—such a sog! such a sogger! Don't ye love sperm? There goes three thousand dollars, men!—a bank!—a whole bank! The bank of England!—Oh, *do, do, do!*—What's that Yarman about now?"

At this moment Derick was in the act of pitching his lamp-feeder at the advancing boats, and also his oil-can; perhaps with the double view of retarding his rivals' way, and at the same time economically accelerating his own by the momentary impetus of the backward toss.

"The unmannerly Dutch dogger!" cried Stubb. "Pull now,

men, like fifty thousand line-of-battle-ship loads of red-haired devils. What d'ye say, Tashtego; are you the man to snap your spine in two-and-twenty pieces for the honor of old Gay-head? What d'ye say?"

"I say, pull like god-dam,"—cried the Indian.

Fiercely, but evenly incited by the taunts of the German, the Pequod's three boats now began ranging almost abreast; and, so disposed, momentarily neared him. In that fine, loose, chivalrous attitude of the headsman when drawing near to his prey, the three mates stood up proudly, occasionally backing the after oarsman with an exhilarating cry of, "There she slides, now! Hurrah for the white-ash breezel! Down with the Yarman! Sail over him!"

But so decided an original start had Derick had, that spite of all their gallantry, he would have proved the victor in this race, had not a righteous judgment descended upon him in a crab which caught the blade of his midship oarsman. While this clumsy lubber was striving to free his white-ash, and while, in consequence, Derick's boat was nigh to capsizing, and he thundering away at his men in a mighty rage;—that was a good time for Starbuck, Stubb, and Flask. With a shout, they took a mortal start forwards, and slantingly ranged up on the German's quarter. An instant more, and all four boats were diagonically in the whale's immediate wake, while stretching from them, on both sides, was the foaming swell that he made.

It was a terrific, most pitiable, and maddening sight. The whale was now going head out, and sending his spout before him in a continual tormented jet; while his one poor fin beat his side in an agony of fright. Now to this hand, now to that, he yawed in his faltering flight, and still at every billow that he broke, he spasmodically sank in the sea, or sideways rolled towards the sky his one beating fin. So have I seen a bird with clipped wing, making affrighted broken circles in the air, vainly striving to escape the piratical hawks. But the bird has a voice, and with plaintive cries will make known her fear; but the fear of this vast dumb brute of the sea, was chained up and enchanted in him; he had no voice, save that choking respiration through his spiracle, and this made the sight of him un-

speakably pitiable; while still, in his amazing bulk, portcullis jaw, and omnipotent tail, there was enough to appal the stoutest man who so pitied.

Seeing now that but a very few moments more would give the Pequod's boats the advantage, and rather than be thus foiled of his game, Derick chose to hazard what to him must have seemed a most unusually long dart, ere the last chance would for ever escape.

But no sooner did his harpooneer stand up for the stroke, than all three tigers—Queequeg, Tashtego, Dagoo—instinctively sprang to their feet, and standing in a diagonal row, simultaneously pointed their barbs; and darted over the head of the German harpooneer, their three Nantucket irons entered the whale. Blinding vapors of foam and white-fire! The three boats, in the first fury of the whale's headlong rush, bumped the German's aside with such force, that both Derick and his baffled harpooneer were spilled out, and sailed over by the three flying keels.

"Don't be afraid, my butter-boxes," cried Stubb, casting a passing glance upon them as he shot by; "ye'll be picked up presently—all right—I saw some sharks astern—St. Bernard's dogs, you know—relieve distressed travellers. Hurrah! this is the way to sail now. Every keel a sun-beam! Hurrah!—Here we go like three tin kettles at the tail of a mad cougar! This puts me in mind of fastening to an elephant in a tilbury on a plain—makes the wheel-spokes fly, boys, when you fasten to him that way; and there's danger of being pitched out too, when you strike a hill. Hurrah! this is the way a fellow feels when he's going to Davy Jones—all a rush down an endless inclined plane! Hurrah! this whale carries the everlasting mail!"

But the monster's run was a brief one. Giving a sudden gasp, he tumultuously sounded. With a grating rush, the three lines flew round the loggerheads with such a force as to gouge deep grooves in them; while so fearful were the harpooneers that this rapid sounding would soon exhaust the lines, that using all their dexterous might, they caught repeated smoking turns with the rope to hold on; till at last—owing to the perpendicular strain from the lead-lined chocks of the boats, whence the three

ropes went straight down into the blue—the gunwales of the bows were almost even with the water, while the three sterns tilted high in the air. And the whale soon ceasing to sound, for some time they remained in that attitude, fearful of expending more line, though the position was a little ticklish. But though boats have been taken down and lost in this way, yet it is this “holding on,” as it is called; this hooking up by the sharp barbs of his live flesh from the back; this it is that often torments the Leviathan into soon rising again to meet the sharp lance of his foes. Yet not to speak of the peril of the thing, it is to be doubted whether this course is always the best; for it is but reasonable to presume, that the longer the stricken whale stays under water, the more he is exhausted. Because, owing to the enormous surface of him—in a full grown sperm whale something less than 2000 square feet—the pressure of the water is immense. We all know what an astonishing atmospheric weight we ourselves stand up under; even here, above-ground, in the air; how vast, then, the burden of a whale, bearing on his back a column of two hundred fathoms of ocean! It must at least equal the weight of fifty atmospheres. One whaler has estimated it at the weight of twenty line-of-battle ships, with all their guns, and stores, and men on board.

As the three boats lay there on that gently rolling sea, gazing down into its eternal blue noon; and as not a single groan or cry of any sort, nay, not so much as a ripple or a bubble came up from its depths; what landsman would have thought, that beneath all that silence and placidity, the utmost monster of the seas was writhing and wrenching in agony! Not eight inches of perpendicular rope were visible at the bows. Seems it credible that by three such thin threads the great Leviathan was suspended like the big weight to an eight day clock. Suspended? and to what? To three bits of board. Is this the creature of whom it was once so triumphantly said—“Canst thou fill his skin with barbed irons? or his head with fish-spears? The sword of him that layeth at him cannot hold, the spear, the dart, nor the habergeon: he esteemeth iron as straw; the arrow cannot make him flee; darts are counted as stubble; he laugheth at the shaking of a spear!” This the creature? this he? Oh! that un-

fulfilments should follow the prophets. For with the strength of a thousand thighs in his tail, Leviathan had run his head under the mountains of the sea, to hide him from the Pequod's fish-spears!

In that sloping afternoon sunlight, the shadows that the three boats sent down beneath the surface, must have been long enough and broad enough to shade half Xerxes' army. Who can tell how appalling to the wounded whale must have been such huge phantoms flitting over his head!

"Stand by, men; he stirs," cried Starbuck, as the three lines suddenly vibrated in the water, distinctly conducting upwards to them, as by magnetic wires, the life and death throbs of the whale, so that every oarsman felt them in his seat. The next moment, relieved in great part from the downward strain at the bows, the boats gave a sudden bounce upwards, as a small ice-field will, when a dense herd of white bears are scared from it into the sea.

"Haul in! Haul in!" cried Starbuck again; "he's rising."

The lines, of which, hardly an instant before, not one hand's breadth could have been gained, were now in long quick coils flung back all dripping into the boats, and soon the whale broke water within two ship's lengths of the hunters.

His motions plainly denoted his extreme exhaustion. In most land animals there are certain valves or flood-gates in many of their veins, whereby when wounded, the blood is in some degree at least instantly shut off in certain directions. Not so with the whale; one of whose peculiarities it is, to have an entire non-valvular structure of the blood-vessels, so that when pierced even by so small a point as a harpoon, a deadly drain is at once begun upon his whole arterial system; and when this is heightened by the extraordinary pressure of water at a great distance below the surface, his life may be said to pour from him in incessant streams. Yet so vast is the quantity of blood in him, and so distant and numerous its interior fountains, that he will keep thus bleeding and bleeding for a considerable period; even as in a drought a river will flow, whose source is in the well-springs of far-off and undiscernible hills. Even now, when the boats pulled upon this whale, and perilously drew over his swaying

flukes, and the lances were darted into him, they were followed by steady jets from the new made wound, which kept continually playing, while the natural spout-hole in his head was only at intervals, however rapid, sending its affrighted moisture into the air. From this last vent no blood yet came, because no vital part of him had thus far been struck. His life, as they significantly call it, was untouched.

As the boats now more closely surrounded him, the whole upper part of his form, with much of it that is ordinarily submerged, was plainly revealed. His eyes, or rather the places where his eyes had been, were beheld. As strange misgrown masses gather in the knot-holes of the noblest oaks when prostrate, so from the points which the whale's eyes had once occupied, now protruded blind bulbs, horribly pitiable to see. But pity there was none. For all his old age, and his one arm, and his blind eyes, he must die the death and be murdered, in order to light the gay bridals and other merry-makings of men, and also to illuminate the solemn churches that preach unconditional inoffensiveness by all to all. Still rolling in his blood, at last he partially disclosed a strangely discolored bunch or protuberance, the size of a bushel, low down on the flank.

"A nice spot," cried Flask; "just let me prick him there once."

"Avast!" cried Starbuck, "there's no need of that!"

But humane Starbuck was too late. At the instant of the dart an ulcerous jet shot from this cruel wound, and goaded by it into more than sufferable anguish, the whale now spouting thick blood, with swift fury blindly darted at the craft, bespattering them and their glorying crews all over with showers of gore, capsizing Flask's boat and marring the bows. It was his death stroke. For, by this time, so spent was he by loss of blood, that he helplessly rolled away from the wreck he had made; lay panting on his side, impotently flapped with his stumped fin, then over and over slowly revolved like a waning world; turned up the white secrets of his belly; lay like a log, and died. It was most piteous, that last expiring spout. As when by unseen hands the water is gradually drawn off from some mighty fountain, and with half-stifled melancholy gurglings the spray-column lowers and lowers to the ground—so the last long dying spout of the whale.

Soon, while the crews were awaiting the arrival of the ship, the body showed symptoms of sinking with all its treasures unrifled. Immediately, by Starbuck's orders, lines were secured to it at different points, so that ere long every boat was a buoy; the sunken whale being suspended a few inches beneath them by the cords. By very heedful management, when the ship drew nigh, the whale was transferred to her side, and was strongly secured there by the stiffest fluke-chains, for it was plain that unless artificially upheld, the body would at once sink to the bottom.

It so chanced that almost upon first cutting into him with the spade, the entire length of a corroded harpoon was found imbedded in his flesh, on the lower part of the bunch before described. But as the stumps of harpoons are frequently found in the dead bodies of captured whales, with the flesh perfectly healed around them, and no prominence of any kind to denote their place; therefore, there must needs have been some other unknown reason in the present case fully to account for the ulceration alluded to. But still more curious was the fact of a lance-head of stone being found in him, not far from the buried iron, the flesh perfectly firm about it. Who had darted that stone lance? And when? It might have been darted by some Nor' West Indian long before America was discovered.

What other marvels might have been rummaged out of this monstrous cabinet there is no telling. But a sudden stop was put to further discoveries, by the ship's being unprecedentedly dragged over sideways to the sea, owing to the body's immensely increasing tendency to sink. However, Starbuck, who had the ordering of affairs, hung on to it to the last; hung on to it so resolutely, indeed, that when at length the ship would have been capsized, if still persisting in locking arms with the body; then, when the command was given to break clear from it, such was the immovable strain upon the timber-heads to which the fluke-chains and cables were fastened, that it was impossible to cast them off. Meantime everything in the Pequod was aslant. To cross to the other side of the deck was like walking up the steep gabled roof of a house. The ship groaned and gasped. Many of the ivory inlayings of her bulwarks and cabins were started from their places, by the unnatural dislocation. In

vain handspikes and crows were brought to bear upon the immovable fluke-chains, to pry them adrift from the timber-heads; and so low had the whale now settled that the submerged ends could not be at all approached, while every moment whole tons of ponderosity seemed added to the sinking bulk, and the ship seemed on the point of going over.

"Hold on, hold on, won't ye?" cried Stubb to the body, "don't be in such a devil of a hurry to sink! By thunder, men, we must do something or go for it. No use prying there; avast, I say with your handspikes, and run one of ye for a prayer book and a pen-knife, and cut the big chains."

"Knife? Aye, aye," cried Queequeg, and seizing the carpenter's heavy hatchet, he leaned out of a porthole, and steel to iron, began slashing at the largest fluke-chains. But a few strokes, full of sparks, were given, when the exceeding strain effected the rest. With a terrific snap, every fastening went adrift; the ship righted, the carcase sank.

Now, this occasional inevitable sinking of the recently killed Sperm Whale is a very curious thing; nor has any fisherman yet adequately accounted for it. Usually the dead Sperm Whale floats with great buoyancy, with its side or belly considerably elevated above the surface. If the only whales that thus sank were old, meagre, and broken-hearted creatures, their pads of lard diminished and all their bones heavy and rheumatic; then you might with some reason assert that this sinking is caused by an uncommon specific gravity in the fish so sinking, consequent upon this absence of buoyant matter in him. But it is not so. For young whales, in the highest health, and swelling with noble aspirations, prematurely cut off in the warm flush and May of life, with all their panting lard about them; even these brawny, buoyant heroes do sometimes sink.

Be it said, however, that the Sperm Whale is far less liable to this accident than any other species. Where one of that sort go down, twenty Right Whales do. This difference in the species is no doubt imputable in no small degree to the greater quantity of bone in the Right Whale; his Venetian blinds alone sometimes weighing more than a ton; from this incumbrance the Sperm Whale is wholly free. But there are instances where,

after the lapse of many hours or several days, the sunken whale again rises, more buoyant than in life. But the reason of this is obvious. Gases are generated in him; he swells to a prodigious magnitude; becomes a sort of animal balloon. A line-of-battle ship could hardly keep him under then. In the Shore Whaling, on soundings, among the Bays of New Zealand, when a Right Whale gives token of sinking, they fasten buoys to him, with plenty of rope; so that when the body has gone down, they know where to look for it when it shall have ascended again.

It was not long after the sinking of the body that a cry was heard from the Pequod's mast-heads, announcing that the Jungfrau was again lowering her boats; though the only spout in sight was that of a Fin-Back, belonging to the species of uncapturable whales, because of its incredible power of swimming. Nevertheless, the Fin-Back's spout is so similar to the Sperm Whale's, that by unskilful fishermen it is often mistaken for it. And consequently Derick and all his host were now in valiant chase of this unnearable brute. The Virgin crowding all sail, made after her four young keels, and thus they all disappeared far to leeward, still in bold, hopeful chase.

Oh! many are the Fin-Backs, and many are the Dericks, my friend.

CHAPTER LXXXII

THE HONOR AND GLORY OF WHALING

THERE are some enterprises in which a careful disorderliness is the true method.

The more I dive into this matter of whaling, and push my researches up to the very spring-head of it, so much the more am I impressed with its great honorableness and antiquity; and especially when I find so many great demi-gods and heroes, prophets of all sorts, who one way or other have shed distinction upon it, I am transported with the reflection that I myself

belong, though but subordinately, to so emblazoned a fraternity.

The gallant Perseus, a son of Jupiter, was the first whaleman; and to the eternal honor of our calling be it said, that the first whale attacked by our brotherhood was not killed with any sordid intent. Those were the knightly days of our profession, when we only bore arms to succor the distressed, and not to fill men's lamp-feeders. Every one knows the fine story of Perseus and Andromeda; how the lovely Andromeda, the daughter of a king, was tied to a rock on the sea-coast, and as Leviathan was in the very act of carrying her off, Perseus, the prince of whalemen, intrepidly advancing, harpooned the monster, and delivered and married the maid. It was an admirable artistic exploit, rarely achieved by the best harpooneers of the present day; inasmuch as this Leviathan was slain at the very first dart. And let no man doubt this Arkite story; for in the ancient Joppa, now Jaffa, on the Syrian coast, in one of the Pagan temples, there stood for many ages the vast skeleton of a whale, which the city's legends and all the inhabitants asserted to be the identical bones of the monster that Perseus slew. When the Romans took Joppa, the same skeleton was carried to Italy in triumph. What seems most singular and suggestively important in this story, is this: it was from Joppa that Jonah set sail.

Akin to the adventure of Perseus and Andromeda—indeed, by some supposed to be indirectly derived from it—is that famous story of St. George and the Dragon; which dragon I maintain to have been a whale; for in many old chronicles whales and dragons are strangely jumbled together, and often stand for each other. "Thou art as a lion of the waters, and as a dragon of the sea," saith Ezekiel; hereby, plainly meaning a whale; in truth, some versions of the Bible use that word itself. Besides, it would much subtract from the glory of the exploit had St. George but encountered a crawling reptile of the land, instead of doing battle with the great monster of the deep. Any man may kill a snake, but only a Perseus, a St. George, a Coffin, have the heart in them to march boldly up to a whale.

Let not the modern paintings of this scene mislead us; for though the creature encountered by that valiant whaleman of old is vaguely represented of a griffin-like shape, and though

the battle is depicted on land and the saint on horseback, yet considering the great ignorance of those times, when the true form of the whale was unknown to artists; and considering that as in Perseus' case, St. George's whale might have crawled up out of the sea on the beach; and considering that the animal ridden by St. George might have been only a large seal, or sea-horse; bearing all this in mind, it will not appear altogether incompatible with the sacred legend and the ancientest draughts of the scene, to hold this so-called dragon no other than the great Leviathan himself. In fact, placed before the strict and piercing truth, this whole story will fare like that fish, flesh, and fowl idol of the Philistines, Dagon by name; who being planted before the ark of Israel, his horse's head and both the palms of his hands fell off from him, and only the stump or fishy part of him remained. Thus, then, one of our own noble stamp, even a whaleman, is the tutelary guardian of England; and by good rights, we harpooneers of Nantucket should be enrolled in the most noble order of St. George. And therefore, let not the knights of that honorable company (none, of whom, I venture to say, have ever had to do with a whale like their great patron), let them never eye a Nantucketer with disdain, since even in our woollen frocks and tarred trowsers we are much better entitled to St. George's decoration than they.

Whether to admit Hercules among us or not, concerning this I long remained dubious: for though according to the Greek mythologies, that antique Crockett and Kit Carson—that brawny doer of rejoicing good deeds, was swallowed down and thrown up by a whale; still, whether that strictly makes a whaleman of him, that might be mooted. It nowhere appears that he ever actually harpooned his fish, unless, indeed, from the inside. Nevertheless, he may be deemed a sort of involuntary whaleman; at any rate the whale caught him, if he did not the whale. I claim him for one of our clan.

But, by the best contradictory authorities, this Grecian story of Hercules and the whale is considered to be derived from the still more ancient Hebrew story of Jonah and the whale; and vice versâ; certainly they are very similar. If I claim the demi-god then, why not the prophet?

Nor do heroes, saints, demigods, and prophets alone comprise the whole roll of our order. Our grand master is still to be named; for like royal kings of old times, we find the headwaters of our fraternity in nothing short of the great gods themselves. That wondrous oriental story is now to be rehearsed from the Shaster, which gives us the dread Vishnoo, one of the three persons in the godhead of the Hindoos; gives us this divine Vishnoo himself for our Lord;—Vishnoo, who, by the first of his ten earthly incarnations, has for ever set apart and sanctified the whale. When Brahma, or the God of Gods, saith the Shaster, resolved to recreate the world after one of its periodical dissolutions, he gave birth to Vishnoo, to preside over the work; but the Vedas, or mystical books, whose perusal would seem to have been indispensable to Vishnoo before beginning the creation, and which therefore must have contained something in the shape of practical hints to young architects, these Vedas were lying at the bottom of the waters; so Vishnoo became incarnate in a whale, and sounding down in him to the uttermost depths, rescued the sacred volumes. Was not this Vishnoo a whaleman, then? even as a man who rides a horse is called a horseman?

Perseus, St. George, Hercules, Jonah, and Vishnoo! there's a member-roll for you! What club but the whaleman's can head off like that?

CHAPTER LXXXIII

JONAH HISTORICALLY REGARDED

REFERENCE was made to the historical story of Jonah and the whale in the preceding chapter. Now some Nantucketers rather distrust this historical story of Jonah and the whale. But then there were some sceptical Greeks and Romans, who, standing out from the orthodox pagans of their times, equally doubted the story of Hercules and the whale, and Arion and the dolphin;

and yet their doubting those traditions did not make those traditions one whit the less facts, for all that.

One old Sag-Harbor whaleman's chief reason for questioning the Hebrew story was this:—He had one of those quaint old-fashioned Bibles, embellished with curious, unscientific plates; one of which represented Jonah's whale with two spouts in his head—a peculiarity only true with respect to a species of the Leviathan (the Right Whale, and the varieties of that order), concerning which the fishermen have this saying, "A penny roll would choke him;" his swallow is so very small. But, to this, Bishop Jebb's anticipative answer is ready. It is not necessary, hints the Bishop, that we consider Jonah as tombed in the whale's belly, but as temporarily lodged in some part of his mouth. And this seems reasonable enough in the good Bishop. For truly, the Right Whale's mouth would accommodate a couple of whist tables, and comfortably seat all the players. Possibly, too, Jonah might have ensconced himself in a hollow tooth; but, on second thoughts, the Right Whale is toothless.

Another reason which Sag-Harbor (he went by that name) urged for his want of faith in this matter of the prophet, was something obscurely in reference to his incarcerated body and the whale's gastric juices. But this objection likewise falls to the ground, because a German exegetist supposes that Jonah must have taken refuge in the floating body of a *dead* whale—even as the French soldiers in the Russian campaign turned their dead horses into tents, and crawled into them. Besides, it has been divined by other continental commentators, that when Jonah was thrown overboard from the Joppa ship, he straightway effected his escape to another vessel near by, some vessel with a whale for a figure-head; and, I would add, possibly called "The Whale," as some craft are nowadays christened the "Shark," the "Gull," the "Eagle." Nor have there been wanting learned exegetists who have opined that the whale mentioned in the book of Jonah merely meant a life-preserver—an inflated bag of wind—which the endangered prophet swam to, and so was saved from a watery doom. Poor Sag-Harbor, therefore, seems worsted all round. But he had still another reason for his want of faith. It was this, if I remember right: Jonah was

swallowed by the whale in the Mediterranean Sea, and after three days he was vomited up somewhere within three days' journey of Nineveh, a city on the Tigris, very much more than three days' journey across from the nearest point of the Mediterranean coast. How is that?

But was there no other way for the whale to land the prophet within that short distance of Nineveh? Yes. He might have carried him round by the way of the Cape of Good Hope. But not to speak of the passage through the whole length of the Mediterranean, and another passage up the Persian Gulf and Red Sea, such a supposition would involve the complete circumnavigation of all Africa in three days, not to speak of the Tigris waters, near the site of Nineveh, being too shallow for any whale to swim in. Besides, this idea of Jonah's weathering the Cape of Good Hope at so early a day would wrest the honor of the discovery of that great headland from Bartholomew Diaz, its reputed discoverer, and so make modern history a liar.

But all these foolish arguments of old Sag-Harbor only evinced his foolish pride of reason—a thing still more reprehensible in him, seeing that he had but little learning except what he had picked up from the sun and the sea. I say it only shows his foolish, impious pride, and abominable, devilish rebellion against the reverend clergy. For by a Portuguese Catholic priest, this very idea of Jonah's going to Nineveh viâ the Cape of Good Hope was advanced as a signal magnification of the general miracle. And so it was. Besides, to this day, the highly enlightened Turks devoutly believe in the historical story of Jonah. And some three centuries ago, an English traveller in old Harris's Voyages, speaks of a Turkish Mosque built in honor of Jonah, in which mosque was a miraculous lamp that burnt without any oil.

CHAPTER LXXXIV

PITCHPOLING

To make them run easily and swiftly, the axles of carriages are anointed; and for much the same purpose, some whalers perform an analogous operation upon their boat; they grease the bottom. Nor is it to be doubted that as such a procedure can do no harm, it may possibly be of no contemptible advantage; considering that oil and water are hostile; that oil is a sliding thing, and that the object in view is to make the boat slide bravely. Queequeg believed strongly in anointing his boat, and one morning not long after the German ship *Jungfrau* disappeared, took more than customary pains in that occupation; crawling under its bottom, where it hung over the side, and rubbing in the unctuousness as though diligently seeking to insure a crop of hair from the craft's bald keel. He seemed to be working in obedience to some particular presentiment. Nor did it remain unwarranted by the event.

Towards noon whales were raised; but so soon as the ship sailed down to them, they turned and fled with swift precipitancy; a disordered flight, as of Cleopatra's barges from Actium.

Nevertheless, the boats pursued, and Stubb's was foremost. By great exertion, Tashtego at last succeeded in planting one iron; but the stricken whale, without at all sounding, still continued his horizontal flight, with added fleetness. Such unintermitted strainings upon the planted iron must sooner or later inevitably extract it. It became imperative to lance the flying whale, or be content to lose him. But to haul the boat up to his flank was impossible, he swam so fast and furious. What then remained?

Of all the wondrous devices and dexterities, the sleights of hand and countless subtleties, to which the veteran whaler is so often forced, none exceed that fine manœuvre with the lance called pitchpoling. Small sword, or broad sword, in all its

exercises boasts nothing like it. It is only indispensable with an inveterate running whale; its grand fact and feature is the wonderful distance to which the long lance is accurately darted from a violently rocking, jerking boat, under extreme headway. Steel and wood included, the entire spear is some ten or twelve feet in length; the staff is much slighter than that of the harpoon, and also of a lighter material—pine. It is furnished with a small rope called a warp, of considerable length, by which it can be hauled back to the hand after darting.

But before going further, it is important to mention here, that though the harpoon may be pitchpoled in the same way with the lance, yet it is seldom done; and when done, is still less frequently successful, on account of the greater weight and inferior length of the harpoon as compared with the lance, which in effect become serious drawbacks. As a general thing, therefore, you must first get fast to a whale, before any pitchpoling comes into play.

Look now at Stubb; a man who from his humorous, deliberate coolness and equanimity in the direst emergencies, was specially qualified to excel in pitchpoling. Look at him; he stands upright in the tossed bow of the flying boat; wrapt in fleecy foam, the towing whale is forty feet ahead. Handling the long lance lightly, glancing twice or thrice along its length to see if it be exactly straight, Stubb whistlingly gathers up the coil of the warp in one hand, so as to secure its free end in his grasp, leaving the rest unobstructed. Then holding the lance full before his waistband's middle, he levels it at the whale; when, covering him with it, he steadily depresses the butt-end in his hand, thereby elevating the point till the weapon stands fairly balanced upon his palm, fifteen feet in the air. He minds you somewhat of a juggler, balancing a long staff on his chin. Next moment with a rapid, nameless impulse, in a superb lofty arch the bright steel spans the foaming distance, and quivers in the life spot of the whale. Instead of sparkling water, he now spouts red blood.

"That drove the spigot out of him!" cries Stubb. "'Tis July's immortal Fourth; all fountains must run wine to-day! Would now, it were old Orleans whiskey, or old Ohio, or unspeakable

old Monongahela! Then, Tashtego, lad, I'd have ye hold a canakin to the jet, and we'd drink round it! Yea, verily, hearts alive, we'd brew choice punch in the spread of his spout-hole there, and from that live punch-bowl quaff the living stuff!"

Again and again to such gamesome talk, the dexterous dart is repeated, the spear returning to its master like a greyhound held in skilful leash. The agonized whale goes into his flurry; the tow-line is slackened, and the pitchpoler dropping astern, folds his hands, and mutely watches the monster die.

CHAPTER LXXXV

THE FOUNTAIN

THAT for six thousand years—and no one knows how many millions of ages before—the great whales should have been spouting all over the sea, and sprinkling and mistifying the gardens of the deep, as with so many sprinkling or mistifying pots; and that for some centuries back, thousands of hunters should have been close by the fountain of the whale, watching these sprinklings and spoutings—that all this should be, and yet, that down to this blessed minute (fifteen and a quarter minutes past one o'clock P.M. of this sixteenth day of December, A.D. 1851), it should still remain a problem, whether these spoutings are, after all, really water, or nothing but vapor—this is surely a noteworthy thing.

Let us, then, look at this matter, along with some interesting items contingent. Every one knows that by the peculiar cunning of their gills, the finny tribes in general breathe the air which at all times is combined with the element in which they swim, hence, a herring or a cod might live a century, and never once raise its head above the surface. But owing to his marked internal structure which gives him regular lungs, like a human being's, the whale can only live by inhaling the disengaged air in the open atmosphere. Wherefore the necessity

for his periodical visits to the upper world. But he cannot in any degree breathe through his mouth, for, in his ordinary attitude, the Sperm Whale's mouth is buried at least eight feet beneath the surface; and what is still more, his windpipe has no connexion with his mouth. No, he breathes through his spiracle alone; and this is on the top of his head.

If I say, that in any creature breathing is only a function indispensable to vitality, inasmuch as it withdraws from the air a certain element, which being subsequently brought into contact with the blood imparts to the blood its vivifying principle, I do not think I shall err; though I may possibly use some superfluous scientific words. Assume it, and it follows that if all the blood in a man could be aerated with one breath, he might then seal up his nostrils and not fetch another for a considerable time. That is to say, he would then live without breathing. Anomalous as it may seem, this is precisely the case with the whale, who systematically lives, by intervals, his full hour and more (when at the bottom) without drawing a single breath, or so much as in any way inhaling a particle of air; for, remember, he has no gills. How is this? Between his ribs and on each side of his spine he is supplied with a remarkable involved Cretan labyrinth of vermicelli-like vessels, which vessels, when he quits the surface, are completely distended with oxygenated blood. So that for an hour or more, a thousand fathoms in the sea, he carries a surplus stock of vitality in him, just as the camel crossing the waterless desert carries a surplus supply of drink for future use in its four supplementary stomachs. The anatomical fact of this labyrinth is indisputable; and that the supposition founded upon it is reasonable and true, seems the more cogent to me, when I consider the otherwise inexplicable obstinacy of that leviathan in *having his spoutings out*, as the fishermen phrase it. This is what I mean. If unmolested, upon rising to the surface, the Sperm Whale will continue there for a period of time exactly uniform with all his other unmolested risings. Say he stays eleven minutes, and jets seventy times, that is, respire seventy breaths; then whenever he rises again, he will be sure to have his seventy breaths over again, to a minute. Now, if after he fetches a few

breaths you alarm him, so that he sounds, he will be always dodging up again to make good his regular allowance of air. And not till those seventy breaths are told, will he finally go down to stay out his full term below. Remark, however, that in different individuals these rates are different; but in any one they are alike. Now, why should the whale thus insist upon having his spoutings out, unless it be to replenish his reservoir of air, ere descending for good? How obvious is it, too, that this necessity for the whale's rising exposes him to all the fatal hazards of the chase. For not by hook or by net could this vast leviathan be caught, when sailing a thousand fathoms beneath the sunlight. Not so much thy skill, then, O hunter, as the great necessities that strike the victory to thee!

In man, breathing is incessantly going on—one breath only serving for two or three pulsations; so that whatever other business he has to attend to, waking or sleeping, breathe he must, or die he will. But the Sperm Whale only breathes about one seventh or Sunday of his time.

It has been said that the whale only breathes through his spout-hole; if it could truthfully be added that his spouts are mixed with water, then I opine we should be furnished with the reason why his sense of smell seems obliterated in him; for the only thing about him that at all answers to his nose is that identical spout-hole; and being so clogged with two elements, it could not be expected to have the power of smelling. But owing to the mystery of the spout—whether it be water or whether it be vapor—no absolute certainty can as yet be arrived at on this head. Sure it is, nevertheless, that the Sperm Whale has no proper olfactories. But what does he want of them? No roses, no violets, no Cologne-water in the sea.

Furthermore, as his windpipe solely opens into the tube of his spouting canal, and as that long canal—like the grand Erie Canal—is furnished with a sort of locks (that open and shut) for the downward retention of air or the upward exclusion of water, therefore the whale has no voice; unless you insult him by saying, that when he so strangely rumbles, he talks through his nose. But then again, what has the whale to say? Seldom have I known any profound being that had anything to say to this

world, unless forced to stammer out something by way of getting a living. Oh! happy that the world is such an excellent listener!

Now, the spouting canal of the Sperm Whale, chiefly intended as it is for the conveyance of air, and for several feet laid along, horizontally, just beneath the upper surface of his head, and a little to one side; this curious canal is very much like a gas-pipe laid down in a city on one side of a street. But the question returns whether this gas-pipe is also a water-pipe; in other words, whether the spout of the Sperm Whale is the mere vapor of the exhaled breath, or whether that exhaled breath is mixed with water taken in at the mouth, and discharged through the spiracle. It is certain that the mouth indirectly communicates with the spouting canal; but it cannot be proved that this is for the purpose of discharging water through the spiracle. Because the greatest necessity for so doing would seem to be, when in feeding he accidentally takes in water. But the Sperm Whale's food is far beneath the surface, and there he cannot spout even if he would. Besides, if you regard him very closely, and time him with your watch, you will find that when unmolested, there is an undeviating rhyme between the periods of his jets and the ordinary periods of respiration.

But why pester one with all this reasoning on the subject? Speak out! You have seen him spout; then declare what the spout is; can you not tell water from air? My dear sir, in this world it is not so easy to settle these plain things. I have ever found your plain things the knottiest of all. And as for this whale spout, you might almost stand in it, and yet be undecided as to what it is precisely.

The central body of it is hidden in the snowy sparkling mist enveloping it; and how can you certainly tell whether any water falls from it, when, always, when you are close enough to a whale to get a close view of his spout, he is in a prodigious commotion, the water cascading all around him. And if at such times you should think that you really perceived drops of moisture in the spout, how do you know that they are not merely condensed from its vapor; or how do you know that they are not those identical drops superficially lodged in the spout-hole fissure, which is countersunk into the summit of the whale's head? For even when tranquilly swimming through the mid-

day sea in a calm, with his elevated hump sun-dried as a dromedary's in the desert; even then, the whale always carries a small basin of water on his head, as under a blazing sun you will sometimes see a cavity in a rock filled up with rain.

Nor is it at all prudent for the hunter to be over curious touching the precise nature of the whale spout. It will not do for him to be peering into it, and putting his face in it. You cannot go with your pitcher to this fountain and fill it, and bring it away. For even when coming into slight contact with the outer, vapory shreds of the jet, which will often happen, your skin will feverishly smart, from the acridness of the thing so touching it. And I know one, who coming into still closer contact with the spout, whether with some scientific object in view, or otherwise, I cannot say, the skin peeled off from his cheek and arm. Wherefore, among whalers, the spout is deemed poisonous; they try to evade it. Another thing; I have heard it said, and I do not much doubt it, that if the jet is fairly spouted into your eyes, it will blind you. The wisest thing the investigator can do then, it seems to me, is to let this deadly spout alone.

Still, we can hypothesize, even if we cannot prove and establish. My hypothesis is this: that the spout is nothing but mist. And besides other reasons, to this conclusion I am impelled, by considerations touching the great inherent dignity and sublimity of the Sperm Whale; I account him no common, shallow being, inasmuch as it is an undisputed fact that he is never found on soundings, or near shores; all other whales sometimes are. He is both ponderous and profound. And I am convinced that from the heads of all ponderous profound beings, such as Plato, Pyrrho, the Devil, Jupiter, Dante, and so on, there always goes up a certain semi-visible steam, while in the act of thinking deep thoughts. While composing a little treatise on Eternity, I had the curiosity to place a mirror before me; and ere long saw reflected there, a curious involved worming and undulation in the atmosphere over my head. The invariable moisture of my hair, while plunged in deep thought, after six cups of hot tea in my thin shingled attic, of an August noon; this seems an additional argument for the above supposition.

And how nobly it raises our conceit of the mighty, misty

monster, to behold him solemnly sailing through a calm tropical sea; his vast, mild head overhung by a canopy of vapor, engendered by his incommunicable contemplations, and that vapor—as you will sometimes see it—glorified by a rainbow, as if Heaven itself had put its seal upon his thoughts. For, d’ye see, rainbows do not visit the clear air; they only irradiate vapor. And so, through all the thick mists of the dim doubts in my mind, divine intuitions now and then shoot, enkindling my fog with a heavenly ray. And for this I thank God; for all have doubts; many deny; but doubts or denials, few along with them, have intuitions. Doubts of all things earthly, and intuitions of some things heavenly; this combination makes neither believer nor infidel, but makes a man who regards them both with equal eye.

CHAPTER LXXXVI

THE TAIL

OTHER poets have warbled the praises of the soft eye of the antelope, and the lovely plumage of the bird that never alights; less celestial, I celebrate a tail.

Reckoning the largest sized Sperm Whale’s tail to begin at that point of the trunk where it tapers to about the girth of a man, it comprises upon its upper surface alone, an area of at least fifty square feet. The compact round body of its root expands into two broad, firm, flat palms or flukes, gradually shoaling away to less than an inch in thickness. At the crotch or junction, these flukes slightly overlap, then sideways recede from each other like wings, leaving a wide vacancy between. In no living thing are the lines of beauty more exquisitely defined than in the crescentic borders of these flukes. At its utmost expansion in the full grown whale, the tail will considerably exceed twenty feet across.

The entire member seems a dense webbed bed of welded

sinews; but cut into it, and you find that three distinct strata compose it:—upper, middle, and lower. The fibres in the upper and lower layers, are long and horizontal; those of the middle one, very short, and running crosswise between the outside layers. This triune structure, as much as anything else, imparts power to the tail. To the student of old Roman walls, the middle layer will furnish a curious parallel to the thin course of tiles always alternating with the stone in those wonderful relics of the antique, and which undoubtedly contribute so much to the great strength of the masonry.

But as if this vast local power in the tendinous tail were not enough, the whole bulk of the leviathan is knit over with a warp and woof of muscular fibres and filaments, which passing on either side the loins and running down into the flukes, insensibly blend with them, and largely contribute to their might; so that in the tail the confluent measureless force of the whole whale seems concentrated to a point. Could annihilation occur to matter, this were the thing to do it.

Nor does this—its amazing strength, at all tend to cripple the graceful flexion of its motions; where infantileness of ease undulates through a Titanism of power. On the contrary, those motions derive their most appalling beauty from it. (Real strength never impairs beauty or harmony, but it often bestows it; and in everything imposingly beautiful, strength has much to do with the magic.) Take away the tied tendons that all over seem bursting from the marble in the carved Hercules, and its charm would be gone. As devout Eckerman lifted the linen sheet from the naked corps of Goethe, he was overwhelmed with the massive chest of the man, that seemed as a Roman triumphal arch. When Angelo paints even God the Father in human form, mark what robustness is there. And whatever they may reveal of the divine love in the Son, the soft, curled, hermaphroditical Italian pictures, in which his idea has been most successfully embodied; these pictures, so destitute as they are of all brawniness, hint nothing of any power, but the mere negative, feminine one of submission and endurance, which on all hands it is conceded, form the peculiar practical virtues of his teachings.

Such is the subtle elasticity of the organ I treat of, that

whether wielded in sport, or in earnest, or in anger, whatever be the mood it be in, its flexions are invariably marked by exceeding grace. Therein no fairy's arm can transcend it.

Five great motions are peculiar to it. First, when used as a fin for progression; Second, when used as a mace in battle; Third, in sweeping; Fourth, in lobtailing; Fifth, in peaking flukes.

First: Being horizontal in its position, the Leviathan's tail acts in a different manner from the tails of all other sea creatures. It never wriggles. In man or fish, wriggling is a sign of inferiority. To the whale, his tail is the sole means of propulsion. Scroll-wise coiled forwards beneath the body, and then rapidly sprung backwards, it is this which gives that singular darting, leaping motion to the monster when furiously swimming. His side-fins only serve to steer by.

Second: It is a little significant, that while one sperm whale only fights another sperm whale with his head and jaw, nevertheless, in his conflicts with man, he chiefly and contemptuously uses his tail. In striking at a boat, he swiftly curves away his flukes from it, and the blow is only inflicted by the recoil. If it be made in the unobstructed air, especially if it descend to its mark, the stroke is then simply irresistible. No ribs of man or boat can withstand it. Your only salvation lies in eluding it; but if it comes sideways through the opposing water, then partly owing to the light buoyancy of the whaleboat, and the elasticity of its materials, a cracked rib or a dashed plank or two, a sort of stitch in the side, is generally the most serious result. These submerged side blows are so often received in the fishery, that they are accounted mere child's play. Some one strips off a frock, and the hole is stopped.

Third: I cannot demonstrate it, but it seems to me, that in the whale the sense of touch is concentrated in the tail; for in this respect there is a delicacy in it only equalled by the daintiness of the elephant's trunk. This delicacy is chiefly evinced in the action of sweeping, when in maidenly gentleness the whale with a certain soft slowness moves his immense flukes from side to side upon the surface of the sea; and if he feel but a sailor's whisker, woe to that sailor, whiskers and all.

What tenderness there is in that preliminary touch! Had this tail any prehensile power, I should straightway bethink me of Darmonodes' elephant that so frequented the flower-market, and with low salutations presented nosegays to damsels, and then caressed their zones. On more accounts than one, a pity it is that the whale does not possess this prehensile virtue in his tail; for I have heard of yet another elephant, that when wounded in the fight, curved round his trunk and extracted the dart.

Fourth: Stealing unawares upon the whale in the fancied security of the middle of solitary seas, you find him unbent from the vast corpulence of his dignity, and kitten-like, he plays on the ocean as if it were a hearth. But still you see his power in his play. The broad palms of his tail are flirted high into the air; then smiting the surface, the thunderous concussion resounds for miles. You would almost think a great gun had been discharged; and if you noticed the light wreath of vapor from the spiracle at his other extremity, you would think that that was the smoke from the touch-hole.

Fifth: As in the ordinary floating posture of the leviathan the flukes lie considerably below the level of his back, they are then completely out of sight beneath the surface; but when he is about to plunge into the deeps, his entire flukes with at least thirty feet of his body are tossed erect in the air, and so remain vibrating a moment, till they downwards shoot out of view. Excepting the sublime *breach*—somewhere else to be described—this peaking of the whale's flukes is perhaps the grandest sight to be seen in all animated nature. Out of the bottomless profundities the gigantic tail seems spasmodically snatching at the highest heaven. So in dreams, have I seen majestic Satan thrusting forth his tormented colossal claw from the flame Baltic of Hell. But in gazing at such scenes, it is all in all what mood you are in; if in the Dantean, the devils will occur to you; if in that of Isaiah, the archangels. Standing at the mast-head of my ship during a sunrise that crimsoned sky and sea, I once saw a large herd of whales in the east, all heading towards the sun, and for a moment vibrating in concert with peaked flukes. As it seemed to me at the time, such a grand

embodiment of adoration of the gods was never beheld, even in Persia, the home of the fire worshippers. As Ptolemy Philopater testified of the African elephant, I then testified of the whale, pronouncing him the most devout of all beings. For according to King Juba, the military elephants of antiquity often hailed the morning with their trunks uplifted in the profoundest silence.

The chance comparison in this chapter, between the whale and the elephant, so far as some aspects of the tail of the one and the trunk of the other are concerned, should not tend to place those two opposite organs on an equality, much less the creatures to which they respectively belong. For as the mightiest elephant is but a terrier to Leviathan, so, compared with Leviathan's tail, his trunk is but the stalk of a lily. The most direful blow from the elephant's trunk were as the playful tap of a fan, compared with the measureless crush and crash of the sperm whale's ponderous flukes, which in repeated instances have one after the other hurled entire boats with all their oars and crews into the air, very much as an Indian juggler tosses his balls.*

The more I consider this mighty tail, the more do I deplore my inability to express it. At times there are gestures in it, which, though they would well grace the hand of man, remain wholly inexplicable. In an extensive herd, so remarkable, occasionally, are these mystic gestures, that I have heard hunters who have declared them akin to Free-Mason signs and symbols; that the whale, indeed, by these methods intelligently conversed with the world. Nor are there wanting other motions of the whale in his general body, full of strangeness, and unaccountable to his most experienced assailant. Dissect him how I may, then, I but go skin deep; I know him not, and never will. But if I know not even the tail of this whale, how understand his head? much more, how comprehend his face, when face he has none?

* Though all comparison in the way of general bulk between the whale and the elephant is preposterous, inasmuch as in that particular the elephant stands in much the same respect to the whale that a dog does to the elephant; nevertheless, there are not wanting some points of curious similitude; among these is the spout. It is well known that the elephant will often draw up water or dust in his trunk, and then elevating it, jet it forth in a stream.

Thou shalt see my back parts, my tail, he seems to say, but my face shall not be seen. But I cannot completely make out his back parts; and hint what he will about his face, I say again he has no face. ✓

CHAPTER LXXXVII

THE GRAND ARMADA

THE long and narrow peninsula of Malacca, extending south-eastward from the territories of Birmah, forms the most southerly point of all Asia. In a continuous line from that peninsula stretch the long islands of Sumatra, Java, Bally, and Timor; which, with many others, form a vast mole, or rampart, lengthwise connecting Asia with Australia, and dividing the long unbroken Indian ocean from the thickly studded oriental archipelagoes. This rampart is pierced by several sally-ports for the convenience of ships and whales; conspicuous among which are the straits of Sunda and Malacca. By the straits of Sunda, chiefly, vessels bound to China from the west, emerge into the China seas.

Those narrow straits of Sunda divide Sumatra from Java; and standing midway in that vast rampart of islands, buttressed by that bold green promontory, known to seamen as Java Head; they not a little correspond to the central gateway opening into some vast walled empire: and considering the inexhaustible wealth of spices, and silks, and jewels, and gold, and ivory, with which the thousand islands of that oriental sea are enriched, it seems a significant provision of nature, that such treasures, by the very formation of the land, should at least bear the appearance, however ineffectual, of being guarded from the all-grasping western world. The shores of the Straits of Sunda are unsupplied with those domineering fortresses which guard the entrances to the Mediterranean, the Baltic, and the Propontis. Unlike the Danes, these Orientals do not demand the obsequious homage of lowered top-sails from the endless procession of ships

before the wind, which for centuries past, by night and by day, have passed between the islands of Sumatra and Java, freighted with the costliest cargoes of the east. But while they freely waive a ceremonial like this, they do by no means renounce their claim to more solid tribute.

Time out of mind the piratical proas of the Malays, lurking among the low shaded coves and islets of Sumatra, have sallied out upon the vessels sailing through the straits, fiercely demanding tribute at the point of their spears. Though by the repeated bloody chastisements they have received at the hands of European cruisers, the audacity of these corsairs has of late been somewhat repressed; yet, even at the present day, we occasionally hear of English and American vessels, which, in those waters, have been remorselessly boarded and pillaged.

With a fair, fresh wind, the Pequod was now drawing nigh to these straits; Ahab purposing to pass through them into the Javan sea, and thence, cruising northwards, over waters known to be frequented here and there by the Sperm Whale, sweep inshore by the Philippine Islands, and gain the far coast of Japan, in time for the great whaling season there. By these means, the circumnavigating Pequod would sweep almost all the known Sperm Whale cruising grounds of the world, previous to descending upon the Line in the Pacific; where Ahab, though everywhere else foiled in his pursuit, firmly counted upon giving battle to Moby Dick, in the sea he was most known to frequent; and at a season when he might most reasonably be presumed to be haunting it.

But how now? in this zoned quest, does Ahab touch no land? does his crew drink air? Surely, he will stop for water. Nay. For a long time, now, the circus-running sun has raced within his fiery ring, and needs no sustenance but what's in himself. So Ahab. Mark this, too, in the whaler. While other hulls are loaded down with alien stuff, to be transferred to foreign wharves; the world-wandering whale-ship carries no cargo but herself and crew, their weapons and their wants. She has a whole lake's contents bottled in her ample hold. She is ballasted with utilities; not altogether with unusable pig-lead and kentledge. She carries years' water in her. Clear old prime Nantucket water; which, when three years afloat, the Nantucketer,

in the Pacific, prefers to drink before the brackish fluid, but yesterday rafted off in casks, from the Peruvian or Indian streams. Hence it is, that, while other ships may have gone to China from New York, and back again, touching at a score of ports, the whale-ship, in all that interval, may not have sighted one grain of soil; her crew having seen no man but floating seamen like themselves. So that did you carry them the news that another flood had come; they would only answer—"Well, boys, here's the ark!"

Now, as many Sperm Whales had been captured off the western coast of Java, in the near vicinity of the Straits of Sunda; indeed, as most of the ground, roundabout, was generally recognised by the fishermen as an excellent spot for cruising; therefore, as the Pequod gained more and more upon Java Head, the look-outs were repeatedly hailed, and admonished to keep wide awake. But though the green palmy cliffs of the land soon loomed on the starboard bow, and with delighted nostrils the fresh cinnamon was snuffed in the air, yet not a single jet was descried. Almost renouncing all thought of falling in with any game hereabouts, the ship had well nigh entered the straits, when the customary cheering cry was heard from aloft, and ere long a spectacle of singular magnificence saluted us.

But here be it premised, that owing to the unwearied activity with which of late they have been hunted over all four oceans, the Sperm Whales, instead of almost invariably sailing in small detached companies, as in former times, are now frequently met with in extensive herds, sometimes embracing so great a multitude, that it would almost seem as if numerous nations of them had sworn solemn league and covenant for mutual assistance and protection. To this aggregation of the Sperm Whale into such immense caravans, may be imputed the circumstance that even in the best cruising grounds, you may now sometimes sail for weeks and months together, without being greeted by a single spout; and then be suddenly saluted by what sometimes seems thousands on thousands.

Broad on both bows, at the distance of some two or three miles, and forming a great semicircle, embracing one half of the level horizon, a continuous chain of whale-jets were up-playing and sparkling in the noon-day air. Unlike the straight perpen-

dicular twin-jets of the Right Whale, which, dividing at top, fall over in two branches, like the cleft drooping boughs of a willow, the single forward-slanting spout of the Sperm Whale presents a thick curled bush of white mist, continually rising and falling away to leeward.

Seen from the Pequod's deck, then, as she would rise on a high hill of the sea, this host of vapory spouts, individually curling up into the air, and beheld through a blending atmosphere of bluish haze, showed like the thousand cheerful chimneys of some dense metropolis, descried of a balmy autumnal morning, by some horseman on a height.

As marching armies approaching an unfriendly defile in the mountains, accelerate their march, all eagerness to place that perilous passage in their rear, and once more expand in comparative security upon the plain; even so did this vast fleet of whales now seem hurrying forward through the straits; gradually contracting the wings of their semicircle, and swimming on, in one solid, but still crescentic centre.

Crowding all sail the Pequod pressed after them; the harpooners handling their weapons, and loudly cheering from the heads of their yet suspended boats. If the wind only held, little doubt had they, that chased through these Straits of Sunda, the vast host would only deploy into the Oriental seas to witness the capture of not a few of their number. And who could tell whether, in that congregated caravan, Moby Dick himself might not temporarily be swimming, like the worshipped white-elephant in the coronation procession of the Siamese! So with stun-sail piled on stun-sail, we sailed along, driving these leviathans before us; when, of a sudden, the voice of Tashtego was heard, loudly directing attention to something in our wake.

Corresponding to the crescent in our van, we beheld another in our rear. It seemed formed of detached white vapors, rising and falling something like the spouts of the whales; only they did not so completely come and go; for they constantly hovered, without finally disappearing. Levelling his glass at this sight, Ahab quickly revolved in his pivot-hole, crying, "Aloft there, and rig whips and buckets to wet the sails;—Malays, sir, and after us!"

As if too long lurking behind the headlands, till the Pequod should fairly have entered the straits, these rascally Asiatics were now in hot pursuit, to make up for their over-cautious delay. But when the swift Pequod, with a fresh leading wind, was herself in hot chase; how very kind of these tawny philanthropists to assist in speeding her on to her own chosen pursuit,—mere riding-whips and rowels to her, that they were. As with glass under arm, Ahab to-and-fro paced the deck; in his forward turn beholding the monsters he chased, and in the after one the bloodthirsty pirates chasing *him*; some such fancy as the above seemed his. And when he glanced upon the green walls of the watery defile in which the ship was then sailing, and bethought him that through that gate lay the route to his vengeance, and beheld, how that through that same gate he was now both chasing and being chased to his deadly end; and not only that, but a herd of remorseless wild pirates and inhuman atheistical devils were infernally cheering him on with their curses;—when all these conceits had passed through his brain, Ahab's brow was left gaunt and ribbed, like the black sand beach after some stormy tide has been gnawing it, without being able to drag the firm thing from its place.

But thoughts like these troubled very few of the reckless crew; and when, after steadily dropping and dropping the pirates astern, the Pequod at last shot by the vivid green Cockatoo Point on the Sumatra side, emerging at last upon the broad waters beyond; then, the harpooneers seemed more to grieve that the swift whales had been gaining upon the ship, than to rejoice that the ship had so victoriously gained upon the Malays. But still driving on in the wake of the whales, at length they seemed abating their speed; gradually the ship neared them; and the wind now dying away, word was passed to spring to the boats. But no sooner did the herd, by some presumed wonderful instinct of the Sperm Whale, become notified of the three keels that were after them,—though as yet a mile in their rear,—than they rallied again, and forming in close ranks and battalions, so that their spouts all looked like flashing lines of stacked bayonets, moved on with redoubled velocity.

Stripped to our shirts and drawers, we sprang to the white-

ash, and after several hours' pulling were almost disposed to renounce the chase, when a general pausing commotion among the whales gave animating token that they were now at last under the influence of that strange perplexity of inert irresolution, which, when the fishermen perceive it in the whale, they say he is galled.* The compact martial columns in which they had been hitherto rapidly and steadily swimming, were now broken up in one measureless rout; and like King Porus' elephants in the Indian battle with Alexander, they seemed going mad with consternation. In all directions expanding in vast irregular circles, and aimlessly swimming hither and thither, by their short thick spoutings, they plainly betrayed their distraction of panic. This was still more strangely evinced by those of their number, who, completely paralysed as it were, helplessly floated like water-logged dismantled ships on the sea. Had these leviathans been but a flock of simple sheep, pursued over the pasture by three fierce wolves, they could not possibly have evinced such excessive dismay. But this occasional timidity is characteristic of almost all herding creatures. Though banding together in tens of thousands, the lion-maned buffaloes of the West have fled before a solitary horseman. Witness, too, all human beings, how when herded together in the sheepfold of a theatre's pit, they will, at the slightest alarm of fire, rush helter-skelter for the outlets, crowding, trampling, jamming, and remorselessly dashing each other to death. Best, therefore, with-

* To *gally*, or *gallow*, is to frighten excessively—to confound with fright. It is an old Saxon word. It occurs once in Shakespeare:—

“The wrathful skies
Gallow the very wanderers of the dark
And make them keep their caves.”

To common language, the word is now completely obsolete. When the polite landsman first hears it from the gaunt Nantucketer, he is apt to set it down as one of the whaleman's self-derived savageries. Much the same is it with many other sinewy Saxonisms of this sort, which emigrated to New-England rocks with the noble brawn of the old English emigrants in the time of the Commonwealth. Thus, some of the best and furthest-descended English words—the etymological Howards and Percys—are now democratised, nay, plebeianised—so to speak—in the New World. [English edition]

hold any amazement at the strangely gallied whales before us, for there is no folly of the beasts of the earth which is not infinitely outdone by the madness of men.

Though many of the whales, as has been said, were in violent motion, yet it is to be observed that as a whole the herd neither advanced nor retreated, but collectively remained in one place. As is customary in those cases, the boats at once separated, each making for some one lone whale on the outskirts of the shoal. In about three minutes' time, Queequeg's harpoon was flung; the stricken fish darted blinding spray in our faces, and then running away with us like light, steered straight for the heart of the herd. Though such a movement on the part of the whale struck under such circumstances, is in no wise unprecedented; and indeed is almost always more or less anticipated; yet does it present one of the more perilous vicissitudes of the fishery. For as the swift monster drags you deeper and deeper into the frantic shoal, you bid adieu to circumspect life and only exist in a delirious throb.

As, blind and deaf, the whale plunged forward, as if by sheer power of speed to rid himself of the iron leech that had fastened to him; as we thus tore a white gash in the sea, on all sides menaced as we flew, by the crazed creatures to and fro rushing about us; our beset boat was like a ship mobbed by ice-isles in a tempest, and striving to steer through their complicated channels and straits, knowing not at what moment it may be locked in and crushed.

But not a bit daunted, Queequeg steered us manfully; now sheering off from this monster directly across our route in advance; now edging away from that, whose colossal flukes were suspended overhead, while all the time, Starbuck stood up in the bows, lance in hand, pricking out of our way whatever whales he could reach by short darts, for there was no time to make long ones. Nor were the oarsmen quite idle, though their wonted duty was now altogether dispensed with. They chiefly attended to the shouting part of the business. "Out of the way, Commodore!" cried one, to a great dromedary that of a sudden rose bodily to the surface, and for an instant threatened to swamp us. "Hard down with your tail, there!" cried a second

to another, which, close to our gunwale, seemed calmly cooling himself with his own fan-like extremity.

All whaleboats carry certain curious contrivances, originally invented by the Nantucket Indians, called druggs. Two thick squares of wood of equal size are stoutly clenched together, so that they cross each other's grain at right angles; a line of considerable length is then attached to the middle of this block, and the other end of the line being looped, it can in a moment be fastened to a harpoon. It is chiefly among galled whales that this drugg is used. For then, more whales are close round you than you can possibly chase at one time. But sperm whales are not every day encountered; while you may, then, you must kill all you can. And if you cannot kill them all at once, you must wing them, so that they can be afterwards killed at your leisure. Hence it is, that at times like these the drugg comes into requisition. Our boat was furnished with three of them. The first and second were successfully darted, and we saw the whales staggeringly running off, fettered by the enormous sidelong resistance of the towing drugg. They were cramped like malefactors with the chain and ball. But upon flinging the third, in the act of tossing overboard the clumsy wooden block, it caught under one of the seats of the boat, and in an instant tore it out and carried it away, dropping the oarsman in the boat's bottom as the seat slid from under him. On both sides the sea came in at the wounded planks, but we stuffed two or three drawers and shirts in, and so stopped the leaks for the time.

It had been next to impossible to dart these drugged-harpoons, were it not that as we advanced into the herd, our whale's way greatly diminished; moreover, that as we went still further and further from the circumference of commotion, the direful disorders seemed waning. So that when at last the jerking harpoon drew out, and the towing whale sideways vanished; then, with the tapering force of his parting momentum, we glided between two whales into the innermost heart of the shoal, as if from some mountain torrent we had slid into a serene valley lake. Here the storms in the roaring glens between the outermost whales, were heard but not felt. In this central expanse the sea presented that smooth satin-like surface, called a sleek, pro-

duced by the subtle moisture thrown off by the whale in his more quiet moods. Yes, we were now in that enchanted calm which they say lurks at the heart of every commotion. And still in the distracted distance we beheld the tumults of the outer concentric circles, and saw successive pods of whales, eight or ten in each, swiftly going round and round, like multiplied spans of horses in a ring; and so closely shoulder to shoulder, that a Titanic circus-rider might easily have overarched the middle ones, and so have gone round on their backs. Owing to the density of the crowd of reposing whales, more immediately surrounding the embayed axis of the herd, no possible chance of escape was at present afforded us. We must watch for a breach in the living wall that hemmed us in; the wall that had only admitted us in order to shut us up. Keeping at the centre of the lake, we were occasionally visited by small tame cows and calves; the women and children of this routed host.

Now, inclusive of the occasional wide intervals between the revolving outer circles, and inclusive of the spaces between the various pods in any one of those circles, the entire area at this juncture, embraced by the whole multitude, must have contained at least two or three square miles. At any rate—though indeed such a test at such a time might be deceptive—spoutings might be discovered from our low boat that seemed playing up almost from the rim of the horizon. I mention this circumstance, because, as if the cows and calves had been purposely locked up in this innermost fold; and as if the wide extent of the herd had hitherto prevented them from learning the precise cause of its stopping; or, possibly, being so young, unsophisticated, and every way innocent and inexperienced; however it may have been, these smaller whales—now and then visiting our becalmed boat from the margin of the lake—evinced a wondrous fearlessness and confidence, or else a still becharmed panic which it was impossible not to marvel at. Like household dogs they came snuffling round us, right up to our gunwales, and touching them; till it almost seemed that some spell had suddenly domesticated them. Queequeg patted their foreheads; Starbuck scratched their backs with his lance; but fearful of the consequences, for the time refrained from darting it.

pregnant again

But far beneath this wondrous world upon the surface, another and still stranger world met our eyes as we gazed over the side. For, suspended in those watery vaults, floated the forms of the nursing mothers of the whales, and those that by their enormous girth seemed shortly to become mothers. The lake, as I have hinted, was to a considerable depth exceedingly transparent; and as human infants while suckling will calmly and fixedly gaze away from the breast, as if leading two different lives at the time; and while yet drawing mortal nourishment, be still spiritually feasting upon some unearthly reminiscence;—even so did the young of these whales seem looking up towards us, but not at us, as if we were but a bit of Gulf-weed in their new-born sight. Floating on their sides, the mothers also seemed quietly eyeing us. One of these little infants, that from certain queer tokens seemed hardly a day old, might have measured some fourteen feet in length, and some six feet in girth. He was a little frisky; though as yet his body seemed scarce yet recovered from that irksome position it had so lately occupied in the maternal reticule; where, tail to head, and all ready for the final spring, the unborn whale lies bent like a Tartar's bow. The delicate side-fins, and the palms of his flukes, still freshly retained the plaited crumpled appearance of a baby's ears newly arrived from foreign parts.

"Line! line!" cried Queequeg, looking over the gunwale; "him fast! him fast!—Who line him! Who struck? Two whale; one big, one little!"

"What ails ye, man?" cried Starbuck.

"Look-e here," said Queequeg pointing down.

As when the stricken whale, that from the tub has reeled out hundreds of fathoms of rope; as, after deep sounding, he floats up again, and shows the slackened curling line buoyantly rising and spiralling towards the air; so now, Starbuck saw long coils of the umbilical cord of Madame Leviathan, by which the young cub seemed still tethered to its dam. Not seldom in the rapid vicissitudes of the chase, this natural line, with the maternal end loose, becomes entangled with the hempen one, so that the cub is thereby trapped. Some of the subtlest secrets of the seas

seemed divulged to us in this enchanted pond. We saw young Leviathan amours in the deep.*

And thus, though surrounded by circle upon circle of consternations and affrights, did these inscrutable creatures at the centre freely and fearlessly indulge in all peaceful concernments; yea, serenely revelled in dalliance and delight. But even so, amid the tornadoed Atlantic of my being, do I myself still for ever centrally disport in mute calm; and while ponderous planets of unwaning woe revolve round me, deep down and deep inland there I still bathe me in eternal mildness of joy. ✓

Meanwhile, as we thus lay entranced, the occasional sudden frantic spectacles in the distance evinced the activity of the other boats, still engaged in drugging the whales on the frontier of the host; or possibly carrying on the war within the first circle, where abundance of room and some convenient retreats were afforded them. But the sight of the enraged drugged whales now and then blindly darting to and fro across the circles, was nothing to what at last met our eyes. It is sometimes the custom when fast to a whale more than commonly powerful and alert, to seek to hamstring him, as it were, by sundering or maiming his gigantic tail-tendon. It is done by darting a short-handled cutting-spade, to which is attached a rope for hauling it back again. A whale wounded (as we afterwards learned) in this part, but not effectually, as it seemed, had broken away from the boat, carrying along with him half of the harpoon line; and in the extraordinary agony of the wound, he was now dashing among the revolving circles like the lone mounted desperado

* The sperm whale, as with all other species of the Leviathan, but unlike most other fish, breeds indifferently at all seasons; after a gestation which may probably be set down at nine months, producing but one at a time; though in some few known instances giving birth to an Esau and Jacob:—a contingency provided for in suckling by two teats, curiously situated, one on each side of the anus; but the breasts themselves extend upwards from that. When by chance these precious parts in a nursing whale are cut by the hunter's lance, the mother's pouring milk and blood rivallingly discolor the sea for rods. The milk is very sweet and rich; it has been tasted by man; it might do well with strawberries. When overflowing with mutual esteem, the whales salute *more hominum*.

Arnold, at the battle of Saratoga, carrying dismay wherever he went.

But agonizing as was the wound of this whale, and an appalling spectacle enough, any way; yet the peculiar horror with which he seemed to inspire the rest of the herd, was owing to a cause which at first the intervening distance obscured from us. But at length we perceived that by one of the unimaginable accidents of the fishery, this whale had become entangled in the harpoon-line that he towed; he had also run away with the cutting-spade in him; and while the free end of the rope attached to that weapon, had permanently caught in the coils of the harpoon-line round his tail, the cutting-spade itself had worked loose from his flesh. So that tormented to madness, he was now churning through the water, violently flailing with his flexible tail, and tossing the keen spade about him, wounding and murdering his own comrades.

This terrific object seemed to recall the whole herd from their stationary fright. First, the whales forming the margin of our lake began to crowd a little, and tumble against each other, as if lifted by half spent billows from afar; then the lake itself began faintly to heave and swell; the submarine bridal-chambers and nurseries vanished; in more and more contracting orbits the whales in the more central circles began to swim in thickening clusters. Yes, the long calm was departing. A low advancing hum was soon heard; and then like to the tumultuous masses of block-ice when the great river Hudson breaks up in Spring, the entire host of whales came tumbling upon their inner centre, as if to pile themselves up in one common mountain. Instantly Starbuck and Queequeg changed places; Starbuck taking the stern.

"Oars! Oars!" he intensely whispered, seizing the helm—"gripe your oars, and clutch your souls, now! My God, men, stand by! Shove him off, you Queequeg—the whale there!—prick him!—hit him! Stand up—stand up, and stay so! Spring, men—pull, men; never mind their backs—scrape them!—scrape away!"

The boat was now all but jammed between two vast black bulks, leaving a narrow Dardanelles between their long lengths. But by desperate endeavor we at last shot into a temporary

opening; then giving way rapidly, and at the same time earnestly watching for another outlet. After many similar hair-breadth escapes, we at last swiftly glided into what had just been one of the outer circles, but now crossed by random whales, all violently making for one centre. This lucky salvation was cheaply purchased by the loss of Queequeg's hat, who, while standing in the bows to prick the fugitive whales, had his hat taken clean from his head by the air-eddy made by the sudden tossing of a pair of broad flukes close by.

Riotous and disordered as the universal commotion now was, it soon resolved itself into what seemed a systematic movement; for having clumped together at last in one dense body, they then renewed their onward flight with augmented fleetness. Further pursuit was useless; but the boats still lingered in their wake to pick up what drugged whales might be dropped astern, and likewise to secure one which Flask had killed and waifed. The waif is a pennoned pole, two or three of which are carried by every boat; and which, when additional game is at hand, are inserted upright into the floating body of a dead whale, both to mark its place on the sea, and also as token of prior possession, should the boats of any other ship draw near.

The result of this lowering was somewhat illustrative of that sagacious saying in the Fishery,—the more whales the less fish. Of all the drugged whales only one was captured. The rest contrived to escape for the time, but only to be taken, as will hereafter be seen, by some other craft than the Pequod.

CHAPTER LXXXVIII

SCHOOLS AND SCHOOLMASTERS

THE previous chapter gave account of an immense body or herd of Sperm Whales, and there was also then given the probable cause inducing those vast aggregations.

Now, though such great bodies are at times encountered, yet,

as must have been seen, even at the present day, small detached bands are occasionally observed, embracing from twenty to fifty individuals each. Such bands are known as schools. They generally are of two sorts; those composed almost entirely of females, and those mustering none but young vigorous males, or bulls, as they are familiarly designated.

In cavalier attendance upon the school of females, you invariably see a male of full grown magnitude, but not old; who, upon any alarm, evinces his gallantry by falling in the rear and covering the flight of his ladies. In truth, this gentleman is a luxurious Ottoman, swimming about over the watery world, surroundingly accompanied by all the solaces and endearments of the harem. The contrast between this Ottoman and his concubines is striking; because, while he is always of the largest leviathanic proportions, the ladies, even at full growth, are not more than one third of the bulk of an average-sized male. They are comparatively delicate, indeed; I dare say, not to exceed half a dozen yards round the waist. Nevertheless, it cannot be denied, that upon the whole they are hereditarily entitled to *en bon point*.

It is very curious to watch this harem and its lord in their indolent ramblings. Like fashionables, they are for ever on the move in leisurely search of variety. You meet them on the Line in time for the full flower of the Equatorial feeding season, having just returned, perhaps, from spending the summer in the Northern seas, and so cheating summer of all unpleasant weariness and warmth. By the time they have lounged up and down the promenade of the Equator awhile, they start for the Oriental waters in anticipation of the cool season there, and so evade the other excessive temperature of the year.

When serenely advancing on one of these journeys, if any strange suspicious sights are seen, my lord whale keeps a wary eye on his interesting family. Should any unwarrantably pert young Leviathan coming that way, presume to draw confidentially close to one of the ladies, with what prodigious fury the Bashaw assails him, and chases him away! High times, indeed, if unprincipled young rakes like him are to be permitted to invade the sanctity of domestic bliss; though do what the Bashaw will, he cannot keep the most notorious Lothario out

of his bed; for, alas! all fish bed in common. As ashore, the ladies often cause the most terrible duels among their rival admirers; just so with the whales, who sometimes come to deadly battle, and all for love. They fence with their long lower jaws, sometimes locking them together, and so striving for the supremacy like elks that warringly interweave their antlers. Not a few are captured having the deep scars of these encounters,—furrowed heads, broken teeth, scolloped fins; and in some instances, wrenched and dislocated mouths.

But supposing the invader of domestic bliss to betake himself away at the first rush of the harem's lord, then is it very diverting to watch that lord. Gently he insinuates his vast bulk among them again and revels there awhile, still in tantalizing vicinity to young Lothario, like pious Solomon devoutly worshipping among his thousand concubines. Granting other whales to be in sight, the fishermen will seldom give chase to one of these Grand Turks; for these Grand Turks are too lavish of their strength, and hence their unctuousness is small. As for the sons and the daughters they beget, why, those sons and daughters must take care of themselves; at least, with only the maternal help. For like certain other omnivorous roving lovers that might be named, my Lord Whale has no taste for the nursery, however much for the bower; and so, being a great traveller, he leaves his anonymous babies all over the world; every baby an exotic. In good time, nevertheless, as the ardor of youth declines; as years and dumps increase; as reflection lends her solemn pauses; in short, as a general lassitude overtakes the sated Turk; then a love of ease and virtue supplants the love of maidens; our Ottoman enters upon the impotent, repentant, admonitory stage of life, forswears, disbands the harem, and grown to an exemplary, sulky old soul, goes about all alone among the meridians and parallels saying his prayers, and warning each young Leviathan from his amorous errors.

Now, as the harem of whales is called by the fishermen a school, so is the lord and master of that school technically known as the schoolmaster. It is therefore not in strict character, however admirably satirical, that after going to school himself, he should then go abroad inculcating not what he learned there, but the folly of it. His title, schoolmaster, would very naturally

seem derived from the name bestowed upon the harem itself, but some have surmised that the man who first thus entitled this sort of Ottoman whale, must have read the memoirs of Vidocq, and informed himself what sort of a country-schoolmaster that famous Frenchman was in his younger days, and what was the nature of those occult lessons he inculcated into some of his pupils.

The same secludedness and isolation to which the schoolmaster whale betakes himself in his advancing years, is true of all aged Sperm Whales. Almost universally, a lone whale—as a solitary Leviathan is called—proves an ancient one. Like venerable moss-bearded Daniel Boone, he will have no one near him but Nature herself; and her he takes to wife in the wilderness of waters, and the best of wives she is, though she keeps so many moody secrets.

The schools composing none but young and vigorous males, previously mentioned, offer a strong contrast to the harem schools. For while those female whales are characteristically timid, the young males, or forty-barrel-bulls, as they call them, are by far the most pugnacious of all Leviathans, and proverbially the most dangerous to encounter; excepting those wondrous grey-headed, grizzled whales, sometimes met, and these will fight you like grim fiends exasperated by a penal gout.

The Forty-barrel-bull schools are larger than the harem schools. Like a mob of young collegians, they are full of fight, fun, and wickedness, tumbling round the world at such a reckless, rollicking rate, that no prudent underwriter would insure them any more than he would a riotous lad at Yale or Harvard. They soon relinquish this turbulence though, and when about three fourths grown, break up, and separately go about in quest of settlements, that is, harems.

Another point of difference between the male and female schools is still more characteristic of the sexes. Say you strike a Forty-barrel-bull—poor devill all his comrades quit him. But strike a member of the harem school, and her companions swim around her with every token of concern, sometimes lingering so near her and so long, as themselves to fall a prey.

CHAPTER LXXXIX

FAST-FISH AND LOOSE-FISH

THE allusion to the waifs and waif-poles in the last chapter but one, necessitates some account of the laws and regulations of the whale fishery, of which the waif may be deemed the grand symbol and badge.

It frequently happens that when several ships are cruising in company, a whale may be struck by one vessel, then escape, and be finally killed and captured by another vessel; and herein are indirectly comprised many minor contingencies, all partaking of this one grand feature. For example,—after a weary and perilous chase and capture of a whale, the body may get loose from the ship by reason of a violent storm; and drifting far away to leeward, be retaken by a second whaler, who, in a calm, snugly tows it alongside, without risk of life or line. Thus the most vexatious and violent disputes would often arise between the fishermen, were there not some written or unwritten, universal, undisputed law applicable to all cases.

Perhaps the only formal whaling code authorized by legislative enactment, was that of Holland. It was decreed by the States-General in A. D. 1695. But though no other nation has ever had any written whaling law, yet the American fishermen have been their own legislators and lawyers in this matter. They have provided a system which for terse comprehensiveness surpasses Justinian's Pandects and the By-laws of the Chinese Society for the Suppression of Meddling with other People's Business. Yes; these laws might be engraven on a Queen Anne's farthing, or the barb of a harpoon, and worn round the neck, so small are they.

I. A Fast-Fish belongs to the party fast to it.

II. A Loose-Fish is fair game for anybody who can soonest catch it.

But what plays the mischief with this masterly code is the

admirable brevity of it, which necessitates a vast volume of commentaries to expound it.

First: What is a Fast-Fish? Alive or dead a fish is technically fast, when it is connected with an occupied ship or boat, by any medium at all controllable by the occupant or occupants,—a mast, an oar, a nine-inch cable, a telegraph wire, or a strand of cobweb, it is all the same. Likewise a fish is technically fast when it bears a waif, or any other recognised symbol of possession; so long as the party waiving it plainly evince their ability at any time to take it alongside, as well as their intention so to do.

These are scientific commentaries; but the commentaries of the whalemén themselves sometimes consist in hard words and harder knocks—the Coke-upon-Littleton of the fist. True, among the more upright and honorable whalemén allowances are always made for peculiar cases, where it would be an outrageous moral injustice for one party to claim possession of a whale previously chased or killed by another party. But others are by no means so scrupulous.

Some fifty years ago there was a curious case of whale-trover litigated in England, wherein the plaintiffs set forth that after a hard chase of a whale in the Northern seas; and when indeed they (the plaintiffs) had succeeded in harpooning the fish; they were at last, through peril of their lives, obliged to forsake not only their lines, but their boat itself. Ultimately the defendants (the crew of another ship) came up with the whale, struck, killed, seized, and finally appropriated it before the very eyes of the plaintiffs. And when those defendants were remonstrated with, their captain snapped his fingers in the plaintiffs' teeth, and assured them that by way of doxology to the deed he had done, he would now retain their line, harpoons, and boat, which had remained attached to the whale at the time of the seizure. Wherefore the plaintiffs now sued for the recovery of the value of their whale, line, harpoons, and boat.

Mr. Erskine was counsel for the defendants; Lord Ellenborough was the judge. In the course of the defence, the witty Erskine went on to illustrate his position, by alluding to a recent crim. con. case, wherein a gentleman, after in vain trying to bridle his wife's viciousness, had at last abandoned her upon

the seas of life; but in the course of years, repenting of that step, he instituted an action to recover possession of her. Erskine was on the other side; and he then supported it by saying, that though the gentleman had originally harpooned the lady, and had once had her fast, and only by reason of the great stress of her plunging viciousness, had at last abandoned her; yet abandon her he did, so that she became a loose-fish; and therefore when a subsequent gentleman re-harpooned her, the lady then became that subsequent gentleman's property, along with whatever harpoon might have been found sticking in her.

Now in the present case Erskine contended that the examples of the whale and the lady were reciprocally illustrative of each other.

These pleadings, and the counter pleadings, being duly heard, the very learned judge in set terms decided, to wit,—That as for the boat, he awarded it to the plaintiffs, because they had merely abandoned it to save their lives; but that with regard to the controverted whale, harpoons, and line, they belonged to the defendants; the whale, because it was a Loose-Fish at the time of the final capture; and the harpoons and line because when the fish made off with them, it (the fish) acquired a property in those articles; and hence anybody who afterwards took the fish had a right to them. Now the defendants afterwards took the fish; ergo, the aforesaid articles were theirs.

A common man looking at this decision of the very learned Judge, might possibly object to it. But ploughed up to the primary rock of the matter, the two great principles laid down in the twin whaling laws previously quoted, and applied and elucidated by Lord Ellenborough in the above cited case; these two laws touching Fast-Fish and Loose-Fish, I say, will, on reflection, be found the fundamentals of all human jurisprudence; for notwithstanding its complicated tracery of sculpture, the Temple of the Law, like the Temple of the Philistines, has but two props to stand on.

Is it not a saying in every one's mouth, Possession is half of the law: that is, regardless of how the thing came into possession? But often possession is the whole of the law. What are the sinews and souls of Russian serfs and Republican slaves

but Fast-Fish, whereof possession is the whole of the law? What to the rapacious landlord is the widow's last mite but a Fast-Fish? What is yonder undetected villain's marble mansion with a door-plate for a waif; what is that but a Fast-Fish? What is the ruinous discount which Mordecai, the broker, gets from poor Woebegone, the bankrupt, on a loan to keep Woebegone's family from starvation; what is that ruinous discount but a Fast-Fish? What is the Archbishop of Savesoul's income of £100,000 seized from the scant bread and cheese of hundreds of thousands of broken-backed laborers (all sure of heaven without any of Savesoul's help) what is that globular 100,000 but a Fast-Fish? What are the Duke of Dunder's hereditary towns and hamlets but Fast-Fish? What to that redoubted harpooneer, John Bull, is poor Ireland; but a Fast-Fish? What to that apostolic lancer, Brother Jonathan, is Texas but a Fast-Fish? And concerning all these, is not Possession the whole of the law?

But if the doctrine of Fast-Fish be pretty generally applicable, the kindred doctrine of Loose-Fish is still more widely so. That is internationally and universally applicable.

What was America in 1492 but a Loose-Fish, in which Columbus struck the Spanish standard by way of waiving it for his royal master and mistress? What was Poland to the Czar? What Greece to the Turk? What India to England? What at last will Mexico be to the United States? All Loose-Fish.

What are the Rights of Man and the Liberties of the World but Loose-Fish? What all men's minds and opinions but Loose-Fish? What is the principle of religious belief in them but a Loose-Fish? What to the ostentatious smuggling verbalists are the thoughts of thinkers but Loose-Fish? What is the great globe itself but a Loose-Fish? And what are you, reader, but a Loose-Fish and a Fast-Fish, too?

CHAPTER XC

HEADS OR TAILS

"De balena vero sufficit, si rex habeat caput, et regina caudam."

Bracton, l. 3, c. 3.

LATIN from the books of the Laws of England, which taken along with the context, means, that of all whales captured by anybody on the coast of that land, the King, as Honorary Grand Harpooneer, must have the head, and the Queen be respectfully presented with the tail. A division which, in the whale, is much like halving an apple; there is no intermediate remainder. Now as this law, under a modified form, is to this day in force in England; and as it offers in various respects a strange anomaly touching the general law of Fast and Loose-Fish, it is here treated of in a separate chapter, on the same courteous principle that prompts the English railways to be at the expense of a separate car, specially reserved for the accommodation of royalty. In the first place, in curious proof of the fact that the above-mentioned law is still in force, I proceed to lay before you a circumstance that happened within the last two years.

It seems that some honest mariners of Dover, or Sandwich, or some one of the Cinque Ports, had after a hard chase succeeded in killing and beaching a fine whale which they had originally descried afar off from the shore. Now the Cinque Ports are partially or somehow under the jurisdiction of a sort of policeman or beadle, called a Lord Warden. Holding the office directly from the crown, I believe, all the royal emoluments incident to the Cinque Port territories become by assignment his. By some writers this office is called a sinecure. But not so. Because the Lord Warden is busily employed at times in fobbing his perquisites; which are his chiefly by virtue of that same fobbing of them.

Now when these poor sun-burnt mariners, bare-footed, and

with their trowsers rolled high up on their eely legs, had wearily hauled their fat fish high and dry, promising themselves a good £150 from the precious oil and bone; and in fantasy sipping rare tea with their wives, and good ale with their cronies, upon the strength of their respective shares; up steps a very learned and most Christian and charitable gentleman, with a copy of Blackstone under his arm; and laying it upon the whale's head, he says—"Hands off! this fish, my masters, is a Fast-Fish. I seize it as the Lord Warden's." Upon this the poor mariners in their respectful consternation—so truly English—knowing not what to say, fall to vigorously scratching their heads all round; meanwhile ruefully glancing from the whale to the stranger. But that did in nowise mend the matter, or at all soften the hard heart of the learned gentleman with the copy of Blackstone. At length one of them, after long scratching about for his ideas, made bold to speak.

"Please, sir, who is the Lord Warden?"

"The Duke."

"But the duke had nothing to do with taking this fish?"

"It is his."

"We have been at great trouble, and peril, and some expense, and is all that to go to the Duke's benefit; we getting nothing at all for our pains but our blisters?"

"It is his."

"Is the Duke so very poor as to be forced to this desperate mode of getting a livelihood?"

"It is his."

"I thought to relieve my old bed-ridden mother by part of my share of this whale."

"It is his."

"Won't the Duke be content with a quarter or a half?"

"It is his."

In a word, the whale was seized and sold, and his Grace the Duke of Wellington received the money. Thinking that viewed in some particular lights, the case might by a bare possibility in some small degree be deemed, under the circumstances, a rather hard one, an honest clergyman of the town respectfully addressed a note to his Grace, begging him to take the case of those un-

fortunate mariners into full consideration. To which my Lord Duke in substance replied (both letters were published) that he had already done so, and received the money, and would be obliged to the reverend gentleman if for the future he (the reverend gentleman) would decline meddling with other people's business. Is this the still militant old man, standing at the corners of the three kingdoms, on all hands coercing alms of beggars?

It will readily be seen that in this case the alleged right of the Duke to the whale was a delegated one from the Sovereign. We must needs inquire then on what principle the Sovereign is originally invested with that right. The law itself has already been set forth. But Plowdon gives us the reason for it. Says Plowdon, the whale so caught belongs to the King and Queen, "because of its superior excellence." And by the soundest commentators this has ever been held a cogent argument in such matters.

But why should the King have the head, and the Queen the tail? A reason for that, ye lawyers!

In his treatise on "Queen-Gold," or Queen-pinmoney, an old King's Bench author, one William Prynne, thus discourseth: "Ye tail is ye Queen's, that ye Queen's wardrobe may be supplied with ye whalebone." Now this was written at a time when the black limber bone of the Greenland or Right whale was largely used in ladies' bodices. But this same bone is not in the tail; it is in the head, which is a sad mistake for a sagacious lawyer like Prynne. But is the Queen a mermaid, to be presented with a tail? An allegorical meaning may lurk here.

There are two royal fish so styled by the English law writers—the whale and the sturgeon; both royal property under certain limitations, and nominally supplying the tenth branch of the crown's ordinary revenue. I know not that any other author has hinted of the matter; but by inference it seems to me that the sturgeon must be divided in the same way as the whale, the King receiving the highly dense and elastic head peculiar to that fish, which, symbolically regarded, may possibly be humorously grounded upon some presumed congeniality. And thus there seems a reason in all things, even in law.

CHAPTER XCI

THE PEQUOD MEETS THE ROSE-BUD

"In vain it was to rake for Ambergriese in the paunch of this Leviathan, insufferable fetor denying not inquiry."

Sir T. Browne, V. E.

It was a week or two after the last whaling scene recounted, and when we were slowly sailing over a sleepy, vapory, mid-day sea, that the many noses on the Pequod's deck proved more vigilant discoverers than the three pairs of eyes aloft. A peculiar and not very pleasant smell was smelt in the sea.

"I will bet something now," said Stubb, "that somewhere hereabouts are some of those drugged whales we tickled the other day. I thought they would keel up before long."

Presently, the vapors in advance slid aside; and there in the distance lay a ship, whose furled sails betokened that some sort of whale must be alongside. As we glided nearer, the stranger showed French colors from his peak; and by the eddy cloud of vulture sea-fowl that circled, and hovered, and swooped around him, it was plain that the whale alongside must be what the fishermen call a blasted whale, that is, a whale that has died unmolested on the sea, and so floated an unappropriated corpse. It may well be conceived, what an unsavory odor such a mass must exhale; worse than an Assyrian city in the plague, when the living are incompetent to bury the departed. So intolerable indeed is it regarded by some, that no cupidity could persuade them to moor alongside of it. Yet are there those who will still do it; notwithstanding the fact that the oil obtained from such subjects is of a very inferior quality, and by no means of the nature of attar-of-rose.

Coming still nearer with the expiring breeze, we saw that the Frenchman had a second whale alongside; and this second whale seemed even more of a nosegay than the first. In truth, it turned out to be one of those problematical whales that seem

to dry up and die with a sort of prodigious dyspepsia, or indigestion; leaving their defunct bodies almost entirely bankrupt of anything like oil. Nevertheless, in the proper place we shall see that no knowing fisherman will ever turn up his nose at such a whale as this, however much he may shun blasted whales in general.

The Pequod had now swept so nigh to the stranger, that Stubb vowed he recognized his cutting spade-pole entangled in the lines that were knotted round the tail of one of these whales.

"There's a pretty fellow, now," he banteringly laughed, standing in the ship's bows, "there's a jackal for ye! I well know that these Crappoes of Frenchmen are but poor devils in the fishery; sometimes lowering their boats for breakers, mistaking them for Sperm Whale spouts; yes, and sometimes sailing from their port with their hold full of boxes of tallow candles, and cases of snuffers, foreseeing that all the oil they will get won't be enough to dip the Captain's wick into; aye, we all know these things; but look ye, here's a Crappo that is content with our leavings, the drugged whale there, I mean; aye, and is content too with scraping the dry bones of that other precious fish he has there. Poor devil! I say, pass round a hat, some one, and let's make him a present of a little oil for dear charity's sake. For what oil he'll get from that drugged whale there, wouldn't be fit to burn in a jail; no, not in a condemned cell. And as for the other whale, why, I'll agree to get more oil by chopping up and trying out these three masts of ours, than he'll get from that bundle of bones; though, now that I think of it, it may contain something worth a good deal more than oil; yes, ambergris. I wonder now if our old man has thought of that. It's worth trying. Yes, I'm in for it;" and so saying he started for the quarter-deck.

By this time the faint air had become a complete calm; so that whether or no, the Pequod was now fairly entrapped in the smell, with no hope of escaping except by its breezing up again. Issuing from the cabin, Stubb now called his boat's crew, and pulled off for the stranger. Drawing across her bow, he perceived that in accordance with the fanciful French taste, the upper part of her stem-piece was carved in the likeness of a

huge drooping stalk, was painted green, and for thorns had copper spikes projecting from it here and there; the whole terminating in a symmetrical folded bulb of a bright red color. Upon her head boards, in large gilt letters, he read "*Bouton de Rose*,"—Rose-button, or Rose-bud; and this was the romantic name of this aromatic ship.

Though Stubb did not understand the *Bouton* part of the inscription, yet the word *rose*, and the bulbous figure-head put together, sufficiently explained the whole to him.

"A wooden rose-bud, eh?" he cried with his hand to his nose, "that will do very well; but how like all creation it smells!"

Now in order to hold direct communication with the people on deck, he had to pull round the bows to the starboard side, and thus come close to the blasted whale; and so talk over it.

Arrived then at this spot, with one hand still to his nose, he bawled—"Bouton-de-Rose, ahoy! are there any of you Bouton-de-Roses that speak English?"

"Yes," rejoined a Guernsey-man from the bulwarks, who turned out to be the chief-mate.

"Well, then, my Bouton-de-Rose-bud, have you seen the White Whale?"

"What whale?"

"The *White* Whale—a Sperm Whale—Moby Dick, have ye seen him?"

"Never heard of such a whale. Cachalot Blanchel! White Whale—no."

"Very good, then; good bye now, and I'll call again in a minute."

Then rapidly pulling back towards the Pequod, and seeing Ahab leaning over the quarter-deck rail awaiting his report, he moulded his two hands into a trumpet and shouted—"No, Sir! Nol" Upon which Ahab retired, and Stubb returned to the Frenchman.

He now perceived that the Guernsey-man, who had just got into the chains, and was using a cutting-spade, had slung his nose in a sort of bag.

"What's the matter with your nose, there?" said Stubb. "Broke it?"

"I wish it was broken, or that I didn't have any nose at all!" answered the Guernsey-man, who did not seem to relish the job he was at very much. "But what are you holding *yours* for?"

"Oh, nothing! It's a wax nose; I have to hold it on. Fine day, aint it? Air rather gardenny, I should say; throw us a bunch of posies, will ye, Bouton-de-Rose?"

"What in the devil's name do you want here?" roared the Guernsey-man, flying into a sudden passion.

"Oh! keep cool—cool? yes, that's the word; why don't you pack those whales in ice while you're working at 'em? But joking aside, though; do you know, Rose-bud, that it's all nonsense trying to get any oil out of such whales? As for that dried up one, there, he hasn't a gill in his whole carcase."

"I know that well enough; but, d'ye see, the Captain here won't believe it; this is his first voyage; he was a Cologne manufacturer before. But come aboard, and mayhap he'll believe you, if he won't me; and so I'll get out of this dirty scrape."

"Anything to oblige ye, my sweet and pleasant fellow," rejoined Stubb, and with that he soon mounted to the deck. There a queer scene presented itself. The sailors, in tasselled caps of red worsted, were getting the heavy tackles in readiness for the whales. But they worked rather slow and talked very fast, and seemed in anything but a good humor. All their noses upwardly projected from their faces like so many jib-booms. Now and then pairs of them would drop their work, and run up to the mast-head to get some fresh air. Some thinking they would catch the plague, dipped oakum in coal-tar, and at intervals held it to their nostrils. Others having broken the stems of their pipes almost short off at the bowl, were vigorously puffing tobacco-smoke, so that it constantly filled their olfactories.

Stubb was struck by a shower of outcries and anathemas proceeding from the Captain's round-house abaft; and looking in that direction saw a fiery face thrust from behind the door, which was held ajar from within. This was the tormented surgeon, who, after in vain remonstrating against the proceedings of the day, had betaken himself to the Captain's round-house (*cabinet* he called it) to avoid the pest; but still, could not help yelling out his entreaties and indignations at times.

Marking all this, Stubb argued well for his scheme, and turning to the Guernsey-man had a little chat with him, during which the stranger mate expressed his detestation of his Captain as a conceited ignōramus, who had brought them all into so unsavory and unprofitable a pickle. Sounding him carefully, Stubb further perceived that the Guernsey-man had not the slightest suspicion concerning the ambergris. He therefore held his peace on that head, but otherwise was quite frank and confidential with him, so that the two quickly concocted a little plan for both circumventing and satirizing the Captain, without his at all dreaming of distrusting their sincerity. According to this little plans of theirs, the Guernsey-man, under cover of an interpreter's office, was to tell the Captain what he pleased, but as coming from Stubb; and as for Stubb, he was to utter any nonsense that should come uppermost in him during the interview.

By this time their destined victim appeared from his cabin. He was a small and dark, but rather delicate looking man for a sea-captain, with large whiskers and moustache, however; and wore a red cotton velvet vest with watch-seals at his side. To this gentleman, Stubb was now politely introduced by the Guernsey-man, who at once ostentatiously put on the aspect of interpreting between them.

"What shall I say to him first?" said he.

"Why," said Stubb, eyeing the velvet vest and the watch and seals, "you may as well begin by telling him that he looks a sort of babyish to me, though I don't pretend to be a judge."

"He says, Monsieur," said the Guernsey-man, in French, turning to his captain, "that only yesterday his ship spoke a vessel, whose captain and chief-mate, with six sailors, had all died of a fever caught from a blasted whale they had brought alongside."

Upon this the captain started, and eagerly desired to know more.

"What now?" said the Guernsey-man to Stubb.

"Why, since he takes it so easy, tell him that now I have eyed him carefully, I'm quite certain that he's no more fit to command a whale-ship than a St. Jago monkey. In fact, tell him from me he's a baboon."

"He vows and declares, Monsieur, that the other whale, the dried one, is far more deadly than the blasted one; in fine, Monsieur, he conjures us, as we value our lives, to cut loose from these fish."

Instantly the captain ran forward, and in a loud voice commanded his crew to desist from hoisting the cutting-tackles, and at once cast loose the cables and chains confining the whales to the ship.

"What now?" said the Guernsey-man, when the captain had returned to them.

"Why, let me see; yes, you may as well tell him now that—that—in fact, tell him I've diddled him, and (aside to himself) perhaps somebody else."

"He says, Monsieur, that he's very happy to have been of any service to us."

Hearing this, the captain vowed that they were the grateful parties (meaning himself and mate) and concluded by inviting Stubb down into his cabin to drink a bottle of Bordeaux.

"He wants you to take a glass of wine with him," said the interpreter.

"Thank him heartily; but tell him it's against my principles to drink with the man I've diddled. In fact, tell him I must go."

"He says, Monsieur, that his principles won't admit of his drinking; but that if Monsieur wants to live another day to drink, then Monsieur had best drop all four boats, and pull the ship away from these whales, for it's so calm they won't drift."

By this time Stubb was over the side, and getting into his boat, hailed the Guernsey-man to this effect,—that having a long tow-line in his boat, he would do what he could to help them, by pulling out the lighter whale of the two from the ship's side. While the Frenchman's boats, then, were engaged in towing the ship one way, Stubb benevolently towed away at his whale the other way, ostentatiously slacking out a most unusually long tow-line.

Presently a breeze sprang up; Stubb feigned to cast off from the whale; hoisting his boats, the Frenchman soon increased his distance, while the Pequod slid in between him and Stubb's whale. Whereupon Stubb quickly pulled to the floating body,

and hailing the Pequod to give notice of his intentions, at once proceeded to reap the fruit of his unrighteous cunning. Seizing his sharp boat-spade, he commenced an excavation in the body, a little behind the side fin. You would almost have thought he was digging a cellar there in the sea; and when at length his spade struck against the gaunt ribs, it was like turning up old Roman tiles and pottery buried in fat English loam. His boat's crew were all in high excitement, eagerly helping their chief, and looking as anxious as gold-hunters.

And all the time numberless fowls were diving, and ducking, and screaming, and yelling, and fighting around them. Stubb was beginning to look disappointed, especially as the horrible nosegay increased, when suddenly from out the very heart of this plague, there stole a faint stream of perfume, which flowed through the tide of bad smells without being absorbed by it, as one river will flow into and then along with another, without at all blending with it for a time.

"I have it, I have it," cried Stubb, with delight, striking something in the subterranean regions, "a purse! a purse!"

Dropping his spade, he thrust both hands in, and drew out handfuls of something that looked like ripe Windsor soap, or rich mottled old cheese; very unctuous and savory withal. You might easily dent it with your thumb; it is of a hue between yellow and ash color. And this, good friends, is ambergris, worth a gold guinea an ounce to any druggist. Some six handfuls were obtained; but more was unavoidably lost in the sea, and still more, perhaps, might have been secured were it not for impatient Ahab's loud command to Stubb to desist, and come on board, else the ship would bid them good bye.

CHAPTER XCII

AMBERGRIS

Now this ambergris is a very curious substance, and so important as an article of commerce, that in 1791 a certain Nan-

tucket-born Captain Coffin was examined at the bar of the English House of Commons on that subject. For at that time, and indeed until a comparatively late day, the precise origin of ambergris remained, like amber itself, a problem to the learned. Though the word ambergris is but the French compound for grey amber, yet the two substances are quite distinct. For amber, though at times found on the sea-coast, is also dug up in some far inland soils, whereas ambergris is never found except upon the sea. Besides, amber is a hard, transparent, brittle, odorless substance, used for mouth-pieces to pipes, for beads and ornaments; but ambergris is soft, waxy, and so highly fragrant and spicy, that it is largely used in perfumery, in pastiles, precious candles, hair-powders, and pomatum. The Turks use it in cooking, and also carry it to Mecca, for the same purpose that frankincense is carried to St. Peter's in Rome. Some wine merchants drop a few grains into claret, to flavor it.

Who would think, then, that such fine ladies and gentlemen should regale themselves with an essence found in the inglorious bowels of a sick whale! Yet so it is. By some, ambergris is supposed to be the cause, and by others the effect, of the dyspepsia in the whale. How to cure such a dyspepsia it were hard to say, unless by administering three or four boat loads of Brandreth's pills, and then running out of harm's way, as laborers do in blasting rocks.

I have forgotten to say that there were found in this ambergris, certain hard, round, bony plates, which at first Stubb thought might be sailors' trousers buttons; but it afterwards turned out that they were nothing more than pieces of small squid bones embalmed in that manner.

Now that the incorruption of this most fragrant ambergris should be found in the heart of such decay; is this nothing? Bethink thee of that saying of St. Paul in Corinthians, about corruption and incorruption; how that we are sown in dishonor, but raised in glory. And likewise call to mind that saying of Paracelsus about what it is that maketh the best musk. Also forget not the strange fact that of all things of ill-savor, Cologne-water, in its rudimental manufacturing stages, is the worst.

I should like to conclude the chapter with the above appeal, but cannot, owing to my anxiety to repel a charge often made

against whalemén, and which, in the estimation of some already biased minds, might be considered as indirectly substantiated by what has been said of the Frenchman's two whales. Elsewhere in this volume the slanderous aspersion has been disproved, that the vocation of whaling is throughout a slatternly, untidy business. But there is another thing to rebut. They hint that all whales always smell bad. Now how did this odious stigma originate?

I opine, that it is plainly traceable to the first arrival of the Greenland whaling ships in London, more than two centuries ago. Because those whalemén did not then, and do not now, try out their oil at sea as the Southern ships have always done; but cutting up the fresh blubber in small bits, thrust it through the bung holes of large casks, and carry it home in that manner; the shortness of the season in those Icy Seas, and the sudden and violent storms to which they are exposed, forbidding any other course. The consequence is, that upon breaking into the hold, and unloading one of these whale cemeteries, in the Greenland dock, a savor is given forth somewhat similar to that arising from excavating an old city grave-yard, for the foundations of a Lying-in Hospital.

I partly surmise also, that this wicked charge against whalers may be likewise imputed to the existence on the coast of Greenland, in former times, of a Dutch village called Schmerenburgh or Smeerenberg, which latter name is the one used by the learned Fogo Von Slack, in his great work on Smells, a textbook on that subject. As its name imports (smeer, fat; berg, to put up), this village was founded in order to afford a place for the blubber of the Dutch whale fleet to be tried out, without being taken home to Holland for that purpose. It was a collection of furnaces, fat-kettles, and oil sheds; and when the works were in full operation certainly gave forth no very pleasant savor. But all this is quite different with a South Sea Sperm Whaler; which in a voyage of four years perhaps, after completely filling her hold with oil, does not, perhaps, consume fifty days in the business of boiling out; and in the state that it is casked, the oil is nearly scentless. The truth is, that living or dead, if but decently treated, whales as a species are by no

means creatures of ill odor; nor can whalemén be recognised, as the people of the middle ages affected to detect a Jew in the company, by the nose. Nor indeed can the whale possibly be otherwise than fragrant, when, as a general thing, he enjoys such high health; taking abundance of exercise; always out of doors; though, it is true, seldom in the open air. I say, that the motion of a Sperm Whale's flukes above water dispenses a perfume, as when a musk-scented lady rustles her dress in a warm parlor. What then shall I liken the Sperm Whale to for fragrance, considering his magnitude? Must it not be to that famous elephant, with jewelled tusks, and redolent with myrrh, which was led out of an Indian town to do honor to Alexander the Great?

CHAPTER XCIII

THE CASTAWAY

It was but some few days after encountering the Frenchman, that a most significant event befell the most insignificant of the Pequod's crew; an event most lamentable; and which ended in providing the sometimes madly merry and predestinated craft with a living and ever accompanying prophecy of whatever shattered sequel might prove her own.

Now, in the whale ship, it is not every one that goes in the boats. Some few hands are reserved called ship-keepers, whose province it is to work the vessel while the boats are pursuing the whale. As a general thing, these ship-keepers are as hardy fellows as the men comprising the boats' crews. But if there happen to be an unduly slender, clumsy, or timorous wight in the ship, that wight is certain to be made a ship-keeper. It was so in the Pequod with the little negro Pippin by nick-name, Pip by abbreviation. Poor Pip! ye have heard of him before; ye must remember his tambourine on that dramatic midnight, so gloomy-jolly.

getty again

In outer aspect, Pip and Dough-Boy made a match, like a black pony and a white one, of equal developments, though of dissimilar color, driven in one eccentric span. But while hapless Dough-Boy was by nature dull and torpid in his intellects, Pip, though over tender-hearted, was at bottom very bright, with that pleasant, genial, jolly brightness peculiar to his tribe; a tribe, which ever enjoy all holidays and festivities with finer, freer relish than any other race. For blacks, the year's calendar should show naught but three hundred and sixty-five Fourth of Julys and New Year's Days. Nor smile so, while I write that this little black was brilliant, for even blackness has its brilliancy; behold yon lustrous ebony, panelled in king's cabinets. But Pip loved life, and all life's peaceable securities; so that the panic-striking business in which he had somehow unaccountably become entrapped, had most sadly blurred his brightness; though, as ere long will be seen, what was thus temporarily subdued in him, in the end was destined to be luridly illumined by strange wild fires, that fictitiously showed him off to ten times the natural lustre with which in his native Tolland County in Connecticut, he had once enlivened many a fiddler's frolic on the green; and at melodious even-tide, with his gay ha-ha! had turned the round horizon into one star-belled tambourine. So, though in the clear air of day, suspended against a blue-veined neck, the pure-watered diamond drop will healthful glow; yet, when the cunning jeweller would show you the diamond in its most impressive lustre, he lays it against a gloomy ground, and then lights it up, not by the sun, but by some unnatural gases. Then come out those fiery effulgences, infernally superb; then the evil-blazing diamond, once the divinest symbol of the crystal skies, looks like some crown-jewel stolen from the King of Hell. But let us to the story.

It came to pass, that in the ambergris affair Stubb's after-oarsman chanced so to sprain his hand, as for a time to become quite maimed; and, temporarily, Pip was put into his place.

The first time Stubb lowered with him, Pip evinced much nervousness; but happily, for that time, escaped close contact with the whale; and therefore came off not altogether discredibly; though Stubb observing him, took care, afterwards,

to exhort him to cherish his courageousness to the utmost, for he might often find it needful.

Now upon the second lowering, the boat paddled upon the whale; and as the fish received the darted iron, it gave its customary rap, which happened, in this instance, to be right under poor Pip's seat. The involuntary consternation of the moment caused him to leap, paddle in hand, out of the boat; and in such a way, that part of the slack whale line coming against his chest, he breasted it overboard with him, so as to become entangled in it, when at last plumping into the water. That instant the stricken whale started on a fierce run, the line swiftly straightened; and presto! poor Pip came all foaming up to the chocks of the boat, remorselessly dragged there by the line, which had taken several turns around his chest and neck.

Tashtego stood in the bows. He was full of the fire of the hunt. He hated Pip for a poltroon. Snatching the boat-knife from its sheath, he suspended its sharp edge over the line, and turning towards Stubb, exclaimed interrogatively, "Cut?" Meantime Pip's blue, choked face plainly looked, Do, for God's sake! All passed in a flash. In less than half a minute, this entire thing happened.

"Damn him, cut!" roared Stubb; and so the whale was lost and Pip was saved.

So soon as he recovered himself, the poor little negro was assailed by yells and execrations from the crew. Tranquilly permitting these irregular cursings to evaporate, Stubb then in a plain, business-like, but still half humorous manner, cursed Pip officially; and that done, unofficially gave him much wholesome advice. The substance was, Never jump from a boat, Pip, except—but all the rest was indefinite, as the soundest advice ever is. Now, in general, *Stick to the boat*, is your true motto in whaling; but cases will sometimes happen when *Leap from the boat*, is still better. Moreover, as if perceiving at last that if he should give undiluted conscientious advice to Pip, he would be leaving him too wide a margin to jump in for the future; Stubb suddenly dropped all advice, and concluded with a peremptory command, "Stick to the boat, Pip, or by the Lord, I wont pick you up if you jump; mind that. We can't afford

to lose whales by the likes of you; a whale would sell for thirty times what you would, Pip, in Alabama. Bear that in mind, and don't jump any more." Hereby perhaps Stubb indirectly hinted, that though man loved his fellow, yet man is a money-making animal, which propensity too often interferes with his benevolence.

But we are all in the hands of the Gods; and Pip jumped again. It was under very similar circumstances to the first performance; but this time he did not breast out the line; and hence, when the whale started to run, Pip was left behind on the sea, like a hurried traveller's trunk. Alas! Stubb was but too true to his word. It was a beautiful, bounteous, blue day; the spangled sea calm and cool, and flatly stretching away, all round, to the horizon, like gold-beater's skin hammered out to the extremest. Bobbing up and down in that sea, Pip's ebon head showed like a head of cloves. No boat-knife was lifted when he fell so rapidly astern. Stubb's inexorable back was turned upon him; and the whale was winged. In three minutes, a whole mile of shoreless ocean was between Pip and Stubb. Out from the centre of the sea, poor Pip turned his crisp, curling, black head to the sun, another lonely castaway, though the loftiest and the brightest.

Now, in calm weather, to swim in the open ocean is as easy to the practised swimmer as to ride in a spring-carriage ashore. But the awful lonesomeness is intolerable. The intense concentration of self in the middle of such a heartless immensity, my God! who can tell it? Mark, how when sailors in a dead calm bathe in the open sea—mark how closely they hug their ship and only coast along her sides.

But had Stubb really abandoned the poor little negro to his fate? No; he did not mean to, at least. Because there were two boats in his wake, and he supposed, no doubt, that they would of course come up to Pip very quickly, and pick him up; though, indeed, such considerations towards oarsmen jeopardized through their own timidity, is not always manifested by the hunters in all similar instances; and such instances not unfrequently occur; almost invariably in the fishery, a coward, so called, is marked with the same ruthless detestation peculiar to military navies and armies.

But it so happened, that those boats, without seeing Pip, suddenly spying whales close to them on one side, turned, and gave chase; and Stubb's boat was now so far away, and he and all his crew so intent upon his fish, that Pip's ringed horizon began to expand around him miserably. By the merest chance the ship itself at last rescued him; but from that hour the little negro went about the deck an idiot; such, at least, they said he was. The sea had jeeringly kept his finite body up, but drowned the infinite of his soul. Not drowned entirely, though. Rather carried down alive to wondrous depths, where strange shapes of the unwarped primal world glided to and fro before his passive eyes; and the miser-merman, Wisdom, revealed his hoarded heaps; and among the joyous, heartless, ever-juvenile eternities, Pip saw the multitudinous, God-omnipresent, coral insects, that out of the firmament of waters heaved the colossal orbs. He saw God's foot upon the treadle of the loom, and spoke it; and therefore his shipmates called him mad. So man's insanity is heaven's sense; and wandering from all mortal reason, man comes at last to that celestial thought, which, to reason, is absurd and frantic; and weal or woe, feels then uncompromised, indifferent as his God. ✓

For the rest, blame not Stubb too hardly. The thing is common in that fishery; and in the sequel of the narrative, it will then be seen what like abandonment befell myself.

CHAPTER XCIV

A SQUEEZE OF THE HAND

THAT whale of Stubb's so dearly purchased, was duly brought to the Pequod's side, where all those cutting and hoisting operations previously detailed, were regularly gone through, even to the baling of the Heidelburgh Tun, or Case.

While some were occupied with this latter duty, others were employed in dragging away the larger tubs, so soon as filled with the sperm; and when the proper time arrived, this same

sperm was carefully manipulated ere going to the try-works, of which anon.

It had cooled and crystallized to such a degree, that when, with several others, I sat down before a large Constantine's bath of it, I found it strangely concreted into lumps, here and there rolling about in the liquid part. It was our business to squeeze these lumps back into fluid. A sweet and unctuous duty! No wonder that in old times this sperm was such a favorite cosmetic. Such a clearer! such a sweetener! such a softener! such a delicious mollifier! After having my hands in it for only a few minutes, my fingers felt like eels, and began, as it were, to serpentine and spiralize.

As I sat there at my ease, cross-legged on the deck; after the bitter exertion at the windlass; under a blue tranquil sky; the ship under indolent sail, and gliding so serenely along; as I bathed my hands among those soft, gentle globules of infiltrated tissues, woven almost within the hour; as they richly broke to my fingers, and discharged all their opulence, like fully ripe grapes their wine; as I snuffed up that uncontaminated aroma,—literally and truly, like the smell of spring violets; I declare to you, that for the time I lived as in a musky meadow; I forgot all about our horrible oath; in that inexpressible sperm, I washed my hands and my heart of it; I almost began to credit the old Paracelsan superstition that sperm is of rare virtue in allaying the heat of anger: while bathing in that bath, I felt divinely free from all ill-will, or petulance, or malice, of any sort whatsoever.

Squeeze! squeeze! squeeze! all the morning long; I squeezed that sperm till I myself almost melted into it; I squeezed that sperm till a strange sort of insanity came over me; and I found myself unwittingly squeezing my co-laborers' hands in it, mistaking their hands for the gentle globules. Such an abounding, affectionate, friendly, loving feeling did this avocation beget; that at last I was continually squeezing their hands, and looking up into their eyes sentimentally; as much as to say,—Oh! my dear fellow beings, why should we longer cherish any social acerbities, or know the slightest ill-humor or envy! Come; let us squeeze hands all round; nay, let us all squeeze ourselves

into each other; let us squeeze ourselves universally into the very milk and sperm of kindness.

Would that I could keep squeezing that sperm for ever! For now, since by many prolonged, repeated experiences, I have perceived that in all cases man must eventually lower, or at least shift, his conceit of attainable felicity; not placing it anywhere in the intellect or the fancy; but in the wife, the heart, the bed, the table, the saddle, the fire-side, the country; now that I have perceived all this, I am ready to squeeze case eternally. In thoughts of the visions of the night, I saw long rows of angels in paradise, each with his hands in a jar of spermaceti.

• • • • •

Now, while discoursing of sperm, it behooves to speak of other things akin to it, in the business of preparing the sperm whale for the try-works.

First comes white-horse, so called, which is obtained from the tapering part of the fish, and also from the thicker portions of his flukes. It is tough with congealed tendons—a wad of muscle—but still contains some oil. After being severed from the whale, the white-horse is first cut into portable oblongs ere going to the mincer. They look much like blocks of Berkshire marble.

Plum-pudding is the term bestowed upon certain fragmentary parts of the whale's flesh, here and there adhering to the blanket of blubber, and often participating to a considerable degree in its unctuousness. It is a most refreshing, convivial, beautiful object to behold. As its name imports, it is of an exceedingly rich, mottled tint, with a bestreaked snowy and golden ground, dotted with spots of the deepest crimson and purple. It is plums of rubies, in pictures of citron. Spite of reason, it is hard to keep yourself from eating it. I confess, that once I stole behind the foremast to try it. It tasted something as I should conceive a royal cutlet from the thigh of Louis le Gros might have tasted, supposing him to have been killed the first day after the venison season, and that particular venison season contemporary with an unusually fine vintage of the vineyards of Champagne.

There is another substance, and a very singular one, which turns up in the course of this business, but which I feel it to be very puzzling adequately to describe. It is called slobgollion; an appellation original with the whalemén, and even so is the nature of the substance. It is an ineffably oozy, stringy affair, most frequently found in the tubs of sperm, after a prolonged squeezing, and subsequent decanting. I hold it to be the wondrously thin, ruptured membranes of the case, coalescing.

Gurry, so called, is a term properly belonging to right whalemen, but sometimes incidentally used by the sperm fishermen. It designates the dark, glutinous substance which is scraped off the back of the Greenland or right whale, and much of which covers the decks of those inferior souls who hunt that ignoble Leviathan.

— Nippers. Strictly this word is not indigenous to the whale's vocabulary. But as applied by whalemén, it becomes so. A whaleman's nipper is a short firm strip of tendinous stuff cut from the tapering part of Leviathan's tail: it averages an inch in thickness, and for the rest, is about the size of the iron part of a hoe. Edgewise moved along the oily deck, it operates like a leathern squilgee; and by nameless blandishments, as of magic, allures along with it all impurities.

But to learn all about these recondite matters, your best way is at once to descend into the blubber-room, and have a long talk with its inmates. This place has previously been mentioned as the receptacle for the blanket-pieces, when stript and hoisted from the whale. When the proper time arrives for cutting up its contents, this apartment is a scene of terror to all tyros, especially by night. On one side, lit by a dull lantern, a space has been left clear for the workmen. They generally go in pairs, — a pike-and-gaff-man and a spade-man. The whaling-pike is similar to a frigate's boarding-weapon of the same name. The gaff is something like a boat-hook. With his gaff, the gaffman hooks on to a sheet of blubber, and strives to hold it from slipping, as the ship pitches and lurches about. Meanwhile, the spade-man stands on the sheet itself, perpendicularly chopping it into the portable horse-pieces. This spade is sharp as hone can make it; the spademan's feet are shoeless; the thing

he stands on will sometimes irresistibly slide away from him, like a sledge. If he cuts off one of his own toes, or one of his assistants', would you be very much astonished? Toes are scarce among veteran blubber-room men.

CHAPTER XCV

THE CASSOCK

HAD you stepped on board the Pequod at a certain juncture of this post-mortemizing of the whale; and had you strolled forward nigh the windlass, pretty sure am I that you would have scanned with no small curiosity a very strange, enigmatical object, which you would have seen there, lying along length-wise in the lee scuppers. Not the wondrous cistern in the whale's huge head; not the prodigy of his unhinged lower jaw; not the miracle of his symmetrical tail; none of these would so surprise you, as half a glimpse of that unaccountable cone,—longer than a Kentuckian is tall, nigh a foot in diameter at the base, and jet-black as Yojo, the ebony idol of Queequeg. And an idol, indeed, it is; or, rather, in old times, its likeness was. Such an idol as that found in the secret groves of Queen Maachah in Judea; and for worshipping which, king Asa, her son, did depose her, and destroyed the idol, and burnt it for an abomination at the brook Kedron, as darkly set forth in the 15th chapter of the first book of Kings.

Look at the sailor, called the mincer, who now comes along, and assisted by two allies, heavily backs the grandissimus, as the mariners call it, and with bowed shoulders, staggers off with it as if he were a grenadier carrying a dead comrade from the field. Extending it upon the forecastle deck, he now proceeds cylindrically to remove its dark pelt, as an African hunter the pelt of a boa. This done he turns the pelt inside out, like a pantaloon leg; gives it a good stretching, so as almost to double its diameter; and at last hangs it, well spread, in the

rigging, to dry. Ere long, it is taken down; when removing some three feet of it, towards the pointed extremity, and then cutting two slits for arm-holes at the other end, he lengthwise slips himself bodily into it. The mincer now stands before you invested in the full canonicals of his calling. Immemorial to all his order, this investiture alone will adequately protect him, while employed in the peculiar functions of his office.

That office consists in mincing the horse-pieces of blubber for the pots; an operation which is conducted at a curious wooden horse, planted endwise against the bulwarks, and with a capacious tube beneath it, into which the minced pieces drop, fast as the sheets from a rapt orator's desk. Arrayed in decent black; occupying a conspicuous pulpit; intent on bible leaves; what a candidate for an archbishoprick, what a lad for a Pope were this mincer!*

CHAPTER XCVI

THE TRY-WORKS

BESIDES her hoisted boats, an American whaler is outwardly distinguished by her try-works. She presents the curious anomaly of the most solid masonry joining with oak and hemp in constituting the completed ship. It is as if from the open field a brick-kiln were transported to her planks.

The try-works are planted between the foremast and mainmast, the most roomy part of the deck. The timbers beneath are of a peculiar strength, fitted to sustain the weight of an almost solid mass of brick and mortar, some ten feet by eight square, and five in height. The foundation does not penetrate the deck, but the masonry is firmly secured to the surface by

* Bible leaves! Bible leaves! This is the invariable cry from the mates to the mincer. It enjoins him to be careful, and cut his work into as thin slices as possible, inasmuch as by so doing the business of boiling out the oil is much accelerated, and its quantity considerably increased, besides perhaps improving it in quality.

ponderous knees of iron bracing it on all sides, and screwing it down to the timbers. On the flanks it is cased with wood, and at top completely covered by a large, sloping, battened hatchway. Removing this hatch we expose the great try-pots, two in number, and each of several barrels' capacity. When not in use, they are kept remarkably clean. Sometimes they are polished with soapstone and sand, till they shine within like silver punch-bowls. During the night-watches some cynical old sailors will crawl into them and coil themselves away there for a nap. While employed in polishing them—one man in each pot, side by side—many confidential communications are carried on, over the iron lips. It is a place also for profound mathematical meditation. It was in the left hand try-pot of the Pequod, with the soapstone diligently circling round me, that I was first indirectly struck by the remarkable fact, that in geometry all bodies gliding along the cycloid, my soapstone for example, will descend from any point in precisely the same time.

Removing the fire-board from the front of the try-works, the bare masonry of that side is exposed, penetrated by the two iron mouths of the furnaces, directly underneath the pots. These mouths are fitted with heavy doors of iron. The intense heat of the fire is prevented from communicating itself to the deck, by means of a shallow reservoir extending under the entire inclosed surface of the works. By a tunnel inserted at the rear, this reservoir is kept replenished with water as fast as it evaporates. There are no external chimneys; they open direct from the rear wall. And here let us go back for a moment.

It was about nine o'clock at night that the Pequod's try-works were first started on this present voyage. It belonged to Stubb to oversee the business.

"All ready there? Off hatch, then, and start her. You cook, fire the works." This was an easy thing, for the carpenter had been thrusting his shavings into the furnace throughout the passage. Here be it said that in a whaling voyage the first fire in the try-works has to be fed for a time with wood. After that no wood is used, except as a means of quick ignition to the staple fuel. In a word, after being tried out, the crisp, shrivelled

blubber, now called scraps or fritters, still contains considerable of its unctuous properties. These fritters feed the flames. Like a plethoric burning martyr, or a self-consuming misanthrope, once ignited, the whale supplies his own fuel and burns by his own body. Would that he consumed his own smoke! for his smoke is horrible to inhale, and inhale it you must, and not only that, but you must live in it for the time. It has an unspeakable, wild, Hindoo odor about it, such as may lurk in the vicinity of funereal pyres. It smells like the left wing of the day of judgment; it is an argument for the pit.

By midnight the works were in full operation. We were clear from the carcase; sail had been made; the wind was freshening; the wild ocean darkness was intense. But that darkness was licked up by the fierce flames, which at intervals forked forth from the sooty flues, and illuminated every lofty rope in the rigging, as with the famed Greek fire. The burning ship drove on, as if remorselessly commissioned to some vengeful deed. So the pitch and sulphur-freighted brigs of the bold Hydriote, Canaris, issuing from their midnight harbors, with broad sheets of flame for sails, bore down upon the Turkish frigates, and folded them in conflagrations.

The hatch, removed from the top of the works, now afforded a wide hearth in front of them. Standing on this were the Tartarean shapes of the pagan harpooneers, always the whale-ship's stokers. With huge pronged poles they pitched hissing masses of blubber into the scalding pots, or stirred up the fires beneath, till the snaky flames darted, curling, out of the doors to catch them by the feet. The smoke rolled away in sullen heaps. To every pitch of the ship there was a pitch of the boiling oil, which seemed all eagerness to leap into their faces. Opposite the mouth of the works, on the further side of the wide wooden hearth, was the windlass. This served for a sea-sofa. Here lounged the watch, when not otherwise employed, looking into the red heat of the fire, till their eyes felt scorched in their heads. Their tawny features, now all begrimed with smoke and sweat, their matted beards, and the contrasting barbaric brilliancy of their teeth, all these were strangely revealed in the capricious emblazonings of the works. As they

narrated to each other their unholy adventures, their tales of terror told in words of mirth; as their uncivilized laughter forked upwards out of them, like the flames from the furnace; as to and fro, in their front, the harpooneers wildly gesticulated with their huge pronged forks and dippers; as the wind howled on, and the sea leaped, and the ship groaned and dived, and yet steadfastly shot her red hell further and further into the blackness of the sea and the night, and scornfully champed the white bone in her mouth, and viciously spat round her on all sides; then the rushing Pequod, freighted with savages, and laden with fire, and burning a corpse, and plunging into that blackness of darkness, seemed the material counterpart of her monomaniac commander's soul. ✓

So seemed it to me, as I stood at her helm, and for long hours silently guided the way of this fire-ship on the sea. Wrapped, for that interval, in darkness myself, I but the better saw the redness, the madness, the ghastliness of others. The continual sight of the fiend shapes before me, capering half in smoke and half in fire, these at last begat kindred visions in my soul, so soon as I began to yield to that unaccountable drowsiness which ever would come over me at a midnight helm.

But that night, in particular, a strange (and ever since inexplicable) thing occurred to me. Starting from a brief standing sleep, I was horribly conscious of something fatally wrong. The jaw-bone tiller smote my side, which leaned against it; in my ears was low hum of sails, just beginning to shake in the wind; I thought my eyes were open; I was half conscious of putting my fingers to the lids and mechanically stretching them still further apart. But, spite of all this, I could see no compass before me to steer by; though it seemed but a minute since I had been watching the card, by the steady binnacle lamp illuminating it. Nothing seemed before me but a jet gloom, now and then made ghastly by flashes of redness. Uppermost was the impression, that whatever swift, rushing thing I stood on was not so much bound to any haven ahead as rushing from all havens astern. A stark, bewildered feeling, as of death, came over me. Convulsively my hands grasped the tiller, but with the crazy conceit that the tiller was, some-

how, in some enchanted way, inverted. My God! what is the matter with me? thought I. Lol in my brief sleep I had turned myself about, and was fronting the ship's stern, with my back to her prow and the compass. In an instant I faced back, just in time to prevent the vessel from flying up into the wind, and very probably capsizing her. How glad and how grateful the relief from this unnatural hallucination of the night, and the fatal contingency of being brought by the lee!

Look not too long in the face of the fire, O man! Never dream with thy hand on the helm! Turn not thy back to the compass; accept the first hint of the hitching tiller; believe not the artificial fire, when its redness makes all things look ghastly. To-morrow, in the natural sun, the skies will be bright; those who glared like devils in the forking flames, the morn will show in far other, at least gentler, relief; the glorious, golden, glad sun, the only true lamp—all others but liars!

Nevertheless the sun hides not Virginia's Dismal Swamp, nor Rome's accursed Campagna, nor wide Sahara, nor all the millions of miles of deserts and of griefs beneath the moon. The sun hides not the ocean, which is the dark side of this earth, and which is two thirds of this earth. So, therefore, that mortal man who hath more of joy than sorrow in him, that mortal man cannot be true—not true, or undeveloped. With books the same. The truest of all men was the Man of Sorrows, and the truest of all books is Solomon's, and Ecclesiastes is the fine hammered steel of woe. "All is vanity." ALL. This wilful world hath not got hold of unchristian Solomon's wisdom yet. But he who dodges hospitals and jails, and walks fast crossing grave-yards, and would rather talk of operas than hell; calls Cowper, Young, Pascal, Rousseau, poor devils all of sick men; and throughout a care-free lifetime swears by Rabelais as passing wise, and therefore jolly;—not that man is fitted to sit down on tomb-stones, and break the green damp mould with unfathomably wondrous Solomon.

But even Solomon, he says, "the man that wandereth out of the way of understanding shall remain" (*i. e.* even while living) √ "in the congregation of the dead." Give not thyself up, then, to fire, lest it invert thee, deaden thee; as for the time it did me.

There is a wisdom that is woe; but there is a woe that is madness. And there is a Catskill eagle in some souls that can alike dive down into the blackest gorges, and soar out of them again and become invisible in the sunny spaces. And even if he for ever flies within the gorge, that gorge is in the mountains; so that even in his lowest swoop the mountain eagle is still higher than other birds upon the plain, even though they soar.

CHAPTER XCVII

THE LAMP

HAD you descended from the Pequod's try-works to the Pequod's fore-castle, where the off duty watch were sleeping, for one single moment you would have almost thought you were standing in some illuminated shrine of canonized kings and counsellors. There they lay in their triangular oaken vaults, each mariner a chiselled muteness; a score of lamps flashing upon his hooded eyes.

In merchantmen, oil for the sailor is more scarce than the milk of queens. To dress in the dark, and eat in the dark, and stumble in darkness to his pallet, this is his usual lot. But the whaleman, as he seeks the food of light, so he lives in light. He makes his berth an Aladdin's lamp, and lays him down in it; so that in the pitchiest night the ship's black hull still houses an illumination.

See with what entire freedom the whaleman takes his handful of lamps—often but old bottles and vials, though—to the copper cooler at the try-works, and replenishes them there, as mugs of ale at a vat. He burns, too, the purest of oil, in its unmanufactured, and, therefore, unvitiated state; a fluid unknown to solar, lunar, or astral contrivances ashore. It is sweet as early grass butter in April. He goes and hunts for his oil, so as to be sure of its freshness and genuineness, even as the traveller on the prairie hunts up his own supper of game.

CHAPTER XCVIII

STOWING DOWN AND CLEARING UP

ALREADY has it been related how the great leviathan is afar off descried from the mast-head; how he is chased over the watery moors, and slaughtered in the valleys of the deep; how he is then towed alongside and beheaded; and how (on the principle which entitled the headsman of old to the garments in which the beheaded was killed) his great padded surtout becomes the property of his executioner; how, in due time, he is condemned to the pots, and, like Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, his spermaceti, oil, and bone pass unscathed through the fire;—but now it remains to conclude the last chapter of this part of the description by rehearsing—singing, if I may—the romantic proceeding of decanting off his oil into the casks and striking them down into the hold, where once again leviathan returns to his native profundities, sliding along beneath the surface as before; but, alas! never more to rise and blow.

While still warm, the oil, like hot punch, is received into the six-barrel casks; and while, perhaps, the ship is pitching and rolling this way and that in the midnight sea, the enormous casks are slewed round and headed over, end for end, and sometimes perilously scoot across the slippery deck, like so many land slides, till at last man-handled and stayed in their course; and all round the hoops, rap, rap, go as many hammers as can play upon them, for now, *ex officio*, every sailor is a cooper.

At length, when the last pint is casked, and all is cool, then the great hatchways are unsealed, the bowels of the ship are thrown open, and down go the casks to their final rest in the sea. This done, the hatches are replaced, and hermetically closed, like a closet walled up.

In the sperm fishery, this is perhaps one of the most remarkable incidents in all the business of whaling. One day the planks stream with freshets of blood and oil; on the sacred

quarter-deck enormous masses of the whale's head are profanely piled; great rusty casks lie about, as in a brewery yard; the smoke from the try-works has besooted all the bulwarks; the mariners go about suffused with unctuousness; the entire ship seems great leviathan himself; while on all hands the din is deafening.

But a day or two after, you look about you, and prick your ears in this self-same ship; and were it not for the tell-tale boats and try-works, you would all but swear you trod some silent merchant vessel, with a most scrupulously neat commander. The unmanufactured sperm oil possesses a singularly cleansing virtue. This is the reason why the decks never look so white as just after what they call an affair of oil. Besides, from the ashes of the burned scraps of the whale, a potent ley is readily made; and whenever any adhesiveness from the back of the whale remains clinging to the side, that ley quickly exterminates it. Hands go diligently along the bulwarks, and with buckets of water and rags restore them to their full tidiness. The soot is brushed from the lower rigging. All the numerous implements which have been in use are likewise faithfully cleansed and put away. The great hatch is scrubbed and placed upon the try-works, completely hiding the pots; every cask is out of sight; all tackles are coiled in unseen nooks; and when by the combined and simultaneous industry of almost the entire ship's company, the whole of this conscientious duty is at last concluded, then the crew themselves proceed to their own ablutions; shift themselves from top to toe; and finally issue to the immaculate deck, fresh and all aglow, as bridegrooms new-leaped from out the daintiest Holland.

Now, with elated step, they pace the planks in twos and threes, and humorously discourse of parlors, sofas, carpets, and fine cambrics; propose to mat the deck; think of having hangings to the top; object not to taking tea by moonlight on the piazza of the forecastle. To hint to such musked mariners of oil, and bone, and blubber, were little short of audacity. They know not the thing you distantly allude to. Away, and bring us napkins!

But mark: aloft there, at the three mast heads, stand three

men intent on spying out more whales, which, if caught, infallibly will again soil the old oaken furniture, and drop at least one small grease-spot somewhere. Yes; and many is the time, when, after the severest uninterrupted labors, which know no night; continuing straight through for ninety-six hours; when from the boat, where they have swelled their wrists with all day rowing on the Line,—they only step to the deck to carry vast chains, and heave the heavy windlass, and cut and slash, yea, and in their very sweatings to be smoked and burned anew by the combined fires of the equatorial sun and the equatorial try-works; when, on the heel of all this, they have finally bestirred themselves to cleanse the ship, and make a spotless dairy room of it; many is the time the poor fellows, just buttoning the necks of their clean frocks, are startled by the cry of “There she blows!” and away they fly to fight another whale, and go through the whole weary thing again. Oh! my friends, but this is man-killing! Yet this is life. For hardly have we mortals by long toilings extracted from the world’s vast bulk its small but valuable sperm; and then, with weary patience, cleansed ourselves from its defilements, and learned to live here in clean tabernacles of the soul; hardly is this done, when—*There she blows!*—the ghost is spouted up, and away we sail to fight some other world, and go through young life’s old routine again.

Oh! the metempsychosis! Oh! Pythagoras, that in bright Greece, two thousand years ago, did die, so good, so wise, so mild; I sailed with thee along the Peruvian coast last voyage—and, foolish as I am, taught thee, a green simple boy, how to splice a rope!

CHAPTER XCIX

THE DOUBLOON

ERE now it has been related how Ahab was wont to pace his quarter-deck, taking regular turns at either limit, the binnacle

and mainmast; but in the multiplicity of other things requiring narration it has not been added how that sometimes in these walks, when most plunged in his mood, he was wont to pause in turn at each spot, and stand there strangely eyeing the particular object before him. When he halted before the binnacle, with his glance fastened on the pointed needle in the compass, that glance shot like a javelin with the pointed intensity of his purpose; and when resuming his walk he again paused before the mainmast, then, as the same riveted glance fastened upon the riveted gold coin there, he still wore the same aspect of nailed firmness, only dashed with a certain wild longing, if not hopefulness.

But one morning, turning to pass the doubloon, he seemed to be newly attracted by the strange figures and inscriptions stamped on it, as though now for the first time beginning to interpret for himself in some monomaniac way whatever significance might lurk in them. And some certain significance lurks in all things, else all things are little worth, and the round world itself but an empty cipher, except to sell by the cartload, as they do hills about Boston, [to fill up some morass in the Milky Way.]

Now this doubloon was of purest, virgin gold, raked somewhere out of the heart of gorgeous hills, whence, east and west, over golden sands, the head-waters of many a Pactolus flows. And though now nailed amidst all the rustiness of iron bolts and the verdigris of copper spikes, yet, untouchable and immaculate to any foulness, it still preserved its Quito glow. Nor, though placed amongst a ruthless crew and every hour passed by ruthless hands, and through the livelong nights shrouded with thick darkness which might cover any pilfering approach, nevertheless every sunrise found the doubloon where the sunset left it last. For it was set apart and sanctified to one awe-striking end; and however wanton in their sailor ways, one and all, the mariners revered it as the white whale's talisman. Sometimes they talked it over in the weary watch by night, wondering whose it was to be at last, and whether he would ever live to spend it.

Now those noble golden coins of South America are as

medals of the sun and tropic token-pieces. Here palms, alpacas, and volcanoes; sun's disks and stars; ecliptics, horns-of-plenty, and rich banners waving, are in luxuriant profusion stamped; so that the precious gold seems almost to derive an added preciousness and enhancing glories, by passing through those fancy mints, so Spanishly poetic.

It so chanced that the doubloon of the Pequod was a most wealthy example of these things. On its round border it bore the letters, REPUBLICA DEL ECUADOR: QUITO. So this bright coin came from a country planted in the middle of the world, and beneath the great equator, and named after it; and it had been cast midway up the Andes, in the unwaning clime that knows no autumn. Zoned by those letters you saw the likeness of three Andes' summits; from one a flame; a tower on another; on the third a crowing cock; while arching over all was a segment of the partitioned zodiac, the signs all marked with their usual cabalistics, and the keystone sun entering the equinoctial point at Libra.

Before this equatorial coin, Ahab, not unobserved by others, was now pausing.

✓ "There's something ever egotistical in mountain-tops and towers, and all other grand and lofty things; look here,—three peaks as proud as Lucifer. The firm tower, that is Ahab; the volcano, that is Ahab; the courageous, the undaunted, and victorious fowl, that, too, is Ahab; all are Ahab; and this round gold is but the image of the rounder globe, which, like a magician's glass, to each and every man in turn but mirrors back his own mysterious self. Great pains, small gains for those who ask the world to solve them; it cannot solve itself. Methinks now this coined sun wears a ruddy face; but see! aye, he enters the sign of storms, the equinox! and but six months before he wheeled out of a former equinox at Aries! From storm to storm! So be it, then. Born in throes, 't is fit that man should live in pains and die in pangs! So be it, then! Here's stout stuff for woe to work on. So be it, then."

"No fairy fingers can have pressed the gold, but devil's claws must have left their mouldings there since yesterday," murmured Starbuck to himself, leaning against the bulwarks. "The old

man seems to read Belshazzar's awful writing. I have never marked the coin inspectingly. He goes below; let me read. A dark valley between three mighty, heaven-abiding peaks, that almost seem the Trinity, in some faint earthly symbol. So in this vale of Death, God girds us round; and over all our gloom, the sun of Righteousness still shines a beacon and a hope. If we bend down our eyes, the dark vale shows her mouldy soil; but if we lift them, the bright sun meets our glance half way, to cheer. Yet, oh, the great sun is no fixture; and if, at midnight, we would fain snatch some sweet solace from him, we gaze for him in vain! This coin speaks wisely, mildly, truly, but still sadly to me. I will quit it, lest Truth shake me falsely."

"There now's the old Mogul," soliloquized Stubb by the try-works, "he's been twigging it; and there goes Starbuck from the same, and both with faces which I should say might be somewhere within nine fathoms long. And all from looking at a piece of gold, which did I have it now on Negro Hill or in Corlaer's Hook, I'd not look at it very long ere spending it. Humph! in my poor, insignificant opinion, I regard this as queer. I have seen doubloons before now in my voyagings; your doubloons of old Spain, your doubloons of Peru, your doubloons of Chili, your doubloons of Bolivia, your doubloons of Popayan; with plenty of gold moidores and pistoles, and joes, and half joes, and quarter joes. What then should there be in this doubloon of the Equator that is so killing wonderful? By Golconda! let me read it once. Halloa! here's signs and wonders truly! That, now, is what old Bowditch in his Epitome calls the zodiac, and what my almanack below calls ditto. I'll get the almanack and as I have heard devils can be raised with Daboll's arithmetic, I'll try my hand at raising a meaning out of these queer curvicies here with the Massachusetts calendar. Here's the book. Let's see now. Signs and wonders; and the sun, he's always among 'em. Hem, hem, hem; here they are—here they go—all alive:—Aries, or the Ram; Taurus, or the Bull and Jimimil! here's Gemini himself, or the Twins. Well; the sun he wheels among 'em. Aye, here on the coin he's just crossing the threshold between two of twelve sitting-rooms all in a ring. Book! you lie there; the fact is, you books must know your

Contrast!

places. You'll do to give us the bare words and facts, but we come in to supply the thoughts. That's my small experience, so far as the Massachusetts calendar, and Bowditch's navigator, and Daboll's arithmetic go. Signs and wonders, eh? Pity if there is nothing wonderful in signs, and significant in wonders! There's a clue somewhere; wait a bit; hist—hark! By Jove, I have it! Look you, Doubloon, your zodiac here is the life of man in one round chapter; and now I'll read it off, straight out of the book. Come, Almanack! To begin: there's Aries, or the Ram—lecherous dog, he begets us; then, Taurus, or the Bull—he bumps us the first thing; then Gemini, or the Twins—that is, Virtue and Vice; we try to reach Virtue, when lol comes Cancer the Crab, and drags us back; and here, going from Virtue, Leo, a roaring Lion, lies in the path—he gives a few fierce bites and surly dabs with his paw; we escape, and hail Virgo, the Virgin! that's our first love; we marry and think to be happy for aye, when pop comes Libra, or the Scales—happiness weighed and found wanting; and while we are very sad about that, Lord! how we suddenly jump, as Scorpio, or the Scorpion, stings us in rear; we are curing the wound, when whang come the arrows all round; Sagittarius, or the Archer, is amusing himself. As we pluck out the shafts, stand aside; here's the battering-ram, Capricornus, or the Goat; full tilt, he comes rushing, and headlong we are tossed; when Aquarius, or the Water-bearer, pours out his whole deluge and drowns us; and to wind up with Pisces, or the Fishes, we sleep. There's a sermon now, writ in high heaven, and the sun goes through it every year, and yet comes out of it all alive and hearty. Jollily he, aloft there, wheels through toil and trouble; and so, alow here, does jolly Stubb. Oh, jolly's the word for aye! Adieu, Doubloon! But stop; here comes little King-Post; dodge round the try-works, now, and let's hear what he'll have to say. There; he's before it; he'll out with something presently. So, so; he's beginning."

"I see nothing here, but a round thing made of gold, and whoever raises a certain whale, this round thing belongs to him. So, what's all this staring been about? It is worth sixteen dollars, that's true; and at two cents the cigar, that's nine hundred and

sixty cigars. I wont smoke dirty pipes like Stubb, but I like cigars, and here's nine hundred and sixty of them; so here goes Flask aloft to spy 'em out."

"Shall I call that wise or foolish, now; if it be really wise it has a foolish look to it; yet, if it be really foolish, then has it a sort of wiseish look to it. But, avast; here comes our old Manx-man—the old hearse-driver, he must have been, that is, before he took to the sea. He luffs up before the doubloon; halloa, and goes round on the other side of the mast; why, there's a horse-shoe nailed on that side; and now he's back again; what does that mean? Hark! he's muttering—voice like an old worn-out coffee-mill. Prick ears, and listen!"

"If the White Whale be raised, it must be in a month and a day, when the sun stands in some one of these signs. I've studied signs, and know their marks; they were taught me two score years ago, by the old witch in Copenhagen. Now, in what sign will the sun then be? The horse-shoe sign; for there it is, right opposite the gold. And what's the horse-shoe sign? The lion is the horse-shoe sign—the roaring and devouring lion. Ship, old ship! my old head shakes to think of thee."

"There's another rendering now; but still one text. All sorts of men in one kind of world, you see. Dodge again! here comes Queequeg—all tattooing—looks like the signs of the Zodiac himself. What says the Cannibal? As I live he's comparing notes; looking at his thigh bone; thinks the sun is in the thigh, or in the calf, or in the bowels, I suppose, as the old women talk Surgeon's Astronomy in the back country. And by Jove, he's found something there in the vicinity of his thigh—I guess it's Sagittarius, or the Archer. No: he don't know what to make of the doubloon; he takes it for an old button off some king's trowsers. But, aside again! here comes that ghost-devil, Fedallah; tail coiled out of sight as usual, oakum in the toes of his pumps as usual. What does he say, with that look of his? Ah, only makes a sign to the sign and bows himself; there is a sun on the coin—fire worshipper, depend upon it. Ho! more and more. This way comes Pip—poor boy! would he had died, or I; he's half horrible to me. He too has been watching all of these interpreters—myself included—and look now, he comes to read,

with that unearthly idiot face. Stand away again and hear him. Hark!

"I look, you look, he looks; we look, ye look, they look."

"Upon my soul, he's been studying Murray's Grammar! Improving his mind, poor fellow! But what's that he says now—hist!"

"I look, you look, he looks; we look, ye look, they look."

"Why, he's getting it by heart—hist! again."

"I look, you look, he looks; we look, ye look, they look."

"Well, that's funny."

"And I, you, and he; and we, ye, and they, are all bats; and I'm a crow, especially when I stand a'top of this pine tree here. Caw! caw! caw! caw! caw! caw! Ain't I a crow? And where's the scare-crow? There he stands; two bones stuck into a pair of old trowsers, and two more poked into the sleeves of an old jacket."

"Wonder if he means me?—complimentary!—poor lad!—I could go hang myself. Any way, for the present, I'll quit Pip's vicinity. I can stand the rest, for they have plain wits; but he's too crazy-witty for my sanity. So, so, I leave him muttering."

"Here's the ship's navel, this doubloon here, and they are all on fire to unscrew it. But, unscrew your navel, and what's the consequence? Then again, if it stays here, that is ugly, too, for when aught's nailed to the mast it's a sign that things grow desperate. Ha, ha! old Ahab! the White Whale; he'll nail yel! This is a pine tree. My father, in old Tolland county, cut down a pine tree once, and found a silver ring grown over in it; some old darkey's wedding ring. How did it get there? And so they'll say in the resurrection, when they come to fish up this old mast, and find a doubloon lodged in it, with bedded oysters for the shaggy bark. Oh, the gold! the precious, precious gold!—the green miser 'll hoard ye soon! Hish! hish! God goes 'mong the worlds blackberrying. Cook! ho, cook! and cook us! Jenny! hey, hey, hey, hey, hey, Jenny, Jenny! and get your hoe-cake done!"

CHAPTER C

LEG AND ARM

THE PEQUOD, OF NANTUCKET, MEETS THE SAMUEL
ENDERBY, OF LONDON

"SHIP, ahoy! Hast seen the White Whale?"

So cried Ahab, once more hailing a ship showing English colors, bearing down under the stern. Trumpet to mouth, the old man was standing in his hoisted quarter-boat, his ivory leg plainly revealed to the stranger captain, who was carelessly reclining in his own boat's bow. He was a darkly-tanned, burly, good-natured, fine-looking man, of sixty or thereabouts, dressed in a spacious roundabout, that hung round him in festoons of blue pilot-cloth; and one empty arm of this jacket streamed behind him like the broidered arm of a huzzar's surcoat.

"Hast seen the White Whale?"

"See you this?" and withdrawing it from the folds that had hidden it, he held up a white arm of sperm whale bone, terminating in a wooden head like a mallet.

"Man my boat!" cried Ahab, impetuously, and tossing about the oars near him—"Stand by to lower!"

In less than a minute, without quitting his little craft, he and his crew were dropped to the water, and were soon alongside of the stranger. But here a curious difficulty presented itself. In the excitement of the moment, Ahab had forgotten that since the loss of his leg he had never once stepped on board of any vessel at sea but his own, and then it was always by an ingenious and very handy mechanical contrivance peculiar to the Pequod, and a thing not to be rigged and shipped in any other vessel at a moment's warning. Now, it is no very easy matter for anybody—except those who are almost hourly used to it, like whalemén—to clamber up a ship's side from a boat on the open sea; for the great swells now lift the boat high up towards

the bulwarks, and then instantaneously drop it half way down to the kelson. So, deprived of one leg, and the strange ship of course being altogether unsupplied with the kindly invention, Ahab now found himself abjectly reduced to a clumsy landsman again; hopelessly eyeing the uncertain changeful height he could hardly hope to attain.

It has before been hinted, perhaps, that every little untoward circumstance that befel him, and which indirectly sprang from his luckless mishap, almost invariably irritated or exasperated Ahab. And in the present instance, all this was heightened by the sight of the two officers of the strange ship, leaning over the side, by the perpendicular ladder of nailed cleets there, and swinging towards him a pair of tastefully-ornamented man-ropes; for at first they did not seem to bethink them that a one-legged man must be too much of a cripple to use their sea bannisters. But this awkwardness only lasted a minute, because the strange captain, observing at a glance how affairs stood, cried out, "I see, I see!—avast heaving there! Jump, boys, and swing over the cutting-tackle."

As good luck would have it, they had had a whale alongside a day or two previous, and the great tackles were still aloft, and the massive curved blubber-hook, now clean and dry, was still attached to the end. This was quickly lowered to Ahab, who at once comprehending it all, slid his solitary thigh into the curve of the hook (it was like sitting in the fluke of an anchor, or the crotch of an apple tree), and then giving the word, held himself fast, and at the same time also helped to hoist his own weight, by pulling hand-over-hand upon one of the running parts of the tackle. Soon he was carefully swung inside the high bulwarks, and gently landed upon the capstan head. With his ivory arm frankly thrust forth in welcome, the other captain advanced, and Ahab, putting out his ivory leg, and crossing the ivory arm (like two sword-fish blades) cried out in his walrus way, "Aye, aye, hearty! let us shake bones together!—an arm and a leg!—an arm that never can shrink, d'ye see; and a leg that never can run. Where did'st thou see the White Whale?—how long ago?"

"The White Whale," said the Englishman, pointing his ivory

arm towards the East, and taking a rueful sight along it, as if it had been a telescope; "There I saw him, on the Line, last season."

"And he took that arm off, did he?" asked Ahab, now sliding down from the capstan, and resting on the Englishman's shoulder, as he did so.

"Aye, he was the cause of it, at least; and that leg, too?"

"Spin me the yarn," said Ahab; "how was it?"

"It was the first time in my life that I ever cruised on the Line," began the Englishman. "I was ignorant of the White Whale at that time. Well, one day we lowered for a pod of four or five whales, and my boat fastened to one of them; a regular circus horse he was, too, that went milling and milling round so, that my boat's crew could only trim dish, by sitting all their sterns on the outer gunwale. Presently up breaches from the bottom of the sea a bouncing great whale, with a milky-white head and hump, all crows' feet and wrinkles."

"It was he, it was he!" cried Ahab, suddenly letting out his suspended breath.

"And harpoons sticking in near his starboard fin."

"Aye, aye—they were mine—*my* irons," cried Ahab, exultingly—"but on!"

"Give me a chance, then," said the Englishman, good-humoredly. "Well, this old great-grandfather, with the white head and hump, runs all afoam into the pod, and goes to snapping furiously at my fast-line."

"Aye, I see!—wanted to part it; free the fast-fish—an old trick—I know him."

"How it was exactly," continued the one-armed commander, "I do not know; but in biting the line, it got foul of his teeth, caught there somehow; but we didn't know it then; so that when we afterwards pulled on the line, bounce we came plump on to his hump! instead of the other whale's that went off to windward, all fluking. Seeing how matters stood, and what a noble great whale it was—the noblest and biggest I ever saw, sir, in my life—I resolved to capture him, spite of the boiling rage he seemed to be in. And thinking the hap-hazard line would get loose, or the tooth it was tangled to might draw (for I have

a devil of a boat's crew for a pull on a whale-line); seeing all this, I say, I jumped into my first mate's boat—Mr. Mounttop's here (by the way, Captain—Mounttop; Mounttop—the captain);—as I was saying, I jumped into Mounttop's boat, which, d'ye see, was gunwale and gunwale with mine, then; and snatching the first harpoon, let this old great-grandfather have it. But, Lord, look you, sir—hearts and souls alive, man—the next instant, in a jiff, I was blind as a bat—both eyes out—all befogged and bedeadened with black foam—the whale's tail looming straight up out of it, perpendicular in the air, like a marble steeple. No use sterning all, then; but as I was groping at midday, with a blinding sun, all crown-jewels; as I was groping, I say, after the second iron, to toss it overboard—down comes the tail like a Lima tower, cutting my boat in two, leaving each half in splinters; and, flukes first, the white hump backed through the wreck, as though it was all chips. We all struck out. To escape his terrible flailings, I seized hold of my harpoon-pole sticking in him, and for a moment clung to that like a sucking fish. But a combing sea dashed me off, and at the same instant, the fish, taking one good dart forwards, went down like a flash; and the barb of that cursed second iron towing along near me caught me here" (clapping his hand just below his shoulder); "yes, caught me just here, I say, and bore me down to Hell's flames, I was thinking; when, when, all of a sudden, thank the good God, the barb ript its way along the flesh—clear along the whole length of my arm—came out nigh my wrist, and up I floated;—and that gentleman there will tell you the rest (by the way, captain—Dr. Bunger, ship's surgeon: Bunger, my lad,—the captain). Now, Bunger boy, spin your part of the yarn."

The professional gentleman thus familiarly pointed out, had been all the time standing near them, with nothing specific visible, to denote his gentlemanly rank on board. His face was an exceedingly round but sober one; he was dressed in a faded blue woollen frock or shirt, and patched trowsers; and had thus far been dividing his attention between a marlingspike he held in one hand, and a pill-box held in the other, occasionally casting a critical glance at the ivory limbs of the two crippled captains. But, at his superior's introduction of him to Ahab, he

politely bowed, and straightway went on to do his captain's bidding.

"It was a shocking bad wound," began the whale-surgeon; "and, taking my advice, Captain Boomer here, stood our old Sammy—"

"Samuel Enderby is the name of my ship," interrupted the one-armed captain, addressing Ahab; "go on, boy."

"Stood our old Sammy off to the northward, to get out of the blazing hot weather there on the Line. But it was no use—I did all I could; sat up with him nights; was very severe with him in the matter of diet—"

"Oh, very severe!" chimed in the patient himself; then suddenly altering his voice, "Drinking hot rum toddies with me every night, till he couldn't see to put on the bandages; and sending me to bed, half seas over, about three o'clock in the morning. Oh, ye stars! he sat up with me indeed, and was very severe in my diet. Oh! a great watcher, and very dietetically severe, is Dr. Bunger. (Bunger, you dog, laugh out! why don't ye? You know you're a precious jolly rascal.) But, heave ahead, boy, I'd rather be killed by you than kept alive by any other man."

"My captain, you must have ere this perceived, respected sir"—said the imperturbable godly-looking Bunger, slightly bowing to Ahab—"is apt to be facetious at times; he spins us many clever things of that sort. But I may as well say—en passant, as the French remark—that I myself—that is to say, Jack Bunger, late of the reverend clergy—am a strict total abstinence man; I never drink—"

"Water!" cried the captain; "he never drinks it; it's a sort of fits to him; fresh water throws him into the hydrophobia; but go on—go on with the arm story."

"Yes, I may as well," said the surgeon, coolly. "I was about observing, sir, before Captain Boomer's facetious interruption, that spite of my best and severest endeavors, the wound kept getting worse and worse; the truth was, sir, it was as ugly gaping wound as surgeon ever saw; more than two feet and several inches long. I measured it with the lead line. In short, it grew black; I knew what was threatened, and off it came.

But I had no hand in shipping that ivory arm there; that thing is against all rule"—pointing at it with the marlingspike—"that is the captain's work, not mine; he ordered the carpenter to make it; he had that club-hammer there put to the end, to knock some one's brains out with, I suppose, as he tried mine once. He flies into diabolical passions sometimes. Do ye see this dent, sir"—removing his hat, and brushing aside his hair, and exposing a bowl-like cavity in his skull, but which bore not the slightest scarry trace, or any token of ever having been a wound—"Well, the captain there will tell you how that came here; he knows."

"No, I don't," said the captain, "but his mother did; he was born with it. Oh, you solemn rogue, you—you Bunker! was there ever such another Bunker in the watery world? Bunker, when you die, you ought to die in pickle, you dog; you should be preserved to future ages, you rascal."

"What became of the White Whale?" now cried Ahab, who thus far had been impatiently listening to this bye-play between the two Englishmen.

"Oh!" cried the one-armed captain, "Oh, yes! Well; after he sounded, we didn't see him again for some time; in fact, as I before hinted, I didn't then know what whale it was that had served me such a trick, till some time afterwards, when coming back to the Line, we heard about Moby Dick—as some call him—and then I knew it was he."

"Did'st thou cross his wake again?"

"Twice."

"But could not fasten?"

"Didn't want to try to: ain't one limb enough? What should I do without this other arm? And I'm thinking Moby Dick doesn't bite so much as he swallows."

"Well, then," interrupted Bunker, "give him your left arm for bait to get the right. Do you know, gentlemen"—very gravely and mathematically bowing to each Captain in succession—"Do you know, gentlemen, that the digestive organs of the whale are so inscrutably constructed by Divine Providence, that it is quite impossible for him to completely digest even a

man's arm? And he knows it too. So that what you take for the White Whale's malice is only his awkwardness. For he never means to swallow a single limb; he only thinks to terrify by feints. But sometimes he is like the old juggling fellow, formerly a patient of mine in Ceylon, that making believe swallow jack-knives, once upon a time let one drop into him in good earnest, and there it stayed for a twelvemonth or more; when I gave him an emetic, and he heaved it up in small tacks, d'ye see. No possible way for him to digest that jack-knife, and fully incorporate it into his general bodily system. Yes, Captain Boomer, if you are quick enough about it, and have a mind to pawn one arm for the sake of the privilege of giving decent burial to the other, why in that case the arm is yours; only let the whale have another chance at you shortly, that's all."

"No, thank ye, Bungler," said the English Captain, "he's welcome to the arm he has, since I can't help it, and didn't know him then; but not to another one. No more White Whales for me; I've lowered for him once, and that has satisfied me. There would be great glory in killing him, I know that; and there is a ship-load of precious sperm in him, but, hark ye, he's best let alone; don't you think so, Captain?"—glancing at the ivory leg.

"He is. But he will still be hunted, for all that. What is best let alone, that accursed thing is not always what least allures. He's all a magnet! How long since thou saw'st him last? Which way heading?"

"Bless my soul, and curse the foul fiend's," cried Bungler, stooping and walking round Ahab, and like a dog, strangely snuffing; "this man's blood—bring the thermometer;—it's at the boiling point!—his pulse makes these planks beat!—sir!"—taking a lancet from his pocket, and drawing near to Ahab's arm.

"Avast!" roared Ahab, dashing him against the bulwarks—"Man the boat! Which way heading?"

"Good God!" cried the English Captain, to whom the question was put. "What's the matter? He was heading east, I think.—Is your Captain crazy?" whispering Fedallah.

But Fedallah, putting a finger on his lip, slid over the bul-

warks to take the boat's steering oar, and Ahab, swinging the cutting-tackle towards him, commanded the ship's sailors to stand by to lower.

In a moment he was standing in the boat's stern, and the Manilla men were springing to their oars. In vain the English Captain hailed him. With back to the stranger ship, and face set like a flint to his own, Ahab stood upright till alongside of the Pequod.

CHAPTER CI

THE DECANter

ERE the English ship fades from sight, be it set down here, that she hailed from London, and was named after the late Samuel Enderby, merchant of that city, the original of the famous whaling house of Enderby & Sons; a house which in my poor whaleman's opinion, comes not far behind the united royal houses of the Tudors and Bourbons, in point of real historical interest. How long, prior to the year of our Lord 1775, this great whaling house was in existence, my numerous fish-documents do not make plain; but in that year (1775) it fitted out the first English ships that ever regularly hunted the Sperm Whale; though for some score of years previous (ever since 1726) our valiant Coffins and Maceys of Nantucket and the Vineyard had in large fleets pursued that Leviathan, but only in the North and South Atlantic: not elsewhere. Be it distinctly recorded here, that the Nantucketers were the first among mankind to harpoon with civilized steel the great Sperm Whale; and that for half a century they were the only people of the whole globe who so harpooned him.

In 1778, a fine ship, the *Amelia*, fitted out for the express purpose, and at the sole charge of the vigorous Enderbys, boldly rounded Cape Horn, and was the first among the nations to lower a whale-boat of any sort in the great South Sea. The

the sails, so that we hung there, reefed fast in the howling gale, a warning example to all drunken tars. However, the masts did not go overboard; and by and bye we scrambled down, so sober, that we had to pass the flip again, though the savage salt spray bursting down the forecandle scuttle, rather too much diluted and pickled it to my taste.

The beef was fine—tough, but with body in it. They said it was bull-beef; others, that it was dromedary beef; but I do not know, for certain, how that was. They had dumplings too; small, but substantial, symmetrically globular, and indestructible dumplings. I fancied that you could feel them, and roll them about in you after they were swallowed. If you stooped over too far forward, you risked their pitching out of you like billiard-balls. The bread—but that couldn't be helped; besides, it was an anti-scorbutic; in short, the bread contained the only fresh fare they had. But the forecandle was not very light, and it was very easy to step over into a dark corner when you ate it. But all in all, taking her from truck to helm, considering the dimensions of the cook's boilers, including his own live parchment boilers; fore and aft, I say, the Samuel Enderby was a jolly ship; of good fare and plenty; fine flip and strong; crack fellows all, and capital from boot heels to hat-band.

But why was it, think ye, that the Samuel Enderby, and some other English whalers I know of—not all though—were such famous, hospitable ships; that passed round the beef, and the bread, and the can, and the joke; and were not soon weary of eating, and drinking, and laughing? I will tell you. The abounding good cheer of these English whalers is matter for historical research. Nor have I been at all sparing of historical whale research, when it has seemed needed.

The English were preceded in the whale fishery by the Hollanders, Zealanders, and Danes; from whom they derived many terms still extant in the fishery; and what is yet more, their fat old fashions, touching plenty to eat and drink. For, as a general thing, the English merchant-ship scrimps her crew; but not so the English whaler. Hence, in the English, this thing of whaling good cheer is not normal and natural, but incidental and particular; and, therefore, must have some special origin,

which is here pointed out, and will be still further elucidated.

During my researches in the Leviathanic histories, I stumbled upon an ancient Dutch volume, which, by the musty whaling smell of it, I knew must be about whalers. The title was, "Dan Coopman," wherefore I concluded that this must be the invaluable memoirs of some Amsterdam cooper in the fishery, as every whale ship must carry its cooper. I was reinforced in this opinion by seeing that it was the production of one "Fitz Swackhammer." But my friend Dr. Snodhead, a very learned man, professor of Low Dutch and High German in the college of Santa Claus and St. Pott's, to whom I handed the work for translation, giving him a box of sperm candles for his trouble—this same Dr. Snodhead, so soon as he spied the book, assured me that "Dan Coopman" did not mean "The Cooper," but "The Merchant." In short, this ancient and learned Low Dutch book treated of the commerce of Holland; and, among other subjects, contained a very interesting account of its whale fishery. And in this chapter it was, headed "Smeer," or "Fat," that I found a long detailed list of the outfits for the larders and cellars of 180 sail of Dutch whalers; from which list, as translated by Dr. Snodhead, I transcribe the following:

400,000 lbs. of beef.

60,000 lbs. Friesland pork.

150,000 lbs. of stock fish.

550,000 lbs. of biscuit.

72,000 lbs. of soft bread.

2,800 firkins of butter.

20,000 lbs. of Texel & Leyden cheese.

144,000 lbs. cheese (probably an inferior article).

550 ankers of Geneva.

10,800 barrels of beer.

Most statistical tables are parchingly dry in the reading; not so in the present case, however, where the reader is flooded with whole pipes, barrels, quarts, and gills of good gin and good cheer.

At the time, I devoted three days to the studious digesting of all this beer, beef, and bread, during which many profound

thoughts were incidentally suggested to me, capable of a transcendental and Platonic application; and, furthermore, I compiled supplementary tables of my own, touching the probable quantity of stock-fish, &c., consumed by every Low Dutch harpooneer in that ancient Greenland and Spitzbergen whale fishery. In the first place, the amount of butter, and Texel and Leyden cheese consumed, seems amazing. I impute it, though, to their naturally unctuous natures, being rendered still more unctuous by the nature of their vocation, and especially by their pursuing their game in those frigid Polar Seas, on the very coasts of that Esquimaux country where the convivial natives pledge each other in bumpers of train oil.

The quantity of beer, too, is very large, 10,800 barrels. Now, as those polar fisheries could only be prosecuted in the short summer of that climate, so that the whole cruise of one of these Dutch whalers, including the short voyage to and from the Spitzbergen sea, did not much exceed three months, say, and reckoning 30 men to each of their fleet of 180 sail, we have 5,400 Low Dutch seamen in all; therefore, I say, we have precisely two barrels of beer per man, for a twelve weeks' allowance, exclusive of his fair proportion of that 550 ankers of gin. Now, whether these gin and beer harpooneers, so fuddled as one might fancy them to have been, were the right sort of men to stand up in a boat's head, and take good aim at flying whales; this would seem somewhat improbable. Yet they did aim at them, and hit them too. But this was very far North, be it remembered, where beer agrees well with the constitution; upon the Equator, in our southern fishery, beer would be apt to make the harpooneer sleepy at the mast-head and boozy in his boat; and grievous loss might ensue to Nantucket and New Bedford.

But no more; enough has been said to show that the old Dutch whalers of two or three centuries ago were high livers; and that the English whalers have not neglected so excellent an example. For, say they, when cruising in an empty ship, if you can get nothing better out of the world, get a good dinner out of it, at least. And this empties the decanter.

CHAPTER CII

A BOWER IN THE ARSACIDES

HITHERTO, in descriptively treating of the Sperm Whale, I have chiefly dwelt upon the marvels of his outer aspect; or separately and in detail upon some few interior structural features. But to a large and thorough sweeping comprehension of him, it behoves me now to unbutton him still further, and untagging the points of his hose, unbuckling his garters, and casting loose the hooks and the eyes of the joints of his innermost bones, set him before you in his ultimatum; that is to say, in his unconditional skeleton.

But how now, Ishmael? How is it, that you, a mere oarsman in the fishery, pretend to know aught about the subterranean parts of the whale? Did erudite Stubb, mounted upon your capstan, deliver lectures on the anatomy of the Cetacea; and by help of the windlass, hold up a specimen rib for exhibition? Explain thyself, Ishmael. Can you land a full-grown whale on your deck for examination, as a cook dishes a roast-pig? Surely not. A veritable witness have you hitherto been, Ishmael; but have a care how you seize the privilege of Jonah alone; the privilege of discoursing upon the joists and beams; the rafters, ridge-pole, sleepers, and under-pinnings, making up the frame-work of leviathan; and belike of the tallow-vats, dairy-rooms, butteries, and cheeseries in his bowels.

I confess, that since Jonah, few whalers have penetrated very far beneath the skin of the adult whale; nevertheless, I have been blessed with an opportunity to dissect him in miniature. In a ship I belonged to, a small cub Sperm Whale was once bodily hoisted to the deck for his poke or bag, to make sheaths for the barbs of the harpoons, and for the heads of the lances. Think you I let that chance go, without using my boat-hatchet and jack-knife, and breaking the seal and reading all the contents of that young cub?

And as for my exact knowledge of the bones of the leviathan in their gigantic, full grown development, for that rare knowledge I am indebted to my late royal friend Tranquo, king of Tranque, one of the Arsacides. For being at Tranque, years ago, when attached to the trading-ship Dey of Algiers, I was invited to spend part of the Arsacidean holidays with the lord of Tranque, at his retired palm villa at Pupella; a sea-side glen not very far distant from what our sailors called Bamboo-Town, his capital.

Among many other fine qualities, my royal friend Tranquo, being gifted with a devout love for all matters of barbaric virtù, had brought together in Pupella whatever rare things the more ingenious of his people could invent; chiefly carved woods of wonderful devices, chiselled shells, inlaid spears, costly paddles, aromatic canoes; and all these distributed among whatever natural wonders, the wonder-freighted, tribute-rendering waves had cast upon his shores.

Chief among these latter was a great Sperm Whale, which, after an unusually long raging gale, had been found dead and stranded, with his head against a cocoa-nut tree, whose plumage-like, tufted droopings seemed his verdant jet. When the vast body had at last been stripped of its fathom-deep enfoldings, and the bones become dust dry in the sun, then the skeleton was carefully transported up the Pupella glen, where a grand temple of lordly palms now sheltered it.

The ribs were hung with trophies; the vertebrae were carved with Arsacidean annals, in strange hieroglyphics; in the skull, the priests kept up an unextinguished aromatic flame, so that the mystic head again sent forth its vapory spout; while, suspended from a bough, the terrific lower jaw vibrated over all the devotees, like the hair-hung sword that so affrighted Damocles.

It was a wondrous sight. The wood was green as mosses of the Icy Glen; the trees stood high and haughty, feeling their living sap; the industrious earth beneath was as a weaver's loom, with a gorgeous carpet on it, whereof the ground-vine tendrils formed the warp and woof, and the living flowers the figures. All the trees, with all their laden branches; all the shrubs, and ferns, and grasses; the message-carrying air; all

these unceasingly were active. Through the lacings of the leaves, the great sun seemed a flying shuttle weaving the unwearied verdure. Oh, busy weaver! unseen weaver!—pause!—one word!—whither flows the fabric? what palace may it deck? wherefore all these ceaseless toilings? Speak, weaver!—stay thy hand!—but one single word with thee! Nay—the shuttle flies—the figures float from forth the loom; the freshet-rushing carpet for ever slides away. The weaver-god, he weaves; and by that weaving is he deafened, that he hears no mortal voice; and by that humming, we, too, who look on the loom are deafened; and only when we escape it shall we hear the thousand voices that speak through it. For even so it is in all material factories. The spoken words that are inaudible among the flying spindles; those same words are plainly heard without the walls, bursting from the opened casements. Thereby have villanies been detected. Ah, mortall! then, be heedful; for so, in all this din of the great world's loom, thy subtlest thinkings may be overheard afar.

Now, amid the green, life-restless loom of that Arsacidean wood, the great, white, worshipped skeleton lay lounging—a gigantic idler! Yet, as the ever-woven verdant warp and woof intermixed and hummed around him, the mighty idler seemed the cunning weaver; himself all woven over with the vines; every month assuming greener, fresher verdure; but himself a skeleton. Life folded Death; Death trellised Life; the grim god wived with youthful Life, and begat him curly-headed glories.

Now, when with royal Tranquo I visited this wondrous whale, and saw the skull an altar, and the artificial smoke ascending from where the real jet had issued, I marvelled that the king should regard a chapel as an object of virtù. He laughed. But more I marvelled that the priests should swear that smoky jet of his was genuine. To and fro I paced before this skeleton—brushed the vines aside—broke through the ribs—and with a ball of Arsacidean twine, wandered, eddied long amid its many winding, shaded collonades and arbors. But soon my line was out; and following it back, I emerged from the opening where I entered. I saw no living thing within; naught was there but bones.

Cutting me a green measuring-rod, I once more dived within the skeleton. From their arrow-slit in the skull, the priests perceived me taking the altitude of the final rib. "How now!" they shouted; "Dar'st thou measure this our god! That's for us." "Aye, priests—well, how long do ye make him, then?" But hereupon a fierce contest rose among them, concerning feet and inches; they cracked each other's sconces with their yard-sticks—the great skull echoed—and seizing that lucky chance, I quickly concluded my own admeasurements.

These admeasurements I now propose to set before you. But first, be it recorded, that, in this matter, I am not free to utter any fancied measurement I please. Because there are skeleton authorities you can refer to, to test my accuracy. There is a Leviathanic Museum, they tell me, in Hull, England, one of the whaling ports of that country, where they have some fine specimens of fin-backs and other whales. Likewise, I have heard that in the museum of Manchester, in New Hampshire, they have what the proprietors call "the only perfect specimen of a Greenland or River Whale in the United States." Moreover, at a place in Yorkshire, England, Burton Constable by name, a certain Sir Clifford Constable has in his possession the skeleton of a Sperm Whale, but of moderate size, by no means of the full-grown magnitude of my friend King Tranquo's.

In both cases, the stranded whales to which these two skeletons belonged, were originally claimed by their proprietors upon similar grounds. King Tranquo seizing his because he wanted it; and Sir Clifford, because he was lord of the seignories of those parts. Sir Clifford's whale has been articulated throughout; so that, like a great chest of drawers, you can open and shut him, in all his bony cavities—spread out his ribs like a gigantic fan—and swing all day upon his lower jaw. Locks are to be put upon some of his trap-doors and shutters; and a footman will show round future visitors with a bunch of keys at his side. Sir Clifford thinks of charging twopence for a peep at the whispering gallery in the spinal column; threepence to hear the echo in the hollow of his cerebellum; and sixpence for the unrivalled view from his forehead.

The skeleton dimensions I shall now proceed to set down are

copied verbatim from my right arm, where I had them tattooed; as in my wild wanderings at that period, there was no other secure way of preserving such valuable statistics. But as I was crowded for space, and wished the other parts of my body to remain a blank page for a poem I was then composing—at least, what untattooed parts might remain—I did not trouble myself with the odd inches; nor, indeed, should inches at all enter into a congenial admeasurement of the whale.

CHAPTER CIII

MEASUREMENT OF THE WHALE'S SKELETON

IN the first place, I wish to lay before you a particular, plain statement, touching the living bulk of this leviathan, whose skeleton we are briefly to exhibit. Such a statement may prove useful here.

According to a careful calculation I have made, and which I partly base upon Captain Scoresby's estimate, of seventy tons for the largest sized Greenland whale of sixty feet in length; according to my careful calculation, I say, a Sperm Whale of the largest magnitude, between eighty-five and ninety feet in length, and something less than forty feet in its fullest circumference, such a whale will weigh at least ninety tons; so that reckoning thirteen men to a ton, he would considerably outweigh the combined population of a whole village of one thousand one hundred inhabitants.

Think you not then that brains, like yoked cattle, should be put to this leviathan, to make him at all budge to any landsman's imagination?

Having already in various ways put before you his skull, spout-hole, jaw, teeth, tail, forehead, fins, and divers other parts, I shall now simply point out what is most interesting in the general bulk of his unobstructed bones. But as the colossal skull embraces so very large a proportion of the entire extent

of the skeleton; as it is by far the most complicated part; and as nothing is to be repeated concerning it in this chapter, you must not fail to carry it in your mind, or under your arm, as we proceed, otherwise you will not gain a complete notion of the general structure we are about to view.

In length, the Sperm Whale's skeleton at Tranque measured seventy-two feet; so that when fully invested and extended in life, he must have been ninety feet long; for in the whale, the skeleton loses about one fifth in length compared with the living body. Of this seventy-two feet, his skull and jaw comprised some twenty feet, leaving some fifty feet of plain back-bone. Attached to this back-bone, for something less than a third of its length, was the mighty circular basket of ribs which once enclosed his vitals.

To me this vast ivory-ribbed chest, with the long, unrelieved spine, extending far away from it in a straight line, not a little resembled the hull of a great ship new-laid upon the stocks, when only some twenty of her naked bow-ribs are inserted, and the keel is otherwise, for the time, but a long, disconnected timber.

The ribs were ten on a side. The first, to begin from the neck, was nearly six feet long; the second, third, and fourth were each successively longer, till you came to the climax of the fifth, or one of the middle ribs, which measured eight feet and some inches. From that part, the remaining ribs diminished, till the tenth and last only spanned five feet and some inches. In general thickness, they all bore a seemly correspondence to their length. The middle ribs were the most arched. In some of the *Arsacides* they are used for beams whereon to lay foot-path bridges over small streams.

In considering these ribs, I could not but be struck anew with the circumstance, so variously repeated in this book, that the skeleton of the whale is by no means the mould of his invested form. The largest of the Tranque ribs, one of the middle ones, occupied that part of the fish which, in life, is greatest in depth. Now, the greatest depth of the invested body of this particular whale must have been at least sixteen feet; whereas, the corresponding rib measured but little more than eight feet. So that this rib only conveyed half of the true notion of the living

magnitude of that part. Besides, for some way, where I now saw but a naked spine, all that had been once wrapped round with tons of added bulk in flesh, muscle, blood, and bowels. Still more, for the ample fins, I here saw but a few disordered joints; and in place of the weighty and majestic, but boneless flukes, an utter blank!

How vain and foolish, then, thought I, for timid untravelled man to try to comprehend aright this wondrous whale, by merely poring over his dead attenuated skeleton, stretched in this peaceful wood. No. Only the heart of quickest perils; only when within the eddyings of his angry flukes; only on the profound unbounded sea, can the fully invested whale be truly and livingly found out.

But the spine. For that, the best way we can consider it is, with a crane, to pile its bones high up on end. No speedy enterprise. But now it's done, it looks much like Pompey's Pillar.

There are forty and odd vertebræ in all, which in the skeleton are not locked together. They mostly lie like the great knobbed blocks on a Gothic spire, forming solid courses of heavy masonry. The largest, a middle one, is in width something less than three feet, and in depth more than four. The smallest, where the spine tapers away into the tail, is only two inches in width, and looks something like a white billiard-ball. I was told that there were still smaller ones, but they had been lost by some little cannibal urchins, the priest's children, who had stolen them to play marbles with. Thus we see how that the spine of even the hugest of living things tapers off at last into simple child's play.

CHAPTER CIV

THE FOSSIL WHALE

FROM his mighty bulk the whale affords a most congenial theme whereon to enlarge, amplify, and generally expatiate. Would you, you could not compress him. By good rights he

should only be treated of in imperial folio. Not to tell over again his furlongs from spiracle to tail, and the yards he measures about the waist; only think of the gigantic involutions of his intestines, where they lie in him like great cables and hausers coiled away in the subterranean orlop-deck of a line-of-battle-ship.

Since I have undertaken to manhandle this Leviathan, it behoves me to approve myself omnisciently exhaustive in the enterprise; not overlooking the minutest seminal germs of his blood, and spinning him out to the uttermost coil of his bowels. Having already described him in most of his present habitatory and anatomical peculiarities, it now remains to magnify him in an archæological, fossiliferous, and antediluvian point of view. Applied to any other creature than the Leviathan—to an ant or a flea—such portly terms might justly be deemed unwarrantably grandiloquent. But when Leviathan is the text, the case is altered. Fain am I to stagger to this emprise under the weightiest words of the dictionary. And here be it said, that whenever it has been convenient to consult one in the course of these dissertations, I have invariably used a huge quarto edition of Johnson, expressly purchased for that purpose; because that famous lexicographer's uncommon personal bulk more fitted him to compile a lexicon to be used by a whale author like me.

One often hears of writers that rise and swell with their subject, though it may seem but an ordinary one. How, then, with me, writing of this Leviathan? Unconsciously my chirography expands into placard capitals. Give me a condor's quill! Give me Vesuvius' crater for an inkstand! Friends, hold my arms! For in the mere act of penning my thoughts of this Leviathan, they weary me, and make me faint with their out-reaching comprehensiveness of sweep, as if to include the whole circle of the sciences, and all the generations of whales, and men, and mastodons, past, present, and to come, with all the revolving panoramas of empire on earth, and throughout the whole universe, not excluding its suburbs. Such, and so magnifying, is the virtue of a large and liberal theme! We expand to its bulk. To produce a mighty book, you must choose a

mighty theme. No great and enduring volume can ever be written on the flea, though many there be who have tried it.

Ere entering upon the subject of Fossil Whales, I present my credentials as a geologist, by stating that in my miscellaneous time I have been a stone-mason, and also a great digger of ditches, canals and wells, wine-vaults, cellars, and cisterns of all sorts. Likewise, by way of preliminary, I desire to remind the reader, that while in the earlier geological strata there are found the fossils of monsters now almost completely extinct; the subsequent relics discovered in what are called the Tertiary formations seem the connecting, or at any rate intercepted links, between the antichronical creatures, and those whose remote posterity are said to have entered the Ark; all the Fossil Whales hitherto discovered belong to the Tertiary period, which is the last preceding the superficial formations. And though none of them precisely answer to any known species of the present time, they are yet sufficiently akin to them in general respects, to justify their taking rank as Cetacean fossils.

Detached broken fossils of pre-adamite whales, fragments of their bones and skeletons, have within thirty years past, at various intervals, been found at the base of the Alps, in Lombardy, in France, in England, in Scotland, and in the States of Louisiana, Mississippi, and Alabama. Among the more curious of such remains is part of a skull, which in the year 1779 was disinterred in the Rue Dauphiné in Paris, a short street opening almost directly upon the palace of the Tuileries; and bones disinterred in excavating the great docks of Antwerp, in Napoleon's time. Cuvier pronounced these fragments to have belonged to some utterly unknown Leviathanic species.

But by far the most wonderful of all cetacean relics was the almost complete vast skeleton of an extinct monster, found in the year 1842, on the plantation of Judge Creagh, in Alabama. The awe-stricken credulous slaves in the vicinity took it for the bones of one of the fallen angels. The Alabama doctors declared it a huge reptile, and bestowed upon it the name of *Basilosaurus*. But some specimen bones of it being taken across the sea to Owen, the English Anatomist, it turned out that this alleged reptile was a whale, though of a departed species.

A significant illustration of the fact, again and again repeated in this book, that the skeleton of the whale furnishes but little clue to the shape of his fully invested body. So Owen rechristened the monster Zeuglodon; and in his paper read before the London Geological Society, pronounced it, in substance, one of the most extraordinary creatures which the mutations of the globe have blotted out of existence.

When I stand among these mighty Leviathan skeletons, skulls, tusks, jaws, ribs, and vertebræ, all characterized by partial resemblances to the existing breeds of sea-monsters; but at the same time bearing on the other hand similar affinities to the annihilated antichronical Leviathans, their incalculable seniors; I am, by a flood, borne back to that wondrous period, ere time itself can be said to have begun; for time began with man. Here Saturn's grey chaos rolls over me, and I obtain dim, shuddering glimpses into those Polar eternities; when wedged bastions of ice pressed hard upon what are now the Tropics; and in all the 25,000 miles of this world's circumference, not an inhabitable hand's breadth of land was visible. Then the whole world was the whale's; and, king of creation, he left his wake along the present lines of the Andes and the Himmalehs. Who can show a pedigree like Leviathan? Ahab's harpoon had shed older blood than the Pharaoh's. Methuselah seems a school-boy. I look round to shake hands with Shem. I am horror-struck at this antemosaic, unsourced existence of the unspeakable terrors of the whale, which, having been before all time, must needs exist after all humane ages are over.

But not alone has this Leviathan left his pre-adamite traces in the stereotype plates of nature, and in limestone and marl bequeathed his ancient bust; but upon Egyptian tablets, whose antiquity seems to claim for them an almost fossiliferous character, we find the unmistakable print of his fin. In an apartment of the great temple of Denderah, some fifty years ago, there was discovered upon the granite ceiling a sculptured and painted planisphere, abounding in centaurs, griffins, and dolphins, similar to the grotesque figures on the celestial globe of the moderns. Gliding among them, old Leviathan swam as of yore; was there swimming in that planisphere, centuries before Solomon was cradled.

Nor must there be omitted another strange attestation of the antiquity of the whale, in his own osseous post-diluvian reality, as set down by the venerable John Leo, the old Barbary traveller.

"Not far from the Sea-side, they have a Temple, the Rafters and Beams of which are made of Whale-Bones; for Whales of a monstrous size are oftentimes cast up dead upon that shore. The Common People imagine, that by a secret Power bestowed by God upon the Temple, no Whale can pass it without immediate death. But the truth of the Matter is, that on either side of the Temple, there are Rocks that shoot two Miles into the Sea, and wound the Whales when they light upon 'em. They keep a Whale's Rib of an incredible length for a Miracle, which lying upon the Ground with its convex part uppermost, makes an Arch, the Head of which cannot be reached by a Man upon a Camel's Back. This Rib (says John Leo) is said to have layn there a hundred Years before I saw it. Their Historians affirm, that a Prophet who prophesy'd of Mahomet, came from this Temple, and some do not stand to assert, that the Prophet Jonas was cast forth by the Whale at the Base of the Temple."

In this Afric Temple of the Whale I leave you, reader, and if you be a Nantucketer, and a whaleman, you will silently worship there.

CHAPTER CV

DOES THE WHALE'S MAGNITUDE DIMINISH?—WILL HE PERISH?

INASMUCH, then, as this Leviathan comes floundering down upon us from the head-waters of the Eternities, it may be fitly inquired, whether, in the long course of his generations, he has not degenerated from the original bulk of his sires.

But upon investigation we find, that not only are the whales of the present day superior in magnitude to those whose fossil remains are found in the Tertiary system (embracing a distinct geological period prior to man), but of the whales found in that

Tertiary system, those belonging to its latter formations exceed in size those of its earlier ones.

Of all the pre-adamite whales yet exhumed, by far the largest is the Alabama one mentioned in the last chapter, and that was less than seventy feet in length in the skeleton. Whereas, we have already seen, that the tape-measure gives seventy-two feet for the skeleton of a large sized modern whale. And I have heard, on whalemens's authority, that Sperm Whales have been captured near a hundred feet long at the time of capture.

But may it not be, that while the whales of the present hour are an advance in magnitude upon those of all previous geological periods; may it not be, that since Adam's time they have degenerated?

Assuredly, we must conclude so, if we are to credit the accounts of such gentlemen as Pliny, and the ancient naturalists generally. For Pliny tells us of whales that embraced acres of living bulk, and Aldrovandus of others which measured eight hundred feet in length—Rope Walks and Thames Tunnels of Whales! And even in the days of Banks and Solander, Cooke's naturalists, we find a Danish member of the Academy of Sciences setting down certain Iceland Whales (*reydan-siskur*, or Wrinkled Bellies) at one hundred and twenty yards; that is, three hundred and sixty feet. And Lacépède, the French naturalist, in his elaborate history of whales, in the very beginning of his work (page 3), sets down the Right Whale at one hundred metres, three hundred and twenty-eight feet. And this work was published so late as A. D. 1825.

But will any whaleman believe these stories? No. The whale of to-day is as big as his ancestors in Pliny's time. And if ever I go where Pliny is, I, a whaleman (more than he was), will make bold to tell him so. Because I cannot understand how it is, that while the Egyptian mummies that were buried thousands of years before even Pliny was born, do not measure so much in their coffins as a modern Kentuckian in his socks; and while the cattle and other animals sculptured on the oldest Egyptian and Nineveh tablets, by the relative proportions in which they are drawn, just as plainly prove that the high-bred, stall-fed, prize cattle of Smithfield, not only equal, but far exceed in magnitude the fattest of Pharaoh's fat kine; in the face of

all this, I will not admit that of all animals the whale alone should have degenerated.

But still another inquiry remains; one often agitated by the more recondite Nantucketers. Whether owing to the almost omniscient look-outs at the mast-heads of the whale-ships, now penetrating even through Behring's straits, and into the remotest secret drawers and lockers of the world; and the thousand harpoons and lances darted along all continental coasts; the moot point is, whether Leviathan can long endure so wide a chase, and so remorseless a havoc; whether he must not at last be exterminated from the waters, and the last whale, like the last man, smoke his last pipe, and then himself evaporate in the final puff.

Comparing the humped herds of whales with the humped herds of buffalo, which, not forty years ago, overspread by tens of thousands the prairies of Illinois and Missouri, and shook their iron manes and scowled with their thunder-clotted brows upon the sites of populous river-capitals, where now the polite broker sells you land at a dollar an inch; in such a comparison an irresistible argument would seem furnished, to show that the hunted whale cannot now escape speedy extinction.

But you must look at this matter in every light. Though so short a period ago—not a good life-time—the census of the buffalo in Illinois exceeded the census of men now in London, and though at the present day not one horn or hoof of them remains in all that region; and though the cause of this wondrous extermination was the spear of man; yet the far different nature of the whale-hunt peremptorily forbids so inglorious an end to the Leviathan. Forty men in one ship hunting the Sperm Whale for forty-eight months think they have done extremely well, and thank God, if at last they carry home the oil of forty fish. Whereas, in the days of the old Canadian and Indian hunters and trappers of the West, when the far west (in whose sunset suns still rise) was a wilderness and a virgin, the same number of moccasined men, for the same number of months, mounted on horse instead of sailing in ships, would have slain not forty, but forty thousand and more buffaloes; a fact that, if need were, could be statistically stated.

Nor, considered aright, does it seem any argument in favor

of the gradual extinction of the Sperm Whale, for example, that in former years (the latter part of the last century, say) these Leviathans, in small pods, were encountered much oftener than at present, and, in consequence, the voyages were not so prolonged, and were also much more remunerative. Because, as has been elsewhere noticed, those whales, influenced by some views to safety, now swim the seas in immense caravans, so that to a large degree the scattered solitaires, yokes, and pods, and schools of other days are now aggregated into vast but widely separated, unfrequent armies. That is all. And equally fallacious seems the conceit, that because the so-called whale-bone whales no longer haunt many grounds in former years abounding with them, hence that species also is declining. For they are only being driven from promontory to cape; and if one coast is no longer enlivened with their jets, then, be sure, some other and remoter strand has been very recently startled by the unfamiliar spectacle.

Furthermore: concerning these last mentioned Leviathans, they have two firm fortresses, which, in all human probability, will for ever remain impregnable. And as upon the invasion of their valleys, the frosty Swiss have retreated to their mountains; so, hunted from the savannas and glades of the middle seas, the whale-bone whales can at last resort to their Polar citadels, and diving under the ultimate glassy barriers and walls there, come up among icy fields and floes; and in a charmed circle of everlasting December, bid defiance to all pursuit from man.

But as perhaps fifty of these whale-bone whales are harpooned for one cachalot, some philosophers of the fore-castle have concluded that this positive havoc has already very seriously diminished their battalions. But though for some time past a number of these whales, not less than 13,000, have been annually slain on the nor' west coast by the Americans alone; yet there are considerations which render even this circumstance of little or no account as an opposing argument in this matter.

Natural as it is to be somewhat incredulous concerning the populousness of the more enormous creatures of the globe, yet what shall we say to Harto, the historian of Goa, when he tells us that at one hunting the King of Siam took 4000 elephants;

that in those regions elephants are numerous as droves of cattle in the temperate climes. And there seems no reason to doubt that if these elephants, which have now been hunted for thousands of years, by Semiramis, by Porus, by Hannibal, and by all the successive monarchs of the East—if they still survive there in great numbers, much more may the great whale outlast all hunting, since he has a pasture to expatiate in, which is precisely twice as large as all Asia, both Americas, Europe and Africa, New Holland, and all the Isles of the sea combined.

Moreover: we are to consider, that from the presumed great longevity of whales, their probably attaining the age of a century and more, therefore at any one period of time, several distinct adult generations must be contemporary. And what that is, we may soon gain some idea of, by imagining all the grave-yards, cemeteries, and family vaults of creation yielding up the live bodies of all the men, women, and children who were alive seventy-five years ago; and adding this countless host to the present human population of the globe.

Wherefore, for all these things, we account the whale immortal in his species, however perishable in his individuality. He swam the seas before the continents broke water; he once swam over the site of the Tuileries, and Windsor Castle, and the Kremlin. In Noah's flood he despised Noah's Ark; and if ever the world is to be again flooded, like the Netherlands, to kill off its rats, then the eternal whale will still survive, and rearing upon the topmost crest of the equatorial flood, spout his frothed defiance to the skies.

CHAPTER CVI

AHAB'S LEG

THE precipitating manner in which Captain Ahab had quitted the Samuel Enderby of London, had not been unattended with some small violence to his own person. He had lighted with such energy upon a thwart of his boat that his ivory leg had

received a half-splintering shock. And when after gaining his own deck, and his own pivot-hole there, he so vehemently wheeled round with an urgent command to the steersman (it was, as ever, something about his not steering inflexibly enough); then, the already shaken ivory received such an additional twist and wrench, that though it still remained entire, and to all appearances lusty, yet Ahab did not deem it entirely trustworthy.

And, indeed, it seemed small matter for wonder, that for all his pervading, mad recklessness, Ahab did at times give careful heed to the condition of that dead bone upon which he partly stood. For it had not been very long prior to the Pequod's sailing from Nantucket, that he had been found one night lying prone upon the ground, and insensible; by some unknown, and seemingly inexplicable, unimaginable casualty, his ivory limb having been so violently displaced, that it had stake-wise smitten, and all but pierced his groin; nor was it without extreme difficulty that the agonizing wound was entirely cured.

[Nor, at the time, had it failed to enter his monomaniac mind, that all the anguish of that then present suffering was but the direct issue of a former woe; and he too plainly seemed to see, that as the most poisonous reptile of the marsh perpetuates his kind as inevitably as the sweetest songster of the grove; so, equally with every felicity, all miserable events do naturally beget their like.] Yea, more than equally, thought Ahab; since both the ancestry and posterity of Grief go further than the ancestry and posterity of Joy. For, not to hint of this: that it is an inference from certain canonic teachings, that while some natural enjoyments here shall have no children born to them for the other world, but, on the contrary, shall be followed by the joy-childlessness of all hell's despair; whereas, some guilty mortal miseries shall still fertiley beget to themselves an eternally progressive progeny of griefs beyond the grave; not at all to hint of this, there still seems an inequality in the deeper analysis of the thing. For, thought Ahab, while even the highest earthly felicities ever have a certain unsignifying pettiness lurking in them, but, at bottom, all heart-woes, a mystic significance, and, in some men, an archangelic grandeur; so do their diligent tracings-out not belie the obvious deduction. To trail the gene-

alogies of these high mortal miseries, carries us at last among the sourceless primogenitures of the gods; so that, in the face of all the glad, hay-making suns, and soft-cymballing, round harvest-moons, we must needs give in to this: [that the gods themselves are not for ever glad. The ineffaceable, sad birth-mark in the brow of man, is but the stamp of sorrow in the signers.]

Unwittingly here a secret has been divulged, which perhaps might more properly, in set way, have been disclosed before. With many other particulars concerning Ahab, always had it remained a mystery to some, why it was, that for a certain period, both before and after the sailing of the *Pequod*, he had hidden himself away with such Grand-Lama-like exclusiveness; and, for that one interval, sought speechless refuge, as it were, among the marble senate of the dead. Captain Peleg's bruited reason for this thing appeared by no means adequate; (though, indeed, as touching all Ahab's deeper part, every revelation partook more of significant darkness than of explanatory light.) But, in the end, it all came out; this one matter did, at least. That direful mishap was at the bottom of his temporary recluseness. And not only this, but to that ever-contracting, dropping circle ashore, who, for any reason, possessed the privilege of a less banned approach to him; to that timid circle the above hinted casualty—remaining, as it did, moodily unaccounted for by Ahab—invested itself with terrors, not entirely underived from the land of spirits and of wails. So that, through their zeal for him, they had all conspired, so far as in them lay, to muffle up the knowledge of this thing from others; and hence it was, that not till a considerable interval had elapsed, did it transpire upon the *Pequod's* decks.

But be all this as it may; let the unseen, ambiguous synod in the air, or the vindictive princes and potentates of fire, have to do or not with earthly Ahab, yet, in this present matter of his leg, he took plain practical procedures;—he called the carpenter.

And when that functionary appeared before him. he bade him without delay set about making a new leg, and directed the mates to see him supplied with all the studs and joists of jaw-ivory (Sperm Whale) which had thus far been accumulated

on the voyage, in order that a careful selection of the stoutest, clearest-grained stuff might be secured. This done, the carpenter received orders to have the leg completed that night; and to provide all the fittings for it, independent of those pertaining to the distrusted one in use. Moreover, the ship's forge was ordered to be hoisted out of its temporary idleness in the hold; and, to accelerate the affair, the blacksmith was commanded to proceed at once to the forging of whatever iron contrivances might be needed.

CHAPTER CVII

THE CARPENTER

[SEAT thyself sultanically among the moons of Saturn, and /take high abstracted man alone; and he seems a wonder, a grandeur, and a woe. But from the same point, take mankind in mass, and for the most part, they seem a mob of unnecessary duplicates, both contemporary and hereditary.] But most humble though he was, and far from furnishing an example of the high, humane abstraction; the Pequod's carpenter was no duplicate; hence, he now comes in person on this stage.

Like all sea-going ship carpenters, and more especially those belonging to whaling vessels, he was, to a certain off-handed, practical extent, alike experienced in numerous trades and callings collateral to his own; the carpenter's pusuit being the ancient and outbranching trunk of all those numerous handicrafts which more or less have to do with wood as an auxiliary material. But, besides the application to him of the generic remark above, this carpenter of the Pequod was singularly efficient in those thousand nameless mechanical emergencies continually recurring in a large ship, upon a three or four years' voyage, in uncivilized and far-distant seas. For not to speak of his readiness in ordinary duties:—repairing stove boats, sprung spars, reforming the shape of clumsy-bladed oars, inserting bull's

eyes in the deck, or new tree-nails in the side planks, and other miscellaneous matters more directly pertaining to his special business; he was moreover unhesitatingly expert in all manner of conflicting aptitudes, both useful and capricious.

The one grand stage where he enacted all his various parts so manifold, was his vice-bench; a long rude ponderous table furnished with several vices, of different sizes, and both of iron and of wood. At all times except when whales were alongside, this bench was securely lashed athwartships against the rear of the Try-works.

A belaying pin is found too large to be easily inserted into its hole: the carpenter claps it into one of his every-ready vices, and straightway files it smaller. A lost land-bird of strange plumage strays on board, and is made a captive: out of clean shaved rods of right-whale bone, and cross-beams of sperm whale ivory, the carpenter makes a pagoda-looking cage for it. An oarsman sprains his wrist: the carpenter concocts a soothing lotion. Stubb longed for vermillion stars to be painted upon the blade of his every oar; screwing each oar in his big vice of wood, the carpenter symmetrically supplies the constellation. A sailor takes a fancy to wear shark-bone ear-rings: the carpenter drills his ears. Another has the toothache: the carpenter out pincers, and clapping one hand upon his bench bids him be seated there; but the poor fellow unmanageably winces under the unconcluded operation; whirling round the handle of his wooden vice, the carpenter signs him to clap his jaw in that, if he would have him draw the tooth.

Thus, this carpenter was prepared at all points, and alike indifferent and without respect in all. Teeth he accounted bits of ivory; heads he deemed but top-blocks; men themselves he lightly held for capstans. But while now upon so wide a field thus variously accomplished, and with such liveliness of expertness in him, too; all this would seem to argue some uncommon vivacity of intelligence. But not precisely so. For nothing was this man more remarkable, than for a certain impersonal stolidity as it were; impersonal, I say, (for it so shaded off into the surrounding infinite of things, that it seemed one with the general stolidity discernible in the whole visible world; which while

✓

pauselessly active in uncounted modes, still eternally holds its peace, and ignores you, though you dig foundations for cathedrals.) Yet was this half-horrible stolidity in him, involving, too, as it appeared, an all-ramifying heartlessness;—yet was it oddly dashed at times, with an old, crutch-like, antediluvian, wheezing humorlessness, not unstreaked now and then with a certain grizzled wittiness; such as might have served to pass the time during the midnight watch on the bearded forecastle of Noah's ark. Was it that this old carpenter had been a life-long wanderer, whose much rolling, to and fro, not only had gathered no moss; but what is more, had rubbed off whatever small outward clings might have originally pertained to him? He was a stript abstract; an unfractioned integral; uncompromised as a new-born babe; living without premeditated reference to this world or the next. You might almost say, that this strange uncompromisedness in him involved a sort of unintelligence; for in his numerous trades, he did not seem to work so much by reason or by instinct, or simply because he had been tutored to it, or by any intermixture of all these, even or uneven; but merely by a kind of deaf and dumb, spontaneous literal process. He was a pure manipulator; his brain, if he had ever had one, must have early oozed along into the muscles of his fingers. He was like one of those unreasoning but still highly useful, *multum in parvo*, Sheffield contrivances, assuming the exterior—though a little swelled—of a common pocket knife; but containing, not only blades of various sizes, but also screw-drivers, cork-screws, tweezers, awls, pens, rulers, nail-filers, counter-sinkers. So, if his superiors wanted to use the carpenter for a screw-driver, all they had to do was to open that part of him, and the screw was fast: or if for tweezers, take him up by the legs, and there they were.

Yet, as previously hinted, this omnitooled, open-and-shut carpenter, was, after all, no mere machine of an automaton. If he did not have a common soul in him, he had a subtle something that somehow anomalously did its duty. What that was, whether essence of quicksilver, or a few drops of hartshorn, there is no telling. But there it was; and there it had abided for now some sixty years or more. And this it was, this same

unaccountable, cunning life-principle in him; this it was, that kept him a great part of the time soliloquizing; but only like an unreasoning wheel, which also hummingly soliloquizes; or rather, his body was a sentry-box and this soliloquizer on guard there, and talking all the time to keep himself awake.

CHAPTER CVIII

AHAB AND THE CARPENTER

THE DECK—FIRST NIGHT WATCH

(Carpenter standing before his vice-bench, and by the light of two lanterns busily filing the ivory joist for the leg, which joist is firmly fixed in the vice. Slabs of ivory, leather straps, pads, screws, and various tools of all sorts lying about the bench. Forward, the red flame of the forge is seen, where the blacksmith is at work.)

DRAT the file, and drat the bone! That is hard which should be soft, and that is soft which should be hard. So we go, who file old jaws and shinbones. Let's try another. Aye, now, this works better (*sneezes*). Halloa, this bone dust is (*sneezes*)—why it's (*sneezes*)—yes it's (*sneezes*)—bless my soul, it won't let me speak! This is what an old fellow gets now for working in dead lumber. Saw a live tree, and you don't get this dust; amputate a live bone, and you don't get it (*sneezes*). Come, come, you old Smut, there, bear a hand, and let's have that ferule and buckle-screw; I'll be ready for them presently. Lucky now (*sneezes*) there's no knee-joint to make; that might puzzle a little; but a mere shinbone—why it's easy as making hop-poles; only I should like to put a good finish on. Time, time; if I but only had the time, I could turn him out as neat a leg now as ever (*sneezes*) scraped to a lady in a parlor. Those buckskin legs and calves of legs I've seen in shop windows wouldn't compare at all. They soak water, they do; and of

course get rheumatic, and have to be doctored (*sneezes*) with washes and lotions, just like live legs. There; before I saw it off, now, I must call his old Mogulship, and see whether the length will be all right; too short, if anything, I guess. Ha! that's the heel; we are in luck; here he comes, or it's somebody else, that's certain.

AHAB (*advancing*).

(*During the ensuing scene, the carpenter continues sneezing at times.*)

Well, manmaker!

• Just in time, sir. If the captain pleases, I will now mark the length. Let me measure, sir.

Measured for a leg! good. Well, it's not the first time. About it! There; keep thy finger on it. This is a cogent vice thou hast here, carpenter; let me feel its grip once. So, so; it does pinch some.

Oh, sir, it will break bones—beware, beware!

No fear; I like a good grip; I like to feel something in this slippery world that can hold, man. What's Prometheus about there?—the blacksmith, I mean—what's he about?

He must be forging the buckle-screw, sir, now.

Right. It's a partnership; he supplies the muscle part. He makes a fierce red flame there!

Aye, sir; he must have the white heat for this kind of fine work.

Um-m. So he must. I do deem it now a most meaning thing, that that old Greek, Prometheus, who made men, they say, should have been a blacksmith, and animated them with fire; for what's made in fire must properly belong to fire; and so hell's probable. How the soot flies! This must be the remainder the Greek made the Africans of. Carpenter, when he's through with that buckle, tell him to forge a pair of steel shoulder-blades; there's a pedlar aboard with a crushing pack.

Sir?

Hold; while Prometheus is about it, I'll order a complete man after a desirable pattern. Imprimis, fifty feet high in his socks; then, chest modelled after the Thames Tunnel; then, legs with roots to 'em, to stay in one place; then, arms three

feet through the wrist; no heart at all, brass forehead, and about a quarter of an acre of fine brains; and let me see—shall I order eyes to see outwards? No, but put a sky-light on top of his head to illuminate inwards. There, take the order, and away.

Now, what's he speaking about, and who's he speaking to, I should like to know? Shall I keep standing here? (*aside.*)

'Tis but indifferent architecture to make a blind dome; here's one. No, no, no; I must have a lantern.

Ho, ho! That's it, hey? Here are two, sir; one will serve my turn.

What art thou thrusting that thief-catcher into my face for, man? Thrusted light is worse than presented pistols.

I thought, sir, that you spoke to carpenter.

Carpenter? why that's—but no;—a very tidy, and, I may say, an extremely gentlemanlike sort of business thou art in here, carpenter;—or would'st thou rather work in clay?

Sir?—Clay? clay, sir? That's mud; we leave clay to ditchers, sir.

The fellow's impious! What art thou sneezing about?

Bone is rather dusty, sir.

Take the hint, then; and when thou art dead, never bury thyself under living people's noses.

Sir?—oh! ah!—I guess so; so;—yes, yes—oh dear!

Look ye, carpenter, I dare say thou callest thyself a right good workmanlike workman, eh? Well, then, will it speak thoroughly well for thy work, if, when I come to mount this leg thou makest, I shall nevertheless feel another leg in the same identical place with it; that is, carpenter, my old lost leg; the flesh and blood one, I mean. Canst thou not drive that old Adam away?

Truly, sir, I begin to understand somewhat now. Yes, I have heard something curious on that score, sir; how that a dismasted man never entirely loses the feeling of his old spar, but it will be still pricking him at times. May I humbly ask if it be really so, sir?

It is, man. Look, put thy live leg here in the place where mine once was; so, now, here is only one distinct leg to the eye,

yet two to the soul. Where thou feelest tingling life; there, exactly there, there to a hair, do I. Is't a riddle?

I should humbly call it a poser, sir.

Hist, then. How dost thou know that some entire, living, thinking thing may not be invisibly and uninterpenetratingly standing precisely where thou now standest; aye, and standing there in thy spite? In thy most solitary hours, then, dost thou not fear eavesdroppers? Hold, don't speak! And if I still feel the smart of my crushed leg, though it be now so long dissolved; then, why mayst not thou, carpenter, feel the fiery pains of hell for ever, and without a body? Hah!

Good Lord! Truly, sir, if it comes to that, I must calculate over again; I think I didn't carry a small figure, sir.

Look ye, pudding-heads should never grant premises.—How long before this leg is done?

Perhaps an hour, sir.

Bungle away at it then, and bring it to me (*turns to go*). Oh, Life! Here I am, proud as Greek god, and yet standing debtor to this blockhead for a bone to stand on! Cursed be that mortal inter-indebtedness which will not do away with ledgers. I would be free as air; and I'm down in the whole world's books. I am so rich, I could have given bid for bid with the wealthiest Prætorians at the auction of the Roman empire (which was the world's); and yet I owe for the flesh in the tongue I brag with. By heavens! I'll get a crucible, and into it, and dissolve myself down to one small, compendious vertebra. So.

CARPENTER (*resuming his work*).

Well, well, well! Stubb knows him best of all, and Stubb always says he's queer; says nothing but that one sufficient little word queer; he's queer, says Stubb; he's queer—queer, queer; and keeps dinning it into Mr. Starbuck all the time—queer, sir—queer, queer, very queer. And here's his leg! Yes, now that I think of it, here's his bedfellow! has a stick of whale's jaw-bone for a wife! And this is his leg; he'll stand on this. What was that now about one leg standing in three places, and all three places standing in one hell—how was that? Oh! I don't wonder he looked so scornful at me! I'm a sort of strange-

thoughted sometimes, they say; but that's only haphazard-like. Then, a short, little old body like me, should never undertake to wade out into deep waters with tall, heron-built captains; the water chucks you under the chin pretty quick, and there's a great cry for life-boats. And here's the heron's leg! long and slim, sure enough! Now, for most folks one pair of legs lasts a lifetime, and that must be because they use them mercifully, as a tender-hearted old lady uses her roly-poly old coach-horses. But Ahab; oh he's a hard driver. Look, driven one leg to death, and spavined the other for life, and now wears out bone legs by the cord. Halloa, there, you Smut! bear a hand there with those screws, and let's finish it before the resurrection fellow comes a-calling with his horn for all legs, true or false, as brewery-men go round collecting old beer barrels, to fill 'em up again. What a leg this is! It looks like a real live leg, filed down to nothing but the core; he'll be standing on this to-morrow; he'll be taking altitudes on it. Halloa! I almost forgot the little oval slate, smoothed ivory, where he figures up the latitude. So, so; chisel, file, and sand-paper, now!

CHAPTER CIX

AHAB AND STARBUCK IN THE CABIN

ACCORDING to usage they were pumping the ship next morning; and lo! no inconsiderable oil came up with the water; the casks below must have sprung a bad leak. Much concern was shown; and Starbuck went down into the cabin to report this unfavorable affair.*

* In Sperm-whalemen with any considerable quantity of oil on board, it is a regular semi-weekly duty to conduct a hose into the hold, and drench the casks with sea-water; which afterwards, at varying intervals, is removed by the ship's pumps. Hereby the casks are sought to be kept damply tight; while by the changed character of the withdrawn water, the mariners readily detect any serious leakage in the precious cargo.

Now, from the South and West the Pequod was drawing nigh to Formosa and the Bashee Isles, between which lies one of the tropical outlets from the China waters into the Pacific. And so Starbuck found Ahab with a general chart of the oriental archipelagoes spread before him; and another separate one representing the long eastern coasts of the Japanese islands—Nippon, Matsmai, and Sikoke. With his snow-white new ivory leg braced against the screwed leg of his table, and with a long pruning-hook of a jack-knife in his hand, the wondrous old man, with his back to the gangway door, was wrinkling his brow, and tracing his old courses again.

"Who's there?" hearing the footstep at the door, but not turning round to it. "On deck! Begone!"

"Captain Ahab mistakes; it is I. The oil in the hold is leaking, sir. We must up Burtons and break out."

"Up Burtons and break out? Now that we are nearing Japan; heave-to here for a week to tinker a parcel of old hoops?"

"Either do that, sir, or waste in one day more oil than we may make good in a year. What we come twenty thousand miles to get is worth saving, sir."

"So it is, so it is; if we get it."

"I was speaking of the oil in the hold, sir."

✓ "And I was not speaking or thinking of that at all. Begone! Let it leak! I'm all aleak myself. Ay! leaks in leaks! not only full of leaky casks, but those leaky casks are in a leaky ship; and that's a far worse plight than the Pequod's, man. Yet I don't stop to plug my leak; for who can find it in the deep-loaded hull; or how hope to plug it, even if found, in this life's howling gale? Starbuck! I'll not have the Burtons hoisted."

"What will the owners say, sir?"

"Let the the owners stand on Nantucket beach and outyell the Typhoons. What cares Ahab? Owners, owners? Thou art always prating to me, Starbuck, about those miserly owners, as if the owners were my conscience. But look ye, the only real owner of anything is its commander; and hark ye, my conscience is in this ship's keel.—On deck!"

"Captain Ahab," said the reddening mate, moving further into the cabin, with a daring so strangely respectful and cautious that

it almost seemed not only every way seeking to avoid the slightest outward manifestation of itself, but within also seemed more than half distrustful of itself; "A better man than I might well pass over in thee what he would quickly enough resent in a younger man; aye, and in a happier, Captain Ahab."

"Devils! Dost thou then so much as dare to critically think of me?—On deck!"

"Nay, sir, not yet; I do entreat. And I do dare, sir—to be forbearing! Shall we not understand each other better than hitherto, Captain Ahab?"

Ahab seized a loaded musket from the rack (forming part of most South-Sea-men's cabin furniture), and pointing it towards Starbuck, exclaimed: "There is one God that is Lord over the earth, and one Captain that is lord over the Pequod.—On deck!"

For an instant in the flashing eyes of the mate, and his fiery cheeks, you would have almost thought that he had really received the blaze of the levelled tube. But, mastering his emotion, he half calmly rose, and as he quitted the cabin, paused for an instant and said: "Thou hast outraged, not insulted me, sir; but for that I ask thee not to beware of Starbuck; thou wouldst but laugh; but let Ahab beware of Ahab; beware of thyself, old man."

"He waxes brave, but nevertheless obeys; most careful bravery that!" murmured Ahab, as Starbuck disappeared. "What's that he said—Ahab beware of Ahab—there's something there!" Then unconsciously using the musket for a staff, with an iron brow he paced to and fro in the little cabin; but presently the thick plaits of his forehead relaxed, and returning the gun to the rack, he went to the deck.

"Thou art but too good a fellow, Starbuck," he said lowly to the mate; then raising his voice to the crew: "Furl the t'gallant-sails and close-reef the top-sails, fore and aft; back the main-yard; up Burtons, and break out in the main-hold."

It were perhaps vain to surmise exactly why it was, that as respecting Starbuck, Ahab thus acted. It may have been a flash of honesty in him; or mere prudential policy which, under the circumstance, imperiously forbade the slightest symptom of open disaffection, however transient, in the important chief

ficer of his ship. However it was, his orders were executed; and the Burtons were hoisted.

CHAPTER CX

QUEEQUEG IN HIS COFFIN

UPON searching, it was found that the casks last struck into the hold were perfectly sound, and that the leak must be further off. So, it being calm weather, they broke out deeper and deeper, disturbing the slumbers of the huge ground-tier butts; and from that black midnight sending those gigantic moles into the daylight above. So deep did they go; and so ancient, and corroded, and weedy the aspect of the lowermost puncheons, that you almost looked next for some mouldy corner-stone cask containing coins of Captain Noah, with copies of the posted placards, vainly warning the infatuated old world from the flood. Tierce after tierce, too, of water, and bread, and beef, and shooks of staves, and iron bundles of hoops, were hoisted out, till at last the piled decks were hard to get about; and the hollow hull echoed under foot, as if you were treading over empty catacombs, and reeled and rolled in the sea like an air-freighted demijohn. Top-heavy was the ship as a dinnerless student with all Aristotle in his head. Well was it that the Typhoons did not visit them then.

Now, at this time it was that my poor pagan companion, and fast bosom-friend, Queequeg, was seized with a fever, which brought him nigh to his endless end.

Be it said, that in this vocation of whaling, sinecures are unknown; dignity and danger go hand in hand; till you get to be Captain, the higher you rise the harder you toil. So with poor Queequeg, who, as harpooneer, must not only face all the rage of the living whale, but—as we have elsewhere seen—mount his dead back in a rolling sea; and finally descend into the gloom of the hold, and bitterly sweating all day in that

subterraneous confinement, resolutely manhandle the clumsiest casks and see to their stowage. To be short, among whalemén, the harpooneers are the holders, so called.

Poor Queequeg! when the ship was about half disembowelled, you should have stooped over the hatchway, and peered down upon him there; where, stripped to his woollen drawers, the tattooed savage was crawling about amid that dampness and slime, like a green spotted lizard at the bottom of a well. And a well, or an ice-house, it somehow proved to him, poor pagan; where, strange to say, for all the heat of his sweatings, he caught a terrible chill which lapsed into a fever; and at last, after some days' suffering, laid him in his hammock, close to the very sill of the door of death. How he wasted and wasted away in those few long-lingering days, till there seemed but little left of him but his frame and tattooing. But as all else in him thinned, and his cheek-bones grew sharper, his eyes, nevertheless, seemed growing fuller and fuller; they became of a strange softness of lustre; and mildly but deeply looked out at you there from his sickness, a wondrous testimony to that immortal health in him which could not die, or be weakened. And like circles on the water, which, as they grow fainter, expand; so his eyes seemed rounding and rounding, like the rings of Eternity. An awe that cannot be named would steal over you as you sat by the side of this waning savage, and saw as strange things in his face, as any beheld who were bystanders when Zoroaster died. For whatever is truly wondrous and fearful in man, never yet was put into words or books. And the drawing near of Death, which alike levels all, alike impresses all with a last revelation, which only an author from the dead could adequately tell. So that—let us say it again—no dying Chaldee or Greek had higher and holier thoughts than those, whose mysterious shades you saw creeping over the face of poor Queequeg, as he quietly lay in his swaying hammock, and the rolling sea seemed gently rocking him to his final rest, and the ocean's invisible flood-tide lifted him higher and higher towards his destined heaven.

Not a man of the crew but gave him up; and, as for Queequeg himself, what he thought of his case was forcibly shown by a curious favor he asked. He called one to him in the grey

morning watch, when the day was just breaking, and taking his hand, said that while in Nantucket he had chanced to see certain little canoes of dark wood, like the rich war-wood of his native isle; and upon inquiry, he had learned that all whalemen who died in Nantucket, were laid in those same dark canoes, and that the fancy of being so laid had much pleased him; for it was not unlike the custom of his own race, who, after embalming a dead warrior, stretched him out in his canoe, and so left him to be floated away to the starry archipelagoes; for not only do they believe that the stars are isles, but that far beyond all visible horizons, their own mild, uncontinented seas, interflow with the blue heavens; and so form the white breakers of the milky way. He added, that he shuddered at the thought of being buried in his hammock, according to the usual sea-custom, tossed like something vile to the death-devouring sharks. No: he desired a canoe like those of Nantucket, all the more congenial to him, being a whaleman, that like a whale-boat these coffin-canoes were without a keel; though that involved but uncertain steering, and much lee-way adown the dim ages.

Now, when this strange circumstance was made known aft, the carpenter was at once commanded to do Queequeg's bidding, whatever it might include. There was some heathenish, coffin-colored old lumber aboard, which, upon a long previous voyage, had been cut from the aboriginal groves of the Lackaday islands, and from these dark planks the coffin was recommended to be made. No sooner was the carpenter apprised of the order, than taking his rule, he forthwith with all the indifferent promptitude of his character, proceeded into the forecastle and took Queequeg's measure with great accuracy, regularly chalking Queequeg's person as he shifted the rule.

"Ah! poor fellow! he'll have to die now," ejaculated the Long Island sailor.

Going to his vice-bench, the carpenter for convenience sake and general reference, now transferringly measured on it the exact length the coffin was to be, and then made the transfer permanent by cutting two notches at its extremities. This done, he marshalled the planks and his tools, and to work,

When the last nail was driven, and the lid duly planed and fitted, he lightly shouldered the coffin and went forward with it, inquiring whether they were ready for it yet in that direction.

Overhearing the indignant but half-humorous cries with which the people on deck began to drive the coffin away, Queequeg, to every one's consternation, commanded that the thing should be instantly brought to him, nor was there any denying him; seeing that, of all mortals, some dying men are the most tyrannical; and certainly, since they will shortly trouble us so little for evermore, the poor fellows ought to be indulged.

Leaning over in his hammock, Queequeg long regarded the coffin with an attentive eye. He then called for his harpoon, had the wooden stock drawn from it, and then had the iron part placed in the coffin along with one of the paddles of his boat. All by his own request, also, biscuits were then ranged round the sides within: a flask of fresh water was placed at the head, and a small bag of woody earth scraped up in the hold at the foot; and a piece of sail-cloth being rolled up for a pillow, Queequeg now entreated to be lifted into his final bed, that he might make trial of its comforts, if any it had. He lay without moving a few minutes, then told one to go to his bag and bring out his little god, Yojo. Then crossing his arms on his breast with Yojo between, he called for the coffin lid (hatch he called it) to be placed over him. The head part turned over with a leather hinge, and there lay Queequeg in his coffin with little but his composed countenance in view. "Rarmai" (it will do; it is easy), he murmured at last, and signed to be replaced in his hammock.

But ere this was done, Pip, who had been sily hovering near by all this while, drew nigh to him where he lay, and with soft sobbings, took him by the hand; in the other, holding his tambourine.

"Poor rover! will ye never have done with all this weary roving? where go ye now? But if the currents carry ye to those sweet Antilles where the beaches are only beat with water-lilies, will ye do one little errand for me? Seek out one Pip, who's now been missing long: I think he's in those far Antilles. If ye find him, then comfort him; for he must be very sad; for look!

he's left his tambourine behind;—I found it. Rig-a-dig, dig, dig! Now, Queequeg, die; and I'll beat ye your dying march."

"I have heard," murmured Starbuck, gazing down the scuttle, "that in violent fevers, men, all ignorance, have talked in ancient tongues; and that when the mystery is probed, it turns out always that in their wholly forgotten childhood those ancient tongues had been really spoken in their hearing by some lofty scholars. So, to my fond faith, poor Pip, in this strange sweetness of his lunacy, brings heavenly vouchers of all our heavenly homes. Where learned he that, but there?—Hark! he speaks again: but more wildly now."

"Form two and two! Let's make a General of him! Ho, where's his harpoon? Lay it across here.—Rig-a-dig, dig dig! huzzal Oh for a game cock now to sit upon his head and crow! Queequeg dies game!—mind ye that; Queequeg dies game!—take ye good heed of that; Queequeg dies game! I say; game, game, game! but base little Pip, he died a coward; died all a'shiver;—out upon Pip! Hark ye; if ye find Pip, tell all the Antilles he's a runaway; a coward, a coward, a coward! Tell them he jumped from a whale-boat! I'd never beat my tambourine over base Pip, and hail him General, if he were once more dying here. No, no! shame upon all cowards—shame upon them! Let 'em go drown like Pip, that jumped from a whale-boat. Shame! shame!"

During all this, Queequeg lay with closed eyes, as if in a dream. Pip was led away, and the sick man was replaced in his hammock.

But now that he had apparently made every preparation for death; now that his coffin was proved a good fit, Queequeg suddenly rallied; soon there seemed no need of the carpenter's box: and thereupon, when some expressed their delighted surprise, he, in substance, said, that the cause of his sudden convalescence was this;—at a critical moment, he had just recalled a little duty ashore, which he was leaving undone; and therefore had changed his mind about dying: he could not die yet, he averred. (They asked him, then, whether to live or die was a matter of his own sovereign will and pleasure. He answered, J certainly. In a word, it was Queequeg's conceit, that if a man

made up his mind to live, mere sickness could not kill him: nothing but a whale, or a gale, or some violent, ungovernable, unintelligent destroyer of that sort.)

Now, there is this noteworthy difference between savage and civilized; that while a sick, civilized man may be six months convalescing, generally speaking, a sick savage is almost half-well again in a day. So, in good time my Queequeg gained strength; and at length after sitting on the windlass for a few indolent days (but eating with a vigorous appetite) he suddenly leaped to his feet, threw out arms and legs, gave himself a good stretching, yawned a little bit, and then springing into the head of his hoisted boat, and poising a harpoon, pronounced himself fit for a fight.

With a wild whimsiness, he now used his coffin for a sea-chest; and emptying into it his canvas bag of clothes, set them in order there. Many spare hours he spent, in carving the lid with all manner of grotesque figures and drawings; and it seemed that hereby he was striving, in his rude way, to copy parts of the twisted tattooing on his body. And this tattooing, had been the work of a departed prophet and seer of his island, who, by those hieroglyphic marks, had written out on his body a complete theory of the heavens and the earth, and a mystical treatise on the art of attaining truth; so that Queequeg in his own proper person was a riddle to unfold; a wondrous work in one volume; but whose mysteries not even himself could read, though his own live heart beat against them; and these mysteries were therefore destined in the end to moulder away with the living parchment whereon they were inscribed, and so be unsolved to the last. And this thought it must have been which suggested to Ahab that wild exclamation of his, when one morning turning away from surveying poor Queequeg—"Oh, devilish tantalization of the gods!"

CHAPTER CXI

THE PACIFIC

WHEN gliding by the Bashee isles we emerged at last upon the great South Sea; were it not for other things, I could have greeted my dear Pacific with uncounted thanks, for now the long supplication of my youth was answered; that serene ocean rolled eastwards from me a thousand leagues of blue.

There is, one knows not what sweet mystery about this sea, whose gently awful stirrings seem to speak of some hidden soul beneath; like those fabled undulations of the Ephesian sod over the buried Evangelist St. John. And meet it is, that over these sea-pastures, wide-rolling watery prairies and Potters' Fields of all four continents, the waves should rise and fall, and ebb and flow unceasingly; for here, millions of mixed shades and shadows, drowned dreams, somnambulisms, reveries; all that we call lives and souls, lie dreaming, dreaming, still; tossing like slumberers in their beds; the ever-rolling waves but made so by their restlessness.

To any meditative Magian rover, this serene Pacific, once beheld, must ever after be the sea of his adoption. It rolls the midmost waters of the world, the Indian ocean and Atlantic being but its arms. The same waves wash the moles of the new-built Californian towns, but yesterday planted by the recentest race of men, and lave the faded but still gorgeous skirts of Asiatic lands, older than Abraham; while all between float milky-ways of coral isles, and low-lying, endless, unknown Archipelagoes, and impenetrable Japans. Thus this mysterious, divine Pacific zones the world's whole bulk about; makes all coasts one bay to it; seems the tide-beating heart of earth. Lifted by those eternal swells, you needs must own the seductive god, bowing your head to Pan.

But few thoughts of Pan stirred Ahab's brain, as standing like an iron statue at his accustomed place beside the mizen

rigging, with one nostril he unthinkingly snuffed the sugary musk from the Bashee isles (in whose sweet woods mild lovers must be walking), and with the other consciously inhaled the salt breath of the new found sea; that sea in which the hated White Whale must even then be swimming. Launched at length upon these almost final waters, and gliding towards the Japanese cruising-ground, the old man's purpose intensified itself. His firm lips met like the lips of a vice; the Delta of his forehead's veins swelled like overladen brooks; in his very sleep, his ringing cry ran through the vaulted hull, "Stern all! the White Whale spouts thick blood!"

CHAPTER CXII

THE BLACKSMITH

Availing himself of the mild, summer-cool weather that now reigned in these latitudes, and in preparation for the peculiarly active pursuits shortly to be anticipated, Perth, the begrimed, blistered old blacksmith, had not removed his portable forge to the hold again, after concluding his contributory work for Ahab's leg, but still retained it on deck, fast lashed to ringbolts by the foremast; being now almost incessantly invoked by the heads-men, and harpooneers, and bowsmen to do some little job for them; altering, or repairing, or new shaping their various weapons and boat furniture. Often he would be surrounded by an eager circle, all waiting to be served; holding boat-spades, pike-heads, harpoons, and lances, and jealously watching his every sooty movement, as he toiled. Nevertheless, this old man's was a patient hammer wielded by a patient arm. No murmur, no impatience, no petulance did come from him. Silent, slow, and solemn; bowing over still further his chronically broken back, he toiled away, as if toil were life itself, and the heavy beating of his hammer the heavy beating of his heart. And so it was.—Most miserable!

A peculiar walk in this old man, a certain slight but painful appearing yawning in his gait, had at an early period of the voyage excited the curiosity of the mariners. And to the importunity of their persisted questionings he had finally given in; and so it came to pass that every one now knew the shameful story of his wretched fate.

Belated, and not innocently, one bitter winter's midnight, on the road running between two country towns, the blacksmith half-stupidly felt the deadly numbness stealing over him, and sought refuge in a leaning, dilapidated barn. The issue was, the loss of the extremities of both feet. Out of this revelation, part by part, at last came out the four acts of the gladness, and the one long, and as yet uncatastrophied fifth act of the grief of his life's drama.

He was an old man, who, at the age of nearly sixty, had postponedly encountered that thing in sorrow's technicals called ruin. He had been an artisan of famed excellence, and with plenty to do; owned a house and garden; embraced a youthful, daughter-like, loving wife, and three blithe, ruddy children; every Sunday went to a cheerful-looking church, planted in a grove. But one night, under cover of darkness, and further concealed in a most cunning disguisement, a desperate burglar slid into his happy home, and robbed them all of everything. And darker yet to tell, the blacksmith himself did ignorantly conduct this burglar into his family's heart. It was the Bottle Conjuror! Upon the opening of that fatal cork, forth flew the fiend, and shrivelled up his home. Now, for prudent, most wise, and economic reasons, the blacksmith's shop was in the basement of his dwelling, but with a separate entrance to it; so that always had the young and loving healthy wife listened with no unhappy nervousness, but with vigorous pleasure, to the stout ringing of her young-armed old husband's hammer; whose reverberations, muffled by passing through the floors and walls, came up to her, not unsweetly, in her nursery; and so, to stout Labor's iron lullaby, the blacksmith's infants were rocked to slumber.

Oh, woe on woe! Oh, Death, why canst thou not sometimes be timely? Hadst thou taken this old blacksmith to thyself ere his full ruin came upon him, then had the young widow had a

delicious grief, and her orphans a truly venerable, legendary sire to dream of in their after years; and all of them a care-killing competency. But Death plucked down some virtuous elder brother, on whose whistling daily toil solely hung the responsibilities of some other family, and left the worse than useless old man standing, till the hideous rot of life should make him easier to harvest.

Why tell the whole? The blows of the basement hammer every day grew more and more between; and each blow every day grew fainter than the last; the wife sat frozen at the window, with tearless eyes, glitteringly gazing into the weeping faces of her children; the bellows fell; the forge choked up with cinders; the house was sold; the mother dived down into the long church-yard grass; her children twice followed her thither; and the houseless, familyless old man staggered off a vagabond in crape; his every woe unreverenced; his grey head a scorn to flaxen curls!

Death seems the only desirable sequel for a career like this; but Death is only a launching into the region of the strange Untried; it is but the first salutation to the possibilities of the immense Remote, the Wild, the Watery, the Unshored; therefore, to the death-longing eyes of such men, who still have left in them some interior compunctions against suicide, does the all-contributed and all-receptive ocean alluringly spread forth his whole plain of unimaginable, taking terrors, and wonderful, new-life adventures; and from the hearts of infinite Pacifics, the thousand mermaids sing to them—"Come hither, broken-hearted; here is another life without the guilt of intermediate death; here are wonders supernatural, without dying for them. Come hither! bury thyself in a life which, to your now equally abhorred and abhorring, landed world, is more oblivious than death. Come hither! put up *thy* grave-stone, too, within the churchyard, and come hither, till we marry thee!"

Hearkening to these voices, East and West, by early sun-rise, and by fall of eve, the blacksmith's soul responded, Aye, I come! And so Perth went a-whaling.

CHAPTER CXIII

THE FORGE

WITH matted beard, and swathed in a bristling shark-skin apron, about mid-day, Perth was standing between his forge and anvil, the latter placed upon an iron-wood log, with one hand holding a pike-head in the coals, and with the other at his forge's lungs, when Captain Ahab came along, carrying in his hand a small rusty-looking leathern bag. While yet a little distance from the forge, moody Ahab paused; till at last, Perth, withdrawing his iron from the fire, began hammering it upon the anvil—the red mass sending off the sparks in thick hovering flights, some of which flew close to Ahab.

"Are these thy Mother Carey's chickens, Perth? they are always flying in thy wake; birds of good omen, too, but not to all;—look here, they burn; but thou—thou liv'st among them without a scorch."

"Because I am scorched all over, Captain Ahab," answered Perth, resting for a moment on his hammer; "I am past scorching; not easily can'st thou scorch a scar."

"Well, well; no more. Thy shrunk voice sounds too calmly, sanely woful to me. In no Paradise myself, I am impatient of all misery in others that is not mad. Thou should'st go mad, blacksmith; say, why dost thou not go mad? How can'st thou endure without being mad? Do the heavens yet hate thee, that thou can'st not go mad?—What wert thou making there?"

"Welding an old pike-head, sir; there were seams and dents in it."

"And can'st thou make it all smooth, again, blacksmith, after such hard usage as it had?"

"I think so, sir."

"And I suppose thou can'st smoothe almost any seams and dents; never mind how hard the metal, blacksmith?"

"Aye, sir, I think I can; all seams and dents but one."

"Look ye here, then," cried Ahab, passionately advancing, and leaning with both hands on Perth's shoulders; "look ye here—*here*—can ye smoothe out a seam like this, blacksmith," sweeping one hand across his ribbed brow; "if thou could'st, blacksmith, glad enough would I lay my head upon thy anvil, and feel thy heaviest hammer between my eyes. Answer! Can'st thou smoothe this seam?"

"Oh! that is the one, sir! Said I not all seams and dents but one?"

"Aye, blacksmith, it is the one; aye, man, it is unsmoothable; for though thou only see'st it here in my flesh, it has worked down into the bone of my skull—*that* is all wrinkles! But, away with child's play; no more gaffs and pikes to-day. Look ye herel!" jingling the leathern bag, as if it were full of gold coins. "I, too, want a harpoon made; one that a thousand yoke of fiends could not part, Perth; something that will stick in a whale like his own fin-bone. There's the stuff," flinging the pouch upon the anvil. "Look ye, blacksmith, these are the gathered nail-stubbs of the steel shoes of racing horses."

"Horse-shoe stubbs, sir? Why, Captain Ahab, thou hast here, then, the best and stubbornest stuff we blacksmiths ever work."

"I know it, old man; these stubbs will weld together like glue from the melted bones of murderers. Quick! forge me the harpoon. And forge me first, twelve rods for its shank; then wind, and twist, and hammer these twelve together like the yarns and strands of a tow-line. Quick! I'll blow the fire."

When at last the twelve rods were made, Ahab tried them, one by one, by spiralling them, with his own hand, round a long, heavy iron bolt. "A flaw!" rejecting the last one. "Work that over again, Perth."

This done, Perth was about to begin welding the twelve into one, when Ahab stayed his hand, and said he would weld his own iron. As, then, with regular, gasping hems, he hammered on the anvil, Perth passing to him the glowing rods, one after the other, and the hard pressed forge shooting up its intense straight flame, the Parsee passed silently, and bowing over his head towards the fire, seemed invoking some curse or some blessing on the toil. But, as Ahab, looked up, he slid aside.

"What's that bunch of lucifers dodging about there for?" muttered Stubb, looking on from the forecask. "That Parsee smells fire like a fusee; and smells of it himself, like a hot musket's powder-pan."

At last the shank, in one complete rod, received its final heat; and as Perth, to temper it, plunged it all hissing into the cask of water near by, the scalding steam shot up into Ahab's bent face.

"Would'st thou brand me, Perth?" wincing for a moment with the pain; "have I been but forging my own branding-iron, then?"

"Pray God, not that; yet I fear something, Captain Ahab. Is not this harpoon for the White Whale?"

"For the white fiend! But now for the barbs; thou must make them thyself, man. Here are my razors—the best of steel; here, and make the barbs sharp as the needle-sleet of the Icy Sea."

For a moment, the old blacksmith eyed the razors as though he would fain not use them.

"Take them, man, I have no need for them; for I now neither shave, sup, nor pray till—but here—to work!"

Fashioned at last into an arrowy shape, and welded by Perth to the shank, the steel soon pointed the end of the iron; and as the blacksmith was about giving the barbs their final heat, prior to tempering them, he cried to Ahab to place the water-cask near.

"No, no—no water for that; I want it of the true death-temper. Ahoy, there! Tashtego, Queequeg, Daggoo! What say ye, pagans! Will ye give me as much blood as will cover this barb?" holding it high up. A cluster of dark nods replied, Yes. Three punctures were made in the heathen flesh, and the White Whale's barbs were then tempered.

"Ego non baptizo te in nomine patris, sed in nomine diaboli!" deliriously howled Ahab, as the malignant iron scorchingly devoured the baptismal blood.

Now, mustering the spare poles from below, and selecting one of hickory, with the bark still investing it, Ahab fitted the end to the socket of the iron. A coil of new tow-line was then unwound, and some fathoms of it taken to the windlass, and

stretched to a great tension. Pressing his foot upon it, till the rope hummed like a harp-string, then eagerly bending over it, and seeing no strandings, Ahab exclaimed, "Good! and now for the seizings."

At one extremity the rope was unstranded, and the separate spread yarns were all braided and woven round the socket of the harpoon; the pole was then driven hard up into the socket; from the lower end the rope was traced half way along the pole's length, and firmly secured so, with intertwistings of twine. This done, pole, iron, and rope—like the Three Fates—remained inseparable, and Ahab moodily stalked away with the weapon; the sound of his ivory leg, and the sound of the hickory pole, both hollowly ringing along every plank. But ere he entered his cabin, a light, unnatural, half-bantering, yet most piteous sound was heard. Oh, Pip! thy wretched laugh, thy idle but unresting eye; all thy strange mummeries not unmeaningly blended with the black tragedy of the melancholy ship, and mocked it!

CHAPTER CXIV

THE GILDER

PENETRATING further and further into the heart of the Japanese cruising ground, the Pequod was soon all astir in the fishery. Often, in mild, pleasant weather, for twelve, fifteen, eighteen, and twenty hours on the stretch, they were engaged in the boats, steadily pulling, or sailing, or paddling after the whales, or for an interlude of sixty or seventy minutes calmly awaiting their uprising; though with but small success for their pains.

At such times, under an abated sun; afloat all day upon smooth, slow heaving swells; seated in his boat, light as a birch canoe; and so sociably mixing with the soft waves themselves, that like hearth-stone cats they purr against the gunwale; these are the times of dreamy quietude, when beholding the tranquil

beauty and brilliancy of the ocean's skin, one forgets the tiger heart that pants beneath it; and would not willingly remember, that this velvet paw but conceals a remorseless fang.

These are the times, when in his whale-boat the rover softly feels a certain filial, confident, land-like feeling towards the sea; that he regards it as so much flowery earth; and the distant ship revealing only the tops of her masts, seems struggling forward, not through high rolling waves, but through the tall grass of a rolling prairie: as when the western emigrants' horses only show their erected ears, while their hidden bodies widely wade through the amazing verdure.

The long-drawn virgin vales; the mild blue hill-sides; as over these there steals the hush, the hum; you almost swear that play-wearied children lie sleeping in these solitudes, in some glad May-time, when the flowers of the woods are plucked. And all this mixes with your most mystic mood; so that fact and fancy, half-way meeting, interpenetrate, and form one seamless whole.

Nor did such soothing scenes, however temporary, fail of at least as temporary an effect on Ahab. But if these secret golden keys did seem to open in him his own secret golden treasures, yet did his breath upon them prove but tarnishing.

Oh, grassy glades! oh, ever vernal endless landscapes in the soul; in ye,—though long parched by the dead drought of the earthy life,—in ye, men yet may roll, like young horses in new morning clover; and for some few fleeting moments, feel the cool dew of the life immortal on them. Would to God these blessed calms would last. (But the mingled, mingling threads of life are woven by warp and woof: calms crossed by storms, a storm for every calm. There is no steady unretracing progress in this life; we do not advance through fixed gradations, and at the last one pause:—through infancy's unconscious spell, boyhood's thoughtless faith, adolescence' doubt (the common doom), then scepticism, then disbelief, resting at last in manhood's pondering repose of If. But once gone through, we trace the round again; and are infants, boys, and men, and Ifs eternally. Where lies the final harbor, whence we unmoor no more? In what rapt ether sails the world, of which the weariest will

never weary? Where is the foundling's father hidden? Our souls are like those orphans whose unwedded mothers die in bearing them: the secret of our paternity lies in their grave, and we must there to learn it.

And that same day, too, gazing far down from his boat's side into that same golden sea, Starbuck lowly murmured:—

“Loveliness unfathomable, as ever lover saw in his young bride's eye!—Tell me not of thy teeth-tiered sharks, and thy kidnapping cannibal ways. Let faith oust fact; let fancy oust memory; I look deep down and do believe.”

And Stubb, fish-like, with sparkling scales, leaped up in that same golden light:—

“I am Stubb, and Stubb has his history; but here Stubb takes oaths that he has always been jolly!”

CHAPTER CXV

THE PEQUOD MEETS THE BACHELOR

AND jolly enough were the sights and the sounds that came bearing down before the wind, some few weeks after Ahab's harpoon had been welded.

It was a Nantucket ship, the Bachelor, which had just wedged in her last cask of oil, and bolted down her bursting hatches; and now, in glad holiday apparel, was joyously, though somewhat vain-gloriously, sailing round among the widely-separated ships on the ground, previous to pointing her prow for home.

The three men at her mast-head wore long streamers of narrow red bunting at their hats; from the stern, a whale-boat was suspended, bottom down; and hanging captive from the bowsprit was seen the long lower jaw of the last whale they had slain. Signals, ensigns, and jacks of all colors were flying from her rigging, on every side. Sideways lashed in each of her three basketed tops were two barrels of sperm; above which, in her top-mast cross-trees, you saw slender breakers of the

same precious fluid; and nailed to her main truck was a brazen lamp.

As was afterwards learned, the Bachelor had met with the most surprising success; all the more wonderful, for that while cruising in the same seas numerous other vessels had gone entire months without securing a single fish. Not only had barrels of beef and bread been given away to make room for the far more valuable sperm, but additional supplemental casks had been bartered for, from the ships she had met; and these were stowed along the deck, and in the captain's and officers' state-rooms. Even the cabin table itself had been knocked into kindling-wood; and the cabin mess dined off the broad head of an oil-butt, lashed down to the floor for a centrepiece. In the forecastle, the sailors had actually caulked and pitched their chests, and filled them; it was humorously added, that the cook had clapped a head on his largest boiler, and filled it; that the steward had plugged his spare coffee-pot and filled it; that the harpooneers had headed the sockets of their irons and filled them; that indeed everything was filled with sperm, except the captain's pantaloons pockets, and those he reserved to thrust his hands into, in self-complacent testimony of his entire satisfaction.

As this glad ship of good luck bore down upon the moody Pequod, the barbarian sound of enormous drums came from her forecastle; and drawing still nearer, a crowd of her men were seen standing round her huge try-pots, which, covered with the parchment-like *poke* or stomach skin of the black fish, gave forth a loud roar to every stroke of the clenched hands of the crew. On the quarter-deck, the mates and harpooneers were dancing with the olive-hued girls who had eloped with them from the Polynesian Isles; while suspended in an ornamented boat, firmly secured aloft between the foremast and mainmast, three Long Island negroes, with glittering fiddle-bows of whale ivory, were presiding over the hilarious jig. Meanwhile, others of the ship's company were tumultuously busy at the masonry of the try-works, from which the huge pots had been removed. You would have almost thought they were pulling down the cursed Bastile, such wild cries they raised, as the now useless brick and mortar were being hurled into the sea.

Lord and master over all this scene, the captain stood erect on the ship's elevated quarter-deck, so that the whole rejoicing drama was full before him, and seemed merely contrived for his own individual diversion.

And Ahab, he too was standing on his quarter-deck, shaggy and black, with a stubborn gloom; and as the two ships crossed each other's wakes—one all jubilations for things passed, the other all forebodings as to things to come—their two captains in themselves impersonated the whole striking contrast of the scene.

"Come aboard, come aboard!" cried the gay Bachelor's commander, lifting a glass and a bottle in the air.

"Hast seen the White Whale?" gritted Ahab in reply.

"No; only heard of him; ~~but don't believe in him at all~~," said the other good-humoredly. "Come aboard!"

"Thou are too damned jolly. Sail on. Hast lost any men?"

"Not enough to speak of—two islanders, that's all;—but come aboard, old hearty, come along. I'll soon take that black from your brow. Come along, will ye (merry's the play); a full ship and homeward-bound."

"How wondrous familiar is a fool!" muttered Ahab; then aloud, "Thou art a full ship and homeward bound, thou sayst; well, then, call me an empty ship, and outward-bound. So go thy ways, and I will mine. Forward there! Set all sail, and keep her to the wind!"

And thus, while the one ship went cheerily before the breeze, the other stubbornly fought against it; and so the two vessels parted; the crew of the Pequod looking with grave, lingering glances towards the receding Bachelor; but the Bachelor's men never heeding their gaze for the lively revelry they were in. And as Ahab, leaning over the taffrail, eyed the homeward-bound craft, he took from his pocket a small vial of sand, and then looking from the ship to the vial, seemed thereby bringing two remote associations together, for that vial was filled with Nantucket soundings.

CHAPTER CXVI

THE DYING WHALE

Not seldom in this life, when, on the right side, fortune's favorites sail close by us, we, though all adroop before, catch somewhat of the rushing breeze, and joyfully feel our bagging sails fill out. So seemed it with the Pequod. For next day after encountering the gay Bachelor, whales were seen and four were slain; and one of them by Ahab.

It was far down the afternoon; and when all the spearings of the crimson fight were done: and floating in the lovely sunset sea and sky, sun and whale both stilly died together; then, such a sweetness and such plaintiveness, such inwreathing orisons curled up in that rosy air, that it almost seemed as if far over from the deep green convent valleys of the Manilla isles, the Spanish land-breeze, wantonly turned sailor, had gone to sea, freighted with these vesper hymns.

Soothed again, but only soothed to deeper gloom, Ahab, who had sternal off from the whale, sat intently watching his final wanings from the now tranquil boat. For that strange spectacle observable in all sperm whales dying—the turning sunwards of the head, and so expiring—that strange spectacle, beheld of such a placid evening, somehow to Ahab conveyed a wondrousness unknown before.

"He turns and turns him to it,—how slowly, but how steadfastly, his homage-rendering and invoking brow, with his last dying motions. He too worships fire; most faithful, broad, baronial vassal of the sun!—Oh that these too-favoring eyes should see these too-favoring sights. Look! here, far water-locked; beyond all hum of human weal or woe; in these most candid and impartial seas; where to traditions no rocks furnish tablets; where for long Chinese ages, the billows have still rolled on speechless and unspoken to, as stars that shine upon the Niger's unknown source; here, too, life dies sunwards full of

faith; but seel no sooner dead, than death whirls round the corpse, and it heads some other way.—

“Oh, thou dark Hindoo half of nature, who of drowned bones hast builded thy separate throne somewhere in the heart of these unverdured seas; thou art an infidel, thou queen, and too truly speakest to me in the wide-slaughtering Typhoon, and the hushed burial of its after calm. Nor has this thy whale sunwards turned his dying head, and then gone round again, without a lesson to me.

“Oh, trebly hooped and welded hip of power! Oh, high aspiring, rainbowed jet!—that one strivest, this one jettest all in vain! In vain, oh whale, dost thou seek intercedings with yon all-quickenings sun, that only calls forth life, but gives it not again. Yet dost thou, darker half, rock me with a prouder, if a darker faith. All thy unnamable imminglings, float beneath me here; I am buoyed by breaths of once living things, exhaled as air, but water now.

“Then hail, for ever hail, O sea, in whose eternal tossings the wild fowl finds his only rest. Born of earth, yet suckled by the sea; though hill and valley mothered me, ye billows are my foster-brothers!”

CHAPTER CXVII

THE WHALE WATCH

THE four whales slain that evening had died wide apart; one, far to windward; one, less distant, to leeward; one ahead; one astern. These last three were brought alongside ere nightfall; but the windward one could not be reached till morning; and the boat that had killed it lay by its side all night; and that boat was Ahab's.

The waif-pole was thrust upright into the dead whale's spout-hole; and the lantern hanging from its top, cast a troubled flickering glare upon the black, glossy back, and far out upon the

midnight waves, which gently chafed the whale's broad flank, like soft surf upon a beach.

Ahab and all his boat's crew seemed asleep but the Parsee; who crouching in the bow, sat watching the sharks, that spectrally played round the whale, and tapped the light cedar planks with their tails. A sound like the moaning in squadrons over Asphaltites of unforgiven ghosts of Gomorrah, ran shuddering through the air.

Started from his slumbers, Ahab, face to face, saw the Parsee; and hooped round by the gloom of the night they seemed the last men in a flooded world. "I have dreamed it again," said he.

"Of the hearses? Have I not said, old man, that neither hearse nor coffin can be thine?"

"And who are hearsed that die on the sea?"

"But I said, old man, that ere thou couldst die on this voyage, two hearses must verily be seen by thee on the sea; the first not made by mortal hands; and the visible wood of the last one must be grown in America."

"Aye, ay! a strange sight that, Parsee:—a hearse and its plumes floating over the ocean with the waves for the pallbearers. Ha! Such a sight we shall not soon see."

"Believe it or not, thou canst not die till it be seen, old man."

"And what was that saying about thyself?"

"Though it come to the last, I shall still go before thee thy pilot."

"And when thou art so gone before—if that ever befall—then ere I can follow, thou must still appear to me, to pilot me still?—Was it not so? Well, then, did I believe all ye say, oh my pilot! I have here two pledges that I shall yet slay Moby Dick and survive it."

"Take another pledge, old man," said the Parsee, as his eyes lighted up like fire-flies in the gloom—"Hemp only can kill thee."

"The gallows, ye mean.—I am immortal then, on land and on sea," cried Ahab, with a laugh of derision;—"Immortal on land and on sea!"

Both were silent again, as one man. The grey dawn came on, and the slumbering crew arose from the boat's bottom, and ere noon the dead whale was brought to the ship.

*Like Moby Dick—
takes the prophetic
man what he wants
him to*

CHAPTER CXVIII

THE QUADRANT

THE season for the Line at length drew near; and every day when Ahab, coming from his cabin, cast his eyes aloft, the vigilant helmsman would ostentatiously handle his spokes, and the eager mariners quickly run to the braces, and would stand there with all their eyes centrally fixed on the nailed doubloon; impatient for the order to point the ship's prow for the equator. In good time the order came. It was hard upon high noon; and Ahab, seated in the bows of his high-hoisted boat, was about taking his wonted daily observation of the sun to determine his latitude.

Now, in that Japanese sea, the days in summer are as freshets of effulgence. That unblinkingly vivid Japanese sun seems the blazing focus of the glassy ocean's immeasurable burning-glass. The sky looks lacquered; clouds there are none; the horizon floats; and this nakedness of unrelieved radiance is as the insufferable splendors of God's throne. Well that Ahab's quadrant was furnished with colored glasses, through which to take sight of that solar fire. So, swinging his seated form to the roll of the ship, and with his astrological-looking instrument placed to his eye, he remained in that posture for some moments to catch the precise instant when the sun should gain its precise meridian. Meantime while his whole attention was absorbed, the Parsee was kneeling beneath him on the ship's deck, and with face thrown up like Ahab's, was eyeing the same sun with him; only the lids of his eyes half hooded their orbs, and his wild face was subdued to an earthly passionlessness. At length the desired observation was taken; and with his pencil upon his ivory leg, Ahab soon calculated what his latitude must be at that precise instant. Then falling into a moment's revery, he again looked up towards the sun and murmured to himself: "Thou sea-mark! thou high and mighty Pilot! thou tellest me truly

where I *am*—but canst thou cast the least hint where I *shall* be? Or canst thou tell where some other thing besides me is this moment living? Where is Moby Dick? This instant thou must be eyeing him. These eyes of mine look into the very eye that is even now beholding him; aye, and into the eye that is even now equally beholding the objects on the unknown, thither side of thee, thou sun!”

Then gazing at his quadrant, and handling, one after the other, its numerous cabalistical contrivances, he pondered again, and muttered: “Foolish toy! babies’ plaything of haughty Admirals, and Commodores, and Captains; the world brags of thee, of thy cunning and might; but what after all canst thou do, but tell the poor, pitiful point, where thou thyself happenest to be on this wide planet, and the hand that holds thee: no! not one jot more! Thou canst not tell where one drop of water or one grain of sand will be to-morrow noon; and yet with thy impotence thou insultest the sun! Science! Curse thee, thou vain toy; and cursed be all the things that cast man’s eyes aloft to that heaven, whose live vividness but scorches him, as these old eyes are even now scorched with thy light, O sun! Level by nature to this earth’s horizon are the glances of man’s eyes; not shot from the crown of his head, as if God had meant him to gaze on his firmament. Curse thee, thou quadrant!” dashing it to the deck, “no longer will I guide my earthly way by thee; the level ship’s compass, and the level dead-reckoning, by log and by line; *these* shall conduct me, and show me my place on the sea. Aye,” lighting from the boat to the deck, “thus I trample on thee, thou paltry thing that feebly pointest on high; thus I split and destroy thee!”

As the frantic old man thus spoke and thus trampled with his live and dead feet, a sneering triumph that seemed meant for Ahab, and a fatalistic despair that seemed meant for himself—these passed over the mute, motionless Parsee’s face. Unobserved he rose and glided away; while, awestruck by the aspect of their commander, the seamen clustered together on the forecastle, till Ahab, troubledly pacing the deck, shouted out—“To the braces! Up helm!—square in!”

In an instant the yards swung round; and as the ship half-

wheeled upon her heel, her three firm-seated graceful masts erectly poised upon her long, ribbed hull, seemed as the three Horatii pirouetting on one sufficient steed.

Standing between the knight-heads, Starbuck watched the Pequod's tumultuous way, and Ahab's also, as he went lurching along the deck.

"I have sat before the dense coal fire and watched it all aglow, full of its tormented flaming life; and I have seen it wane at last, down, down, to dumbest dust. Old man of oceans! of all this fiery life of thine, what will at length remain but one little heap of ashes!"

"Aye," cried Stubb, "but sea-coal ashes—mind ye that, Mr. Starbuck—sea-coal, not your common charcoal. Well, well; I heard Ahab mutter, 'Here some one thrusts these cards into these old hands of mine; swears that I must play them, and no others.' And damn me, Ahab, but thou actest right; live in the game, and die it!"

CHAPTER CXIX

THE CANDLES

WARMEST climes but nurse the cruellest fangs: the tiger of Bengal crouches in spiced groves of ceaseless verdure. Skies the most effulgent but basket the deadliest thunders: gorgeous Cuba knows tornadoes that never swept tame northern lands. So, too, it is, that in these resplendent Japanese seas the mariner encounters the direst of all storms, the Typhoon. It will sometimes burst from out that cloudless sky, like an exploding bomb upon a dazed and sleepy town.

Towards evening of that day, the Pequod was torn of her canvas, and bare-poled was left to fight a Typhoon which had struck her directly ahead. When darkness came on, sky and sea roared and split with the thunder, and blazed with the lightning, that showed the disabled masts fluttering here and there with

the rags which the first fury of the tempest had left for its after sport.

Holding by a shroud, Starbuck was standing on the quarter-deck; at every flash of the lightning glancing aloft, to see what additional disaster might have befallen the intricate hamper there; while Stubb and Flask were directing the men in the higher hoisting and firmer lashing of the boats. But all their pains seemed naught. Though lifted to the very top of the cranes, the windward quarter boat (Ahab's) did not escape. A great rolling sea, dashing high up against the reeling ship's high tetering side, stove in the boat's bottom at the stern, and left it again, all dripping through like a sieve.

"Bad work, bad work! Mr. Starbuck," said Stubb, regarding the wreck, "but the sea will have its way. Stubb, for one, can't fight it. You see, Mr. Starbuck, a wave has such a great long start before it leaps, all round the world it runs, and then comes the spring! But as for me, all the start I have to meet it, is just across the deck here. But never mind; it's all in fun: so the old song says;"—(*sings.*)

Oh! jolly is the gale,
And a joker is the whale,
A' flourishin' his tail,—

Such a funny, sporty, gamy, jesty, joky, hoky-poky lad, is the Ocean, oh!

The scud all a flyin',
That's his flip only foamin';
When he stirs in the spicin',—

Such a funny, sporty, gamy, jesty, joky, hoky-poky lad, is the Ocean, oh!

Thunder splits the ships,
But he only smacks his lips,
A tastin' of this flip,—

Such a funny, sporty, gamy, jesty, joky, hoky-poky lad, is the Ocean, oh!

"Avast Stubb," cried Starbuck, "let the Typhoon sing, and strike his harp here in our rigging; but if thou art a brave man thou wilt hold thy peace."

"But I am not a brave man; never said I was a brave man; I am a coward; and I sing to keep up my spirits. And I tell you what it is, Mr. Starbuck, there's no way to stop my singing

in this world but to cut my throat. And when that's done, ten to one I sing ye the doxology for a wind-up."

"Madman! look through my eyes if thou hast none of thine own."

"What! how can you see better of a dark night than anybody else, never mind how foolish?"

"Here!" cried Starbuck, seizing Stubb by the shoulder, and pointing his hand towards the weather bow, "markest thou not that the gale comes from the eastward, the very course Ahab is to run for Moby Dick? the very course he swung to this day noon? now mark his boat there; where is that stove? In the stern-sheets, man; where he is wont to stand—his stand-point is stove, man! Now jump overboard, and sing away, if thou must!"

"I don't half understand ye: what's in the wind?"

"Yes, yes, round the Cape of Good Hope is the shortest way to Nantucket," soliloquized Starbuck suddenly, heedless of Stubb's question. "The gale that now hammers at us to stave us, we can turn it into a fair wind that will drive us towards home. Yonder, to windward, all is blackness of doom; but to leeward, homeward—I see it lightens up there; but not with the lightning."

At that moment in one of the intervals of profound darkness, following the flashes, a voice was heard at his side; and almost at the same instant a volley of thunder peals rolled overhead.

"Who's there?"

"Old Thunder!" said Ahab, groping his way along the bulwarks to his pivot-hole; but suddenly finding his path made plain to him by elbowed lances of fire.

Now, as the lightning rod to a spire on shore is intended to carry off the perilous fluid into the soil; so the kindred rod which at sea some ships carry to each mast, is intended to conduct it into the water. But as this conductor must descend to considerable depth, that its end may avoid all contact with the hull; and as moreover, if kept constantly towing there, it would be liable to many mishaps, besides interfering not a little with some of the rigging, and more or less impeding the vessel's way in the water; because of all this, the lower parts of a ship's

fore shadowing

lightning-rods are not always overboard; but are generally made in long slender links, so as to be the more readily hauled up into the chains outside, or thrown down into the sea, as occasion may require.

"The rods! the rods!" cried Starbuck to the crew, suddenly admonished to vigilance by the vivid lightning that had just been darting flambeaux, to light Ahab to his post. "Are they overboard? drop them over, fore and aft. Quick!"

"Avast!" cried Ahab; "let's have fair play here, though we be the weaker side. Yet I'll contribute to raise rods on the Himmalehs and Andes, that all the world may be secured; but out on privileges! Let them be, sir."

"Look aloft!" cried Starbuck. "The corpusants! the corpusants!"

All the yard-arms were tipped with a pallid fire; and touched at each tri-pointed lightning-rod-end with three tapering white flames, each of the three tall masts was silently burning in that sulphurous air, like three gigantic wax tapers before an altar.

"Blast the boat! let it go!" cried Stubb at this instant, as a swashing sea heaved up under his own little craft, so that its gunwale violently jammed his hand, as he was passing a lashing. "Blast it!"—but slipping backward on the deck, his uplifted eyes caught the flames; and immediately shifting his tone, he cried—"The corpusants have mercy on us all!"

To sailors, oaths are household words; they will swear in the trance of the calm, and in the teeth of the tempest; they will imprecate curses from the topsail-yard-arms, when most they teter over to a seething sea; but in all my voyagings, seldom have I heard a common oath when God's burning finger has been laid on the ship; when His "Mene, Mene, Tekel Upharsin" has been woven into the shrouds and the cordage.

While this pallidness was burning aloft, few words were heard from the enchanted crew; who in one thick cluster stood on the forecastle, all their eyes gleaming in that pale phosphorescence, like a far away constellation of stars. Relieved against the ghostly light, the gigantic jet negro, Daggoo, loomed up to thrice his real stature, and seemed the black cloud from which the thunder had come. The parted mouth of Tashtego revealed his shark-white teeth, which strangely gleamed as if they too

had been tipped by corpusants; while lit up by the preternatural light, Queequeg's tattooing burned like Satanic blue flames on his body.

The tableau all waned at last with the pallidness aloft; and once more the Pequod and every soul on her decks were wrapped in a pall. A moment or two passed, when Starbuck, going forward, pushed against some one. It was Stubb. "What thinkest thou now, man; I heard thy cry; it was not the same in the song."

"No, no, it wasn't; I said the corpusants have mercy on us all; and I hope they will, still. But do they only have mercy on long faces?—have they no bowels for a laugh? And look ye, Mr. Starbuck—but it's too dark to look. Hear me, then: I take that mast-head flame we saw for a sign of good luck; for those masts are rooted in a hold that is going to be chock a' block with sperm-oil, d'ye see; and so, all that sperm will work up into the masts, like sap in a tree. Yes, our three masts will yet be as three spermaceti candles—that's the good promise we saw."

At that moment Starbuck caught sight of Stubb's face slowly beginning to glimmer into sight. Glancing upwards, he cried: "Seel seel" and once more the high tapering flames were beheld with what seemed redoubled supernaturalness in their pallor.

"The corpusants have mercy on us all," cried Stubb, again.

At the base of the mainmast, full beneath the doubloon and the flame, the Parsee was kneeling in Ahab's front, but with his head bowed away from him; while near by, from the arched and overhanging rigging, where they had just been engaged securing a spar, a number of the seamen, arrested by the glare, now cohered together, and hung pendulous, like a knot of numbed wasps from a drooping, orchard twig. In various enchanted attitudes, like the standing, or stepping, or running skeletons in Herculaneum, others remained rooted to the deck; but all their eyes upcast.

"Aye, aye, men!" cried Ahab. "Look up at it; mark it well; the white flame but lights the way to the White Whale! Hand me those main-mast links there; I would fain feel this pulse, and let mine beat against it; blood against fire! So."



Then turning—the last link held fast in his left hand, he put his foot upon the Parsee; and with fixed upward eye, and high-flung right arm, he stood erect before the lofty tri-pointed trinity of flames.

* "Oh! thou clear spirit of clear fire, whom on these seas I as Persian once did worship, till in the sacramental act so burned by thee, that to this hour I bear the scar; I now know thee, thou clear spirit, and I now know that thy right worship is defiance. To neither love nor reverence wilt thou be kind; and even for hate thou canst but kill; and all are killed. No fearless fool now fronts thee. I own thy speechless, placeless power; but to the last gasp of my earthquake life will dispute its unconditional, unintegral mastery in me. In the midst of the personified impersonal, a personality stands here. Though but a point at best; whencesoe'er I came; wheresoe'er I go; yet while I earthly live, the queenly personality lives in me, and feels her royal rights. But war is pain, and hate is woe. Come in thy lowest form of love, and I will kneel and kiss thee; but at thy highest, come as mere supernal power; and though thou launchest navies of full-freighted worlds, there's that in here that still remains indifferent. Oh, thou clear spirit, of thy fire thou madest me, and like a true child of fire, I breathe it back to thee."

[Sudden, repeated flashes of lightning; the nine flames leap lengthwise to thrice their previous height; Ahab, with the rest, closes his eyes, his right hand pressed hard upon them.]

Remembering "I own thy speechless, placeless power; said I not so? Nor was it wrung from me; nor do I now drop these links. Thou canst blind; but I can then grope. Thou canst consume; but I can then be ashes. Take the homage of these poor eyes, and shutter-hands. I would not take it. The lightning flashes through my skull; mine eye-balls ache and ache; my whole beaten brain seems as beheaded, and rolling on some stunning ground. Oh, oh! Yet blindfold, yet will I talk to thee. Light though thou be, thou leapest out of darkness; but I am darkness leaping out of light, leaping out of thee! The javelins cease; open eyes; see, or not? There burn the flames! Oh, thou magnanimous! now do I glory in my genealogy. But thou art but my fiery father; my sweet mother, I know not. Oh, cruel! what hast

thou done with her? There lies my puzzle; but thine is greater. Thou knowest not how came ye, hence callest thyself unbegotten; certainly knowest not thy beginning, hence callest thyself unbegun. I know that of me, which thou knowest not of thyself, oh, thou omnipotent. There is some unsuffusing thing beyond thee, thou clear spirit, to whom all thy eternity is but time, all thy creativeness mechanical. Through thee, thy flaming self, my scorched eyes do dimly see it. Oh, thou foundling fire, thou hermit immemorial, thou too hast thy incommunicable riddle, thy unparticipated grief. Here again with haughty agony, I read my sire. Leap! leap up, and lick the sky! I leap with thee; I burn with thee; would fain be welded with thee; defyingly I worship thee!"

"The boat! the boat!" cried Starbuck, "look at thy boat, old man!"

Ahab's harpoon, the one forged at Perth's fire, remained firmly lashed in its conspicuous crotch, so that it projected beyond his whale-boat's bow; but the sea that had stove its bottom had caused the loose leather sheath to drop off; and from the keen steel barb there now came a levelled flame of pale, forked fire. As the silent harpoon burned there like a serpent's tongue, Starbuck grasped Ahab by the arm—"God, God is against thee, old man; forbear! t'is an ill voyage! ill begun, ill continued; let me square the yards, while we may, old man, and make a fair wind of it homewards, to go on a better voyage than this."

Overhearing Starbuck, the panic-stricken crew instantly ran to the braces—though not a sail was left aloft. For the moment all the aghast mate's thoughts seemed theirs; they raised a half mutinous cry. But dashing the rattling lightning links to the deck, and snatching the burning harpoon, Ahab waved it like a torch among them; swearing to transfix with it the first sailor that but cast loose a rope's end. Petrified by his aspect, and still more shrinking from the fiery dart that he held, the men fell back in dismay, and Ahab again spoke:—

"All your oaths to hunt the White Whale are as binding as mine; and heart, soul, and body, lungs and life, old Ahab is bound. And that ye may know to what tune this heart beats;

look ye here; thus I blow out the last fear!" And with one blast of his breath he extinguished the flame.

As in the hurricane that sweeps the plain, men fly the neighborhood of some lone, gigantic elm, whose very height and strength but render it so much the more unsafe, because so much the more a mark for thunderbolts; so at those last words of Ahab's many of the mariners did run from him in a terror of dismay.

CHAPTER CXX

THE DECK TOWARDS THE END OF THE FIRST NIGHT WATCH

Ahab standing by the helm. Starbuck approaching him.

"WE must send down the main-top-sail yard, sir. The band is working loose, and the lee lift is half-stranded. Shall I strike it, sir?"

"Strike nothing; lash it. If I had sky-sail poles, I'd sway them up now."

"Sir?—in God's name!—sir?"

"Well."

"The anchors are working, sir. Shall I get them inboard?"

"Strike nothing, and stir nothing, but lash everything. The wind rises, but it has not got up to my table-lands yet. Quick, and see to it.—By masts and keels! he takes me for the hunch-backed skipper of some coasting smack. Send down my main-top-sail yard! Ho, gluepots! Loftiest trucks were made for wildest winds, and this brain-truck of mine now sails amid the cloud-scud. Shall I strike that? Oh, none but cowards send down their brain-trucks in tempest time. What a hooroosh aloft there! I would e'en take it for sublime, did I not know that the colic is a noisy malady. Oh, take medicine, take medicine!"

CHAPTER CXXI

MIDNIGHT—THE FORECASTLE BULWARKS

Stubb and Flask mounted on them, and passing additional lashings over the anchors there hanging.

"No, Stubb; you may pound that knot there as much as you please, but you will never pound into me what you were just now saying. And how long ago is it since you said the very contrary? Didn't you once say that whatever ship Ahab sails in, that ship should pay something extra on its insurance policy, just as though it were loaded with powder barrels aft and boxes of lucifers forward? Stop, now; didn't you say so?"

"Well, suppose I did? What then? I've part changed my flesh since that time, why not my mind? Besides, supposing we *are* loaded with powder barrels aft and lucifers forward; how the devil could the lucifers get afire in this drenching spray here? Why, my little man, you have pretty red hair, but you couldn't get afire now. Shake yourself; you're Aquarius, or the water-bearer, Flask; might fill pitchers at your coat collar. Don't you see, then, that for these extra risks the Marine Insurance companies have extra guarantees? Here are hydrants, Flask. But hark, again, and I'll answer ye the other thing. First take your leg off from the crown of the anchor here, though, so I can pass the rope; now listen. What's the mighty difference between holding a mast's lightning-rod in the storm, and standing close by a mast that hasn't got any lightning-rod at all in a storm? Don't you see, you timber-head, that no harm can come to the holder of the rod, unless the mast is first struck? What are you talking about, then? Not one ship in a hundred carries rods, and Ahab,—aye, man, and all of us,—were in no more danger then, in my poor opinion, than all the crews in ten thousand ships now sailing the seas. Why, you King-Post, you, I suppose you would have every man in the world go about

with a small lightning-rod running up the corner of his hat, like a militia officer's skewered feather, and trailing behind like his sash. Why don't ye be sensible, Flask? it's easy to be sensible; why don't ye, then? any man with half an eye can be sensible."

"I don't know that, Stubb. You sometimes find it rather hard."

"Yes, when a fellow's soaked through, it's hard to be sensible, that's a fact. And I am about drenched with this spray. Never mind; catch the turn there, and pass it. Seems to me we are lashing down these anchors now as if they were never going to be used again. Tying these two anchors here, Flask, seems like tying a man's hands behind him. And what big generous hands they are, to be sure. These are your iron fists, hey? What a hold they have, too! I wonder, Flask, whether the world is anchored anywhere; if she is, she swings with an uncommon long cable, though. There, hammer that knot down, and we've done. So; next to touching land, lighting on deck is the most satisfactory. I say, just wring out my jacket skirts, will ye? Thank ye. They laugh at long-togs so, Flask; but seems to me, a long tailed coat ought always to be worn in all storms afloat. The tails tapering down that way, serve to carry off the water, d'ye see. Same with cocked hats; the cocks form gable-end eave-troughs, Flask. No more monkey-jackets and tarpaulins for me; I must mount a swallow-tail, and drive down a beaver; so. Halloa! whew! there goes my tarpaulin overboard; Lord, Lord, that the winds that come from heaven should be so unmannerly! This is a nasty night, lad."

CHAPTER CXXII

MIDNIGHT ALOFT—THUNDER AND LIGHTNING

The Main-top-sail yard.—Tashtego passing new lashings around it.

“UM, um, um. Stop that thunder! Plenty too much thunder up here. What’s the use of thunder? Um, um, um. We don’t want thunder; we want rum; give us a glass of rum. Um, um, um!”

CHAPTER CXXIII

THE MUSKET

DURING the most violent shocks of the Typhoon, the man at the Pequod’s jaw-bone tiller had several times been reelingly hurled to the deck by its spasmodic motions, even though preventer tackles had been attached to it—for they were slack—because some play to the tiller was indispensable.

In a severe gale like this, while the ship is but a tossed shuttlecock to the blast, it is by no means uncommon to see the needles in the compasses, at intervals, go round and round. It was thus with the Pequod’s; at almost every shock the helmsman had not failed to notice the whirling velocity with which they revolved upon the cards; it is a sight that hardly any one can behold without some sort of unwonted emotion.

Some hours after midnight, the Typhoon abated so much, that through the strenuous exertions of Starbuck and Stubb—one engaged forward and the other aft—the shivered remnants of the jib and fore and main-top-sails were cut adrift from the spars, and went eddying away to leeward, like the feathers of

an albatross, which sometimes are cast to the winds when that storm-tossed bird is on the wing.

The three corresponding new sails were now bent and reefed, and a storm-trysail was set further aft; so that the ship soon went through the water with some precision again; and the course—for the present, East-south-east—which he was to steer, if practicable, was once more given to the helmsman. For during the violence of the gale, he had only steered according to its vicissitudes. But as he was now bringing the ship as near her course as possible, watching the compass meanwhile, lo! a good sign! the wind seemed coming round astern; aye, the foul breeze became fair!

Instantly the yards were squared, to the lively song of "*Ho! the fair wind! oh-he-yo, cheerly, men!*" the crew singing for joy, that so promising an event should so soon have falsified the evil portents preceding it.

In compliance with the standing order of his commander—to report immediately, and at any one of the twenty-four hours, any decided change in the affairs of the deck,—Starbuck had no sooner trimmed the yards to the breeze—however reluctantly and gloomily,—than he mechanically went below to apprise Captain Ahab of the circumstance.

Ere knocking at his state-room, he involuntarily paused before it a moment. The cabin lamp—taking long swings this way and that—was burning fitfully, and casting fitful shadows upon the old man's bolted door,—a thin one, with fixed blinds inserted, in place of upper panels. The isolated subterraneusness of the cabin made a certain humming silence to reign there, though it was hooped round by all the roar of the elements. The loaded muskets in the rack were shiningly revealed, as they stood upright against the forward bulkhead. Starbuck was an honest, upright man; but out of Starbuck's heart, at that instant when he saw the muskets, there strangely evolved an evil thought; but so blent with its neutral or good accompaniments that for the instant he hardly knew it for itself.

"He would have shot me once," he murmured, "yes, there's the very musket that he pointed at me;—that one with the studded stock; let me touch it—lift it. Strange, that I, who have

handled so many deadly lances, strange, that I should shake so now. Loaded? I must see. Aye, aye; and powder in the pan;—that's not good. Best spill it?—wait. I'll cure myself of this. I'll hold the musket boldly while I think.—I come to report a fair wind to him. But how fair? Fair for death and doom,—*that's* fair for Moby Dick. It's a fair wind that's only fair for that accursed fish.—The very tube he pointed at me!—the very one; *this* one—I hold it here; he would have killed me with the very thing I handle now.—Aye and he would fain kill all his crew. Does he not say he will not strike his spars to any gale? Has he not dashed his heavenly quadrant? and in these same perilous seas, gropes he not his way by mere dead reckoning of the error-abounding log? and in this very Typhoon, did he not swear that he would have no lightning-rods? But shall this crazed old man be tamely suffered to drag a whole ship's company down to doom with him?—Yes, it would make him the wilful murderer of thirty men and more, if this ship come to any deadly harm; and come to deadly harm, my soul swears this ship will, if Ahab have his way. If, then, he were this instant—put aside, that crime would not be his. Hal is he muttering in his sleep? Yes, just there,—in there, he's sleeping. Sleeping? aye, but still alive, and soon awake again. I can't withstand thee, then, old man. Not reasoning; not remonstrance; not entreaty wilt thou hearken to; all this thou scornest. Flat obedience to thy own flat commands, this is all thou breathest. Aye, and say'st the men have vow'd thy vow; say'st all of us are Ahabs. Great God forbid!—But is there no other way? no lawful way?—Make him a prisoner to be taken home? What! hope to wrest this old man's living power from his own living hands? Only a fool would try it. Say he were pinioned even; knotted all over with ropes and hawsers; chained down to ring-bolts on this cabin floor; he would be more hideous than a caged tiger, then. I could not endure the sight; could not possibly fly his howlings; all comfort, sleep itself, inestimable reason would leave me on the long intolerable voyage. What, then, remains? The land is hundreds of leagues away, and locked Japan the nearest. I stand alone here upon an open sea, with two oceans and a whole continent between me and law.—Aye, aye, 'tis so.—Is heaven a murderer

Hamlet & Claudius

when its lightning strikes a would-be murderer in his bed, tinding sheets and skin together?—And would I be a murderer, then, if”—— and slowly, stealthily, and half sideways looking, he placed the loaded musket’s end against the door.

“On this level, Ahab’s hammock swings within; his head this way. A touch, and Starbuck may survive to hug his wife and child again.—Oh Mary! Mary!—boy! boy! boy!—But if I wake thee not to death, old man, who can tell to what unsounded deeps Starbuck’s body this day week may sink, with all the crew! Great God, where art thou? Shall I? shall I? —— The wind has gone down and shifted, sir; the fore and main topsails are reefed and set; she heads her course.”

“Stern all! Oh Moby Dick, I clutch thy heart at last!”

Such were the sounds that now came hurtling from out the old man’s tormented sleep, as if Starbuck’s voice had caused the long dumb dream to speak.

The yet levelled musket shook like a drunkard’s arm against the panel; Starbuck seemed wrestling with an angel; but turning from the door, he placed the death-tube in its rack, and left the place.

“He’s too sound sleep, Mr. Stubb; go thou down, and wake him, and tell him. I must see to the deck here. Thou know’st what to say.”

CHAPTER CXXIV

THE NEEDLE

NEXT morning the not-yet-subsided sea rolled in long slow billows of mighty bulk, and striving in the Pequod’s gurgling track, pushed her on like giants’ palms outspread. The strong, unstaggering breeze abounded so, that sky and air seemed vast outbellying sails; the whole world boomed before the wind. Muffled in the full morning light, the invisible sun was only known by the spread intensity of his place; where his bayonet

rays moved on in stacks. Emblazonings, as of crowned Babylonian kings and queens, reigned over everything. The sea was as a crucible of molten gold, that bubblingly leaps with light and heat.

Long maintaining an enchanted silence, Ahab stood apart; and every time the tetering ship loweringly pitched down her bowsprit, he turned to eye the bright sun's rays produced ahead; and when she profoundly settled by the stern, he turned behind, and saw the sun's rearward place, and how the same yellow rays were blending with his undeviating wake.

"Ha, ha, my ship! thou mightest well be taken now for the sea-chariot of the sun. Ho, ho! all ye nations before my prow, I bring the sun to ye! Yoke on the further billows; hallo! a tandem, I drive the seal"

But suddenly reined back by some counter thought, he hurried towards the helm, huskily demanding how the ship was heading.

"East-sou-east, sir," said the frightened steersman.

"Thou liest!" smiting him with his clenched fist. "Heading East at this hour in the morning, and the sun astern?"

Upon this every soul was confounded; for the phenomenon just then observed by Ahab had unaccountably escaped every one else; but its very blinding palpableness must have been the cause.

Thrusting his head half way into the binnacle, Ahab caught one glimpse of the compasses; his uplifted arm slowly fell; for a moment he almost seemed to stagger. Standing behind him Starbuck looked, and lo! the two compasses pointed East, and the Pequod was as infallibly going West.

But ere the first wild alarm could get out abroad among the crew, the old man with a rigid laugh exclaimed, "I have it! It has happened before. Mr. Starbuck, last night's thunder turned our compasses—that's all. Thou hast before now heard of such a thing, I take it."

"Aye; but never before has it happened to me, sir," said the pale mate, gloomily.

Here, it must needs be said, that accidents like this have in more than one case occurred to ships in violent storms. The

magnetic energy, as developed in the mariner's needle, is, as all know, essentially one with the electricity beheld in heaven; hence it is not to be much marvelled at, that such things should be. In instances where the lightning has actually struck the vessel, so as to smite down some of the spars and rigging, the effect upon the needle has at times been still more fatal; all its loadstone virtue being annihilated, so that the before magnetic steel was of no more use than an old wife's knitting needle. But in either case, the needle never again, of itself, recovers the original virtue thus marred or lost; and if the binnacle compasses be affected, the same fate reaches all the others that may be in the ship; even were the lowermost one inserted into the keelson.

Deliberately standing before the binnacle, and eyeing the transpointed compasses, the old man, with the sharp of his extended hand, now took the precise bearing of the sun, and satisfied that the needles were exactly inverted, shouted out his orders for the ship's course to be changed accordingly. The yards were hard up; and once more the Pequod thrust her undaunted bows into the opposing wind, for the supposed fair one had only been juggling her.

Meanwhile, whatever were his own secret thoughts, Starbuck said nothing, but quietly he issued all requisite orders; while Stubb and Flask—who in some small degree seemed then to be sharing his feelings—likewise unmurmuringly acquiesced. As for the men, though some of them lowly rumbled, (their fear of Ahab was greater than their fear of Fate.) But as ever before, the pagan harpooneers remained almost wholly unimpressed; or if impressed, it was only with a certain magnetism shot into their congenial hearts from inflexible Ahab's.

For a space the old man walked the deck in rolling reveries. But chancing to slip with his ivory heel, he saw the crushed copper sight-tubes of the quadrant he had the day before dashed to the deck.

"Thou poor, proud heaven-gazer and sun's pilot! yesterday I wrecked thee, and to-day the compasses would feign have wrecked me. So, so. But Ahab is lord over the level load-stone

yet. Mr. Starbuck—a lance without a pole; a top-maul, and the smallest of the sail-maker's needles. Quick!"

Accessory, perhaps, to the impulse dictating the thing he was now about to do, were certain prudential motives, whose object might have been to revive the spirits of his crew by a stroke of his subtle skill, in a matter so wondrous as that of the inverted compasses. Besides, the old man well knew that to steer by transpointed needles, though clumsily practicable, was not a thing to be passed over by superstitious sailors, without some shudderings and evil portents.

"Men," said he, steadily turning upon the crew, as the mate handed him the things he had demanded, "my men, the thunder turned old Ahab's needles; but out of this bit of steel Ahab can make one of his own, that will point as true as any."

Abashed glances of servile wonder were exchanged by the sailors, as this was said; and with fascinated eyes they awaited whatever magic might follow. But Starbuck looked away.

With a blow from the top-maul Ahab knocked off the steel head of the lance, and then handing to the mate the long iron rod remaining, bade him hold it upright, without its touching the deck. Then, with the maul, after repeatedly smiting the upper end of this iron rod, he placed the blunted needle endwise on the top of it, and less strongly hammered that, several times, the mate still holding the rod as before. Then going through some small strange motions with it—whether indispensable to the magnetizing of the steel, or merely intended to augment the awe of the crew, is uncertain—he called for linen thread; and moving to the binnacle, slipped out the two reversed needles there, and horizontally suspended the sail-needle by its middle, over one of the compass-cards. At first, the steel went round and round, quivering and vibrating at either end; but at last it settled to its place, when Ahab, who had been intently watching for this result, stepped frankly back from the binnacle, and pointing his stretched arm towards it, exclaimed,—“Look ye, for yourselves, if Ahab be not lord of the level loadstone! The sun is East, and that compass swears it!”

One after another they peered in, for nothing but their own

eyes could persuade such ignorance as theirs, and one after another they slunk away.

/ In his fiery eyes of scorn and triumph, you then saw Ahab in all his fatal pride.

CHAPTER CXXV

THE LOG AND LINE

WHILE now the fated Pequod had been so long afloat this voyage, the log and line had but very seldom been in use. Owing to a confident reliance upon other means of determining the vessel's place, some merchantmen, and many whalers, especially when cruising, wholly neglect to heave the log; though at the same time, and frequently more for form's sake than anything else, regularly putting down upon the customary slate the course steered by the ship, as well as the presumed average rate of progression every hour. It had been thus with the Pequod. The wooden reel and angular log attached hung, long untouched, just beneath the railing of the after bulwarks. Rains and spray had damped it; sun and wind had warped it; all the elements had combined to rot a thing that hung so idly. But heedless of all this, his mood seized Ahab, as he happened to glance upon the reel, not many hours after the magnet scene, and he remembered how his quadrant was no more, and recalled his frantic oath about the level log and line. The ship was sailing plungingly; astern the billows rolled in riots.

"Forward, therel! Heave the log!"

Two seamen came. The golden-hued Tahitian and the grizzled Manxman. "Take the reel, one of ye, I'll heave."

They went towards the extreme stern, on the ship's lee side, where the deck, with the oblique energy of the wind, was now almost dipping into the creamy, sidelong-rushing sea.

The Manxman took the reel, and holding it high up, by the projecting handle-ends of the spindle, round which the spool

of line revolved, so stood with the angular log hanging downwards, till Ahab advanced to him.

Ahab stood before him, and was lightly unwinding some thirty or forty turns to form a preliminary hand-coil to toss overboard, when the old Manxman, who was intently eyeing both him and the line, made bold to speak.

"Sir, I mistrust it; this line looks far gone, long heat and wet have spoiled it."

"Twill hold, old gentleman. Long heat and wet, have they spoiled thee? Thou seem'st to hold. Or, truer perhaps, life holds thee; not thou it."

"I hold the spool, sir. But just as my captain says. With these grey hairs of mine 'tis not worth while disputing, 'specially with a superior, who'll ne'er confess."

"What's that? There now's a patched professor in Queen Nature's granite-founded College; but methinks he's too subservient. Where wert thou born?"

"In the little rocky Isle of Man, sir."

"Excellent! Thou'st hit the world by that."

"I know not, sir, but I was born there."

"In the Isle of Man, hey? Well, the other way, it's good. Here's a man from Man; a man born in once independent Man, and now unmanned of Man; which is sucked in—by what? Up with the reel! The dead, blind wall butts all inquiring heads at last. Up with it! So."

The log was heaved. The loose coils rapidly straightened out in a long dragging line astern, and then, instantly, the reel began to whirl. In turn, jerkingly raised and lowered by the rolling billows, the towing resistance of the log caused the old reelman to stagger strangely.

"Hold hard!"

Snap! the overstrained line sagged down in one long festoon; the tugging log was gone.

"I crush the quadrant, the thunder turns the needles, and now the mad sea parts the log-line. But Ahab can mend all. Haul in here, Tahitian; reel up, Manxman. And look ye, let the carpenter make another log, and mend thou the line. See to it."

"There he goes now; to him nothing's happened; but to me, the skewer seems loosening out of the middle of the world. Haul in, haul in, Tahitian! These lines run whole, and whirling out: come in broken, and dragging slow. Ha, Pip? come to help; eh, Pip?"

"Pip? whom call ye Pip? Pip jumped from the whale-boat. Pip's missing. Let's see now if ye haven't fished him up here, fisherman. It drags hard; I guess he's holding on. Jerk him, Tahiti! Jerk him off; we haul in no cowards here. Ho! there's his arm just breaking water. A hatchet! a hatchet! cut it off—we haul in no cowards here. Captain Ahab! sir, sir! here's Pip, trying to get on board again."

"Peace, thou crazy loon," cried the Manxman, seizing him by the arm. "Away from the quarter-deck!"

"The greater idiot ever scolds the lesser," muttered Ahab, advancing. "Hands off from that holiness! Where sayest thou Pip was, boy?"

"Astern there, sir, astern! Lo, lol!"

"And who art thou, boy? I see not my reflection in the vacant pupils of thy eyes. Oh God! that man should be a thing for immortal souls to sieve through! Who art thou, boy?"

"Bell-boy, sir; ship's-crier; ding, dong, ding! Pip! Pip! Pip! One hundred pounds of clay reward for Pip; five feet high—looks cowardly—quickest known by that! Ding, dong, ding! Who's seen Pip the coward?"

"There can be no hearts above the snow-line. Oh, ye frozen heavens! look down here. Ye did beget this luckless child, and have abandoned him, ye creative libertines. Here, boy; Ahab's cabin shall be Pip's home henceforth, while Ahab lives. Thou touchest my inmost centre, boy; thou art tied to me by cords woven of my heart-strings. Come, let's down."

"What's this? here's velvet shark-skin," intently gazing at Ahab's hand, and feeling it. "Ah, now, had poor Pip but felt so kind a thing as this, perhaps he had ne'er been lost! This seems to me, sir, as a man-rope; something that weak souls may hold by. Oh, sir, let old Perth now come and rivet these two hands together; the black one with the white, for I will not let this go."

"Oh, boy, nor will I thee, unless I should thereby drag thee to worse horrors than are here. Come, then, to my cabin. Lol ye believers in gods all goodness, and in man all ill, lo you! see the omniscient gods oblivious of suffering man; and man, though idiotic, and knowing not what he does, yet full of the sweet things of love and gratitude. Come! I feel prouder leading thee by thy black hand, than though I grasped an Emperor's!"

"There go two daft ones now," muttered the old Manxman. "One daft with strength, the other daft with weakness. But here's the end of the rotten line—all dripping, too. Mend it, eh? I think we had best have a new line altogether. I'll see Mr. Stubb about it."

CHAPTER CXXVI

THE LIFE-BUOY

STEERING now south-eastward by Ahab's levelled steel, and her progress solely determined by Ahab's level log and line; the Pequod held on her path towards the Equator. Making so long a passage through such unfrequented waters, descrying no ships, and ere long, sideways impelled by unvarying trade winds, over waves monotonously mild; all these seemed the strange calm things preluding some riotous and desperate scene.

At last, when the ship drew near to the outskirts, as it were, of the Equatorial fishing-ground, and in the deep darkness that goes before the dawn, was sailing by a cluster of rocky islets; the watch—then headed by Flask—was startled by a cry so plaintively wild and unearthly—like half-articulated wailings of the ghosts of all Herod's murdered Innocents—that one and all, they started from their reveries, and for the space of some moments stood, or sat, or leaned all transfixedly listening, like the carved Roman slave, while that wild cry remained within hearing. The Christian or civilized part of the crew said it was mermaids, and shuddered; but the pagan harpooneers remained

unappalled. Yet the grey Manxman—the oldest mariner of all—declared that the wild thrilling sounds that were heard, were the voices of newly drowned men in the sea.

Below in his hammock, Ahab did not hear of this till grey dawn, when he came to the deck; it was then recounted to him by Flask, not unaccompanied with hinted dark meanings. He hollowly laughed, and thus explained the wonder.

Those rocky islands the ship had passed were the resort of great numbers of seals, and some young seals that had lost their dams, or some dams that had lost their cubs, must have risen nigh the ship and kept company with her, crying and sobbing with their human sort of wail. But this only the more affected some of them, because most mariners cherish a very superstitious feeling about seals, arising not only from their peculiar tones when in distress, but also from the human look of their round heads and semi-intelligent faces, seen peeringly uprising from the water alongside. In the sea, under certain circumstances, seals have more than once been mistaken for men.

But the bodings of the crew were destined to receive a most plausible confirmation in the fate of one of their number that morning. At sun-rise this man went from his hammock to his mast-head at the fore; and whether it was that he was not yet half waked from his sleep (for sailors sometimes go aloft in a transition state), whether it was thus with the man, there is now no telling; but, be that as it may, he had not been long at his perch, when a cry was heard—a cry and a rushing—and looking up, they saw a falling phantom in the air; and looking down, a little tossed heap of white bubbles in the blue of the sea.

The life-buoy—a long slender cask—was dropped from the stern, where it always hung obedient to a cunning spring; but no hand rose to seize it, and the sun having long beat upon this cask it had shrunken, so that it slowly filled, and the parched wood also filled at its every pore; and the studded iron-bound cask followed the sailor to the bottom, as if to yield him his pillow, though in sooth but a hard one.

And thus the first man of the Pequod that mounted the mast to look out for the White Whale, on the White Whale's own

peculiar ground; that man was swallowed up in the deep. But few, perhaps, thought of that at the time. Indeed, in some sort, they were not grieved at this event, at least as a portent; for they regarded it, not as a foreshadowing of evil in the future, but as the fulfilment of an evil already presaged. They declared that now they knew the reason of those wild shrieks they had heard the night before. But again the old Manxman said nay.

The lost life-buoy was now to be replaced; Starbuck was directed to see to it; but as no cask of sufficient lightness could be found, and as in the feverish eagerness of what seemed the approaching crisis of the voyage, all hands were impatient of any toil but what was directly connected with its final end, whatever that might prove to be; therefore, they were going to leave the ship's stern unprovided with a buoy, when by certain strange signs and inuendoes Queequeg hinted a hint concerning his coffin.

"A life-buoy of a coffin!" cried Starbuck, starting.

✓ life from death

"Rather queer, that, I should say," said Stubb.

"It will make a good enough one," said Flask, "the carpenter here can arrange it easily."

"Bring it up; there's nothing else for it," said Starbuck, after a melancholy pause. "Rig it, carpenter; do not look at me so—the coffin, I mean. Dost thou hear me? Rig it."

"And shall I nail down the lid, sir?" moving his hand as with a hammer.

"Aye."

"And shall I caulk the seams, sir?" moving his hand as with a caulking-iron.

"Aye."

"And shall I then pay over the same with pitch, sir?" moving his hand as with a pitch-pot.

"Away! What possesses thee to this? Make a life-buoy of the coffin, and no more.—Mr. Stubb, Mr. Flask, come forward with me."

"He goes off in a huff. The whole he can endure; at the parts he baulks. Now I don't like this. I make a leg for Captain Ahab, and he wears it like a gentleman; but I make a bandbox for Queequeg, and he wont put his head into it. Are

all my pains to go for nothing with that coffin? And now I'm ordered to make a life-buoy of it. It's like turning an old coat; going to bring the flesh on the other side now. I don't like this cobbling sort of business—I don't like it at all; its undignified; it's not my place. Let tinkers' brats do tinkering; we are their betters. I like to take in hand none but clean, virgin, fair-and-square mathematical jobs, something that regularly begins at the beginning, and is at the middle when midway, and comes to an end at the conclusion; not a cobbler's job, that's at an end in the middle, and at the beginning at the end. It's the old woman's tricks to be giving cobbling jobs. Lord! what an affection all old women have for tinkers. I know an old woman of sixty-five who ran away with a bald-headed young tinker once. And that's the reason I never would work for lonely widow old women ashore, when I kept my job-shop in the Vineyard; they might have taken it into their lonely old heads to run off with me. But heigh-ho! there are no caps at sea but snow-caps. Let me see. Nail down the lid; caulk the seams; pay over the same with pitch; batten them down tight, and hang it with the snap-spring over the ship's stern. Were ever such things done before with a coffin? Some superstitious old carpenters, now, would be tied up in the rigging, ere they would do the job. But I'm made of knotty Aroostook hemlock; I don't budge. Cruppered with a coffin! Sailing about with a grave-yard tray! But never mind. We workers in woods make bridal-bedsteads and card-tables, as well as coffins and hearses. We work by the month, or by the job, or by the profit; not for us to ask the why and wherefore of our work, unless it be too confounded cobbling, and then we stash it if we can. Hem! I'll do the job, now, tenderly. I'll have me—let's see—how many in the ship's company, all told? But I've forgotten. Any way, I'll have me thirty separate, Turk's-headed life-lines, each three feet long hanging all round to the coffin. Then, if the hull go down, there'll be thirty lively fellows all fighting for one coffin, a sight not seen very often beneath the sun. Come hammer, calking-iron, pitch-pot, and marling-spikel! Let's to it."

CHAPTER CXXVII

THE DECK

The coffin laid upon two line-tubs, between the vice-bench and the open hatchway; the Carpenter calking its seams; the string of twisted oakum slowly unwinding from a large roll of it placed in the bosom of his frock.—Ahab comes slowly from the cabin-gangway, and hears Pip following him.

"BACK, lad; I will be with ye again presently. He goes! Not this hand complies with my humor more genially than that boy.—Middle aisle of a church! What's here?"

"Life buoy, sir. Mr. Starbuck's orders. Oh, look, sir! Beware the hatchway!"

"Thank ye, man. Thy coffin lies handy to the vault."

"Sir? The hatchway? oh! So it does, sir, so it does."

"Art not thou the leg-maker? Look, did not this stump come from thy shop?"

"I believe it did, sir; does the ferrule stand, sir?"

"Well enough. But art thou not also the undertaker?"

"Aye, sir; I patched up this thing here as a coffin for Queequeg; but they've set me now to turning it into something else."

"Then tell me; art thou not an arrant, all-grasping, intermeddling, monopolizing, heathenish old scamp, to be one day making legs, and the next day coffins to clap them in, and yet again life-buoys out of those same coffins? Thou art as unprincipled as the gods, and as much of a jack-of-all-trades."

"But I do not mean anything, sir. I do as I do."

"The gods again. Hark ye, dost thou not ever sing working about a coffin? The Titans, they say, hummed snatches when chipping out the craters for volcanoes; and the grave-digger in the play sings, spade in hand. Dost thou never?"

"Sing, sir? Do I sing? Oh, I'm indifferent enough, sir, for that; but the reason why the grave-digger made music must

Hamlet

have been because there was none in his spade, sir. But the calking mallet is full of it. Hark to it."

"Aye, and that's because the lid there's a sounding-board; and what in all things makes the sounding-board is this—there's naught beneath. And yet, a coffin with a body in it rings pretty much the same, Carpenter. Hast thou ever helped carry a bier, and heard the coffin knock against the churchyard gate, going in?"

"Faith, sir, I've ——"

"Faith? What's that?"

"Why, faith, sir, it's only a sort of exclamation-like—that's all, sir."

"Um, um; go on."

"I was about to say, sir, that ——"

"Art thou a silk-worm? Dost thou spin thy own shroud out of thyself? Look at thy bosom! Despatch! and get these traps out of sight."

"He goes aft. That was sudden, now; but squalls come sudden in hot latitudes. I've heard that the Isle of Albemarle, one of the Gallipagos, is cut by the Equator right in the middle. Seems to me some sort of Equator cuts yon old man, too, right in his middle. He's always under the Line—fiery hot, I tell ye! He's looking this way—come, oakum; quick. Here we go again. This wooden mallet is the cork, and I'm the professor of musical glasses—tap, tap!"

(Ahab to himself.)

"There's a sight! There's a sound! The greyheaded woodpecker tapping the hollow tree! Blind and dumb might well be envied now. See! that thing rests on two line-tubs, full of tow-lines. A most malicious wag, that fellow. Rat-tat! So man's seconds tick! Oh! how immaterial are all materials! What things real are there, but imponderable thoughts? Here now's the very dreaded symbol of grim death, by a mere hap, made the expressive sign of the help and hope of most endangered life. A life-buoy of a coffin! Does it go further? Can it be that in some spiritual sense the coffin is, after all, but an immortality-preserver! I'll think of that. But no. So far gone

am I in the dark side of earth, that its other side, the theoretic bright one, seems but uncertain twilight to me. Will ye never have done, Carpenter, with that accursed sound? I go below; let me not see that thing here when I return again. Now, then, Pip, we'll talk this over; I do suck most wondrous philosophies from thee! Some unknown conduits from the unknown worlds must empty into thee!"

CHAPTER CXXVIII

THE PEQUOD MEETS THE RACHEL

NEXT day, a large ship, the Rachel, was descried, bearing directly down upon the Pequod, all her spars thickly clustering with men. At the time the Pequod was making good speed through the water; but as the broad-winged windward stranger shot nigh to her, the boastful sails all fell together as blank bladders that are burst, and all life fled from the smitten hull.

"Bad news; she brings bad news," muttered the old Manxman. But ere her commander, who, with trumpet to mouth, stood up in his boat; ere he could hopefully hail, Ahab's voice was heard.

"Hast seen the White Whale?"

"Aye, yesterday. Have ye seen a whale-boat adrift?"

Throttling his joy, Ahab negatively answered this unexpected question; and would then have fain boarded the stranger, when the stranger captain himself, having stopped his vessel's way, was seen descending her side. A few keen pulls, and his boat-hook soon clinched the Pequod's main-chains, and he sprang to the deck. Immediately he was recognized by Ahab for a Nantucketer he knew. But no formal salutation was exchanged.

"Where was he?—not killed!—not killed!" cried Ahab, closely advancing. "How was it?"

It seemed that somewhat late on the afternoon of the day previous, while three of the stranger's boats were engaged with

a shoal of whales, which had led them some four or five miles from the ship; and while they were yet in swift chase to windward, the white hump and head of Moby Dick had suddenly loomed up out of the blue water, not very far to leeward; whereupon, the fourth rigged boat—a reserved one—had been instantly lowered in chase. After a keen sail before the wind, this fourth boat—the swiftest keeled of all—seemed to have succeeded in fastening—at least, as well as the man at the mast-head could tell anything about it. In the distance he saw the diminished dotted boat; and then a swift gleam of bubbling white water; and after that nothing more; whence it was concluded that the stricken whale must have indefinitely run away with his pursuers, as often happens. There was some apprehension, but no positive alarm, as yet. The recall signals were placed in the rigging; darkness came on; and forced to pick up her three far to windward boats—ere going in quest of the fourth one in the precisely opposite direction—the ship had not only been necessitated to leave that boat to its fate till near midnight, but, for the time, to increase her distance from it. But the rest of her crew being at last safe aboard, she crowded all sail—stunsail on stunsail—after the missing boat; kindling a fire in her try-pots for a beacon; and every other man aloft on the look-out. But though when she had thus sailed a sufficient distance to gain the presumed place of the absent ones when last seen; though she then paused to lower her spare boats to pull all around her; and not finding anything, had again dashed on; again paused, and lowered her boats; and though she had thus continued doing till day light; yet not the least glimpse of the missing keel had been seen.

The story told, the stranger Captain immediately went on to reveal his object in boarding the Pequod. He desired that ship to unite with his own in the search; by sailing over the sea some four or five miles apart, on parallel lines, and so sweeping a double horizon, as it were.

“I will wager something now,” whispered Stubb to Flask,
/ “that some one in that missing boat wore off that Captain’s best coat; mayhap, his watch—he’s so cursed anxious to get it back. Who ever heard of two pious whale-ships cruising after

one missing whale-boat in the height of the whaling season? See, Flask, only see how pale he looks—pale in the very buttons of his eyes—look—it wasn't the coat—it must have been the——”

“My boy, my own boy is among them. For God's sake—I beg, I conjure”—here exclaimed the stranger Captain to Ahab, who thus far had but icily received his petition. “For eight-and-forty hours let me charter your ship—I will gladly pay for it, and roundly pay for it—if there be no other way—for eight-and-forty hours only—only that—you must, oh, you must, and you *shall* do this thing.”

“His son!” cried Stubb, “oh, it's his son he's lost! I take back the coat and watch—what says Ahab? We must save that boy.”

“He's drowned with the rest on 'em, last night,” said the old Manx sailor standing behind them; “I heard; all of ye heard their spirits.”

Now, as it shortly turned out, what made this incident of the Rachel's the more melancholy, was the circumstance, that not only was one of the Captain's sons among the number of the missing boat's crew; but among the number of the other boat's crews, at the same time, but on the other hand, separated from the ship during the dark vicissitudes of the chase, there had been still another son; as that for a time, the wretched father was plunged to the bottom of the cruellest perplexity; which was only solved for him by his chief mate's instinctively adopting the ordinary procedure of a whale-ship in such emergencies, that is, when placed between jeopardized but divided boats, always to pick up the majority first. But the captain, for some unknown constitutional reason, had refrained from mentioning all this, and not till forced to it by Ahab's iciness did he allude to his one yet missing boy; a little lad, but twelve years old, whose father with the earnest but unmisgiving hardihood of a Nantucketer's paternal love, had thus early sought to initiate him in the perils and wonders of a vocation almost immemorially the destiny of all his race. Nor does it unfrequently occur, that Nantucket captains will send a son of such tender age away from them, for a protracted three or four years' voyage in some other ship than their own; so that their first knowledge of a whaleman's career shall be unenervated by any chance display

of a father's natural but untimely partiality, or undue apprehensiveness and concern.

Meantime, now the stranger was still beseeching his poor boon of Ahab; and Ahab still stood like an anvil, receiving every shock, but without the least quivering of his own.

"I will not go," said the stranger, "till you say *aye* to me. Do to me as you would have me do to you in the like case. For *you* too have a boy, Captain Ahab—though but a child, and nestling safely at home now—a child of your old age too—Yes, yes, you relent; I see it—run, run, men, now, and stand by to square in the yards."

"Avast," cried Ahab—"touch not a rope-yarn;" then in a voice that prolongingly moulded every word—"Captain Gardiner, I will not do it. Even now I lose time. Good bye, good bye. God bless ye, man, and may I forgive myself, but I must go. Mr. Starbuck, look at the binnacle watch, and in three minutes from this present instant warn off all strangers: then grace forward again, and let the ship sail as before."

Hurriedly turning, with averted face, he descended into his cabin, leaving the strange captain transfixed at this unconditional and utter rejection of his so earnest suit. But starting from his enchantment, Gardiner silently hurried to the side; more fell than stepped into his boat, and returned to his ship.

Soon the two ships diverged their wakes; and long as the strange vessel was in view, she was seen to yaw hither and thither at every dark spot, however small, on the sea. This way and that her yards were swung round; starboard and larboard, she continued to tack; now she beat against a head sea; and again it pushed her before it; while all the while, her masts and yards were thickly clustered with men, as three tall cherry trees, when the boys are cherrying among the boughs.

But by her still halting course and winding, woful way, you plainly saw that this ship that so wept with spray, still remained without comfort. She was Rachel, weeping for her children, because they were not.

CHAPTER CXXIX

THE CABIN

(Ahab moving to go on deck; Pip catches him by the hand to follow.)

"LAD, lad, I tell thee thou must not follow Ahab now. The hour is coming when Ahab would not scare thee from him, yet would not have thee by him. There is that in thee, poor lad, which I feel too curing to my malady. Like cures like; and for this hunt, my malady becomes my most desired health. Do thou abide below here, where they shall serve thee, as if thou wert the captain. Aye, lad, thou shalt sit here in my own screwed chair; another screw to it, thou must be."

"No, no, no! ye have not a whole body, sir; do ye but use poor me for your one lost leg; only tread upon me, sir; I ask no more, so I remain a part of ye."

"Oh! spite of million villains, this makes me a bigot in the fadeless fidelity of man!—and a black! and crazy!—but methinks like-cures-like applies to him too; he grows so sane again."

"They tell me, sir, that Stubb did once desert poor little Pip, whose drowned bones now show white, for all the blackness of his living skin. But I will never desert ye, sir, as Stubb did him. Sir, I must go with ye."

"If thou speakest thus to me much more, Ahab's purpose keels up in him. I tell thee no; it cannot be."

"Oh good master, master, master!"

"Weep so, and I will murder thee! have a care, for Ahab too is mad. Listen, and thou wilt often hear my ivory foot upon the deck, and still know that I am there. And now I quit thee. Thy hand!—Met! True art thou, lad, as the circumference to its centre. So: God for ever bless thee; and if it come to that,—God for ever save thee, let what will befall."

(Ahab goes; Pip steps one step forward.)

"Here he this instant stood; I stand in his air,—but I'm alone. Now were even poor Pip here I could endure it, but he's missing. Pip! Pip! Ding, dong, ding! Who's seen Pip? He must be up here; let's try the door. What? neither lock, nor bolt, nor bar; and yet there's no opening it. It must be the spell; he told me to stay here: Aye, and told me this screwed chair was mine. Here, then, I'll seat me, against the transom, in the ship's full middle, all her keel and her three masts before me. Here, our old sailors say, in their black seventy-fours great admirals sometimes sit at table, and lord it over rows of captains and lieutenants. Hal! what's this? epaulets! epaulets! the epaulets all come crowding! Pass round the decanters; glad to see ye; fill up, monsieurs! What an odd feeling, now, when a black boy's host to white men with gold lace upon their coats!—Monsieurs, have ye seen one Pip?—a little negro lad, five feet high, hang-dog look, and cowardly! Jumped from a whale-boat once;—seen him? No! Well then, fill up again, captains, and let's drink shame upon all cowards! I name no names. Shame upon them! Put one foot upon the table. Shame upon all cowards.—Hist! above there, I hear ivory—Oh, master! master! I am indeed down-hearted when you walk over me. But here I'll stay, though this stern strikes rocks; and they bulge through; and oysters come to join me."

CHAPTER CXXX

THE HAT

AND now that at the proper time and place, after so long and wide a preliminary cruise, Ahab,—all other whaling waters swept—seemed to have chased his foe into an ocean-fold, to slay him the more securely there; now, that he found himself hard by the very latitude and longitude where his tormenting wound

had been inflicted; now that a vessel had been spoken which on the very day preceding had actually encountered Moby Dick;—and now that all his successive meetings with various ships contrastingly concurred to show the demoniac indifference with which the white whale tore his hunters, whether sinning or sinned against; now it was that there lurked a something in the old man's eyes, which it was hardly sufferable for feeble souls to see. As the unsetting polar star, which through the livelong, arctic, six months' night sustains its piercing, steady, central gaze; so Ahab's purpose now fixedly gleamed down upon the constant midnight of the gloomy crew. It domineered above them so, that all their bodings, doubts, misgivings, fears, were fain to hide beneath their souls, and not sprout forth a single spear or leaf.

In this foreshadowing interval too, all humor, forced or natural, vanished. Stubb no more strove to raise a smile; Starbuck no more strove to check one. Alike, joy and sorrow, hope and fear, seemed ground to finest dust, and powdered, for the time, in the clamped mortar of Ahab's iron soul. Like machines, they dumbly moved about the deck, ever conscious that the old man's despot eye was on them.

But did you deeply scan him in his more secret confidential hours; when he thought no glance but one was on him; then you would have seen that even as Ahab's eyes so awed the crew's, the inscrutable Parsee's glance awed his; or somehow, at least, in some wild way, at times affected it. Such an added, gliding strangeness began to invest the thin Fedallah now; such ceaseless shudderings shook him; that the men looked dubious at him; half uncertain, as it seemed, whether indeed he were a mortal substance, or else a tremulous shadow cast upon the deck by some unseen being's body. And that shadow was always hovering there. For not by night, even, had Fedallah ever certainly been known to slumber, or go below. He would stand still for hours: but never sat or leaned; his wan but wondrous eyes did plainly say—We two watchmen never rest.

Nor, at any time, by night or day could the mariners now **step** up the deck, unless Ahab was before them; either **standing** in his pivot-hole, or exactly pacing the planks between two

undeviating limits,—the main-mast and the mizen; or else they saw him standing in the cabin-scuttle,—his living foot advanced upon the deck, as if to step; his hat slouched heavily over his eyes; so that however motionless he stood, however the days and nights were added on, that he had not swung in his hammock; yet hidden beneath that slouching hat, they could never tell unerringly whether, for all this, his eyes were really closed at times; or whether he was still intently scanning them; no matter, though he stood so in the scuttle for a whole hour on the stretch, and the unheeded night-damp gathered in beads of dew upon that stone-carved coat and hat. The clothes that the night had wet, the next day's sunshine dried upon him; and so, day after day, and night after night; he went no more beneath the planks; whatever he wanted from the cabin that thing he sent for.

He ate in the same open air; that is, his two only meals,—breakfast and dinner: supper he never touched; nor reaped his beard; which darkly grew all gnarled, as unearthed roots of trees blown over, which still grow idly on at naked base, though perished in the upper verdure. But though his whole life was now become one watch on deck; and though the ✓ Parsee's mystic watch was without intermission as his own; yet these two never seemed to speak—one man to the other—unless at long intervals some passing unmomentous matter made it necessary. Though such a potent spell seemed secretly to join the twain; openly, and to the awe-struck crew, they seemed pole-like asunder. If by day they chanced to speak one word; by night, dumb men were both, so far as concerned the slightest verbal interchange. At times, for longest hours, without a single hail, they stood far parted in the starlight; Ahab in his scuttle, the Parsee by the mainmast; but still fixedly gazing upon each other; as if in the Parsee Ahab saw his forethrown shadow, in Ahab the Parsee his abandoned substance.

And yet, somehow, did Ahab—in his own proper self, as daily, hourly, and every instant, commandingly revealed to his subordinates,—Ahab seemed an independent lord; the Parsee but his slave. Still again both seemed yoked together, and an unseen

tyrant driving them; the lean shade siding the solid rib. For be this Parsee what he may, all rib and keel was solid Ahab.

At the first faintest glimmering of the dawn, his iron voice was heard from aft—"Man the mast-heads!"—and all through the day, till after sunset and after twilight, the same voice every hour, at the striking of the helmsman's bell, was heard—"What d'ye see?—sharp! sharp!"

But when three or four days had slid by, after meeting the children-seeking Rachel; and no spout had yet been seen; the monomaniac old man seemed distrustful of his crew's fidelity; at least, of nearly all except the Pagan harpooneers; he seemed to doubt, even, whether Stubb and Flask might not willingly overlook the sight he sought. But if these suspicions were really his, he sagaciously refrained from verbally expressing them, however his actions might seem to hint them.

"I will have the first sight of the whale myself,"—he said. "Aye! Ahab must have the doubloon!" and with his own hands he rigged a nest of basketed bowlines; and sending a hand aloft, with a single sheaved block, to secure to the main-mast head, he received the two ends of the downward-reeved rope; and attaching one to his basket prepared a pin for the other end, in order to fasten it at the rail. This done, with that end yet in his hand and standing beside the pin, he looked round upon his crew, sweeping from one to the other; pausing his glance long upon Daggoo, Queequeg, Tashtego; but shunning Fedallah; and then settling his firm relying eye upon the chief mate, said,—*"Take the rope, sir—I give it into thy hands, Starbuck."* Then arranging his person in the basket, he gave the word for them to hoist him to his perch, Starbuck being the one who secured the rope at last; and afterwards stood near it. And thus, with one hand clinging round the royal mast, Ahab gazed abroad upon the sea for miles and miles,—ahead, astern, this side, and that,—within the wide expanded circle commanded at so great a height.

When in working with his hands at some lofty almost isolated place in the rigging, which chances to afford no foothold, the sailor at sea is hoisted up to that spot, and sustained there by

the rope; under these circumstances, its fastened end on deck is always given in strict charge to some one man who has the special watch of it. Because in such a wilderness of running rigging, whose various different relations aloft cannot always be infallibly discerned by what is seen of them at the deck; and when the deck-ends of these ropes are being every few minutes cast down from the fastenings, it would be but a natural fatality, if, unprovided with a constant watchman, the hoisted sailor should by some carelessness of the crew be cast adrift and fall all swooping to the sea. So Ahab's proceedings in this matter were not unusual; the only strange thing about them seemed to be, that Starbuck, almost the one only man who had ever ventured to oppose him with anything in the slightest degree approaching to decision—one of those too, whose faithfulness on the look-out he had seemed to doubt somewhat;—it was strange, that this was the very man he should select for his watchman; freely giving his whole life into such an otherwise distrusted person's hands.

Now, the first time Ahab was perched aloft; ere he had been there ten minutes; one of those red-billed savage sea-hawks which so often fly incommodiously close round the manned mast-heads of whalers in these latitudes; one of these birds came wheeling and screaming round his head in a maze of untrackably swift circlings. Then it darted a thousand feet straight up into the air; then spiralized downwards, and went eddying again round his head.

But with his gaze fixed upon the dim and distant horizon, Ahab seemed not to mark this wild bird; nor, indeed, would any one else have marked it much, it being no uncommon circumstance; only now almost the least heedful eye seemed to see some sort of cunning meaning in almost every sight.

"Your hat, your hat, sir!" suddenly cried the Sicilian seaman, who being posted at the mizen-mast-head, stood directly behind Ahab, though somewhat lower than his level, and with a deep gulf of air dividing them.

But already the sable wing was before the old man's eyes; the long hooked bill at his head: with a scream, the black hawk darted away with his prize.

An eagle flew thrice round Tarquin's head, removing his cap to replace it, and thereupon Tanaquil, his wife, declared that Tarquin would be king of Rome. But only by the replacing of the cap was that omen accounted good. (Ahab's hat was never restored; the wild hawk flew on and on with it; far in advance of the prow: and at last disappeared; while from the point of that disappearance, a minute black spot was dimly discerned, falling from that vast height into the sea.)

CHAPTER CXXXI

THE PEQUOD MEETS THE DELIGHT

THE intense Pequod sailed on; the rolling waves and days went by; the life-buoy-coffin still lightly swung; and another ship, most miserably misnamed the Delight, was descried. As she drew nigh, all eyes were fixed upon her broad beams, called shears, which, in some whaling-ships, cross the quarter-deck at the height of eight or nine feet; serving to carry the spare, unrigged, or disabled boats.

Upon the stranger's shears were beheld the shattered, ~~white~~ ribs, and some few splintered planks, of what had once been a whale-boat; but you now saw through this wreck, as plainly as you see through the peeled, half-unhinged, and bleaching skeleton of a horse.

"Hast seen the White Whale?"

"Look!" replied the hollow-cheeked captain from his taffrail; and with his trumpet he pointed to the wreck.

"Hast killed him?"

"The harpoon is not yet forged that will ever do that," answered the other, sadly glancing upon a rounded hammock on the deck, whose gathered sides some noiseless sailors were busy in sewing together.

"Not forged!" and snatching Perth's levelled iron from the crotch, Ahab held it out, exclaiming—"Look ye, Nantucketer;

here in this hand I hold his death! Tempered in blood, and tempered by lightning are these barbs; and I swear to temper them triply in that hot place behind the fin, where the White Whale most feels his accursed life!"

"Then God keep thee, old man—see'st thou that"—pointing to the hammock—"I bury but one of five stout men, who were alive only yesterday; but were dead ere night. Only *that* one I bury; the rest were buried before they died; you sail upon their tomb." Then turning to his crew—"Are ye ready there? place the plank then on the rail, and lift the body; so, then—Oh! God"—advancing towards the hammock with uplifted hands—"may the resurrection and the life——"

"Brace forward! Up helm!" cried Ahab like lightning to his men.

But the suddenly started Pequod was not quick enough to escape the sound of the splash that the corpse soon made as it struck the sea; not so quick, indeed, but that some of the flying bubbles might have sprinkled her hull with their ghostly baptism.

As Ahab now glided from the dejected Delight, the strange life-buoy hanging at the Pequod's stern came into conspicuous relief.

"Ha! yonder! look yonder, men!" cried a foreboding voice in her wake. "In vain, oh, ye strangers, ye fly our sad burial; ye but turn us your taffrail to show us your coffin!"

CHAPTER CXXXII

THE SYMPHONY

It was a clear steel-blue day. The firmaments of air and sea were hardy separable in that all-pervading azure; only, the pensive air was transparently pure and soft, with a woman's look, and the robust and man-like sea heaved with long, strong, lingering swells, as Samson's chest in his sleep.

Hither, and thither, on high, glided the snow-white wings of small, unspeckled birds; these were the gentle thoughts of the feminine air; but to and fro in the deeps, far down in the bottomless blue, rushed mighty leviathans, sword-fish, and sharks; and these were the strong, troubled, murderous thinkings of the masculine sea.

But though thus contrasting within, the contrast was only in shades and shadows without; those two seemed one; it was only the sex, as it were, that distinguished them.

Aloft, like a royal czar and king, the sun seemed giving this gentle air to this bold and rolling sea; even as bride to groom. And at the girdling line of the horizon, a soft and tremulous motion—most seen here at the equator—denoted the fond, throbbing trust, the loving alarms, with which the poor bride gave her bosom away.

Tied up and twisted; gnarled and knotted with wrinkles; haggardly firm and unyielding; his eyes glowing like coals, that still glow in the ashes of ruin; untottering Ahab stood forth in the clearness of the morn; lifting his splintered helmet of a brow to the fair girl's forehead of heaven.

Oh, immortal infancy, and innocence of the azure! Invisible winged creatures that frolic all round us! Sweet childhood of air and sky! how oblivious were ye of old Ahab's close-coiled woel But so have I seen little Miriam and Martha, laughing-eyed elves, heedlessly gambol around their old sire; sporting with the circle of singed locks which grew on the marge of that burnt-out crater of his brain.

Slowly crossing the deck from the scuttle, Ahab leaned over the side, and watched how his shadow in the water sank and sank to his gaze, the more and the more that he strove to pierce the profundity. But the lovely aromas in that enchanted air did at last seem to dispel, for a moment, the cankerous thing in his soul. That glad, happy air, that winsome sky, did at last stroke and caress him; the step-mother world, so long cruel—forbidding—now threw affectionate arms round his stubborn neck, and did seem to joyously sob over him, as if over one, that however wilful and erring, she could yet find it in her

heart to save and to bless. From beneath his slouched hat Ahab dropped a tear into the sea; nor did all the Pacific contain such wealth as that one wee drop.

Starbuck saw the old man; saw him, how he heavily leaned over the side; and he seemed to hear in his own true heart the measureless sobbing that stole out of the centre of the serenity around. Careful not to touch him, or be noticed by him, he yet drew near to him, and stood there.

Ahab turned.

"Starbuck!"

"Sir."

"Oh, Starbuck! it is a mild, mild wind, and a mild looking sky. On such a day—very much such a sweetness as this—I struck my first whale—a boy-harpooneer of eighteen! Forty—forty—forty years ago!—ago! Forty years of continual whaling! forty years of privation, and peril, and storm-time! forty years on the pitiless seal for forty years has Ahab forsaken the peaceful land, for forty years to make war on the horrors of the deep! Aye and yes, Starbuck, out of those forty years I have not spent three ashore. When I think of this life I have led; the desolation of solitude it has been; the masoned, walled-town of a Captain's exclusiveness, which admits but small entrance to any sympathy from the green country without—oh, weariness! heaviness! Guinea-coast slavery of solitary command!—when I think of all this; only half-suspected, not so keenly known to me before—and how for forty years I have fed upon dry salted fare—fit emblem of the dry nourishment of my soul—when the poorest landsman has had fresh fruit to his daily hand, and broken the world's fresh bread to my mouldy crusts—away, whole oceans away, from that young girl-wife I wedded ~~past fifty~~, and sailed for Cape Horn the next day, leaving but one dent in my marriage pillow—wife? wife?—rather a widow with her husband alive! Aye, I widowed that poor girl when I married her, Starbuck; and then, the madness, the frenzy, the boiling blood and the smoking brow, with which, for a thousand lowerings old Ahab has furiously, foamingly chased his prey—more a demon than a man!—aye, aye! what a forty years' fool—fool—old fool, has old Ahab been! Why this strife of the chase? why weary,

It's that guy in the beginning

and palsy the arm at the oar, and the iron, and the lance? how the richer or better is Ahab now? Behold. Oh, Starbuck! is it not hard, that with this weary load I bear, one poor leg should have been snatched from under me? Here, brush this old hair aside; it blinds me, that I seem to weep. Locks so grey did never grow but from out some ashes! But do I look very old, so very, very old, Starbuck? I feel deadly faint, bowed, and humped, as though I were Adam, staggering beneath the piled centuries since Paradise. God! God! God!—crack my heart!—stave my brain!—mockery! mockery! bitter, biting mockery of grey hairs, have I lived enough joy to wear ye; and seem and feel thus intolerably old? Close! stand close to me, Starbuck; let me look into a human eye; it is better than to gaze into sea or sky; better than to gaze upon God. By the green land; by the bright hearth-stone! this is the magic glass, man; I see my wife and my child in thine eye. No, no; stay on board, on board!—lower not when I do; when branded Ahab gives chase to Moby Dick. That hazard shall not be thine. No, no! not with the far away home I see in that eye!”

“Oh, my Captain! my Captain! noble soul! grand old heart, after all! why should any one give chase to that hated fish! Away with me! let us fly these deadly waters! let us home! Wife and child, too, are Starbuck’s—wife and child of his brotherly, sisterly, play-fellow youth; even as thine, sir, are the wife and child of thy loving, longing, paternal old age! Away! let us away!—this instant let me alter the course! How cheerily, how hilariously, O my Captain, would we bowl on our way to see old Nantucket again! I think, sir, they have some such mild blue days, even as this, in Nantucket.”

“They have, they have. I have seen them—some summer days in the morning. About this time—yes, it is his noon nap now—the boy vivaciously wakes; sits up in bed; and his mother tells him of me, of cannibal old me; how I am abroad upon the deep, but will yet come back to dance him again.”

“Tis my Mary, my Mary herself! She promised that my boy, every morning, should be carried to the hill to catch the first glimpse of his father’s sail! Yes, yes! no more! it is done! we head for Nantucket! Come, my Captain, study out the course,

and let us away! See, see! the boy's face from the window! the boy's hand on the hill!"

But Ahab's glance was averted; like a blighted fruit tree he shook, and cast his last, cindered apple to the soil.

*He is like
Shakespeare
I say*

"What is it, what nameless, inscrutable, unearthly thing is it; what cozzening, hidden lord and master, and cruel, remorseless emperor commands me; that against all natural lovings and longings, I so keep pushing, and crowding, and jamming myself on all the time; recklessly making me ready to do what in my own proper, natural heart, I durst not so much as dare? Is Ahab, Ahab? Is it I, God, or who, that lifts this arm? But if the great sun move not of himself; but is as an errand-boy in heaven; nor one single star can revolve, but by some invisible power; how then can this one small heart beat; this one small brain think thoughts; unless God does that beating, does that thinking, does that living, and not I. By heaven, man, we are turned round and round in this world, like yonder windlass, and Fate is the handspike. And all the time, lo! that-smiling sky, and this unsounded sea! Look! see yon Albicore! who put it into him to chase and fang that flying-fish? Where do murderers go, man! Who's to doom, when the judge himself is dragged to the bar? But it is a mild, mild wind, and a mild looking sky; and the airs smells now, as if it blew from a far-away meadow; they have been making hay somewhere under the slopes of the Andes, Starbuck, and the mowers are sleeping among the new-mown hay. Sleeping? Aye, toil we how we may, we all sleep at last on the field. Sleep? Aye, and rust amid greenness; as last year's scythes flung down, and left in the half-cut swaths—Starbuck!"

But blanched to a corpse's hue with despair, the Mate had stolen away.

Ahab crossed the deck to gaze over on the other side; but started at two reflected, fixed eyes in the water there. Fedallah was motionlessly leaning over the same rail.

CHAPTER CXXXIII

THE CHASE—FIRST DAY

THAT night, in the mid-watch, when the old man—as his wont at intervals—stepped forth from the scuttle in which he leaned, and went to his pivot-hole, he suddenly thrust out his face fiercely, snuffing up the sea air as a sagacious ship's dog will, in drawing nigh to some barbarous isle. He declared that a whale must be near. Soon that peculiar odor, sometimes to a great distance given forth by the living sperm whale, was palpable to all the watch; nor was any mariner surprised when, after inspecting the compass, and then the dog-vane, and then ascertaining the precise bearing of the odor as nearly as possible, Ahab rapidly ordered the ship's course to be slightly altered, and the sail to be shortened.

The acute policy dictating these movements was sufficiently vindicated at daybreak, by the sight of a long sleek on the sea directly and lengthwise ahead, smooth as oil, and resembling in the pleated watery wrinkles bordering it, the polished metallic-like marks of some swift tide-rip, at the mouth of a deep, rapid stream.

"Man the mast-heads! Call all hands!"

Thundering with the butts of three clubbed handspikes on the forecastle deck, Daggoo roused the sleepers with such judgment claps that they seemed to exhale from the scuttle, so instantaneously did they appear with their clothes in their hands.

"What d'ye see?" cried Ahab, flattening his face to the sky.

"Nothing, nothing, sir!" was the sound hailing down in reply.

"T'gallant sails!—stunsails! aloof and aloft, and on both sides!"

All sail being set, he now cast loose the life-line, reserved for swaying him to the main royal-mast head; and in a few moments they were hoisting him thither, when, while but two thirds of the way aloft, and while peering ahead through the horizontal vacancy between the main-top-sail and top-gallant-

sail, he raised a gull-like cry in the air, "There she blows!—there she blows! A hump like a snow-hill! It is Moby Dick!"

Fired by the cry which seemed simultaneously taken up by the three look-outs, the men on deck rushed to the rigging to behold the famous whale they had so long been pursuing. Ahab had now gained his final perch, some feet above the other look-outs, Tashtego standing just beneath him on the cap of the top-gallant mast, so that the Indian's head was almost on a level with Ahab's heel. From this height the whale was now seen some mile or so ahead, at every roll of the sea revealing his high sparkling hump, and regularly jetting his silent spout into the air. (To the credulous mariners it seemed the same silent spout they had so long ago beheld in the moonlit Atlantic and Indian Oceans.)

"And did none of ye see it before?" cried Ahab, hailing the perched men all around him.

"I saw him almost that same instant, sir, that Captain Ahab did, and I cried out," said Tashtego.

"Not the same instant; not the same—no, the doubloon is mine, Fate reserved the doubloon for me. *I* only; none of ye could have raised the White Whale first. There she blows! there she blows!—there she blows! There again!—there again!" he cried, in long-drawn, lingering, methodic tones, attuned to the gradual prolongings of the whale's visible jets. "He's going to sound! In stunsails! Down top-gallant-sails; Stand by three boats. Mr. Starbuck, remember, stay on board, and keep the ship. Helm there! Luff, luff a point! So; steady, man, steady! There go flukes! No, no; only black water! All ready the boats there? Stand by, stand by! Lower me, Mr. Starbuck; lower, lower,—quick, quicker!" and he slid through the air to the deck.

"He is heading straight to leeward, sir," cried Stubb, "right away from us; cannot have seen the ship yet."

"Be dumb, man! Stand by the braces! Hard down the helm! —brace up! Shiver her!—shiver her! So; well that! Boats, boats!"

Soon all the boats but Starbuck's were dropped; all the boat-sails set—all the paddles plying; with rippling swiftness, shooting to leeward; and Ahab heading the onset. A pale, death-glimmer

lit up Fedallah's sunken eyes; a hideous motion gnawed his mouth.

Like noiseless nautilus shells, their light prows sped through the sea; but only slowly they neared the foe. As they neared him, the ocean grew still more smooth; seemed drawing a carpet over its waves; seemed a noon-meadow, so serenely it spread. At length the breathless hunter came so nigh his seemingly unsuspecting prey, that his entire dazzling hump was distinctly visible, sliding along the sea as if an isolated thing, and continually set in a revolving ring of finest, fleecy, greenish foam. He saw the vast, involved wrinkles of the slightly projecting head beyond. Before it, far out on the soft Turkish-rugged waters, went the glistening white shadow from his broad, milky forehead, a musical rippling playfully accompanying the shade; and behind, the blue waters interchangeably flowed over into the moving valley of his steady wake; and on either hand bright bubbles arose and danced by his side. But these were broken again by the light toes of hundreds of gay fowl softly feathering the sea, alternate with their fitful flight; and like to some flag-staff rising from the painted hull of an argosy, the tall but shattered pole of a recent lance projected from the white whale's back; and at intervals one of the cloud of soft-toed fowls hovering, and to and fro skimming like a canopy over the fish, silently perched and rocked on this pole, the long tail feathers streaming like pennons.

A gentle joyousness—a mighty mildness of repose in swiftness, invested the gliding whale. Not the white bull Jupiter swimming away with ravished Europa clinging to his graceful horns; his lovely, leering eyes sideways intent upon the maid; with smooth bewitching fleetness, rippling straight for the nuptial bower in Crete; not Jove, not that great majesty Supreme! did surpass the glorified White Whale as he so divinely swam.

On each soft side—coincident with the parted swell, that but once leaving him, then flowed so wide away—on each bright side, the whale shed off enticings. No wonder there had been some among the hunters who namelessly transported and allured by all this serenity, had ventured to assail it; but had fatally

found that quietude but the vesture of tornadoes. Yet calm, enticing calm, oh, whale! thou glidest on, to all who for the first time eye thee, no matter how many in that same way thou may'st have bejuggled and destroyed before.

And thus, through the serene tranquillities of the tropical sea, among waves whose hand-clappings were suspended by exceeding rapture, Moby Dick moved on, still withholding from sight the full terrors of his submerged trunk, entirely hiding the wrenched hideousness of his jaw. But soon the fore part of him slowly rose from the water; for an instant his whole marbleized body formed a high arch, like Virginia's Natural Bridge, and warningly waving his bannered flukes in the air, the grand god revealed himself, sounded, and went out of sight. Hoveringly halting, and dipping on the wing, the white sea-fowls longingly lingered over the agitated pool that he left.

With oars apeak, and paddles down, the sheets of their sails adrift, the three boats now stilly floated, awaiting Moby Dick's reappearance.

"An hour," said Ahab, standing rooted in his boat's stern; and he gazed beyond the whale's place, towards the dim blue spaces and wide wooing vacancies to leeward. It was only an instant; for again his eyes seemed whirling round in his head as he swept the watery circle. The breeze now freshened; the sea began to swell.

"The birds!—the birds!" cried Tashtego.

In long Indian file, as when herons take wing, the white birds were now all flying towards Ahab's boat; and when within a few yards began fluttering over the water there, wheeling round and round, with joyous, expectant cries. Their vision was keener than man's; Ahab could discover no sign in the sea. But suddenly as he peered down and down into its depths, he profoundly saw a white living spot no bigger than a white weasel, with wonderful celerity uprising, and magnifying as it rose, till it turned, and then there were plainly revealed two long crooked rows of white, glistening teeth, floating up from the undiscoverable bottom. It was Moby Dick's open mouth and scrolled jaw; his vast, shadowed bulk still half blending with the blue of the sea. The glittering mouth yawned beneath

the boat like an open-doored marble tomb; and giving one side-long sweep with his steering oar, Ahab whirled the craft aside from this tremendous apparition. Then, calling upon Fedallah to change places with him, went forward to the bows, and seizing Perth's harpoon, commanded his crew to grasp their oars and stand by to stern.

Now, by reason of this timely spinning round the boat upon its axis, its bow, by anticipation, was made to face the whale's head while yet under water. But as if perceiving this strategem, Moby Dick, with that malicious intelligence ascribed to him, sidelingly transplanted himself, as it were, in an instant, shooting his pleated head lengthwise beneath the boat.

Through and through; through every plank and each rib, it thrilled for an instant, the whale obliquely lying on his back, in the manner of a biting shark, slowly and feelingly taking its bows full within his mouth, so that the long, narrow, scrolled lower jaw curled high up into the open air, and one of the teeth caught in a row-lock. The bluish pearl-white of the inside of the jaw was within six inches of Ahab's head, and reached higher than that. In this attitude the White Whale now shook the slight cedar as a mildly cruel cat her mouse. With unastonished eyes Fedallah gazed, and crossed his arms; but the tiger-yellow crew were tumbling over each other's heads to gain the uttermost stern.

And now, while both elastic gunwales were springing in and out, as the whale dallied with the doomed craft in this devilish way; and from his body being submerged beneath the boat, he could not be darted at from the bows, for the bows were almost inside of him, as it were; and while the other boats involuntarily paused, as before a quick crisis impossible to withstand, then it was that monomaniac Ahab, furious with this tantalizing vicinity of his foe, which placed him all alive and helpless in the very jaws he hated; frenzied with all this, he seized the long bone with his naked hands, and wildly strove to wrench it from its gripe. As now he thus vainly strove, the jaw slipped from him; the frail gunwales bent in, collapsed, and snapped, as both jaws, like an enormous shears, sliding further aft, bit the craft completely in twain, and locked themselves fast again in

the sea, midway between the two floating wrecks. These floated aside, the broken ends drooping, the crew at the stern-wreck clinging to the gunwales, and striving to hold fast to the oars to lash them across.

At that preluding moment, ere the boat was yet snapped, Ahab, the first to perceive the whale's intent, by the crafty up-raising of his head, a movement that loosed his hold for the time; at that moment his hand had made one final effort to push the boat out of the bite. But only slipping further into the whale's mouth, and tilting over sideways as it slipped, the boat had shaken off his hold on the jaw; spilled him out of it, as he leaned to the push; and so he fell flat-faced upon the sea.

Ripplingly withdrawing from his prey, Moby Dick now lay at a little distance, vertically thrusting his oblong white head up and down in the billows; and at the same time slowly revolving his whole spindled body; so that when his vast wrinkled forehead rose—some twenty or more feet out of the water—the now rising swells, with all their confluent waves, dazzlingly broke against it; vindictively tossing their shivered spray still higher into the air.* So, in a gale, the but half-baffled Channel billows only recoil from the base of the Eddystone, triumphantly to overleap its summit with their scud.

But soon resuming his horizontal attitude, Moby Dick swam swiftly round and round the wrecked crew; sideways churning the water in his vengeful wake, as if lashing himself up to still another and more deadly assault. The sight of the splintered boat seemed to madden him, as the blood of grapes and mulberries cast before Antiochus's elephants in the book of Maccabees. Meanwhile Ahab half smothered in the foam of the whale's insolent tail, and too much of a cripple to swim,—though he could still keep afloat, even in the heart of such a whirlpool as that; helpless Ahab's head was seen, like a tossed bubble which the least chance shock might burst. From the boat's fragmentary

* This motion is peculiar to the sperm whale. It receives its designation (pitchpoling) from its being likened to that preliminary up-and-down poise of the whale-lance, in the exercise called pitchpoling, previously described. By this motion the whale must best and most comprehensively view whatever objects may be encircling him.

stern, Fedallah incuriously and mildly eyed him; the clinging crew, at the other drifting end, could not succor him; more than enough was it for them to look to themselves. For so revolvingly appalling was the White Whale's aspect, and so planetarily swift the ever-contracting circles he made, that he seemed horizontally swooping upon them. And though the other boats, unharmed, still hovered hard by; still they dared not pull into the eddy to strike, lest that should be the signal for the instant destruction of the jeopardized castaways, Ahab and all; nor in that case could they themselves hope to escape. With straining eyes, then, they remained on the outer edge of the direful zone, whose centre had now become the old man's head.

Meantime, from the beginning all this had been descried from the ship's mast heads; and squaring her yards, she had borne down upon the scene; and was now so nigh, that Ahab in the water hailed her;—"Sail on the"—but that moment a breaking sea dashed on him from Moby Dick, and whelmed him for the time. But struggling out of it again, and chancing to rise on a towering crest, he shouted,—“Sail on the whale!—Drive him off!”

The Pequod's prows were pointed; and breaking up the charmed circle, she effectually parted the white whale from his victim. As he sullenly swam off, the boats flew to the rescue.

Dragged into Stubb's boat with blood-shot, blinded eyes, the white brine caking in his wrinkles; the long tension of Ahab's bodily strength did crack, and helplessly he yielded to his body's doom; for a time, lying all crushed in the bottom of Stubb's boat, like one trodden under foot of herds of elephants. Far inland, nameless wails came from him, as desolate sounds from out ravines.

But this intensity of his physical prostration did but so much the more abbreviate it. In an instant's compass, great hearts sometimes condense to one deep pang, the sum total of those shallow pains kindly diffused through feebler men's whole lives. And so, such hearts, though summary in each one suffering; still, if the gods decree it, in their life-time aggregate a whole age of woe, wholly made up of instantaneous intensities; for even in their pointless centres, those noble natures contain the entire circumferences of inferior souls.

"The harpoon," said Ahab, half way rising, and draggingly leaning on one bended arm—"is it safe?"

"Aye, sir, for it was not darted; this is it," said Stubb, showing it.

"Lay it before me;—any missing men?"

"One, two, three, four, five;—there were five oars, sir, and here are five men."

"That's good.—Help me, man; I wish to stand. So, so, I see him! there! there! going to leeward still; what a leaping spout!—Hands off from me! The eternal sap runs up in Ahab's bones again! Set the sail; out oars; the helm!"

It is often the case that when a boat is stove, its crew, being picked up by another boat, help to work that second boat; and the chase is thus continued with what is called double-banked oars. It was thus now. But the added power of the boat did not equal the added power of the whale, for he seemed to have treble-banked his every fin; swimming with a velocity which plainly showed, that if now, under these circumstances, pushed on, the chase would prove an indefinitely prolonged, if not a hopeless one; nor could any crew endure for so long a period, such an unintermitted, intense straining at the oar; a thing barely tolerable only in some one brief vicissitude. The ship itself, then, as it sometimes happens, offered the most promising intermediate means of overtaking the chase. Accordingly, the boats now made for her, and were soon swayed up to their cranes—the two parts of the wrecked boat having been previously secured by her—and then hoisting everything to her side, and stacking her canvas high up, and sideways outstretching it with stun-sails, like the double-jointed wings of an albatross; the Pequod bore down in the leeward wake of Moby-Dick. At the well known, methodic intervals, the whale's glittering spout was regularly announced from the manned mast-heads; and when he would be reported as just gone down, Ahab would take the time, and then pacing the deck, binnacle-watch in hand, so soon as the last second of the allotted hour expired, his voice was heard.—"Whose is the doubloon now? D'ye see him?" and if the reply was, No, sir! straightway he commanded them to lift him to his perch. In this way the day wore on; Ahab,

now aloft and motionless; anon, unrestingly pacing the planks.

As he was thus walking, uttering no sound, except to hail the men aloft, or to bid them hoist a sail still higher, or to spread one to a still greater breadth—thus to and fro pacing, beneath his slouched hat, at every turn he passed his own wrecked boat, which had been dropped upon the quarter-deck, and lay there reversed; broken bow to shattered stern. At last he paused before it; and as in an already over-clouded sky fresh troops of clouds will sometimes sail across, so over the old man's face there now stole some such added gloom as this.

Stubb saw him pause; and perhaps intending, not vainly, though, to evince his own unabated fortitude, and thus keep up a valiant place in his Captain's mind, he advanced, and eyeing the wreck exclaimed—"The thistle the ass refused; it pricked his mouth too keenly, sir; hal hal!"

"What soulless thing is this that laughs before a wreck? Man, man! did I not know thee brave as fearless fire (and as mechanical) I could swear thou wert a poltroon. Groan nor laugh should be heard before a wreck."

"Aye, sir," said Starbuck drawing near, "'tis a solemn sight; an omen, and an ill one."

"Omen? omen?—the dictionary! If the gods think to speak outright to man, they will honorably speak outright; not shake their heads, and give an old wives' darkling hint.—Begone! Ye two are the opposite poles of one thing; Starbuck is Stubb, reversed, and Stubb is Starbuck; and ye two are all mankind; and Ahab stands alone among the millions of the peopled earth, nor gods nor men his neighbors! Cold, cold—I shiver!—How now? Aloft there! D'ye see him? Sing out for every spout, though he spout ten times a second!"

The day was nearly done; only the hem of his golden robe was rustling. Soon, it was almost dark, but the look-out men still remained unset.

"Can't see the spout now, sir;—too dark"—cried a voice from the air.

"How heading when last seen?"

"As before, sir,—straight to leeward."

"Good! he will travel slower now 'tis night. Down royals and

top-gallant stun-sails, Mr. Starbuck. We must not run over him before morning; he's making a passage now, and may heave-to a while. Helm there! keep her full before the wind!—Aloft! come down!—Mr. Stubb, send a fresh hand to the fore-mast head, and see it manned till morning.”—Then advancing towards the doubloon in the main-mast—“Men, this gold is mine, for I earned it; but I shall let it abide here till the White Whale is dead; and then, whosoever of ye first raises him, upon the day he shall be killed, this gold is that man's; and if on that day I shall again raise him, then, ten times its sum shall be divided among all of ye! Away now!—the deck is thine, sir.”

And so saying, he placed himself half way within the scuttle, and slouching his hat, stood there till dawn, except when at intervals rousing himself to see how the night wore on.

CHAPTER CXXXIV

THE CHASE—SECOND DAY

AT day-break, the three mast-heads were punctually manned afresh.

“D'ye see him?” cried Ahab, after allowing a little space for the light to spread.

“See nothing, sir.”

“Turn up all hands and make sail! he travels faster than I thought for;—the top-gallant sails!—aye, they should have been kept on her all night. But no matter—'tis but resting for the rush.”

Here be it said, that this pertinacious pursuit of one particular whale, continued through day into night, and through night into day, is a thing by no means unprecedented in the South sea fishery. For such is the wonderful skill, prescience of experience, and invincible confidence acquired by some great natural geniuses among the Nantucket commanders; that from the simple observation of a whale when last descried, they will,

under certain given circumstances, pretty accurately foretell both the direction in which he will continue to swim for a time, while out of sight, as well as his probable rate of progression during that period. And, in these cases, somewhat as a pilot, when about losing sight of a coast, whose general trending he well knows, and which he desires shortly to return to again, but at some further point; like as this pilot stands by his compass, and takes the precise bearing of the cape at present visible, in order the more certainly to hit aright the remote, unseen headland, eventually to be visited: so does the fisherman, at his compass, with the whale; for after being chased, and diligently marked, through several hours of daylight, then, when night obscures the fish, the creature's future wake through the darkness is almost as established to the sagacious mind of the hunter, as the pilot's coast is to him. So that to this hunter's wondrous skill, the proverbial evanescence of a thing writ in water, a wake, is to all desired purposes well nigh as reliable as the steadfast land. And as the mighty iron Leviathan of the modern railway is so familiarly known in its every pace, that, with watches in their hands, men time his rate as doctors that of a baby's pulse; and lightly say of it, the up train or the down train will reach such or such a spot, at such or such an hour; even so, almost, there are occasions when these Nantucketers time that other Leviathan of the deep, according to the observed humor of his speed; and say to themselves, so many hours hence this whale will have gone two hundred miles, will have about reached this or that degree of latitude or longitude. But to render this acuteness at all successful in the end, the wind and the sea must be the whaleman's allies; for of what present avail to the becalmed or windbound mariner is the skill that assures him he is exactly ninety-three leagues and a quarter from his port? Inferable from these statements, are many collateral subtile matters touching the chase of whales.

The ship tore on; leaving such a furrow in the sea as when a cannon-ball, missent, becomes a plough-share and turns up the level field.

"By salt and hemp!" cried Stubb, "but this swift motion of the deck creeps upon one's legs and tingles at the heart. This

ship and I are two brave fellows!—Ha! ha! Some one take me up, and launch me, spine-wise, on the sea,—for by live-oaks! my spine's a keel. Ha, ha! we go the gait that leaves no dust behind!"

"There she blows—she blows!—she blows!—right ahead!" was now the mast-head cry.

"Aye, aye!" cried Stubb, "I knew it—ye can't escape—blow on and split your spout, O whale! the mad fiend himself is after yel blow your trump—blister your lungs!—Ahab will dam off your blood, as a miller shuts his water-gate upon the stream!"

And Stubb did but speak out for well nigh all that crew. The frenzies of the chase had by this time worked them bubblingly up, like old wine worked anew. Whatever pale fears and forebodings some of them might have felt before; these were not only now kept out of sight through the growing awe of Ahab, but they were broken up, and on all sides routed, as timid prairie hares that scatter before the bounding bison. The hand of Fate had snatched all their souls; and by the stirring perils of the previous day; the rack of the past night's suspense; the fixed, unfearing, blind, reckless way in which their wild craft went plunging towards its flying mark; by all these things, their hearts were bowled along. The wind that made great bellies of their sails, and rushed the vessel on by arms invisible as irresistible; this seemed the symbol of that unseen agency which so enslaved them to the race.

✓ They were one man, not thirty. For as the one ship that held them all; though it was put together of all contrasting things—oak, and maple, and pine wood; iron, and pitch, and hemp—yet all these ran into each other in the one concrete hull, which shot on its way, both balanced and directed by the long central keel; even so, all the individualities of the crew, this man's valor, that man's fear; guilt and guiltiness, all varieties were welded into oneness, and were all directed to that fatal goal which Ahab their one lord and keel did point to.

The rigging lived. The mast-heads, like the tops of tall palms, were outspreadingly tufted with arms and legs. Clinging to a spar with one hand, some reached forth the other with impatient wavings; others, shading their eyes from the vivid sunlight, sat

far out on the rocking yards; all the spars in full bearing of mortals, ready and ripe for their fate. (Ah! how they still strove ✓ through that infinite blueness to seek out the thing that might destroy them!)

"Why sing ye not out for him, if ye see him?" cried Ahab, when, after the lapse of some minutes since the first cry, no more had been heard. "Sway me up, men; ye have been deceived; not Moby Dick casts one odd jet that way, and then disappears."

It was even so; in their headlong eagerness, the men had mistaken some other thing for the whale-spout, as the event itself soon proved; for hardly had Ahab reached his perch; hardly was the rope belayed to its pin on deck, when he struck the key-note to an orchestra, that made the air vibrate as with the combined discharges of rifles. The triumphant halloo of thirty buckskin lungs was heard, as—much nearer to the ship than the place of the imaginary jet, less than a mile ahead—Moby Dick bodily burst into view! For not by any calm and indolent spoutings; not by the peaceable gush of that ~~mystic fountain~~ in his head, did the White Whale now reveal his vicinity; but by the far more wondrous phenomenon of breaching. Rising with his utmost velocity from the furthest depths, the Sperm Whale thus booms his entire bulk into the pure element of air, and piling up a mountain of dazzling foam, shows his place to the distance of seven miles and more. In those moments, the torn, enraged waves he shakes off, seem his mane; in some cases, this breaching is his act of defiance.

"There she breaches! there she breaches!" was the cry, as in his immeasurable bravadoes the White Whale tossed himself salmon-like to Heaven. So suddenly seen in the blue plain of the sea, and relieved against the still bluer margin of the sky, the spray that he raised, for the moment, intolerably glittered and glared like a glacier; and stood there gradually fading and fading away from its first sparkling intensity, to the dim mistiness of an advancing shower in a vale.

"Aye, breach your last to the sun, Moby Dick!" cried Ahab, "thy hour and thy harpoon are at hand!—Down! down all of ye, but one man at the fore. The boats!—stand by!"

Unmindful of the tedious rope-ladders of the shrouds, the men, like shooting stars, slid to the deck, by the isolated backstays and halyards; while Ahab, less dartingly, but still rapidly was dropped from his perch.

"Lower away," he cried, so soon as he had reached his boat—a spare one, rigged the afternoon previous. "Mr. Starbuck, the ship is thine—keep away from the boats, but keep near them. Lower, all!"

As if to strike a quick terror into them, by this time being the first assailant himself, Moby Dick had turned, and was now coming for the three crews. Ahab's boat was central; and cheering his men, he told them he would take the whale head-and-head,—that is, pull straight up to his forehead,—a not uncommon thing; for when within a certain limit, such a course excludes the coming onset from the whale's sidelong vision. But ere that close limit was gained, and while yet all three boats were plain as the ship's three masts to his eye; the White Whale churning himself into furious speed, almost in an instant as it were, rushing among the boats with open jaws, and a lashing tail, offered appalling battle on every side; and heedless of the irons darted at him from every boat, seemed only intent on annihilating each separate plank of which those boats were made. But skilfully manœuvred, incessantly wheeling like trained chargers in the field; the boats for a while eluded him; though, at times, but by a plank's breadth; while all the time, Ahab's unearthly slogan tore every other cry but his to shreds.

But at last in his untraceable evolutions, the White Whale so crossed and recrossed, and in a thousand ways entangled the slack of the three lines now fast to him, that they foreshortened, and, of themselves, warped the devoted boats towards the planted irons in him; though now for a moment the whale drew aside a little, as if to rally for a more tremendous charge. Seizing that opportunity, Ahab first paid out more line: and then was rapidly hauling and jerking in upon it again—hoping that way to disencumber it of some snarls—when lo!—a sight more savage than the embattled teeth of sharks!

Caught and twisted—corkscrewed in the mazes of the line, loose harpoons and lances, with all their bristling barbs and

points, came flashing and dripping up to the chocks in the bows of Ahab's boat. Only one thing could be done. Seizing the boat-knife, he critically reached within—through—and then, without—the rays of steel; dragged in the line beyond, passed it, inboard, to the bowsman, and then, twice sundering the rope near the chocks—dropped the intercepted fagot of steel into the sea; and was all fast again. That instant, the White Whale made a sudden rush among the remaining tangles of the other lines; by so doing, irresistibly dragged the more involved boats of Stubb and Flask towards his flukes; dashed them together like two rolling husks on a surf-beaten beach, and then, diving down into the sea, disappeared in a boiling maelstrom, in which, for a space, the odorous cedar chips of the wrecks danced round and round, like the grated nutmeg in a swiftly stirred bowl of punch.

While the two crews were yet circling in the waters, reaching out after the revolving line-tubs, oars, and other floating furniture, while aslope little Flask bobbed up and down like an empty vial, twitching his legs upwards to escape the dreaded jaws of sharks; and Stubb was lustily singing out for some one to ladle him up; and while the old man's line—now parting—admitted of his pulling into the creamy pool to rescue whom he could;—in that wild simultaneousness of a thousand concreted perils,—Ahab's yet unstricken boat seemed drawn up towards Heaven by invisible wires,—as, arrow-like, shooting perpendicularly from the sea, the White Whale dashed his broad forehead against its bottom, and sent it, turning over and over, into the air; till it fell again—gunwale downwards—and Ahab and his men struggled out from under it, like seals from a sea-side cave.

The first uprising momentum of the whale—modifying its direction as he struck the surface—involuntarily launched him along it, to a little distance from the centre of the destruction he had made; and with his back to it, he now lay for a moment slowly feeling with his flukes from side to side; and whenever a stray oar, bit of plank, the least chip or crumb of the boats touched his skin, his tail swiftly drew back, and came sideways smiting the sea. But soon, as if satisfied that his work for that time was done, he pushed his pleated forehead through the

ocean, and trailing after him the intertangled lines, continued his leeward way at a traveller's methodic pace.

As before, the attentive ship having descried the whole fight, again came bearing down to the rescue, and dropping a boat, picked up the floating mariners, tubs, oars, and whatever else could be caught at, and safely landed them on her decks. Some sprained shoulders, wrists, and ankles; livid contusions; wrenched harpoons and lances; inextricable intricacies of rope; shattered oars and planks; all these were there; but no fatal or even serious ill seemed to have befallen any one. As with Fedallah the day before, so Ahab was now found grimly clinging to his boat's broken half, which afforded a comparatively easy float; nor did it so exhaust him as the previous day's mishap.

But when he was helped to the deck, all eyes were fastened upon him; as instead of standing by himself he still half-hung upon the shoulder of Starbuck, who had thus far been the foremost to assist him. His ivory leg had been snapped off, leaving but one short sharp splinter.

✓ "Aye aye, Starbuck, 'tis sweet to lean sometimes, be the leaner who he will; and would old Ahab had leaned oftener than he has."

"The ferrule has not stood, sir," said the carpenter, now coming up; "I put good work into that leg."

"But no bones broken, sir, I hope," said Stubb with true concern.

"Aye! and all splintered to pieces, Stubb!—d'ye see it.—But even with a broken bone, old Ahab is untouched; and I account no living bone of mine one jot more me, than this dead one that's lost. Nor white whale, nor man, nor fiend, can so much as graze old Ahab in his own proper and inaccessible being. Can any lead touch yonder floor, any mast scrape yonder roof?—Aloft there! which way?"

"Dead to leeward, sir."

"Up helm, then; pile on the sail again, ship keepers! down the rest of the spare boats and rig them—Mr. Starbuck away, and muster the boat's crews."

"Let me first help thee towards the bulwarks, sir."

"Oh, oh, oh! how this splinter gores me now! Accursed fate!

that the unconquerable captain in the soul should have such a craven matel"

"Sir?"

"My body, man, not thee. Give me something for a cane—there, that shivered lance will do. Muster the men. Surely I have not seen him yet. By heaven it cannot be!—missing?—quick! call them all."

The old man's hinted thought was true. Upon mustering the company, the Parsee was not there.

"The Parsee!" cried Stubb—"he must have been caught in—"

"The black vomit wrench thee!—run all of ye above, alow, cabin, forecastle—find him—not gone—not gone!"

But quickly they returned to him with the tidings that the Parsee was nowhere to be found.

"Aye, sir," said Stubb—"caught among the tangles of your line—I thought I saw him dragging under."

"*My line! my line?* Gone?—gone? What means that little word?—What death-knell rings in it, that old Ahab shakes as if he were the belfry. The harpoon, too!—toss over the litter there,—d'ye see it?—the forged iron, men, the white whale's—no, no, no,—blistered fool; this hand did dart it!—'tis in the fish!—Aloft there! Keep him nailed—Quick!—all hands to the rigging of the boats—collect the oars—harpooneers! the irons, the irons!—hoist the royals higher—a pull on all the sheets!—helm there! steady, steady for your life! I'll ten times girdle the unmeasured globe; yea and dive straight through it, but I'll slay him yet!"

"Great God! but for one single instant show thyself," cried Starbuck; "never, never wilt thou capture him, old man—In Jesus' name no more of this, that's worse than devil's madness. Two days chased; twice stove to splinters; thy very leg once more snatched from under thee; thy evil shadow gone—all good angels mobbing thee with warnings:—what more wouldst thou have?—Shall we keep chasing this murderous fish till he swamps the last man? Shall we be dragged by him to the bottom of the sea? Shall we be towed by him to the infernal world? Oh, oh,—Impiety and blasphemy to hunt him more!"

"Starbuck, of late I've felt strangely moved to thee; ever since that hour we both saw—thou know'st what, in one another's

eyes. But in this matter of the whale, be the front of thy face to me as the palm of this hand—a lipless, unfeatured blank. Ahab is for ever Ahab, man. This whole act's immutably decreed. 'Twas rehearsed by thee and me a billion years before this ocean rolled. Fool! I am the Fates' lieutenant; I act under orders. Look thou, underling! that thou obeyest mine.—Stand round me, men. Ye see an old man cut down to the stump; leaning on a shivered lance; propped up on a lonely foot. 'Tis Ahab—his body's part; but Ahab's soul's a centipede, that moves upon a hundred legs. I feel strained, half stranded, as ropes that tow dismasted frigates in a gale; and I may look so. But ere I break, ye'll hear me crack; and till ye hear *that*, know that Ahab's hawser tows his purpose yet. Believe ye, men, in the things called omens? Then laugh aloud, and cry encore! For ere they drown, drowning things will twice rise to the surface; then rise again, to sink for evermore. So with Moby Dick—two days he's floated—to-morrow will be the third. Aye, men, he'll rise once more,—but only to spout his last! D'ye feel brave men, brave?"

"As fearless fire," cried Stubb.

"And as mechanical," muttered Ahab. Then as the men went forward, he muttered on:—"The things called omens! And yesterday I talked the same to Starbuck there, concerning my broken boat. Oh! how valiantly I seek to drive out of others' hearts what's clinched so fast in mine!—The Parsee—the Parsee!—gone, gone? and he was to go before:—but still was to be seen again ere I could perish—How's that?—There's a riddle now might baffle all the lawyers backed by the ghosts of the whole line of judges:—like a hawk's beak it pecks my brain. *I'll, I'll* solve it, though!"

When dusk descended, the whale was still in sight to leeward.

So once more the sail was shortened, and everything passed nearly as on the previous night; only, the sound of hammers, and the hum of the grindstone was heard till nearly daylight, as the men toiled by lanterns in the complete and careful rigging of the spare boats and sharpening their fresh weapons for the morrow. Meantime, of the broken keel of Ahab's wrecked craft the carpenter made him another leg; while still as on the

night before, slouched Ahab stood fixed within his scuttle; his hid, heliotrope glance anticipately gone backward on its dial; sat due eastward for the earliest sun.

CHAPTER CXXXV

THE CHASE—THIRD DAY

THE morning of the third day dawned fair and fresh, and once more the solitary night-man at the fore-mast-head was relieved by crowds of the daylight look-outs, who dotted every mast and almost every spar.

"D'ye see him?" cried Ahab; but the whale was not yet in sight.

"In his infallible wake, though; but follow that wake, that's all. Helm there; steady, as thou goest, and hast been going. What a lovely day again; were it a new-made world, and made for a summer-house to the angels, and this morning the first of its throwing open to them, a fairer day could not dawn upon that world. Here's food for thought, had Ahab time to think; but Ahab never thinks; he only feels, feels, feels; that's tingling enough for mortal man! to think's audacity. God only has that right and privilege. Thinking is, or ought to be, a coolness and a calmness; and our poor hearts throb, and our poor brains beat too much for that. And yet, I've sometimes thought my brain was very calm—frozen calm, this old skull cracks so, like a glass in which the contents turned to ice, and shiver it. And still this hair is growing now; this moment growing, and heat must breed it; but no, it's like that sort of common grass that will grow anywhere, between the earthy clefts of Greenland ice or in Vesuvius lava. How the wild winds blow it; they whip it about me as the torn shreds of split sails lash the tossed ship they cling to. A vile wind that has no doubt blown ere this through prison corridors and cells, and wards of hospitals, and ventilated them, and now comes blowing hither as innocent as

*the 3rd day
God made the
earth*

fleeces. Out upon it!—it's tainted. Were I the wind, I'd blow no more on such a wicked, miserable world. I'd crawl somewhere to a cave, and slink there. And yet, 'tis a noble and heroic thing, the wind! who ever conquered it? In every fight it has the last and bitterest blow. Run tilting at it, and you but run through it. Hal a coward wind that strikes stark naked men, but will not stand to receive a single blow. Even Ahab is a braver thing—a nobler thing than *that*. Would now the wind but had a body; (but all the things that most exasperate and outrage mortal man, all these things are bodiless, but only bodiless as objects, not as agents.) There's a most special, a most cunning, oh, a most malicious difference! And yet, I say again, and swear it now, that there's something all glorious and gracious in the wind. These warm Trade Winds, at least, that in the clear heavens blow straight on, in strong and steadfast, vigorous mildness; and veer not from their mark, however the baser currents of the sea may turn and tack, and mightiest Mississippies of the land swift and swerve about, uncertain where to go at last. And by the eternal Poles! these same Trades that so directly blow my good ship on; these Trades, or something like them—something so unchangeable, and full as strong, blow my keeled soul along! To it! Aloft there! What d'ye see?"

"Nothing, sir."

"Nothing! and noon at hand! The doubloon goes a-begging! See the sun! Aye, aye, it must be so. I've oversailed him. How, got the start? *Aye*, he's chasing *me* now; not I, *him*—that's bad; I might have known it, too. *Fooll* the lines—the harpoons he's towing. Aye, aye, I have run him by last night. About! about! Come down, all of ye, but the regular look outs! Man the braces!"

Steering as she had done, the wind had been somewhat on the Pequod's quarter, so that now being pointed in the reverse direction, the braced ship sailed hard upon the breeze as she recharged the cream in her own white wake.

"Against the wind he now steers for the open jaw," murmured Starbuck to himself, as he coiled the new-hauled main-brace upon the rail. "God keep us, but already my bones feel

damp within me, and from the inside wet my flesh. I misdoubt me that I disobey my God in obeying him!"

"Stand by to sway me up!" cried Ahab, advancing to the hempen basket. "We should meet him soon."

"Aye, aye, sir," and straightway Starbuck did Ahab's bidding, and once more Ahab swung on high.

A whole hour now passed; gold-beaten out to ages. Time itself now held long breaths with keen suspense. But at last, some three points off the weather bow, Ahab descried the spout again, and instantly from the three mast-heads three shrieks went up as if the tongues of fire had voiced it.

"Forehead to forehead I meet thee, this third time, Moby Dick! On deck there!—brace sharper up; crowd her into the wind's eye. He's too far off to lower yet, Mr. Starbuck. The sails shake! Stand over that helmsman with a top-maul! So, so; he travels fast, and I must down. But let me have one more good round look aloft here at the sea; there's time for that. (An old, old sight, and yet somehow so young; aye, and not changed a wink since I first saw it, a boy, from the sand-hills of Nantucket! The same!—the same!—the same to Noah as to me.) There's a soft shower to leeward. Such lovely leewardings! They must lead somewhere—to something else than common land, more palmy than the palms. Leeward! the white whale goes that way; look to windward, then; the better if the bitterer quarter. But good bye, good bye, old mast-head! What's this?—green? aye, tiny mosses in these warped cracks. No such green weather stains on Ahab's head! There's the difference now between man's old age and matter's. But aye, old mast, we both grow old together; sound in our hulls, though, are we not, my ship? Aye, minus a leg, that's all. By heaven this dead wood has the better of my live flesh every way. I can't compare with it; and I've known some ships made of dead trees outlast the lives of men made of the most vital stuff of vital fathers. What's that he said? he should still go before me, my pilot; and yet to be seen again? But where? Will I have eyes at the bottom of the sea, supposing I descend those endless stairs? and all night I've been sailing from him, wherever he did sink to. Aye,

aye, like many more thou told'st direful truth as touching thyself, O Parsee; but, Ahab, there thy shot fell short. Good by, mast-head—keep a good eye upon the whale, the while I'm gone. We'll talk to-morrow, nay, to-night, when the white whale lies down there, tied by head and tail."

He gave the word; and still gazing round him, was steadily lowered through the cloven blue air to the deck.

In due time the boats were lowered, but as standing in his shallop's stern, Ahab just hovered upon the point of the descent, he waved to the mate,—who held one of the tackle-ropes on deck—and bade him pause.

"Starbuck!"

"Sir?"

"For the third time my soul's ship starts upon this voyage, Starbuck."

"Aye, sir, thou wilt have it so."

"Some ships sail from their ports, and ever afterwards are missing, Starbuck!"

"Truth, sir: saddest truth."

"Some men die at ebb tide; some at low water; some at the full of the flood;—and I feel now like a billow that's all one crested comb, Starbuck. I am old;—shake hands with me, man."

Their hands met; their eyes fastened; Starbuck's tears the glue.

"Oh, my captain, my captain!—noble heart—go not—go not!—see, it's a brave man that weeps; how great the agony of the persuasion then!"

"Lower away!"—cried Ahab, tossing the mate's arm from him. "Stand by the crew!"

In an instant the boat was pulling round close under the stern. "The sharks! the sharks!" cried a voice from the low cabin-window there; "O master, my master, come back!"

But Ahab heard nothing; for his own voice was high-lifted then; and the boat leaped on.

Yet the voice spake true; for scarce had he pushed from the ship, when numbers of sharks, seemingly rising from out the dark waters beneath the hull, maliciously snapped at the blades of the oars, every time they dipped in the water; and in this

way accompanied the boat with their bites. It is a thing not uncommonly happening to the whale-boats in those swarming seas; the sharks at times apparently following them in the same prescient way that vultures hover over the banners of marching regiments in the east. But these were the first sharks that had been observed by the Pequod since the White Whale had been first descried; and whether it was that Ahab's crew were all such tiger-yellow barbarians, and therefore their flesh more musky to the senses of the sharks—a matter sometimes well known to affect them,—however it was, they seemed to follow that one boat without molesting the others.

"Heart of wrought steel!" murmured Starbuck gazing over the side, and following with his eyes the receding boat—"canst thou yet ring boldly to that sight?—lowering thy keel among ravening sharks, and followed by them, open-mouthed to the chase; and this the critical third day? [For when three days flow together in one continuous intense pursuit; be sure the first is the morning, the second the noon, and the third the evening and the end of that thing—be that end what it may.] Oh! my God! what is this that shoots through me, and leaves me so deadly calm, yet expectant,—fixed at the top of a shudder! Future things swim before me, as in empty outlines and skeletons; all the past is somehow grown dim. Mary, girl! thou fadest in pale glories behind me; boy! I seem to see but thy eyes grown wondrous blue. Strangest problems of life seem clearing; but clouds sweep between—Is my journey's end coming? My legs feel faint; like his who has footed it all day. Feel thy heart,—beats it yet?—Stir thyself, Starbuck!—stave it off—move, move! speak aloud!—Mast-head there! See ye my boy's hand on the hill?—Crazed;—aloft there!—keep thy keenest eye upon the boats:—mark well the whale!—Hol again!—drive off that hawk! see! he pecks—he tears the vane"—pointing to the red flag flying at the main-truck—"Ha! he soars away with it!—Where's the old man now? sees't thou that sight, oh Ahab!—shudder, shudder!"

The boats had not gone very far, when by a signal from the mast-heads—a downward pointed arm, Ahab knew that the whale had sounded; but intending to be near him at the next rising, he

held on his way a little sideways from the vessel; the becharmed crew maintaining the profoundest silence, as the head-beat waves hammered and hammered against the opposing bow.

"Drive, drive in your nails, oh ye waves! to their uttermost heads drive them in! ye but strike a thing without a lid; and no coffin and no hearse can be mine:—and hemp only can kill me! Ha! ha!"

Suddenly the waters around them slowly swelled in broad circles; then quickly upheaved, as if sideways sliding from a submerged berg of ice, swiftly rising to the surface. A low rumbling sound was heard; a subterraneous hum; and then all held their breaths; as bedraggled with trailing ropes, and harpoons, and lances, a vast form shot lengthwise, but obliquely from the sea. Shrouded in a thin drooping veil of mist, it hovered for a moment in the rainbowed air; and then fell swamping back into the deep. Crushed thirty feet upwards, the waters flashed for an instant like heaps of fountains, then brokenly sank in a shower of flakes, leaving the circling surface creamed like new milk round the marble trunk of the whale.

"Give way!" cried Ahab to the oarsmen, and the boats darted forward to the attack; but maddened by yesterday's fresh irons that corroded in him, Moby Dick seemed combinedly possessed by all the angels that fell from heaven. The wide tiers of welded tendons overspreading his broad white forehead, beneath the transparent skin, looked knitted together; as head on, he came churning his tail among the boats; and once more flailed them apart; spilling out the irons and lances from the two mates' boats, and dashing in one side of the upper part of their bows, but leaving Ahab's almost without a scar.

While Daggo and Queequeg were stopping the strained planks; and as the whale swimming out from them, turned, and showed one entire flank as he shot by them again; at that moment a quick cry went up. Lashed round and round to the fish's back; pinioned in the turns upon turns in which, during the past night, the whale had reeled the involutions of the lines around him, the half torn body of the Parsee was seen; his sable raiment frayed to shreds; his distended eyes turned full upon old Ahab.

*just like Moby Dick
at the end*

The harpoon dropped from his hand.

"Befooled, befooled!"—drawing in a long lean breath—"Aye, Parseel I see thee again.—Aye, and thou goest before; and this, *this* then is the hearse that thou didst promise. But I hold thee to the last letter of thy word. Where is the second hearse? Away, mates, to the ship! those boats are useless now; repair them if ye can in time, and return to me; if not, Ahab is enough to die—Down, men! the first thing that but offers to jump from this boat I stand in, that thing I harpoon. Ye are not other men, but my arms and my legs; and so obey me.—Where's the whale? gone down again?"

But he looked too nigh the boat; for as if bent upon escaping with the corpse he bore, and as if the particular place of the last encounter had been but a stage in his leeward voyage, Moby Dick was now again steadily swimming forward; and had almost passed the ship,—which thus far had been sailing in the contrary direction to him, though for the present her headway had been stopped. He seemed swimming with his utmost velocity, and now only intent upon pursuing his own straight path in the sea.

"Oh! Ahab," cried Starbuck, "not too late is it, even now, the third day, to desist. See! Moby Dick seeks thee not. It is thou, thou, that madly seekest him!" ✓

Setting sail to the rising wind, the lonely boat was swiftly impelled to leeward, by both oars and canvas. And at last when Ahab was sliding by the vessel, so near as plainly to distinguish Starbuck's face as he leaned over the rail, he hailed him to turn the vessel about, and follow him, not too swiftly, at a judicious interval. Glancing upwards, he saw Tashtego, Queequeg, and Daggoo, eagerly mounting to the three mast-heads; while the oarsmen were rocking in the two staved boats which had but just been hoisted to the side, and were busily at work in repairing them. One after the other, through the portholes, as he sped, he also caught flying glimpses of Stubb and Flask, busying themselves on deck among bundles of new irons and lances. As he saw all this; as he heard the hammers in the broken boats; far other hammers seemed driving a nail into his heart. But he rallied. And now marking that the vane or

Christlike?

flag was gone from the main-mast-head, he shouted to Tash-tego, who had just gained that perch, to descend again for another flag, and a hammer and nails, and so nail it to the mast.

Whether fagged by the three days' running chase, and the resistance to his swimming in the knotted hamper he bore; or whether it was some latent deceitfulness and malice in him: whichever was true, the White Whale's way now began to abate, as it seemed, from the boat so rapidly nearing him once more; though indeed the whale's last start had not been so long a one as before. And still as Ahab glided over the waves the unpytting sharks accompanied him; and so pertinaciously stuck to the boat; and so continually bit at the plying oars, that the blades became jagged and crunched, and left small splinters in the sea, at almost every dip.

"Heed them not! those teeth but give new rowlocks to your oars. Pull on! 'tis the better rest, the shark's jaw than the yielding water."

"But at every bite, sir, the thin blades grow smaller and smaller!"

"They will last long enough! pull on!—But who can tell"—he muttered—"whether these sharks swim to feast on the whale or on Ahab?—But pull on! Aye, all alive, now—we near him. The helm! take the helm; let me pass,"—and so saying, two of the oarsmen helped him forward to the bows of the still flying boat.

At length as the craft was cast to one side, and ran ranging along with the White Whale's flank, he seemed strangely oblivious of its advance—as the whale sometimes will—and Ahab was fairly within the smoky mountain mist, which, thrown off from the whale's spout, curled round his great, Monadnock hump; he was even thus close to him; when, with body arched back, and both arms lengthwise high-lifted to the poise, he darted his fierce iron, and his far fiercer curse into the hated whale. As both steel and curse sank to the socket, as if sucked into a morass, Moby Dick sideways writhed; spasmodically rolled his nigh flank against the bow, and, without staving a hole in it, so suddenly canted the boat over, that had it not been for the elevated part of the gunwale to which he then clung, Ahab would once more have been tossed into the sea.

As it was, three of the oarsmen—who foreknew not the precise instant of the dart, and were therefore unprepared for its effects—these were flung out; but so fell, that, in an instant two of them clutched the gunwale again, and rising to its level on a combing wave, hurled themselves bodily inboard again; the third man helplessly dropping astern, but still afloat and swimming.

Almost simultaneously, with a mighty volition of ungraduated, instantaneous swiftness, the White Whale darted through the weltering sea. But when Ahab cried out to the steersman to take new turns with the line, and hold it so; and commanded the crew to turn round on their seats, and tow the boat up to the mark; the moment the treacherous line felt that double strain and tug, it snapped in the empty air! ✓

“What breaks in me? Some sinew cracks!—’tis whole again; oars! oars! Burst in upon him!”

Hearing the tremendous rush of the sea-crashing boat, the whale wheeled round to present his blank forehead at bay; but in that evolution, catching sight of the nearing black hull of the ship; seemingly seeing in it the source of all his persecutions; bethinking it—it may be—a larger and nobler foe; of a sudden, he bore down upon its advancing prow, smiting his jaws amid fiery showers of foam.

Ahab staggered; his hand smote his forehead. “I grow blind; hands! stretch out before me that I may yet grope my way. Is’t night?”

“The whale! The ship!” cried the cringing oarsmen.

“Oars! oars! Slope downwards to thy depths, O sea, that ere it be for ever too late, Ahab may slide this last, last time upon his mark; I see: the ship! the ship! Dash on, my men! Will ye not save my ship?”

But as the oarsmen violently forced their boat through the sledge-hammering seas, the before whale-smitten bow-ends of two planks burst through, and in an instant almost, the temporarily disabled boat lay nearly level with the waves; its half-wading, splashing crew, trying hard to stop the gap and bale out the pouring water.

Meantime, for that one beholding instant, Tashtego’s mast-head hammer remained suspended in his hand; and the red

flag, half-wrapping him as with a plaid, then streamed itself straight out from him, as his own forward-flowing heart; while Starbuck and Stubb, standing upon the bowsprit beneath, caught sight of the down-coming monster just as soon as he.

"The whale, the whale! Up helm, up helm! Oh, all ye sweet powers of air, now hug me close! Let not Starbuck die, if die he must, in a woman's fainting fit. Up helm, I say—ye fools, the jaw! the jaw! Is this the end of all my bursting prayers? all my life-long fidelities? Oh, Ahab, Ahab, lo, thy work. Steady! helmsman, steady. Nay, nay! Up helm again! He turns to meet us! Oh, his unappeasable brow drives on towards one, whose duty tells him he cannot depart. My God, stand by me now!"

"Stand not by me, but stand under me, whoever you are that will now help Stubb; for Stubb, too, sticks here. I grin at thee, thou grinning whale! Who ever helped Stubb, or kept Stubb awake, but Stubb's own unwinking eye? And now poor Stubb goes to bed upon a mattress that is all too soft; would it were stuffed with brushwood! I grin at thee, thou grinning whale! Look ye, sun, moon, and stars! I call ye assassins of as good a fellow as ever spouted up his ghost. For all that, I would yet ring glasses with ye, would ye but hand the cup! Oh, oh! oh, oh! thou grinning whale, but there'll be plenty of gulping soon! Why fly ye not, O Ahab! For me, off shoes and jacket to it; let Stubb die in his drawers! A most mouldy and over salted death, though;—cherries! cherries! cherries! Oh, Flask, for one red cherry ere we die!"

"Cherries? I only wish that we were where they grow. Oh, Stubb, I hope my poor mother's drawn my part-pay ere this; if not, few coppers will now come to her, for the voyage is up."

From the ship's bows, nearly all the seamen now hung inactive; hammers, bits of plank, lances, and harpoons, mechanically retained in their hands, just as they had darted from their various employments; all their enchanted eyes intent upon the whale, which from side to side strangely vibrating his predestinating head, sent a broad band of overspreading semicircular foam before him as he rushed. Retribution, swift vengeance, eternal malice were in his whole aspect, and spite of all that mortal man could do, the solid white buttress of his forehead

smote the ship's starboard bow, till men and timbers reeled. Some fell flat upon their faces. Like dislodged trucks, the heads of the harpooneers aloft shook on their bull-like necks. Through the breach, they heard the waters pour, as mountain torrents down a flume.

"The ship! The hearse!—the second hearse!" cried Ahab from the boat; "its wood could only be American!"

Diving beneath the settling ship, the whale ran quivering along its keel; but turning under water, swiftly shot to the surface again, far off the other bow, but within a few yards of Ahab's boat, where, for a time, he lay quiescent.

"I turn my body from the sun. What ho, Tashtego! let me hear thy hammer. Oh! ye three unsundered spires of mine; thou uncracked keel; and only god-bullied hull; thou firm deck, and haughty helm, and Pole-pointed prow,—death-glorious ship! must ye then perish, and without me? Am I cut off from the last fond pride of meanest shipwrecked captains? Oh, lonely death on lonely life! Oh, now I feel my topmost greatness lies in my topmost grief. Ho, ho! from all your furthest bounds, pour ye now in, ye bold billows of my whole foregone life, and top this one piled comber of my death! Towards thee I roll, thou all-destroying but unconquering whale; to the last I grapple with thee; from hell's heart I stab at thee; for hate's sake I spit my last breath at thee. Sink all coffins and all hearses to one common pool! and since neither can be mine, let me then tow to pieces, while still chasing thee, though tied to thee, thou damned whale! *Thus*, I give up the spear!"

The harpoon was darted; the stricken whale flew forward; with igniting velocity the line ran through the groove;—ran foul. Ahab stooped to clear it; he did clear it; but the flying turn caught him round the neck, and voicelessly as Turkish mutes bowstring their victim, he was shot out of the boat, ere the crew knew he was gone. Next instant, the heavy eye-splice in the rope's final end flew out of the stark-empty tub, knocked down an oarsman, and smiting the sea, disappeared in its depths.

For an instant, the tranced boat's crew stood still; then turned. "The ship? Great God, where is the ship?" Soon they through dim, bewildering mediums saw her sidelong fading phantom, ✓

as in the gaseous Fata Morgana; only the uppermost masts out of water; while fixed by infatuation, or fidelity, or fate, to their once lofty perches, the pagan harpooneers still maintained their sinking lookouts on the sea. And now, concentric circles seized the lone boat itself, and all its crew, and each floating oar, and every lance-pole, and spinning, animate and inanimate, all round and round in one vortex, carried the smallest chip of the Pequod out of sight.

But as the last whelmings intermixingly poured themselves over the sunken head of the Indian at the mainmast, leaving a few inches of the erect spar yet visible, together with long streaming yards of the flag, which calmly undulated, with ironical coincidings, over the destroying billows they almost touched;—at that instant, a red arm and a hammer hovered backwardly uplifted in the open air, in the act of nailing the flag faster and yet faster to the subsiding spar. A sky-hawk that tauntingly had followed the main-truck downwards from its natural home among the stars, pecking at the flag, and incommoding Tashtego there; this bird now chanced to intercept its broad fluttering wing between the hammer and the wood; and simultaneously feeling that ethereal thrill, the submerged savage beneath, in his death-gasp, kept his hammer frozen there; and so the bird of heaven, with archangelic shrieks, and his imperial beak thrust upwards, and his whole captive form folded in the flag of Ahab, went down with his ship, which, like Satan, would not sink to hell till she had dragged a living part of heaven along with her, and helmeted herself with it.

Now small fowls flew screaming over the yet yawning gulf; a sullen white surf beat against its steep sides; then all collapsed, and the great shroud of the sea rolled on as it rolled five thousand years ago.

EPILOGUE

"AND I ONLY AM ESCAPED ALONE TO TELL THEE."

Job:

*The drama's done. Why then here does any one step forth?
—Because one did survive the wreck.*

It so chanced, that after the Parsee's disappearance, I was he whom the Fates ordained to take the place of Ahab's bowsman, when that bowsman assumed the vacant post; the same, who, when on the last day the three men were tossed from out the rocking boat, was dropped astern. So, floating on the margin of the ensuing scene, and in full sight of it, when the half-spent suction of the sunk ship reached me, I was then, but slowly, drawn towards the closing vortex. When I reached it, it had subsided to a creamy pool. Round and round, then, and ever contracting towards the button-like black bubble at the axis of that slowly wheeling circle, like another Ixion I did revolve. Till, gaining that vital centre, the black bubble upward burst; and now, liberated by reason of its cunning spring, and owing to its great buoyancy, rising with great force, the coffin life-buoy shot lengthwise from the sea, fell over, and floated by my side. Buoyed up by that coffin, for almost one whole day and night, I floated on a soft and dirge-like main. The unharmed sharks, they glided by as if with padlocks on their mouths; the savage sea-hawks sailed with sheathed beaks. On the second day, a sail drew near, nearer, and picked me up at last. It was the devious-cruising Rachel, that in her retracing search after her missing children, only found another orphan.

*John G. Thayer
Mariner*

FINIS.

EXPLANATORY NOTES

“Be his stuff begged, borrowed, or stolen, or of his own domestic manufacture, he is an uncommon man. Swear he is a humbug—then he is no common humbug. Lay it down that had not Sir Thomas Browne lived, Emerson would not have mystified—I will answer that had not old Zack’s father begot him, Old Zack would never have been the hero of Palo Alto. The truth is that we are all sons, grandsons, or nephews or great nephews of those who go before us. No man is his own sire.—”

—Herman Melville about Ralph Waldo Emerson in a letter to Evert A. Duyckinck, 3 March 1849.
(NYPL-D; printed in Thorp, p. 371.)

EXPLANATORY NOTES

The passage in the text to which each note refers is indicated by two numbers: the first gives the page and the second gives the line on the page.

This centennial edition attempts to establish the final, authoritative text of *Moby-Dick*, to bring together the results of past criticism and scholarship, and to add new information so that *Moby-Dick* may be read as a work of its own time as well as of ours.

Friends and scholars everywhere, knowingly and unknowingly, have generously helped in this effort, earning the editors' deep gratitude. The literary, historical, and philosophical annotations and the analyses of characters were done by Mansfield, the text and whaling notes by Vincent. The introduction was a joint enterprise, and throughout there has been much cross-correction and advice.

Dr. Johnson sagely stated that books require footnotes after fifty years. Now one hundred years old *Moby-Dick* requires twice that number. Here they are. No other American novel has ever received such liberal annotation, but then no other is great enough to submit to such treatment.

Some may think that these notes imply that Melville was derivative and unoriginal. The contrary must be the conclusion. Melville was absorptive and transmutative. Writing on whales and whaling, Melville had need of whaling books for facts to weight his exposition. He said that he had "swum through libraries," but it is apparent that he read only five authors with care—Beale, Bennett, J. Ross Browne, Cheever, and Scoresby—and that there were more whaling authors he did not know than he knew. The whaling books were mostly read within a limited period and for the specific purpose of this novel.

Of Melville's more general reading, Shakespeare perhaps had the most profound impact. But in *Moby-Dick* the influence of Carlyle was almost equally apparent; and De Quincey, Sir Thomas Browne, Goethe, Montaigne, Emerson, and Hawthorne helped importantly to shape ideas or phrasing. Melville, however, could get from books of such slight literary merit as Robert Southey's *The Doctor* and Thomas Hope's *Anastasis* abundant stimuli that set his mind to work. Far

outranking all other books in its all-pervading influence was the King James version of the Bible, which Melville read and reread, annotated and marked in more than one edition.

Like Shakespeare, whatever Melville read he piratically made his own, extending, deepening, and embellishing his thefts so that no literary judge can but approve and applaud. These notes—in some sense a biography of Melville's mind during the years of *Moby-Dick's* composition—afford the interested critic a chance to study the borrowing techniques of a genius.

Luther S. Mansfield

Williams College

Howard P. Vincent

Illinois Institute of Technology

Abbreviations

- Beale—Thomas Beale, *The Natural History of the Sperm Whale*. London, 1839.
- Bennett—Frederick Debell Bennett, *Narrative of a Whaling Voyage Round the Globe, from the Year 1833 to 1836*. 2 vols. London, 1840.
- J. Ross Browne—J. Ross Browne, *Etchings of a Whaling Cruise, with Notes of a Sojourn on the Island of Zanzibar; and a Brief History of the Whale Fishery, in its Past and Present Condition*. New York, 1846.
- Cheever—Henry T. Cheever, *The Whale and his Captors; or, The Whaleman's Adventures and the Whale's Biography*. New York, 1850.
- Journal—*Journal of a Visit to London and the Continent by Herman Melville 1849-1850*. Edited by Eleanor Melville Metcalf. Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1948.
- Olmsted—Francis Allyn Olmsted, *Incidents of a Whaling Voyage*. New York, 1841.
- Scoresby—William Scoresby, Jr., *An Account of the Arctic Regions, with a History and Description of the Northern Whale-Fishery*. 2 vols. Edinburgh, 1820.
- Sealts—Merton M. Sealts, Jr., *Melville's Reading: A Check-List of Books Owned and Borrowed*. Offprinted from *Harvard Library Bulletin*, 1948-1950, Vols. 2, 3, and 4. References to Sealts are by number of the items, listed alphabetically by author. All references in the following notes, unless specifically stated otherwise, are to books Melville owned or borrowed before the final writing of *Moby-Dick*.
- Thorp—Herman Melville. *Representative Selections, with Introduction, Bibliography, and Notes*. Edited by Willard Thorp. New York, 1938.
- Trying-Out—Howard P. Vincent, *The Trying-Out of Moby-Dick*. Boston & New York, 1949.

xxxv.5 To NATHANIEL HAWTHORNE: Melville's friend E. A. Duyckinck, with his brother George, made in June 1838 a pilgrimage to Salem to see Hawthorne, because he had been much impressed

with *Twice-Told Tales*. With Hawthorne's letter of appreciation, 22 December 1841, for an article about him by Duyckinck which had appeared in the May 1841 issue of *Arcturus*, began a correspondence of some 16 years between the two men. Hawthorne wrote several reviews for *Arcturus* and the *Literary World*, periodicals with which Duyckinck was concerned, and Duyckinck was the editor for *Journal of an African Cruiser* and *Mosses from an Old Manse*, in their publication in the Library of American Books of Wiley and Putnam. In no less than three letters—22 December 1841; 26 November 1843; 7 April 1845—Hawthorne gave Duyckinck explicit invitations to visit him. In the course of his normal professional duties, Duyckinck sent to Hawthorne 13 March 1846, a copy of Melville's *Typee*, of which the latter wrote a brief notice for *The Salem Advertiser*, 26 March 1846. Although Hawthorne wrote Duyckinck, 18 April 1846, that he liked the book "uncommonly well," the review somehow failed to mention Melville's name. In the summer of 1849 Melville borrowed *Twice-Told Tales* (Sealts, No. 258) from Duyckinck, and perhaps reflected his reading of them in his comment in *White-Jacket*, chap. 68: "And would that my fine countryman, Hawthorne of Salem, had but served on board a man-of-war in his time, that he might give us the reading of a 'rill' from the scuttle-butt." Melville surely knew when he went to Pittsfield for the summer of 1850 that Hawthorne was now living nearby in Lennox. He may even have been the instigator of his Aunt Mary Melville's gift of the *Mosses*, and he must certainly have read these stories with an awareness that he would most probably make the acquaintance of the author within a few days, when their mutual friend Duyckinck came for a visit. The surviving copy (Sealts, No. 248), *Mosses from an Old Manse* (2 vols. bound as one, from the Library of American Books; New York: Wiley and Putnam, 1846), Melville inscribed: "H. Melville. from Aunt Mary./ Pittsfield. July 18. 1850." Perhaps Melville in reading these stories had in mind an article for the *Literary World*; his markings and annotations throughout suggest public criticism rather than merely private use. Thus, at the end of "The Birthmark" (p. 51), he wrote: "The moral here is wonderfully fine," and passages from "Monsieur du Miroir" (pp. 151, 153, 155) won his marginal approval: "exquisite," "admirable," "What could be finer?" The nature of Melville's insistence midway in the second article in the *Literary World*, 24 August, 1850, that he was writing of Hawthorne in his books, not the man personally—"(for I never saw the man; and in the chances of a quiet plantation life, remote from his haunts, perhaps never shall)"—raises questions about just when the articles were written.

It seems wisest, however, to take Melville literally, that he had not at the time of writing made Hawthorne's acquaintance. In the interval of 12 days between the meeting with Hawthorne and the publication of the first article, Duyckinck and Cornelius Mathews were house guests with Melville at Broadhall for a week, during which time there were visits to Hawthorne in Lenox, trips to the nearby Shaker colonies, and a masquerade party. Little time was left for authorship. The two articles, "Hawthorne and His Mosses. By a Virginian Spending July in Vermont," *Literary World*, 17 and 24 August 1850, Vol. 7, pp. 125-127, 145-147 (printed in Thorp, pp. 327-345), are best taken as Melville's preparation for meeting Hawthorne and as indication of the high opinion he held of his fellow author that made him eager for the personal meeting. Here, representing himself as "Posterity speaking by proxy," Melville found Hawthorne worthy of comparison with Shakespeare, though not necessarily as great—like the Elizabethan chiefly distinguished for "those occasional flashings-forth of the intuitive Truth in him; those short, quick probings at the very axis of reality." Without this preliminary comprehension, it seems unlikely that Melville would have followed up so avidly his relatively limited contacts with Hawthorne at the large dinner party at the home of David Dudley Field in Stockbridge, 5 August 1850. (Duyckinck's account of this meeting was the most detailed; see L. S. Mansfield, "Glimpses of Herman Melville's Life in Pittsfield, 1850-1851," *American Literature*, March 1937, Vol. 9, pp. 27, 29-31.) Two days after meeting Hawthorne in Stockbridge, Melville called on him in Lenox, in company with Duyckinck and Cornelius Mathews, 7 August 1850, and within the month that followed saw Hawthorne three more times in Lenox and received one visit in Pittsfield. Hawthorne received from Duyckinck sometime after the early August visit a full set of Melville's books to date and thanked him for the gift 29 August 1850, in the same letter in which he noted Melville's anonymous article about him: "I have read Melville's work with a progressive appreciation of the author. No writer ever put the reality before the eyes of his reader more unflinchingly than he does in 'Redburn,' and 'White Jacket.' 'Mardi' is a rich book, with depths here and there that compel a man to swim for his life. It is so good that one scarcely pardons the writer for not having brooded long over it, so as to make it a great deal better. . . . I have read the articles in the *Literary World* with very great pleasure. The writer has a truly generous heart. . . . But he is no common man: and, next to his praise, it is good to have beguiled or bewitched such a man into praising me more than I deserve. . . ." On the same day

Mrs. Hawthorne wrote Duyckinck about Melville's articles: "The Virginian is the first person who has ever in *print* apprehended Mr Hawthorne. . . . There is such a generous, noble enthusiasm as I have not before found in any critic of any writer. While bringing out the glory of his subject . . . he surrounds himself with a glory. The freshness of primeval nature is in that man, & the true Promethean fire is in him. Who can he be, so fearless, so rich in heart, of such fine intuition? Is his name altogether hidden?" Perhaps Duyckinck revealed the hidden name; in any event it must have soon been clear to the Hawthornes that Melville's admiration equaled the Virginian's, if not that they were one and the same. During the fall and early winter months, while Melville was returning to New York to move his family to a permanent home in Pittsfield and adjusting to his new quarters at Arrowhead, there may have been no visits; no record survives. Melville was busy with *Moby-Dick* and Hawthorne with *The House of Seven Gables*. But 22 January 1851, Melville paid Hawthorne a visit in Lenox and received as a gift a two volume edition of *Twice-Told Tales* (Sealts, Nos. 259, 260). In a letter to Duyckinck 12 February 1851, Melville commented on his rereading of these stories: "I think they far exceed the 'Mosses'—they are, I fancy, an earlier vintage from his vine. Some of those sketches are wonderfully subtle. Their deeper meanings are worthy of a Brahmin. Still there is something lacking—a good deal lacking—to the plump sphericity of the man. What is that?—He doesn't patronize the butcher—he needs roast-beef done rare. Nevertheless, for one, I regard Hawthorne (in his books) as evincing a quality of genius, immensely loftier, & more profound, than any other American has shown hitherto in the printed form. Irving is a grasshopper to him—putting the souls of the two men together, I mean." (Thorp, pp. 385-386.) Even without an adequate diet of rare beef, Hawthorne was for Melville a stimulating companion—in person or in letters. In the early spring months there were more visits to Lenox and entertainment of Hawthorne on probably two occasions at Arrowhead. Even more significant, the dozen or so surviving letters from Melville to Hawthorne all date after this critical estimate of Hawthorne made in the letter to Duyckinck. One of these letters came in March, two in June, two in July, two in November—all 1851, and one other, the letter of 8 January 1852 to Mrs. Hawthorne, was a response to generous criticism by both Hawthorne and his wife of *Moby-Dick*. An additional three—13 August, 25 October, and November 1852—dealt with the Agatha material Melville had picked up in Nantucket in July 1852, which he offered to Hawthorne for literary treatment.

In all of these letters, Melville showed the most profound respect and admiration for Hawthorne—the kind regard and affection one has for another person to whom he can open his own heart on the issues that really matter. There were references to *Moby-Dick* in all the letters of 1851—to the difficulties of getting the book in final form, to the author's own view: "I have written a wicked book, and feel spotless as a lamb" (Nov. 1851), and to various of the problems of metaphysics which Melville was dramatizing in that book. To the man who could elicit this confidence from Melville and could bring out his fellow author's highest powers, *Moby-Dick* was deservedly dedicated. What Hawthorne may have said to Melville in his letter about the book is not to be known, except as it can be guessed from Melville's gratified and ebullient response, but Hawthorne wrote to Duyckinck, 1 December 1851: "What a book Melville has written! It gives me an idea of much greater power than his preceding ones. It hardly seemed to me that the review of it, in the *Literary World*, did justice to its best points." In reply to what he called her "highly flattering letter," Melville wrote Mrs. Hawthorne, 8 January 1852: "It really amazed me that you should find any satisfaction in that book. It is true that some *men* have said they were pleased with it, but you are the only *woman*. . . . But, then, since you, with your spiritualizing nature, see more things than other people, and by the same process, refine all you see, so that they are not the same things that other people see, but things, which while you think you but humbly discover them, you do in fact create them for yourself—therefore, upon the whole, I do not so much marvel at your expressions concern'g *Moby Dick*. At any rate, your allusion for example to the 'Spirit Spout' first showed me that there was a subtle significance in that thing—but I did not, in that case, mean it. I had some vague idea while writing it, that the whole book was susceptible of an allegorical construction, & also that parts of it were—but the speciality of many of the particular subordinate allegories were first revealed to me after reading Mr. Hawthorne's letter, which without citing any particular examples, yet intimated the part-&-parcel allegoricalness of the whole." After the removal of the Hawthornes to Concord in November 1851 and after the publication of *Moby-Dick*, the relationship between the two men became more casual. There were the three letters about the Agatha material in 1852, at least three visits by Melville to Concord, some effort on Hawthorne's part in the spring of 1853 to get Melville a consular appointment, and the meetings in Liverpool in 1856 and 1857, before and after Melville's tour of the Mediterranean and the Holy Land. Henry Murray has

suggested that the "old sire" of little Miriam and Martha in *Moby-Dick*, p. 533, and Plotinus Plinlimmon in *Pierre* were in some degree portraits of Hawthorne; see H. Murray, ed., *Pierre* (C. W.), pp. lxxvii-lxxix, 492—note on 345.9. Perhaps in time Melville said to himself much the same thing that Emerson, the day after Hawthorne's funeral, wrote in his Journal, 24 May 1864: "I thought him a greater man than any of his works betray, that there was still a great deal of work in him, and that he might one day show a purer power. Moreover, I have felt sure of him in his neighborhood, and in his necessities of sympathy and intelligence,—that I could well wait his time,—his unwillingness and caprice,—and might one day conquer a friendship. It would have been a happiness, doubtless to both of us, to have come into habits of unreserved intercourse. It was easy to talk to him,—there were no barriers,—only, he said so little, that I talked too much, and stopped only because, as he gave no indications, I feared to exceed. He showed no egotism or self-assertion, rather a humility, and, at one time, a fear that he had written himself out. . . . Now it appears that I waited too long." Perhaps in time, Melville came to Emerson's view of Hawthorne. But in March 1851 he was proclaiming: "There is the grand truth about Nathaniel Hawthorne. He says Nol in thunder; and the Devil himself cannot make him say yes." And this mood of admiration and fellowship so persisted through the final months of the writing of *Moby-Dick* that in November 1851, he could still write to the man to whom he had just dedicated his masterpiece: "I shall leave the world, I feel, with more satisfaction for having come to know you. . . . The divine magnet is on you, and my magnet responds." Plotinus Plinlimmon may perhaps have been a portrait of Hawthorne, but it is unlikely that anything in *Moby-Dick* was meant as a serious detraction from Hawthorne's greatness. (The letters of Hawthorne and Duyckinck cited here are in the New York Public Library, Duyckinck Collection; the letters of Melville to Hawthorne are largely from Julian Hawthorne, *Nathaniel Hawthorne and His Wife*, 2 vols., Boston, 1885, Vol. 1, pp. 385-389, 398-407, 475, and Rose Hawthorne Lathrop, *Memories of Hawthorne*, Boston, 1897, pp. 156-160; the three longer ones are printed in Thorp, pp. 386-396. Much additional material about the relationship of the two men may be found in the text and notes of Randall Stewart, ed., *The American Notebooks of Nathaniel Hawthorne*, New Haven: Yale University Press, 1932. The most complete study, however, is Harrison Hayford's *Melville and Hawthorne*, unpublished doctoral dissertation at Yale University, 1945.)

xxxvii.2. *A LATE CONSUMPTIVE USHER TO A GRAMMAR SCHOOL*: Although this was clearly an autobiographical reference to his own schoolteaching at the Sykes District in Richmond, near Pittsfield, in 1837-38 and at Greenbush, N. Y., in 1839-40, Melville apparently used the term "usher" by way of identifying himself with other schoolmasters turned author, notably Dr. Samuel Johnson and Rousseau. See "Memoranda of Things on the Voyage," *Journal*, p. 84: "Rousseau a schoolmaster. (2d Vol., near beginning 'could have killed his scholars sometimes.' Dr. Johnson an usher—'intolerable' (vol. 1st.) (Other allusion in 1st vol. Boswell.) 3d. Vol. P. 220—Do." These were notations of Melville's reading on the homeward voyage in the volumes of Rousseau's *Confessions* and Boswell's *Life of Samuel Johnson* he had secured in London in the fall of 1849. Mrs. Eleanor Melville Metcalf, the editor of the *Journal*, has tracked down some of the specific passages, pp. 166-167. The pertinent material in Boswell's entries for the year 1732 described Johnson as an "usher in the school of Market-Bosworth, in Leicestershire," and included such phrases as "painful drudgery," "dull sameness," and "complicated misery"—all of which were for Johnson "very irksome." It was by Sir Wolstan Dixie, patron of the school, in whose house Johnson lived as a kind of domestic chaplain, that Johnson "was treated with what he represented as intolerable harshness"—not by his scholars. Rousseau reported that when his pupils "showed signs of insubordination, I could have killed them, which was not the way to make them either learned or well behaved."

xxxvii.7. *all the gay flags of all the known nations of the world*: It is perhaps not too fanciful to see here a hint, albeit a facetious one, of the comprehensiveness Melville intended in his "Extracts" and of the desire to make his novel to some extent a universal parable which is more seriously stated on pp. 118-119 in the reference to "an Anacharsis Clootz deputation from all the isles of the sea, and all the ends of the earth."

xxxviii.1. *ETYMOLOGY*: The quotations from Noah Webster, *An American Dictionary of the English Language* (Springfield, 1850) and Charles Richardson, *A New Dictionary of the English Language* (Philadelphia, 1851) were accurate. Richardson gave the passage from Richard Hakluyt, *The Principal Navigations* (1598), Vol. 1, p. 568—Arngrimus Ionas of Island, Part 1, sec. 14—exactly as Melville used it (with the *c* in the compiler's name), as well as Extract 7 (from Pliny), and Extract 17 (from Spenser), and part of Extract 37 (from

Goldsmith's *Natural History*)—all with specific references, chapter and verse. Through Melville's or a printer's error, four of the words for whale in other languages appeared incorrectly in the first edition. According to the quotation from Webster given above, Melville used the Danish adjective form rather than the noun, *hval*. The correct Anglo-Saxon form, as it appeared in Alfred's account of Othere, was *hwæl*. The initial letter of the Greek word was κ (not χ): κητος. The most accurate Hebrew word for whale was תַּנִּינִי, used in Genesis i, 21 and Job vii, 12, which is transcribed in the Roman alphabet as *tannin*. What Melville apparently wrote was תַּנִּי (*tan*), the hypothetical singular, which did not occur in the Old Testament, of the plural noun תַּנִּינִים (*tannim*), used in Ezekiel xxix, 3 and xxxii, 2—the latter verse quoted by Melville, p. 360. The best scholarship of Melville's day, however, translated this hypothetical singular as "jackal." But the King James version rendered both plurals in Ezekiel as "whale." The problem of the correct word to use here may have been further complicated for Melville by the hypothesis advanced by some scholars of an obsolete root תַּנִּי (*tann*), which appeared also in the Hebrew word transcribed *leviathan*, used in Job xli, 1 (a chapter often quoted by Melville) and in Psalms civ, 26 and Isaiah xxvii, 1 (both included in the Extracts). See Johannes Simonis, *Lexicon Manuale Hebraicum et Chaldaicum* (Halle, 1793), p. 1754, citing as his authority "THEOD. HASAEUS in Disquisit. de *Leviathane Iobi et Ceto Ionah*, c. 3, § 6. seq." Melville was no Hebrew scholar, but the nature of his error here—obscured by the whimsical rendering of the Hebrew in all previous editions—suggests that with the aid perhaps of some scholarly friend he was diligently attempting to get the most inclusive Hebrew term, one that would evoke for him *all* of the significant Biblical allusions to the whale.

xxxix.1. **EXTRACTS:** See the first article on *Moby-Dick* in the *Literary World*, 15 November 1851, Vol. 8, p. 381: "It opens, after a dedication to Nathaniel Hawthorne, with a preliminary flourish in the style of Carlyle and 'The Doctor' of etymology, followed by a hundred or so of extracts of 'Old Burton,' passages of quaint and pithy character from Job and King Alfred to Miriam Coffin. . . ." If the writer of this review was E. A. Duyckinck, he probably knew for certain how much the idea of these extracts had been suggested by Robert Southey's practice in the seven volumes of his anonymously published *The Doctor* (1834-1847), a kind of commonplace book loosely tied together with the thin fictional strand of Dr. Daniel Dove and his family circle. Each of these volumes opened with a "Prelude

of Mottoes" of from ten to twenty-eight quotations from half a dozen or more languages and the final volume, published posthumously, also collected some sixty quotations into an "Epilude of Mottoes." In addition the chapter mottoes, besides being printed in their proper place at the beginning of the 40 or so chapters in each volume, were also reproduced in the "Contents," which immediately followed each "Prelude of Mottoes." The fifty or sixty quotations thus massed at the beginning of each of Southey's volumes had no perceptible theme, certainly not the clear common denominator of the "Extracts" which Melville identified as "what has been promiscuously said, thought, fancied, and sung of Leviathan." Thus Southey's mottoes were a stunt, as the novel itself was a stunt somewhat in the manner of *Tristram Shandy*; Melville's quotations were a mood-setting prologue for a literal and symbolical epic of the Whale. Melville's own reading accounted for a large number of the quotations, but many came to him through secondary sources—particularly through Henry T. Cheever's *The Whale and his Captors* (1850) and J. Ross Browne's *Etchings of a Whaling Cruise* (1846). A dozen or more came through Cheever to Melville, who sometimes gave away his borrowing by following his source in failure to indicate omissions, or by misassigning to the one Bunyan book he certainly knew the passage from that author Cheever correctly quoted (p. 70) as from *The Holy War*, or by accepting verbatim the twelve lines which Cheever (p. 128) credited to *World before the Flood*, merely adding Montgomery's name as author—totally unaware, it would seem, that the passage came from *Pelican Island*, and that Cheever had made two unindicated omissions of a total of ten lines. J. Ross Browne's book Melville reviewed for the *Literary World*, 6 March 1847, Vol. 1, pp. 105-106 (printed in Thorp, pp. 320-327). Besides quoting Browne himself (p. 115), Melville most likely got from this author the extracts from King Alfred (p. 512), Richard Strafford (p. 521), Obed Macy (p. 518), McCulloch's *Commercial Dictionary* (p. 514), and the Nantucket Song (p. 17). Cheever used the two quotations from Milton (pp. 52, 64) and the one from the *New England Primer* (p. 111) which Melville included in the "Extracts," but these were things Melville might well have found on his own. Except in cases of error—the Bunyan and the Montgomery—it is almost impossible to say with absolute certainty that Melville depended on a secondary source, though it is clear that in many instances he must have done so. Several extracts seems to have come through Thomas Beale's *The Natural History of the Sperm Whale* (1839) and several from Charles Richardson's *New Dictionary*. The Biblical quotations and

the strictly literary ones most likely came from Melville's own reading; indeed, the examination of the context of those from Montaigne, Rabelais, and some others has revealed passages nearby in the original text which seem to have influenced details in the main body of *Moby-Dick*.

xxxix.5. *the long Vaticans*: In Melville's day the Vatican designated merely the Papal library, not the Holy See. Compare *Redburn*, chap. 41: "Vatican libraries," and *Mardi*, chap. 119: "My memory is a life beyond birth; my memory, my library of the Vatican, its alcoves all endless perspectives, eve-tinted by cross-lights from Middle-Age oriels."

xxxix.24. *Hampton Court and the Tuileries*: With Dr. Franklin Taylor, Melville visited the British royal palace at Hampton Court 11 November 1849, and in his various sightseeing rambles through Paris must have at least passed by the still-standing Tuileries 30 November and 2 and 4 December 1849; see *Journal*, pp. 28, 54, 55, 57. These palaces, largely taken over as museums in Melville's day, would need clearing out for occupancy by the deserving Sub-Sub-Librarians. The Tuileries was also the residence of Louis Napoleon, elected President of the Republic in December 1848, proclaimed Emperor in December 1852.

xxxix.27. *long-pampered Gabriel, Michael, and Raphael*: In the second notice of *Moby-Dick* published in the *Literary World* (22 November 1851, Vol. 8, p. 404), the reviewer—probably Evert A. Duyckinck—objected to Ishmael's "contumely" in this passage, suggesting that *Paradise Lost*, if not the Bible, should have inspired reverence for these angels. That was, of course, to miss Melville's playfulness. Milton, however, was probably responsible for Melville's singling out these three angels, for they were the most prominent ones in *Paradise Lost*, and only Gabriel appeared importantly in the Bible. (See Henry Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, Pittsburg, 1950, pp. 70-80.) Raphael, Gabriel, and Michael—speaking in that order, the reverse of their order of dignity—began the "Prologue in Heaven" which opened Goethe's *Faust*, Part I. The three appeared in Melville's order in Dante's *Paradise* (H. F. Cary trans.), Canto 4, lines 46-49:

". . . and holy church
Doth represent with human countenance
Gabriel, Michael, and him who made
Tobias whole."

"Gabriel, Michael, & Raphael" was also Melville's order in the roughly penciled notes on the back fly-leaf of Volume 7 of the edition of Shakespeare he purchased in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460)—notes apparently for a story about a Society of Devils, though many of them were clearly used in the final working-out of *Moby-Dick*. In a letter to Duyckinck about the purchase of this set of Shakespeare, 24 February 1849, Melville remarked: "I fancy this Mons Shakespeare in heaven ranks with Gabriel, Raphael and Michael." (Thorp, p. 370.) The phrase "unsplinterable glasses" seems to reflect the mood of Melville's letter to Hawthorne, June 1851: "If ever, my dear Hawthorne, in the eternal times that are to come, you and I shall sit down in Paradise, in some little shady corner by ourselves; and if we shall by any means be able to smuggle a basket of champagne there (I won't believe in a Temperance Heaven), and if we shall then cross our celestial legs in the celestial grass that is forever tropical, and strike our glasses and our heads together, till both musically ring in concert,—then, O my dear fellow-mortal, how shall we pleasantly discourse of all the things manifold which now so distress us. . . ." (Thorp, p. 391.)

xl. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Genesis i, 21. Job xli, 32, sidelined in Melville's Bible (Sealts, No. 62); "Leviathan" substituted for "he." Jonah i, 17, phrased differently on p. 40. Psalms civ, 26; compare Bacon's translation of same verse in Extract 13. Isaiah xxvii, 1. Plutarch's *Morals*, "Which are the Most Crafty, Water-Animals or Those Creatures which Breed upon the Land?" Sec. 31. Pliny's *Natural History*, IX, ii, 4; quoted as from "Holland. Plinie, b. ix, c. 3," in Charles Richardson, *A New Dictionary of the English Language*, article on "whale."

xli. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Lucian's "The True History," Book 1; Loeb Classical Library, A.M. Harmon trans., Vol. 1, pp. 285-287; unindicated omission which altered the sense. King Alfred's insertion in his translation of Orosius, *History of the World*, Part 1, chap. 1; included in Richard Hakluyt, *Principal Navigations*, under "Ochter" in quite different phrasing; slightly varied phrasing in Cheever, p. 21; Melville's probable source was J. Ross Browne, p. 512. Montaigne (Sealts, No. 366), Book 2, chap. 12, probably in William Hazlitt translation. Rabelais (Sealts, No. 417), Book 4, chap. 34, Motteaux trans. *The Annales, or General Chronicle of England, begun first by maister John Stowe. . . .* (London, 1615), p. 677, entry for 9 July 1574. Bacon's version of Psalms civ, [26]; in *Translation*

of *Certain Psalms into English Verse* (London, 1625). Bacon's *Historia Vitae et Mortis*, Topic 3, item 48. 1 *Henry IV*, I, iii, 57-58.

xl.ii. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: *Hamlet* III, ii, 399; used as chapter motto by Cooper for *The Pilot*, chap. 17, from which the fifty-sixth came. *The Faerie Queene*, Book 6, canto 10, stanza 31, lines 5-9; Melville's surviving copy of Spenser (Sealts, No. 483) not acquired until 1861; this passage quoted in Charles Richardson, *A New Dictionary of the English Language*, article on "whale." *The Works of Sr William Davenant Kt.* . . . (London, 1673—Sealts, No. 176), "Preface to Gondibert," p. 16; Melville checked this passage in his copy. Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 3, chap. 26: quoted Beale, p. 126, but misspelling of "Hofmannus" suggests that Melville used his own 1686 folio (Sealts No. 90) with old-fashioned elongated s. Edmund Waller, *The Battle of the Summer Islands*, Canto 3, lines 11-12, 53-54; pronouns in last two lines altered from feminine to masculine to square with line 12. Thomas Hobbes, *Leviathan*, "Introduction," fifth sentence. John Bunyan, *The Holy War*, chap. 3; quoted and correctly assigned in Cheever, p. 70; the English edition corrected Melville's misassignment to *Pilgrim's Progress*. Milton's *Paradise Lost* I, 200-202; quoted in fuller form, Cheever, p. 64; also Joseph C. Hart, *Miriam Coffin*, vol. 1, p. xxiv.

xl.iii. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Milton's *Paradise Lost* VII, 412-416; exactly as quoted in Cheever, p. 52; used on title page of each of 3 volumes in English edition. Thomas Fuller's *The Holy State and the Profane State* (Sealts, No. 221), Book 2, chap. 21, "The Good Sea-Captain," sec. 8. John Dryden, *Annus Mirabilis*, stanza 203; the only surviving Melville copy of Dryden (Sealts, No. 191) was an 1854 edition. Thomas Edge in *Haklutus Posthumus, or Purchas His Pilgrimes*, Part 2, Book 3, chap. 2, sec. 3; much altered phrasing. Sir Thomas Herbert, *Some Yeares Travels in Divers Parts of Asia and Afrique* (1628), Book 1, p. 13; not in Harris. William Cornelius Schouten, whose "circumnavigation" was the sixth described in John Harris, ed., *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca* (1744), Vol. 1, Book 1, chap. 1, sec. 9, p. 54.

xl.iv. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Friedrich Martens, *Voyage into Spitzbergen and Greenland* . . . anno 1671—only brief mention in Harris; for full text see Tancred Robinson, ed., *An Account of Several Late Voyages and Discoveries to the South and North*. . . . (London, 1694); as Melville said, p. 263, plates were in Harris. Sir Robert

Sibbald, *The History, Ancient and Modern, of the Sheriffdoms of Fife and Kinross*, Part 4, sec. 1—"Description of the Western Coast."

Richard Strafford, quoted by Beale, p. 137, and by J. Ross Browne from Beale on p. 521. *The New England Primer*, popular reprint (Sealts, No. 384); quoted in fuller form by Cheever, p. 111. Captain Ambrose Cowley's "Voyage Round the Globe [1683-1686]" in *A Collection of Voyages* (London: J. and J. Knapton, 1729; 4 vols.), Vol. 4; Melville dated edition used, not voyage. Don Antonio de Ulloa, *A Voyage to South America* (London, 1806—fourth ed.), Vol. 2, Book 9, chap. 3, p. 325—a similar comment on the triangular horn-enclosed "cope," not on the whale!

Alexander Pope, "The Rape of the Lock," Canto 2, lines 117-120; only surviving Melville copy of Pope is 1856 edition (Sealts, No. 405); Melville substituted "stuffed" for "stiff" in final line.

xliv. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: *Goldsmith's Natural History*, abridged for the use of schools, by Mrs. Pilkington (Philadelphia, 1829), Sec. 3, chap. 2, subdivision on "Whale." Oliver Goldsmith to Samuel Johnson, as quoted by James Boswell, *Life of Samuel Johnson*—entry for 1773. Captain James Cook, *A Voyage to the Pacific . . . for Making Discoveries in the Northern Hemisphere [1776-1780]* (London, 1785—second ed.), Vol. 2, p. 473—entry for 3 September 1778. Uno von Troil, *Letters on Iceland* (London, 1780), Letter 12, p. 130.

Thomas Jefferson's memorandum to Armand Marc Comte de Montmarin-Saint-Herem, French minister of foreign affairs, Oct. 1788, protesting *Arret* against importation of foreign whale oil; copy enclosed in Jefferson's letter to John Jay from Paris, 19 Nov. 1788; Melville's erroneous date suggests some secondary source. Edmund Burke's Speech on Conciliation of American Colonies, 22 March 1775; quoted by J. Ross Browne, p. 524, with the erroneous date 1774; alluded to by Cheever, p. 303. Edmund Burke, Speech in House of Commons, c. 1780, according to Burton Stevenson, ed., *Home Book of Quotations*, 4th Ed. revised (1944); not published in Burke's *Works*, nor in Cobbett's *Parliamentary History*.

xlvi. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Sir William Blackstone, *Commentaries on the Laws of England* (New York, 1847), Book 1, chap. 8, p. 217.

William Falconer, *The Shipwreck*, Canto 2, lines 71, 75-76, with unindicated omission; quoted by Joseph C. Hart, *Miriam Coffin*, Vol. 1, chap. 2. William Cowper, "On the Queen's Visit to London,"

lines 13-20 (in Sealts, No. 161). John Hunter's account, quoted by Beale, p. 104, and by Paley, chap. 10. William Paley, *Natural Theology*, chap. 10.

Baron George Cuvier, (*The Class Pisces*) *The Animal Kingdom*, Vol. 10 (Sealts, No. 171). Capt. James Colnett, *A Voyage to the South Atlantic and Round Cape Horn . . . for the Purpose of Extending the Spermaceti Whale Fisheries* (London, 1798), chap. 4, p. 28—entry for 1 May 1793.

xlvi. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: James Montgomery, *Pelican Island*, Canto 2, lines 22-24, 26-28, 37-42; Cheever, p. 128, had this exactly as Melville did, with the misassignment to *World Before the Flood*, and the unindicated omissions. Charles Lamb's "The Triumph of the Whale," lines 1-6 (Sealts, No. 316). Obed Macy's *History of Nantucket*; Melville's copy not acquired until 7 July 1852 (Sealts, No. 345), but this passage was quoted by J. Ross Browne, p. 518. Hawthorne's "The Village Uncle," in *Twice-Told Tales* (Sealts, Nos. 258, 259, and 260). Hawthorne's "Chippings with a Chisel," *Twice-Told Tales*. James Fenimore Cooper's *The Pilot*, chap. 17; motto of this Cooper chapter is same as Extract 16, from *Hamlet*.

xlvi. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: J. P. Eckermann's *Conversations of Goethe*, entry for 31 January 1830. Owen Chase *Narrative . . . of the Whale-ship Essex* (Sealts, Nos. 133 and 134) chap. 2, p. 34. Elizabeth Oakes Smith, "The Drowned Mariner," lines 1-5. William Scoresby, Vol. 2, chap. 4, sec. 9, pp. 281-282, and Vol. 1, chap. 6, sec. 1, p. 468; slightly varied wording in quotation by Cheever, p. 206.

xlix. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Thomas Beale, p. 165 and p. 33. Frederick Debell Bennett, Vol. 2, chap. 6, p. 213. J. Ross Browne, p. 115. William Lay and Cyrus M. Hussey, *A Narrative of the Mutiny, on Board the Ship Globe. . .* (Sealts, No. 323), chap. 1, p. 15.

l. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Daniel Tyerman and George Bennett, *Journal of Voyages and Travels* (Boston, 1832), Vol. 1, chap. 1, p. 3—story of the captain of the whale-ship *Tuscan*.

Daniel Webster, Remarks on the Breakwater at Nantucket, U.S. Senate, 2 May 1828; *Collections of the Writings and Speeches of Daniel Webster* (1903), Vol. 12, p. 131. Henry T. Cheever, p. 151. No *Life of Samuel Comstock* found; apparently an ephemeral pamphlet.

John Ramsay McCulloch, *Dictionary, Practical, Theoretical, and Historical, of Commerce and Commercial Navigation* (London: Longman, Brown, Green, and Longmans, 1850); some earlier edition, with same phrasing, quoted by J. Ross Browne, p. 514.

li. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: From "Something" unpublished; not from any published later work of Melville's. Charles Wilkes, *Narrative of the U.S. Exploring Expedition*, Vol. 5, chap. 12, "Currents and Whaling" (Sealts, No. 532); this passage quoted by J. Ross Browne, p. 559. Robert Pearse Gillies, *Tales of a Voyager to the Arctic Ocean*, First Series (London, 1826) Vol. 2, p. 316. The *Hobomack* of Falmouth was apparently confused in Melville's mind with the *Sharon* of Fairhaven, according to Curator William H. Tripp of the Old Dartmouth Historical Society and Whaling Museum of New Bedford; ten days out from the Island of Ascension, 9 November 1842, the *Sharon* was left in charge of three savages recently recruited from the Kingsmill islands, when two boats were lowered for whales; the savages killed Captain Norris, and only through the timely giving of the alarm by a Portuguese boy also on board, who set the signal at half mast, the speedy return of the boats, and the daring of the third mate in swimming aboard, entering by the cabin windows, and single-handedly fighting the mutineers with a whaling spade, was the *Sharon* recaptured; Melville may have heard about the *Sharon* in his own travels on the *Charles and Henry* or read of the capture of the ship in the Honolulu newspaper.

James A. Rhodes, *Cruise in a Whale Boat* (New York, 1848).

Joseph C. Hart, *Miriam Coffin, or the Whale Fisherman* (New York, 1834), Vol. 2, chap. 10, p. 156. W.A.G., *Ribs and Trucks, From Davy's Locker; being Magazine Matter Broke Loose, and Fragments of Sundry Things In-Edited* (Boston, 1842), "A Chapter on Whaling," p. 13.

lii. EXTRACTS ON THIS PAGE: Charles Darwin, *Journal of Researches into the Natural History and Geology of the Countries Visited during the Voyage of H.M.S. Beagle round the World* (Sealts, No. 175—New York, 1846), Vol. 1, chap. 10, p. 288—entry for 28 January 1833. Harry Halyard, *Wharton's the Killer! or, The Pride of the Pacific: A Tale of the Ocean* (Boston, 1848). Nantucket Song, quoted by J. Ross Browne, p. 17. Whale Song, used on title page of Cheever.

1.3. *Ishmael*: Melville took the name for this character from Ishmael, the son of Abraham by the bondwoman, Hagar, whose story is told

in Genesis xvi, 1-16; xvii, 18-25; xxi, 6-21; xxv, 9-17, where the most significant verses (xvi, 11-12) contain the explanation of the name ("God shall hear") and the angelic prophecy to Hagar: "Behold, thou art with child, and shalt bear a son, and shalt call his name Ishmael; because the Lord hath heard thy affliction. And he will be a wild man; his hand will be against every man, and every man's hand against him; and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren." Although the prophecy was fulfilled with the disinheritance and expulsion of Ishmael at the behest of Sarah, Abraham's wife, after the birth of her own son, Isaac, and although it was to Ishmaelites that his jealous brothers sold Joseph (Genesis xxxvii, 27; xxxix, 1), the presence of five other Ishmaels in the Old Testament testifies that the name was not infamous for the Hebrews. Indeed, Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, of the seed royal, the slayer of Gedaliah, Nebuchadnezzar's viceroy in the land of Judah (2 Kings, xxv, 23-25; Jeremiah xl, 14-xli, 15), must have been something of a national hero. The name acquired disrepute only after Mohammed, claiming descent from Ishmael the son of Abraham, became the founder of a fanatical religion that defined infidelity for the medieval and early modern world largely because it was the chief military threat; the followers of the prophet were variously known as Ishmaelites and Hagarenes. There is no instance of the name in the *Nantucket Vital records* to 1850, just as, also understandably, there is no instance of Ahab.

Byron, more than any other writer in English, popularized the Ishmael-like character, most intensely in *Manfred* and *Cain*. Although Melville's surviving copy of Thomas Moore's *Life of Lord Byron* seems to have been acquired in 1862 (Sealts, No. 369), an allusion in *Redburn*, chap. 56, to Ali Pacha's compliment on Byron's small "feline lands" (material from Moore, Vol. 1, p. 260) may mean that Melville knew by the time he was writing *Moby-Dick* the entry from Byron's journal quoted by Moore, Vol. 1, p. 550: "Like Ishmael, my hand was against all men, and all men's anent me." Certainly Melville was aware that many of Byron's characters were largely self-portraits. James Fenimore Cooper's *The Prairie* (1827) probably introduced Melville to the actual use of the name for the character Ishmael Bush. This novel Melville most likely read in January, 1834, when his elder brother made the following journal entry: "Read the *Prairie*, was very well pleased with it. Characters of Ishmael Bush, Paul Hover & the trapper, well & powerfully drawn." (See Jay Leyda, "An Albany Journal by Gansevoort Melville," *Boston Public Library Quarterly*, October, 1950, Vol. 2, p. 333.) It was usual for books to be passed around the family circle, and Melville testified in his

letter to the Cooper Commemorative Meeting, 27 February 1852 (John Howard Birss, "A Letter of Herman Melville," *Notes and Queries*, 1932, Vol. 162, p. 39), to his early familiarity with the author. Of this character, Cooper wrote in *The Prairie*, chap. 6: "Ishmael Bush had passed the whole of a life of more than fifty years on the skirts of society. He boasted that he had never dwelt where he might not safely fell every tree he could view from his own threshold; that the law had rarely been known to enter his clearing; and that his ears had never willingly admitted the sound of a church bell." In many respects Bush was like Daniel Boone, of whom Cooper said in a footnote to chap. 1: "This venerable and hardy pioneer of civilization emigrated to an estate three hundred miles west of the Mississippi, in his ninety-second year, because he found a population of ten to the square mile, inconveniently crowded." In *The Prairie*, chap. 4, the Sioux Indians were called "the Ishmaelites of the American deserts."

The poem by his friend N. P. Willis, "Hagar in the Wilderness," may have suggested to Melville the allusion in *Mardi*, chap. 13: "No Fury so ferocious, as not to have some amiable side. In the wild wilderness, a leopard-mother caresses her cub, as Hagar did Ishmael; or a queen of France the dauphin." Not until *Redburn*, chap. 12, did Melville use this Biblical tradition to define a character, and then with specific reference to the narrator's feelings toward Jackson, himself something of a prototype of Ahab: "I found myself a sort of Ishmael in the ship, without a single friend or companion; and I began to feel a hatred growing up in me against the whole crew—so much so, that I prayed against it, that it might not master my heart completely, and so make a fiend of me, something like Jackson."

In William Starbuck Mayo's *Kaloolah* (New York: George P. Putnam, 1849), published as if the autobiography edited by Mayo of one Jonathan Romer, a young ne'er-do-well at home with something of Ishmael's "everlasting itch for things remote," the narrator announced in the opening paragraph: "A life of adventure may be justly considered my birth-right. Descended, on both sides of the house, from some of the earliest settlers of Nantucket, and more or less intimately related to the Coffins, the Folgers, the Macys and the Starbucks of that adventurous population, it would seem that I have had a natural right to a roving disposition, and to a life of peril, privation and vicissitude. Nearly all the male members of my family, for several generations, have been 'followers of the sea.' Some of them in the calm and peaceful employment of the merchant-services; others, and by far the greater number, in the more dangerous pursuit of the ocean

monster." Although Romer's pursuit of the white Kaloolah resembled the pursuit of Yillah in *Mardi* more than anything in *Moby-Dick* and his insatiable restlessness was not, like Ishmael's, focused on "one grand hooded phantom," the narrator's roamings covered land and sea, with now and then a suggestion of psychic or metaphysical exploration as well as physical movement. After his second shipwreck, he was called "son of Eblis" by his Bedouin captors in Africa and himself told the slave Soonsho that he was "*Shetan* himself" (chap. 29). Having learned to speak Arabic during his captivity, he was able, after his escape, to introduce himself to the Arab group he fell in with under "the name of Ishmael El Drebbah, or Ishmael the Marksman" (chap. 31), and his choice of the name was not only convenient but appropriate.

Only when Melville read Carlyle's *Sartor Resartus*, borrowed from E. A. Duyckinck in the early summer of 1850 (Sealts, No. 123), did he come upon an approach to the psychological interpretations of Ishmaelism he sought for in his character, especially in Book 2 where Carlyle narrated the early stages of the spiritual biography of Diogenes Teufelsdröckh, before the climax of "The Everlasting Yes." The identification was explicit in chap. 3: "thus in the destitution of the wild desert does our young Ishmael acquire for himself the highest of all possessions, that of Self-help." In chap. 5 Teufelsdröckh became a nonconformist: "Quitting the common Fleet of herring-busses and whalers, where indeed his leeward, laggard condition was painful enough, he desperately steers off, on a course of his own, by sextant and compass of his own." (Compare Ahab's smashing of the quadrant; see note on *Foolish toy*, 494.10.) In his "Sorrows" of chap. 6, "the so passionate Teufelsdröckh, precipitated through 'a shivered universe' in this extraordinary way, has only one of three things which he can do next: Establish himself in Bedlam; begin writing Satanic Poetry; or blow-out his brains." "'A nameless Unrest,' says he, 'urged me forward; to which the outward motion was some momentary lying solace. Whither should I go? My Load-stars were blotted out; in that canopy of grim fire shone no star. Yet forward must I; the ground burnt under me; there was no rest for the sole of my foot. I was alone, alone! Ever too the strong inward longing shaped Fantasms for itself: toward these, one after the other, must I fruitlessly wander. A feeling I had, that for my fever-thirst there was and must be somewhere a healing Fountain. . . .'" And Carlyle commented: "Thus must he, in the temper of the ancient Cain, or of the modern wandering Jew,—save only that he feels himself not guilty and but suffering the pains of guilt,—wend to and fro with aimless speed."

In chap. 7, "The Everlasting No," Teufelsdröckh confessed: "Having no hope, neither had I any definite fear, were it of Man or Devil; nay, I often felt as if it might be solacing, could the Arch-Devil himself, though in Tartarean terrors, but rise to me, that I might tell him a little of my mind. And yet, strangely enough, I lived in a continual, indefinite, pining fear; tremulous, pusillanimous, apprehensive of I knew not what: it seemed as if all things in the Heavens above and the Earth beneath would hurt me; as if the Heavens and the Earth were but boundless jaws of a devouring monster, wherein I, palpitating, waited to be devoured." Teufelsdröckh continued his story: ". . . all at once, there rose a Thought in me, and I asked myself: 'What *art* thou afraid of? . . . what is the sum-total of the worst that lies before thee? Death? Well, Death; and say the pangs of Tophet too, and all that the Devil and Man may, will or can do against thee? . . . Let it come, then; I will meet it and defy it!' . . . Ever since that time, the temper of my misery was changed: not Fear or whining Sorrow was it, but Indignation and grim fire-eyed Defiance." It was as if the Everlasting No had said, "Behold, thou art fatherless, outcast, and the Universe is mine (the Devil's)," and Teufelsdröckh's "whole ME stood up, in native God-created majesty, and with emphasis recorded its Protest." From this "most important transaction in Life," he was inclined to date his "Spiritual New-birth, or Baphometric Fire-baptism," the time when he "began to be a Man."

The later developments of Carlyle's character, his post-Ishmael period, were not reflected in the character that Melville drew. If there was for Ishmael a "Baphometric Fire-baptism" in "The Try-Works," chap. 96, in his reflective emancipation from Ahab's "fire" view of the world, the more important issue would still seem to be, what Melville did not relate, how Ishmael reacted to his miraculous salvation by means of the *Rachel*. Even so the baptism of both Ishmael and Teufelsdröckh was "Baphometric," in reference to Baphomet, the symbolical figure the Templars were accused of worshipping in mysterious rites supposedly derived from the gnostic Ophites, to whom Melville referred on p. 181. If Melville had in mind Paul's parable of rebirth based on the Ishmael and Isaac story (Galatians iv, 22-31), he did not make it clear whether he felt that Ishmael came under the terms of the promise made in the earlier part of this chapter, verses 3-5: "Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world: But when the fulness of time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons."

Also borrowed from E. A. Duyckinck in the summer of 1850 was Carlyle's *On Heroes, Hero-Worship, and the Heroic in History* (Sealts, No. 122). Possibly Carlyle's reference in chap. 5 of this book to men of letters as "unrecognized unregulated Ishmaelites," had something to do with the fact that in Melville's next book after *Moby-Dick*, his hero, a writer, also identified himself with the spiritual nomad; *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 105: "Yet was this feeling entirely lonesome and orphan-like. Fain, then, for one moment, would he have recalled the thousand sweet illusions of Life; tho' purchased at the price of Life's Truth; so that once more he might not feel himself driven out an infant Ishmael into the desert, with no maternal Hagar to accompany and comfort him." The Ishmael concept appeared also in *The Confidence-Man*, chap. 24, in words addressed by Francis Goodman, the philanthropic cosmopolitan, to Pitch, the misanthropic Missouri bachelor: "To you, an Ishmael, disguising in sportiveness my intent, I came ambassador from the human race, charged with the assurance that for your mislike they bore no answering grudge, but sought to conciliate accord between you and them. Yet you take me not for the honest envoy, but I know not what sort of unheard-of spy."

Of all Melville's Ishmaels, the one who officially bore that name in *Moby-Dick* was the best blending of the external adventure of a Jonathan Romer and the spiritual biography of a Teufelsdröckh, and it is he who has become, in a certain sense, a typical character of American literature, though larger and more impressive than most of his successors. As W. H. Auden has pointed out in his notes for *New Year Letter* (London, 1941), p. 153: "Most American books might well start like *Moby-Dick*, 'Call me Ishmael.' . . . Most American novels are parables, their settings even when they pretend to be realistic, symbolic settings for a timeless and unlocated (because internal) psychomachia."

It has been suggested that Melville's character was in some degree an imaginative portrait of his cousin Thomas Wilson Melvill, not simply, as often assumed, of Melville himself; see Jay Leyda, "Ishmael Melvill," *Boston Public Library Quarterly*, October, 1949, Vol. 1, pp. 119-134. This family Ishmael—a midshipman in the U. S. Navy until obliged to resign, later an alcoholic—saw service on four whale-ships between 1835 and his burial at Lahaina in the Hawaiian Islands in 1844. He seems to have been more a Jonathan Romer with an extra dash of wildness than the philosophical Ishmael Melville created.

1.5. *I thought I would sail about a little*: Melville went to sea first in the merchant service on the *St. Lawrence* from New York to Liverpool and return, 5 June to 30 September 1839, under Captain

Oliver P. Brown; this voyage was the autobiographical basis for *Redburn*. (For the factual details, see William H. Gilman, "Melville's Liverpool Trip," *Mod. Lang. Notes*, Dec. 1946, Vol. 60, pp. 543-547.) He served on three whaling ships. On the *Acushnet*, Captain Valentine Pease, he sailed from Fairhaven, Massachusetts, 3 January 1841, rounded Cape Horn, touched at Santa and perhaps other Peruvian ports, cruised in the area of the Galapagos Islands, possibly made a trip as far north as the Hawaiian Islands; at Nukahiva, in the Marquesas Islands, 9 July 1842, he jumped ship with Richard Tobias Greene. He boarded the *Lucy Ann* of Sydney, Australia, Captain Ventom, at the Marquesas about 8 August 1842, and left this ship at Papeete, Tahiti, 25 September 1842. Probably 3 November 1842, Melville left the Island of Eimeo aboard the Nantucket whaler *Charles and Henry*, under Captain John B. Coleman. It is not certain just where this boat cruised before arriving 27 April 1843 at Lahaina in the Hawaiian Islands, where a few days later Melville was discharged. The first fourth of *Omoo* was an imaginative account of experiences aboard the *Lucy Ann*, largely a sketching of the characters of the sailors who were to figure in the mutiny and a narration of the mutiny itself. There were only incidental touches of whaling here. The first five or six chapters of *Typee* and of *Mardi* and the final chapter of *Omoo* dealt with life aboard the whaler, primarily as setting or epilogue for a narrative otherwise concerned. But until *Moby-Dick*, Melville had made no full use of his experiences aboard the *Acushnet* and the *Charles and Henry*. (For details of these whaling voyages, see Charles Roberts Anderson, *Melville in the South Seas*, New York, 1939, *passim*, and Wilson L. Heflin, "Melville's Third Whaler," *Mod. Lang. Notes*, April, 1949, Vol. 64, pp. 241-245.) The material for *White Jacket*, of course, was largely derived from Melville's voyage aboard the U. S. frigate, *United States*, from Honolulu, 19 August 1843, to Boston, 4 October 1844, with visits to Nukahiva, Tahiti, Juan Fernandez, Valparaiso, Callao, Montzatlan en route, before rounding Cape Horn and lingering for a week in the harbor of Rio de Janeiro. (See Charles R. Anderson, *Melville in the South Seas*, chaps. 13-16.) Two other ships Melville had sailed on before he wrote *Moby-Dick*, this time as a passenger, the *Southampton*, Captain Robert Harper Griswold, which carried him from New York to Dover, 11 October to 5 November 1849, and the *Independence*, Captain A. T. Fletcher, which picked him up at Portsmouth 25 December 1849, after his visit to London and the Continent, and brought him home to New York, 1 February 1850. (See Eleanor Melville Metcalf, ed., *Journal of a Visit to London and the Continent by Herman Melville*, Cambridge, 1948.)

1.9. *a damp, drizzly November in my soul: Redburn*, chap. 2: "Talk not of the bitterness of middle-age and after life; a boy can feel all that, and much more, when upon his young soul the mildew has fallen. . . ." *Richard III*, I, i, 1: "the winter of our discontent." Completely unmarked by Melville in the 7 volume edition of Shakespeare he bought in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460), this play was probably so well known to Melville at that time from earlier reading and stage-performance that he did not feel moved to a critical rereading and marking.

1.16. *With a philosophical flourish Cato*: In drawing this analogy between Ishmael and his "hypos" and Cato the Younger, Melville seems to have perversely misinterpreted the classic Roman as *l'homme fatal* of romantic literature. In the story given in Plutarch's *Lives*, Cato spent several hours reading Plato's *Phaedo*, the dialogue on immortality, before committing suicide rather than become the captive of Caesar; the citizens of Utica immediately acclaimed him "the only free and only undefeated man," and classic writers united in praise of his virtue, hailing the suicide as the climax of a career of courage and probity. Montaigne (a copy of whose *Essays* Melville bought early in 1848—Sealts, No. 366) wrote one full essay about him (Book 1, chap. 36) in which he called Cato "truly a patterne, whom nature chose to shew how farre humane vertue may reach, and mans constancie attaine unto" (Florio trans.), and made numerous allusions elsewhere in his work. Cato's reading on this final night, "in fore-feeling his approaching end," Montaigne praised as a refusal to deviate from a habit of study, insisting that long before, Cato had "stored himselfe with all sorts of munition for such a dislodging," and that "of assurance, of constancy and instruction, he had more then Plato hath in all his writings" (Book 2, chap. 28). Addison's political purposes in *Cato: A Tragedy* (1718) made him put more than usual emphasis on the world in which Cato lived and give his hero several speeches of indictment:

"—O Lucius! I am sick of this bad world!
The day-light and the sun grown painful to me." (IV, iii.)

"—I'm sick to death—Oh when shall I get loose
From this vain world, the abode of guilt and sorrow!" (V, vi)

And the play closed with Lucius's accusation that "civil discord" had robbed "the guilty world" of Cato's life (V, iv.). But Addison also represented Cato as certain that his dead son "Who made the welfare

of mankind his care," ultimately "Shall find the generous labour was not lost" (IV, iii), and otherwise drew Cato as the classical hero of faith and courage.

Melville, in this analogy, emphasized the restless impatience of Addison's character, and ignored the classic virtues of Cato. This misrepresentation served the aesthetic purposes at hand; a later annotation by Melville of an Emerson essay suggests that it may have arisen from the author's temperamental bias. In his copy of *Essays: by R. W. Emerson. First Series*, acquired in 1862 (Sealts, No. 204), Melville sidelined and marked with a cross this paragraph in "Heroism": "It is told of Brutus, that when he fell on his sword, after the battle of Phillipi, he quoted a line of Euripides, 'O virtue! I have followed thee through life, and I find thee at last but a shade.' I doubt not the hero is slandered by this report. The heroic soul does not sell its justice and its nobleness. It does not ask to dine nicely, and to sleep warm. The essence of greatness is the perception that virtue is enough. Poverty is its ornament. It does not need plenty, and can very well abide its loss." Melville's objecting comment echoed the world-weariness he attributed to Ishmael and his distorted Cato: "The meaning of the exclamation imputed to Brutus is here wrested from its obvious import. The struggle in which he was foiled was for mankind, & not for himself." (See William Braswell, "Melville as a Critic of Emerson," *American Literature*, Nov., 1937, Vol. 9, p. 331, n. 61.) In determining the significance of Melville's comment on Emerson, it is interesting to note that in his copy of Shakespeare acquired in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460), he sidelined Brutus's final speech, *Julius Caesar*, V, v, 33-36:

"Countrymen,
My heart doth joy as yet in all my life
I found no man but he was true to me.
I shall have glory by this losing day. . . ."

Perhaps here too, Melville experienced a skeptical failure to understand such virtuous faith and courage as the classical tradition attributed to Cato.

1.24. *battery*: Here, and in the following paragraph where he specified *Corlears Hook*, *Coenties Slip*, and *Whitehall* for the itinerary of the Sabbath afternoon walk, Melville seems to have chosen names with clear legendary or historical interest. The Battery, now a park of some 20 acres at the southernmost tip of Manhattan Island, got its name from a British fort built there in 1693, which was succeeded by

the U. S. fort built on the same spot in 1807, and after the War of 1812 named Castle Clinton. This second building, with the new name of Castle Garden after it became city property in 1822, was the scene of the official New York City receptions to Lafayette in 1824 and Louis Kossuth in 1851; here also, under the auspices of P. T. Barnum, Jenny Lind sang in 1850. Corlears Hook, also now a public park, is just south of the east end of the present Grand Street, below the Williamsburg Bridge. According to Irving's *Knickerbocker's History of New York* (1809), Book 7, chap. 3, it was the residence of Peter Stuyvesant's famous trumpeter Antony Van Corlear, a domain granted by Stuyvesant in recognition of Corlear's gallantry at Fort Casimer. Coenties Slip, formerly an inlet from the East River about half way up from the tip of the island to Wall Street, was named from a corrupt combination of the given names of Conraet and Antje Ten Eyck, whose seventeenth century home was nearby. Filled in early in the nineteenth century, this area was the scene of a disastrous fire in 1835 which destroyed 650 buildings, and of another fire in 1845 when 345 buildings were burnt. It was a chief center of shipping; in *Redburn*, chap. 1, the hero read an advertisement about a ship to sail for Bremen from Coenties Slip, and the name served as a symbol of the beginning of adventure. Whitehall, the chief street leading from the lower East River side of the island northwestward to Broadway—a short walk from the docks along the Hudson or North River, was named for the former estate of Peter Stuyvesant in that area. The Battery is mentioned again on p. 13 of *Moby-Dick*, and Corlear's Hook in Stubb's meditation on the doubloon p. 429. All of these sites were familiar to Melville from his early childhood on Pearl Street, in this locality.

2.29. *the valley of the Saco*: The Saco River, which ultimately meets the Atlantic in Maine, rises at the base of Mt. Washington and flows southward through the Notch of the White Mountains as a wild mountain stream. The "romantic landscape" of its upper reaches supplied Hawthorne with the setting for "The Great Carbuncle" and "The Ambitious Guest," and in each story he twice used the phrase, "the valley of the Saco." Melville's "from yonder cottage goes a sleepy smoke" may well have been an unconscious echo of Hawthorne's "the light smoke was seen stealing from the cottage chimney" in the final peaceful view in "The Ambitious Guest" of the unharmed cottage, from which the occupants had rushed out the night before into the landslide. *Twice-Told Tales*, which contains these stories, Melville had borrowed from E. A. Duyckinck in the summer of 1849 (Sealts, No. 258). After Hawthorne's gift of the two volume edition

22 January 1851 (Sealts, Nos. 259, 260), Melville re-read *Twice-Told Tales*. Two other stories in this collection each supplied one of Melville's introductory "Extracts": the fifty-fourth is from "The Village Uncle" and the fifty-fifth from "Chippings with a Chisel." The Saco valley was also familiar to Melville from his wedding journey through the White Mountains in 1847 (See Raymond Weaver, *Herman Melville: Mariner and Mystic*, New York, 1921, pp. 361-362, for letters of Herman and Elizabeth Shaw Melville to her parents, 6 August 1847), and his memory would have been further refreshed by his summer reading of 1850 in Timothy Dwight, *Travels; in New-England and New-York* (New Haven, 1821), Vol. 2, pp. 147-153, 159-164. "Trees, each with a hollow trunk," naturally, were to be found in the Saco region, but Melville's allusion was more likely inspired by the romantic conventions of drama. Edgar "by the happy hollow of a tree escap'd the hunt" in *King Lear*, II, iii, 2-3; and, like many of his contemporaries of the American stage, George Edgerton, in James Nelson Barker's *Superstition*, II, ii, 17ff., "conceals himself in a tree." See note also on *that wild Logan* 150.35.

2.38. *Go visit the Prairies in June*: With the westward movement of the mid-nineteenth century, the prairies had a romantic appeal for most Americans. A westward trip, at least as far as the Mississippi, became a cultural requisite much like the grand tour of Europe; and the returned travelers were as likely to publish a book of their experiences on one as on the other. Doubtless Melville knew many of these books of western travel. But his allusion here, as also to Illinois by name on pp. 62 and 457, stemmed from his own visit in the summer of 1840 to "the Prairie State," to Galena, Jo Daveiss County, where lived his Uncle Thomas Melville, formerly of Broadhall, Pittsfield. Perhaps he was drawing on his uncle's recollections on p. 192, in the allusion to the indifference of the backwoodsman of the West to "an unbounded prairie sheeted with driven snow." Perhaps also echoes of this trip were the reference in *Mardi*, chap. 75, to "the Illinois Mounds" and the specification of Illinois as a topic of conversation with the old man in *Redburn*, chap. 43. For further account of the 1840 trip, see John W. Nichol, "Melville and the Midwest," *P.M.L.A.*, Sept. 1951, Vol. 66, pp. 613-625.

3.7. *a pedestrian trip to Rockaway Beach*: The humorous allusion here to "the poor poet of Tennessee" is obscure, since no native poet of that state was celebrated as a pedestrian in Melville's day. Possibly Melville was confused about the birthplace of Bayard Taylor. Born in Kennett Square, Pennsylvania, Taylor was the famous pedestrian traveler of the day. His *Views A-Foot* (1846), which Melville owned

(Sealts, No. 495), was the account of his "pedestrian tour of Europe"—two years abroad and passage both ways across the Atlantic for \$472.00. After publishing a volume of poems, *Ximena* (1844), to get his name known, and collecting one hundred dollars advance payment for newspaper letters about his trip and another forty dollars for poems sold to *Graham's Magazine*, Taylor—not yet twenty years old—set out for Europe. The additional funds needed for his tour were "earned on the road" by writing more articles about his experiences. Melville knew Taylor well; both were contributors to the *Literary World*. Taylor's cousin and companion for part of the European venture, Dr. Franklin Taylor, was also Melville's companion during the eastward voyage on the *Southampton* in 1849 and on various excursions through Dover, Canterbury, and London after they reached England. Just before his permanent move to Pittsfield, Melville dined, 21 September 1850, with Taylor and Sir Edward Belcher in New York. Although Melville here was frankly humorous, a pedestrian trip to Rockaway was not out of the question. In a letter to Evert Duyckinck (NYPL-D) 13 June 1839 Cornelius Mathews announced that he was getting up at 5 a.m. for a 30 mile walk to Gravesend, just then beginning to be called Coney Island.

3.12. *the old Persians hold the sea holy*: See Herodotus I, 131 (Loeb Library, A. D. Godley, trans.): "As to the usages of the Persians, I know them to be these. It is not their custom to set up statues and temples and altars, but those who make such they deem foolish, as I suppose, because they never believed the gods, as do the Greeks, to be in the likeness of men; but they call the whole circle of heaven Zeus, and to him they offer sacrifice on the highest peaks of the mountains; they sacrifice also to the sun and moon and earth and fire and water and winds." See also James B. Fraser, *Historical and Descriptive Account of Persia* (New York, 1842; Vol. 70 of Harper's Family Library), p. 120: "The Parsees and Ghebres never willingly throw filth either into fire or water. . . . This reverence for the elements prevents them from being sailors, as in a long voyage they might be forced to defile the sea."

3.13. *the Greeks give it a separate deity*: Poseidon, son of Cronos and Rhea and brother of Zeus, was the chief Greek god of the sea; the Roman Neptune, not at first strictly a sea god, came in time to be associated with Poseidon. Perhaps objecting to Melville's ellipsis, the English editor altered the end of this sentence to read: "and make him the own brother of Jove?"

3.15. *that story of Narcissus*: Melville's "image of the ungraspable phantom of life" seems to have been derived from Ovid's *Meta-*

morphoses, Book 3, included in Vol. 20 of Harper's Classical Library, which he bought March 1849 (Sealts, No. 147). In Fable 5, "the sage Tiresias" prophesied of Narcissus, "If e'er he knows himself, he surely dies." Addison translated Narcissus's recognition in Fable 6, lines 73-76:

"Ah wretched me! I now begin too late
To find out all the long-perplexed deceit;
It is myself I love, myself I see;
The gay delusion is a part of me."

When "death shuts up those self-admiring eyes," it is "to the cold shades his flitting ghost retires," where "in the Stygian waves itself admires" (lines 113-116).

4.2. *idolatrous dotings of the old Egyptians . . . ibis . . . mummies of those creatures*: Vivant Denon, *Travels in Upper and Lower Egypt* (trans. from French; New York, 1803), Vol. 1, chap. 9, reported: "The vaults of Saccara had just been opened and more than five hundred mummies of the ibis had been found in a sepulchral cave." Held sacred because they destroyed reptiles, some of these birds were actually fed and worshipped in temples; and each household had its ibis, which was regularly entombed with the family. Denon commented on the various methods used in mummifying these birds. Denon's work was possibly for Melville an important source for Egyptian items referred to in other books as well. For instance, Denon had an extended discussion of the statue of Memnon in Vol. 2, pp. 52 and 251.

4.11. *an old established family of the land*: The author's grandfather, Thomas Melville, a graduate of Princeton, a leader in the Boston Tea Party, a major in the Revolution, an organizer of the socially exclusive volunteer fire brigade in Boston, was celebrated in Oliver Wendell Holmes's poem "The Last Leaf." His maternal grandfather, Colonel, later General, Peter Gansevoort, was "the hero of Ft. Stanwix," 1777, afterwards Sheriff of Albany County and Commissioner of Indian Affairs. His mother's brother, the younger Peter Gansevoort, was a prominent Albany lawyer, judge advocate general on Governor DeWitt Clinton's staff, member of the state legislature for half a dozen years, trustee of Albany Academy for half a century. These same autobiographical implications appeared in the early chapters of *Redburn*, where the narrator reiterated that he was "the son of a gentleman." See also Thomas Hope's *Anastasis* (which Melville acquired in London in 1849—Sealts, No. 282), Vol. 1, chap. 1,

the narrator's remark about his father: "In his own opinion he could boast of purer blood than any of the Palaeologi, the Cantacusenses, or the Comneni of the present day. 'These mongrel descendants,' he used to observe, 'of Greeks, Venetians, and Genoese, had only picked up the fine names of former ages when the real owners dropped off: he wore his own;' and Signor Sotiri saw no reason why he should not, when he went forth in public, toss his head, swing his jubbee like a pendulum, from side to side, and shuffle along in his papooshes, with all the airs of quality." The note of family decay was to appear importantly in the early chapters of *Pierre*.

4.14. *a county schoolmaster*: See note on *USHER* xxxvii.2. See also S. Foster Damon, "Why Ishmael Went to Sea," *American Literature*, Nov. 1930, Vol. 2, pp. 281-283, for the argument that Melville was possibly a failure as a schoolmaster.

4.17. *a strong decoction of Seneca and the Stoics*: This decoction Melville may easily have got from Montaigne, whose *Essays* he bought in January 1848 (Sealts, No. 366), for the Frenchman made abundant quotation from Lucius Annaeus Seneca (c. 4 B.C.—65 A.D.) and his fellow Stoics, and wrote "A Defence of *Seneca* and *Plutarke*" (Book 2, chap. 32), because: "The familiarity I have with these two men, and the ayd they afoord me in my olde age, and my Booke merely framed of their spoils, bindethe me to wed and maintaine their honour." (Florio trans.) Melville also owned—how early is not known—a 1614 edition of Seneca (Sealts, No. 457), and in 1854 presented his brother Thomas Melville with a 1746 edition of extracts from this Stoical philosopher (Sealts, No. 458) with the recommendation, "My Dear Tom, This is a round-of-beef where all hands may come & cut again." See William Braswell, "Melville's Use of Seneca," *American Literature*, March 1940, Vol. 12, pp. 98-104.

4.38. *the two orchard thieves*: This mode of reference to the story of Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden seems one of the many indications of the influence of Milton; see Henry F. Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, pp. 68-69. The English edition deleted this sentence and the one following.

5.10. *the Pythagorean maxim*: See Diogenes Laertius, *Lives of Eminent Philosophers* (Loeb Library, R. D. Hicks, trans.), VIII, 19, 34, and especially VIII, 24, for account of Pythagoras's counselling his disciples "To abstain from beans because they are flatulent and partake most of the breath of life; and besides it is better for the stomach if they are not taken, and this again will make our dreams in sleep smooth and untroubled." Melville later owned an 1853 edition of this book; see Sealts, No. 183a. But in the volumes of Sir

Thomas Browne he borrowed from Duyckinck in 1847-1848 or the folio he bought in London in 1849 (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), he could have found in the essay "On Dreams," the remark: "Pythagoras might have [had] calmer sleeps, if he [had] totally abstained from beans." See also Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 1 (1834), Interchapter 2, p. 171: "Eat beans, if thou wilt, in spite of Pythagoras."

5.22. *the grand programme of Providence*: Compare with the end of a three-page passage Melville marked with a broken sideline in his copy of Thomas Hope's *Anastasis; or, Memoirs of a Greek* (London: John Murray . . . Richard Bentley . . ., 1836), acquired in London in 1849 (Sealts, No. 282), Vol. 2, chap. 9 (Vol. I, pp. 380-381, in Melville's two volume edition): "I still thought that those ill-fated wretches, selected as it were from their very birth and wholly without their consent, for the purpose of serving through the mischiefs they were doomed to perform and the miseries they were destined to suffer, as examples, as warnings, as foils to the rest of mankind, might have reason to complain of the partiality in the decrees of Providence. . . . I began to feel wroth at being myself (as I suspected) among those pitiable wretches, forced to perform all manner of mischief for the general benefit; repined at the mortifying part allotted to me on this vilely got up stage, and wholly lost what little patience I thus far had evinced in following my cue." Now owned by Mrs. Roy Newman of Georgetown, Maine, who has kindly permitted me to use them, both volumes of this work were much marked by Melville. Vol. 1 is inscribed: "Herman Melville / London, Dec. 19th 1849." From Vol. 2, the signature has been cut out, but "London Dec 19. 1849," in Melville's hand, remains. Compare with this passage Ahab's speech to Starbuck, the first mate, on p. 554: "This whole act's immutably decreed. 'Twas rehearsed by thee and me a billion years before this ocean rolled. Fool! I am the Fates' lieutenant; I act under orders." In the English edition this sentence and the one following were deleted, and the second after this altered so that the text in this passage read: ". . . . than any one else. I take it that this part of the bill, of those three mysterious ladies, must have run something like this:"

5.26. *Grand Contested Election*: Melville may have had in mind here the election of 1840—just before he shipped on the *Acushnet*—when William Henry Harrison (Whig) defeated the bid of Democrat Martin Van Buren for a second term with a four to one majority in the electoral college. This was not a close election, but the "log-cabin and hard cider" campaign was colorful, with many lively songs, the chorus of one proclaiming:

"TIPPECANOE and Tyler too:—

Tippecanoe and Tyler too.

And with them we'll beat little Van, Van, Van,

Oh! Van is a used-up man."

Melville spent the summer of 1840 in Galena, Illinois, where his Uncle Thomas Melville's Democratic activities in that Whig stronghold and the political articles in the newspapers would have focused his attention on the election. In the election of 1848, the Democratic nomination went to Lewis Cass, with the result that the dissident New York Barnburners seceded and joined other abolitionists in forming the Free Soil Party, with Martin Van Buren as candidate and the Wilmot Proviso as chief plank of the platform. This division caused an electoral college victory for the Whig candidate Zachary Taylor, who had a minority popular vote. Evert Duyckinck's letters to his brother George (then abroad) and his diary during the early months of 1848 abounded in details of this political controversy (NYPL-D). This was the period of Melville's probably closest relationship with Duyckinck, who favored the Barnburners, but rejoiced that Taylor won out over Webster and Clay in the Whig convention. Melville had some small part in fomenting the popularity of General Taylor in his own "Authentic Anecdotes of 'Old Zack,'" *Yankee Doodle*, 24 July to 11 September 1847, Vol. 2, pp. 152, 167, 172, 188, 199, 202, 229. (See L. S. Mansfield, "Melville's Comic Articles on Zachary Taylor," *American Literature*, January 1938, Vol. 9, pp. 411-418.) Perhaps, then, Melville alluded here to the election of 1848, or—even more likely—his recollection of the earlier election was colored by his more vivid concern with the more recent one. Melville doubtless also recalled the 1844 election, although he was back in the country from the Pacific for only the final month of the campaign. Polk, the Democratic candidate, carried New York by a trifling plurality in a three-cornered race, and the 36 electoral votes of this state decided the election, which early indications had given easily to Clay and the Whigs. Gansevoort Melville took the stump for the Democratic national ticket and spoke extensively in Tennessee, Kentucky, South Carolina, Ohio, and New York. Polk's success resulted ultimately in brother Gansevoort's appointment as secretary of the American legation in London. (See Jay Leyda, *The Melville Log*, entries for August to October 1844, for list of Gansevoort's speaking engagements.)

5.29. BLOODY BATTLE IN AFFGHANISTAN: Melville perhaps referred here to the revolt which began in Kabul with the killing of British officers in November 1841. When the British marched out of

this city 6 January 1842, the Afgans massacred the retreating army and one Dr. Brydon, sole survivor of the Army of Kabul, reached Jalalabad alone. There was a second Sikh War in 1848.

6.5. *the great whale himself*: See account in *Redburn*, chap. 1, of the "two large green French portfolios of colored prints," which Redburn and his brothers and sister, in childhood, looked at on Saturdays: "above all there was a picture of a great whale, as big as a ship, stuck full of harpoons, and three boats sailing after it as fast as they could fly." How much Melville's own whaling voyage may have been influenced by his cousin Thomas Melvill's being a whaleman cannot be certainly known. (See note on *Ishmael* 1.3.) Perhaps Melville's reading of Richard Henry Dana's *Two Years before the Mast* (1840) had something to do with it, though that would not account for the choice of a whaling ship. It has not been clearly established that, before embarking on the *Acushnet* in 1841, Melville knew Jeremiah N. Reynolds, "Mocha Dick: or the White Whale of the Pacific: a Leaf from a Manuscript Journal," *The Knickerbocker*, *New York Monthly Magazine*, May 1839, Vol. 13, pp. 377-393. Even so, he might have heard rumors of this whale. Carl Van Doren, "Lucifer from Nantucket," *The Century*, August 1925, Vol. 110, 495, seems to assume that Melville had heard of Mocha Dick, and there can be little doubt that he knew Reynold's account before he wrote his own story. (See note on *Moby Dick* 175.9.) In this passage the lure of the whale for Ishmael seems merely what it was for most adventure-seeking lads of fiction, including the central character of Edgar Allan Poe's *The Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym, of Nantucket* (1838), where Augustus Barnard's repeated anecdotes of whaling experiences insinuated the interest in his friend Pym. See also the picture at the Spouter-Inn on p. 11 of "a Cape-Horner in a great hurricane," with "an exasperated whale . . . impaling himself upon the three mast-heads."

6.19. *two and two*: William S. Gleim in *The Meaning of Moby-Dick* (New York, 1938), p. 12, has put a great deal of emphasis on this phrase in developing his Swedenborgian interpretation of the book, since Melville's words, for Gleim, connoted "pairs, couples, duplicates, analogies, correspondences, representatives, parables, allegories, and symbols." More likely Melville was merely making an analogy between the "wild conceits" and "endless processions of the whale" floating into Ishmael's mind and the entry of the animals into the ark as described in Genesis vii, 9: "There went in two and two unto Noah into the ark, the male and the female, as God has commanded Noah."

6.22. *a snow hill in the air*: This was, of course, a conventional figure, found again and again in any non-technical writing about whales. See the narrator's disappointment at his first sight of whales on the Liverpool voyage, *Redburn*, chap. 20: "Can these be whales? Monstrous whales such as I have heard of? I thought they would look like mountains on the sea; hills and valleys of flesh! regular krakens, that made it high tide, and inundated continents when they descended to feed!" Melville's addition to the usual simile is merely the color. (See note on *the whiteness of the whale* 185.6.)

6.27. *New Bedford*: On the southern coast of Massachusetts, New Bedford on the west bank of the Acushnet River, and Fairhaven on the east bank, had both been settled in 1764, though not incorporated until 1787. Acushnet had been the Indian name for New Bedford. New Bedford had been burned by the British in 1778. Both villages were part of the same Massachusetts town, which was founded and named by J. Rotch, a Nantucket Quaker in the whaling business; thus truly "Nantucket was her great original—the Tyre of this Carthage." Rotch, sagacious and persuasive, had secured from the British and the French the privilege of importing whale oil, duty free. The population of the town in 1836 was 11,113; there were 14 churches in 1839, one of which was African. In 1838 there were 170 vessels employed in the whale fishery, requiring some 4000 hands. Importations into the New Bedford district in 1837 accounted for some 75,675 barrels of sperm oil out of a national total of 181,724 barrels, and 85,668 barrels of common whale oil out of 219,138. This was the chief whale port of the world, a lively, growing town. In the early 1820's a bridge 3960 feet long across the Acushnet had been constructed to connect New Bedford and Fairhaven. (For further information about New Bedford in the form most likely available to Melville, see Timothy Dwight, *Travels; in New-England and New-York* [New Haven, 1822], Vol. 3, pp. 69-74, and John Warner Barber, *Historical Collections, being a General collection of interesting facts . . . relating to the History and Antiquities of Every Town in Massachusetts. . . .* [Worcester, 1839], pp. 126-127.) Arriving in New Bedford 26 December 1840 and sailing on the *Acushnet* from Fairhaven 3 January 1841, Melville had plenty of time to look around the town. Something of Melville's experiences beyond those which got into *Moby-Dick* may be surmised from the realistic account of the fitter and the boarding house of New Bedford eighteen months later in J. Ross Browne, chap. 2, the book Melville reviewed for the *Literary World*, 6 March 1847, Vol. 1, pp. 105-106.

8.18. *that destroyed city, Gomorrah*: The destruction of Sodom

and Gomorrah, cities in the plain of the Lake Asphaltites (or Dead Sea), was one of the Bible stories which most impressed Melville. In his copy of the Bible inscribed "March 23d 1850" (Sealts, No. 62), Genesis xix, 24, 27, 28, were sidelined. Other parts of the Sodom and Gomorrah story are to be found in Genesis xviii and xix. In *White Jacket*, chap. 90, there was a reference to navy ships as "these wooden-walled Gomorrahs of the deep," and there were further mentions of Gomorrah in *Moby-Dick* in Father Mapple's sermon on Jonah, on p. 42, and on p. 492: "A sound like the moaning in squadrons over Asphaltites of unforgiven ghosts of Gomorrah, ran shuddering through the air." See also *Paradise Lost* X, 562: "Near that bituminous lake where Sodom flamed."

8.23. *the great Black Parliament sitting in Tophet*: The place in the valley of the children of Hinnom where apostate Israelites made their children pass through the fire to Moloch in a blasphemous ceremony; see Jeremiah vii, 31-32; xix, 6, 11-14; 2 Kings xxiii, 10, and Milton's comment (*Paradise Lost* I, 403-405) that Moloch "made his grove / The pleasant valley of Hinnom, Tophet thence / And black Gehenna called, the type of Hell." There was at least one negro church in New Bedford at the time of his sailing on the *Acushnet*; Melville may have been reminded of this fact by the existence of a negro church in Pittsfield, the Second Congregational, founded in 1846. See also Ishmael's recollection of Tophet when he saw the sign of the Try-Pots inn in Nantucket, p. 64, and Melville's assertion in *White-Jacket*, chap. 90, that "the sea is the true Tophet and bottomless pit of many workers of iniquity."

8.27. *the blackness of darkness*: Melville also used this phrase in "Hawthorne and His Mosses," *Literary World*, 17 August 1850, quoted Thorp, p. 333. His most likely source for this connotation was Thomas Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus* (borrowed from E. A. Duyckinck a few weeks before he wrote the Hawthorne article—see Sealts, No. 123), Bk. 2, chap. 4: "In red streaks of unspeakable grandeur, yet also in the blackness of darkness, was Life, to my too-unfurnished Thought, unfolding itself."

9.8. *Euroclydon*: St. Paul was shipwrecked by this tempestuous south-east or east wind; see Acts xxvii, 14. Melville may have paraphrased here some obscure skeptical treatise vaguely remembered, though it is equally possible that the "old black-letter" was pure fabrication.

10.3. *Lazarus . . . before the door of Dives*: The Biblical account (Luke xvi, 19-31) referred to "a certain rich man" without assigning a name, and related also his request from Hell that Abraham send

Lazarus to dip his finger in water and cool his tongue. Falstaff referred to Lazarus in *1 Henry IV*, IV, ii, 27-29. For the account of a nineteenth century visitor to Jerusalem, see John Lloyd Stephens, *Incidents of Travel in Egypt, Arabia Petraea, and the Holy Land* (New York, 1837), Vol. 2, chap. 11: "the mansion of Dives and the house of Lazarus (which, by-the-way, not to be skeptical again, did not look as if its tenant had ever lain at its neighbor's gate, and begged for the 'crumbs which fell from the rich man's table'). . . ." This story was obviously in Melville's mind in his *Journal* entry for 15 November 1849 when he compared the view of London from Hampstead to "a view of hell from Abraham's bosom" (p. 32). See *Redburn*, chap. 37: "Tell me, oh Bible, that story of Lazarus again, that I may find comfort in my heart for the poor and forlorn." Lazarus and Dives were mentioned by name in "The Piazza," *The Piazza Tales* (C. W.), p. 3, and Melville quoted Luke xvi, 24, in "The Encantadas," Sketch One, *The Piazza Tales* (C. W.), p. 150. The last three paragraphs of this chapter were omitted and the fourth from the end curtailed in the English edition, to exclude all reference to Lazarus.

10.5. *Moluccas*: The Moluccas proper are the Ternate group, but in its wider sense the term Moluccas or Spice Islands includes all the islands of the Malay archipelago between Celebes on the west, New Guinea on the east, Timor on the south, and the open Pacific on the north. Camoens in *The Lusiad* made several references to "Malucca's sultry waves" and "spicy groves." William Julius Mickle's translation of the *Lusiad* was quoted by Jack Chase in *White Jacket*, chaps. 65 and 93. Melville's surviving copy of the Portugese epic (Sealts, No. 116), with both English translation and the original text, was not acquired until 1867.

10.6. *like a Czar in an ice palace*: The palace of ice annually built in St. Petersburg, illuminated with torches during a festival. See *Mardi*, chap. 75: "the Czar's Ice Palace [took] a long Muscovite winter to congeal."

10.7. *a president of a temperance society*: Melville's frequent flippant references to temperance societies seem to have been echoes of his conviction of the failure of the missionary-sponsored organization in Hawaii. Although King Kammehammaha III had instituted the society by signing the pledge at Lahaina 26 April 1842, and missionaries reported the success of the venture, Melville in *Typee*, chap. 26, referred to the king as "a most inveterate dram-drinker."

11.10. *the breaking-up of the ice-bound stream of Time*: Melville probably alluded here to the annual ice break on the Hudson River in the Albany-Troy area, which he knew first-hand, and which had been

vividly described in James Fenimore Cooper's *Satanstoe* (1845), chaps. 16 and 17.

11.35. *Nathan Swain*: Apparently the same harpooner referred to by Peleg on p. 90: "young Nat Swaine [*sic*], once the bravest boat-header out of all Nantucket and the Vineyard; he joined the meeting, and never came to good." Of the many capes named Blanco, the one most likely the scene of the recovery of Swain's harpoon from a dead whale would seem Cabo Blanco on the Peruvian coast just north of Payta.

12.9. *almost fancy you trod some old craft's cockpits, especially of such a howling night*: This comparison of land objects with ships appeared also in Melville's letter to E. A. Duyckinck 12 December 1850 (printed in Thorp, p. 383); see Introduction p. xii.

12.19. *Jonah*: See Father Mapple's sermon, pp. 40-48. This comparison of the landlord to Jonah and the two on p. 14 were eliminated in the English edition.

12.32. *skrimshander*: See Melville's definition, p. 270: "whaling scenes, graven by the fishermen themselves on Sperm Whale-teeth, or ladies' busks wrought out of the Right Whalebone, and other like skimshander articles, as the whalemens call the numerous little ingenious contrivances they elaborately carve out of the rough material, in their hours of ocean leisure." The word—a colloquialism of unknown origin—is variously spelled, most commonly *scrimshaw*. Earliest known instance of the term is in the log of the *By Chance* of Dartmouth, 1826, where it is *scrimshonting*. Besides busks and whale-teeth—decorated with carving, water-colors, or point or line drawings—scrimshawed objects included pie-jaggers or crimpers, ditty boxes and baskets, canes with whale-bone insets, and even dominoes and jack-straws. The earliest dated piece of scrimshaw that survives is a tooth decorated "off the coast of Japan on the first voyage of the ship Susan of Nantucket in 1829." The latest date of scrimshaw is about 1875.

14.5. *the Grampus's crew*: See Melville's remark about the Grampus in the classification of whales, p. 138: "By some fishermen his approach is regarded as premonitory of the advance of the great sperm whale"—apparently a derivation from Bennett, p. 238: "their appearance is supposed to indicate the resorts of the Cachalot." Melville, it would seem, had something special in mind in naming the *Grampus*, for one of this crew was Bulkington, to whom chap. 23, "The Lee Shore," was to be dedicated. It was, of course, not a strange name for a whaleship; the famous Peleg Folger of Nantucket had made his first whaling voyage in 1751 on a ship so named; Joseph C. Hart had used the name for the ship in *Miriam Coffin*; or, *The Whale*

Fisherman (New York, 1834); and perhaps more importantly it was the *Grampus* (captained by the father of his friend Augustus Barnard) on which young Pym stowed away in Edgar Allan Poe's *The Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym, of Nantucket* (New York, 1838). Speculation on Melville's source for the name is tempting because certainty of the source might throw light on Melville's intention in dedicating "The Lee Shore." The dedicatee may have been any whaling companion, particularly whoever was the original of Harry Bolton, whose death on a whaling cruise was described in *Redburn*, chap. 62. Less likely, he may have been cousin Thomas Wilson Melvill, veteran of four whaling voyages, who was buried at Lahaina in the Hawaiian Islands in 1844. If Melville knew of the part of Jeremiah N. Reynolds in helping Poe with *The Narrative*, the phrase, "straight up, leaps thy apotheosis!", might have been an involved way of acknowledging indebtedness to Reynolds's "Mocha Dick: or the White Whale of the Pacific," published in the *Knickerbocker*, May 1839. But Reynolds did not die until 1858, and was, at the time *Moby-Dick* was written, a Wall Street lawyer. Melville, however, may not have known he was still alive, since he had passed from the limelight after his exclusion, which Poe thought unjustified, from the American South Seas Expedition. In the present state of the evidence only guesses are in order. The most interesting assumption would be that Bulkington was made a Virginian, albeit a tall one, in tribute to the association with that state of Edgar Allan Poe, and that the dedicatee of "The Lee Shore" was Poe, who died 7 October 1849, just a few days before Melville sailed for Europe. If the name *Grampus* were the only detail in Melville's book traceable to Poe's *Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym*, this would indeed be a wild guess, but one has also to consider that the emphasis on whiteness in Poe's descriptions of the South Polar regions may have furnished Melville with suggestions for chap. 42, "The Whiteness of the Whale."

15.2. *the Alleganian Ridge in Virginia*: For other Virginia references, see p. 190, the Blue Ridge; p. 422, the Dismal Swamp; p. 540, the Natural Bridge. *Mardi*, chap. 75, also referred to the Natural Bridge. So far as is known, Melville did not have personal knowledge of these Virginia landmarks. Returning from Illinois in the fall of 1840, he probably came up the Ohio River to Wheeling and then followed the national road across the Pennsylvania, but not the Virginia, mountains. It seems unlikely also that his office-seeking visit to Washington in February 1847 was extended into Virginia.

17.32. *as cool as Mt. Hecla in a snow storm*: Although there is a Mt. Hecla on one of the southernmost islands of the Hebrides, Mel-

ville almost certainly here meant the volcanic Mt. Hekla (5108 ft.) in southern Iceland, which had erupted in 1845.

22.17. *his heavy grego*: The Turkish term for a hooded jacket. See the explanation for the "outlandish garment of my own devising," the famous "white duck frock," in *White-Jacket*, chap. 1: "I found myself without a *grego*, or sailor's surtout."

24.4. *Queequeg*: If Queequeg had an original in Melville's own experience, he must have been the Marquesan Marbonna, described in *Omoo*, chap. 81, as "large and muscular, well made as a statue, and with an arm like a degenerate Tahitian's thigh." Unless this character was pure invention, Melville met this man—a native of Tior, a glen of Nukahiva—in Eimeo and talked to him at length in his own language. "Embarking at his native island, as a sailor, on board a French whaler, he afterward ran away from the ship at Tahiti," where he was seen and admired by Queen Pomaree and engaged as nurse for her two children. "Marbonna's face, tatooed as it was in the elaborate style of the tribe, was as good as a picture-book for these young Pomarees. They delighted to trace with their fingers the strange shapes there delineated." Melville was especially impressed by Marbonna's strong national feelings, his pride in his native country, and pronounced him "a philosopher of nature—a wild heathen, moralizing upon the vices and follies of the Christian court at Tahiti—a savage, scorning the degeneracy of the people among whom fortune had thrown him." In physical appearance, in whaling experience, in philosophical temperament, Marbonna was much like Queequeg, as the latter was described in chap. 12, "Biographical," and elsewhere. William Ellery Sedgwick has said, *Herman Melville: The Tragedy of Mind* (1944), p. 133: "In the whole book only Queequeg is a lovable character, and that, in view of the effect Melville aimed at, is a serious defect." See also note on *a bosom friend* 48.24.

25.8. *an interminable Cretan labyrinth of a figure*: Note the reference on p. 368 to "a remarkable involved Cretan labyrinth of vermicelli-like vessels." In *Pierre* (C. W.), p. 206, Melville called the hero's involvements with Isabel "those Cretan labyrinths, to which thy life's cord is leading thee." The structure built at Crete to confine the monster called the Minotaur was commonly for Melville not merely the type of physical intricacy but also the symbol of intellectual or metaphysical confusion. Compare *Don Quixote*, Part 1, Book 2, chap. 3: "as intricate and unknown as the Labyrinth of Crete," and the Knight's speech to Sancho, Part 1, Book 4, chap. 21: "The Power of Magick indeed, as it has an Art to clothe any thing in any Shape, may have dress'd these Demons in their Appearances to

infatuate thy Sense, and draw thee into such a Labyrinth of Confusion, that even *Theseus's* Clue could not extricate thee out of it; and this with a Design, perhaps, to plunge me deeper into Doubts, and make me endanger my Understanding, in searching into the strange Contrivance of my Inchantment, which in every circumstance is so different from all I ever read." (Ozell's revision of Peter Motteux's trans.)

25.26. *my mother . . . packed me off to bed*: Newton Arvin, *Herman Melville*: (New York, 1950), p. 28, taking this passage as "essentially" autobiographical, has called it "a singular mingling of the elements of fear, resentment, a protective humor, and an obscure, unrecognized sexuality." Perhaps aware of the parallels between his own life and DeQuincey's boyhood as sketched in the early paragraphs of *Suspira de Profundis*, Part 1, Melville seems to have mingled here details from two other works of Thomas DeQuincey. "Queequeg's pagan arm thrown round" Ishmael suggests the solicitous fellow-passenger on the Bristol Mail coach who put his arm around the sleeping boy to protect him from falling off (in the "Preliminary Confessions" section of *Confessions of an English Opium-Eater*). With Melville's picture of Ishmael's being "frozen with the most awful fears" and his "confounding attempts to explain the mystery," compare DeQuincey's "The Vision of Sudden Death": "That dream, so familiar to childhood, of meeting a lion, and, from languishing prostration in hope and vital energy, that constant sequel of lying down before him, publishes the secret frailty of human nature—reveals its deep-seated Pariah falsehood to itself—records its abysmal treachery. Perhaps not one of us escapes that dream; perhaps, as by some sorrowful doom of man, that dream repeats for every one of us, through every generation, the original temptation of Eden. Every one of us, in this dream, has a bait offered to the infirm places of his own individual will; once again a snare is made ready for leading him into captivity to a luxury of ruin; again, as in aboriginal Paradise, the man falls from innocence. . . . Even so in dreams, perhaps, under some secret conflict of the midnight sleeper, lighted up to the consciousness at the time, but darkened to the memory as soon as all is finished, each several child of our mysterious race completes for himself the aboriginal fall."

Melville bought DeQuincey's *Confessions* in London 22 December 1849; finishing it the next day, he pronounced it "A most wondrous book" (*Journal*, pp. 80-81—Sealts, No. 180.) *Suspira de Profundis*, sequel to the original *Confessions* of 1822, was normally after its appearance in 1845 bound in the same volume; probably, therefore,

Melville read both at the same time. "The Vision of Sudden Death" was published in the December 1849 issue of *Blackwood's*; Melville may also have read this in London, since he mentioned November 6 reading the review of *Redburn* in the November *Blackwood's* (*Journal*, p. 23). The passage cited here was quoted in a brief note about the original article in the *Literary World*, 5 January 1850, Vol. 6, p. 13.

27.12. *like a Newfoundland dog just out of water*: See Julian Hawthorne, *Hawthorne and His Circle* (New York, 1903), p. 32: "We did not keep a dog, but Herman Melville, who often came over from Pittsfield, had a large Newfoundland which he sometimes brought with him, and Mr. G. P. R. James . . . had another, and I was permitted to bestride both of them." See also the same author's "Herman Melville and His Dog," *The Dearborn Independent*, 24 September 1927, pp. 3 and 26.

28.4. *Queequeg . . . neither caterpillar nor butterfly*: Compare *The Autobiography of Goethe. Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life*, Book 8, in Vol. 1, p. 286, of the edition (John Oxenford, trans.) Melville bought in London in 1849 (Sealts, No. 228): "The Christian religion was wavering between its own historically positive base and a pure deism, which, grounded on morality, was in its turn to lay the foundation for ethics. . . . The most lively and ingenious men showed themselves, in this instance, like butterflies, who, quite regardless of their caterpillar state, throw away the chrysalis veil in which they have grown up to their organic perfection."

30.8. *Ledyard, the great New England traveler, and Mungo Park, the Scotch one*: John Ledyard (1751-1789), born in Groton, Connecticut, for two years a student at Dartmouth, spent four years in a tour of the Pacific Islands with Captain Cook (1776-1780); journeyed in a *kibitka* drawn by three horses from St. Petersburg across Siberia to Irkutsk, and thence to Yakutsk, in the summer of 1787; was arrested on trumped-up charges of being a French spy in Irkutsk the following February, returned by horse-drawn sledge to Moscow for trial and was then escorted out of Russia on the Polish border in April 1788; and died some nine months later in the early stages of an expedition up the Nile. In spite of the erroneous assignment of dogs to the sledge, Melville probably knew this man through Jared Sparks, *Life of John Ledyard, the American traveler* (Cambridge, 1828), later included in Sparks, ed., *American Biography*. In this volume he could have found ample confirmation of Ledyard's temperamental restlessness; for instance, the explorer's own admission (p. 171): "I am too much alive to care and ambition to sit still."

Mungo Park (1771-1806) was chiefly known for his *Travels in the Interior of Africa* (1799), an account of his exploration under the sponsorship of the African Association, which had also underwritten Ledyard's African venture. As Sparks commented (p. 20): "In many points of character there was a strong resemblance between these two distinguished travellers, and they both perished martyrs in the same cause, attempting to explore the hidden regions of Africa." See *Mardi*, chap. 119, "as Mungo Park rested in African cots," and "Benito Cereno," *Piazza Tales* (C. W.), pp. 87-88: "some of the very women whom Ledyard saw in Africa, and gave such a notable account of." In his note on the latter passage, Egbert Oliver (C. W., pp. 235-236) has pointed out that in the *Putnam's Magazine* (Nov. 1855) printing of the story, Mungo Park was named here rather than Ledyard, whose name appeared in the first book publication. This alteration Oliver has partly explained by printing the relevant passage from Mungo Park's *Travels* which quoted Ledyard's statement on the generosity of women and developed the idea. Oliver has also given the quotation from Ledyard's Siberian journal as originally published in the *Proceedings of the Association for Promoting the Discovery of the Interior Parts of Africa* (London, 1790), Vol. 1, p. 44. Jared Sparks (p. 264) gave a still different version of Ledyard's words—closer to that of the *Proceedings* than to Mungo Park's; any version would have been adequate for Melville's allusion. Most likely Oliver was correct in asserting that Melville "had undoubtedly read both Ledyard and Mungo Park."

31.19. *Broadway and Chestnut streets . . . Regent Street . . . the Apollo Green. . . . Water Street and Wapping*: Melville here was merely making the point that sailors cover the world, by naming prominent thoroughfares where they might be encountered in New York, Philadelphia, London, Bombay, Liverpool, and London again.

31.28. *Feegeians . . . Brighggians*: The inhabitants of various Polynesian islands. In the "Etymology," Melville gave the word for whale in the Fege [*sic*] and Erromangoan dialects.

33.3. *Herr Alexander*: Between November 1845 and the autumn of 1849, this German magician had extended engagements in New York at Niblo's Theatre, Palmo's Opera House, the Alhambra, the Chinese Museum, and in Brooklyn at the Gothic Hall. See George C. D. Odell, *Annals of the New York Stage* (New York, 1931), Vol. 5, pp. 226, 231, 232, 307, 319, 501.

33.21. *Salem . . . their sailor sweethearts smell them miles off shore, as though they were drawing nigh the odorous Moluccas*: Compare *Paradise Lost* IV, 156-166:

“Now gentle gales,
 Fanning their odoriferous wings, dispense
 Native perfumes, and whisper whence they stole
 Those balmy spoils. As, when to them who sail
 Beyond the Cape of Hope, and now are past
 Mozambic, off at sea north-east winds blow
 Sabean odours from the spicy shore
 Of Araby the Blest, with such delay
 Well pleased they slack their course, and many a league
 Cheered with the grateful smell old Ocean smiles;
 So entertained those odorous sweets the Fiend. . . .”

Henry F. Pommer (*Milton and Melville*, Pittsburgh, 1950, p. 139, n. 22) has argued convincingly that Melville, who quoted lines 164-165 in *White-Jacket*, chap. 14, also paraphrased this Miltonic passage in *Mardi*, *Redburn*, and *Clarel*. See also Camoens, *The Lusiad*, William Julius Mickle, trans. (Philadelphia, 1822), Book 4, p. 180:

“Now round their steps the bless’d Arabia spreads
 Her groves of odour, and her balmy meads,
 And every breast, inspired with glee, inhales
 The grateful fragrance of Sabae’s gales.”

Also *The Lusiad*, Book 9, p. 310:

“The clove, whose odour on the breathing gale
 Far to the sea Malucco’s plains exhale.”

See also note on *the Moluccas* 10.5.

33.27. *a Whaleman’s Chapel*: On Johnny Cake hill (Bethel Street), the Seamen’s Bethel in New Bedford had been built in 1830 and dedicated in 1832 by “Father” Edward Taylor of the Seamen’s Church in Boston. Melville most likely attended a service there before sailing on the *Acushnet* 3 January 1841. For details of the church and its pastor, see *Trying-Out*, pp. 65-68, and C. R. Anderson, *Melville in the South Seas* (New York, 1939), pp. 22-29.

34.9. *several marble tablets*: The surviving memorial tablets all date after 1840. As Ishmael claimed, he did not quote; an examination of the *New Bedford Vital Records* reveals that none of these names was that of a real person, a victim of disaster. It is possible,

however, that there were memorial tablets in the church at the time of Melville's brief sojourn in New Bedford, which may have been defaced by the severe fire in 1866 and afterwards removed.

35.24. *the trappings of some unceasing grief*: Compare *Hamlet* I, ii, 86: "These but the trappings and suits of woe."

35.36. *the cave of Elephanta*: Melville was more accurate in the allusion in *Mardi*, chap. 75, to "the great grottos of Elephanta," since there was one major cave and six smaller ones on the island of Elephanta, near Bombay, India, all devoted to Saivism, the sect of the Hindu religion which worshipped Siva the Destroyer as supreme power rather than Vishnu the Preserver. These rock temples were adorned with statues, carvings, and, in Melville's day, paintings now obliterated. Melville's statement on p. 261 that one of them contained "the most ancient portrait anyways purporting to be the whale's" was erroneous, since there were no representations of the Matse Avatar of Vishnu. The nearest was Varuna on a crocodile, one of the background figures for the Ardhanariśvara-Siva statue (Siva as half male and half female). See *Trying-Out*, pp. 278-280, for the argument that Melville's error may have arisen from a hasty reading of Thomas Maurice, *Indian Antiquities* (1798), where the account of the Matse Avatar immediately followed the description of the caves of Elephanta.

36.1. *more secrets than the Goodwin Sands*: A graveyard for ships near the mouth of the Thames in England, the shoals off the Kentish coast where the Dauphin's reinforcements were wrecked, *King John* V, iii, 11, and V, v, 13. Legend held they were Earl Godwin's Island protected by a sea-wall until the money for the upkeep of the wall was diverted by the Abbot of St. Augustine to build the tower of St. Mildred's church, Tenterden, and a severe inundation destroyed the island in 1099.

36.8. *antique Adam who died sixty round centuries ago*: James Usher (1581-1656), Archbishop of Armagh, in his *Annales Veteris et Novi Testamenti* (1650-1654) fixed the date of the Creation as 4004 B.C. His chronology, based on Hebrew sources, by some unknown agency got printed in the margins of reference editions of the Authorized Version. Several nineteenth century scholars argued for a return to the Septuagint chronology and fixed the date of the Creation as 5411 B.C. (See article on "Chronology" in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature*, 1846.) Since both schools assigned Adam a life-span of nine hundred thirty years, in 1850 it would have been 4924 years since his death according to Usher, 6231 years according to Hales and other scholars of the Septuagint school.

Unless Melville was here confusing birth and death dates, he would seem deliberately to have departed from Bishop Usher. See note on *the sea rolled on* 566.30.

36.28. *like oysters observing the sun through the water*: Perhaps this figure was the fusion in Melville's mind of the allegory of the cave at the beginning of *The Republic*, Book 7, with another statement by Plato in *Phaedrus*, 250: "For there is no light of justice or temperance or any of the higher ideals which are precious to souls in the earthly copies of them: they are seen through a glass dimly; and there are few who, going to the images, behold in them the realities, and these only with difficulty. There was a time . . . when we were admitted to the sight of apparitions innocent and simple and calm and happy, which we beheld shining in pure light, pure ourselves and not yet enshrined in that living tomb which we carry about, now that we are imprisoned in the body, like an oyster in his shell." (B. Jowett, trans.)

37.7. *the famous Father Mapple*: The Reverend Enoch Mudge (1776-1850), sixty-five at the time of Melville's visit to New Bedford, was the pastor of the Bethel from 1832 to 1844. He may have been Melville's original for Father Mapple. More likely Melville also had in mind Father Edward Taylor (1793-1871) of Boston, for whom the adjective "famous" would be more apt, since authors ranging from Richard Henry Dana, Jr., Charles Dickens, Emerson, to Harriet Martineau and Catherine Maria Sedgwick sang his praises, and a Taylor sermon at the Boston Bethel became almost a commonplace "tourist" attraction in the 1830's and 1840's. See Miss Sedgwick's journal entry for 2 November 1835 (in Mary E. Dewey, ed., *Life and Letters of Catherine M. Sedgwick*, New York, 1872, pp. 247-248); Charles Dickens's long report of a Taylor sermon, in style much like Mapple's, in *American Notes for General Circulation* (New York, 1842), pp. 25-26 (quoted by C. R. Anderson, pp. 27-28); and R. H. Dana, Jr., *Two Years before the Mast* (1840), chap. 12: "I remember, too, that one of the men quoted 'Father Taylor' (as they call the seaman's preacher at Boston), who told them that, if they were ordered to work on Sunday, they must not refuse their duty, and the blame would not come on them." Taylor, unlike Mudge, had been a sailor in his youth, as Melville represented Mapple as having been. He was well known for homely and nautical language in the pulpit, such as Dickens graphically reported. It may well be that Melville heard him in Boston in 1849, if he had not heard him before, since while Melville was in that city, Taylor came uptown on 21 February

to address the Bunker Hill Trading and Mining Association at Tremont Temple. Taylor's fame probably suggested the idea of Mapple's portrait and his sermon, but Melville may well have drawn on the facts he knew about both Mudge and Taylor. In the light of Melville's comment on Hawthorne, in his letter to E. A. Duyckinck 12 February 1851, that "he needs roast-beef, done rare," it may well have been the characterization of such a virile preacher as Mapple that Melville had in mind when he entered among the annotations on a back flyleaf in Vol. 7 of his set of Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460), the phrase "*Roast beef in the pulpit.*" (See note on *Ahab* 79.17 for account of hints for the characterization of the whaling captain in these annotations.)

38.18. *deliberately drag up the ladder step by step*: Ishmael commented that this act "must symbolize something unseen;" compare Emerson, "Shakespeare," in *Representative Men* (1850): "the Genius draws up the ladder after him, when the creative age goes up to heaven, and gives way to a new age, which sees the works and asks in vain for a history. Shakespeare is the only biographer of Shakespeare; and even he can tell nothing, except to the Shakespeare in us, that is, to our most apprehensive and sympathetic hour. He cannot step from off his tripod and give us anecdotes of his inspirations."

38.31. *a lofty Ehrenbreitstein*: In his *Journal* entry for 10 December 1849, Melville described his visit to "the famous Quebec fortress Ehrenbreitstein" on a high cliff across the Rhine from Coblenz, p. 64: "A magnificent object truly. The view from the summit is superb. Far away winds the Rhine between its castellated mountains . . . crossed the Moselle at the stone bridge near where Prince Metternich was born. Singular that he was born so near the great fortress of Germany. Still more curious that the finest wine of all the Rhine is grown under the guns of Ehrenbreitstein." This fortress was also described by Bayard Taylor in *Views A-Foot* (1846), chap. 8, and by Goethe in *Truth and Poetry: from My Own Life*, Book 13 (Vol. 1, p. 485 of the edition Melville acquired in London in 1849). See also *Pierre* (C. W.), p. 80: "the grape empurples close up to the very walls and muzzles of cannoned Ehrenbreitstein." Byron also referred to Ehrenbreitstein in *Childe Harold*, Canto 3, stanza 58.

38.36. *a large painting representing a gallant ship . . . off a lee coast*: Compare John Ross Dix's description of Father Taylor's Boston church: "the only ornament being a large painting at the back of the pulpit representing a ship in a stiff breeze off a lee shore" (quoted by Allan Macdonald, "A Sailor Among the Transcendental-

ists," *New England Quarterly*, Sept. 1935, Vol. 7, p. 317). From the subject of this painting Melville derived the title for his epitaph for Bulkington, chap. 23, "The Lee Shore."

39.4. *that silver plate . . . where Nelson fell*: Melville noted in his *Journal* 25 December 1849, just before he boarded the *Independence* at Portsmouth: "Saw the 'Victory,' Nelson's ship, at anchor." But he did not record whether he had time to go aboard and see the silver plate. Compare *Billy Budd*, chap. 4: "the solitary old hulk at Portsmouth, Nelson's *Victory*. . . . the star inserted in the Victory's quarter-deck designating the spot where the Great Sailor fell. . . ." Nelson was one of Melville's greatest heroes and numerous references to him and his death aboard the *Victory* in the great battle of Trafalgar (1805) came into many of Melville's works; see, for example, *Mardi*, chaps. 24, 28; *White-Jacket*, chaps. 6, 68, 74; *Redburn*, chap. 31.

39.9. *the pulpit itself*: It is possible, though not likely, that the pulpit in the New Bedford Bethel was once as Melville described it; see *Trying-Out*, p. 67, and C. R. Anderson, pp. 24-25, 444 n.5. The ladder, "the likeness of a ship's bluff bows," and the "projecting piece of scroll work, fashioned after a ship's fiddle-headed beak" all derived, probably, from Melville's sense of appropriateness. Compare the description of the Floating Chapel in Liverpool, *Redburn*, chap. 35: "the hull of an old sloop of war, which had been converted into a mariner's church."

40.8. *The ribs and terrors in the whale. . . .*: No original has been found for this hymn. Its aptness for Melville's artistic purposes and the imaginative freedom with which it was written (notably in the avoidance of the conventional rhyme in the fourth stanza) suggest that Melville himself was the author. Certain parallels in phrasing, however, suggest that Melville may have got the impetus for his hymn from George Wither, *The Hymnes and Songs of the Church* (1623), Song 30, "The Prayer of Jonah":

"In my distresse to thee I cri'de, oh LORD,
 And thou were pleased my complaint to heare,
 Out from the bowels of the grave I roar'd;
 And to my voice thou didst encline thy eare:
 For, I amid the raging Sea was cast;
 And to the bottome there thou plung'd me hast.
 . . .
 Thy waves and billowes overflow'd me quite
 . . .
 O're swallow'd by the Deeps I fast was pent. . . ."

Among the more popular writers of hymns, the only more than casual reference to Jonah was in William Cowper, *The Olney Hymns*, No. 2, stanza 4:

“When Jonah sunk beneath the wave,
He thought to rise no more;
But God prepared a fish to save,
And bear him to the shore.”

The English edition changed the verb “lift,” in the fourth line of Melville’s hymn, to “left,” which was probably the intended reading.

40.32. *the last verse of the first chapter of Jonah*: The phrasing of Jonah i, 17, in the third Extract follows the Authorized Version. The alteration here of “Now the Lord” to “And God” suggests that Melville was quoting from memory, since the variation is too minor to serve as characterization of Father Mapple. More worthy of note is the fact that Mapple’s sermon told the story of Jonah only through chap. iii, verse 3, and omitted all reference to Jonah’s displeasure that God ultimately spared the repentant people of Ninevah. Mapple’s sermon, perhaps the finest in imaginative literature, was more virile and uncompromising than the one preached by a landsman in behalf of sailors recalled by the narrator of *Redburn*, chap. 9, “where the preacher called them strayed lambs from the fold, and compared them to poor lost children, babes in the wood, orphans without fathers or mothers.” Conventionally Jonah’s deliverance from the whale was regarded as a prototype of the Resurrection and, more generally, of the salvation of mankind; hence the sermon was, in a sense, a foreshadowing of Ishmael’s final rescue.

41.25. *Tarshish . . . the modern Cadiz*: See article on “Tarshish” in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature* (1846); the scholars of Melville’s day commonly identified the Biblical city with the Spanish Tartessus near the mouth of the Guadalquivir, somewhat north of Cadiz, which dates from the eleventh century. Sir Thomas Browne, in one of the “Extracts from Commonplace Books” included in the edition of Simon Wilkin (1836), suggested “Tarsis in Cilicia, Tartessus in Baetica, of Spain, or Tarsis by which sometimes Carthage is called,” but considered the matter unimportant. Joppa was, according to Kitto, commonly equated with the modern Jaffa.

41.35. *with slouched hat and guilty eye*: Like Jonah, Ahab had a slouched hat; see the final sentence of chap. 30, and chap. 130: “The Hat.”

43.8. *whereas Virtue, if a pauper, is stopped at all frontiers*: Compare “Hawthorne and His Mosses,” *Literary World*, 17 August 1850,

Vol. 7, p. 127: "For in this world of lies, Truth is forced to fly like a scared white doe in the woodlands; and only by cunning glimpses will she reveal herself, as in Shakespeare and other masters of the great Art of Telling the Truth,—even though it be covertly and by snatches." In his seven volume edition of Shakespeare acquired in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460), Melville underlined the speech of the Fool in *King Lear* I, iv, 124: "Truth's a dog must to kennel. . . ." and put a multiple check in the margin by the comment of Enobarbus to his commander in *Antony and Cleopatra* II, ii, 109: "That truth must be silent I had almost forgot."

43.29. *a swinging lamp slightly oscillates in Jonah's room*: Compare Melville's elaborate symbolism here with the simpler description of similar physical and moral pangs in Thomas Hope, *Anastasis*, Vol. 2, chap. 11 (Vol. 2, pp. 1-2 of the edition Melville acquired in 1849 in London; Sealts, No. 282): "Oh! how long appeared those sleepless nights, in which I felt no change of motion in the ship but what was caused by its rolling from side to side, or pitching from end to end; in which every object suspended round my narrow berth—my clothes, my lamp, my person, and the very shadow they cast on the wainscot—never ceased exhibiting the same monotonous see-saw motion, which found its equally monotonous response in the periodical creaking of the hulk, straining of the mast, swaying of the yards, and flapping of the sails and tackle. How slowly approached those mornings which were neither announced by the crowing of the cock, nor hailed by the twittering of the swallow; and whose dead and universal silence was only broken by our own harsh discord, added to that of the hollowing winds and roaring waves! . . . My mind suffered with my body; and, during those tedious hours, the depression of disease made me survey with deep contrition the errors of days past, and form sincere resolutions for my future life." A pencilled figure 8 in the inner margin by this passage is not likely Melville's marking, although there are a number clearly by him in the volume.

47.24. *woe to that pilot of the living God*: Compare the similar multiple repetition of the word *woe* in the speech of the Quaker woman, Catherine, mother of Ilbrahim, in Hawthorne's "The Gentle Boy" in *Twice-Told Tales*: "But I say unto ye, Woe to them that slay! Woe to them that shed the blood of saints! Woe to them that have slain the husband, and cast forth the child, the tender infant, to wander homeless and hungry and cold, till he die; and have saved the mother alive, in the cruelty of their tender mercies! Woe to them in their lifetime! cursed are they in the delight and pleasure of their hearts! Woe to them in their death hour, whether it come swiftly

with blood and violence, or after long and lingering pain! Woe, in the dark house, in the rottenness of the grave, when the children's children shall revile the ashes of the fathers! Woe, woe, woe, at the judgment, when all the persecuted and all the slain in this bloody land, and the father, the mother, and the child, shall await them in a day that they cannot escape! Seed of the faith, seed of the faith, ye whose hearts are moving with a power that ye know not, wash your hands of this innocent blood! Lift your voices, chosen ones; cry aloud, and call down a woe and a judgment with me!"

47.32. *as the great Pilot Paul has it*: See 1 Corinthians, ix, 27: "But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection; lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway."

47.37. *on the starboard hand of every woe, there is a sure delight*: Note that in chap. 131, the ninth and final ship met by the *Pequod* just before the three day encounter with Moby Dick was "most miserably misnamed the Delight."

48.1. *Delight is to him*: The balancing of the repetition of *delight* against the repetition of *woe* was one of the brilliant rhetorical effects of Father Mapple's style. *Delight* both as noun and verb was common in the Old Testament and in Milton; in an 1844 edition of the New Testament and Psalms in which Melville has written "From Aunt Jean 1846" (Sealts, No. 65), he sidelined all of Psalm xxxvii, where the word appears in verses 4, 11, and 23, and especially marked verse 11: "But the meek shall inherit the earth, and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace." Secular confirmation for the general ideas expressed here could have come from Telemachus's answer to the questions in the book of the laws of Minos to be proposed to the king-candidates in Crete; see Francis Fenelon, *Adventures of Telemachus*, Book 5: "The most free of all men . . . is he whose freedom slavery itself cannot take away. He, and he only, is free in every country and in every condition, who fears the gods, and whose fear has no other object. In other words, he only is truly free over whom fear and desire have no power, and is subject only to reason and the gods." (Dr. Hawkesworth trans.) Melville bought Fenelon's book in Paris in December 1849 (Sealts, No. 212). See also the long quotation from John Asgill's *An Argument Proving, That . . . Man may be translated from hence into that Eternal Life, without passing through Death. . . .* (1700) in Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 6, chap. 172: "But whoever leads the van will make the world start, and must expect for himself to walk up and down, like Cain, with a mark on his forehead, and run the gauntlet for an Ishmaelite,

having every man's against him because his hand is against every man; than which nothing is more averse to my temper. This makes me think of publishing with as much regret as he that ran away from his errand when sent to Ninevah: but being just going to cross the water—(he was going to Ireland—) I dared not leave this behind me undone, lest a Tempest send me back again to do it." This eccentric Englishman, later to be ridiculed as "translated Asgill," would seem to have learned the lesson Father Mapple derived from Jonah and to have stood forth "his own inexorable self." In his copy of the Bible inscribed "March 23d 1850" (Sealts, No. 62), Melville sidelined Job xiii, 15, and underlined the part of the verse after the semicolon: "Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him; but I will maintain mine own ways before him." Contrast the final sentence of Sir Thomas Browne's *Religio Medici*, Part 2, section 14: "Thy will be done, though in my own undoing." This section of Father Mapple's sermon was a mariner's version of Emerson's "Self-Reliance": "Whoso would be a man, must be a nonconformist. He who would gather immortal palms must not be hindered by the name of goodness, but must explore if it be goodness. Nothing is at last sacred but the integrity of your own mind. . . . Nothing can bring you peace but the triumph of principles." See also "Experience": "Life is not dialectics. . . . Intellectual tasting of life will not supersede muscular activity. If a man should consider the nicety of the passage of a piece of bread down his throat, he would starve." For an analysis of the sermon in terms of Christian orthodoxy, see *Trying-Out*, pp. 70-75.

48.18. *for what is man that he should live out the lifetime of his God*: Of the numerous Biblical passages Melville may have had in mind here, the most pertinent seem the speech of Zophar (marked in Melville's Bible presumably read in March 1850—Sealts, No. 62) in Job xi, 7-8: "Canst thou by searching find out God? canst thou find out the Almighty unto perfection? It is as high as heaven; what canst thou do? deeper than hell; what canst thou know?" and the speech of Elihu in Job xxxvi, 26: "Behold God is great, and we know him not; neither can the number of his years be searched out." See also Sir Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 7, chap. 3: "For unto God a thousand years are no more than a moment, and in his sight Methuselah lived no nearer one day than Abel, for all parts of time are alike unto him, unto whom none are referrible, and all things present unto whom nothing is past or to come; and therefore, although we be measured by the zone of time, and the flowing and continued instants thereof do leave at last a line and circle about the

eldest, yet can we not thus commensurate the sphere of Trismegistus, or sum up the unsuccessive and stable duration of God."

48.24. A *BOSOM FRIEND*: In describing the friendship of Queequeg and Ishmael, Melville went beyond such classical examples as Orestes and Pylades or Achates and Aeneas, beyond also the account of the perfect relationship analyzed by Montaigne in the essay, "Of Friendship" (Book 1, chap. 27), written in commemoration of the "brotherhood" between himself and Steven de la Boitie. With the added quality of boyish emotion, the relation between the author and Toby in *Typee* or between the narrator and Harry Bolton in *Redburn* was the same "*chummying* among sailors" as that which Melville defined between Taji and Jarl in *Mardi*, chap. 3, as "a Fidus-Achates-ship, a league of offense and defense." Queequeg and Ishmael were distinguished from these earlier pairs of friends by ceremonial coloring of the relationship which Melville introduced for symbolical purposes. The germ of the idea probably came from the Polynesian custom of "tayos," for *Omoo*, chap. 39, gave some account of these "extravagant friendships, unsurpassed by the story of Damon and Pythias: in truth, much more wonderful; for, notwithstanding the devotion—even of life in some cases—to which they led, they were frequently entertained at first sight for some stranger from another island." But what Melville said of himself as "Poky's 'tayo karhowree nuee,' or his particular white friend" included no mention of ceremony; indeed, he seems to have received casually Poky's attentions. The idea for the more serious two-sided relation between Queequeg and Ishmael may have been strengthened and given form by some of the books Melville read. Richard Henry Dana, Jr., in *Two Years Before the Mast* (Sealts, No. 173) described his adoption by the Sandwich Islander Hope in the hide house in San Diego, chap. 19: "Every Kanaka has one particular friend, whom he considers himself bound to do everything for, and with whom he has a sort of contract,—an alliance offensive and defensive,—and for whom he will often make the greatest sacrifices. This friend they call *aikane*; and for such did Hope adopt me. I do not believe I could have wanted anything he had, that he would not have given me. In return for this, I was his friend among the Americans, and used to teach him letters and numbers; for he left home before he had learned how to read." Later, in chaps. 28, 29, Dana told of nursing Hope through a severe illness. The similar institution of "brotherhood" among American Indians George H. Colton dealt with in describing the friendship of Moray and the Huron O-wa-o-la in *Tecumseh* (1842), Cantos 7 and 9.

An incident of about 1773 in the life of the famous Indian chief, William L. Stone recounted in *Life of Joseph Brant—Thayendanegea* (Sealts, No. 419a), chap. 1: "In compliance with Indian custom, he selected a bosom friend . . . in the person of a Lieutenant Provost, a half-pay officer residing in the Mohawk Valley. Those unacquainted with Indian usages are not probably aware of the intimacy, or the importance attached to this relationship. The selected friend is, in fact, the counterpart of the one who chooses him, and the attachment often becomes romantic; they share each other's secrets, and are participants in each other's joys and sorrows. As the Revolutionary troubles were approaching, Lieutenant Provost was ordered to his regiment and upon foreign service, greatly to the regret of the future chieftain. His lamentations attracted the attention of Doctor Stewart, who advised him to select another friend—offering to stand as substitute himself. But no; the young chief declared that such a transfer of his affections could not take place. He was Captain John's friend, and another such friend could not be in existence at the same time. Lieutenant Provost had been sent to the West Indies; and in order to assure him of the strength and constancy of his attachment, Thayendanegea procured an entire Indian costume of the richest furs he could obtain, which was sent to him in Jamaica." In a footnote, Stone explained: "A similar custom prevailed among the ancient Greeks. Two young warriors often assumed the obligation of brotherhood, which was taken with peculiar ceremonies, and maintained inviolate through life." Thomas Hope's *Anastasius*, Vol. 1, chap. 7 (Vol. 1, pp. 107-108 of the edition Melville acquired in London in 1849—Sealts, No. 282) testified to the survival into modern times of the ancient custom in recounting how Anastasius and another young Greek, Anagnosti, incarcerated in the Constantinople Bagnio at the same time, submitted themselves to "the solemn ceremony, which, in our church, unites two friends of either sex in the face of the altar by solemn vows, gives them the endearing appellation of brothers or sisters, and imposes on them the sacred obligation to stand by each other in life and in death." The priest remonstrated that the practice was "quite obsolete, except among the most barbarous clans of the remotest provinces . . . the people at Constantinople were sufficiently employed in minding their own concerns, without gratuitously engaging to risk their lives for others." The narrator Anastasius explained: "the priest warned us more earnestly to consider the consequences, before we irrevocably bound ourselves by so serious an engagement. Still we insisted, and he at last complied. He enveloped us in the sacred veil, symbol of the holy ties we contracted; and made us

swear on our knees, in the face of Heaven, to share together like brothers, while we breathed, both good and adverse fortune." Footnotes in Melville's copy, Vol. 1, pp: 107-108, explained that the ceremony was "still in use in Albania and along the eastern shore of the Adriatic" and that the Epirotes used "the denominations of *probratimi* for the men, and *prosestrimi* for the women." Without going into this background of sources, R. E. Watters has given an account of the symbolism of the Queequeg-Ishmael relationship in his article, "Melville's Sociality," *American Literature*, March 1945, Vol. 17, pp. 33-49. It was significant for Melville's purposes that Queequeg was a "soothing savage," a man of another race, and that by the ceremonial pressing of foreheads and clasping of waists after the alternate smoking of the pipe, Ishmael was "redeemed" from the cynical worldliness the priest of *Anastasi* ascribed to the residents of Constantinople. Ishmael was for Queequeg, as Provost was for Brant, "a bosom friend," tied to him, as Dana to the Kanaka Hope, in "an alliance offensive and defensive," but the inter-racial amity was further the symbol of what Hawthorne called in *Ethan Brand* "the magnetic chain of humanity" in universal extension. For this friendship Melville found further sanction in the book he called on p. 422 "the fine hammered steel of woe"; see Ecclesiastes iv, 9-11: "Two are better than one; because they have a good reward for their labour. For if they fall, the one will lift up his fellow; but woe to him that is alone when he falleth; for he hath not another to help him up. Again if two lie together, then they have heat: but how can one be warm alone?"

49.24. *his head was phrenologically an excellent one*: See Melville's concern with the phrenology of the whale in chap. 79 and note on *Lavater* 343.18.

49.29. *Queequeg was George Washington cannibalistically developed*: Compare Melville's letter to Hawthorne June (?) 1851, printed in Thorp, p. 390: "So, when you see or hear of my ruthless democracy on all sides, you may possibly feel a touch of shrink, or something of that sort. It is but nature to be shy of a mortal who boldly declares that a thief in jail is as honorable a personage as Gen. George Washington. This is ludicrous. But truth is the silliest thing under the sun."

51.38. *the infallible Presbyterian church*: Although Allan Melville, the father of the author, was a Unitarian, his wife Maria, like all of the Gansevoorts, was a member of the Dutch Reformed Church and their children were all baptized in that faith. The Shaw family were Unitarians, but by the time of the publication of *Moby-Dick*, Herman

and Elizabeth Shaw Melville with their children Malcolm and Stanwix were affiliated with St. Stephen's Episcopal Church in Pittsfield. Melville apparently was thinking here in terms of general theological doctrine, which both the Dutch and the Presbyterian churches derived from Calvin, and which would at this time not have been essentially different for the Episcopal church. The Unitarian faith, of course, would have been somewhat more liberal.

52.17. *there is no place like a bed for confidential disclosures:* Compare with Laurence Sterne's account of the conversations between Mr. and Mrs. Shandy in the "beds of justice," *Tristram Shandy*, Book 6, chaps. 16-18. Melville read at least "a few chapters" of this book in London 15 December 1849 (*Journal*, pp. 71-72-Sealts, No. 490). In the final sentence of this chapter, the phrase, "in our hearts' honeymoon," was omitted in the English edition, as "bridegroom," p. 26, and "matrimonial," p. 27—used in reference to the Queequeg-Ishmael relation—were also deleted by the English editor.

54.22. *Kokovoko:* Although "not down in any map," this island has a credible South Sea name. The old capital of New Britain, before Rabaul, was Kokopo. The koko is a tree in the Andaman Islands. Koko-nor is another name for the Chainghai province in China. Through the inconsistency of Melville or the printer, the name was spelled Rokovoko on p. 58.

54.27. *Queequeg's ambitious soul:* The details of Queequeg's escape from Kokovoko establish that he too, like young Redburn and the narrator Ishmael, had "an everlasting itch for things remote." Although he was in many respects the "noble savage" of romantic primitivism, Ishmaelism was a strong ingredient in his character. Queequeg's experiences and observations in Sag Harbor and Nantucket, which led him to declare that "it's a wicked world in all meridians," were not unlike young Redburn's in Liverpool.

55.3 *Sag Harbor:* A small village on the south shore near the eastern end of Long Island, which was nevertheless in 1845 almost tied with New London for third place (after New Bedford and Nantucket) among American whaling ports, with some 63 ships engaged in the fishery and its imports of sperm and whale oil more than a tenth of the national total. See J. Ross Browne, pp. 534-535.

55.25. *like Czar Peter:* Peter the Great (1672-1725), traveling incognito as "Peter Mikailhov," studied gunnery at Königsberg, anatomy at Leyden, engraving at Amsterdam, and in 1698 spent several months as a common laborer in the royal navy dockyard at Deptford, England, learning about shipbuilding, so that he might introduce the arts of Western Europe into Russia.

56.11. *as soon as he felt himself baptized again*: As another Ishmael, Queequeg needed also the "Spiritual New-Birth, or Baphometric Fire-baptism" which started Teufelsdröckh on his upward path from "The Everlasting No" in *Sartor Resartus*. Unlike the narrator Ishmael, he was not to be picked up from the baptismal waters by "the devious-cruising Rachel." See note on *Ishmael* 1.3.

57.3. *disposing of the embalmed head to a barber, for a block*: To be used by the barber as a form on which to keep or display a wig.

59.1. *New Bedford rose in terraces of streets*: See Timothy Dwight, *Travels; in New-England and New-York* (New Haven, 1822), Vol. 3, p. 69: "The situation of New-Bedford proper is an easy declivity, sloping toward the river. . . . The surface is in some degree disfigured by rocks, but is otherwise handsome. The streets are either parallel, or at right angles, with the river; being laid out with perfect regularity." See note on *New Bedford* 6.27.

61.23. *Nantucket*: This island lies about 27 miles south of Cape Cod; its major town, Nantucket, is about 50 air miles southeast of New Bedford. Discovered soon after the first colonists settled in Massachusetts Bay, the island was bought by Thomas Mayhew of Watertown in 1641 and first settled in 1659 by a party under Thomas Macy. Shore fishery of whales came soon afterward and vessel fishery was developed after Christopher Hussey took the first sperm whale in 1712. Political difficulties often occupied the settlers of the early days, when the island was considered part of the colony of New York; it was formally annexed to Massachusetts in 1693. After the coming to the island of the Quaker preacher John Richardson in 1701, a large number of the islanders, following one of their leading women, Mary Starbuck, became members of this faith. The population of the island was largely self-contained, and the leading families of the seventeenth century—the Gardners, the Mayhews, the Starbucks, the Coffins, the Macys, the Folgers—bore the names most commonly associated with the island two centuries later. It is not established, but possible, that Melville knew the five letters about Nantucket included in Crèvecoeur's *Letters from an American Farmer* (London, 1782), since the Duyckincks owned the Philadelphia, 1793, edition of this rare work, and Melville, as well as they, would have been impressed by William Hazlitt's enthusiastic commendation of the "American Farmer" in the *Edinburgh Review*, October 1829, Vol. 50, p. 130, which was on file in their library and quoted by them in the article on Crèvecoeur in their *Cyclopedia of American Literature* (1855). Although Melville quoted from Obed Macy's *The History of Nantucket* in the fifty-third Extract, his own surviving copy of the book

was acquired on his first visit to the island in July 1852 (Sealts, No. 345). This Extract may have been quoted from J. Ross Browne, p. 518, and Melville may have picked up his information about the island from conversations with sailors he knew aboard the *Acushnet* and more particularly aboard the *Charles and Henry*, of Nantucket, or from his reading in various whaling books. Lemuel Shaw had visited Nantucket in March 1851, and had there acquired the copy of Owen Chase's *Narrative of . . . the Whale-Ship Essex* which he presented to Melville in April (Sealts, No. 134). Perhaps something of his first hand knowledge of the island was passed on to Melville, whose account of the place was more in terms of general history than physical appearance. Obviously, Nantucket was for Melville the capital of the American whale fishery. The *Pequod* sailed from this port, and all six American whalers encountered during the course of the voyage were Nantucket ships. Ahab and Starbuck were both from Nantucket, and after an initial statement that the mate Radney on the *Town-Ho* was a Vineyarder, Melville apparently forgot or changed his mind and referred to him as a Nantucketer. No less than five Nantucket sailors were assigned lines in chap. 40: "Midnight, Forecastle."

61.28. *Eddystone Lighthouse*: Also mentioned on p. 542. It is conceivable that Melville may have seen from a distance this landmark, 14 miles south of Plymouth, England, on his voyage to London in 1849, either on 2 November or 25 December, but he did not mention it in his *Journal*. There was, however, a large mural painting of Eddystone in the Thames Tunnel, which Melville visited 10 November 1849. See note on *Thames Tunnels* 456.18.

62.15. *Thus goes the legend*: Melville's exact source is not known. He could have read it in the *Collections of the Massachusetts Historical Society*, 1835, 2d. Series, Vol. 3, p. 34 where the legend of the eagle stealing the child, and being followed by the parents, was recounted.

62.25. *quohogs*: *Quahog* or *quahaug* is a word of Indian origin for a thick-shelled American clam. On p. 89, Peleg misconstrued Queequeg's name into Quohog for the ship's articles.

63.1. *as the three pirate powers did Poland*: Russia and Prussia were the chief benefactors in the three "partitions of Poland" in 1772, 1793, and 1795, though Austria also participated in the first and in the last. After 1795 Poland was not again an independent nation until 1918. Although in chap. 89 ("Fast-Fish and Loose-Fish") Melville asked the question, "What was Poland to the Czar?" it was Catherine the Great, empress from 1762 to 1796, who directed the Russian

seizure of most of Poland. From the time of the insurrections in Canada led by MacKenzie in 1837, through the Webster-Ashburton settlement of the Maine boundary in 1842, down to and after the Oregon treaty with Great Britain in 1846, there was much irresponsible talk about the annexation of Canada. In 1848 President Polk offered Spain one hundred million dollars for Cuba, and fanatics even suggested that revolutionary activities provided the opportunity for the United States to annex Ireland and Sicily! The annexation of Texas in 1845 and the territorial acquisitions at the end of the Mexican War in 1848 had inspired a land-grabbing tendency in many Americans, which Melville alluded to here and rebuked severely on p. 396.

63.5. *two-thirds of this terraqueous globe*: The phrase "terracqueous globe" occurred in at least two of Melville's favorite authors: Sir Thomas Browne, "Concerning the Too Nice Curiosity of Censuring the Present . . .," *Miscellanies*, and Thomas Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus*, Book 2, chap. 8. Compare p. 422: "the ocean, which is the dark side of this earth, and which is two-thirds of this earth." See also Jonathan Romer's statement in William Starbuck Mayo, *Kaloolah* (New York, 1849), chap. 1: "Whaling, it is well known, has been, almost from the first settlement of this country, the chief employment of the inhabitants of 'the Island.' All were directly or indirectly interested in it. By it were bounded the hopes of the young and the memories of the old. In it alone could the highest honors be won, and good blows and true with harpoon and lance were of no less effect in winning the regard of the fair and the respect of the men, than the most trenchant sword-cuts of the gallant knights in the best days of chivalry. It was, consequently, pursued with an ardor and enthusiasm that penetrated the remotest, ice-bound retreats of the flying *cetacea*, and which has served to associate with the character of a Nantucket whaler the idea of dauntless bravery, enduring fortitude, determined energy, industry and skill." Melville may have taken one or two touches from *Ribs and Trucks* (Boston, 1842), p. 10: "'Tis your whaler alone, who goes down to the sea, in ships; other mariners hurry across it. He alone does business upon the great waters; and, more emphatically than other 'sea-farers,' makes the ocean his home. With his top-sail-yard 'sharp up,' and his helm 'four spokes a-lee,' he rides out the storm, month in and month out—nestling, like a sea-bird, in the trough, and feeling himself, as it were, in harbor; while other ships rise on the horizon and scud by, and lessen and reel out of sight, with blind celerity, on their respective courses." Compare also Obed Macy, *History of Nantucket*, pp. 218-

219: "The whaling business is peculiarly an ocean life. The sea, to mariners generally, is but a highway over which they travel to foreign markets; but to the whaler it is his field of labor, it is the home of his business. The Nantucket whaleman, when with his family, is but a visitor there. He touches at foreign ports merely to procure recruits to enable him to prosecute his voyage; he touches at home merely long enough to prepare for a new voyage. He is in the bosom of his family weeks, on the bosom of the ocean years. His youth and strength, and best manhood, are all devoted to a life of tedious labor and great peril. His boyhood anticipates such a life, and aspires after its highest responsibilities; his age delights in recounting its incidents. We read, and sometimes, perhaps, dwell with delight on the daring exploits of those whom the world calls heroes; and in proportion to the victims sacrificed on the altar of ambition, we attribute glory and honor to the visitor. Alas! what is bloodshed but murder. . . ." Joseph C. Hart gave an historical sketch of the settlement of Nantucket in *Miriam Coffin*, Vol. 1, "Introduction," and in his initial chapter called the Nantucketers "an amphibious race . . . that sort of *half quaker-half sailor* breed, to be found no where else on earth."

63.13. *he alone, in Bible language, goes down to it in ships*: Psalms cvii, 23-24: "They that go down to the sea in ships, that do business in great waters; These see the works of the Lord, and his wonders in the deep." See note on *the intrepid effort of the soul* 105.22.

63.18. *as chamois hunters climb the Alps*: Possibly Melville here recalled the chamois hunter who found Manfred at a height on the Jungfrau beyond his own normal advance and prevented his hurling himself into the chasm—Byron, *Manfred*, I, ii.

63.20. *more strangely than the moon would to an Earthsman*: Evert Duyckinck noted that Melville borrowed from him probably late July 1849 "Bergerac Voyage to the Moon," by which he doubtless referred to Cyrano de Bergerac Savinien's *The Comical History of the States and Empires of the Worlds of the Moon and Sun*, since he had an English 1687 edition of this book in his library (Sealts, No. 172).

63.32. *the Try Pots*: This inn takes its name from the pots used in boiling oil out of whale blubber. The process was described by Melville in chap. 96: "The Try-Works." Curiously, in the English edition the name of the inn was misspelled consistently "Twy Pots."

64.19. *asses' ears*: The handles of the pots got their name from their shape.

65.2. *Mrs. Hussey*: William McFee in a review of Weaver's

biography in the *Bookman*, March 1922, Vol. 55, pp. 69-70, has suggested a comparison of the mistress of the Try-Pots with Shakespeare's Dame Quickly. In the edition of Shakespeare he acquired in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460), Melville checked in the margin Mistress Quickly's speech in *Merry Wives of Windsor*, II, ii, 133-136: ". . . for 'tis not that children should know any wickedness. Old folks, you know, have discretion, as they say, and know the world." And he put two checks in the margin and underlined "'a should not think of God" in her speech about Falstaff in *Henry V*, II, iii, 18-20: "So he cried out, God, God, God! three or four times. Now I, to comfort him, bid him 'a should not think of God; I hoped there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet." Melville's characterization here may have also been influenced by Dickens and by Cruikshank's drawings.

67.2. *THE SHIP*: Its worn appearance and age probably constituted the main differences between the *Pequod* and Melville's own whaleship, the *Acushnet*. A three-masted, two-decked ship of 358 tons, the *Acushnet*, owned by Bradford, Fuller & Company, was built (completed December 30) by G. Barstow & Son, Mattapoisett, Massachusetts, in 1840. She measured 104' 8" in length, 27' 10" in width, and 13' 11" in depth. Melville sailed on her maiden voyage, when she, but not with Melville, successfully returned, with 850 barrels of sperm oil, 1350 barrels of whale oil, and 13,500 pounds of whalebone. She was wrecked 16 August 1851—at the moment when *Moby-Dick* was in press—on St. Lawrence Island without loss of life. (See Charles S. Mendell, Jr., *Shipbuilders of Mattapoisett*, Old Dartmouth Historical Sketches, No. 66; and Charles Anderson, *Melville in the South Seas*, New York, 1939, p. 33.) For a picture of the *Acushnet*, see *Trying-Out*, facing p. 16.

67.5. *Yojo*: Queequeg's idol, "a curious little deformed image with a hunch on its back, and exactly the color of a three days' old Congo baby," was first referred to on p. 22. The final mention of Yojo came on p. 475 when Queequeg tried out his coffin for size. In the Koran and elsewhere the Mohammedan equivalents of Gog and Magog were Yájooj and Majooj, but Melville may have derived this name from some South Sea term.

67.10. *the selection of the ship*: Compare the choosing of a ship by the narrator's companion, Welid, in Thomas Hope's *Anastastus; or, Memoirs of a Greek*, Vol. 2, chap. 16 (Vol. 2, p. 105 of Melville's copy acquired in London—Sealts, No. 282): "He had taken it into his head that it would be manifesting his trust in Providence to hire the first vessel he should meet with. This happened to be

precisely the oldest and craziest concern in the harbour; a thing on the eve of being broken up, as unfit for service. . . . He thought it a most fortunate opportunity of signalling his reliance on Heaven, and no entreaty or remonstrance could make him desist from freighting this miserable wreck, in preference to a dozen stout vessels disengaged."

67.32. *some sort of Lent or Ramadan*: It is hard to assign with certainty sources for Melville's terminology borrowed from or allusions to the East, because, as the reviewer of El-Mukattem's *Lands of the Moslem* stated in the *Literary World*, 19 April 1851, Vol. 8, p. 314: "A new book on the East is no longer the rarity it was twenty years ago . . . these regions, once so full of mystery . . . have been so much visited, and so illustrated by drawings, panoramas, and the like, that everybody nowadays knows all about the matter, or at least thinks he does, which amounts to much the same thing. The Pyramids are quite so-soish; old Memnon's statue is an everyday acquaintance; and as for the questions about the Dead Sea or the Holy Sepulchre, why they are talked of and discussed much as one might speculate about Mr. [G.P.R.] James's 'last.'" Of the books Melville read between December 1849 and August 1850, DeQuincey made reference in "The Pleasures of Opium" section of his *Confessions* (Sealts, No. 180) to "a Lent or Ramadan of abstinence from opium;" Carlyle had several brief mentions of this Islamic religious observance in the second lecture ("Mahomet") in *On Heroes, Hero-Worship, and the Heroic in History* (Sealts, No. 122), and the narrator of Thomas Hope's *Anastasius* (Sealts, No. 282) after a casual allusion in Vol. 1, chap. 10, confessed in Vol. 2, chap. 9 (Vol. 1, p. 365 of Melville's edition) how, "to compensate for not eating caviar during the Greek Lent," he "fasted with all becoming regularity during the Turkish Ramadan." In this later instance, Anastasius explained the institution: "Every one knows how trying that month is to the temper of the stanch Mohammedan. As long as the sun lingers above the horizon he dares not refresh himself with the least morsel of food, the least drop of liquor, or even the least whiff of tobacco. His whole occupation consists in counting his beads, in contemplating the slow moving hand of his timepiece, until the moment when the luminary of the world is pleased to release him from his abstinence, by withdrawing its irksome orb from his sight." See also chap. 17: "The Ramadan."

68.3. *XXXIX Articles*: The authoritative creed of the Anglican church and of all Episcopal churches in other lands to the present time, adopted by Convocation in 1563, based on the Forty-Two

Articles codified by Thomas Cranmer, Archbishop of Canterbury, and published by royal decree in 1553. Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus*, Book 3, chap. 9, called them "articles of wearing apparel (for the Religious Idea)."

68.8. *Pequod . . . the name of a celebrated tribe of Massachusetts Indians*: The ship on which Melville began his own whaling career, the *Acushnet*, bore the name of one Indian tribe; it was not strange that his fictional ship should bear the name of another. But the choice of "Pequod" seems to have been related to his conception of *Moby-Dick* as a kind of nineteenth century Book of Job, with special reference to the refrain of each of the four messengers in the first chapter of the Biblical story, "And I only am escaped alone to tell thee," which Melville used also to preface his own "Epilogue." (See note on *a Job's whale* 184.21.) The early Puritans found divine purpose in any remarkable providence. Captain Roger Clap noted in his memoirs that "God permitted Satan to stir up the Pequot Indians to kill divers Englishmen" (p. 363). Richard Mather wrote of twenty-three people going to "Marvil head" in a boat which "was cast a way in the storm, and all the people therein perished, except one man and his wife, that were spared to report the news" (p. 478), and some such paraphrase of Job became conventional to record the exceptional escape from any almost universal calamity. Along with the two journals quoted above, Thomas Shepard's autobiography—which contained a vivid account of the Pequod War of 1637—was included in Alexander Young, ed., *Chronicles of the First Planters of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay* (Boston: Charles C. Little and James Brown, 1846). This volume, dedicated by "his friend and pastor" to Lemuel Shaw, was the work of the minister who, a year after its publication, officiated at the wedding of Elizabeth Shaw and Herman Melville. Since Judge Shaw obviously received a copy, it is a reasonable assumption that Melville had access to Young's anthology. Of the sixty pages "Thomas Shepard's Memoir of His Own Life" filled in Young's volume, slightly more than two were devoted to "the goodness of God, as to myself, so to all the country, in delivering us from the Pekoat furies . . . the stoutest, proudest, and most successful in their wars of all the Indians" (p. 548). To Shepard, a minister in Cambridge, far removed from the scene of conflict, the Pequod chieftain Sassacus seemed "a proud, cruel, unhappy, and headstrong prince . . . not willing to be guided by the persuasions of his fellow, an aged sachem, Monanattuck" (p. 548). Skipping hastily over the preliminary depredations of the Indians and the organization of Captain John Mason's company in Hartford for an invasion of the Pequod

territory, Shepard concentrated on the attack by Mason's forces on the Indian fort near Mystic, Connecticut, in the early morning hours of 26 May 1637: "At last, by the direction of one Captain Mason, their wigwams were set on fire; which being dry, and contiguous one to another, was most dreadful to the Indians; some burning, some bleeding to death by the sword, some resisting till they were cut off; some flying were beat down by the men without; until the Lord had utterly consumed the whole company, except four or five girls they took prisoners. . . ." (p. 550). Estimates by other writers of the number of Pequod warriors slain in this single night vary from 500 to 800; Shepard gave no figure, but concluded his account with the paraphrase of Job: "And 'tis verily thought, scarce one man escaped, unless one or two to carry forth tidings of the lamentable end of their fellows" (p. 550).

A book Melville mentioned in the early paragraphs of "Hawthorne and His Mosses" as part of his reading for the summer of 1850—Timothy Dwight, *Travels; in New-England and New-York* (New Haven, 1822)—could have supplied further details of the Pequod War. Dwight also described how the remnants of the tribe—those not involved in the Mystic disaster—fled to the swamp of the Unquowas near Fairfield, where the English sought them out and destroyed them. More sympathetic than Shepard, Dwight saw statesmanship in the Pequods' recognition that the English colonists were a menace to them and granted this Indian tribe "an intrepidity, which in a nation of Europe, would have commanded praise from the pen of every historian" (Vol. 3, p. 13). He concluded with this reflection on the area around Mystic: "This tribe, apparently superior in their understanding to other savages, and possessed of loftier and more extensive views, was so far annihilated as to be thenceforth without a government and without a name. It is not easy to travel through the country, where they formerly resided, or to pass by the field, in which they were finally overthrown, without indulging many solemn and melancholy reflections" (Vol. 3, p. 22).

If, in spite of Shepard's reference to Weathersfield and Saybrook (towns in Connecticut), the presence of his narrative in a book about early Massachusetts confused Melville, Dwight ought to have put him straight that the Pequods were a Connecticut tribe. Melville may have known two novels which introduced Pequods, roamers from the main tribe, as characters: Catherine Maria Sedgwick, *Hope Leslie; or, Early Times in the Massachusetts* (1827), and James Fenimore Cooper, *The Wept of Wish-ton-Wish* (1829); both use a Massachusetts setting, partly in the Berkshires, and in both the name of the

tribe was spelled with a *d*. Dwight also used the *d*; but Shepard spelled the name "Pekoat" and his editor used the modernized "Pequot" for his page headings. Perhaps *Hope Leslie* had the final say with Melville, and the Pequods became fixed in his mind as a Massachusetts tribe. At David Dudley Field's three hour afternoon dinner in Stockbridge, 5 August 1850, Melville first met Hawthorne; Evert A. Duyckinck, then visiting Melville in Pittsfield, was one of the party. Of the evening of that day—which he and Melville also spent at Field's—Duyckinck recorded: "Talk and tea and a tall Mrs Sedgwick and a cross examination which I did not stand very well on Hope Leslie and Magawisca—and at ten o'clock the railway home, and a short walk under the stars and we turned in at the Melville house." (See L. S. Mansfield, "Glimpses of Herman Melville's Life in Pittsfield," *American Literature*, March, 1937, Vol. 9, p. 31.) Magawisca was the Pequod heroine of the novel, the daughter of the "aged sachem," by whom, according to Shepard's account, Sassacus was "not willing to be guided." The inquisitor was the novelist's sister-in-law. Perhaps Melville, overhearing the conversation, learned much, and mislearned to think of the Pequods as a Massachusetts tribe.

The narratives of Shepard and Dwight could account for Melville's choice of the name "Pequod" as fitting a ship that was to be destroyed, with a single survivor, and for his discerning a common demoninator of inscrutibility in the extinction of the Pequods and the calamities of Job. The destruction of the Indians by fire may even have planted a seed that grew into the conception of Fedallah as a Parsee and Ahab as a fire-worshipper.

68.16. *square-toed luggers; mountainous Japanese junks; butter-box galliots*: These are old-fashioned vessels with a four-sided sail bent to a yard which hangs obliquely on a mast, and is hoisted and lowered with a sail; Oriental ships with very high poop and overhanging stem, bluff lines, little or no keel, and pole masts; and long, narrow, light-draft Dutch merchant vessels.

68.26. *the three old kings of Cologne*: See *Journal* entry for 9 December 1849, p. 62: "We went to the Cathedral, during service—saw the tomb of the *Three Kings of Cologne*—their skulls." The three Magi who brought gifts to the infant Jesus were reputedly buried in Cologne. The skulls—seen through an opening in the shrine—bore their names (Gaspar, Melchior, and Baltazar) written in rubies and were crowned with diadems. Compare this passage, which Melville probably knew well (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), from Sir Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 7, chap. 8: "These wise men

or kings were probably of Arabia, and descended from Abraham by Keturah, who apprehending the mystery of this star, either by the Spirit of God, the prophecy of Balaam . . . or the divulged expectation of the Jews from the expiring prediction of Daniel, were by the same conducted into Judea, returned into their country, and were after baptized by Thomas. From whence about three hundred years after, by Helena, the empress, their bodies were translated to Constantinople. From thence by Eustatius unto Milan, and at last by Renatus, the bishop, unto Collein, where they are believed at present to remain, their monuments shown unto strangers, and having lost their Arabian titles, are crowned kings of Collein."

68.28. *the pilgrim-worshipped flag-stone . . . where Becket bled:* Thomas Becket, made Chancellor and later Archbishop of Canterbury by Henry II, quarreled with his sovereign over the relation of the clergy to the secular authorities (particularly as provided for in the Constitutions of Clarendon 1164), and was slain in the north transept of his own cathedral in 1170 by four of the king's knights who hoped to gain thereby their sovereign's favor. The martyred prelate was canonized in 1172. See Melville's entry for 5 November 1849, *Journal*, p. 22: "The Cathedral is on many accounts the most remarkable in England. Henry II, his wife, & the Black Prince are here—& Becket. Ugly place where they killed him."

68.38. *Thorkill-Hake's carved buckler or bedstead:* Since the anonymous thirteenth-century *Njalssaga* existed outside of Icelandic only in a Latin translation of 1809, Melville must have picked up from some secondary source this item about Thorkell Hákr (Thorkel foulmouth), the son of Thorgeir the Priest of Lightwater, the son of Tjorfi, the son of Thorkel the long. Thorkel foulmouth's mother was Gudrida, daughter of Thorkel the black of Hleidrargarth. See the first English translation, George W. Dasent, *The Story of Burnt Njal* (1861), chap. 118 for an account of this eleventh-century Icelandic figure: "Thorkel foulmouth had been abroad and worked his way to fame in other lands. He had slain a robber east in Jemtland's wood, and then he fared on east into Sweden, and was a messmate of Saurkvir the churl, and they harried eastward ho; but to the east of Baltic side Thorkel had to fetch water for them one evening; then he met a wild man of the woods [a fabulous monster, half man and half beast], and struggled against him long; but the end of it was that he slew the wild man. Thence he fared back to Sweden, and thence to Norway, and so out to Iceland, and let these deeds of derring do be carved over his shut bed, and on the stool before his

highseat. He fought, too, on Lightwater way with his brothers against Gudmund the powerful, and the men of Lightwater won the day. He and Thorir Helgi's son spread abroad bad stories about Gudmund. Thorkel said there was no man in Iceland with whom he would not fight in single combat, or yield an inch to, if need were. He was called Thorkel foulmouth, because he spared no one with whom he had to do either in word or deed."

69.10. *that tiller . . . curiously carved*: The *Pequod's* tiller was a bit of *skrimshander*; see note 12.3. See figure on p. 60 of the passengers on the boat from New Bedford "eyeing the boom as if it were the lower jaw of an exasperated whale."

69.27. *old Pottowottamie Sachem's head*: Pictures of the distinctive head-dress of the various Indian tribes were common in the periodicals of Melville's day. Originally one of the western New York tribes, the Pottawattamies were by the 1840's on a reservation in Kansas, where Francis Parkman saw them and commented (*The Oregon Trail*, chap. 3) on the *pukwi* lodges of one of their villages near Fort Leavenworth.

70.3. *pilot-cloth, cut in Quaker style*: Blue was not the usual Quaker color. Richard Henry Dana, Jr., in *Two Years before the Mast* (Sealts, No. 173), described the captain of the whaleship *Cortes* of New Bedford (chap. 7) as "a plain young Quaker, dressed all in brown;" the captain of the *Wilmington* of the same port (chap. 25) "was a slab-sided Quaker, in a suit of brown, with a broad-brimmed hat, bending his long legs as he moved about decks, with his head down like a sheep, and the men looked more like fishermen and farmers than they did like sailors."

71.6. *Captain Peleg. . . . Captain Bildad*: These "fighting Quakers" of Nantucket were both "named with Scripture names." The *Nantucket Vital Records* gave numerous instances of Peleg, but none of Bildad. See Genesis x, 25: "And unto Eber were born two sons; the name of one was Peleg; for in his days was the earth divided. . . ." Peleg (also mentioned in Genesis xi, 16, 1 Chronicles i, 19, and Luke iii, 35) was the fourth generation after Noah's son Shem and the sixth generation before Ishmael, Abraham's first-born. "The division of the earth in the days of Peleg," of which Sir Thomas Browne wrote in *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 6, chap. 6, was conventionally interpreted as the scattering of tribes after the confusion of tongues at the Tower of Babel, but the article on "Nations, Dispersion of" in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature* (1846) cited "respectable philologists" as arguing that "the event which singularly

marked Peleg's life was an occurrence in physical geography, an earthquake . . . some geological convulsion." Thus Melville's choice of the name Peleg may have gone beyond its appropriateness for one of joint owners of the *Pequod*, a man concerned with the division of profits in the assignment of *lays*, and had some reference to the natural catastrophe which overtook the ship. Bildad the Shuhite, whose name in Hebrew meant "old friendship or old love," was one of the three "comforters" of Job. His sanctimonious warnings of disaster in Job viii, xviii, and xxv, drew Job's reproof, xix, 2: "How long will ye vex my soul, and break me in pieces with words?" In *The Confidence-Man*, chap. 40, the ambiguous identification of the friends of China Aster's father—Old Plain Talk, Old Prudence, and Old Conscience—with "Job's comforters," left some doubt about Melville's final view of the Biblical Bildad. For account of Peleg Folger (name pronounced "Pillick"), who may have suggested the name for one of the owners of the *Pequod*, see note on *The grandmother of Benjamin Franklin* 109.27. Joseph C. Hart's *Miriam Coffin, or the Whale-Fisherman* (New York, 1834) also had a character named Peleg Folger.

72.28. *the transom*: a cross-beam bolted to the stern-post, used as a seat.

73.20. *receiving all nature's sweet or savage impressions*: Jay Leyda has called attention to a passage in Melville's marked copy of *The Works of Sr William Davenant Kt . . .*, London, 1673 (Sealts, No. 176) in Hobbes's "The Answer to the Preface" of *Gondibert*, on a page where Melville underscored other lines, p. 27: "For they that wanting the curiosity of furnishing their memories with the rarities of Nature in their youth, and pass their time in making provisions onely for their ease, and sensual delight, are children still, at what years so ever. . . ."

74.7. *worthy Captain Bildad*: The first American edition erroneously printed *Peleg* here; the first English had *Bildad*, which was obviously correct.

74.28. *the old Categut whaleman*: Apparently a whaleship named for the Kattegat, an arm of the North Sea between Sweden and the Danish province Jutland. See the Danish sailor's reference to "the isle fort at Cattedgat" on p. 173. From the full text of Ochter's narrative to King Alfred quoted in Extract 9, or from some other source, Melville may have known that there had been whaling in this region a thousand years before his time.

75.36. *profits called lays*: See Robert Crichton Wyllie's statement in the *Honolulu Friend*, quoted by J. Ross Browne, p. 544: "The ad-

venture is divided into *lays*, or shares, of which the captain's *lay* is generally one seventeenth of the whole; the first officer's, one twentieth; the second officer's, one forty-fifth; the third officer's, one sixtieth; the boat-steerer's, from one eightieth to 120th; and the common sailor's, from 120th to 150th." For best treatment of whaling economics in general, see Elmo Paul Hohman, *The American Whaleman* (New York, 1928), chap. 10: "Earnings and the Lay." His ship-mate Richard Tobias Greene said Melville got an advance of \$84 when he shipped on the *Acushnet*; see Jay Leyda, *The Melville Log*, p. 113.

79.17. *Ahab*: Like the name Ishmael, Ahab was seldom if ever used by the early New Englanders. Although there were instances of Lot and Absalom and the names of other unheroic Biblical characters, the Nantucket and New Bedford *Vital Records* to 1850 recorded no Ahabs. In Hebrew the name meant "the brother of the father" or "uncle or father of the brother," and it was applied to two characters in the Bible. The later Ahab, son of Kolaiah, was a false prophet associated with Zedekiah, condemned to be delivered to the king of Babylon and "roasted in the fire," according to Jeremiah xxix, 21-22. But Melville made it clear that he had chiefly in mind the seventh king of Israel after the division of the kingdom. This Ahab's story was told chiefly in 1 Kings xvi, 28-xxii, 40, with additional allusions in 2 Kings i, 1; iii, 5; viii, 8, 27; ix, 7-25; x, 11; xxi, 3-13; 2 Chronicles xviii, 19; xxi, 6, 13; and Micah vi, 16. For Melville's purposes the singly most important thing about King Ahab, the son of Omri, was that he "did evil in the sight of the Lord above all that were before him" and "took to wife Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal king of the Zidonians, and went and served Baal, and worshipped him" (1 Kings xvi, 30-31). According to John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature* (1846), the best scholarship of Melville's day commonly identified the Phoenician or Sidonian Baal with the Babylonian sun god. Elijah the Tishbite was the prophet who thrice warned Ahab; see note on *THE PROPHET* 91.2. Micaiah, however, gave the final warning, which Ahab rejected in favor of the word of the lying prophets that he would prove victor at Ramoth-gilead; see 1 Kings xxii, 8-29. Jezebel was for her royal husband something like the inciting force Fedallah was for Captain Ahab; she arranged the unlawful seizure of Naboth's Vineyard; see 1 Kings xxi, 1-20 and note on *Fedallah* 215.23.

Ahab's tyrannical usurpation of Naboth's paternal inheritance was one of the chief sources of early nineteenth century interest in the Biblical story; see, for example, in the entry for 29 May 1831 in

Eckermann's *Conversations of Goethe* the comment that Faust was "not unlike Ahab, King of Israel, who fancied he possessed nothing, unless he could also make the vineyard of Naboth his own," and casual allusions in Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, chaps. 48 and 232. Starbuck was Captain Ahab's Naboth. Although John L. Stephens, *Incidents of Travel in Egypt, Arabia Petraea, and the Holy Land* (1837), was more interested in the prophet Elijah than in the doomed king, he mentioned (Vol. 2, chap. 18) a visit to "the ruins of Sebaste, the ancient Samaria. . . . The capital of the ten tribes of Israel, where Ahab built his palace of ivory. . . ." If Melville knew either directly or through sermons based upon it the interpretation of Josephus, *Jewish Antiquities*, Book 8, sections 409, 418-420, this may have influenced his choice of the name Ahab: "It was Fate, I suppose, that prevailed and made the false prophet seem more convincing than the real one, in order to hasten Achab's end. . . . Now since there befell to Achab the fate spoken of by the two prophets, we ought to acknowledge the greatness of the Deity and everywhere honour and reverence Him, nor should we think the things which are said to flatter us or please us more worthy of belief than the truth, but should realize that nothing is more beneficial than prophecy and the foreknowledge which it gives, for in this way God enables us to know what to guard against. And further, with the king's history before our eyes, it behooves us to reflect on the power of Fate, and see that not even with foreknowledge is it possible to escape it, for it secretly enters the souls of men and flatters them with fair hopes, and by means of these it leads them on to the point where it can overcome them. It appears, then, that by this power Achab's mind was deceived so that he disbelieved those who foretold his defeat, he believed those who prophesied things that pleased him, and so lost his life. . . ." (H. St. J. Thackeray and Ralph Marcus, trans., Loeb Classical Library.)

It seems unlikely, however, that the Biblical story alone or the Josephus interpretation would have made Melville take the suggestion of an autocratic whaling captain he possibly got from Captain A—— of J. Ross Browne's *Etchings of a Whaling Cruise* and fill out the letters and the traits of character to create the Ahab of the Pequod. Considering the large influence of the book of Job in *Moby-Dick* (see note on *a Job's whale* 184.21), Melville's naming his whaling captain for the idolatrous king of Israel may well have been suggested by Milton's use of Job as the prototype of Christ and Ahab as the counter-type in *Paradise Regained*. In Milton's poem, God announced to Gabriel his plan for Jesus, I, 140-153:

"This Man, born and now upgrown,
 To show him worthy of his birth divine
 And high prediction, henceforth I expose
 To Satan; let him tempt, and now assay
 His utmost subtlety, because he boasts
 And vaunts his great cunning to the throng
 Of his apostasy. He might have learnt
 Less overweening, since he failed in Job,
 Whose constant perseverance overcame
 Whate'er his cruel malice could invent.
 He now shall know I can produce a man,
 Of female seed, far abler to resist
 All his solicitations, and at length
 All his vast force, and drive him back to Hell—"

After forty days in the wilderness, Christ was accosted by Satan disguised as "an aged man in rural weeds," but Jesus penetrated the disguise, and Satan addressed him in his own person, explaining, I, 368-376:

"I came, among the Sons of God, when he
 Gave up into my hands Uzzean Job,
 To prove him, and illustrate his high worth;
 And, when to all his Angels he proposed
 To draw the proud king Ahab into fraud,
 That he might fall in Ramoth, they demurring,
 I undertook that office, and the tongues
 Of all his flattering prophets glibbed with lies
 To his destruction, as I had in charge."

Milton's source for the first incident was, of course, Job i, 6-12; ii, 1-7, and for the second 1 Kings xxii, 20-22, and 2 Chronicles xviii, 18-21. To Satan's speech Christ replied, I, 424-430:

"What but thy malice moved thee to misdeem
 Of righteous Job, then cruelly to afflict him
 With all inflictions? but his patience won.
 The other service was thy chosen task,
 To be a liar in four hundred mouths;
 For lying is thy substance, thy food.
 Yet thou pretend'st to truth!"

Certainly, in whatever degree Melville may have conceived his whaling epic as a kind of nineteenth century Book of Job in which the captain's response to Leviathan and all it symbolized was diametrically opposed to the final response of the man of Uz, the name Ahab was an inspired choice.

The Satan of *Paradise Regained* did not contribute much to the character who was named after his most successful victim, but the earlier Satan of *Paradise Lost* must often have been in Melville's conscious or unconscious mind. Melville was later to name, in *The Confidence-Man*, chap. 44, as the three great "original characters in fiction" Hamlet, Don Quixote, and Milton's Satan. In the copy of Shelley's *Essays, Letters from Abroad, Translations and Fragments*, edited by Mrs. Shelley (1852), which Melville acquired in 1873 (Sealts, No. 468), he double-sidelined this passage from the "Defense of Poetry," Vol. 1, pp. 32-33: "Milton's Devil as a moral being is as far superior to his God, as one who perseveres in some purpose which he has conceived to be excellent in spite of adversity and torture, is to one who in the cold security of undoubted triumph inflicts the most horrible revenge upon his enemy. . . ." Henry F. Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, chap. 6: "The Influence of Satan," has presented a full account of the relation to this Miltonic original of Ahab and other characters in Melville. Most obviously, "the root of greatness and of woe, for Satan and for Ahab, was pride," as Pommer has pointed out, citing instances of Satan's pride in *Paradise Lost* I, 56-58; IV, 38-40; V, 664-665, and elsewhere, and making comparisons with Ahab's admission on p. 468 that he is "proud as a Greek god" and with the summary sentence, p. 512, after the Captain had mended the compass: "In his fiery eyes of scorn and triumph, you then saw Ahab in all his fatal pride." Pommer also has suggested that the "insufferable anguish . . . these spiritual throes . . . a chasm . . . opening in him, from which forked flames and lightnings shot up . . . this hell in himself," ascribed to Ahab on p. 199, derived from Satan's tormented lament, "Which way I fly is Hell; myself am Hell," in IV, 69-78. Ahab's "Sunset" soliloquy (chap. 37) also showed this torment as well as the more confident defiance of Satan in I, 105-109:

"What though the field be lost?

All is not lost—the unconquerable will,
And study of revenge, immortal hate,
And courage never to submit or yield:
And what is else not to be overcome."

Ahab's scar described on pp. 120-121 may have been in part suggested by the description of Satan's face, I, 600-601, which "Deep scars of thunder had intrench'd." In many details not susceptible to the easy drawing of verbal parallels, Ahab would seem to have been conceived in the tradition of Milton's Satan. It has been a commonplace of Melville criticism to point out the similarities; see, for instance, Walter Weber, *Herman Melville, eine stilistische Untersuchung* (Basel: Philographischer Verlag, 1937), p. 186, as translated by Pommer, p. 91: "Melville's most interesting figure, Captain Ahab, shows all the depth and breadth of his vision. Without further ceremony we may place Ahab among the greatest creations of all literature; he has a peculiar kinship with them all, but especially with the Greek Prometheus and the Miltonic Satan. One cannot on that account speak of borrowing, for this fruit of the deep art of symbolism is a supreme literary achievement, such as succeeds spontaneously and for only the greatest artists at the height of their powers."

The influence of Shakespeare in the book as a whole and particularly in this character was most apparent in the soliloquies. But it was a pervasive rather than a specific influence. Although Melville in his essay on "Hawthorne and His Mosses," published in the *Literary World*, 17 August 1850, Vol. 7, p. 127 (printed in Thorp, p. 334), deprecated "those mistaken souls, who dream of Shakespeare as a mere man of Richard-the-Third humps and Macbeth daggers," Ahab was closer to the two Shakespearean characters he named than to any others, and in his ivory leg had as distinguishing a mark as Richard. Melville most admired in Shakespeare "those deep far-away things in him; those occasional flashings-forth of the intuitive Truth in him; those quick sharp probings at the very axis of reality," and commented: "Through the mouths of the dark characters of Hamlet, Timon, Lear, and Iago, he craftily says, or sometimes insinuates the things which we feel to be so terrifically true, that it were all but madness for any good man, in his own proper character, to utter, or even to hint of them. Tormented into desperation, Lear, the frantic king, tears off the mask, and speaks the sane madness of vital truth." But these "flashings-forth" and "probings," this "sane madness of vital truth" came as often from other characters—Pip, Starbuck, Queequeg—as from Ahab, and most often from the narrator Ishmael. Ahab was "tormented into desperation" and "frantic" and he struggled to penetrate beneath the superficial surface. Still, as William Ellery Sedgwick has pointed out in *Herman Melville: The Tragedy of Mind*, pp. 133-134: "Ahab's heart struggles to restore itself to human ties, without which it must perish. We know this, but we seldom feel it.

A character that in many respects can stand comparison to King Lear, Ahab is not poignant like King Lear. . . . His tragedy inspires terror as does no work in the language outside Shakespeare. But it fails to inspire pity." Several passages Melville marked in his copy of Shakespeare's plays were pertinent to Ahab. He checked the speech of Enobarbus about Antony after Actium, *Antony and Cleopatra* III, xiii, 195-200:

"Now he'll outstare the lightning. To be furious,
Is to be frightened out of fear; and in that mood
The dove will peck the estridge; and I see still,
A diminution in our captain's brain
Restores his heart. When valour preys on reason,
It eats the sword it fights with."

He sidelined the words of Leonato in *Much Ado About Nothing* V, i, 20-31:

. . . for, brother, men
Can counsel and speak comfort to that grief
Which they themselves not feel; but, tasting it,
Their counsel turns to passion, which before
Would give perception medicine to rage,
Fetter strong madness in a silken thread,
Charm ache with air, and agony with words.
No, no; 'tis all men's office to speak patience
To those that wring under the load of sorrow,
But no man's virtue or sufficiency
To be so moral when he shall endure
The like himself."

Both the speech of Richard and Bolingbroke's reply were sidelined in *Richard II*, IV, i, 277-279; 292-293:

"Hath sorrow struck
So many blows upon this face of mine,
And made no deeper wounds?

• • • • •

The shadow of your sorrow hath destroy'd
The shadow of your face. . . ."

Beside Wolsey's long address to Cromwell, *Henry VIII*, III, ii, 440-457, Melville drew a sideline. The Cardinal's summation in the final three lines perhaps showed more remorse than Ahab ever felt:

"Had I but serv'd my God with half the zeal
I serv'd my king, He would not in mine age
Have left me naked to mine enemies."

Charles Olson in his article, "Lear and Moby-Dick," *Twice A Year*, Fall-Winter 1938, pp. 165-189 (reprinted with modifications in *Call Me Ishmael*, [1947] pp. 34-73) has most suggestively developed the relations between Shakespeare's plays, particularly *King Lear*, and *Moby-Dick*. Olson here published Melville's pencilled notes from one of the back flyleaves of Vol. 7 of the set of Shakespeare acquired in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460). This volume contained *Lear*, which was possibly the inspiration for Melville's notation:

"Ego non baptiso te in nomine Patris et
Filii et Spiritus Sancti — sed in nomine
Diaboli. — Madness is undefinable —
It & right reason extremes of one,
— not the (black art) Goetic but Theurgic magic —
seeks converse with the Intelligence, Power, The
Angel."

The fuller form of the Latin formula used in the book (p. 484) and also in the letter to Hawthorne 29 June 1851 and the effort to define madness were clearly an anticipation of *Moby-Dick*. Olson has undertaken to show how the different kinds of madness of Ahab and Pip both derived from *Lear*. Olson argues that the notation was made by Melville on a rereading of Shakespeare in the summer of 1850, about the time of writing of "Hawthorne and His Mosses." Considering the other notations, with apparently the same pencil, made on the same page or on the reverse of this same flyleaf—which Olson has not published—it seems more likely that all of the notes date from Melville's initial reading in this edition of Shakespeare in the spring and summer of 1849. For instance, it must have been before Jack Chase quoted, with reference to Ushant, the five lines about Chaucer's shipman in *White-Jacket*, chap. 86, that Melville made the note:

"A seaman figures in the Canterbury Tales.
With many a tempest had his beard been
shook."

And immediately after the Chaucer note, beginning in the same line, Melville added:

“Deep & Secret grief is a
cannibal of its own heart. — *Bacon.*”

Although this kind of cannibalism would best describe Ahab, it may have been noted here with reference to Jackson in *Redburn*, who was in many ways a kind of rehearsal for Ahab. Several of the other notes here seem to have peculiar pertinence to characters and situations in *Moby-Dick* as it was finally written (see notes on *Father Mapple* 37.7, and *Stubb* 115.3). The item “(Devil as a Quaker)” may have been an early hint for the character of Ahab, as also, written just above the passage Olson has quoted, the entry: “Ten loads of coal to burn him—/ Brought to the stake—warmed himself by the fire.” There was a Faustian echo in the entry: “A formal compact—Imprimus—First—Second./ The aforesaid soul. said soul &c—Duplicates.” Other items about “a ‘Society of D’s,” “a letter addressed to the D—‘My Dear D’—”, the receiving of “visits from the principal d’s” and “‘Terra Oblivionis’ ‘Hellites’” may have had some part in the working out of the diabolism of *Moby-Dick*, but seem to have been more clearly developed in the Society of the Apostles in *Pierre*. Since on the back end paper of the same Shakespeare volume, opposite some of the items already quoted, Melville wrote “Goethe’s Autobiography” and immediately below “Eschylus Tragedies,” it is by no means clear that the reading of Shakespeare was responsible for all of the notations. What these notes meant for Melville it is impossible to say, but obviously the ideas that inspired their making issued in more than one work Melville was to write after he pencilled them.

The notes that seem most applicable to Ahab may well have been intended for Jackson, who was himself a vague adumbration of the Ahab type. This ill sailor was first introduced in *Redburn*, chap. 12, where the narrator was somewhat terrified by his “unflinching face” and “his squinting eye . . . the most deep, subtle, infernal looking eye, that I ever saw lodged in a human head.” These features, his hairlessness, and the yellow coloring given by his illness made him for *Redburn* “the foul lees and dregs of a man.” Keenly aware of the “malevolence” of Jackson’s glance, *Redburn* was most impressed that his crewmates “all stood in mortal fear of him” and that “Jackson presumed to play the dictator.” In chap. 22, *Redburn* noted that Jackson seemed ailing “both in body and mind . . . and all the time, though

his face grew thinner and thinner, his eyes seemed to kindle more and more, as if he were going to die out at last, and leave them burning like tapers before a corpse." Jackson was "spontaneously an atheist and an infidel . . . a horrid desperado." Further, "he seemed to run amuck at heaven and earth. He was a Cain afloat; branded on his yellow brow with some inscrutable curse; and going about corrupting and searing every heart that beat near him." Going beyond fear and revulsion, Redburn came finally to reflect: "But there seemed even more woe than wickedness about the man; and his wickedness seemed to spring from his woe; and for all his hideousness, there was that in his eye at times, that was ineffably pitiable and touching; and though there were moments when I almost hated this Jackson, yet I have pitied no man as I have pitied him." Most of these phrases might have been written to describe Ahab, and the detail in chap. 23 of Jackson's initially befriending the six-year-old English lad (with its suggestion of the Ahab-Pip relation) added further to the parallel. But Jackson was revealed almost entirely through exposition; he was not dramatized, as was Ahab, and the interior of his mind and heart was not bared in soliloquy, but only vaguely hinted at by Redburn, who also merely reported of the effect of his dictatorship that after Jackson's death the sailors "never made the slightest allusion" to him, chap. 59: "Whether it was, that the severity of the bondage under which this man held every one of them, did really corrode in their secret hearts, that they thought to repress the recollection of a thing so degrading, I can not determine; but certain it was, that *his* death was *their* deliverance; which they celebrated by an elevation of spirits, unknown before."

The most telling comments on Jackson by Redburn (and by Melville) came in chap. 55: "Brooding there, in his infernal gloom, though nothing but a castaway sailor in canvas trowsers, this man was still a picture, worthy to be painted by the dark, moody hand of Salvator. . . . His cheek became thinner and yellower. . . . His snaky eyes rolled in red sockets. . . . Yet still in his tremulous grasp he swayed his scepter, and ruled us like a tyrant to the last. . . . The prospect of the speedy and unshunable death now before him, seemed to exasperate his misanthropic soul into madness; and as if he had indeed sold it to Satan, he seemed determined to die with a curse between his teeth." For Redburn the dying Jackson was another "diabolical Tiberius at Capreae; who even in his self-exile, embittered by bodily pangs, and unspeakable mental terrors only known to the damned on earth, yet did not give over his blasphemies but endeav-

ored to drag down with him to his own perdition, all who came within the evil spell of his power." The conclusion of this chapter gave Melville's theory about the representation of wickedness in literature: "And though Tiberius came in the succession of the Caesars . . . I account this Yankee Jackson full as dignified a personage as he, and as well meriting his lofty gallows in history. . . . For there is no dignity in wickedness, whether in purple or rags; and hell is a democracy of devils, where all are equals. . . . Though Milton's Satan dilutes our abhorrence with admiration, it is only because he is not a genuine being, but something altered from a genuine original. We gather not from the four gospels alone, any high-raised fancies concerning this Satan; we only know him from thence as the personification of the essence of evil, which, who but pickpockets and burglars will admire? But this takes not from the merit of our high-priest of poetry; it only enhances it, that with such unmitigated evil for material, he should build up his most goodly structure." And the final sentence perhaps explained why Jackson was merely a rough etching, not a fully drawn figure: "But in historically canonizing on earth the condemned below, and lifting up and lauding the illustrious damned, we do but make examples of wickedness; and call upon ambition to do some great iniquity, and be sure of fame." Surely this last remark was Melville's rephrasing of a passage from Johnson's criticism of *Lear* which Melville sidelined in his edition of Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460), Vol. 7, p. 134: "A play in which the wicked prosper, and the virtuous miscarry, may doubtless be good, because it is a just representation of the common events of life; but since all reasonable things naturally love justice, I can not easily be persuaded that the observation of justice makes a play worse. . . ." Melville commented disparagingly on his fourth book—"a beggarly 'Redburn'" (letter to E. A. Duyckinck 12 December 1849); "A little nursery tale of mine" (letter to R. H. Dana, Jr., 6 October 1849); "a thing, which I, the author, know to be trash, & wrote it to buy some tobacco with" (entry for 6 Nov. 1849, *Journal*, p. 23). These remarks may well have represented his disappointment in his failure to develop Jackson into a full portrait like Ahab. Clearly Melville did not know when he wrote *Redburn* how to suffuse a wicked character with the genius he saw in Milton's creation of Satan. When he had learned how and had himself created Ahab, he could write to Hawthorne, November 1851 (printed Thorp, p. 394): "A sense of unspeakable security is in me this moment, on account of your having understood the book. I have written a wicked book, but feel spotless as the lamb." Although he recognized that

some readers might label the book "wicked," Melville himself knew it was not, for Hawthorne's understanding proved that he had gone beyond "historically canonizing on earth the condemned below, and lifting up and lauding the illustrious damned" and had achieved, like Milton, a "most goodly structure." What he had said of Jackson, he had poignantly dramatized in Ahab: "his wickedness seemed to spring from his woe" and he was "ineffably pitiable and touching." "Abhorrence" had once again been diluted with "admiration," for Melville knew that "unmitigated evil" could not alone make a great literary figure. As Peleg announced, "stricken, blasted, if he be, Ahab has his humanities." Even Starbuck was compelled, by his own confession (p. 167), "to hate with touch of pity."

Ahab was more than a Byronic hero, although Melville drew freely on *Childe Harold*, *Cain*, and *Manfred*. He was more than the Caliph Vathek, hero of William Beckford's romance which Melville acquired in London (Sealts, No. 54), though there were many superficial resemblances. He was more than any of the briefly presented indomitable, self-revering characters Melville met with in his reading, such as the Maynote pirate captain Makari, who was a Samson-like galley slave in *Anastasius*, Vol. 1, chap. 6 (Sealts, No. 282). Ahab was also a more subtle character than Chillingworth in *The Scarlet Letter*, which Melville probably read sometime before *Moby-Dick* was finished; he was more like Ethan Brand, the story of whom came to Melville's attention too late to be more than confirmation—he read it in *The Dollar Magazine*, May 1851, Vol. 7, pp. 193-201, and commented on this character in his letter to Hawthorne June 1851 (printed Thorp, pp. 391-392). But the idea of the "unpardonable sin" was an old one, and Melville may have got it from St. Augustine; see *The Confessions*, Book 7, Sec. 7: "And I sought 'whence is evil,' and sought in an evil way; and saw not the evil in my very search."

In *The Confessions* also, Book 5, Sec. 3, Augustine told how "There had then come to Carthage, a certain Bishop of the Manichees, Faustus, by name, a great snare of the Devil, and many were entangled by him through that lure of his smooth language. . . ." But the Faustus Melville knew best was the character of Marlowe; he had bought a copy of this dramatist's plays in London in 1849 (Sealts, No. 348). Philip James Bailey, *Festus: A Poem* (1838) was widely read and discussed in the Duyckinck circle. Bailey announced his subject in the "Proem":

"Necessity, like electricity,
Is in ourselves and all things, and no more
Without us than within us. . . .

Free will is but necessity in play,—

. . . . And thus with man;
However contrary he set his heart
To God, he is but working out His will;
And, at an infinite angle, more or less
Obeying his own soul's necessity.
He only hath freewill whose will is fate."

The poem proper diluted the Faustian drama with amateurish and endless metaphysical dialogue; still many topics discussed would have been fuel for Melville's creative fire. Probably he knew also Goethe's Faust, but it was the creative theories of the German writer more than his actual creations which produced the impact on Melville's mind that resulted in Ahab. Perhaps even as early as spring or summer 1849, if that was when he made the annotations in Vol. 7 of the Shakespeare set, Melville was interested in Goethe's *Autobiography*, although he did not buy *Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life* until December of that year in London (Sealts, No. 228).

The German writer's analyses of the characters of Mahomet, Prometheus, and Egmont with a view to their use in literature must have greatly interested Melville, especially since Goethe had ultimately to abandon the drama he projected about the first and the poem meant to deal with the second, confessing that these personalities afforded no suitable material for his poetic art. Perhaps Goethe's failure merely spurred Melville to attempt Ahab, since many of the traits of the Nantucket whaling captain would seem to have been suggested by the analyses of the Arab prophet and the Greek god. Reflecting on his friends Lavater and Basedow, Goethe was led to conclude (Book 14) that "every highly-gifted man is called upon to diffuse whatever there is of divine within him. In attempting this, however, he compromises his high advantages, and finally forfeits them altogether. The heavenly, the eternal, is buried in a body of earthly designs, and hurried with it to the fate of the transient." Searching in history for a counterpart of his two friends, alike "worthy both of honor and of compassion," Goethe hit upon the plan "of taking the life of Mahomet, whom I had never been able to think an imposter, for a dramatic exhibition of those courses which in actual life, I was strongly con-

vinced, invariably lead to ruin much more than to good." He sketched out the acts and scenes, showing how in the fourth act Mahomet's "doctrine becomes a pretense rather than an end; all conceivable means must be employed, and barbarities become abundant." He even wrote some of the songs before he gave up the play, in which he "meant to represent the power which genius exercises over men of character and intellect, and what are its gains and losses in the process."

As he told the story in Book 15, Goethe's choice for the subject of his poem was "the old mythological image of Prometheus . . . who, separated from the gods, peopled a world from his own work-shop," because: "I clearly felt that a creation of importance could be produced only when its author isolated himself." (This latter sentence Melville marked in his copy.) Melville perhaps disagreed with the estimate of Milton which appeared on the following page: "The Titans are the foil of polytheism, as the devil may be considered the foil of monotheism, though, like the only God to whom he stands in contrast, he is not a poetic figure. The Satan of Milton, though boldly enough drawn, still remains in the disadvantageous light of a subordinate existence attempting to destroy the splendid creation of a higher being; Prometheus, on the contrary, has this advantage, that, even in spite of superior beings, he is able to act and to create." Goethe gave up "the Titanic, gigantic, heaven-storming character" in favor of the representation of "that peaceful, plastic, and always patient opposition which recognizing the superior power, still presumes to claim equality," but he kept "the bolder members of the race, Tantalus, Ixion, Sisyphus" as his saints, and pitied them. "The design of Egmont," Goethe wrote in Book 19, "was to show that the most firmly established institutions cannot maintain themselves against a powerful and shrewdly calculating Despotism." Melville's concern, however, was primarily with the elaborate analysis of the Demonic, which Goethe made in Book 20 to explain his concept of the central character of the play. (For the most significant passages of this analysis, see note on *that certain sultanism of his brain* 144.22.) Melville probably also noted with interest the discussion of Napoleon and the Demonic and of Mephistopheles as too negative to be Demonic in Eckermann's *Conversations of Goethe*, entries for 10 February 1830 and 2 March 1831.

Goethe's remarks on Napoleon, as well as his recollected enthusiasm for the lecture by Emerson he had heard a year before, may have led Melville to *Representative Men* (1850), published about the time he had finished his ship-board reading of Goethe. In Emerson's volume,

in the essay on Napoleon, "an experiment, under the most favorable conditions, of the powers of intellect without conscience," he would have found the truth he was to illustrate in creating a crew of Ahabs: "if any man is found to carry with him the power and affections of vast numbers, if Napoleon is France, if Napoleon is Europe, it is because the people whom he sways are little Napoleons." Perhaps Goethe's comments on his abortive play led Melville to explore further the biography of the Prophet of Islam. In the spring of 1850 the one thousand dollar prize offered annually by Edwin Forrest went to George H. Miles for *Mohammed, The Arabian Prophet. A Tragedy in Five Acts*, which appeared in book form in June 1850. Melville may have seen or read the play. In a preface Miles admitted the "accidental" resemblance of his play to Goethe's plan, except for variations in the final act, and quoted extensively from *Poetry and Truth*. For more serious treatment, Melville could have gone to the Rev. James L. Merrick, *The Life and Religion of Mohammed, as contained in the Sheeah Traditions of the HYAT-UL-KULOON* (Boston, 1850), which was objected to by the *Christian Examiner* for treating the prophet too favorably. Certain it is that in July 1850 Melville borrowed from his friend Duyckinck a copy of Thomas Carlyle, *On Heroes, Hero-Worship, and the Heroic in History* (Sealts, No. 122), the second lecture of which bore the title: "The Hero as Prophet. Mahomet: Islam." He may have consulted also the long article in Pierre Bayle, *An Historical and Critical Dictionary*. . . ., Vol. 4, pp. 26-49, which he had bought the year before (Sealts, No. 51). In attempting to prove that Mahomet was an imposter, Bayle presented an argument that would more likely have convinced Melville of his sincerity. But more credibly it was Carlyle who eradicated the contemptuous opinion recorded in *White-Jacket*, chap. 65, where the prophet was alluded to as "that old exquisite, Mohammed, who so much loved to snuff perfumes and essences, and used to lounge out of the conservatories of Khadija, his wife, to give battle to the robust sons of Koreish. . . ."

For Carlyle, Mahomet was "the genuine man, the brother of us all" and "a rough, self-helping son of the wilderness," with "total freedom from cant," "no *Dilettantism*," but "deadly earnest." The Koran, "the confused ferment of a great rude human soul," was not the work of an impostor, but of a man, who "with a kind of breathless intensity . . . strives to utter himself." In attributing to Mahomet "the eye that flashes direct into the heart of things, and sees the truth of them," Carlyle perhaps contributed the germ of Melville's phrase about Shakespeare in "Hawthorne and His Mosses": "those occasional

flashings-forth of the intuitive Truth in him; those short, quick probings at the very axis of reality." Carlyle saw in Mahomet "a flame that burns up all lower considerations," a desire for "something higher." Carlyle defended the prophet's refusal to heed his uncle's request to be silent: "Mahomet answered: If the Sun stood on his right hand and the Moon on his left, ordering him to hold his peace, he could not obey! No: there was something in this Truth he had got which was of Nature herself; equal in rank to Sun, or Moon, or whatsoever thing Nature had made. It would speak itself there, so long as the Almighty allowed it, in spite of Sun and Moon, and all Koreish and all men and things. It must do that and could do no other." Ahab, on p. 166, defied superior powers to swerve him and insisted: "The path to my fixed purpose is laid with iron rails, whereon my soul is grooved to run." His invocation earlier in this passage, "Now, then, be the prophet and the fulfiller one," may have been the bridge in Melville's mind which connected Ahab with Mahomet. Carlyle quoted the first part of Job xiii, 15, a verse Melville had sidelined in his Bible (Sealts, No. 62): "Though he slay me, yet will I trust him," by way of demonstrating that "Islam means in its way Denial of Self, Annihilation of Self." Although Ahab would doubtless have stressed (as Melville did in underlining it) the latter half of Job's verse, "but I will maintain mine own ways before him," his dedication of his life to one all-consuming purpose was in its way also a denial and annihilation of self, as Ahab himself well understood. Pointing out that there were "true Priests, as well as Baal-Priests, in our own day," Carlyle advised in *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123), Book 2, chap. 9: "close thy *Byron*; open thy *Goethe*." The two Carlyle books Melville borrowed and read at the same time. There was a certain irony that in following the Scotchman's advice and in sharing the Scotchman's sympathetic enthusiasm for the Arabian prophet, Melville should have chosen for his character the name of the most celebrated worshipper of Baal and should have created a Captain Ahab who was, like "the dark characters" of Shakespeare and like the prophet, another master of "the great Art of Telling the Truth."

To humanize this Promethean figure that he had created, equally with Egmont a "most fearful manifestation of the Demonical," Melville borrowed from the wisdom of life of the "Levanna and Our Ladies of Sorrow" section of De Quincey's *Suspira de Profundis* (probably bound with Sealts, No. 188). Ahab must have been the special charge of Our Lady of Darkness, of whom De Quincey said: "She is the defier of God. She also is the mother of lunacies, and

the suggestress of suicides. Deep lie the roots of her power; but narrow is the nation she rules. For she can approach only those in whom a profound nature has been upheaved by central convulsions; in whom the heart trembles and the brain rocks under conspiracies of tempest from without and tempest from within." And Our Lady must have followed with Ahab the injunctions De Quincey represented her as being given with reference to himself: "Suffer not woman and her tenderness to sit near him in his darkness. Banish the frailties of hope, wither the relenting of love, scorch the fountains of tears, curse him as only thou canst curse. So shall he be accomplished in the furnace, so shall he see the things that ought *not* to be seen, sights that are abominable, and secrets that are unutterable. So shall he read elder truths, sad truths, grand truths, fearful truths. So shall he rise again *before* he dies. And so shall our commission be accomplished which from God we had,—to plague his heart until we had unfolded the capacities of his spirit." Carlyle had written in *Sartor Resartus*, Book 2, chap. 9: "Man's Unhappiness, as I construe, comes of his Greatness; it is because there is an Infinite in him, which with all his cunning he cannot quite bury under the Finite." And Ahab rose again before he died to affirm, p. 565: "Oh, now I feel my topmost greatness lies in my topmost grief."

The success of Melville's characterization has been attested by more than the acclaim of critics. James M. Barrie admitted that his Captain Hook was modelled on Ahab; see Viola Meynell, "Herman Melville; *Moby-Dick*," *Dublin Review*, Jan. 1920, Vol. 166, pp. 96-105. Amabel Williams-Ellis in *The Exquisite Tragedy: An Intimate Life of John Ruskin* (1929) described the confused years of Ruskin's life in the 1870's: "He is Captain Ahab, pursuing he knows not what spirit of evil—what white whale—a being like Ahab himself, possessed by he knows not what strange genius." And these are merely samples of the kind of impact Captain Ahab has had. For further comment on the characterization of Ahab, see notes on *the intrepid effort of the soul* 105.22, *SPECKSYNDER* 142.24, and *they think me mad* 166.6; for an account of Fedallah's prophecy of Ahab's death see note on *Hemp only can kill thee* 492.32. The best account of other Melville characters who resemble Ahab is Henry F. Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, chap. 6.

79.28. *a grand, ungodly, god-like man*: In his copy acquired in 1855 (Sealts, No. 125) of Cervantes, *Don Quixote* (Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea, 1853), Melville put an asterisk at the end of following sentence from Part 2, Book 3, chap. 32: "I have already often said it, and now I repeat it, that a knight-errant without a

mistress is like a tree without leaves, a building without cement, a shadow without a body that causes it." And Melville made this marginal comment: "* or as Confucius said 'a dog without a master,' or, to drop both Cervantes & Confucius parables—a god-like mind without a God." See Harry Levin, "'Don Quixote' and 'Moby Dick,'" *Cervantes across the Centuries*, Angel Flores and M. J. Bernardete, eds. (New York, 1947), p. 220.

80.6. *the old squaw Tistig*: Mentioned again on p. 94. As Leon Howard has pointed out ("A Predecessor of *Moby-Dick*," *Modern Language Notes*, May 1934, Vol. 49, pp. 310-311), the prophecy and the prophetess may have been suggested to Melville by Joseph C. Hart's anonymous *Miriam Coffin, or the Whale-Fishermen* (New York, 1834), Vol. 2, chap. 10, in which Thomas Starbuck sailed on the *Leviathan* in spite of the prophecy of a half-breed squaw, Judith Quarry, that he was to die in the whale's jaws. When the whale of "prodigious size" he and his crew were chasing upset the boat, Starbuck tumbled into the "living tomb." The seventy-fifth Extract quoted a sentence and a half from this book, and "the Author of *Miriam Coffin*" was listed among writers on whaling in chap. 32. Another book by Hart, *The Romance of Yachting*, Melville refused to review for the *Literary World*; see his letter to E. A. Duyckinck 14 November 1848 and the editor's paraphrasing of it in the review actually published (2 December 1848, Vol. 3, p. 872)—both printed in Thorp, pp. 369-370, 429.

84.18. *plum-pudding voyage*: Lasting about six months and in Atlantic waters only, these voyages were regarded by nineteenth century Nantucketers as nothing but trial spins. One Nantucket captain about to embark on one was asked whether he wasn't going to kiss his wife good-bye. "What for," he muttered, "it's only a plum-puddin' voyage, ain't it?"

85.15. *when a man's religion becomes really frantic*: Compare the passage Melville bracketed in a volume the publisher Moxon gave him in London 21 November 1849 (Sealts, No. 317), Thomas N. Talfourd, *Final Memorials of Charles Lamb*, Vol. 2, p. 221: "The most important light, however, shed on Lamb's intellectual life by a knowledge of his true history, is that which elucidates the change from vivid religious impressions, manifested in his earlier letters, to an apparent indifference toward immortal interests and celestial relations. . . ." See also notes on *Cato* 1.16, and *Ecclesiastes* 422.25. Most of Ishmael's argument to Queequeg on this point in the following paragraph was omitted in the English edition.

87.19. *Here be it said*: This sentence and all but the final phrase of the next seven paragraphs were omitted in the English edition.

88.6. *thou young Hittite*: The children of Heth, or Hittites, mountain-dwellers near Hebron, had treated Abraham with respect, and from one of them he purchased the cave of Macpelah as the tomb for Sarah and himself; see Genesis xxiii, 3-16; xxv, 10. One of the tribes of Canaan who occupied Palestine until defeated by the Israelites under Joshua, Judah, and others (see especially Joshua xi), the Hittites were the symbol of the dispossessed as well as of the unorthodox religiously. Note the casual reference to Hittites and Jebusites in the latter sense in *Mardi*, chap. 62.

89.31. *remain not for a ye a Belial bondsman. Spurn the idol Bell, and the hideous dragon*: According to John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature* (1846), *ba'al* was a generic term for god in many of the Syro-Arabian languages, but never used by the Israelites for Jehovah. The Biblical scholarship of Melville's day inclined to equate the Tyrian Baal whom Jezebel induced Ahab to worship and the Babylonian Bel and identify them both as sun gods. *Belial* commonly appeared in the Bible in such phrases as "sons of Belial" or "children of Belial" to indicate idolaters in general; thus in 1 Samuel ii, 2: "And now the sons of Eli were sons of Belial; they knew not the Lord;" and in 1 Kings xxi, 10, Jezebel, wishing to incriminate Naboth so that Ahab might have his vineyard, "set two men, sons of Belial, before him, to bear witness against him, saying, Thou didst blaspheme God and the king. . . ." Bildad clearly referred here to the story of Bel and the Dragon, in the Apocryphal additions to the book of Daniel, in which Daniel cleverly proved to King Cyrus that the priests and not the idol of the Babylonian god Bel consumed the daily offerings, and by putting into the brass dragon's mouth lumps of pitch, fat, and hair, caused a chemical combustion so that "the Dragon burst in sunder." Bildad's hope was that Queequeg, like Cyrus, would forsake his "Pagan ways," but in his pedantic evangelism he failed to consider that the allusions would be meaningless for Queequeg, who was unable either to read or to write.

91.2. *THE PROPHET*: The prophetic stranger, who in accosting Ishmael and Queequeg behaved much like Coleridge's Ancient Mariner, was appropriately named Elijah, since it was the prophet of that name who figured largely in Ahab's history in 1 Kings. He first warned Ahab of the three years drought (xvii, 1), then presided at the dramatic demonstration of Jehovah's superiority over Baal by fire sent from heaven to kindle the sacrifice (xviii), and in

his third appearance before Ahab (xxi, 17-29) prophesied that dogs should lick his blood. Melville's Elijah appeared in chap. 21 for a second warning, but made no specific prophecy. Hence Ishmael could complain of "his ambiguous, half-hinting, half-revealing, shrouded sort of talk." The obscure reference to "this left arm of mine" was apparently intended to suggest that this Elijah spoke from experience, that he too was the victim of the fury of a whale, perhaps of Moby Dick, and may have been involved in the same tragic accident that maimed Ahab. Assuredly he had been personally involved with Ahab in some dire encounter.

92.21. *that thing that happened to him off Cape Horn*: Ahab's "Cape Horn fit" may have been suggested by the account of Richard Henry Dana, Jr., of his illness with a swollen face when he rounded the Cape in the *Alert*, in *Two Years before the Mast* (Sealts, No. 173), chaps. 31 and 32—which Melville praised in *White-Jacket*, chap. 24, as "unmatchable" and "written with an icicle." Perhaps by giving this locale to the fit Melville wished to suggest the symbolism explicitly developed in *White-Jacket*, chap. 26: "But, sail or landsman, there is some sort of a Cape Horn for all. Boys! beware of it; prepare for it in time. Graybeards! thank God it is passed. And ye lucky livers, to whom, by some rare fatality, your Cape Horns are placid as Lake Lemans, flatter not yourselves that good luck is judgment and discretion; for all the yolk in your eggs, you might have foundered and gone down, had the Spirit of the Cape said the word."

92.24. *Santa*: A seaport in Peru, where it was common for whale-ships to recruit. When the *Acushnet* was there 30 June 1841, one of the crew, David Smith, deserted. See Melville's list made in 1850 of what became of his *Acushnet* ship-mates and Captain Pease's affidavit at Lahaina, in Charles R. Anderson, *Melville in the South Seas*, pp. 34, 446.

92.25. *the silver calabash he spat into*: Ahab's act of desecration was a more serious offense and apparently less tolerantly received (perhaps because deliberate) than the error of the merchant captain on p. 58 of washing his hands in the "large stained calabash" punch-bowl at the wedding of Queequeg's sister, but it too was an anti-social act, a flouting of devout beliefs of other people.

95.2. *the Pequod was fully equipped*: For the best account of whaleship stores and expenses see Hohman, *The American Whaleman*, pp. 244-271, Melville had undoubtedly seen the account of whaleship expenses in J. Ross Browne, pp. 533-539.

100.12. *MERRY CHRISTMAS*: Melville sailed from Fairhaven on the *Acushnet* 3 January 1841, was probably at sea on that ship Christ-

mas 1841, and at sea on the *Charles and Henry* the following Christmas. Christmas 1843 the *United States* was in the harbor of Callao, Peru. But on his most recent voyage, Melville had sailed from Portsmouth, England, on the *Independence* 25 December 1849; see *Journal*, pp. 82-83. Although Carl Van Doren in "Lucifer in Nantucket," *Century*, August 1925, Vol. 110, p. 399, has referred to the *Pequod*, "which insolently sets sail on Christmas day," there seems no justification for his adverb, since the early residents of Massachusetts did not regularly observe Christmas as a holiday. See the entry for 25 December 1835, San Francisco, in R. H. Dana, Jr., *Two Years before the Mast* (Sealts, No. 173), chap. 26: "This day was Christmas; and, as it rained all day long, and there were no hides to take in, and nothing especial to do, the captain gave us a holiday (the first we had had, except Sundays, since leaving Boston), and plum-duff for dinner."

101.32. *the girls in Booble Alley*: Compare the comment on "the lowest and most abandoned neighborhoods frequented by sailors in Liverpool" in *Redburn*, chap. 39, "The Booble-Alleys of the Town": "The pestilent lanes and alleys which, in their vocabulary, go by the names of Rotten-row, Gibraltar-place, and Booble-alley, are putrid with vice and crime; to which, perhaps, the round world does not furnish a parallel."

101.36. *a small choice copy of Watts*: Isaac Watts (1674-1748), one of the most prolific and most popular writers of hymns used in most all Protestant churches. The words beginning "Sweet fields beyond the swelling flood," which Bildad sang a few paragraphs later in this chapter were from Watts, *Hymns and Spiritual Songs* (1707-1709), Book 2, Hymn 66, stanza 3, which normally was denominated by its first line, "There is a land of pure delight," though also known by its title, "A prospect of heaven makes death easy." The hymns and the paraphrases of the Psalms by Watts were normally bound together in the same volume, as in the compilation made by Timothy Dwight for the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church (Albany, 1804) and Samuel Worcester's *Christian Psalmody, in Four Parts; comprising Dr. Watts's Psalms Abridged; Dr. Watts's Hymns Abridged; Select Hymns from other Authors; and Select Harmony*. . . . (Boston, 1819). Both contained this hymn: Dwight, p. 209; Worcester, p. 87.

105.4. *The land seemed scorching to his feet*: Compare Ishmael's comment on p. 59. "How I snuffed that Tartar air!—how I spurned that turnpike earth!" This was a conventional figure of romantic restlessness, used also by Teufelsdröckh in *Sartor Resartus*, Book 2,

chap. 6: "Yet forward must I; the ground burnt under me; there was no rest for the sole of my foot." See also Thomas Hope, *Anastasius*, Vol. 3, chap. 4 (Sealts, No. 282—Vol. 2, pp. 202-204 of Melville's London-acquired edition), where Maallim Moorsa explained that "all-powerful habit" had made him adopt the "wandering mode of life," commenting: "I have lived a constant traveller, and a traveller, I suppose, I shall die."

105.10. *in the port is safety, comfort*: The dichotomy of land and sea, of port and open ocean, was a major symbol for Melville, as many critics have pointed out. The shore comforts received fullest advocacy on p. 415, "A Squeeze of the Hand," where Ishmael commented: "I have perceived that in all cases man must eventually lower, or at least shift, his conceit of attainable felicity; not placing it anywhere in the intellect or in the fancy; but in the wife, the heart, the bed, the table, the saddle, the fireside, the country. . . ." In reference to knight-errants in Normandy as reported by Froissart, Melville had remarked earlier, *Mardi*, chap. 24: "Yet no sensible man, given to quiet domestic delights, would exchange his warm fireside and muffins, for a heroic bivouac. . . ." The theme was common in Hawthorne, in the attitude of the honeymooners toward the search in "The Great Carbuncle," and in the explicit moral of "The Three Fold Destiny": "Would all who cherish such wild wishes but look around them, they would oftenest find their sphere of duty, of prosperity and happiness, within those precincts and in that station where Providence itself has cast their lot. Happy they who read the riddle without a weary world-search or a life-time spent in vain!" Besides these two stories in *Twice-Told Tales* (Sealts, Nos. 258, 259, 260), "Fire Worship" in *Mosses from an Old Manse* (Sealts, No. 248) forcibly made the Hawthorne point: "While a man was true to the fireside, so long would he be true to country and law, to the God whom his fathers worshipped, to the wife of his youth, and to all things else which instinct or religion has taught us to consider sacred." Melville's fullest symbolical application came in *Moby-Dick*, pp. 274-275: "For as this appalling ocean surrounds the verdant land, so in the soul of man there lies one insular Tahiti, full of peace and joy, but encompassed by all the horrors of the half known life. God keep thee! Push not off from that isle, thou canst never return!"

105.20. *Know ye, now, Bulkington?*: The English edition omitted both commas, thus changing the meaning.

105.22. *the intrepid effort of the soul*: Mindful of the advantages of the land, Melville still chose the spiritual independence symbolized by the sea, for which he found sanction in Psalm cvii, 23-24: "They

that go down to the sea in ships, that do business in great waters; These see the works of the Lord, and his wonders in the deep." The idea was expanded in several of the early Puritan journals included in Alexander Young, ed., *Chronicles of the First Planters of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay*, 1846. (For Melville's probable knowledge of this volume see note on *Pequod* 68.8.) Francis Higginson summed up the profit of his voyage to New England in 1629 (p. 237): "For we received instruction and delight in beholding the wonders of the Lord in the deep waters, and sometimes seeing the sea round us appearing with a terrible countenance, and, as it were, full of high hills and deep valleys; and sometimes it appeared as a most plain and even meadow. And ever and anon we saw divers kinds of fishes sporting in the great waters, great grampuses and huge whales, going by companies, and puffing up water streams. Those that love their own chimney-corner, and dare not go far beyond their own town's end, shall never have the honor to see these wonderful works of Almighty God." And Richard Mather's comments on his crossing of the Atlantic six years later included the recorded conviction (p. 465) after seeing "mighty whales spewing up water in the air, like the smoke of a chimney" that they were "of such incredible bigness that I will never wonder that the body of Jonas could be in the belly of a whale." Melville seems to have agreed with Goethe's second entry for 3 April 1787 in *Letters from Italy*, Vol. 2, p. 456 (Sealts, No. 228): "He who has never seen himself on all sides surrounded by the sea, can never possess an idea of the world, and of his own relation to it." In *Mardi*, chap. 82, Donjalolo proclaimed: "Oh Orol how hard is truth to be come at by proxy! . . . Truth dwells in her fountains; where every one must drink for himself." And in the same book, chap. 169 pointed the moral: "Those who boldly launch, cast off all cables; and turning from the common breeze, that's fair for all, with their own breath, fill their own sails. Hug the shore, naught new is seen. . . ." Affirmed in the essay "Self-Reliance" (1841), Emerson's doctrine went so far as to say that "if I am the Devil's child, I will live then from the Devil." The truth to Melville was equally apparent, and his justification of spiritual independence would probably have been as automatic and as casual as the passage he checked in *The Taming of the Shrew* (Sealts, No. 460) where Petruchio answered Hortensio's question of what happy gale blew him to Padua, I, ii, 50-52:

"Such wind as scatters young men through the world
To seek their fortunes farther than at home
Where small experience grows."

105.30. *O Bulkington! . . . straight up, leaps thy apotheosts!*: See notes on *the Grampus's crew* 14.5 and on *Pythagoras* 426.24.

106.2. *THE ADVOCATE*: The bulk of this chapter was derived in spirit and in ideas from Beale's eleventh chapter, "Rise and Progress of the Sperm Whale Fishery," pp. 136-153, much of it marked by Melville in his copy, but Scoresby, Vol. 2, pp. 117, 119, and J. Ross Browne, p. 539, also furnished suggestions.

106.4. *whaling . . . among landsmen . . . a rather unpoetical and disreputable pursuit*: When *Moby-Dick* was in its early stages, 1 May 1850, Melville wrote to R. H. Dana, Jr.: "It will be a strange sort of book, tho', I fear; blubber is blubber you know; tho' you may get oil out of it, the poetry runs as hard as sap from a frozen maple tree; —& to cook the thing up, one must needs throw in a little fancy, which from the nature of the thing, must be ungainly as the gambols of the whales themselves." (See Harrison Hayford, "Two New Letters of Herman Melville," *ELH, A Journal of English Literary History*, March 1944, Vol. 11, p. 79.) Melville's success was noted by the review in *John Bull* (London), 25 October 1851 (quoted Jay Leyda, *The Melville Log*, p. 431): "Who would have looked for philosophy in whales, or for poetry in blubber? Yet few books which professedly deal in metaphysics, or claim the parentage of the muses, contain as much true philosophy and as much genuine poetry as the tale of the *Pequod's* whaling expedition. . . ." The marine books of the day repeatedly showed the disrepute in which whaling was held. That Melville was troubled by this common attitude appeared variously in *Typee*, *Redburn*, *White-Jacket*, before the present book.

107.15. *Louis XVI of France . . . personal expense*: Beale, p. 144: "Louis XVI. fitted out six ships from Dunkirk on his own account, which were furnished at a great expense with a number of experienced harpooners and able seamen from Nantucket." The entire chapter (eleventh) in which this appeared was much marked by Melville. A paraphrase of Beale, adding the date 1784, appeared in Cheever, p. 25.

107.19. *pay to her whalemen in bounties*: Beale, p. 144: "five different *bounties* or premiums were offered, forming a scale of prizes for those who were so fortunate as to prove the five gradations of success,—the sum of five hundred pounds being the maximum, and that of one hundred being the minimum prize." p. 145: "In 1786 the bounties were increased to 700 £ maximum and 300 £ minimum."

107.20. *how comes it that we whalemen of America*: J. Ross Browne, p. 539, quoting from a speech by Joseph Grinnell of New Bedford in Congress in 1844: "I have prepared with great care a table from authentic sources, to show the consumption of domestic

and foreign articles by our whaling fleet, now consisting of 650 ships, barques, brigs, and schooners, tonnage 200,000 tons; cost at the time of sailing, \$20,000,000; manned by 17,500 officers and seamen, one half of whom are green hands when the vessels sail. By this table, it will be seen that the annual consumption by this fleet is \$3,845,500; only \$400,000 is foreign articles. . . . The value of the annual import of oil and whalebone in a crude state is \$7,000,000. . . ."

107.29. *I freely assert*: This and the next two paragraphs were Melville's reworking and heightening of a long passage quoted by Beale, pp. 146-148, from "a gentleman who is deeply conversant with the whole subject." In his copy of Beale, Melville sidelined the entire passage. See *Trying-Out*, pp. 96-98.

108.9. *Krusensterns*: Adam Ivan Krusenstern (1770-1846) was the first Russian to circumnavigate the globe. Melville knew well his *Voyage round the World, in the Years 1803-1806* (London, 1813).

109.17. *Who but mighty Job!*: Specifically here a reference to Job xli. See note a *Job's whale* 184.21.

109.19. *Alfred the Great*: In his translation, or paraphrase, into Anglo-Saxon of Orosius, *History of the World* (about 890), King Alfred inserted in chap. 1 an account of the voyages of Othere and Wulfstan. The story of Othere referred to the whale fishery of the northern seas: "he sailed along the Norway coast, so far north as commonly the whale-hunters used to travel." Melville probably learned of this whaling document through Scoresby, Vol. 2, pp. 6-10, Cheever, p. 21, or J. Ross Browne, p. 512. This same narrative from King Alfred supplied the ninth Extract.

109.23. *Edmund Burke*: It is uncertain when Melville read, if ever, the famous "Speech on Conciliation with the American Colonies," 22 March 1775, but the section which praised the New England whale fishermen was before Melville in J. Ross Browne, pp. 523-24, and Beale, pp. 142-43. Burke was quoted in the forty-second Extract.

109.27. *The grandmother of Benjamin Franklin*: Mary Morrell, wife of Peter Folger (1618-1690), who with her husband and family settled in Nantucket in 1663 and died there 1704. The Folgers were indeed a sea-faring tribe and the *Nantucket Vital Records* list some 27 who were lost at sea before 1850, three of whom were "killed by a whale," and one other "carried down with a line." His kinsman Timothy Folger (1732-1814), a whaling captain of Nantucket, furnished Franklin in 1769 with data about the Gulf Stream that enabled American ships to make the Atlantic transit faster than British ships. This was fairly common knowledge after Franklin's "Maritime Ob-

servations" had been published in this country in 1785, in France in 1787, and in London in 1806. A Nantucket character, Peleg Folger, who made his first voyage at 21 in 1751, was famous for Latin quotation and passages of poetry introduced into his sea journals. William Root Bliss has said in *Quaint Nantucket* (Boston, 1896), p. 132: "His name was pronounced Pillick, and it exists in an old crooning song of Nantucket fishermen, of which this fragment remains:—

'Old Uncle Pillick he built him a boat
On the ba-a-ck side of Nantucket P'int;
He rolled up his trowsers and set her afloat
From the ba-a-ack side of Nantucket P'int.'"

Melville may well have heard this song. And surely he must have known that it was Capt. Mayhew Folger, cruising for whales in the Nantucket ship *Topaz*, who found the mutineers from the *Bounty* on Pitcairn's Island in February 1808. In Joseph C. Hart, *Miriam Coffin* (1834), Vol. 1, chap. 1, pp. 48-49, Jethro Coffin spoke of his wife, the title character, as "a true descendent of Mary Morriel, who married the first Folger; and consequently . . . akin to Benny Franklin." Hart in a footnote called "Mary Morriel, the great-grandmother of Dr. Benjamin Franklin." Melville had the relation correct.

109.36. "*a royal fish*": According to Scoresby, Volume 2, p. 15, Melville's probable source, this was an Act of Edward II, in 1315, and a later one in 1324.

110.4. *triumphs given to a Roman general*: Melville used information found in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopaedia of Biblical Literature*, article "Whale," which referred to the bones of a whale skeleton left in Joppa "till the conquering Romans carried them in triumph to the great city." Marcus Aemilius Scarus (Aedile, 58 B.C.) brought the skeleton to Rome.

110.25. *a whale-ship was my Yale College and my Harvard*: See *Trying Out*, p. 101, for quotation from Nathaniel Ames, *A Mariner's Sketches* (1830): "Still I can look back to certain periods of my life with pleasure, and I continue to regard, as the happiest part of my existence, the three years passed at Harvard University, and the three and a half spent on board a man of war, two seminaries at which I had the honour to receive my polite education, and of which, in point of morality, I am inclined to prefer the latter." R. H. Dana, Jr. in *Two Years before the Mast* (Sealts, No. 173) made numerous references to his attendance at Harvard and his expectation of returning there, and on one occasion (chap. 11) professed himself

as much pleased to do well a job on shipboard as to receive "a 'bene' at the foot of a Latin exercise." In *Mardi*, chap. 3, Melville referred to Jarl as "witness of Salamanca, Heidelberg, or Brazen-Nose." In the present book, p. 392, whales were compared to "a mob of young collegians," as "reckless" and unpredictable as "a riotous lad at Yale or Harvard." Hawthorne and the Duyckincks, Melville's closest friends of this period, were college men, and grandfather Thomas Melville had been graduated from Princeton. Melville may well have been a bit resentful that fate had denied him higher education. At the famous dinner party at Dudley Field's in Stockbridge 5 August 1850, where Melville met Hawthorne, Oliver Wendell Holmes, another guest, had given hints of the Yale Phi Beta Kappa poem, *Astrea*, he was to deliver a few days later. Melville may at times have been annoyed by the pervasiveness of Harvard in conversation with the Shaws and their friends; see E. A. Duyckinck to his wife, Boston, 20 June 1854 (NYPL-D): "The Ch Justice, Mrs Melville's father is a fine study. They look upon him here as one of the lions & a huge sleepy lion gives no bad idea of him. Heavy, thickset, with an enormous head and though seventy four it is covered with a mass of auburn hair. To know a gentleman's age here the question is 'the class of what year in?' It dates from Harvard. Instead of a copy of the Court Guide you carry the Catalogus Universitatis Harvardianae. The Judge, as he told me, though I did not ask him, was of the class of 1800." More than likely Melville was here going beyond a simple, straightforward statement.

110.27. *POSTSCRIPT*: This chapter was omitted from the English edition. Melville did not state as a fact that English monarchs were anointed with whale oil, but his paragraph with its humorous logic implied that conclusion. The oil in the coronation ampulla was made from the bones of a fish and was derived from the innermost marrow to avoid any offensive "fishy" taste. Reading such information in a book or magazine, Melville would force the word fish into whale, even as he did later in making the fish avatar of Vishnu into a whale avatar, St. George's dragon into a whale.

111.26. *KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES*: Melville probably took his figure for the mates and their associated harpooners from the knight-heads, timbers on either side of the bowsprit, at one time commonly carved to represent knights. See p. 495: "Standing between the knight-heads, Starbuck watched the Pequod's tumultuous way. . . ." This was a common position for the mate; see R. H. Dana, Jr., *Two Years before the Mast*, chap. 23: "The mate then took his place between the knight-heads to 'twig' the fore. . . ."

111.27. *Starbuck*: This was a common name among the Quakers of Nantucket; Mary Starbuck had been largely responsible for the spread of that faith on the island (see note on *Nantucket* 61.23). And the family had long been prominent in whaling activities; see William Starbuck Mayo, *Kaloolah* (1849), chap. 1. According to the *Nantucket Vital Records to 1850*, a David Starbuck was "killed by a whale" in 1827; if Melville had heard of this fact, it may have suggested the fate assigned to the father and brother of the chief mate of the *Pequod*. But Melville's Starbuck was chiefly important for the symbolical role assigned him. William S. Gleim, *The Meaning of Moby-Dick* (1938), p. 53, has asserted that the chief mate "personified Platonism," and within limits, this seems an accurate interpretation, since Melville himself mentioned on p. 184 "the incompetence of mere unaided virtue or right-mindedness in Starbuck," and with probable allusion to the mate referred on p. 373 to "submission and endurance" as "the peculiar practical virtues" of Christianity. Steerkilt of the *Town-Ho* in chap. 54, who took matters into his own hands and acted, was in obvious contrast to the Starbuck of chap. 123, "The Musket," who "seemed wrestling with an angel; but turning from the door . . . placed the death-tube in its rack, and left the place." For Melville, Starbuck's failure to act was "his disastrous set of sun"—a phrase that foreshadowed the mate's "Dusk" meditation in chap. 38, immediately following the "Sunset" soliloquy of Ahab. For his Ahab, Starbuck was the counterpart of the Biblical Naboth. (See note on *Ahab* 79.17.) Applicable to Starbuck in his relation to Ahab was the speech of the Soothsayer to Antony which Melville sidelined in his copy of Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460): *Antony and Cleopatra* II, iii, 19-23:

"Thy demon, that thy spirit which keeps thee, is
Noble, courageous, high, unmatchable,
Where Caesar's is not; but, near him, thy angel
Becomes a fear, as being o'erpower'd: therefore
Make space between you. . . ."

Melville also underlined the King's identification of treason with "another fall of man" in *Henry V*, II, ii, 142, and the Queen's analogy of her husband's forthcoming deposition with "a second fall of cursed man" in *Richard II*, III, iv, 76. "The fall of valor in the soul" was Starbuck's chief interest for Melville, who in sidelining the speech of Edmund in *King Lear* V, iii, 97-101, added a note at the top of the page (Vol. 7, p. 124—Sealts, No. 460): "The infernal nature has a

valor often denied to innocence." With Carlyle, in *On Heroes, Hero-Worship, and the Heroic in History*, Lecture 1 (Sealts, No. 122), Melville clearly agreed: "It is an everlasting duty . . . the duty of being brave. *Valour* is still *value*. The first duty for a man is still that of subduing *Fear*. We must get rid of Fear; we cannot act at all till then. A man's acts are slavish, not true but specious; his very thoughts are false, he thinks too as a slave and coward, till he have [sic] got Fear under his feet. Now and always, the completeness of his victory over Fear will determine how much of a man he is." Finding in his hope, p. 167—"His heaven-insulting purpose, God may wedge aside"—an excuse for his own failure to act against Ahab, Starbuck came close to being, for Melville, the antithesis of Bulkington in chap. 23, a man who "worm-like . . . would craven crawl to land." For him Melville had infinite pity and understanding, but his admiration went to the man who could make with Edgar the affirmation he sidelined in *King Lear* V, ii, 9-11:

"Men must endure
Their going hence, even as their coming hither;
Ripeness is all."

Of the characters in *Moby-Dick*, Starbuck has been most superficially studied. Critics have commonly ignored him, or like William Ellery Sedgwick in *Herman Melville: The Tragedy of Mind* (1944), dismissed him as "mere intellectual coinage" which showed "the weakness of *Moby-Dick* as a representation of life." Sedgwick amplified his condemnation, p. 134; "In Starbuck we see where the whole of its humanity is wanting. He is simply a counterpiece. For when he described Starbuck Melville's imagination failed him, and it failed him because his sympathies did not lie in the direction of such characters." This was to give Melville too little credit and to ignore his deliberate taking into account, in the story of Steelkilt, what might have been the terrifying consequences if Starbuck had acted. See note on *Steelkilt* 242.29. For a more favorable view of Starbuck, see W. H. Auden, *The Enchafèd Flood* (1950), pp. 126-128.

114.15. *The great God absolute! The centre and circumference of all democracy!* This idea, expressed in *White-Jacket*, chap. 69, as "the common God of commodore and cabin-boy," appeared frequently in *Mardi*. See chap. 3: "King Noah, God bless him! fathered us all. Then hold up your heads, oh ye Helots, blood potential flows through your veins. . . . All things form but one whole; the universe a Judea, and God Jehovah its head. Then no more let us start with affright.

In a theocracy, what is to fear?" See chap. 75: "In all the universe is but one original; and the very suns must to their source for their fire; and we Prometheuses must to them for ours; which, when had, only perpetual Vestal tending will keep alive." See the long passage in chap. 119 which concluded: "Yet not I, but another: God is my Lord; and though many satellites revolve around me, I and all mine revolve round the great central Truth, sun-like, fixed and luminous forever in the foundationless firmament." Compare Dean Wren's note on Sir Thomas Browne's allusion to the "sphere of Trismegistus," in the edition Melville borrowed from E. A. Duyckinck (Sealts, No. 89) of *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 7, chap. 3: "Trismegistus sayd God was a circle, whose center, that is, his presentiall and immutable essence, from whence all things have their beinge, is every where, but his circumference, that is, his incomprehensible infinity, is noe where." Something of the idea appeared in "Aristocracy," the essay which was a reworking of the lecture Melville heard Emerson give in Boston 5 February 1849: "Call it man of honor, or call it Man, the American who would serve his country must learn the beauty and honor of perseverance, he must reinforce himself by the power of character, and revisit the margin of that well from which his fathers drew waters of life and enthusiasm, the fountain I mean of moral sentiments, the parent fountain from which this goodly Universe flows as a wave." Even closer to Melville's statement here and in *Mardi*, chap. 119, was Emerson's phrasing in "Thoughts on Modern Literature," *Dial*, October 1840, Vol. 1, p. 137, "that there is One Mind, and that all the powers and privileges which lie in any, lie in all; that I as a man may claim and appropriate whatever of true or fair or good or strong has anywhere been exhibited; that Moses and Confucius, Montaigne and Leibnitz are not so much individuals as they are parts of man and parts of me, and my intelligence proves them my own. . . ." This sentence was omitted in the English edition.

114.24. *thou just Spirit of Equality, which hast spread one royal mantle. . . . the stumped and paupered arm of old Cervantes*: Much of the latter half of this paragraph would seem to be Melville's transmutation for his serious purpose of the comic invocation in Laurence Sterne, *Tristram Shandy*, Book 9, chap. 25: "Gentle Spirit of sweetest humour, who erst did sit upon the easy pen of my beloved Cervantes; Thou who glided'st daily through his lattice, and turned'st the twilight of his prison into noon-day brightness by thy presence—tinged'st his little urn of water with heaven-sent nectar, and all the time he wrote of Sancho and his master, didst cast thy mystic mantle o'er his withered stump, and wide extended it to all the evils of his life—" Melville

mentioned reading a few chapters of Sterne's book 16 December 1849, *Journal*, pp. 71-72 (Sealts, No. 490).

114.26. *the swart convict, Bunyan*: Melville misassigned the twenty-second Extract to *The Pilgrim's Progress*, although Cheever, p. 70—his most likely source for it—correctly quoted it as from *The Holy War*. His copy of the former title, edition unknown, was once owned by Carol V. Wight of Chatham, Massachusetts, but was apparently destroyed in the New England hurricane of 1938 (Sealts, No. 95). Possibly it was the 1830 edition with the biography by Robert Southey, or a reprint of it, since Melville seems to have been most aware of the long periods (1660-1672, 1675) Bunyan spent in the Bedford jail for his refusal to discontinue his nonconformist preaching. Born the son of a tinker and himself almost illiterate except for his knowledge of the Bible and Fox's *Book of Martyrs*, Bunyan once spoke of his family as the "meanest and most despised of all the land."

114.28. *the stumped and paupered arm of old Cervantes*: Melville's surviving copy of *Don Quixote* was not acquired until 18 September 1855, but obviously he knew the book much earlier. In Part 2, Book 3, "The Author's Preface," Cervantes alluded to the maiming of his left hand in the naval battle with the Turks at Lepanto in 1571; Melville, like Sterne, mistakenly assumed the hand was amputated. The reference to Cervantes here was especially appropriate since his celebrated knight-errant and his squire Sancho may have suggested the figure for the mates and their harpooners. Melville's admiration for this author was well expressed in "The Piazza," *The Piazza Tales* (C.W.), p. 7: "Don Quixote, that sagest sage that ever lived." See Harry Levin, "'Don Quixote' and 'Moby Dick,'" in Angel Flores and M. J. Bernardete, eds., *Cervantes Across the Centuries* (New York, 1947), pp. 217-226, and later notes on *All visible objects* 161.34, and *They think me mad* 166.6.

114.29. *Andrew Jackson*: As President of the United States (1829-1837) at the time when the boy Melville was first gaining awareness of the significance of that office, Jackson was likely to remain a hero to the mature man. His early career as a soldier and his general temperament would also have appealed to Melville. Brother Gansevoort Melville's political activities in behalf of the Democratic candidate, Polk, in 1844 must have strengthened this appeal. In Nashville for a political speech 16 August 1844, Gansevoort paid a visit to Jackson at the Hermitage. Jackson died June 1845, after Melville had returned to the United States and had begun his career as author.

115.3. *Stubb*: The term "Cape-Cod-man" was loosely used, as R. H. Dana, Jr., explained in a note to *Two Years before the Mast*,

chap. 23, for "men from any part of the coast of Massachusetts south of Boston." This area supplied a large part of the personnel of whale-ships. The name "Stubbs" was common, according to the *Vital Records* of New Bedford and Nantucket, though Melville's shorter form—apparently made to suggest the blunt directness of the character—did not appear. Stubb was in clear contrast to his brother-in-law Bildad. Following Melville's reference on p. 184 to "the invulnerable jollity of indifference and recklessness in Stubb," William S. Gleim, *The Meaning of Moby Dick*, pp. 54-55, has said that the second mate "personified *Epicureanism*." Except for his reading of the signs of the zodiac on the doubloon, pp. 429-430, Stubb was seldom serious. Among the annotations on a back flyleaf in Vol. 7 of Melville's set of Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460) was perhaps an early germ in the characterization of Stubb: "It is better to laugh & not sin than to be [*sic*] weep & be wicked." (See note on *Ahab* 79.17 for account of hints for the characterization of the whaling captain in these annotations.) In *The Enchafèd Flood*, pp. 128-132, W. H. Auden has made a pertinent analysis of Stubb: ". . . the comic always involves standing outside a situation, and a man who makes a religion of the comic must be humorously self-regarding. . . . is unable to face suffering. . . . The difficulty about good-fellowship as a principle of social-conduct is that one's neighbor must also be a good fellow, *i.e.*, not a sufferer. Thus Stubb, who prides himself on his kindness, is the one who becomes guilty of destroying an innocent boy's sanity, for he cannot understand Pip's kind of fear, which cannot be laughed off."

116.15. *Flask*: As Ishmael pointed out on p. 70 by way of comment on Peleg's contempt for his experience in the merchant service, the Nantucketer was commonly "distrustful of all aliens, unless they hailed from Cape Cod or the Vineyard." This was especially true of whalers, since these three areas had a long tradition of experience in the whale fishery. A native of Tisbury, the third mate, according to William S. Gleim, *The Meaning of Moby Dick*, pp. 55-57, "personified *Stoicism*." With a name that was itself a coinage, and a nickname, King-Post, on top of that, Flask was best described in terms of "the pervading mediocrity" Melville ascribed to him on p. 184. Radney, the mate of the *Town-Ho*, was initially described as "a Vineyarder," p. 242, but later spoken of as coming from Nantucket, p. 243. In *Omoo*, chap. 82, the captain of the *Leviathan* was a Vineyard man, although the real Capt. Coleman of the *Charles and Henry* hailed from Nantucket. Tashtego, another member of the *Pequod's* crew also from Gayhead, and the old squad Tistig represented the Indian population of Martha's Vineyard.

117.19. *Tashtego*: According to John Warner Barber, *Historical Col-*

lections, being a General Collection of Interesting Facts . . . Relating to the History and Antiquities of Every Town in Massachusetts. . . . (Worcester, 1829), pp. 149-150, in the late 1830's there were still some 235 Indians living near Devil's Den and Devil's Bridge, Gay-head, in the town of Chilmark on Martha's Vineyard. The names given to the Indian communities by the white inhabitants of the island fitted with the superstition that Tashtego was "the son of the Prince of the Powers of the Air." Also this area was reputedly the first spot in New England to be visited by Norsemen in 1006. The place was named Gay Head from the variegated clays—red, blue, orange, tan, and black—here mixed with the white sandy soil. Among the "Memoranda of Things on the Voyage" from Portsmouth to New York in January 1850, Melville noted: "Indian (Gay-Head) Sweetheart flogged;" see *Journal*, pp. 84, 170. Apparently this was an allusion to some Gayhead legend, which was not, however, to figure in *Moby-Dick*. W. H. Auden, *The Enchafèd Flood*, p. 124, has pointed out that the four harpooners are representatives of the four non-white Pagan races, and has given an elaborate analysis of their roles in the voyage of the *Pequod*.

117.39. *Daggoo . . . an Ahasuerus*: Melville may have chosen the name of the third harpooner with awareness that current scholarship derived the name of the Philistine god in Samson's time, Dagon, from the Hebrew word "dag," which was also used in the book of Jonah for the whale or sea monster that swallowed up the prophet; see article on "Dagon" in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature*. See also *Paradise Lost* I, 462-463:

"Dagon his name, sea-monster, upward man
And downward fish. . . ."

In *Samson Agonistes*, 13, Milton called him the "sea-idol" of the Philistines. Ahasuerus was the Persian and Median King whose Hebrew queen saved her kinsman Mordecai and the rest of her race from the designs of Haman in the book of Esther. He was referred to casually in *Mardi*, chaps. 117 and 181, the symbol of luxury or imperial dignity. Dante mentioned him in the *Purgatory*, Canto 17, lines 28-30. Although Melville's references do not depend upon his identification with any specific Persian monarch, Melville knew Sir Thomas Browne's attempt to decide between Artaxerxes Longimanus and Artaxerxes Mnemon as his original in *The Garden of Cyrus*, chap. 1 (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90). Kitto's *Cyclopedia* identified him with Xerxes. Ahasuerus was also the name of the Wandering Jew, to

whose story Goethe had devoted several paragraphs in *Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life* (Sealts, No. 228), Book 15; he was introduced also by Shelley as a complainer against deity in *Queen Mab*, Canto 7, and as a prophet of the ultimate triumph of good in *Hellas*.

118.35. *Isolatoos . . . not acknowledging the common continent of men*: The captain of the Pequod was the chief *Isolato*; of him Melville wrote on p. 150: "socially, Ahab was inaccessible. Though nominally included in the census of Christendom, he was still an alien to it." And of himself he remarked on p. 545: "Ahab stands alone among the millions of the peopled earth, nor gods nor men his neighbors!" The egocentric isolation of the crew was in part a matter of temperament, but it was strengthened by the personal magnetism of Ahab. In the essay "Aristocracy," which was a reworking of the lecture Melville heard 5 February 1849, Emerson insisted: "You must, for wisdom, for sanity, have some access to the mind and heart of the common humanity." A closer source may have been the "Meditation" section of John Donne's *Devotion XVII*: "The church is catholic, universal, so are all her actions; all that she does belongs to all. When she baptizes a child, that action concerns me; for that child is thereby connected to that head, which is my head too, and ingrafted in that body, whereof I am a member. And when she buries a man, that action concerns me; all mankind is of one author, and is one volume. . . . No man is an island, entire of itself; every man is a piece of the continent, a part of the main; if a clod be washed away by the sea, Europe is the less, as well as if a promontory were, as well as if a manor of thy friend's or of thine own were; any man's death diminishes me, because I am involved in mankind, and therefore never send to know for whom the bell tolls; it tolls for thee. . . ." Although considered largely a religious writer, and almost ignored as a poet, John Donne was widely read in the middle nineteenth century, especially by people like the Duyckincks who made something of a hobby of seventeenth century divines. The six volumes of Henry Alford, ed., *The Works of John Donne* (London, 1839) were not in the Duyckinck library, which did, however, contain two seventeenth century items of this author and one eighteenth century item, an 1840 edition of *Selections*, and a copy of *Devotions* (London, 1840), which was probably a special issue of Vol. 3 of the collected works of the year before. See also note on *A BOSOM FRIEND* 48.24 and R. E. Watters, "Melville's 'Isolatoos,'" *P.M.L.A.*, December 1945, Vol. 60, pp. 1138-1148.

118.38. *An Anacharsis Cloutz deputation*: The Prussian Baron Jean Baptiste Cloots (1755-1794) changed his name to Anacharsis

and styled himself "Orator of the Human Race." Thomas Carlyle in *The French Revolution* (1837), Book 8, chap. 10, spelling the name with a z, described the baron's appearance before the French National Assembly 19 June 1790 with representatives of "the Collective sinful Posterity of Adam," gathered from the coffeehouses, soirées, and dives of Paris—Swedes, Spaniards, Polacks, Turks, Chaldeans, Greeks, Mesopotamians—"come to claim place in the grand Federation, having an undoubted interest in it." "'Our ambassador titles,' said the fervid Cloutz, 'are not written on parchment, but on the living hearts of men.' These whiskered Polacks, long flowing turbaned Ishmaelites, astrological Chaldeans, who stand so mute here, let them plead with you, august Senators, more eloquently than eloquence could. They are the mute representatives of their tongue-tied, befettered, heavy-laden Nations; who from out of that dark bewilderment gaze wistful, amazed, with half-incredulous hope, toward you, and this bright light of a French Federation, bright particular daystar, the herald of a universal day." Melville seems to have shared Carlyle's enthusiasm: "But let extreme Patriotism rejoice, and chiefly Anacharsis and Mankind; for now it seems to be taken for granted that one Adam is Father of us all" In *The Confidence-Man*, chap. 2, Melville compared the passengers on the Mississippi steamer *Fidèle* to "a piebald parliament, an Anacharsis Clouts congress of all kinds of that mutiform pilgrim species, man;" and in *Billy Bud*, chap. 1, the spectators of the dancing negro sailor in Liverpool were "such an assortment of tribes and complexions as would have well fitted them to be marched up by Anacharsis Clouts before the bar of the First French Assembly as Representatives of the Human Race."

120.33. *Cellini's cast Perseus*: The bronze statue of Perseus holding the head of Medusa now in the Loggia dei Lanzi in Florence, by Benvenuto Cellini (1500-1571). Legend maintained it was made for the Medici, who allegedly claimed descent from Perseus, to symbolize their conquest of Italy as Perseus conquered Medusa. See p. 360: "The gallant Perseus, a son of Jupiter, was the first whalerman." It was appropriate that Ahab should be compared to "the prince of whalermen," who with a single harpoon killed the whale that menaced Andromeda.

120.36. *a slender rod-like mark*: Melville's analogy between Ahab's distinguishing mark and the "perpendicular seam" made in a tree by lightning had several literary parallels but was most probably suggested by the big elm in the park at Pittsfield of which Joseph E. A. Smith said in his *History of Pittsfield* (Springfield, 1876), Vol. 1, p. 36: "in 1841, the lightning scored a ghastly wound down

its tall, straight trunk, and began to dry up its life-blood. Limbs began to fall away from it from time to time; and the thunderbolt again scathed it." See the suggestion for a seascape by "the dark, moody hand" of Salvator Rosa in *Redburn*, chap. 55: "this Jackson's would have been the face to paint for the doomed vessel's figure-head, seamed and blasted by lightning." Melville's intention was apparently a vague implication that Ahab bore the mark of Cain or the mark of the Beast of Revelations. See the analogy of Ahasuerus, the Wandering Jew, in Shelley's *Queen Mab*, Canto 7, lines 259-261:

"Even as a giant oak, which Heaven's fierce flame
Had scathed in the wilderness, to stand
A monument of fadeless ruin there."

123.2. *ENTER AHAB; TO HIM, STUBB*: The dramatic form of the chapter title here and of numerous other chapters (notably 37, 38, 39, 40) was one of the devices Melville adapted from the numerous plays he read. It was often associated with a peculiarly modern kind of soliloquy. See N. B. Fagin, "Herman Melville and the Interior Monologue," *American Literature*, January 1935, Vol. 6, pp. 433-434: "as Melville used it, its dramatic form still clings to it, for each chapter is prefaced by a statement of setting and character."

123.4. *the bright Quito spring*: The capital of Ecuador, almost exactly on the Equator. See "Scenes in South America," *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge*, Jan. 1836, Vol. 2, pp. 201-202: "Vegetation never ceases; and even in the wet seasons, the mornings and evenings are clear and beautiful. It is sometimes called *evergreen* Quito. Standing on an eminence, the spectator views the tints of spring, summer, and autumn, all blended." See p. 428 for reference to Ecuador as "a country planted in the middle of the world, and beneath the great equator, and named after it . . . midway up the Andes, in the unwaning clime that knows no autumn."

123.7. *crystal goblets of Persian sherbet*: In the Persian and Arabian tales, in Sir Walter Scott's account of Saladin's feast in *The Talisman* and in other novels with Eastern background, Persian sherbet was a common detail of local color. On their holy visits to Mecca, Persian nobles often brought snow from their native mountains for the making of sherbet.

125.17. *Tic-Dolly-row*: Spasmodic neuralgia of the face, *tic douloureux*.

126.8. *Lighting the pipe*: See *Mardi*, chap. 121, "They Regale Themselves with Their pipes," where Taji and his four Mardian com-

panions each had his appropriately shaped pipe, "for, like a good wife, a pipe is a friend and companion for life." The sharing of a pipe was one of the rituals of friendship between Queequeg and Ishmael on pp. 51 and 54. Thus Ahab's throwing away his pipe in this scene was the sign of his giving in to his demon and breaking "the magnetic chain of humanity." Himself a smoker, Melville regarded smoking with great pleasure and used it often in his writing as the symbol of comfort and security; see his most forthright celebration of the delights of tobacco in his poem "Herba Santa," *Collected Poems* (C.W.), pp. 236-238.

127.2. *QUEEN MAB*: See *White-Jacket*, chap. 65 for reference to Shelley's poem of this name. Melville more likely had in mind here Mercutio's comment on Romeo's dream, *Romeo and Juliet* I, iv, 53-54, 58:

"O, then, I see Queen Mab hath been with you.
She is the fairies' midwife, and she comes

• • • • •

Over men's noses as they lie asleep."

See also Byron's poem about the *Bounty* mutiny, *The Island* I, vii, 11:
"The ocean Mab, the fairy of the sea."

129.16. *The classification of the constituents of a chaos*: See Melville's classification "of the Chondropterygii, and other uncouth hordes infesting the South Seas," *Mardi*, chap. 13: Devil Fish, Bone Shark, Brown Shark, Blue Shark, Tiger Shark, White Shark, Black Fish, Killers and Thrashers. See also Larry's classification of whales, *Redburn*, chap. 21: Sulphur-bottoms, Hump-backs, Fin-backs, Greenland whales, Right Whales, Crinkum-crankum whales. Melville was more serious here; but still inclined to poke fun at the "heathenish names" and "outlandish appellations" customarily bestowed by erudite naturalists, he took the attitude he expressed about the sword-fish, *Mardi*, chap. 32: "But I waive for my hero all these cognomens, and substitute a much better one of my own: namely, the Chevalier." Besides the more professional authorities he consulted specifically for *Moby-Dick*, Melville may have known the brief classification of whales in Crevecoeur's *Letters from an American Farmer*, Letter 6 (see note on *Nantucket* 61.23 for Melville's possible knowledge of this book), or the more expert one, closer to Melville's own manner, by the anonymous author of "The Whale, and Whale Catching," *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge*, Sept. 1835, Vol. 2, pp. 5-7. This latter writer twice compared the Black or

Right whale to an ox and further commented: "The upper jaw opens at least fifteen feet in length, and is provided with over five hundred laminae, or slabs, of thin black bone, which are hairy on the inner side, and when seen without, have the appearance of a Venetian blind, placed perpendicularly." Of the Sperm whale he remarked: "It is the monarch of the ocean, and probably the leviathan of Job." An editorial note explained that the article was written by "a sturdy, but well educated young man of Massachusetts, who had been a whaling voyage." Cetology is even today a field with vast areas of ignorance (the *Discovery* expeditions into the Antarctic in the 1920's, and subsequently, have done most to replace conjecture by knowledge); it was much more so in Melville's day. But Melville need not have read all the whaling authorities to realize this; he found it in Beale, who said, p. 9: "Great contradictions and dissensions have also at various times originated among naturalists, relative to the number of the species of this whale." Beale stressed the real ignorance of writers like "Green, Aldrovandus, Willoughby, Rondelet, Artedi, Ray, Sibbald, Linnaeus, Brisson, Marten." He then praised Lacépède as "the first naturalist who endeavoured to introduce order into this department of zoology, yet even he has entirely failed in giving a correct account of this cetacean." Beale repeated emphatically "the utter confusion which exists among the historians of this animal." While specifying the differences among accounts by Brisson, Linnaeus, Bonaterre, Lacépède, Desmarest, the Cuviers, and others, Beale himself refused to go very far with any classification system. With the doctors disagreeing in this way, Melville the layman prudently adopted the humorous semi-literary system, but arranged his materials with Bennett, Scoresby, and Beale in mind. See *Trying-Out*, pp. 135-142, and Sumner W. D. Scott, *The Whale in Moby-Dick*, unpublished University of Chicago doctoral dissertation, pp. 89-101.

129.17. *the best and latest authorities*: These four quotations strikingly illustrate Melville's "borrowing" practice. The implication of his citations was that he had read the four authorities (and the later ones) in question. But the four quotations had appeared in Beale, on a special page before the title-page, so that Melville's research, here, went no farther than his much used copy of Beale's *Natural History of the Sperm Whale*.

130.2. *Many are the men . . . written of the whale*: No especially useful purpose could be served here by giving a bibliographical entry for each author mentioned in this list. They were, to be sure, standard writers, but the list does not represent *all* the most significant authors, and what is more important, Melville himself quite obviously did not

know all the authors at firsthand. Many of the names were extracted from sources like Beale or Browne. The finest bibliography of whaling literature for the Melville student to consult is Joel Asaph Allen, "Preliminary List of Works and Papers Relating to the Mammalian Orders Cete and Sirenia," *Bulletin of the United States Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories* (1881), Vol. 6, pp. [399]-562. Good general bibliographies of books since Melville are in Elmo Paul Hohman, *The American Whaleman* (New York, 1928), and James Travis Jenkins, *Whales and Modern Whaling* (London, 1932).

130.10. *Olmstead*: Melville's misspelling of Francis Allyn Olmsted, author of *Incidents of a Whaling Voyage* (1840).

130.31. *Charing Cross*: The center of London, the zero point from which mileage was measured, marked at one time by a statue of Queen Eleanore erected by Edward I, later by a statute of Charles II; here took place all public hangings; here all royal proclamations, including the accession of a new monarch, were announced.

130.33. *the great sperm whale now reigneth!*: Compare Beale, p. 2: "The Greenland whale, or *Balaena mysticetus*, has so frequently been described in popular manner, that the public voice has long enthroned him as monarch of the deep, and perhaps the dread of disturbing such weighty matters as a settled sovereignty and public opinion, may have deterred those best acquainted with the merits of the case from supporting the more legitimate claims of his southern rival to this pre-eminence." Melville was not deterred, but was actually provoked, probably, by such celebrations of the Right Whale as he found in Scoresby (Melville's *bête noir*).

131.23. *The awful tauntings in Job*: Job xli, 4, 9. See note on *a Job's whale* 184.21.

132nl. *I am aware*: The naturalist who included Lamantins and Dugongs among whales was Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 152: "in their number, the *Lamantins* and *Dugongs*. These whales do not blow or spout."

133.4. *divide the whales into three primary BOOKS*: The literary twist to this was from Melville the writer, but the triadic classification was probably suggested by Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 152: "Cetaceans are naturally divided into three distinct tribes, or families."

135.3. *His great lips*: Quoting a paragraph on the Fin-Backed Whale from Shaw's *Natural History*, J. Ross Browne, p. 572, had: "the lips are marked by a number of oblique wrinkles or plates, in such a manner as to resemble, in some degree, the appearance of a large twisted rope."

135.12. *this gnomon-like fin . . . that Ahaz dial*: Cheever, p. 97, described this whale as having "a large fin on the ridge of its back,

looking just like the gnomon of a dial." With the sun-dial image once in his mind, Melville here apparently recalled a verse he had checked in his Bible (Sealts, No. 62), Isaiah xxxviii, 8: "Behold, I will bring again the shadow of the degrees, which is gone down in the sundial of Ahaz, ten degrees backward. So the sun returned ten degrees, by which degrees it was gone down." This was the divine sign to Hezekiah, son of Ahaz, that he should be healed and have fifteen years added to his life.

135.28. *several varieties*: Several of these were described in J. Ross Browne, p. 573, who had taken them from Shaw's *Natural History*.

136.33. *the Elephant and Castle whale*: Melville was probably familiar with illustrations of the fighting elephants of the East equipped with huge "castles" on their backs to carry the native warriors. Such illustrations were common in medieval manuscripts, particularly of the bestiaries. The elephant and castle was also a common motif for capitals and cathedral carvings in England. The most famous of the inns which used this device for their sign gave its name to a London borough, which Melville visited 15 Nov. 1849; see *Journal*, p. 32. In England, the use of this device was commonly in commemoration of the Danish order of the Elephant and Castle granted to a British king.

138.12. *everlasting Mephistophelean grin*: See Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 233: "the angles of the lips [of the Black Fish] are curved upwards, giving the physiognomy of the animal an innocent, smiling expression." The picture (reproduced in *Trying-Out*, facing p. 17) accompanying Bennett's text emphasized the grin to a comical extent which Melville could not miss. Melville's entire account of the Black Fish was clearly taken from Bennett pp. 233-35; for example: "Sperm-whalers often attack this species with their boats, in order to obtain a supply of oil for ship consumption. Some risk, however, attends their capture; for, when harpooned, they will sometimes leap into a boat, and instances have occurred of whalers losing their lives by this accident. A Black-Fish, of average size, will produce from thirty to thirty-five gallons of an oil which, in its most recent state, has a dark colour and an unpleasant odour."

138.37. *Charley Coffin*: Most of the Narwhale information was taken from Scoresby, who also included a plate showing the Narwhale (reproduced in *Trying-Out*, facing p. 17). Discussing the possible use of the Narwhale's horn, Scoresby had said, Vol. 1, pp. 491-492: "it is not improbable but it may be used in piercing thin ice for the convenience of respiring, without being under the necessity of retreating into open water. It cannot, I conceive, be used as many

authors have stated, in raking their food from the bottom of the sea." Scoresby's *Journal of a Voyage to the Northern Whale-Fishery* (Edinburgh, 1823), which Melville certainly knew, had excellent and amusing information about the Narwhale, pp. 75, 76, 132-142, which Melville surprisingly did not seem to utilize. See *Trying-Out*, pp. 133-134.

139.16. *Black Letter*: See Hakluyt's *Principal Navigations*, for account of Frobisher's voyages. The farewell waving of Queen Elizabeth was upon the departure for the first voyage; the presentation of the "long horn of the Narwhale" was upon the return from the second voyage. Vol. 3 (1600), pp. 29 and 65.

140.14. *Mealy-mouthed Porpoise*: Facts taken by Melville from Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 235-36.

140.24. *the common porpoise*: Melville's paragraph was made from Olmsted, pp. 90-93, especially p. 92: "Porpoise meat is of a dark color, resembling the liver of land animals, and is as tender as the tenderest of beef steak. The lower jaw of the porpoise contains a quantity of very fine oil lodged in the cavities where it unites with the skull bone. It is used by watchmakers and others for lubricating delicate machinery. The oil extracted from the blubber is also of very superior quality, but a single porpoise rarely yields over a gallon and a half."

142.11. *mere sounds, [full of Leviathanism, but signifying nothing*: A clear echo of *Macbeth* V, vi, 27-28. Perhaps because he very early knew this play well, Melville did not mark it in his edition of Shakespeare acquired in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460). In *Mardi* there were references to "old Scone in the days of Macbeth" (chap. 60) and to Banquo's ghost (chap. 68). *Redburn*, chap. 49: "Again—what blasted heath is this?—what goblin sounds of Macbeth's witches?" and the present book, p. 11, "It's a blasted heath" were recollections of "this blasted heath" where the witches met Macbeth (I, iii, 77). And the sentence on p. 553—"What death knell rings in it, that old Ahab shakes as if he were the belfry?"—clearly reflected the mood of Shakespeare's hero in II, i, 62-64:

"I go, and it is done; the bell invites me.
Hear it not, Duncan; for it is a knell
That summons thee to heaven or to hell."

142.16. *the great Cathedral of Cologne . . . with the crane*: Melville visited the cathedral 9 December 1849 and entered in his *Journal*, p. 62: "The structure itself is one of the most singular in the world. One transept is nearly complete—in new stone, and

strangely contrasts with the ruinous condition of the vast unfinished tower on one side." Melville's allusion here may have owed something to Goethe's meditation in *Truth and Poetry; From My Own Life*, Book 14 (Sealts, No. 228): ". . . when alone I always gloomily lost myself in this world-ediface, thus checked in its creation while far from complete. Here, too, was a great idea never realized! It would seem, indeed, as if the architecture were there only to convince us that by many men, in a series of years, nothing can be accomplished, and that in art and in deeds only that is achieved which, like Minerva, springs full-grown and armed from the head of its inventor." See also Bayard Taylor, *Views A-Foot*, chap. 7 (Sealts, No. 495), for the legend that the architect outwitted the devil to steal the plan without giving his soul in exchange, and that the enraged devil decreed: "You may build your Cathedral according to this plan, but you shall never finish it!" Taylor also mentioned "the enormous crane standing as it did when they left off building, two hundred years ago or more."

142.24. *THE SPECKSYNDER*: Melville's source of information for this office, which was foreign to the Sperm Whale Fishery of the the South Seas, was William Scoresby, Jr., *An Account of the Arctic Regions*, Vol. 2, p. 39: "At this period, each ship carried two principals; the Commander, who was a native, was properly the navigator, as his chief charge consisted in conducting the ship to and from Greenland; the other who was called by the Dutch *Specksynder*, or cutter of the fat, as his name implies, was a Biscayan, and had an unlimited control of the people in the fishery; and indeed every operation belonging to it was confided to him. When, however, the fishery became better known, the commander likewise assumed the superintendence of the fishery. The office of specksioneer is now the principal harpooner, and has the 'oering of the fat,' and extracting or boiling of the whale; but he serves entirely under the direction of the commander of the vessel." Ahab was both Commander and Specksynder in a very special way. He not only had his own boat and crew (chap. 50); he also supervised the making of a special harpoon (chap. 113). The dying whale of chap. 116 was slain by Ahab; and on the first day of the chase, when Moby Dick destroyed the Captain's boat beneath him, Ahab had the harpoon in his hand, p. 544; his first question after Stubb rescued him was, "The harpoon . . . is it safe?" On the third day, it was Ahab who "darted his fierce iron, and his far fiercer curse into the hated whale," p. 562. In this early chapter, as the clear focus on Ahab in the latter part showed, Melville was foreshadowing later developments of the story.

144.22. *That certain sultanism of his brain:* This defining ingredient of Ahab's character seems to have been shaped largely by the critical passage of Goethe's several-page discussion of the Demonic and the title character of his play *Egmont in Truth and Poetry; From my own Life* (Sealts, No. 228), Book 20: "He thought he could detect in nature—both animate and inanimate, with soul or without soul—something which manifests itself only in contradictions, and which, therefore, could not be comprehended under any idea, still less under one word. It was not godlike, for it seemed unreasonable; not human, for it had no understanding; nor devilish, for it was beneficent; nor angelic, for it often betrayed a malicious pleasure. It resembled chance, for it evolved no consequences; it was like Providence, for it hinted at connexion. All that limits us it seemed to penetrate; it seemed to sport at will with the necessary elements of our existence; it contracted time and expanded space. In the impossible alone did it appear to find pleasure, while it rejected the possible with contempt. To this principle, which seemed to come in between all other principles to separate them, and yet to link them together, I gave the name of Demonic, after the example of the ancients and of those who, at any rate, had perceptions of the same kind. . . . Although this Demonical element can manifest itself in all corporeal and incorporeal things, and even expresses itself most distinctly in animals, yet, with man, especially does it stand in a most wonderful connexion, forming in him a power which, if it be not opposed to the moral order of the world, nevertheless does often so cross it that one may be regarded as the warp, and the other as the woof. . . . But the most fearful manifestation of the Demonical, is when it is seen predominating in some individual character. During my life I have observed several instances of this, either more closely or remotely. Such persons are not always the most eminent men, either morally or intellectually, and it is seldom that they recommend themselves to our affections by goodness of heart; a tremendous energy seems to be seated in them, and they exercise a wonderful power over all creatures, and even over the elements; and, indeed, who shall say how much farther such influence may extend? All the moral powers combined are of no avail against them; in vain does the more enlightened portion of mankind attempt to throw suspicion upon them as deceived if not deceivers—the mass is still drawn on by them. Seldom if ever do the great men of an age find their equals among their contemporaries, and they are to be overcome by nothing but the universe itself; and it is from observation of this fact that the strange, but most striking, proverb must have risen: *Nemo contra*

Deum nisi Deus ipse." The third sentence from the end was clearly echoed in the idea of "infinite inferiority to the choice hidden handful of the Divine Inert;" it is not clear, however, how far Melville wished to go in suggesting Starbuck as the moral superior of Ahab. The Latin proverb was quoted by Melville in *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 14. Compare Eckermann's *Conversations of Goethe* (John Oxenford, trans.), entry for 24 March 1829: "The higher a man is . . . the more he is under the influence of demons, and he must take heed lest his guiding will counsel him to a wrong path." Confirmation may have come to Melville from De Quincey's *Suspira de Profundis*, Part 2, probably bound with the *Confessions* (Sealts, No. 180): "The steady rebellion upon my part in one half was a mere human reaction of justifiable indignation; but in the other half it was the struggle of a conscientious nature,—disdaining to feel it as any mere right or discretionary privilege,—no, feeling it as the noblest of duties to resist, though it should be mortally, those that would have enslaved me, and to retort scorn upon those that would have put my head below their feet. Too much, even in later life, I have perceived, in men that pass for good men, a disposition to degrade (and if possible to degrade through self-degradation) those in whom unwillingly they feel any weight of oppression to themselves, by commanding qualities of intellect or character. They respect you: they are compelled to do so, and they hate to do so. Next, therefore, they seek to throw off the sense of this oppression, and to take vengeance for it, by cooperating with any unhappy accidents in your life, to inflict a sense of humiliation upon you, and (if possible) to force you to becoming a consenting party to that humiliation." See also the passage Melville checked in "The Preface to Gondibert" in his 1673 edition of *The Works of Sr William Davenant Kt.* . . . acquired in London in 1849 (Sealts, No. 176), p. 16: ". . . for God ordain'd not huge Empire as proportionable to the Bodies, but to the Mindes of Men; and the Mindes of Men are more monstrous, and require more space for agitation and the hunting of others, then the Bodies of Whales." All of these passages from Goethe, De Quincey, and Davenant seem to have fused in Melville's conception of "a globular brain and a ponderous heart" that was Ahab, so that he might well remark on p. 73 that "all mortal greatness is but disease." Goethe's idea of the Demonic was known in certain American circles after Emerson had quoted practically the entire passage given here in his lecture on Demonology in the course on "Human Life" delivered in Boston 1839-1840.

144.37. *Nicholas the Czar*: Nicholas I, emperor of Russia (1825-1855), was a fitting symbol for absolutist tyranny; known as "the

Iron Czar," he instituted the secret police and had a reputation for his refusal to delegate authority, since he was unable to trust anyone. See also *Redburn*, chap. 57, where the captain of the *Highlander*, "the grand Russian, Captain Riga, issued another ukase;" and chap. 60: "Like the Czar of all the Russias, and Siberia to boot, Captain Riga, telescope in hand, stood on the poop, pointing out to the passengers, Governor's Island, Castle Garden, and the Battery."

145.9. *all outward majestic trappings and housings*: Henry F. Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, pp. 16-17, 134 n. 63 and 64, has suggested that this phrase came from *Paradise Lost* IX, 36:

"Bases and tinsel Trappings, gorgeous knights."

This was part of Milton's defense of his subject as fit epic material.

145.11. *plucked at from the skies*: Compare *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123), Book 2, chap. 9: "How paint to the sensual eye . . . what passes in the Holy-of-Holies of Man's Soul; in what words, known to these profane times, speak even afar-off of the unspeakable?"

145.28. *the first Emir*: In calling the mates first, second, and third Emir, Melville was using loosely the term which designated the chief sheik or sheriff of an Arabian tribe, whose person and character, because he was a descendant of Mohammed, were held sacred.

146.26. *Belshazzar, King of Babylon*: *Mardi*, chap. 60, "Belshazzar on the Bench," presented Media, King of Odo, dispensing justice. On p. 498 of the present book, Melville quoted the mysterious words written on the wall at the great feast, translated by Daniel as prophesying the end of Belshazzar. See Daniel v.

147.16. *the Coronation banquet at Frankfort*: Frankfort-on-Main was declared the seat of the imperial elections by the Golden Bull issued in 1356 by Charles IV of Bohemia. Details of the election and coronation of Joseph II in 1764 and recollections of the earlier appearance in Frankfort of his parents, Francis I and Maria Theresa, filled most of Book 5 of Goethe's *Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life*, which Melville purchased in London in 1849 (Sealts, No. 228). In Goethe's day the number of electors had been increased to nine, but only the three spiritual electors were present for the coronation banquet of Joseph in the great hall of the Romer or Town House. The stations of the six temporal absentees were ornamented and served as if they were there; Goethe secured entrance by posing as a waiter and carrying in a silver vessel to the Palatine buffet.

150.35. *wild Logan of the woods*: The career of the Indian chief, James Logan (c. 1725-1800), who changed from friendship to enmity

toward the white settlers because of the massacre of his family, was dealt with extensively in early American editions of Jefferson's *Notes on the State of Virginia* and especially in *An Appendix to the Notes on Virginia Relative to the Murder of Logan's Family* (1800). Jefferson gave verbatim his reputed speech to Lord Dunmore, a quotation from which served as the motto for Irving's essay, "Traits of Indian Character" in *The Sketch Book* (1819), which also included a few paragraphs about the "indiscriminate butchery" of the Pequods. The speech was a common recitation piece for school children of Melville's time. Logan was at least cursorily mentioned by most writers about Indians in either prose or verse; see George H. Colton, *Tecumseh* (1842), Canto 3, stanza 2, lines 10-11:

"Old Logan was the white-man's friend;
But injuries forced his love to end."

Of books Melville seems to have been reading during the writing of *Moby-Dick*, the account of Logan most likely to occasion the analogy with Ahab here was in William L. Stone, *Life of Joseph Brant—Thayendanegea*, chap. 2 (Sealts, No. 491a): "This lofty chief refused to appear at the council. He was in favour of peace, but his proud spirit scorned to ask for it; and he remained in his cabin, brooding in melancholy silence over his own wrongs." Col. John Gibson was sent to get Logan's ratification of the articles of peace: "His conference with Gibson took place in a solitary wood, and at its close he charged him with the celebrated speech to Lord Dunmore. . . ." The detail of the hollow tree may have come from Stone's account (Vol. 2, p. 15) of one David Elerson's being surprised by a party of Indians near Otsego Lake in 1779 and taking to his heels for several hours, still followed, until he finally "succeeded in burying himself in a dark thicket of hemlocks, where he found the hollow trunk of a tree, into which he crept. Here he lay ensconced two full days, without food or dressings for his wound." When "on the third day he backed out of 'the loop-hole of his retreat,'" he discovered that he had, "during his recent chase, run over hill and dale, bog, brook, and fen, upward of twenty-five miles."

151.2. *THE MAST-HEAD*: Compare J. Ross Browne, pp. 193-94: "The mast-head was a little world of peace and seclusion, where I could think over past times without interruption. There was much around me to inspire vague and visionary fancies: the ocean, a trackless waste of waters; the arched sky spread over it like a variegated curtain; the sea-birds wheeling in the air; and the myriads of albacore

cleaving their way through the clear, blue waves, were all calculated to create novel emotions in the mind of a landsman. It was here I could cast a retrospective glance at my past life. Here it was I could think of my home in the west, where I had spent years of unalloyed happiness, with none to tyrannize over me, but where all was social harmony. How bright and beautiful seemed the past! How I longed once more to see the familiar faces of friends and kindred! Hour after hour have I thought of by-gone scenes and happier days. . . . Whenever I became so wrapped up in these visionary dreams as to forget that I was not placed at the mast-head for that special purpose, the loud, harsh voice of the captain would arouse me, with a friendly hint to 'keep a sharp lookout for whales, or he'd wake me up with a rope's end.' To be suddenly startled from a delicious revery, abounding in those ethereal and refined fancies which Rousseau has so beautifully described as part of the inspiration derived from an elevated atmosphere; to have one's happiest dreams of home dissipated by an allusion to 'rope's ends,' suggesting thoughts of the mode in which they are usually applied, is not so romantic as one might suppose."

151.32. *Saint Stylites*: Melville's mast-head figure—which began with allusion to the Egyptian pyramids and proceeded to the Syrian St. Simeon Stylites (390-459), the first and most famous of the Pillar-hermits, who spent the last half of his life atop a pillar finally built to 60 feet—was probably suggested by the last-named item, the Nelson Statue in Trafalgar Square. Although he did not specifically mention it in his *Journal*, Melville's rambles in London in November and December 1849 must have taken him frequently by the Nelson column, 145 feet high, surmounted by the 18 foot statue of the Admiral by E. H. Baily, which has been completed in 1849, shortly before his arrival. The Corinthian column suggested a vertical-cleated "capstan" to Melville, which was "of gun-metal," because the base was adorned with four battle scenes in bronze cast from captured French cannon. Napoleon had caused an imitation of Trajan's column to be erected in the Place Vendome, with spiral bronze plates by Bergeret depicting scenes from the campaign of 1805 and cast from Russian and Austrian cannon. The figure of Napoleon in a three-cornered hat which Melville saw atop this column in 1849 was by Seurre and had been commissioned by Louis Phillipe in 1833; it is now in the Hotel des Invalides. The original statue, by Chaudet, of Napoleon as a Roman emperor had been taken down in 1814, after his overthrow, and the present copy of it was not put in place until 1863 by Napoleon III. Designed by Robert Mills with suggestions from Rembrandt Peale, the Doric column in Baltimore, finished in 1829, was

the tallest of the three monuments, and was surmounted by a 16 foot statue of George Washington by Henrico Caucici.

152.13. *Louis the Devil*: Changed in the English edition to "Louis Napoleon," effectively reducing the force of Melville's political thrust.

153.9. *the famous Colossus of old Rhodes*: A brazen image (105 feet high) of the sun-god Helios placed, according to the view current in Melville's day, with its feet on the two moles of the harbor of Rhodes (an island near the eastern entrance to the Aegean Sea). Of such magnitude that ships easily passed between its legs, the statue was thrown down by an earthquake c. 224 B.C.

154.10. *crow's-nests*: As F. B. Adams, Jr., pointed out in "The Crow's Nest," *Colophon*, N. S. Vol. 2, Autumn 1936, pp. 148-154, Melville's account of the crow's-nest is a rollicking parody of a long passage in Scoresby, Vol. 2, pp. 203-205: "The *crow's nest* is an apparatus placed on the main-top-mast, or top-gallant-mast head, as a kind of watch-tower, for the use of the master, or officer of the watch, in the fishing seas, for sheltering him from the wind, when engaged in piloting the ship through crowded ice, or for obtaining a more extensive view of the sea around, when looking out for whales. When sailing amongst much heavy drift ice, as seen from the deck, it seems at a small distance impervious, although it may happen that scarcely any two pieces are connected; but from the mast head, the relative position of almost every piece may be distinctly seen, and an opinion may be formed, by the experienced observer, of the probable and actual movements of such pieces as the ship is required to pass. This is an object of the greatest importance; because the varied movements of the different pieces, occasion such an alteration in the channel pursued, that were it not for a constant, attentive, and judicious watch by the master, or an able officer, a ship could not pass through any crowded collection of drift ice, without the imminent risk of being stove. Now, in difficult situations, a master's presence at the mast head, is sometimes required for many hours in succession, when the temperature of the air is from 10° to 20° below the freezing point, or more. It is therefore necessary, for the preservation of his health, as well as his comfort, that he should be sheltered from the piercing gale. A piece of canvas tied round the head of the main-top-mast, and heel of the top-gallant-mast, extending only from the cap to the cross trees, or at best a canvas stretched round the base of the top-gallant rigging, but open on the after part, was the most complete contrivance of a crow's nest, until a few years ago, when my Father invented an apparatus, having the appearance of a rostrum, which afforded an admirable defence against the wind. This contrivance,

from the comfortable shelter it affords to the navigator, having come into very general use, it may not be improper to describe it more particularly. The one most approved by the inventor is about $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet in length, and $2\frac{1}{2}$ in diameter. The form is cylindrical; open above and close below. It is composed of laths of wood placed in a perpendicular position round the exterior edge of a strong wooden hoop, forming the top, and round a plane of mahogany, or other wood, which forms the bottom; and the whole circumference of the cylinder is covered with canvas or leather. The entrance is by a trap-hatch at the bottom. It is fixed on the very summit of the main-top-gallant-mast, from whence the prospect on every side is unimpeded. On the after side is a seat, with a place beneath for a flag. In other parts are receptacles for a speaking trumpet, telescope, and occasionally for a *rifle piece*, with utensils for loading. For the more effectual shelter of the observer, when in an erect posture, a moveable screen is applied to the top on the windward side, which increases the height so much as effectually to shield his head. When the ship is tacked, nothing more is necessary for retaining the complete shelter, than shifting the screen to the opposite side, which is done in an instant."

154.12. *Captain Sleet*: Captain Sleet was Melville's parodic name for Captain William Scoresby, Sr., the father of the author of *An Account of the Arctic Regions*. The senior Scoresby was perhaps the most successful Arctic whale fisherman who ever lived. He made thirty successful voyages into the dangerous Arctic waters and never lost a ship. He was the first on record after Hudson to trace the east coasts of what was then "West" Greenland. His inventions for the improvement of whale fishing included the crow's nest and the ice drill. See *Seven Log-Books Concerning the Arctic Voyages of Captain William Scoresby, Senior, of Whitby, England*. Edited by Frederick S. Dellenbaugh, Junior (New York: The Explorers Club, 1917); and also William Scoresby, Jr., *Memorials of the Sea. My Father: Being records of the adventurous life of the late William Scoresby, Esq., of Whitby* (London, 1851).

156.8. *Phaedon*: Plato's dialogue on immortality, which had provided the "philosophical flourish" for Cato's suicide (see note on Cato 1.16), was a favorite with Melville. See his letter to E. A. Duyckinck 5 April 1849 (printed Thorp, p. 375): "I bought a set of Bayle's Dictionary the other day, & on my return to New York intend to lay the great old folios side by side & go to sleep on them thro' the summer, with the *Phaedon* in one hand & Tom Brown [Sir Thomas Browne] in the other." See also *White-Jacket*, chap. 38, the chaplain who "learnedly alluded to the *Phaedon* of Plato."

156.15. *Childe Harold*: See Melville's criticism of the passage he paraphrased here in his review of J. Ross Browne's *Etchings of a Whaling Cruise*, the *Literary World*, 6 March 1847, Vol. 1, p. 105: "The perusal of Dana's 'Two Years before the Mast,' for instance, somewhat impairs the relish with which we read Byron's spiritual 'Address to the Ocean.' And when the noble poet raves about laying his hands upon the ocean's mane (in other words manipulating the crest of a wave), the most vivid image suggested is, that of a valedudinarian bather at Rockaway, spluttering and choking in the surf, with his mouth full of brine." See also the reference—which may well be autobiographical—in *Redburn*, chap. 26, where the narrator philosophically made endurable the tedious hours "picking oakum, like a convict" by "repeating Lord Byron's Address to the Ocean, which I had often spouted on the stage at the High School at home." In the edition of Mme de Stael's *Corinne* which Melville acquired in London in 1849 (Sealts, No. 486), a note by Isabel Hill, the translator, claimed Book 1, chap. 4, paragraph 3 of this book had inspired the celebrated passage in *Childe Harold*, Canto 4, stanza 179. Melville's thorough familiarity with Byron's poem was attested in his quoting the first two lines of Canto 3, stanza 21, in his entry for Brussels, 7 December 1849, *Journal*, p. 60.

157.8. *Cranmer's sprinkled Pantheistic ashes*: Thomas Cranmer, made Archbishop of Canterbury by Henry VIII, was burned as a heretic at Oxford in 1556, after the Roman church had returned to power under Queen Mary. By way of dramatically symbolizing his repudiation of his earlier recantation, Cranmer submitted his right hand, which had written the recantation, to be burned first. It was not unusual to scatter the ashes of heretics, but none of the standard accounts mentioned this disposition of Cranmer's. As Willard Thorp has suggested, Melville may have here confused Cranmer with William Wycliffe, who died a natural death in 1384. By order of the Council of Constance in 1415, his remains were disinterred in 1428. According to Thomas Fuller, *The Church-History of Britain* (1655; new edition Oxford, 1845), Book 4, sec. 53, the English church officials "burnt them to ashes, and cast them into Swift, a neighboring brook running hard by. Thus this brook hath conveyed his ashes into Avon, Avon into Severn, Severn into the narrow seas, they into the main ocean; and thus the ashes of Wycliffe are the emblem of his doctrine, which is now dispersed all the world over." The English editor apparently assumed this confusion, for he corrected the passage to read: "like Wickliff's sprinkled ashes." The omission of "Pantheistic," however, blunted Melville's point. —

157.16. *Descartian vortices*: The French philosopher René Des-

cartes (1596-1650), starting from the theories of Copernicus and Galileo, developed in *Le Monde* a theory of all motion as circular, or in vortices. See Jefferson's comment on this theory, widely held until exploded by the Newtonian theory of gravitation, *Notes on the State of Virginia*, Query 17: "the earth became a globe, and Descartes declared it was whirled round its axis by a vortex." Melville's reading probably furnished him with several expositions of the theory, which he referred to again in *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 313 (see the note by H. A. Murray, ed., p. 485), in a more pointed satire on the Apostles' mesmeric concentration on the Transcendentalist Unity, in disregard of multiplicity, which Melville seemed to think was represented by the Cartesian theory.

157.19. *ye Pantheists*: Compare *Mardi*, chap. 57: "I began to bethink me of the Jew that rejected the Talmud, and his all-permeating principle, to which Goethe and others have subscribed." See also Melville's letter to Hawthorne June 1851, printed Thorp, p. 393: "In reading some of Goethe's sayings, so worshipped by his votaries, I came across this, '*Live in the all.*' That is to say, your separate identity is but a wretched one,—good; but get out of yourself, spread and expand yourself, and bring to yourself the tinglings of life that are felt in the flowers and the woods, that are felt in the planets Saturn and Venus, and the Fixed Stars. What nonsense! Here is a fellow with a raging toothache. 'My dear boy,' Goethe says to him, 'you are sorely afflicted with that tooth; but you must *live in the all*, and then you will be happy!' As with all great genius, there is an immense deal of flummery in Goethe, and in proportion to my own contact with him, a monstrous deal of it in me."

160.38. *razeed*: The obsolete term *to raze* meant to cut away the upper deck or decks of a ship, thus reducing it to an inferior class.

161.4. *the Norway Maelstrom*: Compare *Redburn*, chap. 22, Jackson's desire "to see the whole ship swallowed down in the Norway maelstrom." Melville's interest may have been stimulated by Poe's "A Descent into the Maelstrom," originally published 1841 and included in *Tales* (1845), which appeared in the Wiley and Putnam "Library of American Books" shortly before *Typee*. Poe quoted from Jonas Ramus: "Boats, yachts, and ships have been carried away by not guarding against it before they were within its reach. It likewise happens frequently, that whales come too near the stream, and are overpowered by its violence; and then it is impossible to describe their howlings and bellowings in their fruitless struggles to disengage themselves." Poe used a prefatory quotation from Joseph Glanville: "The ways of God in Nature, as in Providence are not as *our* ways;

nor are the models that we frame any way commensurate to the vastness, profundity, and unsearchableness of His works, *which have a depth to them greater than the well of Democritus.*" The experience recounted by the old man in Poe's story, in the final paragraphs, had some resemblances to the effect on Pip of being a castaway in chap. 113. For a linking of the maelstrom with hell, see George H. Colton, *Tecumseh* (1842), Canto 9, stanza 18, lines 1-12:

"As, when a burning vessel, tost
On Norway's stern, tempestuous coast,
Is drawn at night, with plunge and roll,
Into the Maelstrom's mighty pool,
Lighting the deep, the seamen there,
Through minds made frantic by despair,
On all the vortex vast and dim
See fiends around them, strange and grim,
That laugh, and dance, and yell, and swing,
And furious gestures toward them fling,
Now borne through glare, through darkness dun,
As swift the dizzy circles run. . . ."

161.24. *a little lower layer*: Ahab was clearly suggesting that Starbuck's agreement could be bought by a larger share in the profits. See note on *profits called lays* 75.37.

161.34. *All visible objects, man, are but as pasteboard masks*: Compare Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus*, Book 1, chap. 11, Teufelsdröckh: "All visible things are emblems; what thou seest is not there on its own account. . . ." Note the emphasis on "pasteboard" in *Don Quixote*: the knight's "Pasteboard Vizor" (Part 1, Book 1, chap. 1), Thomas Cecil's "Paste-board-Nose," when he serves as squire to the Knight of Mirrors (Part 2, Book 3, chap. 15). Compare *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 76: "Thou Black Knight, that with vizor down, thus confrontest me, and mockest at me; lo! I strike through thy helm, and will see thy face, be it Gorgon! . . . From all idols, I tear all veils; henceforth I will see the hidden things. . . ." Compare also the sentence near the end of first article on "Hawthorne and His Mosses" (printed in Thorp, p. 334): "Tormented into desperation, Lear, the frantic king, tears off the mask, and speaks the sane madness of vital truth."

163.33. *a noble custom of my fishermen fathers*: This dramatic episode of the drinking from the harpoon sockets was suggested by a passage in Robert Pearse Gillies, *Tales of a Voyager to the Arctic Ocean*, First Series (1826), Vol. 1, pp. 251-52: The commencement of

business was preceded by a ceremony, which will no doubt maintain its ground, when other more pompous observances shall have become the tales of old wives and antiquaries. The harpooners were invited into the cabin, bearing the harpoons they had selected for their boats, and each was compelled to drink a bumper of rum, from the socket of his weapon, to the success of the fishery. The compulsion found necessary to oblige these officers to quaff a quarter of a pint of real Jamaica, was by no means so great as that occasionally requisite to force a culprit to receive the fatal noose round his neck. Indeed, I thought they bore the infliction of their sentence with becoming meekness and resignation; and, though the length of the shafts, appended to their drinking vessels, gave them a most ludicrous appearance when turned towards the sky, and caused much merriment and many jokes, it was endured with christian fortitude. Some affectation to be sure was manifested in the management of their glasses, but, in palliation of this offence against commonsense, let it be remembered that the goblet was a full yard long. On this occasion all the Englishmen had the favour of draining the harpoon socket granted to them, whilst to the Shetlanders drams, or ordinary glasses of liquor, were distributed; nor was this the only time that I found the men of Shetland were considered as inferior to their comrades, though I could not discover why, unless, (as Robinson Crusoe would say,) because they were inferior in rascality and low manners."

163.38. *Cross your lances full before me*: F. O. Matthiessen, *American Renaissance*, p. 432, has made a comparison of this scene with Hamlet's forcing Horatio and Marcellus to swear on his sword, *Hamlet* I, v. 146.

164.19. *tiara*: The papal crown, a bee-hive shaped, somewhat bulging head-covering, ornamented with three crowns; without sacral character, solely the ensign of sovereign power; dating probably from the eighth century.

164.21. *seizings*: tarred ropes or lashings used for fastening.

165.17. *Iron Crown of Lombardy*: Kept now in the Italian cathedral of Monza, the diadem of Constantine, long known as the Iron Crown of Lombardy, was traditionally used at the coronation of Holy Roman Emperors. Legend said that it contained one of the nails from the cross of Jesus, discovered in Jerusalem by Helena, mother of Constantine, in 326. Napoleon, making himself King of Italy, had placed it on his own head 26 May 1805, and Ferdinand I, Emperor of Austria, had been crowned with it 6 September 1838. See also Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123), Book 3, chap. 3: "Did not the whole Hungarian Nation rise, like some tumultuous moon-

stirred Atlantic, when Kaiser Joseph [Joseph I, 1687?] pocketed their Iron Crown; an implement, as was sagaciously observed, in size and commercial value little differing from a horse-shoe?"

166.6. *They think me mad . . . I am madness maddened*: Compare *Don Quixote*, Part 1, Book 4, chap. 21, Sancho's comment on his master: "this is Madness upon Madness;" chap. 22, the canon's admiration for "his unparallell'd Madness, the rather because in all his Words and Answers he display'd an excellent Judgment;" and Part 2, Book 3, chap. 18, Don Lorenzo's comment: "He is Mad past Recovery, but yet he has lucid Intervals." (Ozell's revision of Peter Motteux's trans.) For Melville, madness held the mystery it held for Carlyle—*Sartor Resartus*, Book 3, chap. 8: "Witchcraft, and all manner of Spectre-work, and Demonology, we have now named Madness, and Diseases of the Nerves. Seldom reflecting that still the new question comes upon us: What is Madness, what are Nerves? Ever, as before, does Madness remain a mysterious-terrific, altogether *infernal* boiling-up of the Nether Chaotic Deep, through this fair-painted Vision of Creation, which swims thereon, which we name the Real." See also his companions' accusation that Babbalanja is mad, *Mardi*, chaps. 183, 184, and Babbalanja's reply: "Ay, mad, mad, mad!—mad as the mad fiend that rides me!"

166.13. *deaf Burkes and blinded Bendigoes*: Jem ("Deaf") Burke was the English pugilistic champion 1833, and William Thompson, called "Bendigo," was champion 1839-1845.

166.19. *ye cannot swerve me, else ye swerve yourselves*: Compare Ishmael's similar limitation of God's power, p. 36: "come a stove boat and stove body when they will, for stave my soul, Jove himself cannot."

166.20. *The path to my fixed purpose is laid with iron rails*: See also the reference to "the mighty iron Leviathan of the modern railway" on p. 547. Melville seems not to have had Carlyle's distaste for one of the major mechanical improvements of the age; compare *On Heroes*. . . . (Sealts, No. 122), Lecture 2: "Benthamite Utility, Virtue by Profit and Loss; reducing this God's world to a dead brute steam engine," and Lecture 5: "this godlike Universe a dead mechanical Steam-engine."

167.17. *demigorgon*: See Marlowe, 1 *Tamburlaine* IV, i, 18: "As monstrous as Gorgon, prince of hell." For Milton (*Paradise Lost* II, 965), Demogorgon was an infernal associate of Chaos and Night. Demogorgon, in Shelley's *Prometheus Unbound* II, iv; III, i, and end of IV, although represented as the son of Jupiter, was the primal god, "the Eternal, the Immortal," to whom Asia, wife of Prometheus, put

her questions about the enigma of the universe. Melville's spelling possibly came from confusion with Demiurge, the Creator god according to the mythology of some of the early Gnostic sects—notably the Ophites (see p. 181), who represented the evil principle, while the primal god represented the good. Compare Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 4 (1837), chap. 118: "the Book of Chance, or of Necessity, the Demogorgon of those by whom no other deity is acknowledged." See also the reference to Moby Dick as "the grand god" on p. 540.

168.22. *We'll drink to-night . . .*: Stubb's song, Thomas Ollive Mabbott has pointed out, was the third chorus of Charles Fenno Hoffman's "Sparkling and Bright," first published in the *New York American*, 8 May 1830, reprinted in the author's *The Vigil of Faith, and Other Poems*, 1842, and included in various anthologies such as Elton's *Songs and Melodies for the Multitude; or Universal Songster* and Rufus W. Griswold's *The Poets and Poetry of America*. Poe praised this song in *The Literati*.

169.2. *MIDNIGHT, FORECASTLE*: Of the various passages descriptive of forecastle merrymaking in the whaling books, one of the closest to Melville was perhaps Olmsted, p. 47: "The cook with his 'fiddle,' and the steward with his tambourine, hold musical *soirees* on the forecastle every evening in pleasant weather. Whatever may be thought of the performances of these sable musicians, they are sufficient to excite the activity of all that are disposed to dance. There is a mysterious connection between the vibration of a fiddle string and the vibrations of the heels. For as soon as the sound of the violin is heard, then commences a general patter upon the deck of all the excited. The dancing of sailors does not require a knowledge of the fashionable figures; all that is necessary, is to keep time with the feet, and to beat the deck with a suitable degree of vehemence. Simple as this sport may appear, it serves happily to diversify a sea life, and I frequently go forward to amuse myself with the curious manoeuvres exhibited, and the good humor that prevails."

169.6. *Farewell and adieu to you. . .*: Compare *White-Jacket*, chap. 74: "Jack Chase was often called out, and regaled us, in his own free and noble style, with the 'Spanish Ladies'—a favorite thing with British man-of-war's-men."

169.13. *Our captain stood upon the deck*: This well-known song, "Captain Bunker," was alluded to in R. H. Dana, Jr., *Two Years before the Mast*, chap. 25, and Cheever, p. 158. The first verse and chorus, given here, were quoted, along with the second and third verses, by J. Ross Browne, pp. 77-78.

172.4. *Seeva*: Siva, the destroyer god of the Hindu religion. See note on *the cave of Elephanta* 35.38.

172.21. *Heeva-Heeva*: A Tahitian dance. See *Omoo*, chaps. 62 and 63, for account of "an old-fashioned 'hevar,' or Tahitian reel. . . . a genuine pagan fandango," which the narrator and Long Ghost witnessed at Tamai, "the Lory-Lory . . . the dance of the backsliding girls." The double form *Heeva-Heeva*, in the Tahitian language, would indicate a very special ceremonial dance of peace.

174.19. *In that ring Cain struck Abel*: One of Melville's favorite Bible stories, Genesis iv, 1-16, also furnished the phrase in the description of the fin-back whale, p. 135: "the unconquerable Cain of his race." See also reference to Jackson, *Redburn*, chap. 22, as "a Cain afloat," and *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 305: "the murderer's mark of Cain is felt burning on the brow." Doubtless Byron's poem *Cain* had something to do with the vividness of this story for Melville.

174.34. *White squalls*: Also referred to in next chapter, p. 189. See Robert Burts, "The White Squall," *Knickerbocker*, Febr. 1839, Vol. 13, pp. 103-109, and the full description of the phenomenon in J. Ross Browne, pp. 122-123.

175.9. *MOBY DICK*: From the authentic anecdotes presented in chap. 45 as evidence that "famous whales enjoy great individual celebrity," Melville might easily, by borrowing here and there, have constructed his fictional whale. More than likely, however, he had in mind a particular actual whale not mentioned there, legends of whose prowess he had heard by word of mouth or read in Jeremiah N. Reynolds, "Mocha Dick: or the White Whale of the Pacific," the *Knickerbocker Magazine*, May 1839, Vol. 13, pp. 377-393. Reynolds's whale derived his name from the island of Mocha, off the coast of Chile, where he had been encountered in 1810; he was a "renowned monster, who had come off victorious in a hundred fights with his pursuers. . . . From the effect of age, or more probably from a freak of nature, as exhibited in the case of the Ethiopian Albino, a singular consequence had resulted—*he was white as wool*!" "White as a snow-drift," like "a white cloud sailing along the horizon," Mocha Dick had the same peculiar spout Dagoo assigned to Ahab's whale on p. 160, and his "back serried with irons" may have accounted for Queequeg's recollection: "good many iron in him hide . . . all twiske-tee be-twisk." Perhaps also Ahab's insistent query, "Hast seen the White Whale?" was suggested by Reynolds's "Any news from Mocha Dick?" Reynolds asserted that, "though naturally fierce, it was not customary with Dick, while unmolested, to betray a malicious disposition," but described a young harpooner who had "imbibed a sort of superstitious dread of Mocha Dick." In the *Knickerbocker* story also the dignity of

whaling was maintained; it was glorified as evidence of American enterprise, "of the ardor of a free people; of a spirit of independence, generated by free institutions." The story ended with victory for the whaling captain; Mocha Dick was captured and tried-out into one hundred barrels of oil. Years later, however, the editor of the *Knickerbocker* seems to have forgotten the conclusion of Reynolds's story, for in the "Editor's Table" of the July 1846 issue of the magazine, a New Bedford news item of the whaleship Sarah finding in a captured whale a harpoon of the Lyra, lost in 1828, occasioned his comment: "Our readers will remember the sketch of 'Mocha Dick, of the Pacific,' published in the *Knickerbocker* many years ago; a huge mountain-whale, that rises like an island every now and then from the bosom of the Pacific, trailing from his sides hundreds of green slimy ropes, that stream like 'horrid hair' upon the waters. He will be a treasure when his times comes, not only to oil-men, but 'workers in iron.'" This brief reminder may have sent Melville to the earlier story, especially since it came about the time Toby's letter appeared in the *Buffalo Commercial Advertiser* (1 July 1846) and Melville was rediscovering his lost companion of the *Acushnet*, and writing "The Story of Toby" as a sequel to *Typee*. *Omoo* was already planned, with its fictionized recollections of Melville's whaling experience on the *Lucy Ann* and the *Charles and Henry*. In this mood of reliving his whaling days, Melville might easily have been sent to Reynolds's article, especially if, while in the Pacific, he had heard legends of the great White Whale. And such legends he must have collected in gams with other whaling ships, for—according to "The Career of Mocha Dick," *Detroit Free Press*, 3 April 1892, reputedly a factual biography—Mocha Dick lived on beyond the capture described by Reynolds. Operating near his home island, Mocha Dick destroyed two boats belonging to the English whaler *Desmond* 5 July 1840; struck again, 300 miles south, 30 August 1840, to splinter a boat of the Russian bark *Sarepta* and lingered so long in the vicinity that the crew of this ship gave up attempts to claim the whale they had killed just before Mocha's arrival; appeared in the Atlantic near the Falkland Islands May 1841 to wreck two boats and kill two men belonging to the Bristol ship *John Day*; and in October 1842 turned up off the coast of Japan to ram a light lumber ship and engage in a grand battle with the crews of three whalers—the *Crieff* (Scotch), the *Dudley* (English), and the *Yankee* (American)—during which he sank two whale boats and carried away the jib boom and bowsprit of the *Crieff*. Surely the actual Mocha Dick was hardly less fabulous than Melville's whale. (For fuller details of the exploits of Mocha

Dick, see *Trying-Out*, pp. 163-177.) Perhaps the editor of the *Knickerbocker* was correct in assuming that Reynolds and Melville described the same actual whale, when he commented in the "Literary Record" section of the magazine for December 1851: "Some years ago there appeared in the KNICKERBOCKER a long and wonderful story, '*Mocha-Dick, of the Pacific*,' a mountainous old whale, that used to loom up like an island in the midst of the sea, and when approached, was observed to be trailing lines of countless harpoons, which streamed like horrid hair, green with sea-slime and knotted with barnacle, from his sides. Under the title of '*Moby-Dick*' Mr. MELVILLE has taken up this whale, and made him the subject of one of his characteristic and striking romances." Melville's own remark to Richard Bentley 27 June 1850 would fit with this possibility: "The book is a romance of adventure founded upon certain wild legends in the Southern Sperm Whale Fisheries, and illustrated with the author's own personal experience, of two years or more, as a harpooner." This was a more accurate statement of what *Moby-Dick* was than the casual phrase "the 'whaling voyage'" Melville used to describe it in his letter to R. H. Dana, Jr., 1 May 1850. As Allan Melville pointed out, Sept. 1851, in explaining to Richard Bentley (printed Jay Leyda, *The Melville Log*, p. 427) the change made for the American title: "Moby-Dick is a legitimate title for the book, being the name given to a particular whale who if I may so express myself is the hero of the volume." Perhaps a whaling voyage was the original idea, and perhaps indeed this idea of the book owed something to Purrington and Russell's Original Panorama of a *Whaling Voyage Around the World* exhibited for several weeks at Armory Hall, Boston, beginning in January 1849. Besides the daily advertisements, the *Boston Transcript* carried several articles about the panorama, including a letter, 10 February, by a whaling captain, William Sturgis, testifying to its authenticity. Melville—in Boston for several weeks during this period, for his wife's confinement attendant upon the birth of Malcolm—would hardly have missed the opportunity to make his own judgment of the panorama, which was not to be shown in New York until September 1851—too late to have any bearing on *Moby-Dick*. Whether or not a whaling voyage was the original idea for the book, a particular whale, Moby Dick, became—as Allan Melville recognized—the hero of the volume. It may be that Melville began with some such idea as St. Augustine expressed in the *Confessions*, Book 5, sec. 20: "For hence I believed evil also to be some such kind of substance, and to have its foul, and hideous bulk; whether gross, which they called earth, or thin and subtile, (like the

body of the air,) which they imagine to be some malignant mind, creeping through the earth." For Melville the whale would have been such a symbol, and it has been a commonplace of critical interpretation of his book to take Moby Dick as the representative of the moral evil of the world. It may be—indeed it is more likely—that Melville began with the Leviathan of Job xli (see note on *a Job's whale* 184.21); and if he read the long reflection on Scoresby in Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 5 (1838), chaps. 166, 168, he would have found his question ready stated. Quoting extensively and commenting discursively, Southey at last found himself unable to agree that whaling was the profession most conducive to the moral and religious life. Particularly questioning Scoresby's assertion that God made whales and all other creatures to be subject to man and for man's use, Southey conjectured his fictional Daniel Dove's retort to this assertion: "‘Made for thy use,’ the Doctor would say, ‘tyrant that thou art, and weak as thou art tyrannicall! Will the unicorn be willing to serve thee, or abide by thy crib? Canst thou bind him with his band in the furrow; or will he harrow the vallies after thee? Canst thou draw out leviathan with an hook, will he make a covenant with thee, wilt thou take him for a servant! Wilt thou bind him for thy maidens? Shall thy companions make a banquet of him? Shall they part him among the merchants? Made for thy use,—when so many may seem to have been made for thy punishment and humiliation!’" Taking perhaps from Carlyle, *On Heroes, Hero-Worship, and the Heroic in History*, Lecture 2 (Sealts, No. 122), the idea that all mythology was "a recognition of the forces of Nature as godlike, stupendous, personal Agencies,—as Gods and Demons," Melville was aware also that, as Emerson phrased it in *Nature*, chap. 1, "nature is not tricked always in holiday attire, but the same scene which yesterday breathed perfume and glittered as for the frolic of the nymphs, is overspread with melancholy to-day. Nature always wears the colors of the spirit." Moby Dick was for Melville the symbol of Nature, the Emersonian Not-Me, seen differently by different men and under different conditions. For Ahab, meditating on the doubloon on p. 428, "this round gold is but the image of the rounder globe, which, like a magician's glass, to each and every man in turn but mirrors back his own mysterious self." So, also, for each member of the crew, his response to Moby Dick mirrored "his own mysterious self." Melville would have agreed with Emerson in the essay "Fate," first given as a lecture the year *Moby-Dick* was being written, that "The book of Nature is the book of Fate," but with less faith to enable him to see as only partial the "hints of ferocity in the interiors of nature," he could not have

come so readily to Emerson's confidence that "Balances are kept." Speculation has been rife why Melville changed the name from Mocha Dick to Moby Dick. It can hardly have been merely for reasons of euphony, although that has been the most common suggestion. Walter Harding, "A Note on the title 'Moby-Dick,'" *American Literature*, Jan. 1951, Vol. 22, pp. 500-501, has asserted that the schooner *Moby Dick* was bringing fugitive slaves to Boston as early as 1847, but Sidney Kaplan—as he will demonstrate in a forthcoming article "The *Moby Dick* and the Underground Railroad," to be published in *Phylon*—has found evidence that the schooner was not built until 1852, with the first record of ownership 23 June 1852. Clearly, then, there is no evidence of any Moby Dick (whale or ship) before Melville's. Considering the prominence of Biblical names in Melville's book, it is not unreasonable that the whale's name too may have had a Biblical source. The son of Lot by his elder daughter (Genesis xix, 37) was called Moab, which meant in Hebrew "seed of the father." The whale, as Nature—in both the book of Job and Emerson, was the creature of God. Both the Moabites and the Ammonites (descendants of Benammi, son of Lot by his younger daughter) were notoriously idolatrous. Dire prophecies concerning the people of Moab appeared in Isaiah xv, xvi, and Jeremiah xlviii. The people of Israel and the people of Moab were frequently used as the divine means of punishing each other. Ahab and Moab were named together in 2 Kings i, 1: "Then Moab rebelled against Israel after the death of Ahab." If Melville, with the meaning and history of Moab in mind, derived Moby from that source, this would be all the more reason why the harpoon to be used against the whale was not baptized "in nomine patris."

178.6. *Olassen and Povelsen*: It is doubtful that Melville ever saw Olafsen and Povelsen's *Travels in Iceland* (London, 1805), and this information from their book appeared (with the misspelling "Olassen") in Beale, p. 4: "While the sperm whale has been quietly searching the ocean depths for his food, and avoiding with the greatest care and timidity the slightest danger or recontre of any kind, he has been represented by Olassen and Povelsen as the most savage and ferocious of all marine animals; for not only, according to their accounts, does the cachalot constantly thirst for the blood of every fish in the sea, but actually possesses a relish for human flesh, which we are led to suppose they wished to satiate, when these historians assert they seized, and upset with their jaws, a boat which contained some seamen, whom they speedily devoured."

178.10. *in his Natural History*: Here too (see preceding note)

Melville was unquestionably taking from a secondary source, for separated only by one paragraph from the Olassen passage, appeared the following about Cuvier in Beale, p. 5: "Yet the Baron Cuvier, in the compilation of its natural history, which he has obtained from many incorrect sources, states:—'the terrible arms, the powerful and numerous teeth with which nature has provided the cachalot, render it a terrific adversary to all the inhabitants of the deep, even to those which are most dangerous to others; such as the phocae, the balaenoptera, the dolphin, and the shark. So terrified are all these animals at the sight of the cachalot, that they hurry to conceal themselves from him in the sands or mud, and often in the precipitancy of their flight, dash themselves against the rocks with such violence as to cause instantaneous death. It was not therefore surprising,' says Cuvier, 'if the myriads of fishes on which this tyrant preys, are struck with the most lively terror at his presence. So powerful is this feeling, that the multitudes of fish which seek with avidity the dead carcasses of other cetacea, dare not approach the body of the cachalot when he is floating lifeless on the surface of the ocean.'"

179.21. *The Nor'West Passage*: As Melville said, he owed this information to Scoresby, Vol. 1, pp. 8-12, who cites a number of authorities on the whale's effecting a trans-polar passage.

179.24. *the inland Strello mountain*: Serra da Estrella; near the top of the tallest peak, Malhoa (6532 ft.) are numerous small lakes, the largest of which is Escura. The Mondego river has its source in these mountains (in Lake Redonda) and flows north-east through a long ravine before it turns westward to enter the Atlantic at Figueira da Foz. Willard Thorp has found in Marie Catherine Jumelle, Comtesse d'Aulnoy, *Relation du Voyage d'Espagne*, 1691 (Broadway Travellers ed., 1930, p. 186), a reference to "the lake of the mountain of Strella where there are often found the wrecks of ships, broken masts, anchors, and sails, and yet the sea is above twelve leagues off, and this is upon the top of a very high hill too." It is not clear how Melville came by this odd bit of lore.

179.27. *the Arethusa fountain*: The god of the river Alpheus in the Peloponnesus fell in love with the nymph Arethusa, who was transformed into a fountain by Diana and flowed under the sea, with Alpheus pursuing, until she emerged as a fountain on the island of Ortygia near Syracuse. The story was told by Ovid in the *Metamorphoses*, Book 5, and summarized by Keats in *Endymion*, Part 2, lines 936-1017. Why Melville transferred the original locale from Greece to the Holy Land is not clear; but Shelley was also confused in the geography in his poem "Arethusa," where the nymph was orig-

inally in Albania, although Alpheus was in Greece. Cervantes, *Don Quixote*, Part 2, Book 3, chap. 23, varied the myth to explain the origin of the Guadiana river in Spain.

181.13. *No turbaned Turk, no hired Venetian or Malay*: Compare *Othello* V, ii, 353-354:

"Where a malignant and a turban'd Turk
Beat a Venetian and traduced the state."

181.24. *to whose dominion . . . Christians ascribe one half of the worlds*: The English edition omitted this Manichean suggestion.

181.26. *the ancient Ophites*: A primitive Gnostic sect which emphasized the propitiation of the powers of evil. See Walter Scott, *The Talisman*, chap. 3, where Saladin, disguised as the Emir Sheerkohf, insisting that "Eblis may be hated, Stranger, but he must be feared," sang the ancient verses of the worshippers of Arimanes, the Evil Principle:

"If the Benigner Power can yield
A fountain in the desert field,
Where weary pilgrims drink;
Thine are the waves that lash the rock,
Thine the tornado's deadly shock,
Where countless navies sink!"

See also Thomas Hope, *Anastasius*, Vol. 2, chap. 4 (Vol. 2, p. 200 of copy Melville got in London 1849—Sealts, No. 282), the passage which Melville marked with a broken sideline: "For a long while, however, none of us could make any thing of the dispute, except that it was about some great personage, whom, it seems, our Arabs had not mentioned with becoming reverence. When the matter came to be explained, this personage turned out to be the devil. The strangers were Yezidees; a sect who maintain that, whether Satan be at present in or out of favour in heaven, he continues not the less to exert great sway on earth, and therefore ought to be treated with proper respect; and as they think it wise to make friends every where—not knowing where their destiny may ultimately fix them—they judiciously divide their worship between the powers of light and darkness." See Millicent Bell, "Pierre Bayle and *Moby-Dick*," an article to be published in *PMLA*, Sept. 1951, for account of materials Melville could have found in Pierre Bayle, *An Historical and Critical Dictionary*. . . . (Sealts, No. 51), dealing with Gnostic and Manichean

dualism. Melville may also have known that the American Indians worshipped two gods: Tantom, the good God, and "their evil God, whom they fear will do them hurt, whom they call Squantum;" see Francis Higginson in Alexander Young, ed. *Chronicles of the First Planters of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay* (1846), p. 257.

183.8. *this spiked Hotel de Cluny*: In Paris in 1849 Melville tried to visit this famous museum with George J. Adler on 1 December, but found it closed. He returned alone on 5 December. See *Journal*, p. 58: "Thence to the Hotel de Cluny. A most unique collection. The house is just the house I should like to live in. Glorious old cabinets—ebony, ivory carving.—Beautiful chapel. Tapestry, old keys. Leda & the Swan. Descended into the vaults of the old Roman palace of Thermes. Baths, &c." The *Palais des Thermes*, presumably built under Constantius Chlorus (292-306), was sometimes known as the *Palais de Julien*, since Julian the Apostate was thought to have been crowned emperor there in 360. Only the Frigidarium (65½ by 37½ feet with a ceiling of 59 feet) survived in anything like its original condition, of what was thought to be a complete imperial palace with baths attached. Melville was apparently permitted to inspect the substructions of this hall, the grand vaulted cells forming the center of a subterranean city of which the road-ways, formerly open, have been for a long time obstructed by successive cave-ins. It was the contention of the private owner before this became public property in 1843 that just as the Hotel de Cluny had been built c. 1490 upon the ruins of an old Roman palace as the level of Paris had been raised, so the Palace itself had been built on top of yet earlier ruins; he had made excavations to substantiate this view, but had had to fill them in to avoid the undermining of the foundations of the upper buildings. See André Du Sommerard, *Les Arts au Moyen Age en ce qui concerne principalement le Palais Romain de Paris, L'Hôtel de Cluny issu de ses ruines, et les objets d'art de la collection classée dans cet Hôtel* (Paris, 1838), Vol. 1, chaps. 1 and 2, espec. pp. 69-75.

183.16. *Caryatid*: Technically, of course, the male figure used as a column is called an *atlas* or a *telamon*. On one or another of his visits to the British museum, 16 and 27 November, and 19 December, 1849 (*Journal*, pp. 33, 51, 76-77), Melville must have seen the Elgin marbles acquired by the museum in 1816, which included a Caryatid (a column in the form of a female figure) from the Erectheum in Athens. This metaphor was continued on p. 535 in Ahab's reflection, "as though I were Adam, staggering beneath the piled centuries since Paradise." The earlier use of the term in *Redburn*, chap. 46, where

Melville referred to the "Moorish looking tables, supported by Caryatides of turbaned slaves," in the London gaming house, the Palace of Alladin, was purely descriptive, not symbolical.

183.26. *not to his will determinate*: See the suggestion by G. Giovanni, *Explicator*, Oct. 1946, Vol. 5, p. 7, that Melville intended to allude here to "the paradox that man's limited will brings into play forces which subsequently render the will inoperative."

184.21. *a Job's whale*: R. H. Dana, Jr., rounding Cape Horn in the *Alert*, adopted "a deliberate system of time-killing," which consisted in repeating over and over again the multiplication tables, the names of the states and their capitals, and his favorite Scripture passages. As he told the story in *Two Years before the Mast*, chap. 39, one of these latter was Job xxxix. Melville may have used this same book of the Bible for a similar purpose, for his knowledge of Job was more than casual. In *Mardi* the "willful boy" of chap. 112 had protested: "I feel nothing in me so utterly vile . . . and I cringe to none," and in chap. 114 Babbalanja had stated his aim: "I am intent upon the essence of things; the mystery which lieth beyond . . . the precious pearl within the shaggy oyster. I probe the circle's center; I seek to evolve the inscrutable." Sentiments like these made Melville feel a sympathetic identity with Job, whose name in Hebrew meant "the assailed" or "the persecuted one," and they gave him an objective curiosity in how and why the misery and affliction of a righteous man like Job could come about. There were superficial references to Job in *Redburn*, chaps. 17, 30, 59, and in *White-Jacket*, chap. 7. In *Moby-Dick*, the second Extract was from Job xli, 32, and the eleventh, from Rabelais, Book 4, chap. 34, was an allusion to Moses as the author of the story of Job and the Leviathan. The book proper made some nine additional quotations or allusions, and one of the owners of the *Pequod* took his name from Bildad, the second of the three comforters of Job. In Melville's copy of the Bible inscribed in March 1850 (Sealts, No. 62), Job (with some 40 verses checked, sidelined, or underscored) was the most heavily marked book, with Ecclesiastes next. Perhaps this fact should be taken as indication that Melville was reviewing Job as he was forming his conception of *Moby-Dick*. His interest in the Bible story seems to have been centered in three points: (1) in the role of Satan in the first two chapters, (2) in the phrase used by the four messengers to report disasters: "And I only am escaped alone to tell thee," and (3) in the Leviathan of chap. xli. Hawthorne had alluded to Satan's control of Job in *The Scarlet Letter*, end of chap. 9: ". . . it grew to be a widely diffused opinion, that the Reverend Arthur Dimmesdale, like many other personages of

especial sanctity, in all ages of the Christian world, was haunted either by Satan himself, or Satan's emissary, in the guise of old Roger Chillingworth. This diabolical agent had the Divine permission, for to season, to burrow into the clergyman's intimacy, and plot against his soul." Stubb, in identifying Fedallah with the devil, made a similar allusion on p. 324: "The devil, switching his hoofs, up and says, 'I want John.' 'What for?' says the old governor. 'What business is that of yours,' says the devil, getting mad,—'I want to use him.' 'Take him,' says the governor." Although there was a Faustian note in Stubb's suggestion that Fedallah was trying to get Ahab "to swap away his watch, or his soul, or something of that sort, and then he'll surrender Moby Dick," there was more emphasis on the idea of divine delivery into diabolical hands of a righteous man, and it was this aspect of the situation which most concerned Melville, as it had also most concerned Job. For Robert Southey, in *The Doctor*, Vol. 6, interchapter 20, Job was "a spiritual Epictetus," as Epictetus was "a heathen Job." Although Melville could admire the stoicism of both, the question of why God allowed their suffering was still persistent. Trying, perhaps, to see catastrophe from the outside and, like the early Puritans, to find divine purpose in it (see note on *Pequod* 68.8), he often emphasized the phrase of the four messengers, which was to serve as a kind of motto for the Epilogue of *Moby-Dick*. Possibly with his fascination by this phrase the vivid representation of the first messenger by William Blake, *Illustrations of the Book of Job* (1825), had something to do, for in commenting on Paul Falconer Poole's picture at the Royal Academy, "The Messenger announcing to Job the Irruption of the Sabeans," the *London Times* story (reprinted in the *Literary World*, 15 June 1850, Vol. 6, p. 594) remarked: "The scene depicted is the same to which Blake's powerful drawing first gave shape and terror." However it was, the phrase stuck in Melville's mind. In *Redburn*, chap. 59, the narrator deplored the poor condition of the life-boats of the *Highlander*, thinking how dreadful a shipwreck would be: ". . . yet provision should certainly be made for a handful of survivors, to carry home the tidings of her loss; for even in the worst of the calamities that befell patient Job, some *one* at least of his servants escaped to report it." And enroute to England on the *Southampton* 14 October 1849, Melville entered in his *Journal*, p. 8: "A regular blue devil day. A gale of wind, & every one sick. Saloons deserted, & all sorts of nauseous noise heard from the staterooms. Taylor, McCurdy, & Adler all in their berths— & I alone am left to tell the tale of their misery." The element of chance Melville stressed in the phrase "chance to survive" in the final sentence of *Redburn*

and again in Ishmael's Epilogue, "It so chanced. . . ." For Redburn and Ishmael, the disasters of Jackson and Ahab might have some meaning, for it was the tragedy of Lear and Gloster that brought Edgar to manhood, to the perception of "Reason in madness" in Lear's speech (IV, vi, 179), to the assurance that taught him that "Ripeness is all" (V, ii, 11), to the successful challenging of Edmund and the calm acceptance that "The gods are just" (V, iii, 170). Ishmael, spectator of the tragedy of Ahab and survivor, could learn from it. He had a chorus-like function, and might well announce as did the chorus in *Samson Agonistes*, 703-704:

"Just or unjust alike seem miserable,
For oft alike both come to evil end."

Despite the seeming skeptical despair of comprehension, Ishmael's Epilogue had much the function of the final lines of the chorus in Milton's drama, 1755-1758:

"His servants He, with new acquist
Of true experience from this great event,
With peace and consolation hath dismissed,
And calm of mind, all passion spent."

But Ishmael, "all passion spent," without as yet having reflected on the "true experience," was more the simple bearer of the tidings, like the four messengers in Job. Melville's myth-less dramatic than Shakspeare's, less didactic than Milton's—sought merely, like the book of Job, to propound the question and gave only the Biblical answer of the tidings of God's power. Carlyle in *On Heroes, Hero-Worship, and the Heroic in History*, (Sealts, No. 122), Lecture 2, drew parallels between the religious outlook of the book of Job and Islam (see note on *Ahab* 79.17), and paraphrasing Job xxxii, 8, insisted that "It is the 'inspiration of the Almighty' that giveth us understanding." For Carlyle, Job was "apart from all the theories about it, one of the grandest things ever written with pen." He explained: "One feels, indeed, as if it were not Hebrew; such a noble universality, different from noble patriotism or sectarianism, reigns in it. A noble Book; all men's Book! It is our first, oldest statement of the never-ending Problem,—man's destiny, and God's ways with him here in this earth. And all in such free flowing outlines; grand in its sincerity, in its simplicity; in its epic melody and repose of reconciliation. There is the seeing eye, the mildly understanding heart. So *true* every way; true eyesight and

vision for all things; material things no less than spiritual. . . . Sublime sorrow, sublime reconciliation; oldest choral melody as of the heart of mankind;—so soft, and great; as the summer midnight, as the world with its seas and stars! There is nothing written, I think, in the Bible or out of it, of equal literary merit.” Melville doubtless agreed with this high praise, and even more would have applauded Coleridge’s analysis in *Table Talk*, entry for 29 May 1830: “The Book of Job is an Arab poem, antecedent to the Mosaic dispensation. It represents the mind of a good man not enlightened by an actual revelation, but seeking about for one. In no other book is the desire and necessity for a Mediator so intensely expressed. The personality of God, the I AM of the Hebrews, is most vividly impressed on the Book, in opposition to Pantheism. . . . Satan in the prologue, does not mean the devil, our Diabolus. There is no calumny in his words. He is rather the *circuitor*, the accusing spirit, a dramatic attorney-general. But after the prologue, which was necessary to bring the imagination into a proper state for the dialogue, we hear no more of this Satan.” For Melville, even less a Pantheist than Coleridge, the search for a revelation was the cardinal point. And Melville was equally aware that Satan was not merely an external force; drawing an analogy between Ahab and Prometheus on p. 200, he pointed out: “a vulture feeds upon that heart for ever; that vulture the very creature he creates.” Still this heart-vulture grew from man’s awareness of an alien nature, and the whale was for Melville, as the Leviathan for Job, the symbol of the brute inscrutable power of nature, not always beneficently disposed toward man. (See note on *Moby Dick* 175.9.) Melville sought, as Job had sought—and later the Gnostics and the Manicheans in different ways—an explanation for the existence of evil in the world. Most of the scholarly interpretation of Job in Melville’s day stemmed from the nine volumes of Joseph Caryl’s *An Exposition with Observations upon . . . the Book of Job* (1641-1666), which was doubtless the work Hawthorne found stored in the garret and described in “The Old Manse” sketch in *Mosses from an old Manse* (Sealts, No. 248): “a dissertation on the Book of Job—which only Job himself could have patience to read—filled at least a score of small, thickset quartos, at the rate of two or three volumes to a chapter.” Caryl expounded Satan’s appearance in Job i-ii (Vol. 1, p. 141): “. . . Satan would break your backs if he were let alone, but God will not suffer it. Satan hath a boundlesse malice against the people of God. Some observe this from his name Leviathan, Isa. 27.1 *In that day the lord with his great and strong Sword shall punish Leviathan the piercing Serpent. Leviathan is put here for Satan and all the instruments of Satan. Now Leviathan signifieth in the Hebrew*

an *augmentation*, and *addition*, or an *increase*. And Satan is so called because (say they) he ever desires to lay more burdens upon, to increase the afflictions, troubles, and temptations of God's people, he never thinks he has done enough against them. His thirst to work mischief is never quenched. . . ." That the Puritans accepted this definition of the word *Leviathan* is clear from Cotton Mather's boast, in the *Magnalia*, of his part in dismembering the body of the Indian King Philip: "it was not long before the hand which now writes, upon a certain occasion took off the jaw from the exposed skull of that blasphemous leviathan." And Taylor's edition of *Calmet's Great Dictionary of the Holy Bible* (Charlestown, 1812) sanctioned the definition: "This word the fathers understand generally, in a moral sense, of the devil, the enemy of mankind, the serpent." In Vol. 9, in commenting on Job xli, Caryl preferred to interpret Leviathan quite literally as whale, in order to make room for a variety of allegorical interpretations (pp. 610-615, 658-662 *passim*). For Caryl "the mighty" referred to in xli, 25 were (p. 753) "the mighty of all sorts; not only mighty fishes, but mighty men: the stoutest Sea-men and Mariners, yea, Captains and Warriors at Sea, are afraid; and not only are they afraid *when he raiseth up himself* (like a moving mountain) but amazed with fear, and even struck dead with astonishment." And from the fact that Leviathan has no parallel on earth, noted in xli, 33, Caryl proceeded to the reflection (p. 776): "Some men are so bad, that they have not their like; it was said of *Ahab*, *there was none like him*." The verse xli, 34 seemed to Caryl designed specifically to humble Job (p. 782), "lest the Devil, who desired to tempt him, should prevail upon him by suggesting proud and high thoughts of himself, and so make him a subject of his own kingdom; for he is that mystical Leviathan, who kings it to purpose over the children of pride." Essentially then, Caryl continued to equate the devil and Leviathan. Melville may not have read Caryl but unquestionably heard of his ideas through derived commentaries and through sermons preached on this book of the Bible. Leviathan was for Melville, of course, first and foremost the whale; after that, the particular whale Moby Dick was the symbol of nature, or the Emersonian Not-Me. Nature in its inimical aspects was certainly the adversary of mankind; on this point he would go along with Southey's Doctor Daniel Dove (see note on *Moby Dick* 175.9). The degree of conscious malignity in this adversary and the purpose for which it existed were the questions Melville, like Job, asked but did not answer. Moby Dick was, as Melville carefully insisted, "a Job's whale." The story of Ahab was the story of a man who chased it "with curses," and in vain.

184.36. *The subterranean miner that works in us all*: Compare

Emerson, "Experience": "the subterranean and invisible tunnels and channels of life." See also De Quincey, *Suspira de Profundis*, "The Palimpsest": "... countless are the mysterious hand-writings of grief or joy which have inscribed themselves upon the palimpsest of your brain. . . . They are not dead, but sleeping. . . . In some potent convulsion of the system, all wheels back into its earliest elementary stage." See also *Suspira*, Part 2: "And if the reader has (which so few have) the passion, without which there is no reading of the legend and superscription on man's brow, if he is not (as most are) deaf as the grave to every *deep* note that sighs upwards from the Delphic caves of human life, he will know that the rapture of life . . . does not arise, unless as perfect music arises . . . by the confluence of the mighty and terrific discords with the subtle concords." A similar figure appeared in *Mardi*, chap. 75: "Thus deeper and deeper into Time's endless tunnel does the winged soul, like a night-hawk, wend her wild way; and finds eternities before and behind; and her last limit her everlasting beginning."

185.6. *THE WHITENESS OF THE WHALE*: In reviewing Cooper's novel in the *Literary World*, 16 March 1850, Vol. 6, p. 276, Melville remarked: "Egostistically, then, we should have preferred for the 'Red Rover' a flaming suit of flame-colored morocco, as evanescently thin and gauze-like as possible, so that the binding might happily correspond with the sanguinary, fugitive title of the book." With the same feeling that exteriors should appropriately indicate interiors, he wrote this chapter. The actual whale of J. N. Reynolds's story had been white (see note on *Moby Dick* 175.9); Melville took over that color for his whale only because he saw the possibilities of making it "the whiteness of the whale that above all things appalled." M. O. Percival, *A Reading of Moby-Dick* (1950), p. 22, has suggested that the mysterious fusion of the contraries of spirituality and fearlessness in the whiteness of the whale was "but a reflection, in the somewhat deceptive world of sense, of the union of moral contraries, and, indeed, of all contraries, in the world of ultimate reality." More likely Melville began with some actual theory of color such as the popularized version of the Newtonian ideas in an article entitled "The Doctrine of Colours" in the *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge* (then edited by Hawthorne), May 1836, Vol. 2, p. 375: "The gay colouring with which the Almighty has decked the pale marble of nature, is not the result of any quality inherent in the coloured body, or in the particles by which it may be tinged, but is merely a property of the light in which they happen to be placed. Newton was the first person who placed this great

truth in the clearest evidence. He found that all bodies, whatever were their peculiar colours, exhibited these colours only in white light. . . . Hence the colours of material bodies are owing to the property which they possess of stopping certain rays of white light, while they reflect or transmit to the eye the rest of the rays of which white light is composed." The extensive discussions between Eckermann and Goethe of the latter's theory of colors must also have raised more questions in Melville's mind. As the entry for 1 February 1827 in the *Conversations* made clear, Goethe was primarily concerned with "whether a colour really exists externally to ourselves, or whether it is only a seeming colour which the eye itself has produced," perhaps because "the eye has need of change . . . so urgently that it produces colours itself if it does not actually find them." With Goethe's idea in mind Melville could speak at the end of the chapter of "the wretched infidel" who refused "to wear colored and coloring glasses." The introduction of the psychological need of the eye for change would for Melville necessarily thwart all hope for ultimate truth, and it was precisely the inscrutability of Moby Dick that made him inspire terror. Besides Coleridge's poem which he mentioned, Melville must have had in mind the magnificent final chapter of Poe's *The Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym* (1838) when he worked out the possibilities of white as "a colorless, all-color of atheism" and inscrutable mystery. White inspired the same note of terror in Poe's climactic description of the approach to the South Pole: "The heat of the water was oppressive . . . and its milky hue was more evident than ever. . . . A fine white powder resembling ashes. . . . fell over the canoe and over a large surface of the water, as the flickering died away among the vapour. . . . To-day there floated by us one of the white animals whose appearance upon the beach at Tsalal had occasioned so wild a commotion among the savages. . . . from out the milky depths of the ocean a luminous glare arose, and stole up along the bulwarks of the boat. We were nearly overwhelmed by the white ashy shower which settled upon us and upon the canoe. . . . The darkness had materially increased, relieved only by the glare of the water thrown back from the white curtain before us. Many gigantic and pallidly white birds flew continuously now from beyond the veil. . . . And now we rushed into the embraces of the cataract, where a chasm opened to receive us. But there arose in our pathway a shrouded human figure, very far larger in its proportions than any dweller among men. And the hue of the skin of the figure was of the perfect whiteness of the snow." In *White-Jacket*, chap. 1, the narrator's make-shift jacket became a symbol of mystery because it

was "in the dark night, gleaming white, as the White Lady of Avenel" in Scott's *The Monastery*. Perhaps Sir Thomas Browne (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90) made some contribution from his three chapters treating "Of the Blackness of Negroes" and "A Digression concerning Blackness," in *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 6, for in the second of these, chap. 11, he noted: "Lastly, whereas men affirm this colour was a curse, I cannot make out the propriety of that name, it neither seeming so to them, nor reasonably unto us, for they take so much content therein, that they esteem deformity by other colours, describing the devil and terrible objects white. . . ." W. H. Wells, "Moby-Dick and Rabelais," *Modern Language Notes*, Febr. 1923, Vol. 38, p. 123, has pointed out numerous parallels with Rabelais, Book 1, chap. 10, "Of that which is Signified by the Colours White and Blue," where the French writer demonstrated that "by white all the world hath understood joy, gladness, mirth, pleasure, and delight"—only a small part of Melville's idea. Robert Southey in *The Doctor*, Vol. 6, chap. 200: "A Chapter of Kings," undertook to identify the monarch of various insect, animal, and bird species. The kings of the goats, asses, crows were white; the king of the horses, white with yellow ears; the otter king had a white spot on his breast, the sheep king a white left ear, the camel king two white ears. Duly considering and rejecting the whale's claim to be the monarch of the seas, Southey concluded: "But the Great Fish who is undoubtedly King of Fish, and of all creatures that exist in the sea, Whales, Mermen-and-Maids included, is the fish Arez, which Ormuzd created, and placed in the water that surrounds Hom, the King of Trees, to protect that sacred aboreal Majesty against the Great Toad sent there by Ahriman to destroy it." The color of Arez Southey did not specify, but it too may have worn the royal white of so many of its fellow monarchs. Assuredly in Melville's mind Moby Dick had no less majesty and no less divine a function than Arez. Like the Leviathan of Job xli, 34, by inscrutable divine dispensation, he too was "a king over all the children of pride."

185.24. "Lord of the White Elephants": Compare *Mardi*, chap. 68: "the regal white elephants of Siam." See also *Natural History: The Elephant* (Harper's Family Library, Vol. 164-1842), p. 208, of the King of Siam: "But the greatest dignity of this illustrious monarch is that he is 'king of the white elephant, which elephant is the king of elephants, before whom many thousands of other elephants must bow and fall upon their knees.' The white elephant, for the possession of which there was perpetual war between the kings of Siam and Pegu, and Aracan, in the sixteenth century—for which five kings lost their lives, and many thousands of their subjects were slaughtered—is an Albino, that is, an animal made white by disease." See also

the same volume, p. 213: "The veneration which, in the Birman empire, is paid to the white elephant, is in some degree connected with the doctrine of the Metempsychosis. Xaca sustained seventy thousand transmigrations through various animals, and rested in the white elephant." See also reference to Siamese white elephant, p. 380.

186.1. *among the Romans a white stone*: Compare Rabelais, Book 1, chap. 10: "In former times the Thracians and Cretans did mark their good, propitious, and fortunate days with white stones." See also Andrew Crichton, *History of Arabia* (Harper's Family Library, Vol. 69), Vol. 2, p. 327: the typical Egyptian greeting was "May your day be white," and the standard reply, "May yours be as milk." See also Revelations ii, 17: "To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it."

186.6. *the white belt of wampum*: See note on *the sacred White Dog* 186.15. The idea of white wampum as "a pledge of truth" occurred frequently in writings about the Indians; see, for instance, Henry R. Schoolcraft, *The Indian in His Wigwam* (1848), p. 405, the "Odjibwa Song." In the same volume, p. 95, the Osage legend of "Washbashas" described the Great Spirit as riding a white horse.

186.12. *the Persian fire worshippers*: See note on *Fedallah* 215.23.

186.14. *Jove . . . a snow-white bull*: In Addison's translation of "Europa's Rape," from Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, Book 2, the phrase was "the milk-white bull." "A snow-white Bull" was, however, the term used in R. A. Scott, "The Rape of Europa. A Marine Dialogue. (From Lucian)," *Literary World*, 24 April 1847, Vol. 1, p. 276. Paul Veronese's "Rape of Europa" hung in the National Gallery in London when Melville visited there 8 and 12 November and 17 December 1849, but he did not specifically mention it; see *Journal*, pp. 24, 28, 74.

186.15. *Iroquois . . . of the sacred White Dog*: See the advance excerpt from Lewis H. Morgan, *League of the Ho-de-no-sau-nee or Iroquois* (Rochester, 1851), Book 2, chap. 2, published in the *Literary World*, 28 December 1850, Vol. 7, pp. 521-523, under the heading "New Year's Festivities of the Iroquois": "Among the ceremonies incident to the worship of the Iroquois, the most novel were those which ushered in the new year. In mid-winter, usually about the first of February, this religious celebration was held. . . . The prominent act which characterized this jubilee, and which, perhaps, indicated what they understood by 'The most excellent faith,' was the burning of the White Dog, on the fifth day of the festival. . . . On the first day, however, the White Dog was strangled. They selected a dog free from physical blemish, and of pure white, if such an one

could be found. The white deer, white squirrel, and other chance animals of the albino kind, were regarded as consecrated to the Great Spirit. White was the Iroquois emblem of purity and faith. In strangling the dog, they were careful neither to shed his blood nor break his bones. The dog was then spotted over his body and limbs, with red paint, and ornamented with feathers in various ways. Around his neck was hung a string of white wampum, the pledge of their sincerity. In modern times the dog is ornamented with a profusion of many colored ribbons, which are adjusted around his body and limbs. The ornaments placed on the dog were the voluntary offerings of the pious; for each gift thus bestowed, the giver was taught to expect a blessing. When the dog had been thus decorated, it was suspended by the neck eight feet from the ground, on the branching prong of a pole erected for that purpose. Here it hung night and day, until the morning of the fifth day, when it was taken down to be burned. . . . It is difficult, from outward observation, to draw forth the true intent with which the dog was burned. . . . The dog had not the slightest connexion with the sins of the people. On the contrary, the simple idea of the sacrifice was, to send up the spirit of the dog as a messenger to the Great Spirit, to announce their continued fidelity to his service, and also to convey to him their united thanks for the blessings of the year. The fidelity of the dog, the companion of the Indian, as a hunter, was emblematical of their fidelity. No messenger so trusty could be found to bear their petitions to the Master of Life. . . . They hung around his neck a string of white wampum, the pledge of their faith. . . . This sacrifice was the most solemn and impressive manner of drawing near to the Great Spirit known to the Iroquois. . . . The burning of the dog was attended with many ceremonies. . . . A speech . . . made over it by one of the keepers of the faith. . . . A chant or song, appropriate to the occasion . . . the people joining in chorus. . . . A procession . . . the officiating keeper of the faith preceding, followed by four others bearing the dog upon a kind of bark litter, behind which came the people in Indian file. . . . They moved on toward the altar, and having marched around it, the keepers of the faith halted, facing the rising sun. . . ."

In Morgan's anonymous publication of some of his material under the title of "Letters on the Iroquois" in the *American (Whig) Review*, February, March, May, and November, 1847, there was no description of the ceremony, but the barest mention, in the March installment, Vol. 5, p. 254, of "the annual sacrifice of the White Dog, in mid-winter." Timothy Dwight, whose work Melville casually referred to in the opening of "Hawthorne and His Mosses," as part of his summer reading for 1850, included three letters on "The Iroquois" in his

Travels; in New-England and New-York (New Haven, 1822), Vol. 4, and on pp. 203, 213-14, gave a brief description of this Indian ceremony, but without mention, however, that the dog was white! Aside from its service in Melville's account of the psychological values of whiteness, the *Literary World* article's details of the decoration of the dog may have contributed to the picture of Moby Dick, as he appeared on the third day of the chase, "bedraggled with trailing ropes, and harpoons, and lances," bearing the corpse of Fedallah: "Lashed round and round to the fish's back; pinioned in the turns upon turns in which, during the past night, the whale had reeled the involutions of the lines around him, the half-torn body of the Parsee was seen."

186.24. *the Vision of St. John*: Compare Rabelais, Book 1, chap. 10: "With the like vesture did St. John the Evangelist, Apoc. 4.7, see the faithful clothed in the heavenly and blessed Jerusalem." See especially Revelations i, 14, of Christ: "His head and his hairs were white as wool, as white as snow. . . ." and iv. 4, "I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment. . . ." There was further reference to white robes in Revelations iii, 5; vii, 9, 13, 14. John Bunyan, *The Holy War*, chap. 11, following the Biblical story, described the capture of Mansoul and the robing of the people in white. It is worth noting that J. N. Reynolds had used the phrase "*white as wool*" to describe Mocha Dick (see note on *Moby Dick* 175.9).

186.35. *the white bear of the poles*: Compare Esaias Tegner, *Frithiof's Saga* (Sealts, No. 500), Canto 10:

"Now two storm-fiends came

Against Ellida's side;

One was wind-cold Ham,

One was snowy Heyd.

• • • • •

A whale before Ellida gliding,

Like a loose island, seeth he,

And two base ocean demons riding

Upon his back, the stormy sea.

Heyd, in snow-garb shining brightly,

In semblance of an icy bear;

Ham, his loud wings flapping widely,

Like a storm-bird high in air.

'Now, Ellida. . . .

Upl and with thy keel of copper

Sting this magic whale.'

• • • • •

Now heed Ellida giveth
 Unto her Lord's behest:
 With a bound she cleaveth
 Deep the monster's breast.

• • • •

Together now two darts are cast,
 Flung by Frithiof's arm so fierce:
 Through the ice-bear one hath passed,
 One the storm-bird's breast doth pierce."

See also the account of the enormous Polar bear Peters killed in Poe's *Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym*, chap. 17: "Nothing discouraged [by several bullets in head and body], the monster threw himself from the ice and swam with open jaws to the boat in which were Peters and myself."

186.36. *the white shark of the tropics*: See the account of "the ghastly White Shark" in *Mardi*, chap. 13: "This ghost of a fish is not often encountered, and shows plainer by night than by day. Timon-like, he always swims by himself; gliding along just under the surface, revealing a long, vague shape, of a milky hue; with glimpses now and then of his bottomless white pit of teeth. . . . Seen at night, stealing along like a spirit in the water, with horrific serenity of aspect, the White Shark sent many a thrill to us twain in the Chamois." *Glimpses of the Wonderful. Third Series* (New York: G. P. Putnam, 1849) described in detail the capture of a white shark off the coast of Ceylon, and added, p. 56, an interesting comment on Jonah's sea monster: "By the generality of learned men, this fish is supposed to have been an enormous shark, which God had appointed to swallow up the prophet for his rebellion." According to Jay Leyda, *The Melville Log*, p. 402, the material for Melville's own note came from Baron Cuvier's (*The Class Pisces*) of *The Animal Kingdom* (London, 1834), Vol. 10, p. 632, where Melville checked in a supplement on sharks the item: "The French name this terrible animal *Requin*, from requiem, the rest or stillness of death, in allusion to the deadly character of its habits. . . ." Since Melville's copy of Cuvier was presented him by his brother Allan 1 January 1851 and the item on the white dog of the Iroquois appeared only in the 28 December 1850 issue of the *Literary World*, it is likely that Melville did not conceive this cardinal chapter until fairly late in the writing of the book.

187.6. *Not Coleridge first threw that spell*: Of his first sight of the albatross, Melville could have said as R. H. Dana, Jr., did, in *Two Years before the Mast*, chap. 5: "I had been interested in the bird

from descriptions, and Coleridge's poem, and was not at all disappointed." Most narratives of antarctic voyaging had accounts of the albatross, and many made allusions to "The Rime of the Ancient Mariner." Coleridge's poem notably contributed to this entire chapter. Although the albatross figured prominently in "The Rime," it was never specified as white. Coleridge "threw that spell" by letting this obvious fact go unmentioned and concentrating on details of "mist," "snow," "ice," "clouds," "shrouds," "fog-smoke white," "the white Moon-shine," "skin . . . white as leprosy," "tracks of shining white" made by water-snakes, and bays "white with silent light." Melville's method, though different, was equally vivid in creating the effect of starkness, spiritual fright, and unfathomable mystery.

188.2. *the White Steed of the Prairies*: See James Hall, *The Wilderness and the War Path* (New York: Wiley and Putnam, 1846; Library of American Books), Note II (on the initial story in the volume, "The Black Steed of the Prairies"), Appendix, pp. 169-170: "A tradition has been current for several years past, among the Indians and traders, in relation to a very remarkable horse, supposed to be the leader of a herd of these animals, roaming on the Western plains. Many profess to have seen the 'White Steed,' and describe him as a horse of splendid figure and action, and of such surpassing fleetness, sagacity, and courage, that he baffles every attempt to capture him. The extraordinary beauty of this noble steed, and the exquisite gracefulness of his movements, as he plays round the grazing drove, or scours the prairie before the eager pursuers, have rendered him an object of intense interest to the wild hunters. Travellers speak of the existence of this fine creature as an admitted fact; and we tell the tale as it was told to us; but as others may have used the same tale, and we have no ambition to acquire fame as a taker of other men's horses, we have made ours a horse of a different colour." In the story proper Hall gives further characterizing phrases of his re-colored steed, pp. 17-18: "He was also celebrated as the owner of the 'Black Steed of the Prairies,' a remarkably fleet, strong and beautiful horse, of a deep sable, without spot or blemish. This noble animal was taken wild upon the plains, where he was the leader of a herd, and by his fine form and carriage had attracted the attention of all hunters. There was not a brave who did not long to possess this fine steed, who, as he swept gracefully over the plain, outstripped his fellows in swiftness, as much as he excelled them in beauty; and many attempts were made to catch him, but all in vain, until he fell into the hands of his present master, who soon rendered him perfectly manageable."—pp. 25-26: "Some shook their heads mysteriously, and whispered to each

other their suspicions that the Black Steed was a medicine—a spirit—a manito, who had tarried with the Flatheads just as long as was perfectly convenient and agreeable to himself, and had then vanished or transformed himself into some other shape. He might be lurking near, in some den, in the form of a great rattlesnake, or hovering over their heads in that of a vulture, or grinning at them through the teeth of a raccoon, from an overhanging ledge of rock. The old women thought it prudent to speak of him but briefly, and in terms of marked respect. Several braves were now ready to testify what had not been suggested before—that they had often, when following the Black Steed, looked for his tracks, but had uniformly been disappointed; this wonderful horse having the faculty of passing over the ground with the swiftness of wind, without leaving the print of his footsteps.”

188.n.12. *the Captain made a Postman of it*: See J. Ross Browne, p. 207: “In the latitude of the Cape of Good Hope we caught, with a hook and line, an albatross, measuring twelve feet between the tips of the wings. The mate set him adrift with a tally round his neck, dated, and marked with the name of the vessel.”

189.8. *the Albino man*: Compare William and Robert Chambers, eds., *Information for the People. A Popular Encyclopedia* (Philadelphia, 1847), Vol. 1, p. 66: “The Albinoes are scarcely to be called a variety of mankind, being a race whose peculiarities depend on defects. Red eyes and white hair are their chief features, though these features vary a little according to the race to which the individual belongs; and there are Albinoes to be found in almost all countries. The redness of the eye depends on the absence of pigment on the choroid coat, permitting the red blood-vessels to be seen. From a deficiency in the power of absorbing the rays of light, which purpose is served by the pigment, the eyes of Albinoes are weak. The Albinoes of the black race are called white negroes, from the color of their skin, and they have white woolly hair. Among the copper-coloured natives of the Darien isthmus, Albinoes are common. Their bodies are of a milk-white tint, covered with short down; and they have white hair, with red eyes. They love such light as the moon gives, and by night are all life and activity, while by day they are miserable, the rays of the sun making their weak eyes stream with water.” The white elephant was an Albino; see note on *Lord of the White Elephant* 185.24.

189.19. *the White Squall*: See note on *White squalls* 174.35. The reference on p. 174 seems a deliberate anticipation of the extended development of the whiteness theme here.

189.23. *White Hoods of Ghent*: In 1379 in a local war over the

issue of the town's franchises, Roger Dauterve, bailiff of the Earl of Flanders, was killed in the market place of Ghent by a band of the White Hoods (or White Hats), led by Johan Lyon. See Sir John Froissart's *Chronicles of England, France and Spain* (Sir John Bouchier, Lord Berners, trans.), Part I, chap. 350; or Book 10, sec. 108 of the French edition.

189.35. *the king of terrors . . . his pallid horse*: See Revelations vi, 8: "And I looked, and behold a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth." Compare vi, 2: "And I saw, and behold a white horse: and he that sat on him had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering, and to conquer."

190.30. *the White Tower of London*: "The venerable quadrangular mass of the White Tower," as it was called by Charles Knight—whose *London* Melville purchased 15 December 1849 (Sealts, No. 312), was 116 feet by 96 feet, and 92 feet high. Legend attributed parts of the structure to Julius Caesar, but its Norman architecture more certainly assigned it to William the Conqueror, 1078. Whitened during the reign of Henry III, it received only then its present name. Its already sinister reputation made the barons refuse to hold Parliament within its precincts in 1236. Here Raymond Lully, alchemist, performed experiments during the reign of Edward I. In its Council Chamber Richard II was deposed. Its walls, from twelve to fifteen feet thick, made it an admirable state prison during one period; in a small horse-shoe shaped room Sir Walter Raleigh spent thirteen years. Until the time of the Civil War, coronation processions always originated here and proceeded to Westminster. Here in 1662 Samuel Pepys vainly hunted for buried treasure. It was indeed an edifice to move strongly "the imagination of an untravelled American," and Herman Melville—more travelled than most—was evidently strongly moved on his visit of 10 November 1849, though his *Journal* entry for that day (p. 27) gave most space to "Turkish armor (chain)," "superb cannon," and "the headsman's block." According to a later edition of Knight, Melville was one of 45,474 visitors for the year 1849.

190.33. *the White Mountains of New Hampshire*: See note on *the valley of the Saco*, 2.29. Compare Melville's view of London from Primrose Hill, 15 November 1849, *Journal*, p. 32: "The view was curious. Towards Hampstead the open country looked green, & the air was pretty clear; but cityward it was like a view of hell from Abraham's bosom. Clouds of smoke, as though you looked down

from Mt. Washington in a mist." Melville traveled through the White Mountains on his wedding journey in August 1847.

191.6. *"the tall pale man" of the Hartz forests*: See Bayard Taylor, *View A-Foot* (Sealts, No. 495), chaps. 16 and 17 for an account of the various ghosts of the Hartz region, and De Quincey's *Suspira de Profundis*, "The Apparition of the Brocken," for the suggestion of the Spectre's mystical power "to recall you to your own lurking thoughts . . . and to place before you, in immediate connection with groups vanishing too quickly for any effort of meditation on your part, such commentaries, prophetic or looking back, pointing the moral or deciphering the mystery, justifying Providence, or mitigating the fierceness of anguish, as would or might have occurred to your own meditative heart, had only time been allowed for its motions." Compare Shelley, "The Spectral Horseman," lines 28-30:

"A white courser bears the shadowy sprite;
More thin they are than the mists of the mountain,
When the pale moonlight sleeps on the waveless lake."

191.8. *the whooping imps of the Blocksburg*: The Blocksburg, or Brocken, was the mountain of the Harz where the legendary gathering of the witches took place on Walpurgis-Night. Goethe's *Faust*, Part 1, scene 21, portrayed the witches' convocation. This scene and the differences involved in the "Classical Walpurgis-Night" of Part 2 were frequent topics of discussion between Goethe and Eckermann, as reported in the *Conversations*, entries for 29 Nov. 1826, 15 Jan. 1827, 17 Febr. 1829, and 21 Febr. 1831. Goethe claimed Lavater was represented as a crane in the first scene, because he walked like a crane. See also *Redburn*, chap. 49: "Now come, hands joined, Medusa, Hecate, she of Endor, and the Blocksberg's demons dire."

191.18. *Lima has taken the white veil*: Melville on 48 hour leave from the frigate *United States*, while in the harbor at Callao, Peru, visited Lima sometime between 28 Dec. 1843 and 3 Jan. 1844; it is unlikely that he made more than this one visit. Founded by Francisco Pizarra in 1535, the ancient capital of the viceroys was largely destroyed by earthquake in 1746. Earthquakes in 1687 and 1828 also caused extensive damage; but the cathedral consecrated in 1625, a stone bridge of 1610, and the bull-ring seating 8000 people, built in 1768, all survived into Melville's day, as well as more than 50 churches and several monasteries and convents built before Peruvian independence in 1821. Melville's picture of "the strangest, saddest city" and "this whiteness of her woe" seems much exaggerated when com-

pared with the account given in *Deck and Port* (1850), chaps. 8 and 9, by the Rev. Walter Colton, Chaplain of the U.S. frigate *Congress*, who visited the Peruvian capital for some six weeks only a little more than two years after Melville was there. Colton noted that "all the buildings in Lima have about them the evidences of decay," and that the Cathedral, which towered over all "in its solemn magnificence," and the other churches of Lima impressed "more through the magnificence of their proportions than any richness of architecture," because "they are generally built of a coarse freestone, stuccoed and painted" which made them "betray their poverty on a closer vision." He noted also that since the great earthquake of 1746, houses had generally been confined to one story, with flat roofs, and walls "uniformly of sun-baked bricks." But Colton found numerous instances of color. The facades of the more pretentious houses had "fresco paintings, and gilded window-frames, glimmering through the evergreens which fill the court." And "almost every house betrays the Moorish origin of its architecture in its veranda. . . . a long, capacious bird-cage, fastened to the wall; it is composed of lattice-work, and is painted green." "Architectural grandeur and cloisteral luxury" described the Franciscan convent and its church, which "showers its rich gilding on you from pavement to dome." The shops which opened on the colonnades around the grand square contained "all the elegant products of art and mechanical ingenuity." The citizenry were a "motley crowd in color and costume," with many of the women wearing gayly-figured shawls, and college boys looking like "little military captains" strutting about in "cocked hats and laced coats" with "gilt buttons." With religious processions, and bull fights, and weekly lotteries offering all sorts of prizes of silver, Lima was not lacking in gaiety and color. Chaplain Colton did not approve of many of its activities, but he found no "rigid pallor" in the physical appearance or in the spirit of this City of the Kings. Whiteness was, for Melville, the arbitrary symbol for what struck him as the iniquity of Lima. See note on *Corrupt as Lima* 249.12.

191.35. *under precisely similar circumstances*: See Bennett, Vol. 1, p. 290: "A shoal of porpoises came around us at this time; and as they sported in the luminous ocean, darting rapidly beneath the surface, their dark bodies enveloped, as it were, in liquid fire, they tended to complete a scene which, if correctly pictured, would appear rather as the fiction of a fairy tale than the effect of natural causes. This sudden and mysterious change in the appearance of the sea occasioned an alarm of shoals; and the lead was cast, but no soundings could be obtained."

192.26. *young colt, foaled in . . . Vermont . . . shake a fresh buffalo robe*: A metaphor in harmony with the British captain's fear expressed in Francis Parkman, *The Oregon Trail*, chap. 4: "Supposing a hundred Pawnees should jump up out of that ravine, all yelling and flapping their buffalo robes, in the way they do! Why in two minutes, not a hoof would be in sight." The behavior of Parkman's own horse, Pontiac, in Chap. 7, was in confirmation of this instinctive fear: "the novel sight of the buffalo filled him with terror." Melville reviewed Parkman's book in the *Literary World*, 31 March 1849, Vol. 4, pp. 291-293.

193.12. *this visible world seems formed in love, the invisible spheres . . . formed in fright*: Compare Emerson, *Nature*, chap. 4: "The visible world and the relation of its parts, is the dial plate of the invisible."

193.18. *the very veil of the Christian's deity*: Compare Carlyle, *On Heroes*. . . (Sealts, No. 122), Lecture 1: "Balder . . . the White God, the beautiful, the just and benignant (whom the early Christian Missionaries found to resemble Christ) is the Sun."

193.27. *a colorless, all-color of atheism*: Compare *Mardi*, chap. 13: "There are more wonders than the wonders rejected, and more sights unrevealed than you or I ever dreamt of. Moles and bats alone should be skeptics; and the only true infidelity is for a live man to vote himself dead. Be Sir Thomas Browne our ensample; who, while exploding 'Vulgar Errors,' heartily hugged all the mysteries of the Pentateuch." See also *Mardi*, chap. 97: "The higher the intelligence, the more faith, and the less credulity: Gabriel rejects more than we, but out-believes us all."

193.34. *Nature . . . the charnel-house*: Compare *Mardi*, chap. 137, Babbalanja: "The essence of all good and all evil is in us, not out of us . . . nature is an immaculate virgin, forever standing unrobed before us." See Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123), Book 1, chap. 8: "Whence? How? Whereto? The answer lies around, written in all colours and motions, uttered in all tones of jubilee and wail, in thousand-figured, thousand-voiced, harmonious Nature; but where is the cunning eye and ear to whom that God-written Apocalypse will yield articulate meaning?" In the same chapter Teufelsdröckh drew a contrast between Nature as "*the living visible Garment of God*" and himself, "a moving Rag-screen, overheaped with shreds and tatters raked from the Charnelhouse of Nature." See also Book 3, chap. 3: "Ever in the dullest existence there is a sheen either of Inspiration or Madness (thou partly hast it in thy choice, which of the two), that gleams in from the circumambient Eternity, and colours with its own

hues our little islet of Time. The Understanding is indeed thy window, too clear thou canst not make it; but Fantasy is thy eye, with its colour-giving retina, healthy or diseased." This entire clause was omitted in the English edition.

194.3. *like wilful travellers in Lapland*: The cynic in Hawthorne's "The Great Carbuncle" in *Twice-Told Tales* (Sealts, Nos. 258, 259, 260) wore "colored spectacles" in the quest for the Great Carbuncle, which by some was "deemed little better than a traffic with the evil one," and refused to see the jewel, until, urged by Matthew, "with resolute bravado . . . he snatched them from his nose and fixed a bold stare upon the ruddy blaze." Then the light from the great jewel faded and the cynic was blinded: "The cynic, having cast aside his spectacles, wandered about the world a miserable object, and was punished for the willful blindness of his former life. The whole night long he would lift his splendor-blasted orbs to the moon and stars; he turned his face eastward at sunrise as duly as a Persian idolator . . . and finally perished in the Great Fire of London, into the midst of which he had thrust himself with the desperate idea of catching one feeble ray from the blaze that was kindling earth and heaven." Note Melville's reference to Persian fire-worshippers earlier in this chapter, p. 186.

194.23. *Cholo*: See *Mardi*, chap. 22: "a couple of Cholos, or half-breed Spaniards, from the Main; one half Spanish, the other half quartered between the wild Indian and the devil; a race, that from Baldivia to Panama are notorious for their unscrupulous villainy." See also "Norfolk Isle and the Chola Widow," the eighth sketch of "The Encantadas," *Piazza Tales* (C.W.), pp. 180-193.

194.31. *Caramba*: Spanish interjection of surprise or mild disgust.

195.12. *THE CHART*: Most of Melville's chapter had its inception in Commodore Charles Wilkes' *Narrative of the United States Exploring Expedition . . . 1838-1842* (Philadelphia, 1845), Vol. 5, chap. 12, "Currents and Whaling." Facing p. 457 was a map of the currents and whaling grounds. Wilkes began: "It may at first sight appear singular that subjects apparently so dissimilar as currents and whaling should be united to form the subject of one chapter. Before its conclusion, however, we trust to establish satisfactorily that the course of the great currents of the ocean, sweeping with them the proper food of the great cetaceous animals, determines not only the places to which they are in the habit of resorting, but the seasons at which they are to be found frequenting them." See *Trying-Out*, pp. 181-86.

196.n2. *Lieutenant Maury*: On 16 April 1851, Matthew Fontaine Maury (1806-1873), the famous oceanographer and then Director

of the Naval Observatory in Washington, issued a second and enlarged edition of his *Explanations and Sailing Directors to Accompany Lieut. Maury's Investigation of the Wind and Current Charts*. In this book (probably Melville's "circular"), Maury discussed his scheme to chart the main whaling grounds after a study of whale captains' log books, to assist whalemens more profitably to hunt sperm whales. He printed some samples of his plan. The whaling chart itself (a fine copy given by Maury to Edward Everett is in the Boston Public Library) did not appear until after *Moby-Dick*. It was not of much use to whaling captains since grounds became exhausted faster than any map maker could keep up with the news. (See *Trying-Out*, pp. 184-86.) Perhaps Melville picked up his information about Maury from Cheever, p. 107: "It is the opinion of Lieutenant Maury, of the United States National Observatory, that all the whales in the Pacific Ocean have particular resorts at certain seasons of the year, where the whalers may generally expect to find them, just as the shad, herring, and other fish are periodically found. He is endeavoring to work out this conclusion, and to fix the localities of whales' resorts by a comparison of the logs of a vast number of whalers. It is easy to see that, if he should succeed, it will be of great importance to the whaling interest, as it will reduce the expense of outfits by shortening the time of voyages, and making their results more sure and speedy."

197.31. *Seychelle ground*: The Seychelles Islands are northeast of Madagascar. Samuel Enderby first opened the fishery there, with the *Swan*, 1823, under Capt. M'Lain.

198.13. *that tragic spot*: On p. 121, the old Gay-Head Indian said Ahab "was dismasted off Japan." Perhaps in the earlier chapter Melville was recalling the celebrated encounter of the actual Mocha Dick with the English, Scotch, and American whaleships in that area (see note on *Moby Dick* 175.9), but later decided to make the scene of Ahab's dismasting along the Equator, where the *Pequod* was finally sunk.

198.31. *an interval . . . was before him*: Like much of the rest of the chapter, this passage seems to have been written from Wilkes, Vol. 5, p. 492: "To take the first route [by the Cape], they ought generally to time their departure so as to meet the season off New Zealand in March, and this is also the best course for ships sailing in autumn from the United States. They will then reach their whaling-ground at the earliest possible season."

199.7. *Mufti*: A consulting canon lawyer in Islam, who gives legal opinions, or *fatwas*, on points of the sacred law. The chief Mufti of Constantinople was head of the ecclesiastical side of the state, "the

Turkish Pope," as Pierre Bayle called him, *An Historical and Critical Dictionary*. . . . (Sealts, No. 51), Vol. 4, p. 425.

199.30. *this hell in himself*: Compare Sir Thomas Browne, *Religio Medici* (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), Part 1, Sec. 51: "The heart of man is the place the devils dwell in: I feel sometimes a hell within myself; Lucifer keeps his court in my breast; Legion is revived in me." See also *Paradise Lost* IV, 75: "Which way I fly is Hell; myself am Hell."

200.20. *Prometheus*: Compare Ahab's phrase on p. 554: "like a hawk's beak it pecks my brain." See Shelly, *Prometheus Unbound*, I, 34-37:

"Heaven's winged hound, polluting from thy lips
His beak in poison not his own, tears up
My heart; and shapeless sights come wandering by,
The ghastly people of the realm of dream. . . ."

Closer to Melville's idea was Byron, *Manfred* III, iv, 127-140:

"What I have done is done; I bear within
A torture which could nothing gain from thine:
The mind which is immortal makes itself
Requital for its good or evil thoughts,—
Is its own origin of ill and end
And its own place and time: its innate sense,
When stripp'd of this mortality, derives
No colour from the fleeting things without,
But is absorb'd in sufferance or in joy,
Born from the knowledge of its own desert.
Thou didst not tempt me, and thou could not tempt me;
I have not been thy dupe, nor am thy prey—
But was my own destroyer, and will be
My own hereafter."

See also the very favorable account of Thomas Cole's picture "Prometheus Bound to the Rock," then on exhibition at the New York Gallery, in the *Literary World*, 8 May 1847, Vol. 1, p. 323—the same issue with the review of *Omoo*. The reference to "that old Greek, Prometheus, who made men," on p. 466, came more likely from Goethe's comment on the Titan; see note on *Ahab* 79.17. Richard Chase, *Herman Melville* (1949), has made an extended analysis of the Prometheus theme in *Moby-Dick* and Melville's other books, some passages from which are quoted in the Introduction to this present volume.

201.29. *In the three-year instance:* Compare Cheever, pp. 157-58: "When old Captain Bunker, of New Bedford, of whom almost every body has heard, was on a cruise in the ship Howard, in north latitude thirty degrees thirty minutes, and east longitude one hundred and fifty-four degrees, he threw a harpoon into a large whale. But the whale was not captured, and the harpoon of course lost. It was about five years afterward, that, being precisely in the same latitude, and east longitude one hundred and forty, he made fast to a noble whale, and after a hard struggle succeeded in getting him alongside. And lo! when cutting him up, a harpoon, rusted off at the shank, was found fast anchored in the old fellow's 'cut-water.' 'Hallo!' said Captain Bunker, jesting, 'here is my missing old iron.' What he said in joke proved to be very truth, for the blubber-kept harpoon was the identical one he had lost five years before, having on it the ship's name and his own private mark."

202.20. *famous whales:* In his copy of Beale, p. 183, Melville marked the following passage, underlining "Timor Jack": "Numberless stories are told of fighting whales, many of which however, are probably much exaggerated accounts of the real occurrences. A large whale, called 'Timor Jack' is the hero of many strange stories, such as his destroying every boat which was sent out against him, until a contrivance was made by lashing a barrel to the end of a harpoon with which he was struck, and whilst his attention was directed and divided amongst several boats, means were found of giving him his death wound. In the year 1804, the ship 'Adonis,' being in company with several others, struck a large whale off the coast of New Zealand, which 'stove' or destroyed nine boats before breakfast, and the chase consequently was given up. After destroying boats belonging to many ships, this whale was at last captured, and many harpoons of the various ships that had from time to time been sent out against him were found sticking in his body. The whale was called 'New Zealand Tom,' and the tradition is carefully preserved by whalers." This passage was among the extracts from Beale included in the article on "The Whale" in William and Robert Chambers, eds., *Information for the People. A Popular Encyclopedia* (Philadelphia, 1847), Vol. 1, p. 125. Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 220, also referred to both of these whales, giving largely the same details, but adding that New Zealand Tom was "conspicuously distinguished by a white hump." Emerson noted in his *Journal*, 19 February 1834, hearing a story told by a seaman in a stage coach about a "white whale" called Old Tom, a sperm whale that rushed at several boats, until finally a vessel was sent out from New Bedford to get him and he was taken off Payta Head by the

Winslow or the *Essex*. The names given for the whaleships suggest an identification, in the seaman's mind or in Emerson's, of this whale with the whale which sank the *Essex* in 1820, since Owen Chase, mate on the *Essex*, later captained the *Winslow*. (See Robert Forsythe, "Emerson and 'Moby Dick,'" *Notes and Queries*, 23 Dec. 1939, Vol. 177, pp. 457-458.) New Zealand Tom may have been Emerson's Old Tom. See also J. Ross Browne, p. 448, where Captain F— of the *Bogota* "began a long yarn, in which he gave an account of 'old Joe Dunbar's' voyages to the Northwest Coast, and was just entering upon a marvelous yarn in relation to the capture of a white whale, when the consul cut him short;" and Harry Halyard, *The Doom of the Dolphin: or, The Sorceress of the Sea. A Tale of Love, Intrigue, and Mystery* (Boston, 1848), p. 83, a boat stove in by the flukes of a monstrous whale, a "regular old white-head eighty-barrel fellow." Browne's and Harry Halyard's whales may have been either Old Tom, New Zealand Tom, or the Mocha Dick of J. N. Reynolds. Morquan and Don Miguel appeared only in Melville.

202.27. *beach of Ombay*: Ombay is an island of the "Little Sundas" group of which the more famous Timor is the largest. It is in eastern Indonesia.

203.4. *Captain Butler . . . Annawon*: This Indian warrior, whom James Fenimore Cooper (*The Wept of Wish-ton-Wish*, 1827, chap. 26) called "the obedient and fierce Annawon, a savage that might, under better auspices, have proved a worthy lieutenant to Caesar," was captured by Capt. Benjamin Church, under commission from the Plymouth colony, Sept. 1676 near Rehoboth and Swanzey, Rhode Island. Melville's interest in these participants in King Philip's War may have stemmed in part from his Uncle John D'Wolf—mentioned later in this chapter—with whom Melville spent the summer of 1828 at his home in Bristol, R. I., formerly Mt. Hope, one of the chief residences of Massasoit and his son Philip, as Melville mentioned in *The Confidence-Man*, chap. 25. In ascribing the capture to Captain Butler, Melville may have been thinking of Lt. Col. William Butler's expedition into the Indian country in October 1778 after Joseph Brant, the Indian leader and the perpetrator of recent raids on the settlements of Herkimer and German Flats, N. Y. This story was told in William Leete Stone, *Life of Joseph Brant—Thayendenegae* (Cooperstown, 1847—originally publ. 1838), Vol. 1, pp. 355, 366n, 367-368. Stone's book, which he referred to in a letter to E. A. Duyckinck 7 Nov. 1851, Melville certainly knew and may have owned (Sealts, No. 491a). Butler's vain pursuit of Brant was also narrated in James Hall, "Memoir of Thomas Posey," in Jared Sparks, ed.,

American Biography (Boston, 1844), Vol. 19, p. 378, where Hall quoted from John Marshall's *Life of Washington*. Melville, of course, would not have confused the names of the Indians, but he might understandingly have confused the names of the white soldiers who took out after them.

204.14. *the ship Essex*: Melville's paragraph and note on the *Essex* tragedy suggest his profound interest in the episode, which helped form the narrative climax of *Moby-Dick*. Commanded by Captain George Pollard, the whaleship *Essex* sailed from Nantucket 12 August 1819, fully prepared for two and one half years in the South Pacific. On 20 November 1820, in latitude 40' S. and longitude 119° she lowered for whales. The largest of the sperm whales, "about eighty-five feet in length," headed directly for the ship itself and struck her just beyond the fore-chains so that the "ship brought up as suddenly and violently as if she had struck a rock and trembled for a few seconds like a leaf." The whaleboats were called in, but before they arrived the whale struck a second time and stove in the bow of the ship so that she rapidly settled and sank. Crowded into two whaleboats, the hapless crew struck out for the coast of South America, close to two thousand miles away, rather than risk landing on a cannibal island. Their journey with its bravery, its futility, its cannibalism, had already by Melville's time become one of the classics of the sea. The story was reflected in Poe's *The Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym*, chaps. 11 and 12, and in W. S. Mayo's *Kaloolah*, chap. 1, and was mentioned in many other places, including Bennett, Beale, and Cheever. Melville had known the story long before writing his whaling novel; he had talked with Owen Chase's (the second mate) son, and had made a casual reference to the *Essex* in *Mardi*, chap. 13. But it was not until he was far into *Moby-Dick*, in its last stages, that he secured a copy of the primary telling of the tale: Owen Chase's *Narrative of the Extraordinary and Distressing Shipwreck of the Whale-Ship Essex of Nantucket* (New York, 1821), which he read with intense interest, making marginal marks and comments, and adding pages of notes. This copy is now owned by Perc Brown of Montclair, New Jersey; Melville's notes as transcribed by Charles Olson appear in *Call Me Ishmael*, pp. 26-32. For an account of Melville's use of the *Essex* story see Henry F. Pommer, "Herman Melville and the Wake of the *Essex*," *American Literature*, November 1948, Vol. 2, pp. 290-304.

205.1. *The ship Union*: Melville's statement here was most surprising from one who liked Macy as well as he did, for Obed Macy,

History of Nantucket, pp. 237-242, had a detailed account of the sinking of the *Union*. Cheever, p. 218, and Olmsted, p. 144, both mentioned it. Melville's surviving copy of Macy, however, was not acquired until July 1852 (Sealts, No. 345); perhaps he did not use Macy first-hand for *Moby-Dick*.

205.6. *Commodore J*—: Most likely, as Charles Anderson has suggested in *Melville in the South Seas*, p. 53, this was Commodore Thomas ap Catesby Jones, who commanded the *Peacock* on a voyage to the Hawaiian Islands in 1825 and was originally to have had the chief command of the South Seas Exploring Expedition. Jones, who was on the frigate *United States* when Melville sailed home from Hawaii in 1843, was the original of the commodore Melville described in *White-Jacket*, chaps. 6, 21, 51, 54, in most favorable terms. See also the *Missionary Herald*, June 1844, Vol. 40, pp. 187-189, for Titus Coan's letter of 16 August 1843, describing a two week visit to Hilo in late July 1843 of Commodore Jones and the *United States* and quoting Jones's speech to the natives on religion and abstinence.

206.33. *Captain D'Wolf*: Captain John DeWolf II, who retired from the sea in 1827 at the age of 48, was the husband of Melville's father's oldest sister, Mary. Melville spent the summer of 1828 in his home at Bristol, Rhode Island. DeWolf was with George H. von Langsdorff from 1805 to 1807, and was mentioned frequently in the latter's *Voyages and Travels in Various Parts of the World* (London, 1813); in 1861 he published his own account, *A Voyage to the North Pacific and a Journey through Siberia More than Half a Century Ago*. DeWolf lived until 1872, at Dorchester, as Melville said, notwithstanding the summary disposal of him in *Redburn*, chap. 7: "an old uncle of mine, an old sea-captain, with white hair, who used to sail to a place called Archangel in Russia, and who used to tell me that he was with Captain Langsdorff, when Captain Langsdorff crossed over by land from Okotsk in Asia to St. Petersburg, drawn by large dogs in a sled. I mention this of my uncle, because he was the very first sea-captain I had ever seen, and his white hair and fine handsome florid face made so strong an impression upon me, that I have never forgotten him, though I only saw him during this one visit of his to New York, for he was lost in the White Sea some years after."

207.36. *The English ship Pusie Hall*: See Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 218: "In the year 1835, the ship *Pusie Hall* encountered a fighting whale, which after injuring and driving off her four boats, pursued them to the ship, and withstood for some time the lances hurled at it, by the crew, from the bows of the vessel, before it could be induced to

retire: in this affair a youth in one of the boats was destroyed by a blow from the whale, and one of the officers was severely lacerated by coming in contact with the animal's jaw."

208.25. *Procopius mentions*: Melville's passage was adapted from information taken from John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature* in the article entitled "Whale": "Procopius mentions a huge sea-monster in the Propontis, taken during his praefecture of Constantinople, in the 36th year of Justinian (A.D. 562), after having destroyed vessels at certain intervals of more than fifty years. Rondoletius enumerates several whales stranded or taken on the coasts of the Mediterranean: these were most likely all *orcas*, *physeters*, or *campedolios*, i.e. toothed whales, as large and more fierce than the *mysticetes*, which have balein in the mouth, and at present very rarely make their way farther south than the Bay of Biscay; though in early times it is probable they visited the Mediterranean, since the present writer has seen them within the tropics. . . . On the island of Zerbi, close to the African coast, the late Commander Davies, R.N., found the bones of a cachalot on the beach. Shaw mentions an orca more than sixty feet in length, stranded at Algiers; and the late Admiral Ross Donelly saw one in the Mediterranean near the island of Albaran."

212.17. *weaving what is called a sword-mat*: Scene derived from Olmsted, pp. 87-88: "There is always plenty of work to be done aboard a ship, to employ the men in the watch upon the deck. When there is nothing else to do, they pick to pieces old ropes, and splice together the separate yarns which are then twisted together and form *spun yarn*. . . . Three yarns are also spun together by means of three spindles to which motion is communicated by large tooth wheels acting upon three smaller ones. All the shrouds and stays of a ship are carefully protected from the friction of the running rigging, by being 'served' or wound around with spun yarn. Some of them are covered with *mats* of spun yarn woven very neatly together. These are usually homemade, and the process of manufacture is as follows. A number of spun yarns corresponding to the required breadth of the mat, are stretched parallel to one another across the deck, passing through a frame work of parallel bars, which retains every other one and allows the remainder to move freely between them. The person who works the frame, carries it down, and consequently, the spun yarns retained by the bars are thrown down below the level of the other; the weaver stands ready with two balls of twine, which he passes across the yarns between the separate ranks, and the work is rendered compact by means of the *sword*, a long, thin piece of hard wood, play-

ing between the ranks of spun yarn. The frame is now raised, and the same steps are repeated, until the mat is finished." Melville's atmosphere of quiet, in contrast with the lowering to follow, was probably suggested to him by a passage which he marked in Beale, p. 161-162: "The scenes which sometimes occur during the chase and capture of this whale defy description. Let the reader suppose himself on the deck of a South-seaman, cruising in the North Pacific Ocean at its Japanese confine—he may be musing over some past event, the ship may be sailing gently along over the smooth ocean, every thing around solemnly still, with the sun pouring its intense rays with dazzling brightness; suddenly, the monotonous quietude is broken by an animated voice from the masthead, exclaiming 'there she spouts.' The captain starts on deck in an instant. . . . But while they have been looking, a few seconds have expired—they rush into the boats, which are directly lowered to receive them—and in two minutes from the time of first observing the whale, three or four boats are down, and are darting through the water with their utmost speed towards their intended victim, perhaps accompanied with a song from the headsman, who urges the quick and powerful plying of the oar."

212.32. *the Loom of Time*: Compare Carlyle's translation, in *Sartor Resartus*, Book 1, chap. 8 (Sealts, No. 123), of the words of the Earth Spirit in Goethe's *Faust*, Part 1, scene 1:

"In Being's floods, in Action's storm,
I walk and work, above, beneath,
Work and weave in endless motion!
Birth and Death,
An infinite ocean;
A seizing and giving
The fire of Living:
'Tis thus at the roaring Loom of Time I ply,
And weave for God the Garment thou seest Him by."

Carlyle quoted again the last two lines in Book 3, chap. 9, and had an allusion to the "Loom of Time" in Book 2, chap. 10. In this metaphysical meditation, Melville may also have had in mind Job vii, 6: "My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle, and are spent without hope," and Hezekiah's comment in Isaiah xxxviii, 12: "I have cut off like a weaver my life," since other verses in both of these chapters were marked by Melville in his Bible (Sealts, No. 62). The idea of the warp as necessity and Ishmael as the weaver of his own destiny may have owed something to the very popular poem "The Weaver," by

Fanny Forester [Emily Chubbuck Judd], in *Alderbrook: A Collection of Fanny Forester's Village Sketches, Poems, Etc.*, which went through a dozen editions within four years of its original publication in 1847:

"A weaver sat before his loom,
The shuttle flying fast,
And to his web a thread of doom
Was added at each cast.

His warp had been by angels spun;
Bright was his weft and new,
Unbraided from life's morning sun,
Gemmed with life's morning dew."

Melville's 13 October 1849 entry in his *Journal*, p. 5, alluding to *Paradise Lost* II, 558-560, was a clear statement of his constant interest in metaphysical problems: "Walked the deck with the German, Mr. Adler, till a late hour, talking of 'Fixed Fate, Free will, fore-knowledge absolute' &c. His philosophy is Coleridgean: he accepts the Scriptures as divine, & yet leaves himself free to inquire into Nature. He does not take it that the Bible is absolutely infallible, & that anything opposed to it in Science must be wrong. He believes that there are things *out* of God and independent of him,—things that would have existed were there no God:—such as that two & two make four; for it is not that God so decrees mathematically, but that in the very nature of things, the fact is thus." True of Melville himself were Babbalanja's words to Media, *Mardi*, chap. 135: ". . . your highness is a Necessitarian, yet not a Fatalist. Confound not the distinct. Fatalism presumes express and irrevocable edicts of heaven concerning particular events. Whereas, Necessity holds that all events are naturally linked, and inevitably follow each other, without providential interposition though by the eternal letting of Providence." Many of the passages Melville marked in the edition of Shakespeare he bought in 1849 (Sealts, No. 460) had something to do with the problem of fate and necessity. He sidelined the first part of the speech and underlined "by special grace" in Biron's words to King Ferdinand, *Love's Labour's Lost* I, i, 150-153:

"Necessity will make us all forsworn
Three thousand times within this three year's space
For every man with his affects is born,
Not by might mast'ed, but by special grace."

Triple sidelining marked the famous speech of Brutus, *Julius Caesar* IV, iii, 218-224:

"There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which taken at the flood, leads on to fortune;
Omitted, all the voyage of their life
Is bound in shallows and in miseries.
On such a full sea are we now afloat;
And we must take the current when it serves,
Or lose our ventures."

Although the speech of Edmund in *King Lear* I, ii, 128-145, about "the excellent foppery of the world" in blaming disasters on the sun and stars, "as if we were villains on necessity," was not marked, Melville sidelined the contradictory reflection of Kent on Lear's daughters, IV, iii, 34-37:

"It is the stars,
The stars above us, govern our conditions;
Else one self mate and make could not beget
Such different issues."

In his copy of *The Works of Sr William Davenant Kt* (Sealts, No. 176) acquired in London in 1849, he put a triple sideline beside *Gondibert*, Book 1, Canto 4, stanza 48:

"But sure the Heav'nly Movers little care
Whither our motion here be false or true;
For we proceed, whilst they are regular,
As if we Dice for all our actions threw."

With Carlyle in *Sartor Resartus*, Book 2, chap. 9, Melville would have agreed: "Our Life is compassed round with Necessity; yet is the meaning of Life itself no other than Freedom, than Voluntary Force: thus we have a warfare; in the beginning, especially, a hard-fought battle." He himself had written in *White-Jacket*, chap. 75: "But all events are mixed in a fusion indistinguishable. What we call Fate is even, heartless, and impartial; not a fiend to kindle bigot flames, nor a philanthropist to espouse the cause of Greece. We may fret, fume, and fight; but the thing called Fate everlastingly sustains an armed neutrality. Yet though all this be so, nevertheless, in our own hearts we mould the whole world's hereafters; and in our own

hearts we fashion our own gods. Each mortal casts his vote for whom he will to rule the worlds; I have a voice to shape eternity; and my volitions stir the orbits of the farthest suns. In two senses, we are precisely what we worship. Ourselves are fate." In a copy of Matthew Arnold's *New Poems* (1867), in which Melville wrote his name 13 February 1871 (Sealts, No. 20), he drew a sideline and placed an *x* in the margin by stanza 17 of the hero's long speech in "Empedocles on Etna," scene 2:

"Thou hast no *right* to bliss,
No title from the Gods to welfare and repose."

At the bottom of the page (p. 20), Melville made his comment, since erased, but still legible: "A Western critic here exclaims—What in thunder did the Gods create us for then? If not for bliss, for hate? If so, the devil take the gods." This was the comment of the man who some twenty-two years before had written in *Mardi*, chap. 124: ". . . out of itself, Religion has nothing to bestow. Nor will she save us from aught, but from the evil in ourselves. Her one grand end is to make us wise; her only manifestations are reverence to Oro and love to man; her only, but ample, reward, herself. He who has this, has all. He who has this . . . that man can be no richer." Melville was not, at the time he wrote *Moby-Dick*, very far from the general Emersonian view he expressed in *Mardi* and *White-Jacket*; he assuredly was not ready, like the narrator in Thomas Hope's *Anastasis*, Vol. 3, chap. 13 (Sealts, No. 282), to throw over completely "this partial, disjointed, incomplete predestination," and "admit nothing short of a universal pre-ordination, embracing alike every minutest occurrence and every most important event of our existence." He would have found it difficult, however, to follow Carlyle's advice in *On Heroes. . . .* (Sealts, No. 122), Lecture 2, that it was "the highest wisdom for a man not merely to submit to Necessity,—Necessity will make him submit,—but to know and believe well that the stern thing which Necessity has ordered was the wisest, the best, the thing wanted there." In *Moby-Dick*, Melville was midway between the desire for an "even, heartless, and impartial" fate which would, by "an armed neutrality," permit freedom, and the desire for a beneficent humanity and deity which, though he did not seem to recognize this fact, would rule out freedom and even all possibility of genuine growth. A growing humanitarian sense of pity for man was probably responsible for the change. Thus in *Pierre* (C.W.), pp. 348-349, the allegory of the young soul who "clamors for the support of its mother

the world, and its father the Deity," but "shall yet learn to stand independent, though not without many a bitter wail, and many a miserable fall," concluded with an indictment that might be called sentimental: "Divinity and humanity then are equally willing that he should starve in the street for all that either will do for him. Now cruel father and mother have both let go his hand, and the little soul-toddler, now you shall hear his shriek and his wail, and often his fall." This was a degree of self-pity incompatible with the magnificent apostrophe to Sorrow on pp. 422-423 of the present book.

213.24. *the ball of free will dropped*: Carvel Collins, *Explicator*, Febr. 1946, Vol. 4, p. 27, has suggested that Melville intended to indicate that once Tashtego had sighted the whale Ishmael's free will was in suspension. See also note on *not to his will determinate* 183.26.

214.15. *that singular craft*: Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 205: "The ardour of the chase frequently carries the boats out of sight of the ship for some hours; but the whales often escape, either by superior speed, or by a cunning habit they have of descending upon the approach of a boat, and rising to the surface at a distance, and in a direction contrary to its former course."

214.27. *three samphire baskets*: See *King Lear* IV, vi, 14-15:

"half way down
Hangs one that gathers samphire, dreadful trade!"

215.23. *Fedallah*: Adam and Eve in Genesis iii had, as tempter and evil spirit, the serpent, who became clearly in *Paradise Lost* IX, Satan in the body of the serpent. King Ahab was misled by four hundred false prophets. To Job, Satan did not appear in objective form. Marlowe's Doctor Faustus had his Mephistophilis, and Goethe's Faust his Mephistopheles. Lucifer was the tempter and evil spirit of the title character of Philip James Bailey's *Festus* (1838). In *The Scarlet Letter*, Dimmesdale was hounded by Roger Chillingworth, posing as a friend. The relation of Fedallah to Ahab was somewhat more subtle than any of its prototypes. W. E. Sedgwick, *Herman Melville: The Tragedy of Mind*, has called him Ahab's "bad angel," explaining, p. 94: "No consciousness or soul is so light but that its light has its own dark antagonist. No consciousness is so dark but that it encompasses the light which would destroy its dark. Fedallah, the Parsee harpooner, is Ahab's evil spirit." And Henry Reed, *Moby Dick. A play for radio*. . . . (London, 1947), carried out this idea by having Starbuck remark to Stubb in the second scene (p. 53): "He's Ahab's evil spirit, Stubb, a still, quiet demon. . . . A mutiny in

Ahab's soul . . . and how dare you or I give orders there?" This phrasing of the problem recalls the soliloquy of Brutus, which Melville sidelined in his copy of Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460), *Julius Caesar* II, i, 61-69:

"Since Cassius first did whet me against Caesar,
I have not slept.
Between the acting of a dreadful thing
And the first motion, all the interim is
Like a phantasma or a hideous dream.
The Genius and the mortal instruments
Are then in council; and the state of a man,
Like to a little kingdom, suffers then
The nature of an insurrection."

"Thy evil shadow gone"—Starbuck's phrase to Ahab after Fedallah's disappearance on p. 553—echoed also a passage from Carlyle's *Sartor Resartus*, Book 2, chap. 9, which Melville borrowed from Duyckinck about July 1850 (Sealts, No. 123): "Always there is a black spot in our sunshine: it is even, as I said, the *Shadow of Ourselves*." The shadow motif Melville developed on p. 327: "if the Parsee's shadow was there at all it seemed only to blend with, and lengthen Ahab's." And on p. 527, after the suggestion that Fedallah was "a tremulous shadow cast upon the deck by some unseen being's body," the fixed glances between Ahab and the Parsee were explained: "as if in the Parsee Ahab saw his forethrown shadow, in Ahab the Parsee his abandoned substance." Melville may have owed something here to the explanation Dante (Sealts, No. 174) put into the mouth of the fratricidal friar Alberigo, about himself and Branca Doria, *Hell*, Canto 32, lines 127-133 (H. F. Cary trans.):

"Know that the soul, that moment she betrays,
As I did, yields her body to a fiend
Who after moves and governs it at will,
Till all its time be rounded: headlong she
Falls to this cistern. And perchance above
Doth yet appear the body of a ghost
Who here behind me winters. . . ."

But the name and the major conception for Melville's character came from *The Spectator*, No. 578, 9 August 1714. The unidentified author of this essay on the problem of "*personal Identity*" began with a Latin

quotation from Ovid, *Metamorphoses* xv, 167-168 (which Dryden translated: "The unbodied spirit flies / And lodges where it will in man or beast"). After a paragraph devoted to Locke, the writer launched into a summary of the Persian tale of Fadlallah and Zemroude, which seemed to him "in some measure applicable to this Piece of Philosophy." The paragraph devoted to Locke was important in focusing Melville's mind on the pertinent details: "Mr. *Lock*, after having premised that the Word *Person* properly signifies a thinking intelligent Being that has Reason and Reflection, and can consider itself as itself; concludes, That it is Consciousness alone, and not an Identity of Substance, which makes this personal Identity of Sameness. Had I the same Consciousness (says that Author) that I saw the Ark and *Noah's Flood*, as that I saw an Overflowing of the *Thames* last Winter, or as that I now write; I could no more doubt that I who write this now, that saw the *Thames* overflow last Winter, and that viewed the Flood at the general Deluge, was the same *Self*, place that *Self* in what Substance you please, than that I who write this am the same *My self* now whilst I write (whether I consist of all the same Substance material or immaterial or no) that I was Yesterday; For as to this Point of being the same *Self*, it matters not whether this present *Self* be made up of the same or other Substances." The relation of Fedallah to Ahab was a problem in personal identity, as Melville undertook to make clear in the Captain's query on p. 536: "Is Ahab, Ahab? Is it I, God, or who, that lifts this arm?" In Locke's terms, Ahab was not a person, because his soul could not "consider itself as itself." This was the "mutiny" or the "insurrection." Ahab was a divided man with good and evil warring within him. Fedallah was the objective symbol of the conflict, hardly a character in his own right—mute, except for his "half-hissed reply" of "Ready" on his first appearance, his announcing with "unearthly voice" the Spirit-Spout on p. 231, and—the single instance of real articulation—his interpretation of Ahab's dream on p. 492. And after this single reported instance of a dialogue with Ahab, Melville noted: "both were silent again, as one man." Fedallah was a shadowy embodiment of such a demon as Goethe ascribed to Egmont. (See note on *that certain sultanism of his brain* 144.22.) The story *The Spectator* writer summarized he had read recently in the translation from the French by Ambrose Phillips, *The Thousand and One Days, Persian Tales* (London, 1714-15). Like the others in the collection it was a story of faithful love, told by the old nurse Sutlememé in an effort to convert the Princess of Casmire from her loss of faith in men and her consequent resolve never to marry. Fadlallah of the Persian story was the

King of Mousel, "a Prince of great Virtues" happily married to the beautiful Zemroude. But a "lively and entertaining" dervish arrived at court and became the king's closest associate. While they were hunting deer together one day, the dervish revealed to the king the secret he had learned from an old Brachman: "*the Power of re-animating a dead Body, by flinging my own Soul into it.*" To demonstrate his power, the dervish flung his soul into the body of a doe just killed, and performed several tricks, then returned to his own body. When Fadlallah tried the same experiment, the treacherous dervish flung his own soul into the royal body and unsuccessfully undertook to kill the doe now animated with Fadlallah's soul. The dervish soul in the Fadlallah body then took over the throne and the unsuspecting queen of the real Fadlallah. The Fadlallah soul in the doe body went bounding off to safety, later to transfer itself into the body of a dead nightingale and become the pet of the queen—still waiting its chance. The chance came when the queen's lap-dog died one night and the Fadlallah soul passed itself into the canine body. The sweet-singing bird was thus, without a soul, dead. The queen's grief the next morning was such that to pacify her the dervish soul (in the Fadlallah body and passing as the king) offered to revive the nightingale daily, at least for a brief serenade. Proceeding to demonstrate to the skeptical queen that he could do this, he passed his soul into the bird's body. The Fadlallah soul—spectator in the lapdog body of all that passed—immediately shot himself back into the now unoccupied Fadlallah body, his own, and twisted the neck of the false nightingale-dervish. That the queen, informed of her innocent adultery, died of grief and Fadlallah thereafter became a hermit was irrelevant for Melville's purposes. Perhaps he did not even consciously remember the story, for to his own character clearly suggested by the wicked but unnamed dervish he gave his approximation of the virtuous king's name. That he was using the Arabic form of the Persian original he probably did not know, and he must surely have been ignorant of the fact that the name meant "Generosity of God," and that under the Islamic dispensation, it would have been an impossible name for a Parsee. More likely Melville remembered the story as Persian, assumed that the name he vaguely recalled was the dervish's, and thus made Fedallah a Parsee. To suppose that Parsee came first, and then the name, in Melville's conception of his character would seem to require the dubious acceptance of the fire symbolism in his book as more important than the "muffled mystery" of the "unaccountable tie" between Fedallah and Ahab, which to Ishmael seemed on p. 229, "a half-hinted influence . . . even authority

over him." When Melville read *The Spectator* is not clear, though some of the essays must have been familiar to him since school days. Perhaps it was running upon a similar name, Feiz-ullah, in Thomas Hope's *Anastasius* (Sealts, No. 282), Vol. 3, chaps. 5 and 11 (Vol. 2, pp. 222, 318-321 of Melville's copy) that recalled an earlier-read story to Melville's mind. But Hope's Feiz-ullah was a Tartar courier who carried the pickled head of Achmet as a gift from Suleiman to the Sultan—on the whole a very cheerful traveling companion for Anastasius, but in no way resembling either Fadlallah or Fedallah. Before Mohammed, many Arabs were, like the Persians, fire worshippers. The Koran, however, represented Eblis, the rebellious angel who caused Adam and Eve to lose Paradise, as made of fire, while Adam was made of clay, and under Islam, fire-worship was branded as heresy. The original Parsees and Ghebers worshipped all the elements, though particularly fire, merely as the symbol of the one supreme God (see note on *the old Persians hold the sea holy* 3.12), and Hawthorne in the sketch called "Fire Worship" in *Mosses* (Sealts, No. 248) went so far as to say that it was "no unnatural idolatry." According to James B. Fraser, *Historical and Descriptive Account of Persia* (Harper's Family Library, Vol. 70—1842), pp. 120-121, the Parsees' reverence for the elements and their fear of defiling the sea prevented them from becoming sailors; they believed in exposing their dead to the elements, not in burying them; and most of their mythology, "particularly the fable of the sacred bull," came from Hindoo sources. Perhaps Melville was intentionally making the sailor Fedallah unorthodox in his religion. The final exposure of his body, bound to Moby Dick, was in the Parsee tradition. The Magi, as the Parsees were sometimes called, were Median (not Persian) in origin. The article about them in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature* put much emphasis on their reputed ability to interpret dreams and foretell the future, pointing out that Nebuchadnezzar first consulted them, before calling in Daniel. Although the true Zoroastrians believed in two primal spirits, a good and an evil principle, Melville did not develop this fact in his characterization of Fedallah. Fire was the ordained means of worshipping the good spirit. Melville may have known something of the parallels between the worship of American Indians and Zoroastrianism, since they had been suggested by Henry R. Schoolcraft in *The Indian in His Wigwam* (1848), pp. 205-206, 229. With reference to Fedallah's substitute of his own braided white hair for the conventional turban, it is interesting to speculate whether Melville knew the odd fact about Mohammed's hair reported by Andrew Crichton, *History of Arabia* (Harper's Family Library, Vol.

68—1842), Vol. 1, p. 264: "to prevent whiteness, the supposed effect of Satanic influence, he stained it, as the Arabs often do still, of a shining reddish color." As Mrs. Eleanor Metcalf has pointed out in her edition of the *Journal*, p. 166, De Quincey's account, in "The Pleasures of Opium" section of his *Confessions* (Sealts, No. 180), of the Malay who mysteriously appeared one day at his door and then for months after more mysteriously appeared in his dreams may have suggested to Melville some of the effects he sought to create through Fedallah. De Quincey accounted for the subsequent fascination with oriental lore which haunted him: "Southern Asia, in general, is the seat of awful images and associations. As the cradle of the human race, it would alone have a dim and reverential feeling connected with it. But there are other reasons. No man can pretend that the wild, barbarous, and capricious superstitions of Africa, or of savage tribes elsewhere, affect him in the way that he is affected by the ancient, monumental, cruel, and elaborate religions of Indostan, &c. The mere antiquity of Asiatic things, of their institutions, histories, modes of faith, &c., is so impressive, that to me the vast age of the race and name overpowers the sense of youth in the individual." When Ahab complained on p. 535, "I feel deadly faint, bowed, and humped, as though I were Adam, staggering beneath the piled centuries since Paradise," he too had lost the sense of youth in soul as well as body, appalled by the antiquity of evil in his Asiatic alter-ego, Fedallah the Parsee.

218.32. *like a horizontal burst boiler out of a Mississippi steamer*: Perhaps another recollection of Melville's visit to his Uncle Thomas Melville in Galena, Illinois, in the summer and fall of 1840. Leon Howard has argued that Melville himself traveled by steamer on the Mississippi up to St. Anthony Falls, and, on his return trip to the East, as far south as Cairo, Illinois, where he turned into the Ohio. The use of the Mississippi steamer *Fidèle* as the setting for *The Confidence-Man* was the most obvious literary consequence of the 1840 experience.

222.24. *a sight full of quick wonder*: In reviewing J. Ross Browne's *Etchings of a Whaling Cruise* (New York, 1846) for the *Literary World* (6 March 1847), Melville wrote a paragraph which though much less skillful, nevertheless anticipated this paragraph and the scene of lowering: "Then the whaling part of the business,—My young friends, just fancy yourselves, for the first time, in an open boat (so slight that three men might walk off with it), some twelve or fifteen miles from your ship and about a hundred times as far from the nearest land, giving chase to one of the oleaginous monsters. 'Pull

pull, you lubberly *hay makers!*" cries the boat-header, jumping up and down the stern-sheets in a frenzy of professional excitement, while the gasping admirers of Captain Marryat and the sea, tug with might and main at the buckling oars—"Pull, pull, I say; break your lazy backs!" Presently the whale is within 'darting distance,' and you hear the roar of the waters in his wake. How palpitating the hearts of the frightened oarsmen at this interesting juncture! My young friends, just turn round and snatch a look at that whale. There he goes, surging through the brine which ripples about his vast head, as if it were the bow of a ship. Believe me, it's quite as terrible as going into battle, to a raw recruit." For the part that *Etchings* may have played in shaping *Moby-Dick*, see *Trying-Out*, pp. 17-20.

224.3. *the white curdling cream of the squall*: See note on *White squalls* 174.34.

224.10. *up to our knees in the sea*: Cheever, pp. 172-174 and 220-224, had accounts of whale boats becoming separated from their ships. J. Ross Browne, pp. 115-125, also had a vivid account of lowering after a whale, separation from the ship, and a subsequent squall—all of which Melville undoubtedly knew. But Melville was probably most influenced by a passage from Beale, pp. 171-173, which he marked in his copy. It described the anxiety of the men on a whaling ship about the men—captain, second mate, and ten of the crew—who had become separated from the ship in their whaleboat. Lanterns and lights were hopefully placed about the ship: "There were not many on board who did not think of home on that dreadful night—there were not many among us who did not curse the sea, and all sea-going avocations; while, with the same breath, they blessed the safe and cheerful fireside of their parents and friends who resided at home, and which at that moment they would have given all they possessed but to see. But at the moment despair was firmly settling upon us, a man from aloft called out that he could see a light right a head [*sic*] of the ship, just as we were 'going about,' by which we should have gone from it. We all looked in that direction, and in a few minutes we could plainly perceive it; in a short time we were close up with it, when, to our great joy, we found the captain and all the men in the boats, lying to leeward of the dead whale, which had in some measure saved them from the violence of the sea. They had only just been able to procure a light, having unfortunately upset all their tinder through the violent motion of the boats, by which it became wet—but which they succeeded in igniting after immense application of the flint and steel—or their lantern would have been suspended from an oar directly after sunset, which is the usual prac-

tice when boats are placed under such circumstances." See *Trying-Out*, pp. 200-202.

224.16. *a white fire upon the prairie*: Compare the vivid description of the prairie fire which gave Pierre, barber to missionary Father Francis, remorse of conscience for taking an Indian wife, in James Hall, "The Dark Maid of Illinois," *The Wilderness and the War Path* (New York: Wiley and Putnam, 1846; Library of American Books), pp. 132, 133; "One phenomenon astonished and perplexed him: before him the prairie was lighted up with a dim but supernatural brilliancy, like that of a distant fire, while behind was the blackness of darkness. . . . He saw before him the lake of fire prepared for the devil and his angels." It may be, of course, that Melville had actual experience of prairie fires in Illinois in 1840. James Hall was cited as the source for the story of Colonel Moredock, the Indian-hater, in *The Confidence-Man*, chap. 25.

224.26. *a waif pole*: A pole with a small flag attached which was stuck into the body of a dead whale.

227.17. *Lazarus lived after his resurrection*: See John xi and xii. In his copy of the New Testament and Psalms inscribed "From Aunt Jean 1846" (Sealts, No. 65), Melville sidelined xii, 2-6, which described the feast at the house of the resurrected Lazarus.

227.19. *my death and burial*: See *Trying-Out*, pp. 204-205: "Just as 'The Hyena' fulfills in structural counterpoint the length, the tone, and the meaning of 'The First Lowering,' so Ishmael is thematically related to Ahab. Ahab, symbol of the egoistic, tortured spirit, fights against fate all through the novel and destroys both himself and his crew. He will not accept stoically but must fight fiercely; he too has pondered Free Will, Fate, and Chance. He must know all—and find Moby Dick. Ishmael, on the other hand, has thus early in the journey learned to accept what the sea and Fate bring forth. Ishmael who had started out with a November drizzle in his soul and a grimness about his mouth, can now laugh—hyenalike indeed, but a laugh and not a snarl—at Fate. Having learnt stoic endurance, Ishmael alone among the *Pequod* crew will survive, saved by his coffin barque. . . . [his is] a far different point of view from Ahab's relentless, un-humorous determination to bathe in the hot blood of Moby Dick. 'There is no alternative,' says Berdyaev, 'but to shoulder the burden of history and culture, the burden of the terrifying, distressing and degraded world.' No alternative but Ahab's mad one. Ishmael has attained the inner harmony unrealized by Ahab, because he has come to terms with his environment as his great captain could never do.

Ishmael has subdued his sense of outrage in the face of events; Ahab's expands to the point of self-destruction."

228.8. *Tamerlane's soldiers often argued*: Compare Marlowe's *Tamburlaine the Great*, Part 2, I, iv, 9-11, Zenocrate's plea to her husband:

"Sweet Tamburlaine, when wilt thou leave these arms,
And save thy sacred person free from scathe,
And dangerous chances of the wrathful war?"

Melville bought a copy of Marlowe's plays (Sealts, No. 348) in London in 1849, but obviously that was not his first or only acquaintance with Timur-Lenk (1336-1405). There were casual references to Tamerlane in *Mardi*, chaps. 18, 63, 181.

229.27. *Beelzebub*: Commonly called the Prince of Flies, Beelzebub ranked second to Satan among the hosts of hell in *Paradise Lost*, and it was he who advised either "sudden onset" or seductive attack on newly-created man (II, 310-378). Baalzebub was the correct spelling of the name of the Philistine goad at Ekron (2 Kings i, 2, 6, 16), but Melville followed Milton in adopting what was—according to John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature*—the contemptuous spelling of Matthew x, 25. In his dialogue with Flask, p. 325, Stubb identified Fedallah with Beelzebub.

230.12. *the angels indeed consorted with the daughters of men*: See Genesis vi, 2, and 4. See also Byron's *Heaven and Earth: A Mystery*, a poem about the beginning of the Flood, which was based on the first verse—quoted as preface. On his visit with Lucifer to the planet Venus, the title character of Philip James Bailey's *Festus* (1838) identified poets as the descendants of

"Sons of the sons of God, who, in olden days,
Did leave their passionless Heaven for earth and woman,
Brought an immortal to a mortal breast."

230.16. *THE SPIRIT-SPOUT*: Shortly after the appearance of *Moby-Dick*, Sophia Hawthorne wrote Melville about his book. Her letter is lost, but the part of Melville's reply that has been published bears on "The Spirit-Spout": ". . . your allusion to the 'Spirit Spout' first showed me that there was a subtle significance in that thing—but I did not, in that case, mean it. I had some vague idea while writing it, that the whole book was susceptible of an allegorical con-

struction, & also that parts of it were—but the specialty of many of the particular subordinate allegories were first revealed to me after reading Mr. Hawthorne's letter, which, without citing any particular examples, yet intimated the part-&-parcel allegoricalness of the whole." See the interpretation in *Trying-Out*, pp. 207-8: "The Spirit-Spout' is another statement of the fate awaiting the overly self-assertive man. In his egoistic desire for the black blood of the great Whale Ahab becomes the victim of delusion, mistaking the spirit-spout for Moby Dick's fountain. . . . The spirit-spout is the symbol of delusion; it is the hope which allures; it is power-dream of Tamburlaine, the knowledge-dream of Faustus. And just as it was with Mephistopheles who led Faustus on to his damnation, so Fedallah is the one who first calls Ahab's attention to the silvery spout. The spirit-spout is the Demon of the Absolute. . . ." Melville would perhaps have objected to such specific interpretation.

230.25. *on such a silent night a silvery jet was seen*: Melville's repetition of various parts of this phrase throughout this paragraph and the next, and the five references to the moon, were a clear echo, and would seem almost a conscious adaptation, as F. O. Matthiessen, *American Renaissance* (1941), p. 425, first suggested, of the dialogue of Lorenzo and Jessica in *Merchant of Venice* V, i, 1-25, where the phrase "In such a night" was repeated eight times, alternately, and there were also numerous references to the moon.

233.3. *Cape Tormentoto*: Melville's erroneous third *t* probably came from misreading the elongated *s* in some chronicle printed in the old style, particularly deceptive when italicized, as in *Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas His Pilgrimes* (London, 1625), Part 1, Book 2, chap. 1, sec. 3, which told how in 1488 Bartholomeu Diaz "first discovered the famous Cape, which for his manifold troubles he termed *Cabo Tormentoso*, or the tempestuous Cape: but King John hoping thence to discover the Indies, named it at his returne the 'Cape of Good Hope'. . . ." Camoens's phrase in the *Lusiad* was *Cabo Tormentório* (V, 50, 65; X, 37), which William Julius Mickle translated consistently as "the Cape of Tempests." Jack Chase, quoting Camoens in *White-Jacket*, chaps. 65 and 93, specifically mentioned this translator. In *Billy Budd*, chap. 7, there was an allusion to the huge "Horrid Form, that ridest the air" of Canto 5 in Melville's reference to how the Napoleonic era must have seemed to contemporaries: "the genius of it presented an aspect like that of Camoens's 'Spirit of the Cape,' an eclipsing menace, mysterious and prodigious."

233.30. *as if manned by painted sailors in wax*: Compare Coleridge, "The Rime of the Ancient Mariner," Part 2, 117-118:

"As idle as a painted ship
Upon a painted ocean."

236.3. *Round the world! . . . but whereto does all that circumnavigation conduct?*: Compare *Redburn*, chap. 28: "It was then, I began to see, that my prospects of seeing the world as a sailor were, after all, but very doubtful; for sailors only go *round* the world, without going *into* it. . . ."

236.10. *Cyclades*: This name is now given to a circular group of islands in the Aegean, but Melville obviously had in mind here the legend of King Solomon's fabulous spice islands somewhere in the East. See note on *Solomon Islands* 271.31.

239.11. *But what is a Gam*: Compare J. Ross Browne, p. 76: "In a journal of this kind, containing miscellaneous gatherings of every description, I can not well omit a sketch of what, in nautical phraseology, is termed 'a gam.' When two whalers meet on any of the whaling grounds, it is usual to have 'a gam,' or mutual visit, for the purpose of interchanging the latest news, comparing reckoning, discussing the prospect of whales, and enjoying a general chit-chat." J. Ross Browne then went on to describe a gam of sociability and song, a scene which Melville probably used later in "The Decanter," chap. 101. More immediate to Melville's definition, however, was Cheever's section of definition, pp. 204-207, in which Cheever defined *Mux*, *skimshander* [sic], *Gurry*, *Gally*, and *Gam*. Cheever began his section by writing: "Had Noah Webster ever gone a whaling, he would have been able to add some five or six notable and genuine English words to his Dictionary, which may never be known off salt water unless we record them here." With this suggestion, Melville dropped "Webster" and wrote "Dr. Johnson," and proceeded to rewrite Cheever's definition of "gam," pp. 205-206: "*Gam* is the word by which they designate the meeting, exchanging visits, and keeping company of two or more whale ships, or a sociable family of whales. Thus we *gammed* two days on the New Zealand whaling ground with the Niantic of Sag Harbor. One day the captain of the Niantic spent with us, the next our captain spent on board the Niantic, the boat's crews *gaming* together at the same time in the forecastle, and the mates of the ships meeting and having a *gam* in the ship that was left of her captain. These *gams* are very pleasant interludes in a whaleman's life, when abroad upon the desert ocean, without change of society or scene, a thousand miles from land. It is peculiarly grateful for a rusty and barnacled old ship, that has been absent thirty or more months, to have a *gam* of a day with a fresh competitor

just arrived out with all the news from home. Such a *gam* gives matter of talk and old newspaper reading for a month, and nobody can tell how pleasant it is but one that has experienced it. A ship-master has a chance to exchange counsel, and tell stories, and let himself be familiar with somebody that's new, and he is always the milder, and better pleased with himself all about him, for some days after such a *gam*."

240.26. *THE TOWN-HO'S STORY*: As Robert S. Forsythe has pointed out, *Notes and Queries*, 4 May 1935, Vol. 168, p. 134, this chapter was published separately in *Harper's New Monthly Magazine*, Oct. 1851, Vol. 3, pp. 658-665, and in the *Baltimore Weekly Sun*, Saturday, 8 Nov. 1851, Vol. 14, No. 33, p. 1.

241.n1. *The ancient whale-cry*: Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 202: "It was formerly the custom in this fishery to announce the spouting of a whale by the cry of 'Town, Oh!' which, although not very clear in derivation or meaning, is yet employed by some amongst the crew of a whale ship, when seeking turtle, &c. on shore, to announce the view of a prize, and establish an individual claim to the discovery."

242.2. *westward*: The *eastward* of the first edition was patently a careless error.

242.29. *Steelkilt, a Lakeman and desperado from Buffalo*: Steelkilt was a Lakeman connected him with Melville's trip to Illinois in 1840, via the Great Lakes. Sherman Paul in his article, "Morgan Neville, Melville, and the Folk hero," *Notes and Queries*, 25 June 1949, Vol. 194, p. 278, has pointed out that Neville compared Mike Fink with Charlemagne in "The Last of the Boatmen," *The Western Souvenir* (Cincinnati, 1828), as Melville did Steelkilt. Steelkilt was infused with the Western spirit, and Melville's earlier picture of Zachary Taylor was Western in more details than the general's hat, which resembled "the castor of a Mississippi flat-boatman," *Yankee Doodle*, 17 Aug. 1847, Vol. 2, p. 172. But Steelkilt's significance in *Moby-Dick* did not depend on Melville's attitude toward the Western folk hero. If Melville by chance met or heard the story of Luther Fox of the whaleship *Nassau* of New Bedford, that may have been the plot germ for the happenings aboard the *Town-Ho*. On 12 April 1843 Fox killed the first mate Jenney with a mincing knife, while the ship was at sea, and was turned over to the American consul at Honolulu by Captain Weeks 29 May 1843, just a few days after Melville arrived in that port. A news item was published in *The Temperance Advocate and Seamen's Friend* 27 June 1843. (See Jay Leyda, *The Melville Log*, pp. 164, 166, 168.) If Melville knew it, the fact that Fox came from Rensselaerville, Albany County, N. Y., within 30 miles of

his own home, would unquestionably have moved him. It is worth noting too that Steelkilt was labeled a "desperado"—a term applied later to Benedict Arnold on p. 388, and used for Jackson in *Redburn*, chap. 22. But here it was Radney who hated Steelkilt, "his superior in general pride of manhood," as Jackson hated the narrator, *Redburn*, chap. 12, because he was "young and handsome," and as Claggart hated the Handsome Sailor, *Billy Budd*, chap. 11, for his "good looks, cheery health, and frank enjoyment of young life." Radney had "the greediness of hate for provocation" equally with Claggart. In the flogging scene the comparison of the traitorous mutineers to "the two crucified thieves" implied an identification of Steelkilt with Jesus, quite as clearly as the sunrise ascension of Billy Budd suggested a similar identification (chap. 22), although Steelkilt would hardly have been called "an angel of God," even by Captain Vere. Most likely Melville's admiration for Steelkilt stemmed in part from his contrast to Starbuck and the recognition, later recorded in *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 200: "Easy for man to think like a hero; but hard for man to act like one." Steelkilt, faced with tyranny, acted; Starbuck did not. Melville made it perfectly clear that Starbuck ought to have acted, by insisting explicitly on p. 211, that in diverting the voyage to his private purpose, Ahab "had indirectly laid himself open to the unanswerable charge of usurpation; and with perfect impunity, both moral and legal, his crew if so disposed, and to that end competent, could refuse all further obedience to him, and even violently wrest from him the command." Although he should have been the leader in resisting Ahab, it was Starbuck's "miserable office,—to obey rebelling; and worse yet, to hate with touch of pity!" (p. 167.) He had not the courage of Steelkilt to refuse obedience. Montaigne (Sealts, No. 366), Book 2, chap. 12, argued that "the greatest number of the soules actions, proceede and have need of this impulsion of passion; valor (say they) cannot be perfected without the assistance of choler. . . . Nor doth any man run violently enough upon the wicked, or his enemies, except he be thoroughly angrie. . . ." Steelkilt had the moral indignation which Starbuck lacked; with Steelkilt, therefore, was no "fall of valor in the soul." (See note on *Starbuck* 111.27.) There was perhaps some special significance in the fact that both Steelkilt and the captain, after leaving the ship, "steered straight before the wind for Tahiti," since Melville in his copy of Owen Chase's *Narrative* (Sealts, No. 134) of the *Essex* disaster speculated that the sufferings of the crew of that ship "might, in all human probability, have been avoided had they, immediately after leaving the wreck, steered straight for Tahiti, from which they were not very distant at the time and to

which there was a fair trade wind." (See Charles Olson, *Call Me Ishmael*, p. 31.) The allusion to Radney's widow and other details showed Melville's full awareness of the consequences of Steelkilt's action, although it was the whale, not Steelkilt, who destroyed Radney. But Steelkilt arrived safely in Tahiti, and "one insular Tahiti" was to be Melville's symbol of spiritual security only a few pages later on p. 274.

242.37. *Callao*: The headquarters of the Pacific squadron of the United States, where Melville spent several weeks aboard the *United States* from late December 1843 to July 1844. There was a casual reference in *Omoo*, chap. 59, to "the great road from Callao to Lima," only seven miles away, over which Melville travelled on his leave about New Year's 1844 when he visited the Peruvian capital. Walter Colton, chaplain of the U. S. frigate *Congress*, commented in *Deck and Port* (1850), pp. 230-231, 299: "Callao falls immeasurably short of the picture which my imagination had painted. It is a collection of low, dingy dwellings, occupying the rippling verge of a vast sand-plain. The only beings which give to it an air of life are buzzards; or here and there a fisherman hawking trophies on his hook; or an Indian woman on a donkey, riding straddle. . . . Farewell, Callao! I have seen quite enough of your destitution and dirt, your pickpockets and parrots, your fish and your fleas, your brats and your buzzards."

243.11. *the goat-like craggy guns of lofty Mackinaw*: Melville had passed through the straits of Mackinac, connecting Lake Huron and Lake Michigan, on the lake boat taking him to Illinois in 1840. The small island in the straits was variously occupied by Chippewas, Hurons, and Ottawas. The French fort, built in 1712, had been surrendered to the British in 1761, and held by them, to protect their trading outposts, until 1796, when the terms of the Treaty of Paris were fulfilled and it passed into American hands. The American garrison there, ignorant that war had been declared, was surprised by a British force in July 1812. The attempt to recapture the fort in 1814 was unsuccessful, but in 1815 it returned to American possession. George H. Colton, *Tecumseh* (1842), used Melville's spelling in referring to "Mackinaw's primeval walls" (V, iii, 4) and "the morn-kissed cliffs of Mackinaw" (VI, iii, 8), and added a note on p. 309: "This island is, perhaps, the most remarkable on the American coast. It is nearly three hundred feet high, with perpendicular cliffs, a fortress on the summit, water beyond the sight on two sides, on the other two, wild, wooded shores. Connected with it are many curious incidents of the times of Pontiac and the French War. Its real name is *Michilamackinac*—i.e. *Missi* 'great,' and *mackinac*, the

Indian word for 'turtle.'” See also p. 332, of the interior of the whale's mouth: “Upon my word were I at Mackinaw, I should take this to be the inside of an Indian wigwam.”

243.15. *peltry wigwams*: Wigwams made of pelts.

248.17. *our grand Erie Canal*: Melville used the same adjective in the reference on p. 369. On his trip to Illinois in 1840, Melville travelled from Albany to Buffalo on the Canal. Finished in the middle 1820's, the Erie Canal was a source of wonder and pride for most Americans. See *Redburn*, chap. 41, of the Leeds Canal: “No one could have told it from the Erie Canal at Albany.” See also the comment in the *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge* (then under the editorship of Hawthorne), July 1836, Vol. 2, p. 446: “The Erie Canal is as wonderful a work, in its way, as Napoleon's road across the Alps in Switzerland. The aqueducts, by means of which this canal is conducted over ravines and rivers, are eighteen in number. A representation is given of one which crosses the Mohawk, presenting the singular spectacle of a navigable stream, and a vessel gliding along its course, at the rate of four miles an hour, many feet above the broken and turbulent current of a river.”

248.35. *Ashantee*: An African people living inland just north of the Gold Coast, especially noted for their valor and fierceness, the barbaric splendor of their costumes, and their keenness in agriculture, craftsmanship, and trading. Six “black wizards of Ashantee” figured prominently in “Benito Cereno,” *Piazza Tales* (C.W.), pp. 80, 125, 133.

249.12. “*Corrupt as Lima*”: Melville's brief visit to Lima on leave from the *United States* about 1 Jan. 1844 left an indelible impression. Exactly what happened during this forty-eight hour leave, exactly what Melville saw, must be guessed from such a phrase as this; he kept no diary. A crew-mate, Oliver Russ (enlisted under the name of Edward Norton), writing to Melville 4 Febr. 1859 to announce that his son had been named for the author, commented: “You probably have not forgotten all of the crew of the Old Frigate *United States* and more especially our visit to Lima” (HCL). Strangely enough, the single reference to Lima in *White-Jacket*, chap. 76, merely identified Mendanna with that city. In *Mardi*, chap. 61, a mysterious tapa-robed figure resembled “the inscrutable incognitos sometimes encountered, crossing the tower-shadowed Plaza of Assignations at Lima.” The appearance of Isabel in *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 176, occasioned the comparison: “Never *saya* of Limaeon girl, at dim mass in St. Dominic's cathedral, so completely muffled the human figure.” In “Benito Cereno,” *Piazza Tales* (C.W.), p. 56, the single cabin

light in the mysterious *San Dominick* was, to Captain Delano, like the dawning sun feebly seen through the mist, and both were "not unlike a Lima intriguante's one sinister eye peering across the Plaza from the Indian loop-hole of her dusk *saya-y-manta*." Why this costume became, for Melville, a symbol of the corruption of Lima was suggested by the Rev. Walter Colton, chaplain of the U. S. frigate *Congress*, who visited Lima for several weeks some two years after Melville was there (30 March to 9 May 1846), in *Deck and Port* (1850), pp. 239-240: "The novelty in costume, which first strikes the stranger in Lima, is the *saya y manto* of the ladies. At a distance this dress looks like two petticoats; the one hanging down where all petticoats should hang, and the other drawn up over the head, as if lifted by a little whirlwind of mischief. But the lower garment proves to be a rich full skirt, so plaited and arranged as to betray the swelling outline of the person and fall in wooing drapery around the limbs, while the upper one combines the advantages of the hood and mantle. It is fastened at the bottom within the band of the skirt, and falls over this cincture in a flowing wreath; while the top is gathered over the head and face, and so held by the hand within as to expose but one eye. . . . The apology attempted for this dress is, that it enables a lady to go out in the morning, to mass or shopping, before she has made her toilet. The objections to it lie in the facilities which it lends to purposes of a very different character. It veils a love intrigue from all but the guilty. The jealous care of the husband, and the sleepless vigilance of the duenna, are alike baffled by its impenetrable folds. With the young it often paves the way to ruin and a life of crime. No virtuous community would tolerate its presence for a moment. It has been relinquished by some of the better families of Lima, and was once put under the ban of a legislative statute; but it still survives, and is still in extensive use." Chaplain Colton found many other indications of iniquity in Lima, and most of these would have seemed as shocking to a young man of Melville's upbringing as they did to the minister. To begin with, Peru was a Roman Catholic country where no place of worship was allowed to Protestants, "not a hall or chapel where they who differ from the papal see can assemble on the Sabbath." Protestants were not allowed to be buried on the mainland, but were assigned a grave on "the barren isle of San Lorenzo." The *pillo* or "genteel loafer" and the *pillofero* or "dexterous gambler" were to be met with everywhere, ready to prey upon all foreigners. The lady of Lima indulged in "a latitude of speech that would quite disturb female modesty with us. Her allusions are as broad as the exhibitions of folly and vice." Marriage was regarded

casually; wives and husbands were alike unfaithful. "When a young female consents to become the mistress of a man here, she requires of him a certificate that he will not marry without her consent. This certificate she deposits with the Bishop of Lima, and purchases a dispensation for the irregularity involved in the compact." Colton was shocked to find all the churches closed on the Sunday before Easter, and children, monks, mothers, the aged, a large part of the population of Lima, "all chattering and laughing, and jostling and shouting, and pressing on to the bull-ring, on the Sabbath!" He discovered that the bull-fights had formerly been held on Mondays, "but that the Archbishop of Lima to enable to laboring classes to attend them, had changed the day to the Sabbath." They were weekly events, horrible and revolting spectacles, in Colton's mind, "doubly pernicious when they involve such an outrage on the sanctity of the Sabbath, under the sanction, too, of the highest ecclesiastical functionary in the state." Exclaiming that "it is no wonder the ladies in Lima are deficient in delicacy and moral refinement, accustomed as they are from their childhood to such savage spectacles," Colton felt it only fair to point out that some mothers did not allow their daughters either "to disguise themselves in the *saya y manto*," or to attend bull-fights: "There was one righteous man in Sodom, and there is more than one good mother in Lima." But this clearly seemed to Colton the exception, for he commented of the typical Spanish lady of Lima: "She is punctilious in all the forms of religion, and persevering in all the perils of an intrigue. Her mornings are spent with her confessor, her evenings with her lover." In the widespread participation of the poor who could not afford to lose the money Colton found the chief wickedness of the weekly lotteries, at which prizes ranging downward from a thousand dollars to a silver chamber-pot were awarded. He objected also to the selling of lottery-tickets "from the stepstones of every church in Lima," and asserted that "the pious signature assumed by the purchaser, shows that he connects his hopes of success with the assurances of his religious faith. No one here would pit a cock without a prayer to his patron saint." These and other evil practices of the city Colton recounted in the 70 pages devoted to his two chapters of "Sketches of Lima." Possibly not all of these things were true of Lima to the degree implied; but Colton obviously believed them—and most likely Melville did. (See note on *Lima has taken the white veil* 191.18.) When the editors of the *Literary World* reviewed the book, 6 April 1850, Vol. 6, pp. 347-348, they remarked that "as Mr. Melville intimates in his White Jacket, the good sea captain is the best ship's chaplain," but oddly enough in the

extensive extracts and generally favorable comment included nothing of the Lima material. Perhaps the Duyckincks found here an embarrassing frankness on the part of the Naval chaplain, but Melville's use of the phrase "corrupt as Lima" suggests that he would have confirmed the truth of Colton's report. But as Don Pedro said, "No need to travel! The world's one Lima."

257.25. *Teneriffe*: One of the Canary Islands, with a volcanic peak. Near here the naval battle was fought in which Nelson lost his arm, 1797.

260.27. *no Auto-da-Fés in Lima now*: The ceremony of pronouncing judgment and burning a heretic. See earlier in chapter: "Dame Isabella's Inquisition wanes in Lima."

261.7. *OF THE MONSTROUS PICTURES OF WHALES*: This and the next two chapters may have been suggested by Sir Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica* (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), where Book 5 was devoted to "Of Many Things Questionable as They are Commonly Described in Pictures." The two-part structure of Melville's discussion of whaling iconography probably derived from Scoresby's remark, Vol. 1, p. 447, that "the drawings hitherto given of many of the whale tribe are so unlike, and so preposterous, that they tend rather to mislead than to assist the practical zoologist. The mysticetus, or common whale, for instance, is figured by our most respectable naturalists with the most extravagant inconsistency. . . . I have confined my engravings, as well as my descriptions, to those animals which have come immediately under my own examination, or have been sketched by persons on whose accuracy and faithfulness I could fully depend; while drawings and descriptions that I have met with, when the least doubtful, have been altogether rejected." Sumner W. D. Scott in *The Whale in Moby-Dick* (1950), an unpublished doctoral dissertation at the University of Chicago, has gathered photographs of the various pictures referred to by Melville.

261.22. *Saladin*: The Egyptian sultan (1138-1193) famous for his wars with the Crusaders. Scott's *The Talisman* (1825) introduced both him and Richard Coeur de Lion as central characters. See also *Mardi*, chap. 32: "And the drawn soul of genius is more glittering than the drawn cimeter of Saladin."

261.29. *the famous cavern-pagoda of Elephanta*: See note on *cave of Elephanta* 35.36.

262.11. *Guido's picture of Perseus rescuing Andromeda*: This picture by Guido Reni (1575-1642) was in the National Gallery in London, where Melville probably saw it 17 Dec. 1849, when his *Journal* entry, p. 74, noted that he saw "Guido's Murder of the Inno-

cents." Charles Knight thought the Andromeda "in the artist's best manner, warm, harmonious, and delicate." The representation by William Hogarth (1697-1764) was the second of his plates for Lewis Theobald, *Perseus and Andromeda, As it is Perform'd at the Theatre Royal in Lincoln's-Inn-Fields* (London, 1730). See note on *Perseus* 360.7.

262.20. *Prodromus whales of old Scotch Sibbald*: In what Melville might call the "Prodromus" book, *Scotia Illustrata sive prodromus naturalis in quo regionis natura* (Edinburgh, 1683), Sir Robert Sibbald (1641-1722) discussed whales but did not picture them. He did include plates in a later book, *Phalainologia nova, sive observationes de raribus quibiscum balaenis in Scotiae littus nuper ejectis* (Edinburgh, 1692), which are monstrous enough probably to be the whales to which Melville referred. How Melville's confusion came about is difficult to say; the Sibbald books are quite rare, and had been referred to in none of the basic "whaling documents" in Melville's possession.

262.23. *the book-binder's whale*: To Browne's comment on "a dolphin clasping an anchor," *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 5, chap. 2, Simon Wilkin (Sealts, No. 89) added this note: "The device of the family of Manutius, celebrated as learned printers at Venice and Rome."

263.6. *old Harris's collection of voyages*: Friedrich Martens's *Voyage into Spitzbergen and Greenland . . . anno 1671*, which Melville referred to here and quoted in Extract 30, was not in John Harris, ed., *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca*, but in Tancred Robinson's collection: *An Account of the Several Late Voyages and Discoveries to the South and North . . .*, London, 1694. Plates in Vol. 2 of Harris's collection (1748), however, may have inspired the comments on "white bears running" (p. 388) and "the prodigious blunder" of "perpendicular flukes."

263.15. *Captain Colnett*: James Colnett, *A Voyage to the South Atlantic and Round Cape Horn into the Pacific Ocean for the Purpose of Extending the Spermaceti Whale Fisheries and Other Objects of Commerce* (London, 1798) had a plate of the drawing of a "Physeter, or Spermaceti Whale," killed off the coast of Mexico August 1793 and hoisted on deck. Melville had undoubtedly seen Colnett's important book (see note *was startled by a cry* 515.25), but for his immediate reference he needed only to consult his whaling-bible, Beale, who published an outline, p. 4, of Colnett's drawing. The eye of the whale was large and gave the ludicrous impression that the whale was looking at the reader.

263.30. *"Goldsmith's Animated Nature"*: See page 293 of Oliver Goldsmith's *History of the Earth and Animated Nature* (abridged edition, London, 1807). Melville's description was exact.

263.38. *Lacépède*: The references to Lacépède, Frederick Cuvier, and to Desmarest were second-hand, drawn mainly from Beale, variously, and references to "La Cepède" in Scoresby. Melville did not read French with any facility, if at all, and even a casual glance at Lacépède's vigorous book argues that Melville had not seen it; had he done so he would have relished it and used it.

264.8. *Frederick Cuvier . . . published a Natural History of Whales: De l'histoire naturelle des cétacés, ou recueil et examen des faits dont se composé l'histoire de ces animaux* (Paris, 1836), by Frederick Cuvier is a scarce book; there is no evidence that Melville had read it before *Moby-Dick*, but rather he took his remarks from Beale, pp. 13-14.

264.17. *Desmarest*: Anselme Gâetan Desmarest (1784-1838) added notes to Lacépède's work, but Melville was rather following Beale, p. 10: "Desmarest, however, thought proper to add another to those of Lacapedé [*sic*], the characters of which he obtained from some Chinese drawing, upon the fidelity of which no dependence can of course be placed."

264.23. *Richard III whales*: In his edition of Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460), Melville did not mark *Richard III*, and in "Hawthorne and His Mosses," he spoke of "those mistaken souls, who dream of Shakespeare as a mere man of Richard-the-Third humps and Macbeth daggers." But he probably knew the play well. See *Mardi*, chap. 84: "There be many who deny the hump, moral and physical, of Gloster Richard."

265.12. *Jeremy Bentham's skeleton*: Jeremy Bentham (1748-1832) left his skeleton to the University of London, of which he was the founder. Occasionally it was carried into "Benthamite" discussions as a supposed encouragement to discussion. There seems to be no record in his 1849-1850 *Journal* of Melville's having seen this skeleton, but he may have failed to enter the visit in his notes.

265.17. *as the great Hunter says*: It is true that the 1787 essay by Dr. John Hunter (1728-1793) on "Observations on the Structure and Oeconomy of Whales," *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* (Vol. 77) laid the groundwork for the scientific whale anatomy, but Melville read Hunter as quoted in Beale's pages, here pp. 72-73.

266.13. *only four published outlines*: On p. 14, Beale published outline drawings of two sperm whales. Under the first, a monstrosity,

he printed "F. Cuvier"; under the second, a correct one, he printed "Colnett, Huggins, and Beale." All the authority and *expertise* implied by Melville in his discussion was really supplied him by the ever-reliable Beale.

266.18. *the picture of three whales*: In his copy of Beale, Melville wrote of this picture: "There is some sort of mistake in the drawing of Fig. 2. The tail part is wretchedly cropped and dwarfed, and looks altogether unnatural. The head is good." On page twelve, Melville made a little index of Beale's pictures, indicating his careful study of them.

266.19. *frontispiece, boats attacking Sperm Whales*: In his copy of Beale, Melville wrote of this frontispiece: "Turner's pictures of whales were suggested by this book." Both of Turner's whaling pictures were part of the famous Turner Bequest to the National Gallery, London, after the artist's death in 1851. Whether Melville wrote this before or after writing *Moby-Dick* is at present impossible to say, although he may possibly have seen the pictures in the National Gallery, if they were hung there at all before Turner's death. Reproduced in *Trying-Out*, facing p. 209.

266.25. *the best outline pictures are in Scoresby*: The frontispiece of Scoresby's second volume, was entitled "Dangers of the Whale Fishery" which was excellent for the whale but too static in portraying the men, who were unduly placid in the dangerous situation. This print became a stock print in various popular articles on whaling for the next thirty years (1820 following).

267.2. *two large French engravings . . . from paintings by one Garneray*: These engravings are among the scarcest and most coveted of all whaling prints. Both were reproduced in George F. Dow's *Whale Ships and Whaling* (Salem, 1925), pp. 189, 191. Louis Garneray (Melville probably took his misspelling from the name as misspelled beneath one state of the prints) was himself a veteran of South Sea travel and a painter of Marine scenes. Where Melville saw the Garneray prints is not known. Today, whaling prints are sought out by collectors. For reproductions and accounts of them see, besides Dow above: Clifford Ashley, *The Yankee Whaler* (New York, 1942), E. Keble Chatterton, *Old Ship Prints* (London, 1927), and his *Whalers and Whaling. The Story of Whaling Ships to the Present Day* (Philadelphia, 1926); Charles D. Childs, "'Thar She Blows,' Some Notes on American Whaling Pictures." *Antiques*, July 1941, Vol. 40, pp. 20-23; Albert Church, *Whale Ships and Whaling* (New York, 1938).

268.7. *that triumphal hall at Versailles . . . great battles of France*:

The *Galerie des Batailles* in the south wing of the palace, which Melville visited 6 December 1849, when he recorded in his *Journal*, p. 58: ". . . off to Versailles. Old man for guide through the gardens. A most magnificent & incredible affair altogether. Splendid paintings of battles. Grand suite of rooms of Louis Le Grand. Titan overthrown by thunderbolts, &c. Apollo & the horses on the fountain. Back to Paris by dusk." The most famous paintings which Melville saw here were by Horace Vernet (1789-1863), Francois Gerard (1770-1837), Eugene Delacroix (1797-1863), and Ary Scheffer (1795-1858). The *Galerie*, opened in 1836, contained also the busts of celebrated French warriors. Bayard Taylor in *Views A-Foot*, (Sealts, No. 495), chap. 46, praised particularly the "gorgeous paintings of Horace Vernet," who was most extensively represented: "His 'Taking of Constantine' has the vivid look of reality. The white houses shine in the sun, and from the bleached earth to the blue and dazzling sky, there seems to hang a heavy, scorching atmosphere. The white smoke of the artillery curls almost visibly off the canvass, and the cracked and half-sprung walls look as if about to topple down on the besiegers."

268.38. *Who subscribes himself "H. Durand"*: Melville's caution here was admirable; the name "Durand" was often used by French engravers and woodcarvers as a pseudonym for work which they did not want to acknowledge openly, "une signature de convention." See Sumner Scott, *The Whale in Moby-Dick*, p. 42.

269.25. *On Tower-hill . . . a crippled beggar . . . holding a painted board*: Jay Leyda has discovered a picture of a wooden-legged beggar with a placard around his neck showing a whaling scene in *Uncle Philip's Conversations with Young People about the Whale Fishery, and Polar Regions* (London, 1837).

270.3. *Wapping*: The section in East London near the Thames docks where sailors resorted.

271.31. *Solomon Islands . . . Mendanna*: Although discovered by Alvaro Mendana in 1567, these islands (San Cristoval, Guadalcanal, and Ysabel) did not attract traders and missionaries till about the time Melville was in the Pacific. Mgr. Epaulle, the first vicar-apostolic to Melanesia, was killed here by natives in 1845 soon after landing, and the mission was abandoned in 1848. See *White-Jacket*, chap. 76, where the captain's stern gallery introduced a reverie on "this charming balcony, where, sailing over the summer seas in the days of the old Peruvian viceroys, the Spanish cavalier Mendanna, of Lima, made love to the Lady Isabella, as they voyaged in quest of the Solomon Islands, the fabulous Ophir, the Grand Cyclades. . . ." See also note

on *Cyclades*, 236.10. Camoens in the *Lusiad*, Book 10, had a reference to Sumatra, "Ophir its Tyrian name," which W. J. Mickle annotated: "Sumatra has been esteemed by some the Ophir of the Holy Scriptures; but the superior fineness of the gold of Sofala, and its situation nearer the Red Sea, favour the claim of the latter."

272.4. *Cetus*: Argo-Navis or ship, Hydrus or water-snake, Piscis Volans or Flying Fish—as well as Cetus or whale—are all Southern constellations. Cetus, referred to also on p. 110, was reputed to be the monster Perseus slew in rescuing Andromeda, hence appropriately put into a different hemisphere from the constellations bearing their names. See note on *Perseus* 360.7.

272.11. *BRIT*: Bennett's statement, Vol. 2, pp. 175-76: "We cannot fail to be impressed with a truly magnificent idea of the profusion of animal life which must necessarily exist in the ocean's depths, though invisible to man," probably encouraged Melville's writing of two chapters on the *mare incognita*; the immediate information on Brit, found in various whaling books, was most likely taken from Cheever, pp. 83-84: "The food of this whale, as we have already observed, is a species of shrimp, of a blood-red color. Some of them are very minute, and few are found more than half an inch long; these float in immense shoals on the surface of the ocean, and sometimes color the water for miles. When the whale is disposed to break his fast, he rushes through a field of shrimps with open mouth, until he has received myriads of the little animals; then, with the lips thrown open, the water is forced out between the slabs which I have described, leaving the shrimps attached to the hairy strainer within; by means of the tongue they are collected, and the delicate mouthful is conveyed to his capacious stomach." And Cheever, pp. 71-72, quoted another writer: "These olive waters occupy about a fourth of the Greenland Sea . . . and hence the number of medusan animalcula which they contain is far beyond calculation. Mr. Scoresby estimates that two square miles contain 23,888,000,000,000,000.'"

272.n1. *known among whalers as the "Brazil Banks"*: Beale, p. 189: "They [sperm whales] are also seldom or never seen on 'soundings,' that is where the bottom of the sea can be touched by the deepest sea-line, or in the 'banks,' as they are termed by whalers, that exist in various parts of the ocean, as the 'Brazil banks,' which are only discolorations of the water caused by myriads of animalculae which perhaps form the substance of the common black whale's food."

274.11. *Korah*: See Numbers xvi, where Korah the son of Levi, Dathan, Abiram, and all their followers were thus destroyed for gain-

saying the divine authority of Moses in the wilderness. See also under *K* in *The New England Primer* (Sealts, No. 384): "Proud Korah's troop / Was swallowed up."

274.17. *Persian host who murdered his own guests*: Thomas Ollive Mabbott has suggested that Melville may have had in mind Oreotes, the Persian governor of Lydia, who, under pretext of seeking his protection and bestowing upon him a fortune, c. 515 B.C., lured Polykrates, the tyrant of Samos, to the mainland and then put him to death by crucifixion. See Herodotus iii, 120-125.

274.30. *the universal cannibalism of the sea*: See *White-Jacket*, chap. 90: "And as the sea, according to old Fuller, is the stable of brute monsters, gliding hither and thither in unspeakable swarms, even so it is the home of many moral monsters, who fitly divide its empire with the snake, the shark, and the worm." The allusion was to *The Holy State and the Profane State* (Sealts, No. 221), Book 2, chap. 21, sec. 8, the second sentence after the one used later for the twenty-fifth Extract. See also the passage Melville sidelined (Sealts, No. 460) in *Measure for Measure* III, i. 15-43; especially 38-41:

"What's yet in this
That bears the name of life? Yet in this life
Lie hid more thousand deaths; yet death we fear,
That makes these odds all even."

274.37. *one insular Tahiti*: Compare p. 306: "Do thou, too, remain warm among ice. Do thou, too, live in this world without being of it." Compare also p. 387: "But even so, amid the tornadoed Atlantic of my being, do I myself still forever disport in mute calm; and while ponderous planets of unwaning woe revolve round me, deep down and deep inland there I still bathe me in eternal mildness of joy." Contrast *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 335: "Appalling is the soul of man! Better might one be pushed off into the material spaces beyond the utmost orbit of our sun, than once feel himself fairly afloat in himself! . . . By vast pains we mine into the pyramid; by horrible groping we come to the central room; with joy we espy the sarcophagus; but we lift the lid—and no body is there!—appallingly vacant as vast is the soul of man!" See also note on *Steelkilt* 242.29.

275.4. *SQUID*: Beale's seventh chapter, pp. 55-79, on the "Nature of the Sperm Whale's Food" received close attention from Melville, as his markings show, but the novel showed very little evidence of direct borrowing, though the basic information is incorporated by Melville in the narrative details. It would seem that the confusion

of the squid with the whale might have been suggested by Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 175: "Their ordinary food is the cuttle-fish, or 'squid,' . . . Amongst the examples thus rejected we find solid masses of enormous size and weight, though evidently but mere fragments of the body of some vast cuttle-fish, and probably of that kind termed the 'gigantic squid'—an animal with which naturalists are but little acquainted; but which has been known to attain such huge dimensions, that, when spread out beneath the surface of the sea, it has alarmed navigators by its resemblance to a reef, or shoal." Melville's remarkable use of the squid as a terror symbol and as a false omen (notice its whiteness, described by Olmsted, p. 156, "The entire animal consists of a flabby mass of a white color, not unlike very stiff *blanc mange*") was of course Melville's own genius. "The squid is as much a promise of things to come as the appearance of the Weird Sisters in *Macbeth*. And like *Macbeth*, Ahab, blinded by *hybris*, refuses to accept the inevitable restriction of life. Ahab's is the delusion of appearances. Or the delusion of him who, seeing, will not understand." (*Trying-Out*, p. 224).

276.29. *The great live squid . . . few whale-ships ever beheld, and returned:* Compare Thomas Hope, *Anastastus* (Sealts, No. 282), Vol. 2, chap. 14, where the Greek narrator saw "the frightful spectre ship" the night before his son Alexis died.

277.16. *Bishop Pontoppodan:* In his edition of *Moby-Dick* (1947), p. 263, Willard Thorp has quoted from John Knox, *A New Collection of Voyages*, 1767, Vol. 4, p. 101, quoting Erik Pontoppidan's *Natural History of Norway* (1752-3) about the kraken: "whose back, or upper part, which seems an English mile and a half in circumference (some have affirmed more), looks at first like a number of small islands, surrounded with something that floats like sea-weeds. At last several bright points or horns appear, which grow thicker the higher they emerge, and sometimes stand up as high and large as the masts of middle-sized vessels. In a short time it slowly sinks, which is thought as dangerous as its rising, as it causes such a swell and whirlpool as draws everything down with it, like that of Maelstrom." The kraken stuck in Melville's mind, and writing to Hawthorne in the fall of 1851 he said: "Lord, when shall we be done growing? As long as we have anything more to do we have done nothing. So, now, let us add *Moby Dick* to our blessing, and step from that. Leviathan is not the biggest fish; I have heard of Krakens." And much later in life, in a poem "The Aeolian Harp," *Collected Poems* (C.W.), pp. 194-96, he wrote, p. 195: "Overwashed by every wave / Like the slumbering kraken" to describe a floating wreck.

277.30. *sometimes horrible whale line:* Much of Melville's factual

material came from Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 198-199: "The whale-line, provided for British South-Seamen, combines so completely the best qualities of cordage, that it may be regarded as the height of perfection in our rope manufacture. It is constructed of the best hemp, slightly but uniformly imbued by the vapour of tar; is two inches in circumference; and composed of three strands; each strand containing seventeen yarns, each of which is calculated to sustain the weight of one hundred and twelve pounds. Of this line, 220 fathoms is the ordinary complement of each boat. It is coiled, continuously, in two tubs, and in neat and compact horizontal layers, or 'sheaves,' each extremity of the line being kept exposed, the one for attachment to the harpoons, the other (which is provided with a loop, or 'splice,') for connecting it to the line of a second boat, should any probability arise that its entire length would be taken out by the whale.

"When ready for running, the commencement of the line is passed over the logger-head at the stern, and thence forward, over the oars, to be fastened to the harpoons in the bow; about fifteen fathoms, termed 'box-line,' being kept coiled in the head, or box, of the boat, to accompany the harpoon when it is first darted. At the spot where the box-line commences, a mark, commonly a piece of red cloth, is attached, to enable the whaler to judge at what distance the boat may be from the harpoon, and consequently from the whale, when the sea is turbid with blood.

"The line is connected with two harpoons. To the one first employed it is fastened in a firm and permanent manner; while to the second, which may be optionally used, it is connected by a provisional knot, which leaves it free from the harpoon, unless the weapon is darted, and the tye completed by the strain then brought upon it; hence, great danger is incurred by darting the second harpoon before the first, as the other must inevitably follow, and is always taken out in a rapid and irregular manner, at the risk of seriously injuring the crew. When the line is taken out rapidly, the friction will sometimes produce a deep and charred groove on the logger-head; but ignition is generally guarded against by pouring water into the line-tubs.

"Whale-lines manufactured from cotton, Manilla hemp, and New Zealand flax, have been experimented upon in this fishery; but, with the exception of those prepared from Manilla hemp, none have been found eligible as substitutes for the line in common use."

280.20. *the six burghers of Calais before King Edward*: After the battle of Crecy in 1346, Edward III besieged Calais for more than a year. When the town was finally forced to surrender, six burghers appeared before the king with halters around their necks, offering their

lives to save the the town from the wholesale slaughter Edward intended. See reference in *White-Jacket*, chap. 68, to "the old keys of Calais surrendered to Edward III."

280.36. *Mazeppa*: In Byron's poem of this title, the hero was bound to a wild horse, which the jealous husband then goaded to make him run away.

282.21. *like a portly burgher smoking a pipe*: Melville, of Dutch descent on his mother's side, was fond of this image of bourgeois comfort. His fullest use of it was after seeing David Teniers' picture of sleepy burghers, 24 April 1857, a painting which led him to write the poem "The Bench of Boors," *Collected Poems* (C.W.), p. 229.

283.n3. *apparently the most massive*: See Beale, p. 28: "One of the peculiarities of the sperm whale, which strikes at first sight every beholder, is the apparently disproportionate and unwieldy bulk of the head; but this peculiarity, instead of being, as might be supposed, an impediment to the freedom of the animal's motion in his native element, is, in fact, on the contrary in some respects very conducive to his lightness and agility, if such a term can with propriety be applied to such an enormous creature; for a great part of the bulk of the head is made up of a large thin membranous case, containing, during life, a thin oil of much less specific gravity than water; below which again is the junk, which, although heavier than the spermaceti, is still lighter than the element in which the whale moves; consequently the head taken as a whole, is lighter specifically than any other part of the body, and will always have a tendency to rise at least so far above the surface as to elevate the nostril or 'blow-hole' sufficiently for all purposes of respiration, and more than this, a very slight effort on the part of the fish would only be necessary to raise the whole of the anterior flat surface of the nose out of the water; in case the animal should wish to increase his speed to the utmost, the narrow inferior surface, which has been before stated to bear some resemblance to the cutwater of a ship, and which would in fact answer the same purpose to the whale, would be the only part exposed to the pressure of the water in front, enabling him thus to pass with the greatest celerity and ease through the boundless track of his wide domain."

289.25. *the great canal of Hang-Ho*: For account of the Grand Canal or Chah ho ("river of flood gates") or Yun ho ("transit river") in Shantung province, China, see S. Wells Williams, *The Middle Kingdom; or a survey of Geography . . . of the Chinese Empire . . .* (New York, 1847), Vol. 1, pp. 27-32. Begun in the seventh century under the Tang dynasty, completed under the Mongols of the thir-

teenth and the Ming dynasty of the fourteenth century, this canal—extending from the Pei ho river near Peking to Hangchau fu—was 650 miles in length, “not quite twice that of the Erie Canal.” The earliest section connected the Yangtze Kiang with the Yellow River, called by the Chinese the Hwang-ho—whence Melville’s error in naming the canal, since for a distance the canal followed a former bed of this river. See also *The Confidence-Man*, chap. 2: “the great ship-canal of Ving-King-Ching, in the Flowery Kingdom.”

290.n1. *A little item*: See J. Ross Browne, p. 127: “When the whale has been towed alongside by the boats, it is firmly secured by a large rope attached to the ‘small’ by a running noose. There is not a little ingenuity in the manner in which the fluke rope is first passed under the body of the whale. A small line, to which a lead is fastened, with a block of wood at the extremity, several fathoms from the lead, is thrown over between the whale and the ship’s side. From the impetus given to the lead, it sinks in a diagonal direction, drawing the block down after it. One end of the lead line is fastened to the end of the fluke rope on board, and the block attached to the other rises at the off side of the whale. It is then hauled on board by means of a wire hook fastened to a long pole, and, in hauling it in, the fluke rope passes round under the body of the whale, till the end arrives on board, when it is passed through the loop in the other extremity, and thus a running noose is formed, which is easily slipped down to the small. The fluke rope is then made fast on the forecastle, and the flukes are hauled up to the bow, or as near as they will reach, leaving the head pointed aft.”

292.33. *Fleece*: Compare *Mardi*, chap. 94, of the fish-warden of King of Mondoldo: “Crouching on the bank, the Ranger now called several by name, patted their scales, carrying on some heathenish nursery-talk, like St. Anthony, in ancient Coptic, instilling virtuous principles into his finny flock on the sea-shore.” See also *Redburn*, chap. 53, where Mrs. O’Brien, notwithstanding Max’s objections, “began her low, muttered reading” aloud of the Bible, “standing right in the extreme bows of the ship, and slightly leaning over them, as if addressing the multitudinous waves from a floating pulpit.” See *Trying-Out*, p. 234: “Strangely Melville places the cook’s sermon so that it recalls Father Mapple’s sermon to the whalemens of the Seamen’s Bethel. The cook’s sermon is the anti-masque (always satiric and parodic) to the masque (lyric and serious). And though placed in a whaling setting graphic and concrete, on the boards of the *Pequod*, the ship is the world even as the Seamen’s Bethel is a part of the world.”

297.17. *the tongue . . . a great delicacy*: See Scoresby, Vol. 2, p. 14: "the flesh, and particularly the tongue, was publicly sold in the markets of Bayonne, Cibourre, and Béariz, and that it was esteemed a great delicacy."

297.21. *barbacued porpoises*: See Robert Sibbald, *The History of the Sheriffdoms of Fife and Kinross*, Part 2, sec. 1, chap. 3, f. n. 1, on "porpoises": "Its greasy flesh was a royal dish, so late as the reign of Henry VIII. and it must have continued in esteem even in that of Elizabeth, as Caius mentions the sauce used with it. The monks of Dunfermline had a grant from Malcolm IV. of all the heads of a species of whale that should be caught in the Firth of Forth (Scott-watre) but his Majesty reserved the most dainty bit to himself, viz. the tongue."

298.3. *Zogranda*: Willard Thorp has suggested that Melville invented this doctor by misspelling the name of the physician of Valladolid, Sangrado, to whom the chief character attaches himself as apprentice in Le Sage's *Gil Blas*. This was another joke on Scoresby, who elsewhere in the book was called Snoghead, Fogo Von Slack, Captain Sleet. A passage from Scoresby, Vol. 1, p. 475, furnished Melville his information: "The Esquimaux eat the flesh and fat of the whale, and drink the oil with greediness. Indeed, some tribes who are not familiarized with spiritous liquors, carry along with them in their canoes in their fishing excursions, bladders filled with oil, which they use in the same way, and with a similar relish, that a British sailor does a dram. They also eat the skin of the whale raw, both adults and children; for it is not uncommon, when the females visit the whale-ships, for them to help themselves to pieces of skin, preferring those with which a little blubber is connected, and to give it as food to their infants, who suck it with apparent delight."

298.26. *dip their ship-biscuit*: See J. Ross Browne pp. 62-63: "About the middle of the watch they get up the bread kid, and, after dipping a few biscuits in salt water, heave them into a strainer, and boil them in the oil. It is difficult to form any idea of the luxury of this delicious mode of cooking on a long watch-night. Sometimes, when on friendly terms with the steward, they make fritters of the brains of the whale mixed with flour, and cook them in the oil. These are considered a most sumptuous delicacy. Certain portions of the whale's flesh are also eaten with relish, though, to my thinking, not a very great luxury, being coarse and strong."

298.30. *the two plump whitish lobes*: See Beale, p. 111: "... The whole brain in this tribe is compact, the anterior part of the cerebrum not projecting so far forward as in either the quadruped or human

subject, neither is the medulla oblongata so prominent, but flat, lying in a kind of hollow, made by the two lobes of the cerebellum. The brain is composed of cortical and medullary substances very distinctly marked, the cortical being in colour like the tubular substance of a kidney, the medullary very white."

301.20. *de god wat made shark must be one dam Ingin*: With Queequeg's remark here, compare *Mardi*, chap. 13: "As well hate a seraph, as a shark. Both were made by the same hand." This final paragraph was omitted from the English edition.

301.23. *CUTTING IN*: Almost unique in *Moby-Dick* because it was a chapter of pure exposition, without symbolic or special narrative purpose, "Cutting In" was a model of graphic expository writing. The "fish documents" which Melville had read, especially Beale, Cheever, and Bennett, had described the same process, occasionally in words which Melville borrowed, but none of them ever reached the graphic power of the novelist. See *Trying-Out*, pp. 237-39.

303.31. *the skin of the whale*: See Beale, pp. 31, 31-32, 90-91, 91-92:

"The skin of the sperm whale, as of all other cetaceous animals, is without scales, smooth, but occasionally, in old whales, wrinkled, and frequently marked on the sides by linear impressions, appearing as if rubbed against some angular body. The colour of the skin, over the greatest part of its extent, is very dark, most so on the upper part of the head, the back, and on the flukes, in which situation it is in fact sometimes black, on the sides it gradually assumes a lighter tint, till on the breast it becomes silvery grey. . . .

"Immediately beneath the black skin is the blubber or fat, which is contained in a cellular membrane, and which is much strengthened by numerous interlacements of ligamentous fibres, which has induced Professor Jacob to consider the whole thickness of blubber to be the *cutis vera*, or true skin, infiltrated with oil, or fatty matters. Its thickness on the breast of a large whale is about fourteen inches, and on most other parts of the body it measures from eight to eleven inches. The head is not, however, supplied with this covering, having only the black skin, or cutis, which lies close to a layer of very dense cellular tissue, under which is seen a considerable thickness of numerous small tendons, intermixed with muscular fibres.

"This is more especially observed on the top and upper third of the head, surrounding the case, as lower down we find the black skin lying close to the peculiar structure of the junk. . . .

"The covering in this order of animals consists of a cuticle and cutis; the cuticle is somewhat similar to that on the sole of the foot

in the human species, and appears to be made up of a number of layers which separate by slight putrefaction, but this I suspect arises in some degree from there being a succession of cuticles formed. It has no degree of elasticity or toughness, but tears easily, nor do its fibres appear to have any particular direction. The internal stratum is tough and thick, and in the spermaceti whale its internal surface when separated from the cutis is just like velvet, each pile standing firm in its place, but this is not so distinguished in some of the others.

"It is the cuticle which gives the colour to the animal; and in parts that are dark, I think I have seen a dirty coloured substance washed away in the separation of the cuticle from the cutis, which must be a kind of rete mucosum.

"The cutis in this tribe is extremely villous on its external surface, answering to the rough surface of the cuticle, and forming in some parts small ridges, similar to those on the human fingers and toes. The villi are soft and pliable, they float in water, and each is longer or shorter according to the size of the animal. In the spermaceti whale, they were about a quarter of an inch long; in the grampus, bottle-nose, and piked whales much shorter; in all they are extremely vascular. . . .

"Professor Jacob, of Dublin, regarding the skin of these animals, states, 'that structure in which the oil is deposited, denominated blubber, is the true skin of the animal, modified certainly for the purpose of holding this fluid oil, but still being the true skin. Upon close examination it is found to consist of an interlacement of fibres crossing each other in every direction, as in common skin, but more open in texture, to make room for the oil.' "

305.19. *hieroglyphic palisades on the banks of the Upper Mississippi*: John W. Nichol, "Melville and the Midwest," *P.M.L.A.*, Sept. 1951, Vol. 66, p. 621, has interpreted this as a reference to the Piasa Rocks, just north of Alton, Illinois, where a small stream, the Piasa, enters the Mississippi. According to the journal of an early western traveler, Edmund Flagg, 1836-1837, "the name is of aboriginal derivation, and, in the idiom of the Illini, denotes '*The bird that devours men.*' Near the mouth of this little stream rises a bold, precipitous bluff, and on its smooth face, at an elevation seemingly unattainable by human art, is graven the figure of an enormous bird with extended pinions. The bird was by the Indians called the 'Piasa'; hence the name of the stream." Traces of this image were visible until about 1845, when it was completely obliterated by quarrying.

305.35. *A word or two more*: Most of this paragraph was a metaphor adapted from Thomas Beale, p. 32: "This thick covering of

skin, blubber, or fat, is called by South Sea Whalers the 'blanket.' It is of a light yellowish colour, and, when melted down, furnishes the sperm oil. It also serves two excellent purposes to the whale, in rendering it buoyant, and in furnishing it with a warm protection from the coldness of the surrounding element; in this last respect answering well to the name bestowed upon it by the sailors."

306.29. *the great dome of St. Peter's . . . a temperature of thine own*: See Mme. de Stael, *Corinne; or, Italy*, Book 4, chap. 3, the heroine's comment to Oswald on their visit to St. Peter's cathedral in Rome: "This is a world in itself; a refuge from both heat and cold; it hath a season of its own, perennial spring, which the atmosphere without can never affect." Melville acquired this book in London in 1849; see *Journal*, p. 85, and Sealts, No. 486.

308.10. *other ghosts than the Cock Lane one, and far deeper men than Doctor Johnson*: See Melville's entry on his London sight-seeing, 10 November 1849, *Journal*, p. 26: "through Cock Lane (Dr. Johnson's Ghost) to Smithfield." In 1762 a certain householder on this street, Parsons, wishing people to believe that one Fanny Kent had been murdered by her husband, insisted that certain knockings—in reality made by his own twelve-year-old daughter—came from the ghost of this Fanny Kent. According to his *Journal* entry for 19 December 1849, Melville bought in London a 10 volume edition of James Boswell, *Life of Samuel Johnson* (Sealts, No. 84), in which he could have found, early in the entries for the year 1763, Boswell's defence of Johnson against the "absurd credulity" attributed to him, as the caricature Pomposo, in Churchill's poem, "The Ghost." Boswell ascribed to Johnson co-authorship with Dr. Douglas, later Bishop of Salisbury, of the article published in the newspapers and the *Gentleman's Magazine* exposing the imposture, and made a further entry under the year 1778 when Johnson recalled the episode: "He expressed great indignation at the imposture of the Cock-Lane ghost, and related with much satisfaction, how he had assisted in detecting the cheat, and had published an account of it in the newspapers." The whole incident was revived in Melville's mind and given the cast it assumes here when he borrowed from E. A. Duyckinck in the summer of 1850 a copy of Carlyle's *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123) and read Teufelsdröckh's comment in Book 3, chap. 8 of that book: "Again, could anything be more miraculous than an actual authentic Ghost? The English Johnson longed, all his life, to see one; but could not, though he went to Cock Lane, and thence to the church-vaults, and tapped on coffins. Foolish Doctor! Did he never, with the mind's eye as well as with the body's, look round him into that full tide of

human Life he so loved; did he never so much as look into Himself? The good Doctor was a Ghost, as actual and authentic as heart could wish. . . ."

309.19. *the girdle of Judith*: When the Assyrian hosts under Holofernes besieged the town of Bethulia and cut off its water supply, the widow Judith—after vainly remonstrating with the elders for the lack of trust in God which had made them resolve to surrender, arrayed herself in finery and went alone with her maid into the enemy's camp. She insinuated herself into the good graces of Holofernes and, after getting him drunk at a banquet on the fourth day, cut off his head with his own sword and carried it in her food bag back to Bethulia. Her daring act so inspired the Hebrews that they easily defeated the Assyrians. See the book of Judith in the Apocrypha. This story was a frequent subject for paintings and illustrations, one of which Melville would seem to have had in mind here.

309.35. *Speak, thou vast and venerable head*: Perhaps suggested to Melville by the churchyard scene where Hamlet commented on the skulls (V, i, 83-88, 202-216). See also Melville's letter to E. A. Duyckinck 3 March 1849, of Emerson, printed Thorp, p. 372: "I love all men who *dive*. Any fish can swim near the surface, but it takes a great whale to go down stairs five miles or more; & if he dont attain the bottom, why all the lead in Galena can't fashion the plummet that will. I'm not talking of Mr Emerson now— but of the whole corps of thought-divers, that have been diving & coming up again with blood-shot eyes since the world began." Compare comments on Pip on p. 413: "He saw God's foot upon the treadle of the loom, and spoke of it. . . ."

311.2. *THE JEROBOAM'S STORY*: Fulfilling the prophecy of Ahijah (1 Kings xi, 29-40), Jeroboam became the leader of the revolt against Rehoboam's tyranny and the first king of Israel after the division. But Jeroboam set up golden calves to be worshipped (xii, 28-33), and while he himself was burning incense at the altar a man of God cried out against this idolatry and the altar was rent and the king's hand withered (xiii, 1-7). Momentary repentance restored his hand but he lapsed again into evil ways. Later, when the king's son was sick, the same Ahijah prophesied violent deaths for all of the royal house except the son, xiv, 11, 13: "Him that dieth of Jeroboam in the city shall the dogs eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat. . . . for he only [the son] of Jeroboam shall come to the grave, because in him there is found some good thing toward the Lord God of Israel in the house of Jeroboam." Abijah, king of Judah, after a moving exhortation to a return to the

true faith, led his army in a disastrous defeat of Jeroboam (2 Chronicles xiii), so that (20) 'Neither did Jeroboam recover strength again in the days of Abijah; and the Lord struck him, and he died.' Ahab was the sixth king of Israel after Jeroboam, but not of the same house. Captain Mayhew, however, was hardly intended as a counterpart of Jeroboam, and Gabriel clearly was not a successor of Ahijah. The death of Macey may have had some analogy with the king's withered hand; but the chief function of the ship *Jeroboam* was to serve as a general warning to Captain Ahab and the *Pequod's* crew, and the prophecy about the king's son that "he only . . . shall come to the grave" may have had some bearing on the ultimate survival of Ishmael alone. Gabriel, more than Mayhew, was like Ahab, both in "the measureless self-deception" and in "his measureless power of deceiving and bedevilling so many others."

312.29. *Neskeuna Shakers*: At Niskayuna, seven or eight miles north of Albany, New York, Mother Anne Lee and her followers established in 1776 the original settlement in America of the Shakers or, as they preferred to call themselves, the Millennial Church or the United Society of Believers in Christ's Second Appearing. Mother Anne Lee was for them the reincarnation of Christ, as a woman. They held property in common; they practiced celibacy; and they had other distinctive social and economic, as well as religious, institutions. In 1850, when Melville came to Pittsfield, the mother colony was at Lebanon, New York, only ten miles distant, and another establishment sometimes called Jericho, with a famous round barn of stone, was located in the Massachusetts township of Hancock only four or five miles from Pittsfield. Since in the initial paragraphs of "Hawthorne and His Mosses," Melville mentioned Timothy Dwight's book as his summer reading immediately preceding *Mosses from an Old Manse*, which was given to him by his Aunt Mary Melville 18 July 1850 (Sealts, No. 248), Melville's mature interest may date from the two letters about the Shakers in *Travels; in New-England and New-York* (New Haven, 1822), Vol. 3, pp. 149-170. A few days later, 21 July 1850, making a Berkshire excursion with his cousin Robert Melvill, he bought a copy of *A Summary View of the Millennial Church, or the United Society of Believers, Commonly Called Shakers. Comprising the Rise, Progress and Practical Order of the Society. Together with the General Principles of Their Faith and Testimony*. (Second Ed. Revised. Albany: Van Benthuysen, 1848), which he inscribed: "H. Melville / Shaker Village (Hancock, Mass:) / July 21st 1850 / Bought of Nathan Holland." (See Merton M. Sealts, "Melville and the Shakers, *Studies in Bibliography: Papers of the Biblio-*

graphical Society of the University of Virginia, 1949-50, Vol. 2, pp. 105-114.) Besides at least this one trip to Hancock, Melville made trips to Lebanon 7 and 15 August 1850. (See E. A. Duyckinck's letter to his wife about the first visit, in L. S. Mansfield, "Glimpses of Herman Melville's Life in Pittsfield, 1850-1851," *American Literature*, March 1937, Vol. 9, p. 33.) Sealts reports that in his copy of *A Summary View*, Melville marked the statement that the original community was "near Niskeyuna" (p. 8) and a reference to religious inspiration as "*the mighty power of God*" (p. 8). Timothy Dwight's account was thoroughly unsympathetic; he equated the Shakers with "Manicheans" (p. 155), dubbed one of their leaders, a Mr. Meacham of New Lebanon, "Mohammed" (p. 157), and devoted several paragraphs to alleged practices of naked dancing and naked whipping (pp. 165-166). He quoted the founder's statement, "I am Anne, the Word" (p. 152), reported their claim to hear angels, to receive immediate revelations inspiring guidance from God (pp. 164, 163, 157), and in his comment on their involuntary thrusting out of the right arm in the moment of receiving communication from God (p. 157) perhaps suggested the activity Melville assigned to Gabriel later in this chapter of "tossing one arm in frantic gestures."

312.31. *the speedy opening of the seventh vial*: See the Revelation of St. John the Divine, xvi, 17: "And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done." According to the article on Revelation in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature*, this was commonly interpreted as a prophecy of the fall of Rome. Clearly Melville meant here to indicate that Gabriel was signaling the coming of some calamity.

314.32. *the Shakers receiving the Bible*: What is otherwise a trifle obscure here is clarified by introducing an apostrophe to make the singular possessive (*Shaker's*), referring to Gabriel. The Shakers believed that any divine revelation to them took rank with the scriptures, and often published their inspired visions under such titles as *A Holy, Sacred and Divine Roll and Book; from the Lord God of Heaven, to the Inhabitants of Earth: Revealed in the United Society at New Lebanon*. . . . (Canterbury, N. H., 1843).

315.11. *the luckless mate*: With this episode compare a passage from Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 216: "The boats were close together, and Captain Stavers had but just remarked to his mate, that as the whale was nearly dead he would leave him to complete its destruction whilst he harpooned the loose Cachalot, when the tail of the latter passed, with the rapidity of lightning, over, and in front of his boat, and

simultaneously, Mr. Young, though a large and strong man, was seen flying through the air at a considerable height, and to the distance of nearly forty yards from the boat, ere he fell into the water, where he remained floating motionless on the surface for a few moments, then sank, and was seen no more. There can be no doubt that his death was instantaneous. A native of the Society Islands plunged into the water immediately the accident occurred, and endeavored to save the body of his unfortunate officer, but it had sunk before he could swim to the spot where it fell. No injury was sustained by any other person in the boat; nor was the boat itself injured, beyond a portion of the bow being broken off, and the thighboard, which was torn from its place and accompanied the body of the unfortunate mate, so powerful was the impulse it had received."

317.8. *THE MONKEY-ROPE*: Suggested to Melville by Olmsted, p. 63: "To point the hook into the orifice made for it, one of the boat-steerers, having upon his feet a pair of woollen stockings to prevent his slipping, jumps overboard, guarded by a rope passing under his arms, and tended by one of the men upon deck. It is no very easy matter to introduce the hook into the proper place, while the sea is dashing the whale against the ship and the waves are breaking over him; so that a man runs the risk of being strangled, or of being bruised by the concussion of the animal with the vessel. The danger of being horribly mutilated by the sharks that assemble in great numbers during the 'cutting in,' attracted by the scent of blood, is by no means inconsiderable. They are so voracious, that notwithstanding the deep gashes they receive from the cutting spades, they rush upon the whale, and tear off large masses of blubber with their formidable jaws. Several times I trembled for the safety of the man who was endeavoring to fix the blubber hook into the proper place, as a large shark came up within a few inches of his leg, and once I thrilled with horror as one of the ravenous monsters turned over in the attitude of seizing one of his limbs in his terrible teeth; but at this moment a pull upon the rope extricated the man from his perilous situation."

318.35. *this Siamese connexion*: Compare Thomas Hope, *Anastasis* (Sealts, No. 282), Vol. 1, chap. 6, of the fettered galley-slaves in the Bagnio of Constantinople: "Linked together two and two for life, should they sink under their sufferings, they still continue unsevered after death; and the man doomed to live on drags after him the corpse of his dead companion." See also R. H. Dana, Jr., *Two Years before the Mast* (Sealts, No. 173), chap. 8, the account of hanging by "a gant-line" in tarring down the rigging of the *Pilgrim*: "There he 'swings 'twixt heaven and earth,' and if the rope slips,

breaks or is let go, or if the bowline slips, he falls overboard or breaks his neck." The famous pair of Siamese twins exhibited throughout the country in the early nineteenth century by P. T. Barnum were Chang and Eng, really Chinese. When they retired in 1840 to become North Carolina farmers, they took the name Bunker.

323.26. *that gamboge ghost*: A reddish-yellow color, named from a resin obtained from certain trees in Cambodia and used by artists as a yellow pigment. Compare entry for 24 Nov. 1849, *Journal*, p. 45: "the oldfashioned pea soup London fog—of a gamboge color." "Old Gamboge" was also the nickname of the "elderly, yellow-faced officer" on the French frigate at Papeete, *Omoa*, chap. 28.

324.22. *The devil, switching his hoofs*. . . .: See note on *a Job's whale* 184.21. The initial "Prologue in Heaven" of Goethe's *Faust* presented a similar scene in Mephistopheles's request that Faust be given into his power and the Lord's reply (as translated by Bayard Taylor):

"As long as he on earth shall live
So long I make no prohibition.
While Man's desires and aspirations stir,
He cannot choose but err."

See Goethe's comment to Eckermann, as reported in the *Conversations*, 10 January 1825: "If, too, the prologue of my 'Faust' is something like the beginning of Job, that is again quite right, and I am rather to be praised than censured." Compare also the opening scene in heaven in Philip James Bailey, *Festus* (1838), where Lucifer makes the request:

"There is a youth
Among the sons of men I fain would have
Given up wholly to me."

325.26. *orlop*: the lowest deck of a vessel.

326.22. *on one side you hoist in Locke's head . . . on the other side, hoist in Kant's*: Melville was attempting here the kind of balance he referred to again in "The Fountain," p. 372: "neither believer nor infidel, but . . . a man who regards them both with equal eye." He probably knew more about both of these thinkers than appeared in his facetious comment (unsympathetic toward the Apostles, but not necessarily toward Kant) in *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 314: "that undivided attention indispensable to the proper digesting of the sublimated Cate-

gories of Kant; especially as Kant (can't) is the one great palpable fact in their pervadingly impalpable lives." Aboard the *Southampton* and afterward in London and Paris, in 1849, Melville discussed philosophy at great length with Franklin Taylor, who had a Heidelberg Ph.D., and George J. Adler, professor of German at New York University—both well informed. See entries for 12 and 22 October, *Journal*, pp. 4 and 12, of Adler: "He is full of the German metaphysics, & discourses of Kant, Swedenborg, &c.," and of the three: "We had an extraordinary time & did not break up till after two in the morning. We talked metaphysics continually, & Hegel, Schlegel, Kant &c were discussed under the influence of the whiskey." Doubtless Melville knew with more than an amateur's acquaintance that Locke conceived the mind as a *tabula rasa* and all knowledge as of sensory origin, adventitious; whereas Kant asserted the constitutional role or innate order of the mind, and denied that the whole experience could occur through sense. Locke stressed content; Kant stressed form. But it would be a mistake to think Locke and Kant opposed in every detail, as Melville knew. It was pertinent that by p. 334, the Locke whale had been changed to a Stoic and the Kant whale to a Platonian with Spinozistic trimmings—a less debatable contrast.

327.4. *Laplandish speculations*: The Lapps, whose name of Swedish origin meant "nomads," were originally a Mongol tribe and were driven by successive oppressors to the northernmost part of Scandinavia and Russia. More than half of their territory was in the Arctic Circle. Their wanderings, their climate, and their occupations made them traditionally believers in witches and magicians, incantations and divinations. See *Omoo*, chap. 12: "among ignorant seamen, Finlanders, or Finns, as they are more commonly called, are regarded with peculiar superstition. For some reason or other, which I never could get at, they are supposed to possess the gift of second sight, and the power to wreak supernatural vengeance upon those who offend them."

327.29. a "grey-headed whale": See Beale, p. 31: "In different individuals there is, however, considerable variety of shade, and some are even piebald. Old 'bulls,' as full-grown males are called by whalers, have generally a portion of grey on the nose immediately above the forepart of the upper-jaw, and they are then said to be 'grey-headed.'"

328.5. *peculiar sideway position of the whale's eyes*: See Beale, p. 47: "... They sometimes also place themselves in a perpendicular posture, with the head only above the water, presenting in this position a most extraordinary appearance when seen from a distance,

resembling large black rocks in the midst of the ocean; this posture they seem to assume for the purpose of surveying more perfectly, or more easily, the surrounding expanse. A species of whale called by whalers 'black fish,' is most frequently in the habit of assuming this position.

"The eyes of the sperm whale being placed in the widest part of the head, of course afford the animal an extensive field of vision, and he appears to view objects very readily that are placed laterally in a direct line with the eye, and when they are placed at some distance before him. His common manner of looking at a boat or ship is to turn over on his side, so as to cause the rays from the object to strike directly upon the retina.

"Now when alarmed, and consequently anxious to take as rapid a glance as possible on all sides, he can much more readily do so when in the above-described perpendicular posture, and this consequently appears to be the reason of his assuming it."

329.31. *the ear of the whale*: See Beale, pp. 114-115, quoting Hunter: "This organ consists of the same parts as in the quadruped, an external opening, with membrani tympani, an Eustachian tube, a tympanum with its processes, and the small bones. There is no external projection forming a funnel; we can easily assign a reason why there should be no projecting ear, as it would interfere with progressive motion, but the reason why it is not formed as in birds is not so evident. The external opening begins by a small hole scarcely perceptible, situated on the side of the head a little behind the eye; it is much longer than in other animals, in consequence of the size of the head being so much increased beyond the cavity which contains the brain. The Eustachian tube opens on the outside of the upper part of the fauces. The bony part of the organ is very hard and brittle, rendering it difficult to be cut with a saw without its chipping into pieces, and there is on the whole more solid bone than in the corresponding parts in quadrupeds, it being thick and massy."

". . . Dr. Alderson has remarked of the sperm whale, that 'there was no external ear, but simply a small circular opening, about nine inches, posteriorly to the posterior canthus of the eye, which just admitted the finger.'"

330.7. *Herschel's great telescope*: Sir William Herschel (1738-1822) finished in 1789 his great reflecting telescope of 40 ft. focal length and 4 ft. aperture. Previously he had discovered Uranus and the sixth ring of Saturn; with this telescope he discovered Saturn's seventh ring and saw the skies with a clarity and grandeur not known before. With the thought developed in this paragraph, compare

Mardi, chap. 122: "For all the eyes we get beyond our own, but minister to infelicity. The microscope disgusts us with our *Mardi*; and the telescope sets us longing for some other world."

330.16. *the great Kentucky Mammoth Cave of his stomach*: The Kentucky cave was discovered about the beginning of the nineteenth century and extensively explored 1834-1835 by Edmund F. Lee, who made a detailed map. See *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge* (then edited by Hawthorne), August 1836, Vol. 2, p. 507: "The Mammoth Cave . . . has been explored to the distance of sixteen miles—the longest journey that ever was performed within the bowels of the earth. Through the mouth of the cave there is a continual current of air, which for six months of the year, is drawn inward, and during the other six, rushes outward with force enough to extinguish a torch. It is one of the breathing places of our mother Earth, where she performs her long respirations, and heaves her mighty, yet unavailing sighs, for the sin and sorrow of her children. Within the cavern, the spectator beholds hills, plains, and valleys, high precipices, and awful chasms, and deep rivers, broken with waterfalls—the whole presenting a picture of what the external world would be, were the sun extinguished, and only a few torches glimmering amid the darkness of Eternity. In the spacious gloom of this cave, the innumerable wretches who are weary of the light of day, might build a City of Despair; or, should a pestilence depopulate the land, the dead might here find a sepulchre." See also Robert Montgomery Bird, *Peter Pilgrim: or a Rambler's Reflections* (1838), Vol. 2, the long essay on "The Mammoth Cave," particularly the description of the Crevice Pit, p. 92, which "receives you into its jaws, ever gaping for prey, like the jaws of a sleeping alligator in fly time."

330.18. *chaste-looking mouth*: See Beale, p. 26: "The mouth is lined throughout with a pearly white membrane, which becomes continuous at the lips, and borders with the common integument, where it becomes of a dark-brown or black colour."

330.21. *portentous lower jaw*: Beale had considerable information on the whale's jaw, pp. 26, 79-80, but Melville was here using, more directly, information from Beale, p. 35, on whale feeding:

"It appears from all I can learn among the oldest and most experienced whalers, and from the observations I have been enabled to make myself upon this interesting subject, that when the whale is inclined to feed, he descends a certain depth below the surface of the ocean, and there remains in as quiet a state as possible, opening his narrow elongated mouth until the lower jaw hangs down perpendicularly, or at right angles with the body.

"The roof of his mouth, the tongue, and especially the teeth, being of a bright glistening colour, must of course present a remarkable appearance, which seems to be the incitement by which his prey are attracted, and when a sufficient number, I am strongly led to suppose, are within the mouth, he rapidly closes his jaw and swallows the contents. . . ."

331.7. *drawing teeth*: Olmsted, p. 182, had a picture of this process. The allusion to Michigan oxen pulling out stumps may well be a memory of Melville's from his June 1840 trip to Galena, Illinois.

331.21. *a Roman war-chariot*: Compare Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 161-62: "The forehead is elevated; and presents a deep crescentic excavation, which gives the entire cranium a form, not unaptly compared to that of a Roman war-chariot."

332.26. *the roof*: Metaphor from Cheever, p. 57: "The bones, or, rather, slabs of whale-bone radiate in leaves that lie edgewise to the mouth, from each side of what may be called the ridge-pole of the mouth's roof, forming a house almost big enough for a man to stand up in."

332.31. *those Venetian blinds*: Another figure of speech from Cheever, p. 83: "They hang perpendicularly from the crown to the jaw, with their thickest edges out; they are set about half an inch apart, something like the slabs of a Venetian blind made very close."

332.37. *certain curious marks*: See Scoresby, Vol. 1, p. 457: "In some whales, a curious hollow on one side, and ridge on the other, occurs in many of the central blades of whalebone, at regular intervals of 6 or 7 inches. May not this irregularity, like the rings in the horns of the ox, which they resemble, afford an intimation of the age of the whale? If so, twice the number of running feet in the longest lamina of whalebone in the head of a whale not full grown, would represent its age in years."

333.26. *the great Haarlem organ . . . its thousand pipes*: See also *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 422: "the thousand pipes of Harlem." Constructed 1735-1738, and long considered the largest in the world, the organ of the Groote Kerk (St. Bavo) had 5000 pipes ranging up to 15 inches in diameter and 32 feet in length.

333.n1. *a sort of whisker*: See Scoresby, Vol. 1, p. 458: "a slight beard, consisting of a few short scattered white hairs, surmounts the anterior extremity of both jaws."

334.21. *the Sperm Whale, a Platonian . . . Spinoza*: See note on *on the one side you hoist in Locke's head* 326.22. See the comment on those philosophers who claimed to have found the "Talismanic Secret," to have got an answer from "that profound Silence, that only

voice of our God," in *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 244: "Plato, and Spinoza, and Goethe, and many more belong to this guild of self-imposters, with a preposterous rabble of Muggle-tonian Scots and Yankees, whose vile brogue still the more bestreaks the stripedness of their Greek or German Neoplatonical originals." Here Melville was less critical of the doctrines of Spinoza (1632-1677), since the Sperm Whale's "enormous practical resolution in facing death" apparently came from his acquiescence in the universal order—as that philosopher advocated—and his thus attaining the "intuitive knowledge" that all things are expressions of the eternal cosmos, which carried with it a "blessedness" which was "not the reward of virtue, but virtue itself." See Goethe's account of the influence of Spinoza on him in *Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life* (Sealts, No. 228), Books 14 and 16. In the first passage Goethe spoke of "the all-composing calmness of Spinoza" and "that wonderful sentiment, 'He who truly loves God must not desire God to love him in return.'" In the second there was a reference to the derogatory article in Bayle (Sealts, No. 51), which Melville also probably knew. See *Trying-Out*, pp. 256-259, for further discussion of this passage.

334.24. *THE BATTERING-RAM*: Metaphor from Cheever, pp. 155-6: "the head of a sperm whale is square, the end of it something like the largest mill-log ever seen, sawed off straight. It is truly a prodigious mass of organized, compact matter, with which this animal has been known sometimes to butt like a ram against the sides of a ship and break it to pieces."

335.3. *You observe*: This entire paragraph was developed from two sentences in Owen Chase, *Narrative . . . of the Whale-Ship Essex*, p. 38: "the structure and strength of the whale's head is admirably designed for this mode of attack; the most prominent part of which is almost as hard and as tough as iron; indeed, I can compare it to nothing else but the inside of a horse's hoof, upon which a lance or harpoon would not make the slightest impression. The eyes and ears are removed nearly one-third the length of the whole fish, from the front part of the head, and are not in the least degree endangered in this mode of attack."

336.34. *Truth is a thing for salamander giants only to encounter*: Melville here ignored the exploding of the vulgar error that salamanders live in the fire by Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica* (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), Book 3, chap. 14.

336.36. *the weakling youth lifting the dread goddess's veil at Sais*: *Lais* in the first American edition was clearly a typographical error;

the English edition had the word correct. See the poem, "The Veiled Statue at Sais," in J. C. F. von Schiller, *Poems and Ballads* (Edward Bulwer Lytton trans.)—acquired by Melville in 1849 (Sealts, No. 439), but probably not marked until 1860—which told the story of a youth, apparently "a provincial and sentimentalist in Truth," who went to Sais, in Egypt, to study the secret priestly lore. Warned about the veiled image said to be Truth herself, he nevertheless entered the temple secretly at night and lifted the veil:

"Would you inquire what form there met his eye?
 I know not,—but, when day appear'd, the priests
 Found him extended senseless, pale as death,
 Before the pedestal of Isis' statue.
 What had been seen and heard by him when there,
 He never would disclose, but from that hour
 His happiness in life had fled forever,
 And his deep sorrow soon conducted him
 To an untimely grave."

See also Herodotus II, 170-171, for account of the temple of Athene (or Isis or Nit or Demeter) at Sais, and his comment about who was buried there: "I deem it forbidden to utter." Of the nearby lake, he wrote: "On this lake they enact by night the story of the god's sufferings, a rite which the Egyptians call the Mysteries." (Melville owned Herodotus in the translation of W. Beloe, Harper's Classical Library, Vols. 32, 33, 34—Sealts, No. 147.)

337.2. *THE GREAT HEIDELBURGH TUN*: Melville's source of information about this celebrated wine cask—capacity 49,000 gallons—was probably "The travels of Mr. Maximilian Mission, through Part of Holland, etc.," published with a picture of the Tun in the revised edition of John Harris, ed., *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca. Or, a Complete Collection of Voyages and Travels* (1748) vol. 2, p. 528: "This so much celebrated Tun is thirty one Foot long and twenty one high, unto which you ascend by a Pair of Stairs of fifty Steps, to a Kind of Platform or Balcony of twenty Foot long, inclosed with Rails: The Elector's Arms are placed on the Front of the Tun, and *Bacchus* on the Top, attended by Satyrs, Drunkards, and such-like. Vines, Grapes, Glasses and Leather Jacks make a great Part of the Ornaments of this Tun, in *basso relievo*. Abundance of Jest and Apothegms, relating to the same Subject, are to be seen, in *High Dutch* on divers Parts of this enormous Tun." (For a reproduction of the pic-

ture, see *Trying-Out*, facing p. 304.) See also Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 4, interchapter 16: "I might hint also at that Tun which the Pfalzgraf Johannes Kasimir built at Heidelberg in the year 1591,

Dessgleichen zu derselben zeit
War keines in der Christenheit:

but alas! it is now a more melancholy object than the Palace to which it appertained,—for the ruins of that Palace are so beautiful, that the first emotion with which you behold them is one of unmingled pleasure:—and the tun is empty!"

337.18. *the Case*: Melville was here consulting Beale, pp. 25-26: "In the right side of the nose, and upper surface of the head, is a large, almost triangular-shaped cavity, called by whalers the 'case,' which is lined with a beautiful glistening membrane, and covered by a thick layer of muscular fibres and small tendons, running in various directions, and finally united by common integuments. This cavity is for the purpose of secreting and containing an oily fluid, which, after death, concretes into a granulated substance of a yellowish colour, the spermaceti. The size of the case may be estimated, when it is stated that in a large whale it not infrequently contains a ton, or more than ten large barrels of spermaceti"

"Beneath the case and nostril, and projecting beyond the lower jaw, is a thick mass of elastic substance called the 'junk:' it is formed of a dense cellular tissue, strengthened by numerous strong tendinous fibres, and infiltrated with very fine sperm oil and spermaceti."

339.14. *he seems some Turkish Muezzin calling . . . to prayers*: Compare with this image of Tashtego standing on the whale's head the description of the preacher of the floating chapel in *Redburn*, chap. 35: "On Sundays he hoisted the Bethel flag, and like the *muezzin* or cryer of prayers on top of a Turkish mosque, would call the strolling sailors to their devotions." This was a common comparison in Melville's day; see the Rev. Walter Colton, *Deck and Port* (1850), chap. 9: the tolling at sunset of the cathedral bells of Lima "reminds the traveller of the call of the muezzin from the minarets of Constantinople, when he summons the Mussulman to prayer."

341.13. *Niagara's Table-Rock*: A piece of this famous rock fell into the falls 25 June 1850.

342.14. *delivery of Tashtego*: Note that Harry Bolton was killed between a ship and a whale in some stage of the cutting-in process, *Redburn*, chap. 62.

343.11. *Plato's honey head*: Melville's figure in this criticism of Platonic idealism was based on a practice common on the frontier in Melville's day. The process was best described by Washington Irving, *A Tour of the Prairies*, chap. 9, "A Bee-Hunt," in *The Crayon Miscellany* (1835), which was reprinted in the *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge*, May 1836, Vol. 2, pp. 357-358, and perhaps elsewhere. The bee-hunters placed a piece of honey-comb in a low bush as a bait or lure for the wild bees and afterward "traced the honey-laden bees to their hive, in the hollow trunk of a blasted oak, where, after buzzing about for a moment, they entered a hole about sixty feet from the ground." Under the blows of axes, "at length down came the tree with a tremendous crash, bursting open from end to end, and displaying all the horded treasures of the commonwealth." Irving described "the bewilderment and confusion of the bees of the bankrupt hive," who at last settled down "to contemplate the prostrate ruin, and to buzz forth doleful lamentations over the downfall of their republic."

343.18. *Lavater . . . Gall . . . Spurzheim*: Johann Kaspar Lavater (1741-1801), the Swiss author of *Physiognomical Fragments for the Promotion of a Knowledge of Man and of Love of Man* (1775-1778), was the detective hero of a play by J. R. Planche, *Not a Bad Judge*, which Melville saw in London 7 Nov. 1849. Just two weeks later he bought a copy of Lavater's book. (See *Journal*, pp. 24, 41, 103.) Franz Joseph Gall (1758-1828) and his disciple Johan Caspar Spurzheim (1776-1828) worked together as serious physicians in Vienna on the localization of the functions of the brain, and from their studies developed the pseudo-science of phrenology. In 1802 Gall's lectures were interdicted by the government as dangerous to religion. Melville's interest in all three men and their work—probably never as serious as the interest of many of his contemporaries—went back at least to *Mardi*, where there was a passing reference to Lavater's charts in chap. 84, and an invocation of all three scientists in connection with the sketch of Saturnia (Webster) in Vivenza in chap. 158: "Gall and Spurzheim! saw you ever such a brow? . . . Lavater! behold those lips,—like magic scrolls!" Even earlier Melville had facetiously suggested that Zachary Taylor's face was a "physiognomical phenomena, which Lavater would have crossed the Atlantic to contemplate," in the third installment of "Authentic Anecdotes of 'Old Zack'," *Yankee Doodle*, 7 August 1847, Vol. 2, p. 172. For some account of the more serious interest in these pseudo-sciences by some of Melville's contemporaries, see the articles by Edward Hungerford in *American Literature*, Vol. 2: "Poe and Phrenology," Nov. 1930,

pp. 209-231; and "Walt Whitman and His Chart of Bumps," Jan. 1931, pp. 350-384. See also Tyrus Hillway, "Melville's Use of Two Pseudo-Sciences," *Modern Language Notes*, March 1949, Vol. 64, pp. 145-150. Lavater, as a close friend of Goethe, came in for frequent mention in the latter's *Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life* (Sealts, No. 228), which Melville also bought in London. Henry T. Cheever, however, was probably responsible for the present chapter, since he asked the question, p. 156: "Is it not a little surprising, that in the researches of comparative phrenology the cranium of the great sperm whale should be overlooked?"

344.8. *Phidias's marble Jove*: The Greek sculptor Pheidias, of the fifth century B.C. probably did no work in marble, and was most celebrated for the colossal statues of Athena Parthenos at Athens and of Zeus at Olympia, both elaborately wrought in gold and ivory and, according to some accounts, adorned with precious stones. The Zeus, now destroyed, is known only from small copies on coins of Elias. The god, seated on a throne, had an archaic type head, which would make the nose prominent. Melville may have assumed this statue was marble, or he may have had in mind one of the marble figures from the Parthenon brought to London by Lord Elgin and on view in the British Museum when Melville visited there 16 Nov. and 19 Dec. 1849, *Journal*, pp. 33, 76-77. These were at one time thought to be the work of Pheidias, but were probably done after his death by his pupils working from his designs. The casual reference to the same statue in *Mardi*, chap. 84, suggests that Melville was thinking of the Zeus at Olympia and did not know it was not marble.

344.31. *foreheads like Shakspeare's or Melancthon's*: The long article of thirty-three double-column pages on "Phrenology" in William and Robert Chambers, eds., *Information for the People. A Popular Encyclopedia* (Philadelphia, 1847), Vol. 1, not only discussed fully the theories of Gall and Spurzheim and gave a full bibliography, but included a number of illustrations, the most interesting of which (p. 284) juxtaposed "the head of Melancthon, the most virtuous and talented of the reformers" and the head of "the atrocious criminal Hare, who murdered by wholesale." It was pointed out that the criminal had nearly as much brain as the friend and associate of Martin Luther, but Philipp Melancthon's superiority of intellect was "obvious by one glance at the high and full forehead, compared with 'the forehead villainous low,' as Shakspeare would have called it" of the criminal. Lines drawn at certain points on the figure also showed "the shallowness of moral brain" and "the preponderance of animal brain" in the criminal, as compared with Melancthon. Similar studies

were common features of the periodicals of the day; see, for instance, the analyses, with sketches, by J. W. Redfield in the *Home Journal* of "Paul, Emperor of Russia, According to Physiognomy," 19 Jan. 1850, and of "John Caspar Lavater, According to Physiognomy," 16 February 1850.

345.9. *the forehead's middle . . . Lavater's mark of genius*: Compare Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 6 (1847), chap. 198: "The Mohammedans believe that every man's fate is written on his forehead, but that it can be read by those only whose eyes have been opened."

345.18. *has no tongue*: See Beale, p. 26: "The tongue is small, of a white colour, and does not appear to possess the power of very extended motion."

345.25. *Champollion*: The French archeologist, Jean Francois Champollion (1790-1832), for whom the Rosetta Stone supplied the key in deciphering the ancient hieroglyphics of Egypt. Compare *Mardi*, chap. 40, the description of Aleema: "The old priest, like a scroll of old parchment, covered all over with hieroglyphical devices, harder to interpret, I'll warrant, than any old Sanscrit manuscript. And upon his broad brow, deep-graven in wrinkles, were characters still more mysterious, which no Champollion nor gipsy could have deciphered."

345.28. *Sir William Jones*: The British orientalist (1746-1794), authority on Mohammedan law and translator of much Arabic, Persian, and Hindu literature.

346.6. *the skull*: The factual details were largely from Beale, pp. 73, 78-79, 112:

" . . . The bones of the head are in general so large as to render the cavity which contains the brain but a small part of the whole, while in the human species and in birds this cavity constitutes the principal bulk of the head. This is perhaps most remarkable in the spermaceti whale, for on a general view of the bones of the head it is impossible to determine where the cavity of the skull lies, till led to it by the foramen magnum occipitale. . . .

"The gigantic skull of this animal forms more than a third of the whole length of the skeleton; it is wedge-shaped, and begins with a very thin edge anteriorly, and rises gradually in height, forming an angle on its upper surface, until it arrives at the posterior fourth; it then rises suddenly and forms a thin outward wall, which encloses a large crater-looking cavity, fitted for the reception of an immense mass of the junk, which, with the case, forms the whole upper portion of the head in the living animal.

"The extreme length of the cranium in this specimen is 18 feet

and $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch, and its extreme breadth at its mala portions, 8 feet 4 inches; extreme width at the centre of its wedge-shaped portion, 5 feet 10 inches; extreme height at its occipital portion, 5 feet 6 $\frac{1}{2}$ inches; the width of its condyloid occipital process is 2 feet 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ inches; depth of the same, 1 foot 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ inches.

"Under the floor of the crater-like cavity, the thin walls of which form the large posterior portion of the skull, is situated the cavity in which the brain is lodged in the living animal: it is continuous with the spinal canal of the vertebrae, and measures only in width about 14 inches, in length 10 inches, and in depth 9 inches.

"On the left side of the base of the skull, near the root of what may be termed the vomer, there is a foramen for the transmission of the blowing-tube. It perforates the floor of the crater-like cavity, which is only about three inches in thickness, and in the recent animal the spiracle passes through the soft parts of the junk and case, and terminates at the anterior upper angle of the head. This foramen is nearly round, and is 8 $\frac{1}{4}$ inches in diameter. The bones of the cranium, although very strong, are still porous and light. . . .

"The substance of the brain is *more visibly fibrous* than I ever saw it in any other animal, the fibres passing from the ventricles as from a centre to the circumference, which fibrous texture is also continued through the cortical substance. The nerves going out from the brain I believe are similar to those of the quadruped, except in those which want the olfactory nerves. The medulla spinalis is much smaller in proportion to the size of the body than in the human species, but still bears some proportion to the quantity of brain, for in the porpoise where the brain is largest, the medulla spinalis is largest, yet this did not hold good in the *spermaceti whale*, the size of the medulla spinalis appearing to be proportionally larger than the brain, which was small when compared to the size of the animal. It has a cortical part in the centre, and terminates about the twenty-fifth vertebra, beyond which is the cauda equina, the dura-mater going no lower."

348.21. *THE PEQUOD MEETS THE VIRGIN*: Both Cheever (whom Melville used several times in this section of his book) and Scoresby had descriptions of rivalry in the whale chase by crews of different nationalities. Precise borrowing on Melville's part is difficult to determine, if necessary. But the actual pursuit of the whale was most vividly described in Beale and J. Ross Browne, and such a passage as the following from Browne, pp. 297-298, most probably stirred the imagination of Melville as he wrote here, and previously, about the whale in his flurry: "Foaming and breaching, he plunged from wave to wave, flinging high in the air torrents of blood and spray. The sea

around was literally a sea of blood. At one moment his head was poised in the air; the next, he buried himself in the gory sea, carrying down in his vast wake a whirlpool of foam and slime. But this respite was short. He rose again, rushing furiously upon his enemies; but a slight prick of a lance drove him back with mingled fury and terror. Whichever way he turned, the barbed irons goaded him to desperation. Now and again intensity of agony would cause him to lash the waters with his huge flukes, till the very ocean appeared to heave and tremble at his power. Tossing, struggling, dashing over and over in his agony, he spouted up the last of his heart's blood. Half an hour before he was free as the wave, sporting in all the pride of gigantic strength and unrivalled power. He now lay a lifeless mass: his head toward the sun, his tremendous body heaving to the swell, and his destroyers proudly cheering over their victory!"

352.26. *It was a terrific, most pitiable, and maddening sight:* Melville's phrasing here suggests he may have thought of the afflictions of the whale as comparable to what Edgar called (V, iii, 214) "the most piteous tale of Lear."

354.33. *Canst thou fill his skin . . . ?*: Job xli, 7, 26-29. See note on *a Job's whale* 184.21.

356.11. *As strange misgrown masses:* This blind whale was probably suggested to Melville by Beale, p. 36: "The sperm whale is subject to several diseases, one of which is a perfect, or imperfect, loss of sight. A whale perfectly blind, was taken by Captain William Swain, of the Sarah and Elizabeth whaler of London, both eyes of which were completely disorganized, the orbits being occupied by fungous masses, protruding considerably, rendering it certain that the whale must have been deprived of vision for a long space of time. . . ."

357.21. *that stone lance?*: From Scoresby, Vol. 1, pp. 11-12: "In the year 1812, the crew of a Hull fisher (the Aurora) met with a whale in the same region having a harpoon made of bone, sticking in its back; and a few years ago a lance of stone, somewhat like the one above mentioned, fixed to a piece of bone, forming a socket for the stock, was likewise found in a whale by the people of another Greenlandman of Hull: this stone-lance is now deposited in the interesting collection of natural rarities belonging to Mr. Hornsea of Scarborough. To these facts we might add many of a similar kind, together with others of whales struck in Davis' Straits having been killed near Spitzbergen, and *vice versa*; but the above will be sufficient for affording a strong confirmation of the opinion, that a sea communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans by the North, does exist. For, with regard to the stone-lances and bone-harpoons

found in the bodies of whales, it may be remarked, that the Esquimaux of Davis' Straits and Hudson's Bay, have now, from their long intercourse with Europeans, become well supplied with weapons calculated for the capture of the whale made of iron, these instruments of stone and bone, so much inferior, must have been used by some other persons who have not yet had intercourse with the civilized world; but as they are precisely the kind of weapons which were in common use among the Esquimaux a century ago, it is probable that the instruments alluded to were struck by some tribe of the same nation, inhabiting the shores of the frozen ocean, on the northern face of the American Continent, yet unexplored. If so, these facts go far towards establishing the existence of a communication between the Spitzbergen sea and the Pacific Ocean."

359.24. *THE HONOR AND GLORY OF WHALING*: Having listed famous writers about whales in chap. 24, famous whales in chap. 45, Melville undertook here to give a list of famous whalers—all somewhat in the manner of Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, chap. 114, "History and Romance Ransacked for Resemblances and Non-Resemblances to the Horse of Dr. Daniel Dove."

360.7. *the fine story of Perseus and Andromeda*: Most of this chapter and the next came from the article on "Jonas" in Pierre Bayle, *An Historical and Critical Dictionary* (Sealts, No. 51), Vol. 3, pp. 577-580; the articles on "Jonah" and "Whale" in John Kitto, ed., *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature*, Vol. 2; and various passages from Sir Thomas Browne (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90). Kitto seems to have been freshest in Melville's mind. Browne noted in "Extracts from Common Place Books" in the edition of Simon Wilkin (1836), Vol. 3, p. 362: "The story of Jonah might afford the hint unto that of Andromeda, and the sea monster that should have devoured her; the scene being laid at Joppa by the fabulists: as also unto the fable of Hercules out of Lycophon, three nights in the whale's belly, that is of Hercules Phoenicius." Bayle cited authorities who believed "that Jonas' adventure laid a foundation for the poetical accounts concerning Andromeda's being exposed to the fury of a sea-monster, which happened near Joppa." Melville was closer to Kitto's "Whale" article: "Joppa, now Jaffa, the very place whence Jonah set sail, displayed for ages in one of its pagan temples huge bones of a species of whale, which the legends of the place pretended were those of the dragon monster slain by Perseus, as represented in the Arkite mythus of that hero and Andromeda: and which remained in that spot till the conquering Romans carried them in triumph to the great

city." See also notes on *Guido's picture of Perseus* 262.11 and *Cetus* 272.4.

360.25. *St. George and the Dragon*: See *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 5, chap. 17, "Of the Picture of St. George": "As for the story depending hereon, some conceive as lightly thereof, as of that of Perseus and Andromeda, conjecturing the one to be the father of the other; and some too highly assert it." Simon Wilkin added a note to this passage on the annual pageant in Browne's town of Norwich featuring "an immense dragon, horrible to view, with hydra head, and gaping jaws and wings, and scales bedecked in gold and green." Melville's reference to "the modern paintings of this scene" may have been suggested by Tintoretto's picture of it, which was in the National Gallery in London when he visited there in 1849.

360.29. *Ezekiel*: See Ezekiel xxxii, 2: "Son of man, take up a lamentation for Pharaoh king of Egypt, and say unto him, Thou art like a young lion of the nations, and thou art as a whale in the seas; and thou camest forth with thy rivers, and troubledst the waters with thy feet, and fouledst their rivers."

361.12. *idol of the Philistines, Dagon*: See Judges xvi, 23; 1 Samuel v, 2-5; and Milton's *Samson Agonistes*. Kitto's article on "Dagon" derived the name from *dag*, the same Hebrew word used for the sea-monster that swallowed Jonah.

361.24. *Hercules*: Browne, Bayle, and Kitto all associated Hercules with Jonah.

361.26. *that antique Crockett and Kit Carson*: David Crockett (1786-1836)—mentioned casually in *Mardi*, chap. 32—and "Kit" Carson (1809-1868) might well figure as the American counterparts of Hercules. Crockett was a fabulous bear hunter and Indian fighter who had, although practically illiterate, been elected to Congress some four times (1827-1835); he ended his career in a blaze of glory in 1836, fighting for the cause of Texas independence at the Alamo. As early as 1834 he had collaborated in his "Autobiography," and there were numerous other publications claiming to be his own account of his adventures, and regularly Davy Crockett almanacs. Carson had accompanied John C. Fremont on several exploring expeditions in the 1840's, the last to California, and had served in the Mexican War.

362.32. *Arion and the dolphin*: According to the legend, this Greek bard escaped from mariners who sought to rob him, by jumping into the sea. The music of his lute brought a number of dolphins to the vessel just before he made the leap, and on the back of one of them he was carried safely to land. Falconer used Arion as the

name for himself in *The Shipwreck*, from which Melville quoted in the forty-fifth Extract. Both Bayle and Kitto alluded to Arion in their accounts of Jonah.

363.3. *One old Sag-Harbor whaleman's chief reason:* This and the subsequent paragraph were adapted from three passages in Kitto, the first and third from "Jonah," the second from "Whale":

"Much profane wit has been expended on the miraculous means of Jonah's deliverance, very unnecessarily and very absurdly; it is simply said, 'The Lord had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah.' Now the species of marine animal is not defined, and the Greek *κῆτος* is often used to specify, not the genus whale, but any large fish or sea-monster. All objections to its being a whale which lodged Jonah in its stomach from its straitness of throat, or rareness of haunt in the Mediterranean, are thus removed. . . . The Scripture thus speaks only of an enormous fish, which under God's direction swallowed the prophet, and does not point out the species to which the voracious prowler belonged. There is little ground for the supposition of Bishop Jebb, that the asylum of Jonah was not in the stomach of a whale, but in a cavity of its throat, which, according to naturalists, is a very capacious receptacle, sufficiently large, as Captain Scoresby asserts, to contain a merchant ship's jolly-boat full of men."

"But criticism is still more inappropriate when, not contented with pointing to some assumed species, it attempts to rationalise miraculous events by such arguments; as in the case of Jonah, where the fact of whales having a small gullet, and not being found in the Mediterranean, is adduced to prove that the huge fish *dag* was not a cetacean, but a shark! Now, if the text be literally taken, the transaction is plainly miraculous, and no longer within the sphere of zoological discussion; and if it be allegorical, as some, we think, erroneously assume, then, whether the prophet was saved by means of a kind of boat called *dagh*, or it be a mystical account of initiation where the neophyte was detained three days in an ark or boat, figuratively denominated a fish, or Celtic *avanc*, the transaction is equally indeterminate; and it assuredly would be derogating from the high dignity of the prophet's mission, to convert the event into a mere escape, by boat, or into a pagan legend such as Hercules, Bacchus, Jamsheed, and other deified heroes of the remotest antiquity, are fabled to have undergone, and which all the ancient mysteries, including the Druidical, symbolized. It may be observed, besides, of cetaceous animals, that though less frequent in the Mediterranean than in the ocean, they are far from being unknown there."

"Less, in his tract, *Von Historischen Styl der Umwelt*, supposed

that all difficulty might be removed by imagining that Jonah, when thrown into the sea, was taken up by a ship having a large fish for a figure-head—a theory somewhat more pleasing than the rancid hypothesis of Anton, who fancied that the prophet took refuge in the interior of a dead whale, floating near the spot where he was cast overboard (Rosen, *Prolegom. in Jonah*, p. 328). Not unlike the opinion of Less is that of Charles Taylor, in his Fragments affixed to Calmet's Dictionary, No. cxlv., that signifies a life-preserver, a notion which, as his manner is, he endeavours to support by mythological metamorphoses founded on the form and names of the famous fish-god of Philistia."

See also Robert Pearse Gillies' *Tales of a Voyager*, First Series (1826), Vol. 2, pp. 208-210: "Before I set off, however, I must have one more look at our monster of the deep; and could I persuade myself that I was the first voyager who has described this strange beast, disguised as a fish, I would commence such a detail of its appearance, dimensions, conformation, habits, manners, and uses, together with all that can be said marvelwise, and in the way of anecdote, concerning it, that those who waded through my history should be convinced that I was strongly gratified with my subject, and wish me, like another Jonah, engulfed in the bowels of the huge object of my admiration. It is, nevertheless, self-evident that the prophet of Nineveh was not swallowed by a black or Greenland whale; for, according to an arctic apothegm, 'a penny roll would choke a whale,' and certainly its gullet is scarcely large enough to allow one to pass. But there are wide-throated whales enough in the seas to confound the scoffers, who attempt to prove Jonah's adventure to be a falsehood from this circumstance. In fact, human bodies have been found entire in the bellies of sharks; and if the *Balaena Mysticetus* could not have swallowed a man, a *Physeter Macrocephalus* might."

"Everybody knows, or at least ought to know, that whales, although called fishes in common parlance, are as real and true beasts as bulls or horses. There is, in fact, no essential difference between these creatures, (for the shape and the manner of living may be called accidental,) since all the internal structure is the same; and the substance of the flesh and bone, the blood, and the mode of its circulation, the breathing, the sight, and the hearing, &c. are exactly similar. There is, however, great distinction between the outward form of this sea brute and its congeners of the earth; the most peculiar being its affinity to the figure of a fish. The head, nevertheless, bears but little of this resemblance, nor is it like anything else belonging to the inhabitants of this world. I have already had a fancy that the head of

a whale approximates more to that of a bird than to any other, and the proofs of this idea shall form most of the trespass I mean to commit on the patience of the reader, touching such a well known animal as the mysticete."

364.14. *Jonah's weathering the Cape of Good Hope*: This theory was mentioned only by Bayle. See Melville's own earlier comments on the Jonah story, *Mardi*, chap. 94: "Are not the Straits of Gibraltar wide enough to admit a sperm-whale, even though none have sailed through, since Nineveh and the gourd in its suburbs dried up?" *Redburn*, chap. 20: "the whale which according to Rabbinical traditions was a female one, might have expanded to receive him like an anaconda, when it swallows an elk and leaves the antlers sticking out of its mouth."

364.29. *a Turkish Mosque built in honor of Jonah*: Melville was closest here to Bayle: "Mr. Simon affirms, that the Turks have *built a very fine mosque to the honor of Jonas, in which there is a miraculous lamp, that burns continually without any oil or other liquor, if he will give credit to their reveries*. He says that this mosque is *in a little village [in the tribe of Zabulon], built to the honor and under the name of this Prophet*." The account in John Harris's voyages contained no mention of the miraculous quality of the lamp; see "The Travels of Mr. Joannes Baptiste Tavernier Bernier thro' Turkey into Persia" in *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca* (London, 1705): "Half a League from Tigris stands a little Hill, encompassed with Houses, on the top whereof is built a Mosque, in the place where, they say, Jonas is buried. The Turks have a mighty Veneration for it, and cover it with a Persian Carpet of Silk and Silver, and at the Four Corners are great Copper Candlesticks with Wax Tapers, and several Lamps." This was near Nineveh. There was also an account of Messa on the African sea shore in *Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas His Pilgrimes* (London, 1625), Part 1, Book 6, chap. 1, sec. 2: "Not farre from the sea-side they have a Temple, which they greatly esteeme and honour. Out of which, Historiographers say, that the same Prophet, of whom the great Mahumet foretold, should proceed. Yea, some there are which sticke not to affirme, that the Prophet Jonas was cast forth by the Whale upon the shoare of Messa, when he was sent to preach unto the *Ninivites*. The rafters and beames of said Temple are of Whales bone." Possibly Melville knew all of these accounts, as well as Kitto's story of the whale skeleton in the temple at Joppa.

365.20. *disordered flight, as of Cleopatra's barges from Actium*: Compare the account in *Antony and Cleopatra* III, x. In his copy of

Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460), Melville checked the line III, x, 2—"The Antoniad, the Egyptian admiral"—and the editor's note on it: "The *Antoniad*, Plutarch says, was the name of Cleopatra's ship." See also the Dryden translation of Plutarch's "Antony": ". . . on a sudden Cleopatra's sixty ships were seen hoisting sail and making out to sea in full flight, right through the ships that were engaged. For they were placed behind the great ships, which, in breaking through, they put into disorder." *White-Jacket*, chap. 50, mentioned "all the Roman and Egyptian galleys that, eagle-like, with blood dripping prows, beaked each other at Actium." Other references to Antony and Cleopatra occurred in *Mardi*, chap. 22, and *Moby-Dick*, p. 249.

367.1. *Monongahela*: Whiskey made in the area of the Monongahela River in Western Pennsylvania, scene of the famous Whiskey Insurrection of 1794-1795, in which Hugh Henry Brackenridge was involved.

367.11. *THE FOUNTAIN*: Although Bennett's discussion of the whale-spout, and his words, Vol. 2, p. 150, "It is as yet an unsettled point, whether the spiracles of spouting-whales have an office solely respiratory, or if they are also of use to eject the water received into the mouth together with food. In favour of the opinion that the spout is nothing more than vapour . . ." helped Melville's expository chapter, there can be no question that his primary reliance was on Beale's fourth chapter, "Breathing," pp. 41-45, and on a later section on the spout-hole, pp. 109-110, Beale quoting Hunter. To reprint Beale's words (almost 1,500) is needless here, but the interested reader not finding a copy of Beale may see *Trying-Out*, pp. 286-92.

367.20. *this sixteenth day of December, A.D. 1851*: The first English edition gave the year as 1850. Apparently the date when Melville wrote this passage. See Robert Southey's similar inclusion of the date of writing ("July 24, 1830") in *The Doctor*, Vol. 7 (1847), p. 552.

371.8. *You cannot go with your pitcher to this fountain and fill it*: Compare Ecclesiastes xii, 6: "Or ever the silver cord be loosed, or the golden bowl be broken, or the pitcher be broken at the fountain, or the wheel broken at the cistern."

371.30. *Pyrrho*: A Greek philosopher (c. 360-270 B.C.) who maintained the impossibility of knowing things in their own nature. Montaigne (Sealts, No. 366) made numerous disparaging comments on him and his followers, particularly in Book 2, chap. 12, "An Apologie of *Raymond Sebond*": "The Philosopher *Pyrrho* being at Sea, and by reason of a violent storme in great danger of being cast away, presented nothing to those that were with him in the ship,

to imitate but the securitie of an Hog which was aboard, who nothing at all dismaied, seemed to behold and outstare the tempest. . . . the profession of the Pyrrhonians is ever to waver, to doubt and to enquire, never to be assured of any thing, not to take any warrant of himself. . . . I see the Pyrrhonian Phylosophers, who can by no manner of speech expresse their Generall conceit: for, they had need of a new language. Ours is altogether composed of affirmative propositions, which are directly against them. So that, when they say I doubt, you have them fast by the throat to make them avow, that at least you are assured and know, that they doubt. . . . When the Pyrrhonians say, that *ataraxy* is the chiefe felicitie, which is the immobilitie of judgement, their meaning is not to speake it affirmatively, but the very wavering of their mind, which makes them to shun downefalls, and to shrowd themselves under the shelter of calmnesse, presents this phantasie unto them, and makes them refuse another." (Florio trans.)

372.6. *rainbows do not visit the clear air; they only irradiate vapor:* Compare the statement on p. 192 of the frightfulness in the Antarctic of the "boundless church-yard" of "lean ice monuments" unbroken by "rainbows speaking hope and solace." Melville's rainbow faith of doubts and intuitions seems to have been a development from the idea of the chapter on whiteness. Both may have been suggested by Goethe's theories; see the entry for 1 March 1827 in Eckermann's *Conversations*: "We then talked a great deal about the theory of colours, the subjective prismatic experiments, and the laws by which the rainbow is formed."

372.16. *THE TAIL:* Several of the fish documents, especially Bennett, Browne, Cheever, and Scoresby, discussed and described the whale's flukes, but to determine exactly the lines of borrowing would probably be impossible, except that it seems that again Beale, pp. 24, 88-89, 89-90, was his chief reliance.

373.27. *As devout Eckerman . . . Goethe:* See the final entry, 23 March 1832, in John Peter Eckermann's *Conversations of Goethe*: "The body lay naked, only wrapped in a white sheet. . . . Frederic drew aside the sheet, and I was astonished at the divine magnificence of the limbs. The breast was powerful, broad, and arched. . . . A perfect man lay in great beauty before me." (John Oxenford trans.)

373.30. *When Angelo paints even God the Father in human form:* With this sentence compare Sir Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica* (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), Book 5, chap. 7, "Of the Picture of our Saviour with Long Hair," and chap. 22, "Of the Picture of God the Father. . . ."

375.3. *Darmonodes' elephant*: Compare Montaigne (Sealts, No. 366), Book 2, chap. 12: "witness the Elephant, that in the love of an herb-wife, in the city of *Alexandria*, was co-rivall with *Aristophanes*, the Grammarian; who in all offices pertayning to an earnest wooer and passionate suiter, yeelded nothing unto him: For, walking thorow the Fruit-market, he would here and there snatch up some with his truncke, and carry them unto her: as neere as might be he would never loose the sight of her: and now and then over her band put his truncke into her bosome, and feele her breasts." Montaigne probably got his story from Plutarch's *Morals*, "Which Are the Most Crafty, Water-Animals or Those That Breed upon the Land?", sec. 7, which Melville may have known first hand, since his sixth Extract was taken from there. The story was told also by Pliny the Elder, *Natural History*, VIII, v. 13—which supplied the seventh Extract. Edward Topsell told the story, in fuller form than Pliny, in *The Historie of Foure-Footed Beastes* (London, 1607), p. 209. One of the classic sources was clearly Aelianus, *De Natura Animalium*, Book 1, sec. 38, and this author was also a source for a similar story about an elephant and a Syrian woman of Antioch (Book 7, sec. 43), which was reported by Topsell and the anonymous author of *Natural History. The Elephant* (Harper's Family Library, Vol. 164-1842), p. 160. The woman was variously a seller of flowers, herbs, and corals; but in none of the stories cited did the name Darmonodes occur. Melville doubtless knew the story from more than one source; Darmonodes—which was an impossible spelling for a Greek name—was probably Melville's erroneous rendering of the author's or owner's name in the account that was freshest at the moment. A few pages before the reference to the elephant of Alexandria, Montaigne spoke of knowing "the Elephants to pull out, not only from themselves and their fellowes, but also from their masters (witness that of King *Porus*, whom Alexander defeated) such javelins or darts, as in fight have been thirled or shot at them; so nimbly and so cunningly, as our selves could never do it so easily, and with so little paine." See Plutarch's account of Porus's elephant in the life of Alexander: "This elephant, during the whole battle, gave many singular proofs of sagacity and particular care of the king, whom as long as he was strong and in a condition to fight, he defended with great courage, repelling those who set upon him; and as soon as he perceived him overpowered with his numerous wounds and the multitude of darts that were thrown at him, to prevent his falling off, he softly knelt down and began to draw out the darts with his proboscis." (Dryden trans.)

375.31. *Satan thrusting forth his tormented colossal claw from the flame Baltic of Hell*: Melville may have had in mind here Satan's flight from Hell to Earth, *Paradise Lost* II, 629-634, 888-893, 910-920, 927-932, 1010-1030. Melville probably knew the similar image developed in Robert Pearse Gillies's *Tales of a Voyager*, First Series (1826), Vol. 2, p. 299: "Those who have noticed, in old editions of Dante, the representation of one of Satan's claws, projecting from a lake of brimstone, will best conceive the effect this vision of a whale's tail produces. It is ever a grand sight, and offered so unexpectedly, that it brings with it ideas of something supernatural."

376.2. *As Ptolemy Philopater testified of the African elephant*: Montaigne, Vol. 2, chap. 12, referred to this fact, but by introducing the names of Ptolemy and Juba, Melville betrayed his source, Plutarch's *Morals*, "Which Are the Most Crafty, Water-Animals or Those that Breed upon the land?", sec. 17: "Juba says. . . . that elephants pray to the gods without being trained to the habit, both purifying themselves in the sea, and they worship the risen sun, holding the trunk aloft like a hand. for this reason the beast is greatly loved by the gods, as Ptolemy Philopator testified."

377.1. *Thou shalt see my back parts*: Compare Exodus xxxiii, 23, God to Moses: "And I will take away mine hand, and thou shalt see my back parts; but my face shall not be seen." In his copy of the Bible inscribed 23 March 1850 (Sealts, No. 62), Melville underlined all but the two words before the comma in Exodus xxxiv, 33, of Moses's return from Mount Sinai to the Israelites with the second edition of the two tables of stone: "And till Moses was done speaking with them, he put a vail on his face." See also Sir Thomas Browne (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), *Religio Medici*, Part I, sec. 13: "I know God is wise in all; wonderful in what we conceive, but far more in what we comprehend not: for we behold him but asquint, upon reflex or shadow; our understanding is dimmer than Moses's eye; we are ignorant of the back parts or lower side of his divinity; therefore, to pry into the maze of his counsels, is not only folly in man, but presumption even in angels." Objecting to the Biblical allusion here, the English editor omitted the last two sentences of the chapter.

382.6. *gallied*: See among the terms from the whalemens' vocabulary Cheever, p. 205, suggested for addition to Webster's Dictionary: "Gally, or Gallow, as it is found in Shakespeare, is the term by which they express a whale's being frightened. Thus you often hear 'that whale's gallied,' as they pronounce it." The note printed on p. 382 of this volume did not appear in the first American, but only in the

English edition. Since it was obviously by Melville it is added here. The quotation came from *Lear* III, ii, 43-45.

382.8. *King Porus' elephants*: For some account of the battle of Hydaspes River in which Alexander defeated Porus 327 B.C., see William Mitford, *History of Greece* (revision by William King; London, 1838), Vol. 8, chap. 53, sec. 4: "Then, in the Indian army, all became confusion. Infantry, horse, and elephants, were mixed. Some of those formidable beasts, raging with wounds, became ungovernable. Some had lost their riders who should have governed them, and then were no less formidable to friends than foes. Some wounded, all tired, at length, as if by common consent, refusing farther efforts in the direction of the enemy, bellowing in concert, they withdrew." Plutarch in his life of Alexander barely mentioned the role of the elephants.

382.10. *In all directions expanding*: Various hints in the fish documents, such as in Scoresby's *Journal of a Voyage to the Northern Whale-Fishery* (Edinburgh, 1823), p. 73, "One of these boats soon afterwards rowed into the midst of a shoal of seven or eight of the largest size. They were lying at the surface, huddled together remarkably close. . . . They were so near, that the water thrown up by their tails flew in showers over the boat; while the sea for a hundred yards round, was filled with eddies and little whirlpools," might have suggested Melville's dramatic scene, but the closest was what Melville probably saw in *Ribs and Trucks* (Boston, 1842), p. 15: "Midway, in passing, behold us suddenly surrounded by a herd of whales—puffing and blowing and kicking up their heels, till the water was a vortex of foam. Completely hedged in, drenched with brine from their spiracles, menaced with immediate contact, and as immediate destruction—'Jack,' said the captain, 'can't you hit the snortin' varmints?' 'Why haven't we a lance here?'"

386.1. *far beneath this wondrous world*: Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 178-179, motivated Melville's nursery scene: "Nothing satisfactory is known about the duration of pregnancy in this whale. We observed them copulating in August, but it is probable that no particular breeding season obtains, as we observed sucking calves during the entire eight months in the year we were engaged in cruising. The female produces one at a birth, but occasionally twins, as is usual with uniparous animals. She brings forth her young in the open ocean, and indiscriminately, on whatever spot the school may chance to be at the time of her parturition. The calf accompanies the school as soon as it is born. During a chase, it was often exceedingly interesting to observe suck-

lings, apparently but a few days old, leaping actively and spouting high by the side of their dams, and keeping up wonderfully well with the rapid pace of the retreating party.

"Intelligent whalers, who have occasionally seen the female Cachalot in the act of suckling her young, agree very closely in their descriptions of this process. They state, that the mother reposes upon her side, with the pectoral fin raised above the surface of the sea, while the calf, which is thus enable to retain its spiracle in the air, receives the protruded nipple within the angle of the mouth—a part where it is reasonable to suppose that the tongue would also be found of some assistance."

Bennett also supplied many details, Vol. 2, pp. 167-168: "In January, 1835, I was enabled, through the kindness of Captain Stavers, to make an anatomical examination of a foetal Cachalot, which was removed from the abdomen of its mother, and taken on board the ship. Without entering into minute particulars, I may mention the following, as the principal peculiarities noticed in this young example, which was a male, and sufficiently mature to be within a few hours of its birth. It was fourteen feet long, and six in circumference; of a deep black colour, prettily mottled with a few white-spots; and in form, as perfect as the adult whale, with the single exception that the tail-fin was crumpled on its free border, and had the corner of each fluke folded inwards. Its position in the womb was that of a bent bow—the head and tail being approximated, and the back arched. The umbilical cord (which was inserted at the posterior part of the abdomen) was five feet long, nine inches in circumference, and chiefly composed of five capacious blood-vessels."

Scoresby, too, may have helped, Vol. 1, p. 470: "The sexual intercourse of whales is often observed about the latter end of summer; and females, with cubs or suckers along with them, being most commonly met with in the spring of the year, the time of their bringing forth, it is presumed, is in February or March; and their period of gestation about nine or ten months. In the latter end of April 1811, a sucker was taken by a Hull whaler, to which the *fumis umbilicalis* was still attached. The whale has one young at a birth. Instances of two being seen with a female are very rare. The young one, at the time of parturition, is said to be at least ten, if not fourteen feet in length. It goes under the protection of its mother, for probably a year or more. . . ."

387.27. *the lone mounted desperado Arnold*: On the conduct of Benedict Arnold at the Battle of Saratoga, 1777, see a book Melville read and probably owned (Sealts, No. 491a) before 1851, William

Leete Stone, *Life of Joseph Brant—Thayendanegea*, (Cooperstown: H. & E. Phinney, 1847—originally publ. 1838), Vol. 1. chap. 12, p. 273n.: "Subsequent to the battle of the 19th September . . . Arnold had some difficulty with Gates. . . . The consequence was, that Arnold found himself without any command on the 7th. He was exceedingly chafed at his position; but, orders or no orders he could not be kept from the field. His conduct was very strange, and he has been charged by Wilkinson [Adjutant General under Gates] and others with intoxication that day. Be it so or not, before the action was over, he was in the hottest of it, and exercising command. He exposed himself foolishly and presumptuously in front of the German division; and it was without orders that he collected a few desperate followers, with whom he entered the enemy's intrenchment, where he received his wound." In the Appendix of Vol. 1, p. lvi, Stone printed a letter dated 31 October 1827, from a veteran of the battle, Samuel Woodruff: "although he had no regular command that day, [Arnold] volunteered his service, was early on the ground, and in the hottest part of the struggle at the redoubts. He behaved, (as I then thought,) more like a madman than a cool and discreet officer. Mounted on a brown horse, he moved incessantly at a full gallop back and forth, until he received a wound in his leg, and his horse was shot under him. I happened to be near him when he fell, and assisted in getting him into a litter to be carried to head-quarters."

387.n.2. *The sperm whale . . . breeds indifferently*: This whole footnote is made up of the following passages from Melville's "whaling documents": Beale, p. 52: "The female breeds at all seasons, producing but one at a time." Beale, p. 125: "The glands for the secretion of milk are two, one on each side of the middle line of the belly at its lowest part." Beale, p. 126: "The milk is probably very rich, for in that caught near Berkley, with its young one, the milk, which was tasted by Messrs. Jenner and Ludlow, surgeons at Sudbury, was rich like cow's milk to which cream had been added." Scoresby, Vol. 1, p. 459: "The milk of the whale resembles that of quadrupeds in its appearance. It is said to be rich and well-flavoured." Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 178: "Like other cetaceans, they couple *more hominum*: in one instance, which came under my notice, the position of the parties was vertical; their heads being raised above the surface of the sea."

392.3. *the memoirs of Vidocq*: After an adventurous youth as a soldier and galley slave, Francois Eugene Vidocq (1775-1857) joined the Paris police force in 1809 and became chief detective. Shortly after his retirement from this position, a volume of probably spurious *Memoires de Vidocq* (1828) told of his becoming a teacher in a

school of peasant girls, under the disguise of a friar, and giving rather scandalous instruction.

392.11. *venerable moss-bearded Daniel Boone*: Cooper in a footnote to *The Prairie*, chap. 1, called the famous backwoodsman (1734-1820) "the patriarch of Kentucky" and credited him with 92 years when he moved to Missouri something like sixteen years before his death, "because he found a population of ten to the square mile, inconveniently crowded!" Almost from 1769, when he first went to Kentucky, he was a subject of legend and admiration. The title of Timothy Flint's biography (republished the same year with *Moby-Dick*) was *The First White Man of the West, of the Life and Exploits of Col. Dan'l Boone, the First Settler of Kentucky*.

392.16. *The schools composing none but young and vigorous males*: These concluding paragraphs were, in effect, a reworking of Beale's words, pp. 52-54:

"The females are very remarkable for attachment to their young, which they may be frequently seen urging and assisting to escape from danger with the most unceasing care and fondness. They are also not less remarkable for their strong feeling of sociality or attachment to one another; and this is carried to so great an extent, as that one female of a herd being attacked and wounded, her faithful companions will remain around her to the last moment, or until they are wounded themselves. This act of remaining by a wounded companion is called by whalers 'heaving-to,' and whole 'schools' have been destroyed by dexterous management, when several ships have been in company, wholly from these whales possessing this remarkable disposition. The attachment appears to be reciprocal on the part of the young whales, which have been seen about the ship for hours after their parents have been killed.

"The young males, or 'young bulls,' go in large schools, but differ remarkably from the females in disposition, inasmuch as they make an immediate and rapid retreat upon one of their number being struck, who is left to take the best care he can of himself. I never but once saw them 'heave-to,' and in that case it was only for a short time, and which seemed rather to arise from their confusion than affection for their wounded companion. They are also very cunning and cautious, keeping at all times a good look-out for danger; it is consequently necessary for the whaler to be extremely cautious in his mode of approaching them, so as, if possible, to escape being heard or seen, for they have some mode of communicating one to another, through a whole school, in an incredibly short space of time.

"Young bulls' are consequently much more troublesome to attack,

and more difficult and dangerous to kill, great dexterity and despatch being necessary to give them no time to recover from the pain and fright caused by the first blow. When about three-fourths grown, or sometimes only half, they separate from each other, and go singly in search of food."

And Beale, p. 160: "After being struck with the harpoon or lance, females and young bulls make the most violent efforts to escape, and being remarkably quick in their actions they frequently afford considerable danger and trouble. Those young bulls which yield about forty barrels of oil, and are consequently called forty-barrel bulls, are perhaps the most difficult to destroy, and sometimes make great havoc among the men and boats."

392.25. *Like a mob of young collegians*: Very possibly sometime after his coming to Pittsfield in the summer of 1850, Melville had visited Williamstown, the seat of Williams College, only some 22 miles from Broadhall or Arrowhead.

393.19. *the only formal whaling code*: Scoresby, Vol. 2, pp. 312-332, had an extended discussion of the whale-fishery laws, from which Melville extracted his two laws. The subsequent case cited by Melville was mentioned by Scoresby in his article, but Melville drew his information especially from an appendix, Vol. 2, pp. 518-521, which gave a full statement of "An Account of a Trial Respecting the Right of the Ship Experiment, to a Whale Struck by One of the Crew of the Neptune," of which the following was the latter part: "He referred to the *crim. con.* cause tried some years ago, in which he had elucidated the subject in discussion, by comparing Mrs E. to a loose fish, whom any one had a right to seize. In that case, Mr E. the husband, had originally harpooned the lady; he had her fast; but when he found she ran out too much line, he left her to plunge into the sea of folly and dissipation by herself, dragging the weight of her marriage vow along with her. But he did not the less abandon her because she was fastened to his boat. When he wished to recover her, or damages for her loss, it was said, No,—he had given her up,—he had left her to her fate, and as another had harpooned her, he had a right to retain her. He admitted that the Solicitor-General had put the present case very fairly, when he said the boat was placed like a buoy, to cry out, 'This is the fish of the Neptune.' If such an argument could prevail, it would only be necessary to tie a buoy to a line, and it might cry stinking fish long enough before any one would be at the trouble of saving the whale attached to it. He concluded, by expressing his firm conviction that the law was with the defendant.

"Lord ELLENBOROUGH said, he could not help making a distinc-

tion as to the boat, which the men quitted in order to save themselves. With regard to the harpoon and line, the fish, when it made off with them, acquired, if he might use the phrase, a kind of property in them, and any body who afterwards took the fish had a right to the harpoon in it.

"The defendant undertook to return the boat, and the Jury gave a verdict for the plaintiff: Damages 1s.; costs 40s."

395.23. *defendants*: The "plaintiffs" of both first editions was an obvious error.

396.14. *John Bull . . . Brother Jonathan*: Especially common names for England and the United States after the publication of James K. Paulding's *The Diverting History of John Bull and Brother Jonathan* (1812), the first of several books by this author using this terminology.

396.15. *Texas*: This state was admitted to the Union 29 December 1845. Strongly anti-slavery and anti-expansionist, Melville disapproved the Mexican War, which was largely a result of the annexation.

396.31. *What are you, reader, but a Loose-Fish and a Fast-Fish, too?*: See William Ellery Sedgwick, *Herman Melville: The Tragedy of Mind*, p. 120: "Ahab is a fast fish. The universe has got its barb in him. His humanity is transfixed. Ishmael, on the contrary, is a loose-fish. Will he keep himself so? Or will he like Ahab impale himself on the exasperating inscrutability of things?"

397.4. *Bracton*: Melville was quoting the first systematic compilation of English law, made in the middle of the thirteenth century by Henry de Bracton (or Bratton), and first printed 1569, *De Legibus et Consuetudinibus Angliae*, Tractus Secundus "De Corona," Book 3, chap. 3.

397.21. *some honest mariners of Dover*: This episode came to Melville's eye while he was reading the *Literary World*, 29 June 1850. Vol. 6, p. 642: "An amusing anecdote is told of the Duke of Wellington, Lord Warden of the Cinque Ports. As such, he is entitled to all the 'royal fish,' captured and brought ashore in the adjacent waters. Some poor fishermen captured a whale in Margate Bay, and as it was of value, Dr. Wallingford addressed a letter to the Duke, endeavoring to persuade him to give up the animal to the captors, because really it was not a fish; in which assertion the doctor is fully sustained by all sound zoologists. The Duke wrote back word, that he did not see what any fellow of the College of Surgery had to do with the Warden of the Cinque Ports; that the fishermen had been paid £28 for salvage, and the balance of the proceeds of the whale aforesaid, he

intended to dispose of just as he pleased, without consulting Dr. Wallingford at all!"

400.5. *Sir T. Browne, V.E.*: In this quotation from *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 3, chap. 26 (from which the nineteenth Extract also came), Melville failed to indicate an omission after "Leviathan" and miswrote "not" for "that." This passage, in a fuller quotation, was given correctly by Beale, p. 131, with the author but not the name of the work.

401.12. *Crappoes of Frenchmen*: Melville's aural spelling of *crapauds* (toads), used colloquially like "Frogs" to designate the French.

406.20. *Dropping his spade*: See Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 226-227: "It is not common for the whaler to find Ambergris in the Cachalots he destroys; nor does he, indeed, make a very rigid scrutiny of the intestines in search of it, unless a suspicion of its presence be excited by some marked peculiarity in the whale, as a torpid and sickly appearance, and the animal failing to void liquid excrement, as is usual with healthy whales, when alarmed by the sudden approach of the boats or struck by the harpoon. Some years ago the whale-ship Mary, of London, discovered a dead Cachalot floating on the ocean, and as there were no injuries on its body to account for death, that event was attributed to disease; consequently, the whale was strictly searched for Ambergris, and the captors were gratified by finding a very large quantity of that valuable drug impacted in its bowels.

"Concretions of Ambergris are either black, gray, yellow, or ash-colour mottled with yellow and black. They occur in various sizes, and their maximum weight would appear to be thirty or forty pounds; but it is recorded that a mass of prodigious size, weighing 182 lbs., was carried to Ireland in the year 1694. An entire concretion, which had been recently taken from a Cachalot destroyed by the South-Seaman Höffly, and which was shown to me by her commander, when we spoke that vessel in 1835, did not exceed four ounces in weight. It was in the state as removed from the whale; of an oval form, and pointed at each extremity; of a dull-black colour; smooth on the surface; resembled soap in texture and consistence; and was similarly unctuous to the touch. Its odour was slight and peculiar; but not decidedly fragrant, unless heat was applied."

406.31. *AMBERGRIS*: This entire chapter was under heavy debt to Beale, whose tenth chapter, pp. 130-135, on "Ambergris," Melville checked profusely. The following excerpts from Beale illustrate Melville's use of his source:

"When Captain Coffin was examined at the bar of the House of Commons on the subject. . . .

"The use of ambergris," says Brande, "in Europe is now nearly confined to perfumery, though it has formerly been used in medicine by many eminent physicians. In Asia and part of Africa, ambergris is not only used as a medicine and perfume, but considerable use is also made of it in cooking, by adding it to several dishes as a spice. A great quantity of it is also constantly bought by the pilgrims who travel to Mecca, probably to offer it there, and make use of it in fumigations, in the same manner as frankincense is used in Catholic countries. The Turks make use of it as an aphrodisiac. Our perfumers add it to scented pastiles, candles, balls, bottles, gloves, and hair powder; and its essence is mixed with pomatum for the face and hands, either alone or united with musk, though its smell is to some persons extremely offensive.'"

407.23. *Brandreth's pills*: See Cheever, pp. 115-116: "The substance called ambergris, and highly prized in perfumery, is obtained from the sperm whale, being formed, it is thought, in that state of the system which calls for a cathartic. A peck of Morrison's or Brandreth's pills, or the homeopathic dose of a pound of calomel and jalap, would probably remove obstructions in the creature's abdominal viscera, and prevent the formation of ambergris concretions, with undoubted benefit to the whale's corporation from the drastic operation, though it might be a loss to the perfumer and the Asiatic gastronomer, inasmuch as we learn from the *Materia Medica* that in Asia and parts of Africa ambergris is not only used as a medicine and a perfume, but considerable use also is made of it in cooking, by adding it to several dishes as a spice. A great quantity of it also is constantly brought by the pilgrims who travel to Mecca, probably to offer it there in fumigations, like as frankincense in the worship of the Church of Rome."

407.32. *that saying of St. Paul*: 1 Corinthians xv, 42-43.

407.34. *that saying of Paracelsus*: See Sir Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 3, chap. 26: "In vain it was to rake for ambergriese in the paunch of this leviathan . . . insufferable foetor denying that enquiry: and yet if, as Paracelsus encourageth, ordure makes the best musk, and from the most foetid substances may be drawn the most odoriferous essences; all that had not Vespasian's nose might boldly swear here was a subject fit for such extractions." The motto for chap. 91 and the nineteenth Extract both came from this same section of Browne, and all three passages were included in Beale's quotation of that writer, p. 131.

408.20. *excavating an old city grave-yard*: The old Pittsfield ceme-

tery was transferred to a new site in 1850-1851. The new site was dedicated on 9 September 1850, with odes by John C. Hoadley and Mrs. J. R. Morewood, both close friends of Melville at this time, and the dedicatory poem by Oliver Wendell Holmes. On parts of the oldest burial ground, Baptist (1827), Methodist (1829), and Catholic churches had been built, and during the summer and fall of 1850 a grammar or high school was being erected on another site within this old cemetery. Melville's figure merely heightened this appropriation of the graveyard of the dead for the uses of the living. See J. E. A. Smith, *History of Pittsfield* (Springfield, 1876), Vol. 2, pp. 597-608, 671-672.

408.26. *the learned Fogo Von Slack*: Melville was here poking fun at Scoresby again. In *An Account of the Arctic Regions* Scoresby had a section, Vol. 2, pp. 408-415, on "Description of Whale-Oil, and Remarks on the Cause of its Offensive Smell," and elsewhere, Vol. 2, p. 52, he, like Melville, discussed Smeerenberg, giving its etymology: "probably derived from the Dutch words *smeer*, signifying *fat*, and *bergen*, to put up."

409.11. *that famous elephant with jewelled tusks . . . to Alexander the Great*: William Mitford, *History of Greece* (Revision by William King—London, 1838), Vol. 8, chaps. 53 and 54, gave numerous instances of Indian princes giving Alexander as many as 30 or 40 elephants as a present, after the defeat of Porus in 327 B.C. See also Edward Topsell, *The Historie of Foure-Footed Beastes* (London, 1607), p. 210: "The inhabitants of *Taxila* in India affirme, that they had an elephant at the least three hundred and fifty years old; for they said it was the same that fought so valiantly with *Alexander* for King *Porus*, for which cause *Alexander* cald him *Aiax*, & did afterward dedicate him to the Sunne, and put certain gold chaines about his teeth, with this inscription upon them: *Alexander filius Iovis Aicem soli*: *Alexander* the sonne of *Jupiter*, consecrateth this *Aiax* to the sunne."

409.19. *predestinated craft*: Note Melville's use of the same adjective, p. 247, where Radney was "the predestinated mate," and p. 348, where the *Virgin* was encountered on "the predestinated day." See also Melville's letter to E. A. Duyckinck 14 December 1849: "But we that write & print have all our books predestinated."

410.19. *his native Tolland County in Connecticut*: No apparent reason for assigning this locality as Pip's home, unless Melville knew that the county had once been part of the domain of the Pequods. See note on *Pequod* 68.8. Obviously Melville needed a free Northern negro for this role, although the narrator of *Redburn*, chap. 13, had

thought his sailor's life as miserable "as if I were an African in Alabama."

411.16. *Tashtego . . . hated Pip for a poltroon*: Compare *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123), Book 2, chap. 7, Teufelsdröckh's self-accusation: "What *art* thou afraid of? Wherefore, like a coward, dost thou forever pip and whimper, and go cowering and trembling?" Note the word *pip* here, as well as the derivation given earlier in Melville's chapter. Pip's only appearance before this chapter was in the fore-castle scene of chap. 40. Charles Olson, *Call Me Ishmael*, pp. 59-63, has given an extended analysis of the relation of Ahab to Pip after the castaway experience: "The lovely association of Ahab and Pip is like the relations of Lear to both the Fool and Edgar." Although the Manxman commented of the captain and the cabin boy, p. 515, "One daft with strength, the other daft with weakness," Pip was hardly worthy of comparison with the Shakespearean characters. See also Gordon H. Mills, "The Castaway in *Moby-Dick*," *University of Texas Studies in English*, 1950, Vol. 29, pp. 231-248, for further account of Pip as "an allegorical or symbolical figure" and the possible role of William Cowper's poem "The Castaway" (in *Poems*—Sealts, No. 161) in this chapter and in other parts of Melville's book.

413.16. *He saw God's foot upon the treadle of the loom*: Compare Melville's note on the albatross, on p. 187n. "Through its inexpressible, strange eyes, methought I peeped to secrets which took hold of God." See also note on *the Loom of Time* 212.32.

413.17. *So man's insanity is heaven's sense*: In his Bible inscribed 23 March 1850 (Sealts, No. 62), Melville made a check mark in the apocryphal book by Wisdom of Solomon, v. 4: "We fools accounted his life madness, and his end to be without honour." Compare *Pierre* (C.W.), the section on "Chronometricals and Horologicals," and especially p. 249: "And thus, though the earthly wisdom of man be heavenly folly to God; so also, conversely, is the heavenly wisdom of God an earthly folly to man. . . . Nor does the God at the heavenly Greenwich expect common men to keep Greenwich wisdom in this remote Chinese world of ours; because such a thing were unprofitable for them here, and, indeed, a falsification of Himself. . . ."

415.6. *his conceit of attainable felicity*: See note on *in the port is safety* 105.10.

415.20. *Berkshire marble*: Probably the grey-veined marble quarried at Lee, Massachusetts.

417.20. *Queen Maachah in Judea*: Daughter of Abishalom (Absalom), favorite wife of Rehoboam, whose chief influence came in the

reigns of her son Abijam and grandson Asa. See 1 Kings xv, 12, 13: "And he [Asa] took away the sodomites out of the land, and removed all the idols that his fathers had made. And also Maachah, his mother, even her he removed from being queen, because she had made an idol in a grove: and Asa destroyed her idol, and burnt it by the brook Kidron."

418.14. *candidate for an archbishopric*: J. Ross Browne, p. 55, included a picture of a mincer at work, but nothing in it prepared one for the development in Melville with its Rabelaisian overtones, a chapter praised by D. H. Lawrence for its phallicism. D. H. Lawrence's poem, "Whales Weep Not!" was clearly written directly from this chapter and from the materials in chap. 87, especially the scene of the whale nursery, p. 386. Melville's closing image with its apparently archaic spelling, illustrates the danger of "editing" Melville's punctuation and spelling. Here the English edition corrected the word to "archbishopric" and thus concealed further Melville's bold, outrageous pun, and his point in the chapter. None of Melville's fish documents was particularly helpful to Melville in "The Cassock," although Beale, pp. 122-26, had a section entitled "Of the Sexual Organs of the Whale."

418.17. *THE TRY-WORKS*: Purgatorial imagery and references to Dante appeared also in the try-works passages in Bennett, J. Ross Browne, and *Ribs and Trucks*, and the anonymous author of "The Whale and Whale Catching," *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge*, Sept. 1835, Vol. 2, p. 7, began an extended analogy: "The description of a whale-ship boiling at night . . . would convey no bad idea of the fancied infernal regions of former days." Melville's more fully developed comparison with hell was especially appropriate in this chapter, which, in the epic of Ishmael, corresponded to the classic hero's descent into Hades. Melville had recently read in Fenelon's *Adventures of Telemachus* (Sealts, No. 212), Book 14, the account of the descent by Ulysses's son through the cavern of Acherontia in search of news of his father. The descent into Hades was always a critical turning point.

420.19. *the bold Hydriote, Canaris*: On the night of the 18-19 June 1822 Constantine Kanaris succeeded in steering a fire ship among the Turkish squadron off Scio and burned its flag-ship. The American and European partisans of Greek independence were overjoyed. The feat was repeated at Tenedos in Nov. 1822 and on several later occasions. Kanaris or Canaris (1790-1877) was a native of Psara, but served under Miaoulis, admiral of the insurgent fleet, whose headquarters were at Hydra, which was the center of much of the revolutionary activity. The final deliverance of Greece was mainly due

to the Hydriote fleet. See the Rev. Walter Colton, *Visit to Constantinople and Athens* (New York, 1836), p. 216: "When Turkish vengeance had covered every neighboring isle and shore with dismay, Hydra perseveringly maintained its self-relying confidence, and became the refuge of freedom, the rallying post of the brave;" and p. 282, of the Greeks: "They are generally most determined when their situation is most desperate, and the most brave when they contend at the greatest odds. Give them an insignificant fire-ship, and they will rush into the centre of a hostile fleet."

421.35. *not so much bound for any haven ahead as rushing from all havens astern*: Compare the end of *Mardi*, chap. 195, Taji: "And why put back? is a life of dying worth living o'er again?—Let me, then, be the unreturning wanderer. The helm! By Oro, I will steer my own fate, old man.—Mardi, farewell! . . . Now, I am my own soul's emperor; and my first act is abdication! Hail! realm of shades!" Ishmael's recognition that he must "believe not the artificial fire" was his alternative to abdication; thus he was saved from finding himself, as Solomon warned that he might, "in the congregation of the dead."

422.9. *Look not too long in the face of fire*: Compare Emerson, "Experience": "The ancients, struck with this irreducibleness of the elements of human life to calculation, exalted Chance into a divinity; but that is to stay too long at the spark, which glitters truly at one point, but the universe is warm with the latency of the same fire." Melville in his letter to E. A. Duyckinck, 3 March 1849, commenting on Emerson's Boston lecture, remarked (printed Thorp, p. 371): "I had heard of him as full of transcendentalisms, myths & oracular gibberish; I had only glanced at a book of his once in Putnam's store—that was all I knew of him, till I heard him lecture." His favorable reaction to the lecture must have led him to read some of Emerson long before he acquired the surviving copies of the poems in 1859, of the *Essays*, first and second series, in 1862, and of *The Conduct of Life* in 1870 (Sealts, Nos. 206, 204, 205, 203). Certainly it seems strange that, while he scored and annotated relatively minor essays in these later volumes, he should have left unmarked such major expressions of Emerson's thought as "Self-Reliance," "Compensation," "History," "The Over-soul," and "Experience"—unless he was already familiar with these. "Fate" in *The Conduct of Life* was also not marked, but that, of course, was published too late to have had any effect on *Moby-Dick*, unless Melville heard some account of the lecture on that topic first given in 1850. But "Experience," which had been in print since 1844, and "Fate" were the two essays Melville

would have found most sympathetic to his own thought. The reasonable assumption is that Melville had read many of these essays not marked in his surviving copies at some time before those copies were acquired; and the most likely times would seem to be (1) while the impact of the lecture was fresh in the early months of 1849; (2) upon the occasion of the publication of Emerson's next book after that lecture, *Representative Men*, in early February 1850, especially since Emerson had lectured in New York just a few days before Melville arrived home from England, 1 February 1850, and he would still be a topic of conversation; (3) some time in the summer of 1850, when he was reading Carlyle (both *Sartor* and *Heroes* were borrowed from Duyckinck in late July or early August), or shortly after he met Hawthorne, a man who knew Emerson personally. Any of these times would, of course, have been early enough for the impact of the reading to show in *Moby-Dick*. In this chapter, and frequently elsewhere, the statement of an Emersonian idea (and what may have been from Emerson) was followed by an allusion to the more skeptical wisdom of Solomon as best represented in Ecclesiastes. For a full account of the later markings and annotations of Emerson, see William Braswell, "Melville as a Critic of Emerson," *American Literature*, Nov. 1937, Vol. 9, pp. 317-334.

422.13. *To-morrow, in the natural sun, the skies will be bright:* Compare Hawthorne, "The Hall of Fantasy," *Mosses from an Old Manse* (Sealts, No. 248), the narrator's unwillingness to judge those present in "the gorgeous and bewildering light of this hall," because "The white sunshine of actual life is necessary in order to test them. I am rather apt to doubt both men and their reasonings till I meet them in that truthful medium."

422.18. *Rome's accursed Campagna:* See Bayard Taylor, *Views A-Foot* (1846), chap. 41: "... the bare and bleak Campagna, which was spread around us for leagues in every direction. Here and there a shepherd-boy in his woolly coat, with his flock of browsing sheep, were the only objects that broke its desert-like monotony. . . . we saw across the plain the ruins of the bath of Agrippa, built by the side of the Tartarean Lake. The wind, blowing from it, bore us an overpowering smell of sulphur; the waters of the little river Solfatara, which crosses the road, are of a milky blue color, and carry those of the lake into the Anio. . . . we determined to have a bath. So we ran down the plain, which was covered with a thick coat of sulphur, and sounded hollow to our tread. . . . The warm wave was delightful to the skin, but extremely offensive to the smell, and when we came out, our mouths and throats were filled with stifling gas. . . . We took

the road to Frascati, and walked for miles among cane-swamps and over plains covered with sheep. The people we saw, were most degraded and ferocious-looking, and there were many I would not willingly meet alone after nightfall. Indeed it is still considered quite unsafe to venture without the walls of Rome, after dark."

422.20. *the ocean, which is the dark side of this earth, and which is two thirds of this earth:* Compare Emerson, "The Tragic," from the course on "Human Life" read in Boston 1839-1840; published in the *Dial*, 1844, Vol. 4, p. 515: "He has seen but half the universe who never has been shown the house of Pain. As the salt sea covers more than two-thirds of the surface of the globe, so sorrow encroaches in man on felicity."

422.22. *that mortal man who hath more of joy than sorrow . . . not true, or undeveloped:* Compare Mme de Stael, *Corinne* (Sealts, No. 486), Book 15, chap. 6, of Tasso: "He could not have read the secrets of the soul if he had felt less sorrow. *The man who has not suffered*, says a prophet, *what does he know?* In some respects, Corinne resembled him." See also the words of Byron's hero in *Manfred* I, i, 9-12:

"But grief should be the instructor of the wise;
Sorrow is knowledge: they who know the most
Must mourn the deepest o'er the fatal truth,
The Tree of Knowledge is not that of Life."

Probably most important in shaping Melville's thought was Carlyle's *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123), Book 2, chap. 9: "Thus was I standing in the porch of that 'Sanctuary of Sorrow'; by strange, steep ways had I too been guided thither; and ere long its sacred gates would open, and the 'Divine Depth of Sorrow' lie disclosed to me. . . . Knowest thou that 'Worship of Sorrow'? The temple thereof, founded some eighteen centuries ago, now lies in ruins, overgrown with jungle, the habitation of doleful centuries. . . . To the 'Worship or Sorrow' ascribe what origin and genesis thou pleasest, *has* not that Worship been originated, and been generated; is it not *here*? Feel it in thy heart, and then say whether it is of God!" The Carlyle passage came from the chapter on "The Everlasting Yea," to which the present chapter was comparable in Ishmael's career, just as Ishmael's meditations on "The Whiteness of the Whale" were in some measure the equivalent of Teufelsdröckh's "The Everlasting No."

422.25. *the truest of all books is Solomon's . . . Ecclesiastes:* Solomon figured importantly in *Mardi*. In chap. 15: "Solomon more than

hints that all men are fools; and every wise man knows himself to be one." In chap. 79, an obvious development from Ecclesiastes i, 3-7: "Nothing abideth; the river of yesterday floweth not to-day; the sun's rising is a setting; living is dying; the very mountains melt; and all revolve: systems and asteroids; the sun wheels through the zodiac, and the zodiac is a revolution. Ah gods! in all this universal stir, am I to prove one stable thing?" And in chap. 49, Babbalanja again, echoing the Preacher's words: "All vanity, vanity, Yoomy, to seek in nature for positive warranty to these aspirations of ours. Through all her provinces, nature seems to promise immortality to life, but destruction to beings. Or, as old Bardinanna has it, if not against us, nature is not for us." In the Bible inscribed 23 March 1850 (Sealts, No. 62), Melville marked in one way or another some 33 verses from Ecclesiastes, 9 from Proverbs, and 37 from the Apocryphal Wisdom of Solomon, which of course was not by Solomon, as Melville well knew, for he wrote across the top of the page on which it began: "About a century before Christ this Book was writ by some Alexandrian Jews, who combined Platonism with their Judaism." Melville made an alteration in Ecclesiastes vii, 16: "Be not righteous over much; neither make thyself over wise: why shouldest thou destroy thyself?" Melville crossed through the last two words and substituted "be desolate." See Melville's comment in a letter to Hawthorne, June 1851, printed in Thorp, pp. 392-393: "I read Solomon more and more, and every time see deeper and deeper and unspeakable meanings in him. . . . It seems to me now that Solomon was the truest man who ever spoke, and yet that he a little *managed* the truth with a view to popular conservatism; or else there have been many corruptions and interpolations of the text."

422.30. Cowper, Young, Pascal, Rousseau, poor devils all of sick men: Compare the account of the English poets as "accomplished misanthropes" in *The Auto-biography of Goethe. Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life*, Book 13, in Vol. 1, pp. 505-506, of the edition (John Oxenford, trans.) Melville bought in London in 1849 (Sealts, No. 228): "Let us . . . consider the majority of the English poems, chiefly morally didactic, and on the average they will only show us a gloomy weariness of life. Not only Young's *Night Thoughts*, where this theme is pre-eminently worked out, but even the other contemplative poems stray, before one is aware of it, into this dismal region, where the understanding is presented with a problem it cannot solve, since even religion, much as it can always construct for itself, leaves it in the lurch. . . . Even their tender poems are occupied with mournful subjects. Here a deserted girl is dying, there a faithful

lover is drowned, or is devoured by a shark before, by his hurried swimming, he reaches his beloved; and if a poet like Gray lies down in a churchyard, and again begins those well-known melodies, he too may gather round him a number of friends to melancholy. Milton's *Allegro* must scare away gloom in vehement verses, before he can attain a very moderate pleasure; and even the cheerful Goldsmith loses himself in elegiac feelings, when his *Deserted Village*, as charmingly as sadly, exhibits to us a lost Paradise which his *Traveller* seeks over the whole earth." Goethe closed his comment with a reference to the impact of English literature on the Germany of his youth: "Hamlet and his soliloquies were spectres which haunted all young minds. The chief passages every one knew by heart and loved to recite, and everybody fancied he had a right to be just as melancholy as the Prince of Denmark, though he had seen no ghost, and had no royal father to avenge." See also the entry for 17 March 1787 of Goethe's *Letters from Italy* (Vol. 2, p. 437 of Melville's London purchase): "Often do I think of Rousseau and his hypochondriacal discontent; and I can thoroughly understand how so fine an organization may have been deranged. Did I not myself feel such sympathy with natural objects; and did I not see that . . . a hundred seemingly contrary observations admit of being reconciled . . . I should often think myself mad."

422.35. *But even Solomon, he says:* The quotation was exact: Proverbs xxi, 16.

424.10. *Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego:* See Daniel iii for the story of the three faithful Jews, officials of Nebuchadnezzar in the province of Babylon, who refused to worship the great golden image the king had set up and were, therefore, condemned to the fiery furnace. When God miraculously protected them from harm, Nebuchadnezzar decreed severe punishments for anyone who spoke against the Hebrew God and promoted the three devout officials.

426.24. *Oh! the metempsychosis! Oh! Pythagoras:* The cardinal doctrine of this Greek philosopher of the sixth century B.C. was explained by Montaigne (Sealts, No. 366), Book 2, chap. 12, "An Apologie of *Raymond Sebond*," the essay Melville seems to have known best: "For, in the *Metempsychosis*, or transmigration of soules of Pythagoras, and the change of habitation, which he imagined the soules to make; shall we thinke that the Lion in whom abideth the soule of *Caesar*, doth wed the passions which concerned *Caesar*, or that it is hee? . . . And himselfe said, that he remembered to have beene *Aethaledes*, then *Euphorbus*, afterward *Hermotimus*, at last from *Pyrrhus* to have passed into *Pythagoras*: Having memorie of

himself, the space of two hundred and six yeares: some added more, that the same soules doe sometimes ascend up to heaven, and come downe againe." Melville's question was the same as Montaigne's: whether, when a lion housed the soul of Caesar, the lion or Caesar should be blamed for its passions. The allusions to the Pythagorean doctrine, as also the references to stories from Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, were all in keeping with Melville's conception of the Parsee harpooner as a kind of alter-ego of Ahab. See note on *Fedallah* 215.23. Melville's concern was with moral responsibility, and he used the myths and fancies of the ancients in any way he could to clarify or imaginatively to extend his insistent question.

427.10. *the riveted gold coin there*: Note that later Stubb pointed out that there was a horse-shoe nailed to the other side of the mainmast and that, for the same reason, the Manxman spoke of the White Whale being raised under the horse-shoe sign. In Thomas Shepard's account of the great storm off Yarmouth which wrecked the first ship in which he started for New England—as published in *Chronicles of the First Planters of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay* (Boston, 1846)—the editor, Alexander Young, added a footnote, p. 536: "Edward Johnson, in his Hist. of New-England, chap. 29, says that 'the master and other seamen made a strange construction of the sore storm they met withal, saying the ship was bewitched, and therefore made use of the common charm ignorant people use, nailing two red-hot horse-shoes to their mainmast.' See Mass. Hist. Coll. xiii, 141." (For further account of this edition of Shepard, see note on *Pequod* 68.8.) In a note on *Thalaba the Destroyer*, Book 4, section 9, Southey quoted Niebuhr about a merchant of Mecca who claimed "that he himself, being in danger of perishing at sea, had fastened a billet to the mast, with the usual ceremonies, and that immediately the tempest ceased." Melville referred to Southey's poem in *White-Jacket*, chap. 76.

427.24. *Pactolus*: Herodotus, V, 101, in describing Sardis, the capital of Lydia, mentioned "the river Pactolus, which flows through the market place carrying down gold dust from Tmolus, and issues into the river Hermes as does the Hermes into the sea." As Ovid told the story in *Metamorphoses*, Book 11, the river became golden when Midas, following the directions of Bacchus, washed himself in it by way of losing his fatal power to transform what he touched into gold. The fabulous wealth of Croesus, last king of Lydia (560-546 B.C.) came from the golden sands of Pactolus. Compare Mickle's translation of Camoens, *Lusiad*, Book 7:

"If empire tempt ye; lo, the east expands,
 Fair and immense, her summer-garden lands:
 Their boastful wealth displays her radiant store;
 Pactol and Hermus' streams o'er golden ore
 Roll their long way; but not for you they flow;
 Their treasures blaze on the stern soldan's brow."

427.38. *those noble gold coins . . . are as medals*: The general conception of the series of soliloquies on the doubloon may have been suggested by Addison's *Dialogues on Medals* between Cynthio, Eugenius, and Philander, which was illustrated with plates of actual medals and coins of ancient Rome, and brought together numerous passages from classic writers describing or interpreting them. Some Spanish American coin featured all of the luxuriant decorations Melville named: cocoa palms (Bolivia), alpacas or llamas (Bolivia, Peru), volcanoes (South Peru, Chile), sun's disks (Argentina), stars (Bolivia, Ecuador), ecliptics (Brazil), cornucopias or horns-of-plenty (Columbia, Peru), flags and banners (Peru).

428.7. *the doubloon of the Pequod*: Melville's coin was no earlier than 1836, when the separation of Ecuador from Columbia took place. His description of the reverse side of the Ecuadorian onza was slightly inaccurate in mistaking a vulture for "a flame" and in calling a condor "a crowing cock." The coins of South Peru and Chile sometimes represented volcanoes, but never those of Ecuador. The zodiac with meridian sun was peculiar to Ecuador. The obverse of the onza of this period—all account of which Melville artistically withheld—showed a draped bust with a fillet inscribed LIBERTAD and in circular lettering: EL PODER EN LA CONSTITUCION.

428.22. *three peaks as proud as Lucifer*: Compare Ahab's reference in his final speech, p. 565, to "ye three unsundered spires of mine," the masts. Note also the *unvictorious* fowl Tashtego pinioned to the mast in the final scene. Assuming an identification of Ahab with the author, Stanley Geist, *Herman Melville: The Tragic Vision and the Heroic Ideal* (1939), p. 51, has commented: "As proud as Lucifer"—a conventional simile, to be sure; but Melville, like his hero, admired the rebel archangel for his proud and heroic defiance."

429.1. *Belshazzar's awful writing*: See note on *Mene, Mene, Tekel Upharsin* 498.29. Starbuck's premonition was used as dramatic foreshadowing.

429.22. *Popayan*: A city in Columbia, in which from colonial days there had been a mint.

429.27. *Bowditch in his Epitome*: The American mathematician,

Nathaniel Bowditch (1773-1838), first published in 1802 his *New American Practical Navigator: Being an Epitome of Navigation*.

429.29. *Daboll's arithmetic*: Widely used in schools as a text in arithmetic, *Daboll's Complete Schoolmaster's Assistant* (1779) was the work of Nathan Daboll (1750-1818), New England maker of almanacs and teacher of navigation.

429.31. *the Massachusetts calendar*: Stubb obviously referred to some almanac which gave the common picture of the man surrounded by the twelve signs of the zodiac, frequently called the "Man of the Signs." Perhaps the reference was to Isaiah Thomas's *Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode-Island, New-Hampshire and Vermont Almanack*, which included this conventional diagram, though not with faith that the parts of the body reputedly governed by each sign, really were. The zodiac, and articles about it, were common features of most almanacs and many minor periodicals of the day. In the 1830's there was a publication in Albany called *The Zodiac*. The Teufelsdröckh manuscripts of *Sartor Resartus* (Sealts, No. 123) were allegedly kept in Zodiacal bags. Sir Thomas Browne in *Pseudodoxia Epidemica* (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), Book 5, chap. 10, wrote of the alleged connection between the signs of the Zodiac and the escutcheons of the twelve tribes of Israel. There were some obvious resemblances between Stubb's interpretation here and the account of Jacques of the seven ages of man in *As You Like It* II, vii, 139-165; man by either itinerary came to "mere oblivion." The zodiacal order, which Stubb rendered battering-ram, deluge, fishes, was a forecast of the *Pequod's* fate. For once, Stubb apparently forgot this eleventh commandment: "Think not."

432.3. "*I look, you look, he looks. . . .*": See the interpretation of Pip's speech by W. E. Sedgwick, *Herman Melville: The Tragedy of Mind* (1944), p. 111: "The object is indifferent, the subject is all that is needed because the subject always sees himself. This is Pip's version of the solipsism of consciousness, a theme which Melville continually broaches in *Moby Dick*."

432.4. *Murray's Grammar*: Lindley Murray (1745-1826), a Pennsylvania Quaker, was the author of *The English Grammar* and *The English Reader*, both widely used in American schools during the first half of the nineteenth century. The selections in the latter were, according to the title-page, "designed to assist young persons to read with propriety and effect; to improve their language and sentiments; and to inculcate the most important principles of PIETY AND VIRTUE."

432.21. *the ship's navel*: Compare Job xl, 16, of Behemoth: "Lo

now, his strength is in his loins, and his force is in the navel of his belly." See also De Quincey, *Suspira de Profundis*, Part 1, of the approach of Easter: "Yet what then was Jerusalem? Did I fancy it to be the *omphalos* (navel) of the earth? That pretension had once been made for Jerusalem, and once for Delphi; and both pretensions had become ridiculous, as the figure of the planet became known. Yes; but if not of the earth, for earth's tenant, Jerusalem was the *omphalos* of mortality." According to Andrew Crichton, *History of Arabia* (Harper's Family Library, Vol. 69—1842), Vol. 2, p. 188, Mecca also claimed that honor, for "the Kaaba, the 'navel of the world,' as Ibn Haukal calls it," was there, and not far away the graves of Ishmael and Hagar and the sacred well Zemzem. Melville probably intended a mystical, even a religious, symbol here.

432.32. *God goes 'mong the worlds blackberrying*: Compare Pardoner's prologue, *Canterbury Tales*, VI, 405-406:

"I rekke nevere, whan they been beryed,
Though that hir soules goon a-blakeberied."

432.34. *Jenny . . . hoe-cake*: Willard Thorp has pointed out that Pip was singing snatches of the minstrel song "Old King Crow," the refrain of which was in dialogue:

"Jenny get yer hoe-cake." "Oh! don't bother me."
"Fetch along de hoe-cake." "I tell you taint done."
"Will you bring de hoe-cake?" "G'long, don't bother me:
I'll fotch along de hoe-cake
Soon it am done."

436.14. *like a Lima tower*: See the long quotation about earthquakes in Lima from J. J. Von Tschudi, *Travels in Peru, during the years 1838-1842*, in the review in the *Literary World*, 27 February 1847, Vol. 1, p. 82, and the testimony of Melville's friend Robert Tomes about "a *harmless* earthquake shock," 28 April 1850, published in his article in the same magazine "MSS. of the Pacific," 18 Jan. 1851, Vol. 8, pp. 42-44. Von Tschudi listed major earthquakes in 1586, 1630, 1687, 1713, 1806, besides the most famous one in 1746. Tomes's experience helped to form his general impression of Lima: "The whole appearance of Lima struck me as theatrical; the pasteboard looking houses with their bird-cage balconies, and the strolling player look of the people. The light balconies and scenic painting and frescoes of the houses had a wonderful stage operatic look. . . . Everything appeared as if it might be shifted and would disappear in an

instant at the whistle of a prompter." See notes on *Lima has taken the white veil* 191.18, and *Corrupt as Lima* 249.12.

439.2. *the White Whale's malice*: See William Starbuck Mayo, *Kaloolah* (1849), chap. 1, the reference to an ancestor who was an officer on a whale-ship "which was struck and destroyed by an infuriated *cachelot*, whether by accident or design remains a disputed point amongst whalers." Compare the emphasis on "revenge" and "decided, calculating mischief" in the excerpts from Owen Chase's *Narrative . . . of the Whale-ship Essex* which Melville gave in a footnote on pp. 204-205.

440.14. *famous whaling house of Enderby & Son*: Although Poe signally alluded to Samuel Enderby, and his importance to the whale fishery, in *The Narrative of Arthur Gordon Pym* (1838), Melville here seems to be following rather closely Beale, pp. 148-150, except that he miscopied Beale's "1788" as "1778": "In 1788, the grand mercantile speculation of sending ships round Cape Horn into the Pacific, in order to extend the sperm whale fishery was reserved for the bold and enterprising mind of Mr. Enderby, a London merchant and ship-owner, who fitted out, at a vast expense, the ship 'Amelia,' Captain Shields, which sailed from England on the 1st of September 1788, and returned on the 12th of March 1790, making an absence of one year and seven months, but bringing home the enormous cargo of 139 tons of sperm oil. . . . In 1819, another great impulse was given to the fishery, by the indefatigable and enterprising Mr. Enderby, who had not only joined the government in 1793 in the expense of fitting out a ship, commanded by Captain James Colnett, to undertake a voyage to the South Seas, with a view to extend the sperm whale fishery there; but in this year, 1819, formed the scheme, and actually fitted out at his own expense a large ship of 500 tons burthen, called the 'Syren,' commanded by Captain Coffin, with a crew of thirty-six seamen, for the purpose of sending her on an experimental voyage to the far distant sea of Japan, to prosecute the sperm whale fishery in that remote part of the world." Because of the verbal similarities between Beale and *Moby-Dick* and because Melville's copy of Beale was marked in the margins at these points, it would seem that Melville followed Beale rather than the equally familiar Bennett, Vol. 2, pp. 185-86. Melville may actually have gammed with the real whaleship *Samuel Enderby*, for it had been built in 1834.

443.3. *An ancient Dutch volume*: This long passage with all its statistics was Melville's parody of a similar one, heavy with detail and pedantic, in Scoresby, Vol. 2, pp. 151-152. It enabled Melville to

indulge in his baiting of the humorless Scoresby and in the consideration of food, a favorite recurrent subject with him.

446.3. *Tranquo, king of Tranque*: Melville's coinage here may have been suggested by Montaigne's essay "Of Names," Book 1, chap. 46: "And Suetonius the Historian hath loved but the sense of his owne, and having taken away *Lenis*, which was his fathers surname, hath left *Tranquillus* successor of his compositions reputation." Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus, Roman historian of the latter part of the first and the first half of the second centuries, A.D., private secretary of Hadrian, friend of the younger Pliny, with whom he traveled to Bithynia, was the author of *Lives of the Caesars* and of biographies of Terence, Horace, and other illustrious Romans.

446.4. *one of the Arsacides*: A small group of islands near the southern tip of the Solomon islands, probably discovered by Bougainville about 1768, and visited shortly afterward by Surville who gave them a name he considered synonymous with assassins, because he found the natives fierce, intractable, and treacherous. Tranque, however, is not among them, but an obscure little island off the coast of Chile, latitude 43° S. and longitude 73° 30'W. The Arsacides were a dynasty of the Parthian empire 250 B.C.—226 A.D.

446.33. *the Icy Glen*: On the occasion when Melville met Hawthorne, 5 August 1850, after a three-hour mid-day dinner at the home of David Dudley Field in Stockbridge, Mass., the guests were taken for a tour of the Icy Glen, "a break in one of the hills of tumbled huge, damp, mossy rocks in whose recesses ice is said to be found all the year round." See E. A. Duyckinck's letter to his wife, written from the Melville house in Pittsfield, 6 August 1850.

447.34. *with a ball of Arsacidean twine*: An allusion to the means of escape from the Cretan labyrinth employed by Theseus. See note on *an interminable Cretan Labyrinth of a figure* 25.8.

448.21. *Sir Clifford Constable*: See Beale, p. 76: "I cannot close these few observations without embracing the opportunity, now presenting itself, of thanking Sir Clifford and Lady Constable for the kind assistance which they rendered me, in procuring the information I required; indeed a pleasant rivalry was manifested among the scientific gentlemen of Hull, in showing and explaining to me all that they knew respecting the leviathans of the deep, of which the Museum of Natural History at Hull can boast of several fine skeletons. . . . The description of the skeleton of the sperm whale at Burton-Constable, which I shall presently give [pp. 77-88, and later], interests me exceedingly, principally on account of its being the only specimen of the kind in Europe or in the world." The pleasant rivalry among the

Hull scholars was possibly reflected in the contentious priests in the skeleton-temple of Tranque. This Burton-Constable skeleton had been stranded on the Yorkshire coast 28 April 1825. A picture of it and discussion of this entire skeleton section is in *Trying-Out*, pp. 352-64. Melville wrote marginal comments on Beale's statements, but these remarks have been erased by some later owner of the book.

449.16. *Captain Scoresby's estimate*: Scoresby, Vol. 1, p. 462: "A stout whale of sixty feet in length, is of the enormous weight of seventy tons; the blubber weighs about thirty tons, the bones of the head, whalebone, fins and tail, eight or ten; carcass thirty or thirty-two."

451.16. *Pompey's Pillar*: A column of rose-colored granite sixty-seven feet high, on a pedestal of 21 feet, which stands in isolation three-quarters of a mile from Alexandria. Vivant Denon, *Travels in Upper and Lower Egypt* (trans. from the French; New York, 1803), chap. 3, discussed it in some detail: "It was named Pompey's Pillar in the fifteenth century. . . . A monument had been raised to Pompey at Alexandria: it had disappeared, and was thought to be recovered in this pillar or column, which has since been converted into a trophy erected to the memory of Septimus Severus. It is, however, placed on the ruins of an ancient city; and in the time of Septimus Severus, the city of the Ptolemies was not in a ruinous state. To support this column by a solid foundation, an obelisk has been sunk into the earth, on which is placed a very clumsy pedestal, having a fine shaft, and surmounted by a corinthian capital of bad workmanship." The shaft, Denon concluded, had probably once belonged to some ancient edifice of magnificence. *Glimpses of the Wonderful. Third Series* (New York, 1849), pp. 21-24, carried a full page illustration, and recounted the legend that the column, which in the nineteenth century had a cupola on the summit, had been erected by Alexander for Aristotle to teach philosophy to the Egyptians. The Arabs maintained, on the basis of its seeming haphazard construction, that it had been erected by God. The Egyptian hieroglyphics on the base and the Greek inscription on the pedestal, by the middle nineteenth century, had been much effaced by initial-carving tourists. In *Redburn*, chap. 41, the narrator told of seeing in Liverpool "two great Pompey's pillars, in the shape of black steeples" at the spot where the Manchester railroad entered the town.

452.28. *Give me a condor's quill*: Compare *The Doctor*, Vol. 1, "Preface," where after quoting Young, "Oh for a quill plucked from a Seraph's wing!" Southey expressed his own preference for one from a peacock's tail, and discussed the appropriate quills for lovers, law-

yers, clients, critics, and several of the reigning poets of the day. For Melville's finest account of the creative process, see *Mardi*, chap. 180, on Lombardo and his Koztanza; for more specific details of his own writing methods, see his letters to E. A. Duyckinck 12 Dec. 1850, and to Hawthorne June 1851, printed in Thorp, pp. 383, 390-391.

453.1. *volume . . . on the flea*: See Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 3, chap. 89, a twenty-three page discussion of the flea in literature and history, occasioned by finding a flea on the page on which he was writing.

453.5. *a great digger of ditches, canals*: After several months studying engineering and surveying, in the winter of 1838-1839, at the Lansingburgh Academy, Melville tried vainly, with support from his Uncle Peter Gansevoort, to get a job on the Erie Canal improvement in April 1839. Failing here, he shipped on the *St. Lawrence* for Liverpool in June.

453.31. *vast skeleton of an extinct monster, found in . . . Alabama*: In 1832 a Louisiana Judge named Bry sent several fossil vertebrae to the Philosophical Society of Philadelphia for examination; later Judge Creagh sent a similar box of bones from his Alabama plantation. Dr. Richard Harland examined these finds and identified them as reptilian (*Basilosaurus*). He took some of the bones to London in 1839, where Sir Richard Owen, greatest of English paleontologists, pronounced them to be teeth belonging to a sea-going mammal. To this Harlan agreed and the name "*Zeuglodon*" was given to the animal. One charlatan, Albert Koch, articulated several wagonloads of the Alabama bones into the form of an immense reptilian skeleton 114 feet in length. This monster was shown in Boston and New York in 1845 and attracted wide attention, crowds flocking to pay the fee to stare at the strange fake. Better scientists pointed out that the bones were those of several different animals, but this did not deter Koch, who carted his profitable hoax to Europe for a lucrative tour. See *Trying-Out*, pp. 346-51, for an account of this, with an extensive list of articles pertaining to the fossil whale.

454.33. *the great temple of Denderah . . . a sculptured and painted planisphere*: The ruins of the Tentyra temple, dedicated to Isis, a little over two miles from Dendera, "called by the Arabs, Berbeh," were elaborately discussed by Vivant Denon, *Travels in Upper and Lower Egypt* (trans. from the French; New York, 1803), chaps. 2, 11, 19. Denon made drawings of "the zodiac, which is on the ceiling of the portico" and of "the celestial planisphere, which occupies part of the ceiling of a little apartment built over the nave of the great temple"—a plate of the latter included in the volumes showed some

fish-like whales—and mentioned the walls “covered with groups of pictures exhibiting the religious rites of this people, their labours in agriculture and the arts, and their moral precepts.” A soldier with Napoleon in Egypt, Denon later became director of the museums of France.

455.24. *DOES THE WHALE’S MAGNITUDE DIMINISH? WILL HE PERISH?*: Scoresby, Vol. 1, pp. 450-52, discussed the size of whales past and present and considered whether they would continue to exist in the face of the relentless whale hunt, and he concluded, p. 452, that “Yet I believe that whales now occur of as large dimensions, as at any former period since the commencement of the whale fishery.” Charles Wilkes, *Narrative of the United States Exploring Expedition* (Philadelphia, 1845), Vol. 5, p. 493, declared: “An opinion has indeed gained ground within a few years that the whales are diminishing in numbers; but this surmise, as far as I have learned from the numerous inquiries, does not appear to be well founded.”

456.18. *Thames Tunnels of Whales*: Engineered by Sir Marc Isambard Brunel, this tunnel from Rotherhithe to Wapping was opened in 1843 after nearly twenty years of work. When Melville visited it, 11 November 1849 (*Journal*, p. 27), the carriage road approaches were still not finished, and it was primarily a tourist attraction, approached by spiral staircases to the level of the tunnel 75 feet below the ground. The two great ribbed arches of the tunnel extending 1200 feet were brilliantly illuminated, and were occupied by shops and a printing press, where views were sold. The walls were decorated with paintings of Southampton, Gibraltar, Calcutta, and Eddystone. Melville here bought some medals for Duyckinck’s children (see letter to E. A. Duyckinck 2 February 1850). Brunel’s death in the British capital the day before Melville returned to London from the Continent may have served, with the newspaper stories occasioned, to reinforce Melville’s memory of his visit to the tunnel. See Bayard Taylor’s comment on the tunnel in *Views A-Foot*, chap. 6: “The immense solidity and compactness of the structure precludes the danger of accident, each of the sides being arched outwards, so that the heaviest pressure only strengthens the whole.” Charles Knight’s *London* (Sealts, No. 312) printed an illustration of the interior along with extended verbal description. See Ahab’s specifications for “a complete man,” on p. 466: “chest modelled after the Thames Tunnel.”

456.23. *And Lacépède, the French naturalist*: Melville did not take this directly from the French writer but from Scoresby’s restatement, Vol. 1, p. 449n.: “One can hardly doubt, says he (p. 3), but that the

Mysticetus may have been seen, at certain times, and in certain seas, 100 metres, that is 328 feet, long."

456.37. *the high-bred, stall-fed, prize cattle of Smithfield*: Since 1150 or earlier the famous cattle-market of London. According to Charles Knight (Sealts, No. 312), the average weight of the more than 4000 cattle sold weekly at Smithfield in 1849 was 640 pounds. Melville's point would seem to have been well taken. But then he had at least passed through this area of London, 10 Nov. 1849; see *Journal*, p. 27.

456.39. *Pharaoh's fat kine*: An allusion to Genesis xli, 1-33, Pharaoh's dream of "seven well favoured and fat kine" and seven "ill favoured and lean fleshed kine," which Joseph interpreted as prophesying seven years of plenty followed by seven years of famine.

457.24. *buffalo in Illinois . . . men now in London*: Although the population of the county of London was more than two million in 1850, Melville was probably correct about the number of buffalo.

458.38. *Harto, the historian of Goa*: Compare Sir Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica* (Sealts, Nos. 89 and 90), Book 6, chap. 6: "In the other parts of the world they are in great abundance, as appears by the relation of Garcias ab Horto, physician to the Viceroy at Goa, who relates that at one venation the king of Siam took four thousand, and is of the opinion they are in other parts in greater number than herds of beeves in Europe."

459.4. *by Semiramis, by Porus, by Hannibal*: See notes on *Darmonodes' elephant* 375.3 and on *King Porus' elephants* 382.8 for Melville's chief sources about the elephant. See also Sir Thomas Browne, *Miscellany Tracts*, Tract 13: "Museum Clausum," sec. 2: "Rarities in Pictures," item 19: "A picture describing how Hannibal forced his passage over the river Rhone with his elephants, babbage, and mixed army; with the army of the Gauls opposing him on the contrary shore, and Hanno passing over with his horse much above, to fall upon the rear of the Gauls."

461.13. *Grand-Lama-like exclusiveness*: See *White-Jacket*, chap. 68: "The Grand Lama of Thibet, according to some accounts, is never beheld by the people." See also Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus*, Book 1, chap. 3: "In short, if Teufelsdröckh was Dalai-Lama, of which, except perhaps in his self-seclusion, and god-like indifference, there was no symptom. . . ." Compare Ahab's remarks on p. 534 about "the desolation of solitude . . . the masoned, walled-town of a Captain's exclusiveness, which admits but small entrance to any sympathy from the green country without."

466.27. *Prometheus, who made men*: Ahab's thought here seems

to have been almost a wistful recollection of the difference, pointed out by Goethe in *Truth and Poetry*, Book 15, between Satan and the Greek hero: "Prometheus . . . has this advantage, that, even in spite of superior beings, he is able to act and to create." Thomas Browne in *Religio Medici*, Part 1, sec. 36, alluded to Paracelsus's "receipt to make a man without conjunction," and Simon Wilkin (Sealts, No. 89) added a note in his edition to give the details of the recipe for the fairy, quoting D'Israeli's *Curiosities of Literature*. Bayard Taylor in describing the statues of Hiram Powers—Eve and Proserpine—alluded to both Prometheus and Pygmalion as makers of men, in *Views A-Foot* (Sealts, No. 495), chap. 37. But the unromantic, almost mechanical specifications here given by Ahab more likely came from a recollection of the subtitle of Mary Shelley's *Frankenstein; or, The Modern Prometheus* (Sealts, No. 467), which Richard Bentley gave Melville in London December 1849. See also note on *Prometheus* 200.20.

466.37. *chest modelled after the Thames Tunnel*: See note on *Thames Tunnels of Whales* 456.18.

468.21. *I would be free as air*: Contrast the remark of Goethe given by Eckermann in the *Conversations*, entry for 18 January 1827: "If a man has freedom enough to live healthy, and work at his craft, he has enough; and so much all can easily obtain. Then all of us are only free under certain conditions, which we must fulfil. . . . Freedom consists not in refusing to recognize anything above us, but in respecting something which is above us; for, by respecting it, we raise ourselves to it, and by our very acknowledgment make manifest that we bear within ourselves what is higher, and are worthy to be on a level with it." (John Oxenford trans.)

473.25. *when Zoroaster died*: Compare Pierre Bayle, *An Historical and Critical Dictionary*. . . . (Sealts, No. 51), Vol. 5, pp. 630-633: "Zoroaster, King of the Bactrians, was vanquished by Ninus, and passed for the inventor of Magic. . . . the love of wisdom and justice obliged him to retire to a mountain to live there in solitude . . . when he descended from thence there fell a celestial fire upon it which perpetually burned . . . Zoroaster came out of these flames without being damaged . . . he wished to be struck with thunder, and consumed by fire from Heaven . . . he ordered the Persians to collect his bones after he was burnt in this manner, and to keep and venerate them as a pledge for the preservation of their monarchy . . . they really paid a great veneration to his relics, but . . . in the process of time having neglected them, their monarchy fell to ruins. The chronicle of Alexandria adds, that after having held this discourse with them, he invoked Orion, and was consumed by celestial fire. Some writers say

that Mizraim the son of Ham was instructed in Magic by his father, and that he was burned alive by the Demon whom he too frequently importuned; that the Persians adored him as a favourite of GOD, and a saint whom a thunderbolt served as a vehicle to mount up to Heaven, and as a living star, whence it came, that after his death he was called Zoroaster. . . . *All the ancient Persians believe Zoroaster ancients than Moses, nay some Magi affirm that he is the same with Abraham, and frequently call him Ilbrahim Zerdascht, as much as to say, Abraham the friend of fire. . . .* They are in the wrong who believe that Zoroaster taught a diabolical Magic; for his Magic was only the study of the Divine nature, and of religious worship, as Plato expressly declares." There was also a tradition of similar miraculous events, and fires blazing forth, at the time of Mohammed's birth; see Andrew Crichton, *History of Arabia* (Harper's Family Library, Vol. 68—1842), Vol. 1, p. 202.

474.25. *the Lackaday islands*: Probably the Laccadive Islands off the south-west coast of India; though only 14, called the "Hundred Thousand Islands;" long known to Arabian traders, visited by the Portuguese under Vasco da Gama in 1498.

476.21. *shame upon all cowards*: Pip's lament here, and again on p. 526, was possibly suggested by Falstaff's "a plague of all cowards," *1 Henry IV*, II, iv, 115-157, *passim*.

478.10. *those fabled undulations of the Ephesian sod over the buried Evangelist St. John*: As Millicent Bell has pointed out in an article entitled "Melville and Hawthorne at the Grave of St. John (A Debt to Pierre Bayle)"—to be published shortly in *Modern Language Notes*—Melville may have been developing here an idea from Pierre Bayle, *An Historical and Critical Dictionary*. . . . (Sealts, No. 51), Vol. 3, p. 576: "Never was any people so credulous about traditions as the Asiatics, and in particular the Ephesians. St. Augustine relates upon this subject a very particular thing, which plainly shews the excess of their credulity, and the folly of their traditions. He says that some Ephesians, or persons that came from Ephesus, men of great sense and merit, and who were not credulous, *non levibus hominibus*, had assured him, that St. John was not dead; that indeed he was buried at Ephesus, but that he was in his grave as a man that sleeps in his bed; and that as we see the bed cloaths move up and down, according as a man in his sleep breathes, so the earth of the grave wherein St. John was buried, was seen to rise and fall in such like intervals." This account Bayle quoted from the abbot Faydit, and added his own characteristic comment: "Can anything be more impertinent than such a story." As Miss Bell has demon-

strated by quotation, it is unlikely that Melville derived his conception directly from Augustine. The passage quoted from Bayle was on the page facing the beginning of the long article on "Jonas," which Melville drew on significantly in chaps. 82 and 83. What was probably Hawthorne's use of the same passage from Bayle appeared as a filler in the *American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge*, April 1836, Vol. 2, p. 319: "St. Augustin relates, that some Ephesians assured him that St. John, though buried at Ephesus, was not dead, but that, as the bedclothes move up and down by the breathing of a man asleep, so does the earth of the grave where Saint John lies buried. Doubtless, this fable was imagined in honour of the 'beloved apostle'; but we honour him more by the belief that he spends no such dreary night in the grave—that he left only his dust in Ephesus, and went straight to Heaven." The use of the word "fable" and the idea of the "weary night" brought this passage closer to Melville's than Bayle's was, but Hawthorne concluded the item with a reflection on the vanity of "sepulchral monuments." Robert Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 7 (1847), chap. 234, reported the same story: "St: Augustine had been assured by what he considered no light testimony that St. John was not dead, but asleep in his sepulchre, and the motion of his breast as he breathed might be perceived by a gentle movement of the earth." Whether Melville's source was Augustine, or Bayle, or Hawthorne, or Southey, it is clear that for artistic uses he was willing to revive a myth that Sir Thomas Browne had sought to exterminate in *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 7, chap. 10, "That John the Evangelist should not die."

479.13. *THE BLACKSMITH*: George Arms, "'Moby Dick' and 'The Village Blacksmith,'" *Notes and Queries*, 3 May 1947, Vol. 192, pp. 187-188, has suggested that Melville was being satirical of the facile characterization in Longfellow's popular poem.

480.25. *the Bottle Conjuror*: In the *Arabian Nights* a magician or genie kept in a bottle, who attained normal or super-normal size on being let out. See Southey, *The Doctor*, Vol. 2, chap. 59, the author's need for space prompted the query: "Do they take me for a Bottle-conjuror that I am to compress myself into a quart, wine-merchant's measure, and be corked down?" In making the genie the demon Rum, Melville may have had in mind the visit of Pantagruel and Panurge to the Oracle of the Holy Bottle in the last part of Rabelais, Book 5 (Sealts, No. 417), or he may have been thinking of the series of drawings by George Cruikshank called "The Bottle" (1847) and "The Drunkard's Children" (1848). Melville's friends the Duyckincks owned both. George had acquired in Europe an

autographed copy of the second series. Of the first, E. A. Duyckinck wrote in his diary, 21 Sept. 1847: "Cruikshank's scenes of 'The Bottle' a la Hogarth is one of the new illustrations of the progress of printing—eight plates. . . . The story of the progress of intemperance is well told, compared with Hogarth however it is thinner and more local, has the Englishman of London but not those everlasting types of the human race. . . ." (NYPL-D) The two series told the story of the breakdown of a man's character, with different details, but with much the same effect as in Melville's biography of the Blacksmith.

481.3. *Death plucked down some virtuous elder brother*: Melville was obviously alluding here to the death of his elder brother, Gansevoort, at the age of 30 in May 1846. Gansevoort Melville had been from the time he was 16, when his father died, the chief support of the family, morally no less than financially. He was secretary of the American legation in London at the time of his death, and had been diligent in his brother's behalf just a few months before in arranging for the publication of *Typee*, in proofreading, etc. See the entry for 24 November 1849 in the *Journal*, p. 48, inspired by George Peabody's recollection of his brother: "No doubt, two years ago, or three, Gansevoort was writing here in London, about the same hour as this—alone in his chamber, in profound silence—as I am now. This silence is a strange thing. No wonder the old Greeks deemed it the vestibule to the higher mysteries."

481.19. *Death is only a launching*: Compare with p. 105: "In landlessness alone resides the highest truth, shoreless, indefinite as God."

482.13. *Mother's Carey's chickens*: Swallow-like birds called petrels; frequently referred to as stormy petrels, because their appearance was regarded as warning of stormy weather. The sparks from Perth's anvil seemed significant to Ahab because he had come to have a harpoon forged.

483.15. *I, too, want a harpoon made*: For this section, and for the last paragraph of the chapter (putting the harpoon on its shaft), Melville went to Scoresby, Vol. 2, pp. 225-226:

"The most important part in the construction of this instrument [the harpoon] is the shank: As this part is liable to be forcibly and suddenly extended, twisted and bent, it requires to be made of old horse-shoe nails or *stubs*, which are formed into small rods, and two or three of these added together; so that should a flaw happen to occur in any one of the rods, the strength of the whole might still be depended on. . . . A test sometimes used for trying the sufficiency of a harpoon, is to wind its shank round a bolt of inch iron, in the form

of a close spiral, then to unwind it again, and put it into a straight form. If it bears this without injury in the *cold* state, it is considered as excellent. . . .

"A harpoon was recently produced in Hull, the design of which was to prevent the loss of a whale, provided the shank of the instrument should happen to break. To effect this, the thick part of the shank immediately adjoining the mouth of the harpoon, was pierced with an oblong hole, in the direction of the plane of the withers. Through this hole a small rope, or a *strand* of whale line, is passed, and both ends secured to the line attached to the other end of the harpoon. Hence, should the shank of the harpoon break, the connection between the line and the part of the harpoon fixed in the whale is still preserved."

484.32. *Ego non baptizo te in nomine patris, sed in nomine diaboli*: For Melville's annotations (which included this Latin sentence in fuller form) on the back fly-leaf of Vol. 7 of his edition of Shakespeare (Sealts, No. 460), see note on *Ahab* 79.17. Compare also the passage in Rabelais (Sealts, No. 417), Book 1, chap. 19: "*Hei domine*, I beseech you, *in nomine Patris, Filii, & Spiritus sancti*, Amen, to restore us unto our bells: and God keep you from evil, and our Lady from health; *qui vivit & regnat per omnia secula seculorum*. Amen. Hem, *hashchebhawksash, qzrchremhem hash, verum enim vero, quando quidem, dubio procul, edepol, quoniam, ita certe, medius fidius*. . . ." (Urquhart trans.) See Pierre Bayle, *An Historical and Critical Dictionary*. . . . (Sealts, No. 51), Vol. 2, p. 662, for the story of Dicaerchus, commander of the fleet of Philip of Macedon in an expedition against the islands of the Cyclades, who just before sailing "erected two Altars, one to Impiety, and the other to Injustice, upon which he celebrated the very same Divine Service, and paid the same Homage to these two Crimes, as he would have done to the Gods. *Polybius*, if we had him entire, would have informed us of the Success of this War, and the Sequel of *Dicaerchus's* Actions: the Fragments we have remaining of that Author only let us know, that this impious Wretch, engaging in a Conspiracy, expired under the Torture." Melville wrote Hawthorne 29 June 1851: "The tail is not yet cooked, though the hell-fire in which the whole book is broiled might not unreasonably have cooked it ere this. This is the book's motto (the secret one), *Ego non baptizo te in nomine*—but make out the rest for yourself." This comment has been widely interpreted as evidence of a genuine belief by Melville in some kind of diabolism. More likely it was a facetiously phrased but sincere comment on the agony of his labors during the final weeks of composition.

485.4. *Seizings*: Fastenings made of tarred rope or cord.

485.20. *THE GILDER*: This chapter, as its title implied, was a restatement at a critical moment of the point made on p. 193: "Though in many of its aspects this visible world seems formed in love, the invisible spheres were formed in fright." Remembering still "that all deified Nature absolutely paints like the harlot," Melville paused briefly to admire the gilding just before the events of the narrative were to reveal "the tiger heart that pants beneath it."

486.35. *manhood's pondering repose of If*: See *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 247, *El*, the title of Plotinus Plinlimmon's pamphlet, and Henry Murray's note, pp. 474-475, suggesting that Melville was here using the Greek word for "if," and pointing out that the final word of plinlimmon's essay is "if." The reference may have been, according to Murray, to Plutarch's discussion in the *Morals* (Holland trans., 1657, pp. 1098-1108) "of the various meanings ascribed to the word *El* (one of which is 'if') engraven over the gate of Apollo's temple at Delphi." There was also a casual reference to this inscription in Rabelais, Book 4, chap. 48.

487.10. *I look deep down and do believe*: Compare Starbuck's remark with old Bardianna's, *Mardi*, chap. 143: "shut your eyes and believe."

488.6. *barrels of beef and bread been given away*: Compare Cheever, p. 99: "Some [whaleships] have even thrown overboard provisions to make way for oil."

490.20. *all sperm whales dying—the turning sunwards of the head*: In the much marked chapter, "Chase and Capture of the Sperm Whale" in Beale, Melville read, pp. 160-61: "in this state the whale is said to be in his flurry, and some whalers state that he always dies with his head towards the sun, but of this I have never been convinced. When dead, the body always turns on its side, probably from the greater weight of the spine and dorsal muscles." J. Ross Browne, pp. 297-98, wrote: "He now lay a lifeless mass: his head towards the sun, his tremendous body heaving to the swell, and his destroyers proudly cheering over their victory!" This was also a Parsee custom: see Thomas Hope, *Anastasius*, Vol. 1, chap. 5, the dying Parsee's wish to be carried where he may see the setting sun.

492.7. *Asphaltites*: The Dead Sea, Palestine, near the site of the ancient Sodom and Gomorrah. This name for it was used by Sir Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, Book 7, chap. 15, and it was called "the Asphaltic pool" by Milton, *Paradise Lost* I, 411.

492.24. *I shall still go before thee thy pilot*: In the context from which the tenth Extract was taken, Montaigne, Book 2, chap. 12

described the sea-gudgeon as "the Whales guide; for she doth ever follow him, suffering her selfe, as easily to be led and turned by him, as a ship is directed and turned by a sterne." Note Ahab's comment on p. 557, after Fedallah's disappearance: "What's that he said? he should still go before me, my pilot; and yet be seen again?"

492.32. *Hemp only can kill thee*: Ahab's mistaking Fedallah's words to mean that he should die by the gallows, and other details of Ahab's complicated dream and Fedallah's interpretation, doubtless owed something to the prophecy of the Weird Sisters to Macbeth (IV, i) about his safety before any man born of woman, and until Birnam wood should come to Dunsinane, which had its strange fulfillment in V, vi and vii. See also Friar John's assurance that Panurge need not be afraid of water, but was fated to die by fire, Rabelais (Sealts, No. 417), Book 4, chap. 24, which was referred to again in chap. 34, from which the eleventh Extract also came: "If your Destiny be such as Fryar *Ihon* was saying a while ago (reply'd *Pantagruel*) you ought to be afraid of *Pyrois*, *Eous*, *Aethon* and *Phlegon* the Suns Coach-horses, that breath Fire at the Nostrils, and not of Physeters, that spout nothing but water at the Snout and Mouth. Their water will not endanger your Life; and that Element will rather save and preserve, than hurt or endanger you." Panurge, unlike Ahab, was not reassured, but continued to fear the huge whale, which for him was "Devil, Satanus, Leviathan." Scott's *The Talisman* dealt also with the misconstruing of a prophecy, though without serious consequences; when the Hermit Theodorick of Engaddi discovered his error, chap. 28, he moralized: "God will not have us break into his council-house, or spy out his hidden mysteries. We must wait his time with watching and prayer, with fear and with hope."

493.5. *his spokes*: The *Pequod*, here thought of as having a wheel, was described on p. 69 as equipped with a tiller made from the lower jaw of a whale. In his critical scene on p. 422, Ishmael came to realize that he must always "accept the first hint of the hitching tiller." The appearance of the wheel here may have been a mere careless error on Melville's part, or it may be evidence that in some earlier version of the book the *Pequod* was not yet equipped with the symbolical tiller.

494.10. *Foolish toy*: Compare Ahab's smashing the quadrant with the departure of Jarl and Taji from the *Chamois*, *Mardi*, chap. 4, with a compass, but with no chart or quadrant: "it mattered little, whether on our passage we daily knew our longitude . . . if westward we patiently held our way, we must eventually achieve our destination." Ahab, too, was careless of all but his goal, Moby Dick.

494.32. *a fatalistic despair that seemed meant for himself*: Henry Pommer has suggested that Fedallah's mood here was comparable to Satan's reaction to his early view of Eve and Eden, *Paradise Lost*, IX, 467-470:

"But the hot hell that always in him burns,
Though in mid Heaven, soon ended his delight,
And tortures him now more, the more he sees
Of pleasure not for him ordained."

495.2. *the three Horatii*: The three brothers, sons of Horatius, who fought with the three Curiatii for supremacy in Alba. After two of the Horatii were down, the surviving brother, feigning flight, vanquished all three wounded Curiatii, and upon his return home stabbed his sister because she showed undue grief at the sight of mantle of one of the Curiatii who had been her betrothed.

495.4. *the knight-heads*: See note on *KNIGHTS AND SQUIRES* 111.26.

495.25. *the Typhoon*: For the most detailed effort to chart the course of the *Pequod* during the action of this and succeeding chapters, see Sumner W. D. Scott, "Some Implications of the Typhoon Scenes in *Moby-Dick*," *American Literature*, March 1940, Vol. 12, pp. 91-98. Scott has undertaken to show that Melville was not an arm-chair seaman and to relate the typhoon scenes to the structure of the rest of the book.

498.13. *the corpusants*: Sometimes called St. Elmo's fire, balls of electricity on the masts or in the rigging. Compare William Julius Mickle's translation of Camoens, *Lusiad*, Book 5:

"That living fire, by seamen held divine,
Of heaven's own care in storms the holy sign,
Which midst the horrors of the tempest plays,
And on the blast's dark wings will gaily blaze;
These eyes distinct have seen that living fire
Glide through the storm, and round my sails aspire."

Melville, oddly enough, apparently had a single experience of this phenomenon; see entry for 13 October 1849, *Journal*, pp. 7-8: "About midnight, I rose & went on deck. It was blowing horribly—pitch dark & raining. The Captain was in the cuddy, & directed my attention 'to those fellows' as he called them,—meaning several 'Corposant balls' on the yardarms & mastheads. They were the first I had ever

seen, & resembled large, dim stars in the sky." Richard Henry Dana, Jr., in *Two Years before the Mast* (Sealts, No. 173), chap. 35, gave a more detailed account: "When we got down we found all hands looking aloft, and there, directly over where we had been standing, upon the main top-gallant mast-head, was a ball of light, which the sailors call a corposant (*corpus sancti*), and which the mate had called out to us to look at. They were all watching it carefully, for sailors have a notion that if the corposant rises in the rigging it is a sign of fair weather, but if it comes lower down there will be a storm. Unfortunately, as an omen, it came down, and showed itself on the top-gallant yard-arm. We were off the yard in good season, for it is held a fatal sign to have the pale light of the corposant thrown upon one's face. As it was, the English lad did not feel comfortably at having it so near him, and directly over his head. In a few minutes it disappeared, and showed itself again on the fore top-gallant yard; and, after playing about for sometime, disappeared once more, when the man on the fore-castle pointed to it upon the flying-jib-boom-end." The predicted storm arrived: "The rain fell at intervals in heavy showers, and we stood drenched through and blinded by flashes, which broke the Egyptian darkness with a brightness that seemed almost malignant; while the thunder rolled in peals, the concussion of which appeared to shake the very ocean. The ship is not often injured by lightning, for the electricity is separated by the great number of points she presents, and the quantity of iron which she has scattered in various parts. The electric fluid ran over our anchors, topsail sheets and ties; yet no harm was done to us." Stubb could take the corposants for "a sign of good luck" perhaps, while they remained high, but when the flame appeared on the harpoon in Ahab's boat, the omen would seem to have borne out Starbuck's fear that it was "an ill voyage! ill begun, ill continued" in the face of obvious divine disapproval.

498.29. "*Mene, Mene, Tekel Upharsin*": The Aramaic words mysteriously written on the wall at Belshazzar's feast, translated by Daniel as prophesying the king's death and the division of his kingdom; see Daniel v, 24-28. See notes on *Belshazzar, King of Babylon* 146.26, and *Belshazzar's awful writing* 429.1.

499.32. *skeletons in Herculaneum*: See *Letters from Italy*, 18 March 1787 (in vol. 2 of Sealts, No. 228) for Goethe's account of his visit to Herculaneum; in the letter of 11 March 1787, Pompeii was for Goethe "this mummied city." Buried by the eruption of Vesuvius in 79, Herculaneum was rediscovered in the early eighteen century and extensive excavation was begun in 1738. Goethe commented:

"It is a great pity that the excavation was not executed systematically by German miners; for it is admitted that the work, which was carried on at random, and with the hope of plunder, has spoilt many a noble monument of ancient art."

500.5. *"Oh! thou clear spirit of clear fire. . . ."*: Compare Ahab's words here with the speech of Hawthorne's Ethan Brand in the moment of his immolation: "Oh Mother Earth! . . . who art no more my Mother, and into whose bosom this frame shall never be resolved! O mankind, whose brotherhood I have cast off, and trampled thy great heart beneath my feet! O stars of heaven, that shone on me of old, as if to light me onward and upward!—farewell! all, and forever. Come, deadly element of Fire,—henceforth my familiar friend! Embrace me, as I do thee!" Melville read Hawthorne's story in Holden's *Dollar Magazine* (then edited by E. A. Duyckinck) for May 1851. See his comment in letter to Hawthorne June 1851, printed Thorp, p. 392: "He was a sad fellow, that Ethan Brand. I have no doubt that you are by this time responsible for many a shake and tremor of the tribe of 'general readers.' It is a frightful poetical creed that the cultivation of the brain eats out the heart. But it's my *prose* opinion that in most cases, in those men who have fine brains and work them well, the heart extends down to the hams. And though you smoke them with the fire of tribulation, yet, like veritable hams, the head only gives the richer and better flavor. I stand for the heart. To the dogs with the head! I had rather be a fool with a heart, than Jupiter Olympus with his head. The reason the mass of men fear God, and *at bottom dislike* Him, is because they rather distrust His heart, and fancy Him all brain like a watch." Perhaps Melville indicated here why he could give Ahab a degree of sympathy he denied to Ethan; indeed there was a suggestion that he felt Ahab likely to receive a divine compassion which could not be extended to Ethan.

500.6. *till in the sacramental act so burned by thee*: Charles C. Walcutt, "The Fire Symbolism in *Moby-Dick*," *Modern Language Notes*, May 1944, Vol. 49, pp. 304-310, has interpreted this passage: "Ahab first worshipped fire as the destroyer of evil, in the authentic Zoroastrian manner, considering it the principle of light. When doing so he was struck by lightning: fire burned him. The fire was the counterpart of his being maimed by Moby Dick, although we must assume it happened before his fated encounter with the whale (previously a source of nature's bounty) and that the latter spurred him on from disillusion to indignation and madness. . . . His being burned is the revelation—not yet understood by Ahab—that 'evil' and 'good'

are not separate but One. . . . Conceiving an alien reality in the Fire, Ahab must, like the Phoenix, experience its destruction in order to experience its purification."

501.34. *the fiery dart*: Henry Pommer has suggested that the figure for Ahab's flaming harpoon came from *Paradise Lost* XII, 491-492, where Michael promised Adam

"spiritual armour, able to resist
Satan's assaults, and quench his fiery darts."

502.3. *As in a hurricane . . . some lone, gigantic elm*: According to Henry Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, p. 55, this passage may have owed something to Milton's picture of the defeated angels in *Paradise Lost* I, 612-615:

"when heaven's fire
Hath scathed the forest oaks or mountain pines,
With singed top their stately growth, though bare,
Stands on the blasted heath."

The figure of a tree struck by lightning came into the initial description of Ahab, pp. 120-121; hence it was especially appropriate here.

506.24. *The cabin lamp-taking long swings this way and that*: Compare Father Mapple's account of Jonah's "swinging lamp," p. 43.

507.26. *all of us are Ahab*s: Compare Ahab's claim with Emerson's essay on "Napoleon" in *Representative Men* (1850): ". . . if any man is found to carry with him the power and affections of vast numbers, if Napoleon is France, if Napoleon is Europe, it is because the people whom he sways are little Napoleons."

508.25. *THE NEEDLE*: This chapter was built up from Scoresby, *Journal of a Voyage to the Northern Whale-Fishery* (Edinburgh, 1823), pp. 52-53, in which Scoresby tells of a strategy which he worked out during some idle moments of a cruise when he had "time and opportunity for scientific researches." "This fundamental process is the elicitation of magnetic energy by percussion. For this purpose, soft steel is employed, which is capable of retaining for some time the magnetic virtue developed in it, instead of iron, in which it is extremely evanescent, or hard steel, in which it is with great difficulty produced. The first step in the process is to hammer an iron or steel poker, or other rod of similar metal, of considerable size, while held in a vertical position, or, what is better, in the direction of the dipping-needle, by a few smart blows on the end; this will render the rod

or poker sensibly magnetic. If a soft steel bar he now placed on the top of the poker, and hammered on the upper end, while both the poker and the bar are held vertically, or in the direction the dipping-needle assumes, it immediately acquires a considerable attractive force, the upper end becoming a south pole, and the lower end a north pole." And later, pp. 54-55, "Such a high degree of magnetic energy being obtained by a process so simple, it suggested a ready means of making magnets, without the use of any magnetized substance whatever, and of giving polarity to needles, so as to render them capable of answering the purpose of compasses, in an instant."

510.30. *a certain magnetism shot into their congenial hearts*: See Goethe's comments on the Demonical quoted in note on *that certain sultanism of his brain* 144.22.

515.25. *was startled by a cry*: The episode of the seal cry was developed from Captain James Colnett's, *A Voyage to the South Atlantic*, p. 169: "When we were in Latitude 24°, a very singular circumstance happened, which as it spread some alarm among my people, and awakened their superstitious apprehensions, I shall beg leave to mention. About eight o'clock in the evening an animal rose along-side the ship, and uttered such shrieks and tones of lamentation so like those produced by the female human voice, when expressing the deepest distress, as to occasion no small degree of alarm among those who first heard it. These cries continued for upwards of three hours, and seemed to encrease as the ship sailed from it: I conjectured it to be a female seal that had lost its cub, or a cub that had lost its dam; but I never heard any noise whatever that approached so near those sounds which proceed from the organs of utterance in the human species. The crew considered this as another evil omen, and the difficulties of our situation were sufficient, without the additional inconvenience of those accidental events, to cause any temporary depression of those spirits which were so necessary to meet the distresses we might be obliged to encounter."

518.32. *Turk's-headed life-lines*: Lines with an ornamental knot called a Turk's-head because it looked like a turban.

520.19. *Albemarle, one of the Gallipagos, is cut by the Equator*: The Equator cuts the north end of Albemarle, not the center. See "The Encantadas or Enchanted Isles," a series of ten sketches about the Galapagos Islands in *Piazza Tales* (C.W.), pp. 149-207. Melville's spelling was the more common one in nineteenth century books of travel. The Fourth Sketch (p. 166) contained much the same assertion about Albemarle made here.

524.34. *She was Rachel, weeping for her children*: The appro-

priate name for this whaleship, which was also to rescue Ishmael in the Epilogue, came from Jeremiah xxxi, 15: "Thus saith the Lord, A voice was heard in Ramah, lamentation, and bitter weeping: Rachel weeping for her children refused to be comforted for her children, because they were not."

525.7. *There is that in thee, poor lad, which I feel too curing to my malady:* M. O. Percival, *A Reading of Moby-Dick* (1950), p. 101, has noted the parallel between Ahab's words to Pip here and the thoughts of Hubert on approaching young Arthur with the intention of burning out the boy's eyes, *King John* IV, i, 25-27:

"If I talk to him, with his innocent prate
He will awake my mercy which lies dead.
Therefore I will be sudden and dispatch."

Unlike Ahab, Hubert weakened, and in allowing conversation was unnerved for carrying out the king's order.

531.1. *An eagle flew thrice round Tarquin's head:* Lucumo Tarquinius (to whose name Livy added Priscus), son of Demaratus, originally of Corinth, left his Etruscan home to seek his fortune in Rome. This sign, vouchsafed him on his way to Rome, was verified soon after his arrival in the city.

531.13. *most miserably misnamed the Delight:* The name of this ship and the disaster which befell the *Pequod* shortly after this final gam were an ironic echo of the repeated assurances of delight in the final paragraph of Father Mapple's sermon, p. 48.

533.24. *little Miriam and Martha:* Henry Murray has suggested in his notes to *Pierre* (C.W.), p. 492, that these "laughing-eyed elves" were meant for Julian and Una, children of Hawthorne, "their old sire." It seems likely that they had a more functional connection with the book as a whole. Perhaps, if the change from Mocha Dick to Moby Dick had something to do with the Biblical character Moab (see end of note on *Moby Dick* 175.9), Melville was here giving names to the nameless daughters of Lot and the "old sire" was their drunken parent used for their purposes, seemingly innocent at the time, but later entailing disastrous consequences. Ahab's remarks then would have been an observation of the necessary loss of innocence in man's action, spontaneous and unforeseeing as it must always be. Such a reflection would have accorded with the note of wistfulness and remorse that pervaded Ahab's words and behavior in the early part of this chapter. Perhaps suspecting an irreverent allusion here, the English editor omitted this entire paragraph.

536.4. *his last, cindered apple*: For an account of other allusions in Melville to the Apples of Sodom and their probable derivation from Milton, see Henry Pommer, *Milton and Melville*, pp. 66-67, 147 n. 15. Compare *Paradise Lost* X, 560-567:

“Greedyly they plucked
The fruitage fair to sight, like that which grew
Near that bituminous lake where Sodom flamed;
This, more delusive, not the touch, but taste
Deceived; they, fondly thinking to allay
Their appetite with gust, instead of fruit
Chewed bitter ashes, which the offended taste
With spattering noise rejected.”

536.11. *Is Ahab, Ahab?*: For fuller treatment of the significance of Ahab's queries here about moral responsibility see the note on *Fedallah* 215.23. See also the passage Melville marked in Thomas Hope's *Anastasius* (Sealts, No. 282), Vol. 2, chap. 9, which is quoted in note on *the grand programme of Providence* 5.22.

536.18. *Fate is the handspike*: Plato developed a similar figure in *The Republic*, end of Book 10.

537.11. *the dog-vane*: A small vane placed on the weather gunwale to show the direction of the wind.

539.27. *the white bull Jupiter*: See note on *Jove . . . a snow-white bull* 186.14. The Parsees had a legend about a sacred bull, not specified as white. See also Voltaire's drama *The White Bull*, in which the title character was Nebuchadnezzar metamorphosed, and in which also appeared the Witch of Endor, Jonah's whale, Balaam's ass, and the Serpent of Eden. There is no indication that Melville knew Voltaire. The phrase “the grand god” applied to the White Whale two paragraphs later was probably meant to suggest a connection between *Moby Dick* and Jupiter or his modern counterpart.

542.28. *Antiochus's elephants in the book of Maccabees*: See the Apocryphal book 1 Maccabees vi, 34, of the forces of Antiochus Eupator making war on Judas Maccabeus and the Jews: “And to the end they might provoke the elephants to fight, they shewed them the blood of grapes & mulberries.”

545.17. *brave as fearless fire (and as mechanical)*: Compare the passage later, on p. 554, where Stubb repeats the first phrase and Ahab completes the statement by adding the second. Both seem to refer back to Ahab's accusation of the fire on p. 501: “There is some unsuffusing thing beyond thee, thou clear spirit, to whom all

thy eternity is but time, all thy creativeness mechanical." See also the entry for 1778 in Boswell's *Life of Samuel Johnson* of a conversation with Sir William Scott: "JOHNSON. ' . . . But, Sir, the profession of soldiers and sailors has the dignity of danger. Mankind reverence those who have got over fear, which is so general a weakness.' SCOTT. 'But is not courage mechanical, and to be acquired?' JOHNSON. 'Why yes, Sir, in a collective sense. Soldiers consider themselves only as part of a great machine.'"

547.16. *writ in water*: Probably an echo of Keats's self-chosen epitaph, "Here lies one whose name is writ in water."

548.32. *guilt and guiltiness*: Melville must have written or intended "guilt and guiltlessness."

555.20. *Thinking is, or ought to be a coolness and a calmness*: Compare Melville's letter to Hawthorne June 1851, printed Thorp, p. 390: "The calm, the coolness, the silent grass-growing mood in which a man *ought* always to compose,—that, I fear, can seldom be mine. Dollars damn me; and the malicious Devil is forever grinning in upon me, holding the door ajar."

555.26. *that sort of common grass that will grow anywhere, between the earthy clefts of Greenland ice or in Vesuvius lava*: See Goethe's statement in *Letters from Italy*, 2 March 1787 (in Vol. 2 of *Sealts*, No. 228): "I crossed the lava of the year '71, on the surface of which a fine but compact moss was already growing."

558.14. *my soul's ship starts upon this voyage*: Compare *White-Jacket*, "The End": "Oh, shipmates and world-mates, all around! - We the people suffer many abuses. . . . Yet the worst of our evils we blindly inflict upon ourselves. . . . From the last ills no being can save another; therein each man must be his own saviour. For the rest, whatever befall us, let us never turn our murderous guns in-board; let us not mutiny with bloody pikes in our hands. Our Lord High Admiral will yet interpose; . . . let us never forget, that

Whoever afflict us, whatever surround
Life is a voyage that's homeward bound!"

560.22. *possessed by all the angels that fell from heaven*: See Milton's long catalogue of the leaders among the rebel angels and the account of their fall in *Paradise Lost*, I.

560.33. *Lashed round and round to the fish's back*: See note on *the noble Iroquois . . . the sacred White Dog* 186.15.

562.29. *his great Monadnock hump*: An allusion to the dome-shaped, isolated mountain in southern New Hampshire. In "Monad-

noc," included in *Poems* (1847), Emerson described this mountain as "Cheshire's haughty hill," "this barren cone," "an aerial isle," "watchman tall," and

"Pillar which God aloft had set
So that men might it not forget."

Monadnock was represented as saying of man:

"Tis even so; this treacherous kite,
Farm-furrowed, town-incrusted sphere
Thoughtless of its anxious freight,
Plunges eyeless on forever;
And he, poor parasite,
Cooped in a ship he cannot steer,—
Who is the captain he knows not,
Port or pilot trows not,—
Risk or ruin he must share."

The mountain appeared also in another poem in this volume, "The Sphinx," as the last of the metamorphoses:

"Uprose the merry Sphinx,
And crouched no more in stone;
• • • • •
She stood Monadnock's head."

564.36. *Retribution, swift vengeance, eternal malice*: See note on *the White Whale's malice* 439.2.

565.15. *Pole-pointed prow*: Without clear literal sense, this phrase may have been an allusion to the semi-mystical search for the South Pole in the final chapters of Edgar Allan Poe's *Narrative of A. Gordon Pym* (1838). See note on *THE WHITENESS OF THE WHALE* 185.6.

565.18. *I feel my topmost greatness lies in my topmost grief*: Compare Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus*, Book 2, chap. 9: "Man's Unhappiness, as I construe, comes of his greatness; it is because there is an Infinite in him, which with all his cunning he cannot quite bury under the Finite." See also De Quincey, *Suspira de Profundis*, Part 2: "Either the human being must suffer and struggle as the price of a more

searching vision, or his gaze must be shallow, and without intellectual revelation." See also note on *Ahab* 79.17.

565.23. *from hell's heart I stab at thee*: Compare the hero's words to the spirits who came to take him to hell, *Manfred* III, iv, 99-104:

"I do defy ye,—though I feel my soul
Is ebbing from me, yet I do defy ye;
Nor will I hence, while I have earthly breath
To breathe my scorn upon ye—earthly strength
To wrestle, though with spirits; what ye take
Shall be ta'en limb by limb."

565.30. *the flying turn caught him round the neck*: See Jay Leyda, *The Melville Log*, p. 124, for the *New Bedford Daily Mercury* news item about Captain Prince Shearman of the *Parker*, New Bedford, who, on 3 August 1842, was "taken out of the boat by the line, while fast to a whale, and drowned." The *Honolulu Friend* reported this accident 27 June 1843, while Melville was in the capital city of Hawaii; see Leyda, p. 168. The various whaling books discussed this kind of accident as one of the normal perils of the industry, but Melville seems to have dramatized directly from Cheever, pp. 138-39: "A few years since, one of the most active and energetic of our whaling captains was thus taken overboard by the line, and had the singular good fortune to survive to tell the story. The whale was sounding very swiftly when the line became entangled. The boat-steerer, who was at his post in the stern of the boat, tending the line, instantly threw the turn off the loggerhead, and the tangled part ran forward and caught in the bow. The captain was seen to stoop to clear it, and then at once disappeared. The boat-steerer seized the hatchet, which is always at hand, and chopped the line, with the faint hope that when it slackened the captain could extricate himself. The accident being so sudden and dreadful as almost to stupify the amazed crew, neither of them spake a word, but each eye was fixed upon the sea with fearful interest." Cheever's captain, it turned out, had been caught by the wrist, and he recovered, more fortunate than Ahab. Probably as influential was Bennett, Vol. 2, p. 221.

566.1. *the gaseous Fata Morgana*: The castles of the *Fata Morgana*, often seen in the Strait of Messina, between Sicily and the coast of Italy, when the peculiar state of the atmosphere makes reflections of objects on shore. An inverted ship was considered ominous of shipwreck or other calamity. See De Quincey, *Suspira de Profundis*,

"Savannah-la-Mar," this city "sunk to the coral floors of ocean. . . . in glassy calms, through the translucent atmosphere of water. . . . fascinates the eye with a *Fata Morgana* revelation." The phenomenon got its name from the legendary Morgan le Fay, sister of King Arthur; *Fata* being the Italian word for fairy.

566.16. *A sky-hawk*: One of Melville's most noteworthy transmutations is this passage adapted from Bennett's anecdote, Vol. 2, pp. 243-244: "Sailors believe that the sea-hawk sleeps on the wing; though I am not aware that there are any recorded facts in favour of this notion. When the nearest land is remote, they will continue fishing around a ship for many successive days and night, and continue unremittedly on the wing; but when in the immediate vicinity of land, they invariably return to the shore at sunset. Their flight is exceedingly easy and graceful, and has also the charm of variety; sometimes the bird may be seen balanced in mid-air, its wings spread but apparently motionless, its long forked tail expanding and closing with a quick alternate action, and its head turned inquisitively from side to side to inspect the ocean beneath; sometimes it wheels rapidly, or darts to the surface of the water in pursuit of prey; and at others, soars to so great a height that it is lost to vision, or becomes a mere speck in the sky—an elevation of flight which is alone sufficient to distinguish this from all other sea-birds.

"They apparently take a delight in soaring over the masthead of a ship, from which they usually tear away the pieces of coloured cloth fixed in the vane. One individual, thus occupied over the Tuscan, was taken by hand by the man at the mast-head. The lookout at the time was kept by a landsman, remarkably tall and slender, and his mess-mates would never believe but that the poor bird, accustomed to the figure of a sailor, had mistaken him for a spare spar, and thus fallen a victim to a want of discernment."

566.25. *like Satan, would not sink to hell till she had dragged a living part of heaven along with her*: An allusion, most likely, to Milton's Satan. See also *Redburn*, chap. 55, Jackson "did not give over his blasphemies, but endeavored to drag down with him to his own perdition, all who came within the evil spell of his power."

566.29. *then all collapsed*: Compare Southey's *Thalaba the Destroyer*, Book 12, sec. 36, of Domdaniel or hell, the seminary for evil magicians under the roots of the sea: "The Ocean-vault fell in, and all were crushed."

566.30. *the sea rolled on as it rolled five thousand years ago*: Here again Melville seems to have departed from the chronology of Bishop Usher and accepted the Septuagint chronology as interpreted by Hales

and others. According to Usher, in 1850, it would have been 4198 years since the Deluge; according to Hales, 5005 years. Noah's Flood seems to have been Melville's obvious point of allusion here. For fuller discussion of Melville's chronology see note on *antique Adam who died sixty round centuries ago* 36.8.

567.2. "*And I only am escaped. . .*": Job i, 15, 16, 17, 19. See note on *a Job's whale* 184.21. The English edition did not include the Epilogue. Some of the objections of the English reviewers stemmed from that fact. The limited time between the appearance of the English reviews and the American publication date makes it unlikely, indeed impossible, that any additions were made in response to English criticism. See the *Spectator* (London), 25 October 1851: "It is a canon with some critics that nothing should be introduced into a novel which it is physically impossible for the writer to have known: thus, he must not describe the conversation of miners in a pit if they *all* perish. Mr. Melville hardly steers clear of this rule, and he continually violates another, by beginning in the autobiographical form and changing *ad libitum* into the narrative. His catastrophe overrides all rules: not only is Ahab, with his boat's crew, destroyed in his last desperate attack upon the white whale, but the 'Pequod' herself sinks with all on board into the depths of the illimitable ocean." Melville's explicit reference at the top of p. 563 to "the third man helplessly dropping astern" so clearly prepared the way for Ishmael's survival that it is hard to conceive of the Epilogue as an after-thought. The omission of the Epilogue in the English edition remains unexplained. In the 1853 one-volume publication, Bentley—using the same plates—kept the original English title, *The Whale*, and did not add the Epilogue.

567.16. *like another Ixion*: A king of the Lapithae in Thessaly and father of the Centaurs, who—according to the Greek and Roman myth—for his presumptuous impiety was sent to hell, and there bound to a perpetually revolving fiery wheel. See *Redburn*, chap. 25: "Then, sometimes in a calm, when the sudden swells would lift the ship, the helm would fetch a lurch, and send the helmsman revolving round like Ixion, often seriously hurting him."

567.19. *the coffin life-buoy*: Thomas O. Mabbott, "A Source for the Conclusion of Melville's 'Moby-Dick,'" *Notes and Queries*, 26 July 1941, Vol. 181, pp. 47-48, has noted that Robert Southey's *Common-place Book*, First Series (second ed., 1850), p. 430, recorded a story of "A Coffin Used as a Boat," ascribed to Mandelslo—about a Dutch sailor who disinterred a body in order to use the coffin as a boat, when he was abandoned on St. Helena. Charles Duffy, *Notes and Queries*,

15 Nov. 1941, Vol. 181, pp. 278-279, has made the further suggestion of Thomas Campbell's "Death Boat of Heligoland" (1828) as a possible source. See also Thomas Hope, *Anastasius* (Sealts, No. 282), Vol. 2, chap. 6: ". . . there arose a storm, of which the very first blast shivered our bark to splinters. It sent twelve fine young sailors and their captain to the bottom, but kindly spared Welid and me; and, as the cargo was now lost at all events, I determined to atone for whatever evil thoughts might, without my leave, have risen in my breast, by doing my utmost to save my partner. I lugged him after me on a floating hen-coop; and, as it had not required an out of the way rough sea to make an end of our crazy skiff, this vehicle supported its load, until the wind and current carried us ashore on the neighboring coast of Samos."

INDEX

(TO INTRODUCTION AND NOTES ONLY)

The aim here has been to list all of Melville's certain or probable sources and some other books and authors which help to define the literary traditions to which Moby-Dick is related. Significant interpretations or analyses of the major characters are also included, along with such general subject headings as the reader of this edition may find most useful. No attempt has been made here to give an exhaustive subject index of the whaling materials or of biographical items, but the "fish documents" are included among the sources. References are by pages, with an asterisk indicating the more comprehensive or key treatments of subjects and characters.

Acushnet (Melville's whale-ship, Jan. 1841-July 1842)— ix, *592, 600, 602, 603, 612, 613, 626, 629, 631, 637, 655.

Addison, Joseph— *Cato* *593; *Dialogue on Medals* 804; trans. Ovid 598, 707.

Adventure, Spiritual— *657-658.

Ahab— original reviews, 1851-1852 xvii, xviii, xx; interpretations in the 1920's xxi-xxiv *passim*; interpretations in the 1930's xxiv-xxvi; interpretations 1940-1951 xxvii-xxxii; smashing the quadrant 589, 819; fatalism 600; slouched hat like Jonah's 617; a Nantucketer 626; fire-worship 633, 822; general analysis *637-652; sacrilege of the silver calabash 655; relation to Starbuck 663-664; an "Isolato" 669; his scar 670-671; discarding his pipe 672; as speck-synder 677; the demonic in him *678-679; his interpretation of nature 694; world-weariness 698; his evil 703; where his leg lost 718; relation to Fedallah *729-732, 734; like Gabriel 762; killed when caught in the whale line 829.

Ahasuerus— 668-669.

Albatross— 710-711, 712.

Albinoes— 708, 712.

Alexander, Herr (magician)— 611.

Alfred, King: the narrative of Other or Ochter— 579, 580, *582, 636, 660.

Allegory— xvii, xxiii, xxiv, xxv, xxxi, 576, 737-738; see also Job *699-704, Whiteness *704-706, and Moby Dick (the whale).

American criticism of *Moby-Dick*, 1851-1852— xv-xviii, xx.

American literature— the super-sensual element in xix; Ishmaelism in 591.

American Magazine of Useful and Entertaining Knowledge— article on Quito 671; article on "The Whale and Whale Catching" 672, 797; articles printed during Hawthorne's editorship 704 (theory of colors), 743 (Erie Canal), 768 (Mammoth Cave), 773 (reprint of Irving's "The Bee Hunt"), 815 (St. John's grave in Ephesus).

Ames, Nathaniel— *A Mariner's Sketches* 661.

Anacharsis Cloutz— 578, 669-670.

Ann Alexander (ship sunk by a whale 1851)— xv, xvi.

Apocrypha— See end of Bible listings.

Anti-expansionism— 626-627.

Arethusa— 696.

Arngrimus Ionas of Island— 578.

Arnold, Matthew— Melville's 1871 annotation of "Empedocles on Etna" 728.

Arsacides (Pacific islands)— 808.

Asgill, John— *An Argument Proving, That . . . Man may be translated*. . . 619-620.

Asphaltites, the Lake— 604.

Athenaeum, The— review of *The Whale*, 1851 xx.

Atlas, The— review of *The Whale*, 1851 xix.

Augustine, St.— *Confessions* 647, 693-694; on St. John's grave 814-815.

Baal— 637, 651, 654.

Bacon, Francis— xxiii, 644; *Translation of Certain Psalms* 582-583; *Historia Vitae et Mortis* 583.

Bailey, Philip James— *Festus* 647-648, 737, 765.

Baphometric fire-baptism— 590, 625.

Barber, John Warner— *Historical Collections . . . of Every Town in Massachusetts* 603, 667-668.

Barker, James Nelson— *Superstition* 596.

Bayle, Pierre— *An Historical and Critical Dictionary*— 684, 719, 817; on Mahomet 650; on Gnosticism 697; on Spinoza 770; on Jonah 778, 779, 780, 782; on Zoroaster 813-814; on St. John's grave 814-815.

Beale, Thomas— *The Natural History of the Sperm Whale* x, 570, 571, 580, 583, 584, 585 (2), 659, 660, 673, 674, 695, 696, 720, 725, 735, 747, 748 (2), 749, 751, 752, 755, 757, 758-759, 759, 766, 766-767, 768-769, 772, 775, 775-776, 776, 777, 783 (2), 784, 789, 790-791, 793, 793-794, 797, 807, 808-809, 818.

Beckford, William— *Vathek* 647.

Belial— 654.

Belshazzar— 680.

"Bendigo" (the pugilist William Thompson)— 689.

- Bennett, Frederick Debell— *Narrative of a Whaling Voyage Round the Globe* 570, 572, 585, 606, 673, 674 (2), 675, 676, 715, 720, 729, 751, 753 (2), 758, 763, 769, 783, 784, 787-788, 793, 797, 807, 830.
- Bennett, George, and Daniel Tyerman— *Journal of Voyages and Travels* 585.
- Bentham, Jeremy— his skeleton of a whale 748.
- Bentley, Richard (Melville's English publisher)— ix, x, xiv, 693.
- Bentley's Miscellany*— review of *The Whale*, 1852 xviii.
- Bergerac Savinien, Cyrano de— *The Comical History of the States and Empires of the Moon and Sun* 628.
- Bible, the King James Version of the— (See also Kitto and Biblical chronology.) General 571, 581, 613, 619. Old Testament (alphabetically by books): 1 Chronicles 635; 2 Chronicles 637, 639, 762; Daniel 680, 733, 802, 821; Ecclesiastes 623, 699, 783, 799, *800-801; Esther 668; Exodus 786; Ezekiel 579, 779; Genesis 579, 582, 587, 602, 604, 635, 654, 691, 695, 729, 737, 812; Isaiah 579, 582, 675, 695, 725; Jeremiah 587, 604, 695, 825; Job 579 (2), 582, 629 (2), 631, 632, 636, 638, 639, 640, 651, 660, 674, 694, *699-704 *passim*, 706, 725, 729, 765, 777, 806-806, 831; Jonah 582, *616-617, 617, 710; Joshua 654; Judges 779; 1 Kings 637, 639, 654 (2), 729, 761, 797; 2 Kings 587, 637, 695, 737; Micah 637; Numbers 751; Proverbs 801, 802; Psalms 579, 582 (2), 619, 628, 657; 1 Samuel 654, 779. New Testament: Acts 604; 1 Corinthians 619, 794; Galatians 590; John 736; Luke 604, 605, 635; Matthew 737; Revelations 671, 709, 713, 763. Apocrypha: Daniel (additions) 654; Judith 761; 1 Maccabees 826; Wisdom of Solomon 796, 801.
- Biblical chronology— 613-614, 830-831.
- Bildad— xviii, *635-636.
- Billy Budd*— xxix, 616, 670, 738, 741.
- Bird, Robert Montgomery— "The Mammoth Cave" in *Peter Pilgrim* 768.
- Blackstone, Sir William— *Commentaries on the Laws of England* 584.
- Blake, William— *Illustrations for the Book of Job* 700.
- Boone, Daniel— 588, 790.
- Boswell, James— *Life of Samuel Johnson* 578, 584, 760, 827.
- Bowditch, Nathaniel— *New American Practical Navigator* 805.
- Bracton, Henry de— *De Legibus et Consuetudinibus Angliae* 792.
- Brant, Joseph— 622. See also Stone, William Leete.
- British criticism of *The Whale*, 1851-1852— xviii-xx.
- Brotherhood rituals— *621-623.
- Browne, J. Ross— *Etchings of a Whaling Cruise* ix, 570, 572, 580, 582, 584 (3), 585, 586 (3), 603, 626, 636-637, 638, 659, 660, 674, 675, 681-682, 685, 690, 691, 712, 721, 734, 735, 739, 756, 757, 776-777, 784, 797.

Browne, Sir Thomas— 569, 570, 684, 716; "Extracts from Common-place Books" 617, 778; *The Garden of Cyrus* 668; *Miscellanies* 627; *Miscellany Tracts* 812; "On Dreams" 600; *Pseudodoxia Epidemica* 620, 633, 635, 665, 706, 746, 747, 770, 779, 784, 793, 794, 805, 812, 815, 818; *Religio Medici* 620, 719, 786, 813.

Bulkington— xxiv, 606, 657, 659.

Bunyan, John— 666; *The Holy War* 580, 583, 709; *Pilgrim's Progress* 580, 583.

Burke, Edmund— "On Conciliation with the American Colonies" 584, 660.

Burke, Jem (the pugilist called "Deaf" Burke)— 689.

Burton, Richard— *The Anatomy of Melancholy* 579.

Burts, Robert— "The White Squall," *Knickerbocker*, Feb. 1839—691.

Byron, George Gordon— Carlyle's comment on 651; Thomas Moore's biography 587; *Cain* 587, 647, 691; *Childe Harold* 647, 685; *Don Juan* xxx; *Heaven and Earth: A Mystery* 737; *Manfred* 587, 628, 647, 719, 800, 829; *Mazeppa* 755; *The Island* 672.

Cabo Tormentoso (Cape of Good Hope)— 738.

Cain (the Biblical character)— 589, 619, 645, 671, 691.

Calmet, Antoine Augustin— *Dictionary of the Bible* 703.

Camoens, Luis de— *The Lusiad* (trans. by William Julius Mickle), 605, 612, 738, 751, 803-804, 820.

Campbell, Thomas— "Death Boat of Heligoland" 832.

Cape-Cod-Man— 666-667.

Cape Horn fit, Ahab's— 655.

"Captain Bunker" (whaling song)— 690.

Carlyle, Thomas— xv, xvii, 570, 579, 799; *French Revolution* 670; *On Heroes, Hero-Worship, and the Heroic in History* 591, 630, 650, 664, 689, 694, 701-702, 716; *Sartor Resartus* 589, 604, 625, 627, 631, 651, 652, 656-657, 680, 687, 688-689, 689, 716, 725, 727, 730, 760-761, 796, 800, 805, 812, 828.

Caryatid— 698-699.

Caryl, Joseph— *An Exposition with Observations upon . . . the Book of Job* 702-703.

Catholic interpretations of *Moby-Dick*— xxii, xxx.

Cato the Younger— 593, 684.

Cervantes, Miguel de— 665, 666; *Don Quixote* xxx, 608-609, 652, 666, 687, 689, 697.

Cetology, nineteenth century criticism of inclusion of xvi, xviii, xix, xx.

Cetus (the constellation)— 751.

Chambers, William and Robert, eds.— *Information for the People. A Popular Encyclopedia*— on Albinos 712; on famous whales 720; on phrenology 774.

Charles and Henry (Melville's whale-ship, Nov. 1842-April 1843)— ix, 586, *592, 626, 656, 667, 692.

- Charts, Whaling— 717-718.
- Chase, Owen— 721; *Narrative . . . of the Whale-ship Essex* xiii, xxix, 585, 626, 741-742, 770, 807.
- Chaucer, Geoffrey— *Canterbury Tales* 643, 806.
- Cheever, Henry T.— *The Whale and His Captors* 570, 572, 580, 582, 583, 584, 585 (3), 586, 659, 660, 674, 690, 718, 720, 723, 735, 739-740, 751, 758, 769, 770, 774, 776, 784, 786, 794, 818, 829.
- Christ and Christianity— xvi, xvii, xxx, 620, 623, 638-639, 741. See also New Testament listings under Bible.
- Cole, Thomas— "Prometheus Bound to a Rock" (picture) 719.
- Coleridge, Samuel Taylor— 726; *Rime of the Ancient Mariner* 654, 705, 710-711, 738-739; *Table Talk* 702.
- Collected Poems* (of Herman Melville)— "Herba Santa" 672; "The Aeolian Harp" 753; "The Bench of Boors" 755.
- Collections of the Massachusetts Historical Society*— Nantucket legend 626; hot horseshoes nailed to mast of Thomas Shepard's Ship 803.
- Collection of Voyages* (London, 1729)— Capt. Ambrose Cowley 584.
- Colnett, Capt. James— *A Voyage to the South Atlantic and Round Cape Horn . . . for the Purpose of Extending the Spermaceti Whale Fisheries* 585, 747, 807, 824.
- Colton, George H.— *Tecumseh* 621, 681, 742-743.
- Colton, Walter— *Deck and Port* 715, 742, 744-745, 772; *Visit to Constantinople and Athens* 798.
- Comstock, *Life of Samuel*— 585.
- Confidence-Man, The*— 591, 636, 670, 721, 734, 736, 756.
- Constable, Sir Clifford— whale skeletons 808.
- Cook, Capt. James— John Ledyard with him 610; *A Voyage to the Pacific . . . for Making Discoveries in the Northern Hemisphere* 584.
- Cooper, James Fenimore— Melville's testimonial letter about 588; *The Pilot* 583, 585; *The Prairie* 587, 790; *The Red Rover* (Melville's review of) 704; *Satanstoe* 606; *The Wept of Wish-ton-Wish* 632, 721.
- Cowley, Capt. Ambrose— *Voyage Round the Globe* 584.
- Cowper, William— "The Castaway" 796; *Olney Hymns* 617; "On the Queen's Visit to London" 584.
- Cranmer, Thomas (Archbishop of Canterbury)— 685.
- Creah, Judge Jonathan— his whale bones 810.
- Crèvecoeur, Michel G. de— *Letters from an American Farmer* 625, 672.
- Crichton, Andrew— *History of Arabia* 707, 733-734, 806, 814.
- Cruikshank, George— 629; "The Bottle" and "The Drunkard's Children" (drawings) 815-816.
- Cuvier, Baron George— cited by Beale 696; (*The Class Pisces*) *The Animal Kingdom* 585, 710.

Daboll, Nathan— *Complete Schoolmaster's Assistant* 805.

Dagoo— *668.

Dana, Richard Henry, Jr.— ix, xii; *Two Years Before the Mast* 602, 614, 621, 635, 655, 656, 661-662, 662, 666-667, 685, 690, 693, 699, 710, 764, 821.

Dante, Alighieri— Ishmael a "Dantesque" character xxvii: illustrations of Satan 786; *The Vision* (trans. by H. F. Cary) 581 ("Paradise"), 668 ("Purgatory"), 730 ("Hell").

Darwin, Charles— *Journal of Researches . . . during the Voyage of H.M.S. Beagle* 586.

Dasent, George W., trans.— *The Story of Burnt Njal* 634.

Date of writing of *Moby-Dick*— *ix-xiv, 710, 783.

Davenant, Sir William— *Gondibert* 727; "The Preface to *Gondibert*" 583, 679; "The Answer to the Preface" by Thomas Hobbes 636.

Delight (ship met by *Pequod*)— 619, 825.

Demigorgon (or Demogorgon)— 689-690.

Democracy— metaphysics and aesthetics of xvi; God "the center and circumference of all democracy" 664-665; the significance of the brotherhood rituals of Queequeg and Ishmael 621-623.

Demonic, the (in Ahab)— 648-649, 651, *678-679.

Denon, Vivant— *Travels in Upper and Lower Egypt* 598, 809, 810-811.

De Quincey, Thomas— 570; *Confessions of an English Opium Eater* 609, 630, 734; *Suspira de Profundis* 609, 651-652, 679, 704, 714, 806, 828-829, 829-830; "The Vision of Sudden Death" 609.

Descartes, René— theory of vortices in *Le Monde* 685.

Devil Worship— 697-698, 817.

Dickens, Charles— comment on Edward Taylor in *American Notes* 614; Mrs. Hussey like his characters 629.

Donne, John— *Devotions* 669.

Doubloon or onza of Ecuador— 804.

Dramatic devices in *Moby-Dick*— 671.

Dryden, John— *Annus Mirabilis* 583.

Durand, H.— whale pictures so signed 750.

Du Sommerard, André— *Les Arts au Moyen Age . . . le Palais Roman 'de Paris, L'Hôtel de Cluny issu de ses ruines . . .* 698.

Duyckinck, Evert Augustus— review of *Moby-Dick* in *Literary World* xvi-xvii, 579, 581; Melville sends "Hawthorne and His Mosses" to xi; Melville writes to about his literary methods xii; writes to Melville about *Ann Alexander* xv; Melville borrows books from 600, 628, 650; visits Melville in the Berkshires, 1850 573, 633, 808; with his brother George makes pilgrimage to Salem to see Hawthorne 572; sends Hawthorne copy of *Typee* for review 573; sends Hawthorne in 1850 all of Melville's works 574; letters to his brother George x, 601; he and his brother both college trained men 662; admirer of Cruikshank 815-816; his *Cyclopedia of American Literature* 625. See also *Literary World*.

Dwight, Timothy— *Travels; in New-England and New-York* 596, 603, 632-633, 708-709, 762.

D'Wolf, John (Melville's uncle)— 721; *A Voyage to the North Pacific and a Journey through Siberia* 723.

Ecclesiastes— See Bible.

Eckermann, Johann Peter— *Conversations of Goethe* 585, 638, 649, 679, 705, 714, 765, 784 (2), 813.

Edge, Thomas— "Iceland Voyage" 583.

Ego non baptiso te in nomine patris. . . — 643.

Elephanta, caves of— 613.

Elijah— 637, *654-655.

El-Mukattem— *Lands of the Moslem*, review of in *Literary World* 630.

Emerson, Ralph Waldo— his influence on Melville xv, 570, *798-799; Melville's comment on him 569, 594, 761; comparison of Melville and Emerson xvi (quest for democratic metaphysics and aesthetics), 728 (idea of fate in *White-Jacket*), xvii (E. A. Duyckinck: "conceited indifferentism"), xix (*The Leader*: interest in the supersensual), xxviii (H. A. Myers: idea of tragedy); "Aristocracy" 665, 669; "Demonology" 679; "Experience" xv, 620, 704, 798; "Fate" 694; "Heroism" 594; *Journal* 577 (on Hawthorne), 720 (on a white whale); "Monadnoc" 828; "Napoleon" 649, 823; "Nature" 694, 716; "Self-Reliance" 620, 658; "Shakespeare" 615; "The Sphinx" 828, "Thoughts on Modern Literature" 665; "The Tragic" 800.

Enderby, Samuel— 718, *807.

English edition (*The Whale*), alterations and omissions in— 599, 600, 605, 606, 624, 628, 636, 653, 654, 662, 665, 683, 685, 697, 716, 758, 787, 825.

Epilogue— xx, 631, 701, 831.

Equality— 665-666. See also Democracy.

Essex (ship sunk by a whale 1820)— xiii, 585, 626, 721, 722, 741-742. See also Chase, Owen.

Etymology— xvi, *578-579.

Extracts— xvi, *579-581; sources of specific Extracts 582-586.

Fadlallah (hero of Persian tale)— 731-732.

Falconer, William— *The Shipwreck* 584, 779-780.

Fate and Fatalism—600, 694, 699, *725-729, 795. See also Necessity.

Faust— xvii, xxx, 638, 700. See also Goethe and Marlowe.

Fedallah— 633, 637, 700, 709, *729-734, 737, 738, 819. See also Fire-Worship and Parsee.

Fenelon, Francis— *Adventures of Telemachus* 619, 797.

Field, David Dudley— host at dinner party 5 August 1850 where Melville and Hawthorne met xi, 574, 633, 662, 808.

- Fink, Mike (the Ohio boatman)— 740.
 Fire Worship and Symbolism— 733, *822-823, 826-827.
 Flask— 667.
 Fleece's sermon to the sharks— 756.
 Flint, Timothy— *The First White Man of the West . . . Col. Dan'l Boone* 790.
 Folger, Mary Morrell— 660-661.
 Folger, Peleg— 606, 636, 661.
 Forester, Fanny— See Judd, Emily Chubbuck.
 Fox, Luther, of *Nassau*— a possible original for *Steelkilt* 740-741.
 Fraser, James B.— *Historical and Descriptive Account of Persia* 597, 733.
 Free Will— 726-729. See also Fate.
 French criticism of *Moby-Dick*— xx, xxiv, xxvi.
 Frobisher, Sir Martin— account of his voyages in Hakluyt 676.
 Froissart, Sir John— *Chronicles of England, France, and Spain* 657, 713.
 Fuller, Thomas— *Church History of Britain* 685; *The Holy State and the Profane State* 583, 752.
- Gabriel (of the *Jeroboam*)— *762-763.
 Gall, Franz Joseph— 773, 774.
 Gam— definition 739-740; symbolism of xxiv.
 Garneray, Louis— whale prints of 749.
 Gay-head— 668.
 George, St., and the Dragon— 779.
 Gillies, Robert Pearse— *Tales of a Voyager to the Arctic Ocean* 586, 687-688, 781-782, 786.
Glimpses of the Wonderful 710, 809.
Globe (whale-ship, on which there was a mutiny)— 585.
 Gnosticism— 590, 690, 697-698, 702. See also Manicheanism and Ophites.
 God's inscrutability— 620, 686-687, 699-702.
 Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von— See also Eckermann. 784, 813; his influence on Melville 570, 686; Carlyle's praise of him 651; his theory of the demonic 648-649, *678-679; his theory of colors 705, 784; his autobiography, *Truth and Poetry: From My Own Life* 610, 615, 644, *648-649, 669, 677, 678-679, 680, 770, 774, 801-802, 813; *Faust* 581, 585, 638, 648, 714, 725, 729, 765; *Letters from Italy* 658, 802, 821-822, 827.
 Goldsmith, Oliver— comment to Dr. Samuel Johnson 579; *Natural History* 579, 584, 748.
Grampus (whale-ship at New Bedford)— 606-607.
 Greene, Richard Tobias (Melville's companion on *Acushnet*)— 592, 621, 637, 692.

- Hakluyt, Richard— *Principal Navigations* 578, 582, 676.
- Hall, James— "Memoir of Thomas Posey" in Jared Sparks, ed., *American Biography* 721; *The Wilderness and the Warpath* 711-712 ("The Black Steed of the Prairies"), 736 ("The Dark Maid of Illinois").
- Halyard, Harry— *Wharton's the Killer!* 586; *The Doom of the Dolphin* 721.
- Harper and Brothers— American publishers of *Moby-Dick* xiv.
- Harper Family Library— See Crichton, Andrew; Fraser, James B.; and *Natural History. The Elephant*.
- Harper's New Monthly Magazine*— review of *Moby-Dick* by George Ripley xvii.
- Harris, John, ed.— *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca* 583, 747, 771, 782.
- Hart, Joseph C.— *Miriam Coffin* 579, 583, 584, 586, 606, 628, 636, 653, 661; *Romance of Yatching* 653.
- "Hawthorne and His Mosses" (Melville's article in *Literary World*) 632, 643, 708, 762; Hawthorne's comment on 574; Sophia Hawthorne's comment on 575; quoted xi, 573-574, 604, 617-618, 641, 650-651, 687, 748.
- Hawthorne, Nathaniel— Melville's relations with him xi, xiii, xiv, 570, *572-577, 574, 582, 646, 662, 825; comparison of Melville and Hawthorne xix (*The Leader*), xxvii-xxviii (H. A. Myers). "Ethan Brand" 623, 647, 822; *House of Seven Gables* 575; *Journal of an African Cruiser* 573. *Mosses from an Old Manse* xi, 573; "The Birthmark" 573; "Fire Worship" 657, 733; "The Hall of Fantasy" 799; "Monsieur du Miroir" 573. *The Scarlet Letter* 699-700; 729. *Twice-Told Tales* 573, 575, 585, 595-596; "The Ambitious Guest" 595; "Chippings with a Chisel" 585; "The Gentle Boy" 618-619; "The Great Carbuncle" 595, 657, 717; "The Three-Fold Destiny" 657; "The Village Uncle" 585. See also *American Magazine* for articles published under Hawthorne's editorship.
- Hawthorne, Sophia Peabody— 575, 576.
- Hazlitt, William— praise of Crèvecoeur 625.
- Herbert, Sir Thomas— *Some yeares Travels in Divers Parts of Asia and Afrique* 583.
- Herodotus— 597, 752, 771, 803.
- Hobbes, Thomas— "The Answer to the Preface" of *Gondibert* 636; *Leviathan* 583.
- Hobomack* (whale-ship of Falmouth)— 586.
- Hoffman, Charles Fenno— "Sparkling and Bright" 690.
- Hogarth, William— plates in Lewis Theobald, *Perseus and Andromeda* 747.
- Holmes, Oliver Wendell— 598, 662, 795.
- Honolulu *Temperance Advocate and Seamen's Friend* 636, 740, 829.

- Hope, Thomas— *Anastasius, or Memoirs of a Greek* 570, 598-599, 600, 618, 622-623, 629, 630, 647, 657, 697, 728, 733, 753, 764, 826, 832.
- Hotel de Cluny— 698.
- Humor in *Moby-Dick*— xviii, 756.
- Hunter, John— "Observations on the Structure and Oeconomy of Whales" 585, 748, 783.
- Hussey, Cyrus M., and William Lay— *A Narrative of the Mutiny, on Board the Ship Globe* 585.
- Hussey, Mrs. (of the Try Pots inn)— 628-629.
- Illinois, Melville's 1840 trip to— 596, 601, 607, 734, 742, 743, 759, 769.
- Indian (American) traditions and worship— 698, 707, 712, 733.
- Independence* (ship on which Melville returned from Europe 1850)— 592, 656.
- Irving, Washington— 575; *Knickerbocker History* 595; *Sketch Book* 681; *A Tour of the Prairies* 773.
- Ishmael— xvii, xxvii, xix, xx, 581, *586-591, 602, 621, 623, 701, 831.
- Ishmaelism— of Queequeg 624, of Bulkington 656-657.
- Islam— 651, 701. See also Mohammed and Mohammedanism.
- Isolation— 669. See also Brotherhood rituals.
- Jackson, Andrew— 666.
- Jackson (character in *Redburn*)— compared with Ahab xvii, 588, 644-647, 741, 830.
- Jefferson, Thomas— memorandum to French minister 584, *Notes on the State of Virginia* 681, 686.
- Jeroboam* (ship met by *Pequod*)— 762-763.
- Jew, the wandering— 589, 668-669, 671.
- Job— See Bible.
- John Bull*— review of *The Whale* 1851 xviii, 659.
- Johnson, Edward— *History of New-England* 803.
- Johnson, Samuel— 578, 584, 646, 739, 760, 827. See also Boswell, James.
- Jonah— 604, 606, *616-617, 618. See also Bible.
- Jones, Commodore Thomas ap Catesby— 723.
- Josephus, Flavius— *The Jewish Antiquities* 638.
- Journal of a Visit to London and the Continent by Herman Melville 1849-1850*— 581, 605, 609, 610, 615, 624, 626, 633, 634, 646, 675, 676, 682, 685, 698, 700, 707, 713, 726, 748, 760, 765, 766, 773, 774, 811, 816, 820-821.
- Judd, Emily Chudduck— "The Weaver" in *Alderbrook* 726.
- Julian the Apostate— 698.
- Jumelle, Maria C. (Comtess d'Aulnoy)— *Relation du Voyage d'Espagne* 696.

- Kant, Immanuel— 765-766.
 Keats, John— *Endymion* 696; his epitaph 827.
 Kierkegaardian interpretation of *Moby-Dick* xxx.
 Kitto, John, ed.— *Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature* 613, 617, 635, 637, 654, 661, 668, 724, 733, 737, 763, 778, 779, 780, 782.
 Knight, Charles— *London* 713, 747, 811, 812.
 Knox, John, ed.— *A New Collection of Voyages* 753.
 Krusenstern, Adam Ivan— *Voyage Round the World* 660.
- Laertius, Diogenes— *Lives of Eminent Philosophers* 599.
 Lamb, Charles— "The Triumph of the Whale" 585; Thomas N. Talford's *Final Memorials of Charles Lamb* 653.
 Land and Sea, Dichotomy of 657-658.
 Langsdorff, George H. von— *Voyages and Travels* 723.
 Lavater, Johann Kaspar— *Physiognomical Fragments* 623, 773-774.
 Lay, William, and Cyrus M. Hussey— *A Narrative of the Mutiny, on Board the Ship Globe* 585.
 Lays (shares of profits in whaling)— 636-637, 687.
 Lazarus— 604-605, 736.
 Leader, The— review of *The Whale* 1851 xix.
 Ledyard, John— 610-611.
 Le Sage, Alain Rene— *Gil Blas* 757.
 Leviathan of Job— 579, 699, 702-703. See also Bible, subheading Job.
 Lima— 714, 743-746, 806-807.
 Literary World— xii, 573, 597; E. A. Duyckinck's review of *Moby-Dick* in xvi-xvii, 579, 581; Melville's reviews for 603, 685, 704, 716, 734-735; articles probably used in *Moby-Dick* *707-708, *792-793; other articles and reviews cited 610, 630, 653, 700, 707, 719, 745-746, 806 (2). See also "Hawthorne and His Mosses."
 Locke, John— *731, 765-766.
 Logan, James ("wild Logan")— 680-681.
 Longfellow, Henry W.— "The Village Blacksmith" 815.
 Loom of Time— *725-729.
 Louis Napoleon— 581, 683.
 Lucian— 582, 707.
 Lucy Ann (Melville's whale-ship, Aug.-Sept. 1842)— 592, 692.
- McCulloch, John Ramsay— *Dictionary, Practical, Theoretical, and Historical of Commerce and Commercial Navigation* 580, 586.
 Macy, Obed— *History of Nantucket* 580, 585, 625, 627-628, 722-723.
 Madness— 641, 689, 796. See also the Demonic.
 Mahomet— See Mohammed and Mohammedanism.
 Manicheanism— 697-698. See also Gnosticism.
 Manuscript Notes in Melville's Shakespeare, Vol. 7 (for *Moby-Dick*?)— 582, 615, *643-644, 667, 817.
 Mapple, Father— 604, 606, *614-615, 617, 619, 756, 823.

Mardi— 581, 588, 589, 592, 596, 611, 616, 621, 657, 658, 662, 664, 665, 668, 671, 672, 676, 689, 699, 704, 706, 710, 716, 726, 728, 737, 743, 748, 750, 756, 758, 773, 774, 779, 782, 783, 798, 800-801, 818, 819.

Mariner's Chronicle, The— xiii.

Marlowe, Christopher— *Doctor Faustus* 647, 729; *Tamburlaine* 689, 737.

Marshall, John— *Life of Washington* 722.

Martens, Friedrich— *Voyage into Spitzbergen and Greenland* 583, 747.

Masks, pasteboard— 687. See also God's inscrutability.

Mather, Cotton— *Magnalia* 703.

Mather, Richard— 631, 658.

Maurice, Thomas— *Indian Antiquities* 613.

Maury, Lt. Matthew Fontaine— *Explanations and Sailing Directions to Accompany . . . Wind and Current Charts* 717-718.

Mayo, William Starbuck— *Kaloolah* 588-589, 627, 663, 807.

Melville, Allan (Herman's father)— 623.

Melville, Allan (Herman's brother)— xiv, 693, 710.

Melville, Gansevoort (Herman's brother)— 587, 601, 666, 816.

Melville, Herman— Articles and books cited and quoted. See *Billy Budd*, *Collected Poems*, *Confidence-Man*, "Hawthorne and His Mosses", *Journal*, *Literary World*, *Mardi*, *Omoo*, *Piazza Tales*, *Pierre*, *Typee*, *White-Jacket*, *Yankee Doodle*.

——— European travels. See *Journal*.

——— Letters: to Richard Bentley x, 693; to Richard H. Dana, Jr. ix, 646, 659, 693, to Evert A. Duyckinck xii, xv, 569, 582, 606, 615, 646, 684, 721, 761, 795, 798, 811; to Rufus Griswold 588; to Nathaniel Hawthorne xiii, 575-576, 582, 623, 643, 646, 686, 801, 817, 822, 827; to Sophia Hawthorne 576, 737-738; to Sarah Morewood xiv; to Lemuel Shaw, 596.

——— Trip to Illinois and the Middle-West. See *Illinois*.

——— Whaling Experience x, 592, 693.

Melville, Jean (Herman's aunt)— 619.

Melville, Mary (Herman's aunt)— xi, 573.

Melville, Robert (Herman's cousin)— 762.

Melville, Thomas (Herman's grandfather)— 598, 662.

Melville, Thomas (Herman's uncle)— 596, 601.

Melville, Thomas (Herman's brother)— 599.

Melville, Thomas Wilson (Herman's cousin)— 591, 602, 607.

Merrick, James L.— *Life and Religion of Mohammed* 650.

Metampsychosis— 802-803.

Miles, George H.— *Mohammed* 650.

Mickle, William Julius— See *Camoens*.

Middle West, Melville's trip to— See *Illinois*.

Milton, John— xv, xxxi-xxxii, 581; *Paradise Lost* 580, 583 (2), 599, 604, 611-612, 640-641, 668, 680, 689, 719, 726, 729, 737, 786.

- 818, 820, 823 (2), 826, 827, 830; *Paradise Regained* 638-639; *Samson Agonistes* 668, 701; Melville's comment on Milton's Satan 646.
- "Miriam and Martha"— 577, 825.
- Missionary Herald*— 723.
- Mitford, William— *History of Greece* 787, 795.
- Moab and Moby Dick— 695, 825.
- Moby-Dick* (the schooner)— 695.
- Moby Dick (the whale)— the symbolism of xvii-xxxi *passim*, 602, 655, 690, *691-695, *703.
- Mocha Dick (the whale)— 602, 691-693, 695. See also Reynolds, J. N.
- Mohammed and Mohammedanism— 629, 630, *648-651 *passim*, 680, 772, 775.
- Montaigne, Michel de— *Essays* 570, 581, 582, 593, 599, 621, 741, 783-784, 785, 786, 802-803, 808, 818-819.
- Montgomery, James— *Pelican Island* and *World Before the Flood* 580, 585.
- Moore, Thomas— *Life of Lord Byron* 587.
- Morewood, Sarah (Mrs. J. R.)— xiv, 795.
- Morgan, Lewis H.— *League of the Ho-de-no-sau-nee or Iroquois* 717-718.
- Mudge, Enoch— 614.
- Murray, Lindley— *The English Grammar* and *The English Reader* 805.
- Naboth's Vineyard— 637-638, 663.
- Njalssaga*— 634.
- Nantucket— xviii, 588, 603, *625-626, 667.
- Nantucket Song in Extracts— 580, 586.
- Napoleon— 649, 682, 823.
- Natural History. The Elephant*— 706, 785.
- Nature in relation to man— *694-695, 716-717, 818. See also Fate.
- Necessity— 648, 690, *725-729. See also Fate.
- Nelson, Horatio— 616, 682.
- Neville, Morgan— "The Last of the Boatmen" in *Western Souvenir* 740.
- New Bedford— xviii, *603, 612-613, 625.
- New England Primer*— 580, 584, 752.
- Niagara's Table Rock— 772.
- Norton, Edward Oliver Russ— 743.
- Ochter— See Alfred, King.
- Olafsen and Povelsen— 695.
- "Old King Crow" (minstrel song)— 806.
- Olmsted, Francis Allyn— *Incidents of a Whaling Voyage* 572, 674,

- 676, 690, 723, 724-725, 753, 764, 769.
Omoo— 592, 608, 621, 667, 691, 692, 765, 766.
 "One insular Tahiti"— 657, 742, 752.
 Ophites— 590, 690, 697. See also Devil Worship and Gnosticism.
 Orosius— *History of the World*, translated by King Alfred 582.
 Ovid— *Metamorphoses* 598, 696, 707, 731, 803.
- Paley, William— *Natural Theology* 585.
 Panorama of Whaling Voyage (Purrington and Tussell's)— 693.
 Pantheism— 685, 686, 702. See also Nature in relation to man.
 Paracelsus— 794.
 Park, Mungo— 610-611.
 Parkman, Francis— *The Oregon Trail* 635, 716.
 Parsees— 597, 732-733, 826.
 Paul, St.— 590, 604, 619, 794.
 Paulding, James K.— *The Diverting History of John Bull and Brother Jonathan* 792.
 Peleg— xviii, *635-636.
Pequod— xv, xvi, xxx, 629, 631-633, 635, 655, 818.
 Pequod Indians— *631-633.
 Perseus— 670, 747, 751, 778.
 Personal Identity, problem of— *730-732.
 Phillips, Ambrose, trans.—*The Thousand and One Days, Persian Tales*, 731.
 Phrenology— 623, 773-775.
 Physiognomy— 773-775.
Piazza Tales— "Benito Cereno" 611, 743 (2); "The Encantadas" 824; "The Piazza" 605, 666.
Pierre— xiii, 577, 591, 599, 615, 644, 679, 686, 687, 691, 728, 741, 743, 752, 765-766, 769-770, 796, 818.
 Pip— 645, 667, 687, 761, 795, *796, 805.
 Planche, J. R.— *Not a Bad Judge*, 773.
 Plato— 663, 769, 773; *Phaedo* 593, 684; *Phaedrus* 614; *The Republic* 614, 826.
 Pliny the Elder— *Natural History* 578, 582, 785.
 Plutarch— *Lives* 593, 783, 785; *Morals* 582, 785, 786, 818.
 Poe, Edgar Allan— xix, 773; "A Descent into the Maelstrom" 686-687; *The Narrative of A. Gordon Pym* 602, 607, 705, 710, 807, 828.
 Poems by Melville— See *Collected Poems*.
 Politics and elections— 600-601, 666.
 Pontoppidan, Erik— *Natural History of Norway* 753.
 Poole, Paul Falconer— picture of Job's messenger 700.
 Pope, Alexander— "The Rape of the Lock" 584.
 Procopius— 724.
 Prometheus— xxix-xxx, 641, 648-649, 665, 702, 719, 812-813.
 Prophecies— of the old squaw Tistig 653; of Fedallah 818.

- Psychological interpretations of *Moby-Dick*— xvi, xxix-xxx, xxxi, 609.
 Publication of *Moby-Dick* in 1851— xiv.
 Purchas, Samuel— *Hakluytus Posthumus* 583, 738, 782.
 Purrington and Russell's Whaling Voyage Panorama— 693.
Pusie Hall (British ship)— 723-724.
 Pyrrho— 783.
 Pythagoras— 599, 802.
- Queequeg— xviii, xxiv, *608, 610, *621-623, 623, 624, 629, 654, 672.
- Rabelais, Francois— *Gargantua and Pantagruel* 581, 582, 706, 707, 709, 815, 817, 818, 819.
Rachel (ship met by *Pequod*)— 590, 625, 824-825.
 Ramadan— 630.
 Reception of *Moby-Dick*, 1851-1852— xv-xx.
Redburn— xvii, 581, 587, 588, 592, 593, 595, 596, 598, 602, 603, 605, 607, 610, 616, 617, 621, 624, 644, 645-646, 656, 659, 671, 672, 676, 680, 685, 686, 691, 698-699, 699, 700, 700-701, 714, 723, 739, 741, 756, 772 (2), 795-796, 809, 830, 831.
 Redfield, J. W.— articles on physiognomy in *Home Journal* 775.
 Religion— 610, 624. See also Christ and Christianity.
 Reni, Guido— "Perseus Rescuing Andromeda" (picture) 746.
 Revisions made in English edition of *Moby-Dick*— See English edition.
 Reynolds, Jeremiah N.— "Mocha Dick: or the White Whale of the Pacific" in *Knickerbocker*, May 1839—602, 607, *691-693, 704, 709, 721.
 Rhodes, James A.— *Cruise in a Whale Boat* 586.
Ribs and Trucks (by W.A.G.)— 586, 627, 787, 797.
 Richardson, Charles— *A New Dictionary of the English Language* 578, 580, 582, 583.
 Ripley, George— reviews *Moby-Dick* in *Harper's New Monthly Magazine* xvii.
 Robinson, Tancred, ed.— *An Account of Several Late Voyages and Discoveries to the South and North* 583, 747.
 Rousseau, Jean Jacques— Goethe's comment on 802; *Confessions* 578.
 Russ, Oliver (Melville's ship-mate on *United States*)— 743.
- Saco River in New Hampshire— 595.
 Sag Harbor (Long Island whaling port)— 624.
St. Lawrence, Melville's Liverpool voyage on— 591.
 Santa (Peruvian port)— 592, 655.
 Satan— See Bible, subheading Job, and Milton, *Paradise Lost* and *Paradise Regained*.
 Savinien, Cyrano de Bergerac— *The Comical History of the States and the Empires of the Worlds of the Moon and Sun* 628.
 Schiller, J. C. F. von— "The Veiled Statue at Sais" 771.

- Schoolcraft, Henry R.— *The Indian in His Wigwam* 707, 733.
 Schoolteaching, Melville's— 578, 599.
 Schouten, William Cornelius— account of his circumnavigation given by John Harris, ed., *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca* 583.
 Scoresby, William, Jr.— quoted by Robert Southey, *The Doctor* 694; *Memorials of the Sea: My Father* 684; *An Account of the Arctic Regions* x, xiv, 570, 572, 585, 659, 660, 661, 673, 674, 675-676, 677, 683-684, 696, 746, 748, 749, 751, 757, 769, 776, 777-778, 784, 788, 791-792, 808, 809, 811, 811-812, 816-817; *Journal of a Voyage to the Northern Whale Fishery* 676, 787, 823-824.
 Scott, R. A.— "The Rape of Europa. A Marine Dialogue. (From Lucian)" 707.
 Scott, Walter— *The Monastery* 706; *The Talisman* 671, 697, 746, 818.
 Scrimshaw— 606.
 Seamen's Bethel (New Bedford)— 612-613, 616.
 Sedgwick, Catherine Maria— on Edward Taylor 614; *Hope Leslie; or Early Times in Massachusetts* 632-633.
 Seneca— 599.
 Serra de Estrella (Portuguese mountains)— 696.
 Shakers (United Society of Believers)— 574, 762-763.
 Shakespeare, William— Melville's reading of xi, 643; general influence of xv, xxiii, xxvii, xxix, 570; influence on Ahab 641-643; Melville's admiration for his truth-telling 618, 641, 651; Melville compares Hawthorne with 574; Emerson's comment on 615; his views on phrenology 574; *Antony and Cleopatra* 618, 642, 663, 782-783; *As You Like It* 805; *Hamlet* xvii, 583, 585, 613, 641, 688, 761; *I Henry IV* 583, 605, 814; *Henry V* 629, 663; *Henry VIII* 643; *Julius Caesar* 594, 727, 730; *King John* 613, 825; *King Lear* 596, 618, 641, 642, 643, 663, 664, 701, 727, 729, 777, 787, 796; *Love's Labour's Lost* 726; *Macbeth* xvii, xviii, 641, 676, 819; *Measure for Measure* 752; *Merchant of Venice* 738; *Merry Wives of Windsor* 629; *Much Ado About Nothing* 642; *Othello* 641, 697; *Richard II* 642, 663; *Richard III* 593, 641, 748; *Romeo and Juliet* 672; *Taming of the Shrew* 658; *Timon* 641.
 Sharon (whale-ship of Fairhaven)— captured by savage crew 586.
 Shaw, Lemuel (Melville's father-in-law)— xiii, 626, 631, 662.
 Shearman, Capt. Prince, of *Parker*— 829.
 Shelley, Mary Wolstencraft— *Frankenstein; or the Modern Prometheus* 813.
 Shelley, Percy Bysshe— comment on Milton's Satan 640; "Arethusa" 696; *Hellas* 669; *Prometheus Unbound* 689, 719; *Queen Mab* 669, 671, 672; "The Spectral Horseman" 714.
 Shepard, Thomas— his "Memoir of His Own Life" in Alexander Young.

- ed., *Chronicles of the First Planters of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay* *631-633, 803.
- Siamese connection of human beings— 764-765.
- Sibbald, Robert— *History of the Sheriffdoms of Fife and Kinross* 583-584, 757; *Phalainologia Nova* and *Scotia Illustrata* 747.
- Siva (Hindu destroyer god)— 613, 691.
- Skrimshander— 606.
- Sleet, Capt.— Melville's name for William Scoresby, Jr. 684.
- Smith, Elizabeth Oakes— "The Drowned Mariner" 585.
- Smith, J. E. A.— *History of Pittsfield* 670, 795.
- Sociological interpretations of *Moby-Dick*— xxvi-xxvii.
- "Something" unpublished (Extract 70)— 586.
- Sorrow, the worship of— 651-652, 729, 800-801.
- Southampton* (ship on which Melville sailed to Europe 1849)— 592, 700, 820.
- Southern Quarterly Review, The*— review of *Moby-Dick*, 1852 xx.
- Southey, Robert— biography of John Bunyan 666; *Commonplace Book* 831; *The Doctor* 570, 579, 600, 619, 638, 690, 694, 700, 703, 706, 772, 775, 778, 783, 809-810, 815 (2); *Thalaba the Destroyer* 803, 830.
- "Spanish Ladies" (British navy song)— 690.
- Sparks, Jared— *Life of John Ledyard* 610; *American Biography* 722.
- Specksynder— 677.
- Spectator, The*— 9 August 1714, story of Fadlallah and Zemroude 730-732; 25 October 1851; review of *The Whale* xx, 831.
- Spenser, Edmund— *The Faerie Queene* 578, 583.
- Spinoza— 769-770.
- Spurzheim, Johan Caspar— 773-774.
- Stael, Madame de— *Corinne* 685, 760, 800.
- Starbuck— xxx, 625, 626, 638, *663-664, 741.
- Steelkilt— 663, 664, *740-742.
- Stephens, John Lloyd— *Incidents of Travel in Egypt, Arabia Petraea, and the Holy Land* 605, 638.
- Sterne, Laurence— *Tristram Shandy* 624, 665.
- Stoicism— 599, 667, 700.
- Stone, William Leete— *Life of Joseph Brant—Thayendanegea* 622, 681, 721, 789.
- Stowe, John— *The Annales, or General Chronicle of England* 582.
- Strafford, Richard— "Letter from the Bermudas" (Extract 32) 580, 584.
- Strello mountain (with lake where wrecks of ships appear)— 696.
- Stubb— *66-667, 805, 826.
- Summary View of the Millennial Church, or the United Society of Believers, Commonly Called Shakers* 762-763.
- Swedenborgian interpretation of *Moby-Dick*— xxiv, 602, 663, 667, 766.

Sword-mat, the weaving of— 724-725.

Symbolism— See Allegory and headings for particular characters or items.

Talfourd, Thomas N.— *Final Memorials of Charles Lamb* 653.

Tashtego— *667-668.

Taylor, Father Edward— 612, 614-615.

Taylor, Dr. Franklin— 581, 597.

Taylor, J. Bayard— *Views A-Foot* 596-597, 615, 677, 714, 799-800, 811.

Taylor, Zachary— 569; Melville's "Authentic Anecdotes of 'Old Zack'" in *Yankee Doodle*, 1847 601, 740, 773.

Tegner, Esaias— *Frithioff's Saga* 709-710.

Teufelsdröckh, Diogenes— See Carlyle, Thomas, *Sartor Resartus*.

Thames Tunnel— 626, 811.

Theory of colors— Goethe's 705, 784; Newton's 704-705.

Thorkill-Hake (or Hake)— 634.

Tistig's prophecy— 653.

Tomes, Robert— "MSS of the Pacific" in *Literary World* 806.

Topsell, Edward— *The Historie of Foure-Footed Beastes* 785, 795.

Thomas, Isaiah— *Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New Hampshire and Vermont Almanac* 805.

Town-Ho (ship met by *Pequod*)— 740-742.

Tragedy, Ahab's— xxiii, xxviii, xxxii. See also asterisked items under Ahab and Fedallah.

Transcendentalism— xv, xx, xxv. See also Emerson and Nature.

Turner, Joseph M. W.— pictures of whales 749.

Twentieth century criticism of *Moby-Dick*— xxi-xxxiii.

Tyerman, Daniel, and George Bennett— *Journal of Voyages and Travels* 585.

Typee— 573, 592, 605, 621, 659, 816.

Ulloa, Don Antonio de— *A Voyage to South America* 584.

Uncle Phillip's Conversations with Young People About the Whale Fishery, and Polar Regions— 750.

United States (Melville's ship, Aug. 1843-Oct. 1844)— 592, 656, 714, 723.

Union (whale-ship sunk by whale)— 722-723.

Usher, James, archbishop of Armagh— *Annales Veteris et Novi Testamenti* 613, 831.

Valor, the fall of— *663-664.

Veronese, Paul— picture of "The Rape of Europa" 707.

Vidocq, Francois Eugene— *Memoires de Vidocq* 789.

Virginia, allusions to— 607.

Voltaire, François Marie Arouet de— *The White Bull* 826.

- Von Slack, Fogo— Melville's name for William Scoresby, Jr. 795.
 Von Tschudi, J. J.— *Travels in Peru* 806.
 Von Troil, Uno— *Letters on Iceland* 584.
- Waller, Edmund— *The Battle of the Summer Islands* 583.
 Washington, George— 623, 682.
 Watts, Isaac— *Hymns and Spiritual Songs and Psalmody* 656.
 Webster, Daniel— Remarks on Breakwater at Nantucket, U. S. Senate 585.
 Webster, Noah— *An American Dictionary of the English Language* 578.
Whale, The (English title of *Moby-Dick*)— See English edition.
 Whale Song (Extract 80)— 586. See also "Captain Bunker."
 Whales, Pictures of— 746-751.
 Whaling Voyage, Purrington and Russell's Panorama of— 693.
White-Jacket— 573, 592, 604, 605, 608, 616, 643, 650, 655, 659, 664, 684, 690, 699, 705, 723, 727, 738, 743, 752, 755, 783, 803, 827.
 Whiteness as symbol of awe or terror— White Dog of the Iroquois 707-709; white hair of Fedallah's turban 733; White Hoods of Ghent 712-713; White Mountains of New Hampshire 595-596, 713; white squall 691, 712; White Steed of the Prairies 711-712; White Tower of London 713; "The Whiteness of the Whale" 603, 607, 691, *704-706, 800; other instances of whiteness 706-717 *passim*.
 Wilkes, Charles— *Narrative of United States Exploring Expedition* 586, 717, 718, 811.
 Williams, S. Wells— *The Middle Kingdom; or a Survey of Geography . . . of the Chinese Empire* 755.
 Willis, Nathaniel Parker— "Hagar in the Wilderness" 588.
 Wither, George— *The Hymnes and Songs of the Church* ("The Prayer of Jonah") *616.
 Writing Methods of Melville— xii-xiv.
 Wycliffe, William— 685.
- Yankee Doodle*— Melville's "Authentic Anecdotes of 'Old Zack'" 601, 740, 773.
 Yojo (Queequeg's idol)— 629.
 Young, Alexander, ed.— *Chronicles of the First Planters of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay* *631-632, 658, 698, 803.
- Zogranda— Melville's name for William Scoresby, Jr. 757.
 Zoroaster— 813-814. See also Parsees.